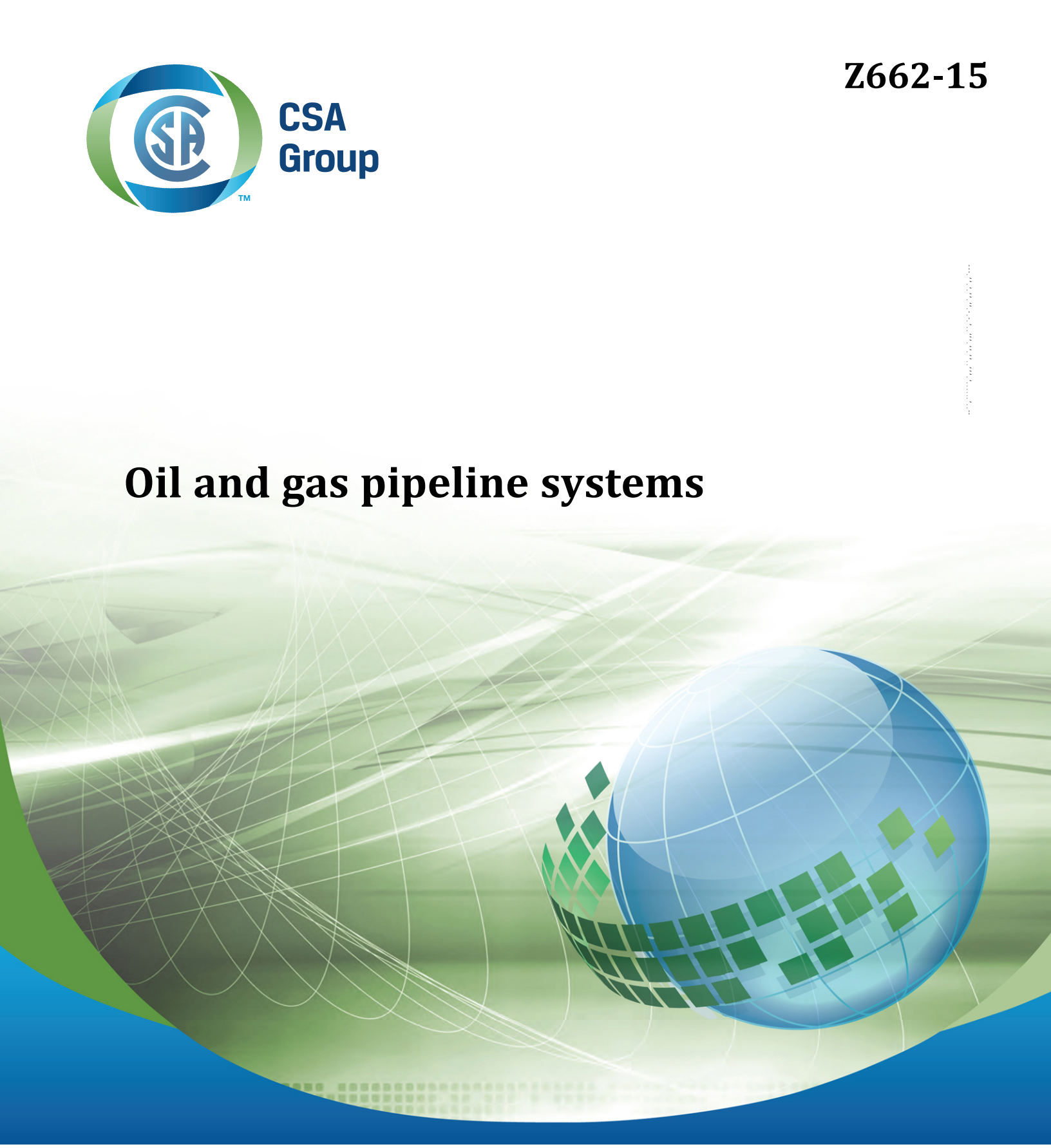
CSA Group

Z662-15

Oil and gas pipeline systems



Legal Notice for Standards

Canadian Standards Association (operating as "CSA Group") develops standards through a consensus standards development process approved by the Standards Council of Canada. This process brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve consensus and develop a standard. Although CSA Group administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in achieving consensus, it does not independently test, evaluate, or verify the content of standards.

Disclaimer and exclusion of liability

This document is provided without any representations, warranties, or conditions of any kind, express or implied, including, without limitation, implied warranties or conditions concerning this document's fitness for a particular purpose or use, its merchantability, or its non-infringement of any third party's intellectual property rights. CSA Group does not warrant the accuracy, completeness, or currency of any of the information published in this document. CSA Group makes no representations or warranties regarding this document's compliance with any applicable statute, rule, or regulation.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CSA GROUP, ITS VOLUNTEERS, MEMBERS, SUBSIDIARIES, OR AFFILIATED COMPANIES, OR THEIR EMPLOYEES, DIRECTORS, OR OFFICERS, BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INJURY, LOSS, COSTS, OR EXPENSES, HOWSOEVER CAUSED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, LOST REVENUE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOST OR DAMAGED DATA, OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL OR ECONOMIC LOSS, WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), OR ANY OTHER THEORY OF LIABILITY, ARISING OUT OF OR RESULTING FROM ACCESS TO OR POSSESSION OR USE OF THIS DOCUMENT, EVEN IF CSA GROUP HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, INJURY, LOSS, COSTS, OR EXPENSES.

In publishing and making this document available, CSA Group is not undertaking to render professional or other services for or on behalf of any person or entity or to perform any duty owed by any person or entity to another person or entity. The information in this document is directed to those who have the appropriate degree of experience to use and apply its contents, and CSA Group accepts no responsibility whatsoever arising in any way from any and all use of or reliance on the information contained in this document.

CSA Group is a private not-for-profit company that publishes voluntary standards and related documents. CSA Group has no power, nor does it undertake, to enforce compliance with the contents of the standards or other documents it publishes.

Intellectual property rights and ownership

As between CSA Group and the users of this document (whether it be in printed or electronic form), CSA Group is the owner, or the authorized licensee, of all works contained herein that are protected by copyright, all trade-marks (except as otherwise noted to the contrary), and all inventions and trade secrets that may be contained in this document, whether or not such inventions and trade secrets are protected by patents and applications for patents. Without limitation, the unauthorized use, modification, copying, or disclosure of this document may violate laws that protect CSA Group's and/or others' intellectual property and may give rise to a right in CSA Group and/or others to seek legal redress for such use, modification, copying, or disclosure. To the extent permitted by licence or by law, CSA Group reserves all intellectual property rights in this document.

Patent rights

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this standard may be the subject of patent rights. CSA Group shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights is entirely their own responsibility.

Authorized use of this document

This document is being provided by CSA Group for informational and non-commercial use only. The user of this document is authorized to do only the following:

If this document is in electronic form:

- load this document onto a computer for the sole purpose of reviewing it;
- search and browse this document; and
- print this document if it is in PDF format.

Limited copies of this document in print or paper form may be distributed only to persons who are authorized by CSA Group to have such copies, and only if this Legal Notice appears on each such copy.

In addition, users may not and may not permit others to

- alter this document in any way or remove this Legal Notice from the attached standard;
- sell this document without authorization from CSA Group; or
- make an electronic copy of this document.

If you do not agree with any of the terms and conditions contained in this Legal Notice, you may not load or use this document or make any copies of the contents hereof, and if you do make such copies, you are required to destroy them immediately. Use of this document constitutes your acceptance of the terms and conditions of this Legal Notice.

CSA Group

Revision History

Z662-15, Oil and gas pipeline systems

Changes from previous edition	Revision symbol (in margin)
Clauses 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 4.1, 4.3.12.4, 4.3.12.5, 4.3.13.1, 4.3.14, 4.3.17, 4.3.18, 4.3.20, 4.4, 4.7.2.2, 4.11, 4.12.1.3, 4.12.2.1, 4.13.1, 4.14.2.4, 4.14.2.7, 4.14.2.8, 4.14.2.11, 4.14.3.3, 4.14.3.5, 4.14.3.6, 4.14.3.8, 4.15.4, 4.16.2.1, 4.16.3.2, 4.17.3.2, 4.18.1.3, 4.18.2, 4.20.2, 5.1.2, 5.1.3, 5.2.2.3, 5.2.2.4, 5.2.4, 5.2.5.1, 5.2.6.4, 5.3.4.1, 5.3.5, 5.3.9, 5.3.9.1, 5.3.9.2, 5.4, 5.6.1, 5.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.2, 10.1.1, 10.3.1, 10.3.6, 10.5.7, 10.7.1, 10.7.2, 10.7.3, 10.7.4, 10.7.5, 10.10.2.5, 10.10.4.2, 10.10.8, 10.11.2.3, 10.11.4, 10.16, 10.17, 12.4.5, 12.4.13.6, 12.4.14.1, 12.4.14.4, 12.5.1, 12.5.3.1, 12.6.3, 12.7.4, 12.7.5, 12.7.5.2, 12.7.5.3, 12.7.5.4, 12.8.2, 12.8.4.5, 12.9.1.1, 12.9.1.2, 12.10.3.3, 12.10.10.1, 12.10.14.3, 12.10.15, 13.1.1.3, 13.1.2.16, 13.1.4.8, 13.1.5.3, 13.1.6, 13.1.7, 13.1.11, 13.3.3.5, 13.3.3.6, 13.3.3.7, 13.3.4.3, 13.3.4.5, 13.3.4.6, 13.3.4.7, 13.3.4.8, 13.3.4.9, 13.3.5.3, 13.3.5.6, 13.3.6.2, 13.3.6.6, 13.3.9.6, 14.1.1, 14.1.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.3.4, 14.3.5, 14.3.6, 14.5.3, 14.5.4, 14.7.1, 16.1.2, 16.10.3.1, I.1, and I.3.2.1 Annexes E, H, N, and P Tables 4.2, 4.3, 4.9, 4.11, 5.1, and 5.3 Figure 12.1	Δ

Standards Update Service

Z662-15
June 2015

Title: *Oil and gas pipeline systems*

To register for e-mail notification about any updates to this publication
- go to **shop.csa.ca**
- click on **CSA Update Service**

The **List ID** that you will need to register for updates to this publication is **2423368**.

If you require assistance, please e-mail **techsupport@csagroup.org** or call 416-747-2233.

Visit CSA Group's policy on privacy at **www.csagroup.org/legal** to find out how we protect your personal information.

Z662-15
Oil and gas pipeline systems

™A trade-mark of the Canadian Standards Association, operating as "CSA Group"

Published in June 2015 by CSA Group
A not-for-profit private sector organization
178 Rexdale Boulevard, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M9W 1R3

*To purchase standards and related publications, visit our Online Store at **shop.csa.ca***
or call toll-free 1-800-463-6727 or 416-747-4044.

ISBN 978-1-77139-7452

© 2015 CSA Group
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced to any form whatsoever without the prior permission of the publisher.

Contents

Technical Committee on Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry Pipeline Systems and Materials *19*

Executive Committee on Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry Pipeline Systems and Materials *25*

Subcommittee on Aluminum Pipeline Systems *27*

Subcommittee on Coatings *28*

Subcommittee on Construction *30*

Subcommittee on Design *32*

Subcommittee on Distribution *34*

Editorial Subcommittee *36*

Subcommittee on Materials *37*

Subcommittee on Operations and Systems Integrity *39*

Subcommittee on Production *41*

Subcommittee on Management Systems *43*

1 Scope *47*

2 Reference publications and definitions *51*
2.1 Reference publications *51*
2.2 Definitions *69*

3 Safety and loss management systems *81*
3.1 General *81*
3.2 Pipeline system integrity management program *82*
3.3 Engineering assessments *82*
3.3.1 General *82*
3.3.2 Engineering assessment process *83*
3.3.3 Documentation *83*
3.4 Risk management *83*

4 Design *83*
4.1 General *83*
4.2 Design conditions *85*
4.2.1 General *85*
4.2.2 Temperature *85*
4.2.3 Sustained force and wind loading *86*
4.2.4 Other loading and dynamic effects *86*
4.3 Design criteria *86*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.3.1 General *86*
4.3.2 Class location assessment areas *87*
4.3.3 Class location designations *88*
4.3.4 Class location end boundaries *88*
4.3.5 Pressure design for steel pipe — General *92*
4.3.6 Pressure design for steel pipe — Design factor (*F*) *93*
4.3.7 Pressure design for steel pipe — Location factor (*L*) *93*
4.3.8 Pressure design for steel pipe — Joint factor (*J*) *94*
4.3.9 Pressure design for steel pipe — Temperature factor (*T*) *95*
4.3.10 Pressure design for steel pipe — Allowances *95*
4.3.11 Pressure design for steel pipe — Wall thickness *95*
4.3.12 Pressure design for components — General *97*
4.3.13 Pressure design for components — Closures *98*
4.3.14 Pressure design for components — Elbows *98*
4.3.15 Pressure design for components — Tees and crosses *98*
4.3.16 Pressure design for components — Branch connections *98*
4.3.17 Pressure design for components — Integrally reinforced extruded outlet headers *99*
4.3.18 Pressure design for components — Welded branch connections *100*
4.3.19 Pressure design for components — Reinforcement of single openings *104*
4.3.20 Pressure design for components — Reinforcement of multiple openings *106*
4.4 Valve location and spacing *106*
4.5 Selection and limitation of piping joints *108*
4.5.1 Buttwelded joints *108*
4.5.2 Threaded joints *108*
4.5.3 Sleeve, coupled, mechanical interference fit, and other patented joints *108*
4.5.4 Additional requirements for mechanical interference fit joints *109*
4.6 Flexibility and stress analysis — General stress design *109*
4.6.1 Applicability *109*
4.6.2 Stress design of restrained and unrestrained portions of pipeline systems *110*
4.6.3 Discontinuity stresses *110*
4.6.4 Supplemental stress design *110*
4.6.5 Hoop stress *110*
4.6.6 Steel properties *110*
4.7 Flexibility and stress analysis — Stress design for restrained portions of pipeline systems *110*
4.7.1 Combined hoop and longitudinal stresses *111*
4.7.2 Combined stresses for restrained spans *111*
4.7.3 Anchors and restraints *111*
4.8 Flexibility and stress analysis — Stress design for unrestrained portions of pipeline systems *112*
4.9 Flexibility and stress analysis — Loads on pipe-supporting elements *116*
4.9.1 General *116*
4.9.2 Supports and braces *116*
4.10 Flexibility and stress analysis — Design of pipe-supporting elements *116*
4.11 Cover and clearance *116*
4.12 Crossings *119*
4.12.1 General *119*
4.12.2 Crossings of utilities *119*
4.12.3 Crossings of roads and railways *119*
4.12.4 Crossings of water *122*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.13 Requirements for pipelines in proximity to electrical transmission lines and associated facilities *123*
4.13.1 General *123*
4.13.2 Effects on pipelines in proximity to high-voltage DC lines *123*
4.13.3 Safety requirements *123*
4.14 Design of compressor stations over 750 kW and pump stations over 375 kW *124*
4.14.1 General *124*
4.14.2 Design of compressor stations over 750 kW *125*
4.14.3 Design of pump stations over 375 kW *128*
4.15 Liquid storage in oil pipeline pump stations, tank farms, and terminals *131*
4.15.1 Aboveground tanks over 4000 L *131*
4.15.2 Aboveground tanks of 4000 L or less *132*
4.15.3 Underground tanks *132*
4.15.4 Pressure spheres, bullets, and ancillary vessels *132*
4.15.5 Pipe-type storage vessels *132*
4.16 Gas storage in pipe-type and bottle-type holders *132*
4.16.1 General *132*
4.16.2 Aboveground installations *132*
4.16.3 Underground installations *133*
4.17 Vaults *133*
4.17.1 Structural design *133*
4.17.2 Location *133*
4.17.3 Vault ventilation *133*
4.17.4 Drainage and waterproofing *134*
4.18 Pressure control and overpressure protection of piping *134*
4.18.1 General *134*
4.18.2 General design requirements for systems for pressure control and overpressure protection *135*
4.18.3 Additional design requirements for pressure-relieving installations *135*
4.18.4 Additional overpressure-protection requirements for compressor and pump stations *136*
4.19 Instrument, control, and sampling piping *136*
4.20 Leak detection capability *137*
4.21 Odorization *138*
4.22 Requirements for pipelines installed by horizontal directional drilling *138*

5 Materials *138*
5.1 Qualification of materials *138*
5.2 Steel materials and gaskets *139*
5.2.1 Design temperatures — Steel materials *139*
5.2.2 Notch toughness requirements — Steel pipe *140*
5.2.3 Notch toughness requirements — Steel components *144*
5.2.4 Steel pipe *144*
5.2.5 Steel components — General *149*
5.2.6 Steel components — Flanges *149*
5.2.7 Bolting *150*
5.2.8 Gaskets *150*
5.2.9 Steel components — Fittings *151*
5.3 Other materials *152*
5.3.1 Aluminum piping *152*

5.3.2 Polyethylene pipe and fittings *152*
5.3.3 Cast iron components *152*
5.3.4 Copper and copper-based alloys *153*
5.3.5 Stainless steels *153*
5.3.6 Reinforced composite pipe and fittings *153*
5.3.7 Nonferrous flanges *153*
5.3.8 Other alloys and composites *153*
5.3.9 External coatings for pipe and piping *153*
5.4 Oilfield water service *154*
5.5 Cement-mortar linings *154*
5.6 Reuse of materials *154*
5.7 Records of materials *155*
5.8 Engineering assessments *155*

6 Transportation, handling, and installation *156*
6.1 General *156*
6.2 Activities on pipeline rights-of-way *156*
6.2.1 Clearing, grading, and ground disturbances *156*
6.2.2 Pipe and components handling *157*
6.2.3 Bends and elbows in steel piping *157*
6.2.4 Alignment and welding *157*
6.2.5 Protective coatings *158*
6.2.6 Ditching and lowering-in *158*
6.2.7 Backfilling *158*
6.2.8 Internal cleaning *159*
6.2.9 Clean-up and restoration *159*
6.2.10 Installation of crossings *159*
6.2.11 Horizontal directional drilling (HDD) *159*
6.3 Pipe and component surface requirements applicable to steel piping *160*
6.3.1 Pipe and component manufacturing defects detected during installation inspection *160*
6.3.2 Field repair of gouges and grooves in pipe *160*
6.3.3 Dents in pipe *161*
6.3.4 Ripples, wrinkles, buckles, and out-of-roundness *161*
6.3.5 Removal of cracks in circumferential butt welds and in fillet welds *161*
6.3.6 Field repair of gouges, grooves, and dents in components *162*
6.3.7 Material acceptability *162*
6.4 Electrical test leads on pipeline systems *162*
6.5 Inspection *162*
6.6 Precautions to avoid uncontrolled fires *164*

7 Joining *164*
7.1 General *164*
7.2 Arc and gas welding — General *165*
7.3 Arc and gas welding — Joint configurations *167*
7.3.1 Butt welds *167*
7.3.2 Fillet welds *168*
7.4 Arc and gas welding — Welding equipment *175*
7.5 Arc and gas welding — Materials *176*
7.5.1 Pipe and components *176*

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.5.2 Filler metals and fluxes *176*
7.5.3 Shielding gases *177*
7.6 Arc and gas welding — Qualification of welding procedure specifications *177*
7.6.1 General *177*
7.6.2 Company approval *177*
7.6.3 Records *177*
7.6.4 Welding procedure specifications *177*
7.6.5 Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications *180*
7.7 Arc and gas welding — Testing for qualification of welding procedure specifications and qualification of welders *186*
7.7.1 Welding of test joints *186*
7.7.2 Testing of butt welds — General *186*
7.7.3 Testing of butt welds — Tension test *192*
7.7.4 Testing of butt welds — Nick-break test *193*
7.7.5 Testing of butt welds — Root-bend and face-bend tests *194*
7.7.6 Testing of butt welds — Side-bend test *194*
7.7.7 Testing of fillet welds and branch connection welds — Root-break test *195*
7.7.8 Testing of fillet welds and branch connection welds — Macrosection test *198*
7.7.9 Additional testing of partial-penetration butt welds *198*
7.8 Arc and gas welding — Qualification of welders *199*
7.8.1 General *199*
7.8.2 Qualification range *200*
7.8.3 Special qualification — Butt welds *201*
7.8.4 Visual inspection *201*
7.8.5 Qualification of welders by visual and nondestructive inspection *202*
7.8.6 Retests *202*
7.8.7 Records of qualified welders *202*
7.9 Arc and gas welding — Production welding *202*
7.9.1 General *202*
7.9.2 Alignment and root gap *203*
7.9.3 Grounding *203*
7.9.4 Use of line-up clamps — Butt welds *203*
7.9.5 Relative movement *203*
7.9.6 Bevelled ends *203*
7.9.7 Weather conditions *204*
7.9.8 Clearance *204*
7.9.9 Cleaning between beads *204*
7.9.10 Position welding *204*
7.9.11 Roll welding *205*
7.9.12 Identification of welds *205*
7.9.13 Seal welding *205*
7.9.14 Fillet welds *205*
7.9.15 Preheating, interpass temperature control, controlled cooling, and stress relieving *205*
7.9.16 Stress relieving *206*
7.10 Arc and gas welding — Inspection and testing of production welds *207*
7.10.1 General *207*
7.10.2 Visual inspection *208*
7.10.3 Mandatory nondestructive inspection *208*
7.10.4 Nondestructive inspection *209*

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.10.5 Destructive testing *210*
7.10.6 Disposition of defective welds *210*
7.11 Arc and gas welding — Standards of acceptability for nondestructive inspection *211*
7.11.1 General *211*
7.11.2 Weld crown *211*
7.11.3 Incomplete penetration of the root bead *212*
7.11.4 Incomplete fusion *213*
7.11.5 Internal concavity *213*
7.11.6 Undercut *214*
7.11.7 Incomplete fusion due to cold lap *215*
7.11.8 Lack of cross-penetration *216*
7.11.9 Elongated slag inclusions *216*
7.11.10 Hollow bead *217*
7.11.11 Burn-through areas *217*
7.11.12 Isolated slag inclusions *218*
7.11.13 Spherical porosity *218*
7.11.14 Wormhole porosity *220*
7.11.15 Cracks and arc burns *220*
7.11.16 Unequal leg length — Fillet welds *220*
7.11.17 Accumulation of imperfections *220*
7.11.18 Weld conditions limiting radiographic interpretation *220*
7.12 Arc and gas welding — Repair of welds containing repairable defects *221*
7.12.1 Partial-penetration butt welds *221*
7.12.2 Authorization for repairs *221*
7.12.3 Repair procedures *221*
7.12.4 Removal of arc burns in weld areas *221*
7.12.5 Removal of cracks in circumferential butt welds and in fillet welds *222*
7.12.6 Inspection of repairs *222*
7.13 Arc and gas welding — Materials and equipment for radiographic inspection *222*
7.13.1 General *222*
7.13.2 Radiographic procedure *223*
7.13.3 Radiation sources *223*
7.13.4 Imaging media *223*
7.13.5 Screens *223*
7.13.6 Image quality indicators *223*
7.13.7 Comparator shims *224*
7.14 Arc and gas welding — Production of radiographs *225*
7.14.1 Radiation source location *225*
7.14.2 Geometric relationship *225*
7.14.3 Size of radiation field *226*
7.14.4 Location of image quality indicators *226*
7.14.5 Radiographic image identification markers *227*
7.14.6 Processing of radiographic images *227*
7.14.7 Radiation protection *228*
7.14.8 Radiographers *228*
7.14.9 Retention of radiographic records *228*
7.15 Arc and gas welding — Ultrasonic inspection of circumferential butt welds in piping *228*
7.15.1 Methods *228*
7.15.2 Terminology *229*

7.15.3 General *229*
7.15.4 Equipment and supplies — General *229*
7.15.5 Equipment and supplies — Additional requirements for mechanized inspection systems *229*
7.15.6 Qualification of ultrasonic inspectors *230*
7.15.7 Calibration *230*
7.15.8 Inspection procedure for production welds *231*
7.15.9 Inspection procedure for production welds — Additional requirements for mechanized inspection *231*
7.15.10 Standards of acceptability for ultrasonic inspection *232*
7.15.11 Ultrasonic inspection reports and records *233*
7.16 Mechanical interference fit joints *234*
7.16.1 General *234*
7.16.2 Qualification of joining procedure specifications *234*
7.16.3 Qualification of operators *235*
7.16.4 Inspection procedures *235*
7.17 Welding on in-service piping *236*
7.17.1 General *236*
7.17.2 Fillet welds and branch connection welds on liquid-filled piping or flowing-gas piping and direct deposition welds on flowing-gas piping *236*
7.17.3 Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications intended for welding on in-service piping *237*
7.17.4 Fillet welds and branch connection welds — Face bend test *241*
7.17.5 Fillet welds and branch connection welds — Macroexamination and hardness tests *242*
7.17.6 Qualification of welding procedure specifications and welders for direct deposition welds *244*
7.17.7 Nondestructive inspection of welds made on in-service piping *247*

8 Pressure testing *248*
8.1 General *248*
8.2 Safety during pressure tests *250*
8.3 Compressor and pump station piping *250*
8.4 Instrument and control piping *251*
8.5 Test-head assemblies *251*
8.6 Testing procedures and techniques *252*
8.7 Piping to be operated at pressure greater than 700 kPa *253*
8.7.1 Strength and leak tests *253*
8.7.2 Pressure-test mediums *254*
8.7.3 Minimum strength and leak test pressures *255*
8.7.4 Maximum strength and leak test pressures *255*
8.7.5 Duration of tests *256*
8.7.6 Maximum operating pressures *257*
8.7.7 Pressure-test measurements and records *257*
8.8 Piping intended to be operated at pressures of 700 kPa or less *259*
8.8.1 Strength and leak tests *259*
8.8.2 Pressure-test mediums *260*
8.8.3 Minimum leak test pressures *260*
8.8.4 Maximum leak test pressures *260*
8.8.5 Duration of tests *260*
8.8.6 Maximum operating pressures *261*

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.8.7 Pressure-test measurements and records *261*
8.9 Leaks and ruptures during pressure tests *261*
8.10 Disposal of pressure-test mediums *262*
8.11 Cleaning and drying *262*
8.12 Tie-ins of tested sections *262*

9 Corrosion control *263*
9.1 General *263*
9.2 Selection of external protective coatings for buried or submerged piping *264*
9.3 Application and inspection of external protective coatings for buried or submerged piping *269*
9.4 Storage, handling, transportation, and installation of coated pipe and components *270*
9.5 Cathodic protection — Design and installation *270*
9.6 Electrical isolation *271*
9.7 Electrical interference *271*
9.7.1 Direct current *271*
9.7.2 Alternating current and lightning *271*
9.8 Corrosion control test stations *272*
9.9 Operation and maintenance of impressed current and sacrificial cathodic protection systems *273*
9.10 Internal corrosion control *274*
9.10.1 Susceptibility to internal corrosion *274*
9.10.2 Mitigation *274*
9.10.3 Monitoring *274*
9.11 Corrosion control records *275*

10 Operating, maintenance, and upgrading *275*
10.1 Engineering assessments of existing pipelines *275*
10.2 Safety *276*
10.2.1 Training programs *276*
10.2.2 Employee information *276*
10.2.3 Supervisor responsibility *276*
10.2.4 Hazards *276*
10.2.5 Security *276*
10.2.6 Work sites *276*
10.2.7 Firefighting and special equipment *276*
10.2.8 In-service pipelines *277*
10.2.9 Additional precautions for pipeline systems transporting high-vapour-pressure hydrocarbons *277*
10.2.10 Fluids containing H_2S *278*
10.2.11 Carbon dioxide pipelines and gas pipelines containing predominantly CO_2 *278*
10.2.12 Steam distribution pipelines *278*
10.3 Integrity of pipeline systems *278*
10.3.1 Pipeline system integrity management program *278*
10.3.2 Integrity of existing pipeline systems *279*
10.3.3 Leak detection for liquid hydrocarbon pipeline systems *280*
10.3.4 Leak detection for gas pipeline systems and carbon dioxide pipeline systems *280*
10.3.5 Leak detection for oilfield water and multiphase pipeline systems *281*
10.3.6 Pipeline system incident investigations *281*

10.3.7 Change in service fluid *281*
10.3.8 Upgrading to a higher maximum operating pressure *281*
10.3.9 Pressure testing existing piping *282*
10.4 Records *283*
10.4.1 General *283*
10.4.2 Pipeline systems *283*
10.4.3 Pipeline emergency records *284*
10.4.4 Pipeline system incidents *284*
10.4.5 Pressure-test records *285*
10.5 Operating and maintenance procedures *285*
10.5.1 General *285*
10.5.2 Pipeline emergencies *286*
10.5.3 Pipeline identification *286*
10.5.4 Signs at stations and other facilities *288*
10.5.5 Ground disturbance *288*
10.5.6 Odorization *289*
10.5.7 Precautions to avoid unintentional ignition of gas-air mixtures or hydrocarbon liquids *289*
10.5.8 Environmental effects *289*
10.6 Right-of-way inspection and maintenance *290*
10.6.1 Pipeline patrolling *290*
10.6.2 Vegetation control *290*
10.6.3 Exposed facilities *291*
10.6.4 Crossings *291*
10.7 Change of class location *291*
10.8 Crossings of existing pipelines *292*
10.9 Operation and maintenance of facilities and equipment *293*
10.9.1 Compressor and pump stations *293*
10.9.2 Aboveground tanks and pressure vessels *293*
10.9.3 Underground storage *295*
10.9.4 Pipe-type and bottle-type gas holders and pipe-type storage vessels *295*
10.9.5 Pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving systems *296*
10.9.6 Valves *297*
10.9.7 Vaults *297*
10.9.8 Quick opening closures *297*
10.10 Evaluation of imperfections *297*
10.10.1 General *297*
10.10.2 Corrosion imperfections in pipe *298*
10.10.3 Gouges, grooves, and arc burns in pipe *300*
10.10.4 Dents in pipe *301*
10.10.5 Pipe body surface cracks *304*
10.10.6 Weld imperfections in field circumferential welds *304*
10.10.7 Weld imperfections in mill seam welds and mill circumferential welds *304*
10.10.8 Ripples, wrinkles, and buckles in steel pipe *305*
10.11 Permanent repair methods *308*
10.11.1 General *308*
10.11.2 Grinding repairs *309*
10.11.3 Piping replacements *311*
10.11.4 Repair sleeves for pipe *311*
10.11.5 Defect removal by hot tapping *314*

10.11.6 Direct deposition welding *314*
10.12 Temporary repair methods *315*
10.12.1 General *315*
10.12.2 Composite reinforcement repair sleeves *319*
10.13 Maintenance welding *319*
10.13.1 General *319*
10.13.2 In-service piping *319*
10.14 Pipeline hot taps *320*
10.14.1 General *320*
10.14.2 Pipe preparation *320*
10.14.3 Parameters *320*
10.15 Deactivation and reactivation of piping *321*
10.15.1 Deactivation of piping *321*
10.15.2 Reactivation of piping *321*
10.16 Abandonment of pipelines and pipe-type storage vessels *321*
10.16.1 General *321*
10.16.2 Buried pipelines *322*
10.16.3 Removal of related surface equipment *322*
10.16.4 Aboveground pipelines *322*
10.16.5 Records *322*
10.17 Abandonment of pipeline related facilities *322*
10.17.1 General *322*
10.17.2 Underground vaults and closed top pits *323*
10.17.3 Aboveground tanks and pressure vessels *323*
10.17.4 Underground storage tanks *323*

11 Offshore steel pipelines *323*
11.1 Applicability *323*
11.2 Design — General *324*
11.3 Design information *324*
11.3.1 Pipeline route *324*
11.3.2 Route survey and data acquisition *327*
11.3.3 Pipeline operating conditions *328*
11.4 Design and load conditions *328*
11.5 Functional loads *329*
11.6 Environmental loads *330*
11.6.1 General *330*
11.6.2 Wind forces *330*
11.6.3 Hydrodynamic loads — General *330*
11.6.4 Wave-induced and current-induced hydrodynamic loads *331*
11.6.5 Loads due to ice conditions and regional ice features *331*
11.6.6 Seismic activity *332*
11.6.7 Loads arising from marine growth *333*
11.6.8 Indirect environmental loads *333*
11.6.9 Accidental loads *333*
11.7 Design analysis *333*
11.8 Design for mechanical strength *334*
11.8.1 Design criteria for installation *334*
11.8.2 Design criteria for pressure testing *335*

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.8.3 Design criteria for operation *335*
11.8.4 Determination of stresses *336*
11.8.5 Pipe wall thickness specification *337*
11.8.6 Strain-based design *337*
11.8.7 Strain-based design criteria *339*
11.9 Design for thermal expansion *339*
11.10 Design for on-bottom stability *339*
11.11 Design for fatigue life *340*
11.12 Design for free spans, anchoring, and supports *340*
11.13 Design for shore approaches *340*
11.14 Design for components *341*
11.15 Design for crossings *341*
11.16 Pipeline components and fabrication details *341*
11.16.1 General *341*
11.16.2 Supports, braces, anchors, and buckle arresters *342*
11.16.3 Mechanical connectors *342*
11.16.4 Welded branch connections and reinforcements *342*
11.16.5 Reducers *342*
11.16.6 Weight-coating *342*
11.16.7 Thermal insulation *344*
11.17 Pipeline pressure control *344*
11.18 Leak detection *344*
11.19 Emergency shutdown valve *344*
11.20 Materials *344*
11.20.1 General *344*
11.20.2 Pipe *345*
11.20.3 Fittings, flanges, and valves *345*
11.21 Installation *346*
11.21.1 General *346*
11.21.2 Transportation, handling, and storage of materials *346*
11.21.3 Ancillary equipment and specialty items *346*
11.21.4 Installation procedures *346*
11.21.5 Installation inspection *347*
11.21.6 Repair of pipe and components prior to installation *348*
11.21.7 Repair of pipelines after installation *348*
11.21.8 As-built surveys *348*
11.21.9 Commissioning *348*
11.22 Welding *349*
11.22.1 General *349*
11.22.2 Qualification of welding procedures *349*
11.22.3 Testing of welded joints — Pipe butt welds *349*
11.22.4 Production welding *350*
11.22.5 Underwater welding *350*
11.23 Mechanical connectors *350*
11.24 Pressure testing *351*
11.24.1 General *351*
11.24.2 Testing of mechanical connector assemblies *351*
11.24.3 Test pressure *351*
11.24.4 Pressure-test medium *352*

11.24.5 Safety during pressure tests *352*
11.24.6 Pressure-test records *352*
11.25 Corrosion control *352*
11.25.1 General *352*
11.25.2 External corrosion control — Protective coatings *352*
11.25.3 External corrosion control — Cathodic protection systems *353*
11.25.4 Internal corrosion control *353*
11.25.5 Maintenance of cathodic protection systems *354*
11.25.6 Records *354*
11.26 Operating and maintenance *354*
11.26.1 General *354*
11.26.2 Manual of operating procedures *354*
11.26.3 Contingency manual *355*
11.26.4 Communication systems *355*
11.26.5 Inspection and patrolling of pipelines *355*
11.26.6 Leak detection *356*
11.26.7 Valves *356*
11.26.8 Control and safety devices *356*
11.26.9 Safety *357*
11.26.10 Repair of pipelines *357*
11.26.11 Records *357*
11.26.12 Pipeline deactivation and reactivation *357*

12 Gas distribution systems *358*
12.1 General *358*
12.2 Applicability *358*
12.3 Gas containing hydrogen sulphide *358*
12.4 Design *358*
12.4.1 Steel piping *358*
12.4.2 Polyethylene piping — Design pressure *361*
12.4.3 Polyethylene piping — Design limitations *363*
12.4.4 Polyethylene piping — Design pressure of components *364*
12.4.5 Copper pipe and tubing *364*
12.4.6 Plastic piping materials — Other than polyethylene *364*
12.4.7 Cover *365*
12.4.8 Pipelines within road and railway rights-of-way *365*
12.4.9 Limitations on operating pressure — General *366*
12.4.10 Limitations on operating pressure — Piping within customers' buildings *367*
12.4.11 Pressure control and overpressure protection *367*
12.4.12 Distribution system valves — General *369*
12.4.13 Distribution system valves — Valve location and spacing *369*
12.4.14 Distribution system valves — Service shutoffs *370*
12.4.15 Customers' meters and service regulators *371*
12.4.16 Distribution systems within buildings *372*
12.4.17 Liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) pipeline systems *373*
12.5 Materials *373*
12.5.1 General *373*
12.5.2 Steel pipe, tubing, and components *373*
12.5.3 Polyethylene pipe, tubing, and components *373*

12.5.4 Cast iron valves *374*
12.5.5 Polyamide (PA) piping systems *374*
12.6 Installation *375*
12.6.1 General *375*
12.6.2 Steel piping *375*
12.6.3 Ditch depth *375*
12.6.4 Polyethylene piping — General *375*
12.6.5 Polyethylene piping — Inspection and handling *376*
12.6.6 Polyethylene piping — Direct burial *376*
12.6.7 Polyethylene piping — Insertion in casing *377*
12.6.8 Polyethylene piping — Bends and branches *377*
12.6.9 Copper piping *378*
12.6.10 Installation of service lines — Drainage *378*
12.6.11 Installation of service lines into or under buildings *378*
12.6.12 Installation of service lines — Additional installation requirements for polyethylene service lines *378*
12.6.13 Trenchless installations *379*
12.7 Joining *380*
12.7.1 General *380*
12.7.2 Steel pipe joints and connections — Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications *380*
12.7.3 Steel pipe joints and connections — Qualification of welders *380*
12.7.4 Steel pipe joints and connections — Inspection of production welds *383*
12.7.5 Steel pipe joints and connections — Inspection of tie-in welds *384*
12.7.6 Steel pipe joints and connections — Steel pipe joints within buildings *384*
12.7.7 Polyethylene pipe joints and connections — General *384*
12.7.8 Polyethylene pipe joints and connections — Joining by heat fusion *384*
12.7.9 Polyethylene pipe joints and connections — Joining by electrofusion *385*
12.7.10 Polyethylene pipe joints and connections — Joining by mechanical methods *385*
12.7.11 Joints in copper pipe and tubing *386*
12.7.12 Service line connections *386*
12.8 Pressure testing *387*
12.8.1 Piping in distribution systems intended to be operated at pressures in excess of 700 kPa *387*
12.8.2 Steel piping in distribution systems intended to be operated at pressures 700 kPa or less *388*
12.8.3 Piping within customers' buildings *388*
12.8.4 Polyethylene piping *388*
12.8.5 Test-head assemblies *389*
12.9 Corrosion control *389*
12.9.1 Steel piping *389*
12.9.2 Copper piping *390*
12.9.3 Corrosion inspection *390*
12.10 Operating, maintenance, and upgrading *390*
12.10.1 General *390*
12.10.2 Marking of piping *390*
12.10.3 Distribution system maintenance *390*
12.10.4 Pressure recording for distribution systems *392*
12.10.5 Valve maintenance *392*
12.10.6 Pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving devices *392*
12.10.7 Repair procedures for steel distribution pipeline systems *392*

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.10.8 Maintenance welding *393*
12.10.9 Squeezing of polyethylene and polyamide pipe for pressure-control purposes *393*
12.10.10 Maintenance and repair requirements for polyethylene, polyamide, and polyvinyl chloride pipe and tubing *394*
12.10.11 Static electricity dissipation *395*
12.10.12 Pressure upgrading of distribution piping *395*
12.10.13 Pipeline emergencies *395*
12.10.14 Ground disturbances *395*
12.10.15 Class location *396*

13 Reinforced composite, thermoplastic-lined, and polyethylene pipelines *396*
13.1 Reinforced composite pipelines *396*
13.1.1 General *396*
13.1.2 Design *397*
13.1.3 Materials *401*
13.1.4 Installation *402*
13.1.5 Joining *403*
13.1.6 Joining personnel — training and qualification *404*
13.1.7 Joining inspection *405*
13.1.8 Pressure testing *406*
13.1.9 Operation *406*
13.1.10 Pipeline repairs *407*
13.1.11 Deactivation or abandonment *407*
13.2 Thermoplastic-lined pipelines *408*
13.2.1 General *408*
13.2.2 Design *408*
13.2.3 Materials *410*
13.2.4 Installation *411*
13.2.5 Joining liners *411*
13.2.6 Flange connections *412*
13.2.7 Pressure testing *412*
13.2.8 Operation and maintenance *413*
13.3 Polyethylene pipelines *414*
13.3.1 General *414*
13.3.2 Design *414*
13.3.3 Materials *418*
13.3.4 Installation *420*
13.3.5 Joining procedure and qualification *421*
13.3.6 Joining personnel — Competency requirements *423*
13.3.7 Joining inspection *424*
13.3.8 Pressure testing *427*
13.3.9 Operation and maintenance *429*

14 Steam distribution pipelines and high temperature pipelines *430*
14.1 General *430*
14.1.1 Scope *430*
14.1.2 Applicability *430*
14.1.3 Multiple service pipelines *430*
14.1.4 Alternate provisions *430*

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.1.5 Definitions *430*
14.2 Design *431*
14.2.1 General *431*
14.2.2 Straight pipe under internal pressure *431*
14.2.3 Pipe bends *432*
14.2.4 Limits of calculated stresses due to sustained loads and displacement strains *433*
14.2.5 Expansion, flexibility, and support *433*
14.2.6 Corrosion and erosion allowances *433*
14.2.7 Wall thickness tolerance *433*
14.3 Materials *434*
14.3.1 General *434*
14.3.2 Material testing *435*
14.3.3 Fittings (excluding bends and transition pieces) *435*
14.3.4 Flanges *437*
14.3.5 Non-standard flanges and clamp connectors *437*
14.3.6 Valves *438*
14.3.7 Transition pieces *438*
14.3.8 Pipe bends — General *439*
14.3.9 Pipe bends — Qualification and production *439*
14.3.10 Piping supports *440*
14.4 Joining *440*
14.5 Pressure testing *441*
14.6 Corrosion control *442*
14.7 Steam distribution pipelines — Commissioning and operating *442*

15 Aluminum piping *443*
15.1 General *443*
15.2 Applicability *443*
15.3 Design *444*
15.3.1 Pressure design for aluminum pipe *444*
15.3.2 Pressure design for components *446*
15.3.3 Piping joints *446*
15.3.4 Aluminum properties *446*
15.3.5 Uncased railway crossings *447*
15.3.6 Effects on pipelines in proximity to low-voltage alternating current lines and associated facilities *448*
15.4 Materials *448*
15.4.1 Design temperatures *448*
15.4.2 Notch toughness *448*
15.4.3 Aluminum pipe and components *448*
15.5 Installation of aluminum piping *449*
15.5.1 Bends and elbows *449*
15.5.2 Attachment of test leads *449*
15.5.3 Storage and handling of aluminum pipe and fittings during installation *449*
15.5.4 Ambient temperature *449*
15.5.5 Burial of coiled aluminum pipe by ploughing *449*
15.5.6 Plain dents *450*
15.6 Joining *451*
15.6.1 General *451*

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.6.2 Arc welding *451*
15.6.3 High energy joining — General *451*
15.6.4 High energy joining — Qualification of joining procedure specifications *451*
15.6.5 High energy joining — Qualification of personnel *451*
15.6.6 High energy joining — Inspection and testing of high energy joints for qualification of joining procedure specifications and personnel *452*
15.6.7 High energy joining — Production welding *452*
15.6.8 High energy joining — Inspection and testing of high energy joints *453*
15.6.9 Mechanical interference fit joints *453*
15.7 Pressure testing *453*
15.8 Corrosion control *454*
15.8.1 Test lead attachment *454*
15.8.2 Installation of cathodic protection systems *454*
15.8.3 Corrosive medium *454*
15.9 Operating, maintenance, and upgrading *455*
15.9.1 Evaluation of imperfections and repair of piping containing defects *455*
15.9.2 Maintenance welding *456*
15.9.3 Pipeline hot taps *456*
15.10 Sour service *456*
15.10.1 General *456*
15.10.2 Material properties *456*
15.10.3 Exposure to iron sulphides *457*
15.10.4 Location factor *457*
15.10.5 Sectionalizing valves *457*
15.10.6 Nondestructive inspection *457*
15.10.7 Integrity management program *457*
15.10.8 Construction *457*
15.10.9 Operating and maintenance *457*
15.10.10 Records *457*

16 Sour service pipelines *458*
16.1 General *458*
16.2 Sour service — Specific definition *458*
16.3 Design *459*
16.3.1 Design parameters *459*
16.3.2 Design information *460*
16.3.3 Stress design *460*
16.3.4 Anchors and restraints *460*
16.3.5 Threaded joints *460*
16.3.6 Pipe-type and bottle-type holders and pipe-type storage vessels *460*
16.4 Materials *460*
16.4.1 Environmental cracking *460*
16.4.2 Material provisions *460*
16.4.3 Marking *461*
16.4.4 Nonferrous materials *461*
16.5 Construction *461*
16.5.1 Deviations *461*
16.5.2 Records *461*
16.5.3 Inspection plan *462*

 © 2015 CSA Group

16.6 Joining *462*
16.6.1 Carbon equivalent *462*
16.6.2 Change in carbon equivalent *462*
16.6.3 Butt welds of unequal thickness *462*
16.6.4 Weld hardness requirements *462*
16.6.5 Deposited weld metal composition limitations *463*
16.6.6 Alignment *463*
16.6.7 Preheat *463*
16.6.8 Backwelding *463*
16.7 Corrosion and corrosion control *463*
16.7.1 Supplemental mitigation requirements *463*
16.7.2 Mitigation and monitoring program *464*
16.7.3 Design and sizing of pigs *464*
16.8 Operating and maintenance *464*
16.8.1 Procedures *464*
16.8.2 Records *464*
16.8.3 Repair methods *464*
16.8.4 Hydrogen charging *464*
16.8.5 Direct deposition welding *464*
16.8.6 Change management process *465*
16.8.7 Changes in service conditions *465*
16.8.8 Integrity management program *465*
16.9 Gas and multiphase pipeline systems *465*
16.9.1 Additional requirements *465*
16.9.2 Design *465*
16.9.3 Joining *466*
16.9.4 Operating and maintenance *466*
16.10 Additional requirements for gas pipeline systems only *466*
16.10.1 General *466*
16.10.2 Mechanical interference fit joints *467*
16.10.3 Start-up corrosion mitigation *467*

17 Composite-reinforced steel pipelines *467*
17.1 General *467*
17.2 Applicability *468*
17.3 Specific definitions *468*
17.4 Design *468*
17.4.1 Stress distribution *468*
17.4.2 Maximum operating pressure *468*
17.4.3 Design pressure *469*
17.4.4 External pressures and loadings *469*
17.4.5 Stress limits *470*
17.4.6 Design temperature *470*
17.4.7 Engineering assessment *470*
17.5 Materials and manufacture *470*
17.5.1 Steel pipe *470*
17.5.2 Fibre-reinforced composite *470*
17.5.3 Composite-reinforced steel pipe manufacture *471*
17.6 Installation *473*

 © 2015 CSA Group

17.6.1 Field bending *473*
17.6.2 Damage *473*
17.6.3 Crossings *473*
17.7 Joining *474*
17.7.1 General *474*
17.7.2 Joint reinforcement *474*
17.7.3 Transitions to steel pipe *474*
17.7.4 Qualification of joining procedure specifications *474*
17.8 Pressure testing *474*
17.9 Corrosion control *475*
17.10 Operation and maintenance *475*

Annex A (informative) — Safety and loss management system *478*
Annex B (informative) — Guidelines for risk assessment of pipeline systems *488*
Annex C (informative) — Limit states design *497*
Annex D (informative) — Guidelines for in-line inspection of pipelines *523*
Annex E (informative) — Recommended practice for liquid hydrocarbon pipeline leak detection *525*
Annexes F and G have been deleted *539*
Annex H (normative) — Pipeline failure records *540*
Annex I (informative) — Oilfield steam distribution pipelines — Alternate provisions *560*
Annex J (informative) — Recommended practice for determining the acceptability of imperfections in fusion welds using engineering critical assessment *565*
Annex K (informative) — Standards of acceptability for circumferential pipe butt welds based upon fracture mechanics principles *567*
Annex L (informative) — Alternative or supplementary test methods for coating property and characteristics evaluation *585*
Annex M (informative) — Guidance for system control, monitoring, and protection of hydrocarbon pipeline systems *587*
Annex N (informative) — Guidelines for pipeline system integrity management programs *593*
Annex O (informative) — Reliability-based design and assessment (RBDA) of onshore non-sour service natural gas transmission pipelines *605*
Annex P (informative) — Development and qualification and welding procedure specifications *665*
Commentary *670*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Technical Committee on Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry Pipeline Systems and Materials

J. Paviglianiti	National Energy Board, Calgary, Alberta *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	*Chair*
D.J. Tchir	ATCO Gas, Edmonton, Alberta *Category: User Distribution*	*Vice-Chair*
B. Wilson	Acuren Group Inc., Calgary, Alberta *Category: General Interest*	*Vice-Chair*
J. Abes	DNV GL, Calgary, Alberta *Category: General Interest*	
A.J. Afaganis	EVRAZ Inc. NA, Calgary, Alberta	*Associate*
O. Alonso	Technical Standards and Safety Authority (TSSA), Toronto, Ontario *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	
F.B. Austin	BC Oil and Gas Commission, Kelowna, British Columbia *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	
A. Bhatia	Alliance Pipeline Ltd., Calgary, Alberta *Category: User Transmission*	
M. Binet	Gaz Métro, Montréal, Québec *Category: User Distribution*	
R. Brousseau	Régie du Bâtiment du Québec, Montréal, Québec *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	

© 2015 CSA Group

R.R. Bryant	Aecon Utility Engineering, London, Ontario	*Associate*
R. Caesar	BC Ministry of Energy, Victoria, British Columbia *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	
D. Carnes	Canadian Natural Resources Ltd., Calgary, Alberta *Category: Producer Interest*	
P. Colwell	Union Gas Ltd., Chatham, Ontario *Category: User Distribution*	
R.I. Coote	Coote Engineering Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	*Associate*
K. Crichton	Bayou Perma Pipe Canada, Camrose, Alberta *Category: Supplier/Fabricator/Contractor*	
J.W. Dusseault	Cenovus Energy Inc., Calgary, Alberta *Category: Producer Interest*	
M.C. Enwright	Husky Energy Inc, Calgary, Alberta *Category: Producer Interest*	
D. Feser	Kinder Morgan Canada Inc., Calgary, Alberta *Category: User Transmission*	
G. Forgeron	Imperial Oil Resources, Calgary, Alberta *Category: Producer Interest*	
J.A. Fournell	QAi Quality Assurance Inc, Edmonton, Alberta *Category: General Interest*	
L.H. Gales	Transportation Safety Board of Canada, Gatineau, Québec	*Associate*

M.H. Glass	Trans-Northern Pipelines Inc., Richmond Hill, Ontario *Category: User Transmission*	
K.G. Goerz	Shell Canada Energy, Calgary, Alberta *Category: Producer Interest*	
G.A. Harms	Three Streams Engineering Division, AMEC Foster Wheeler Canada Ltd., Calgary, Alberta *Category: General Interest*	
J. Harvey	EnCana Services Company Ltd., Calgary, Alberta *Category: Producer Interest*	
S.D. Ironside	Enbridge Pipelines Inc, Edmonton, Alberta *Category: User Transmission*	
G.R. Johnson	FortisBC Energy Inc., Surrey, British Columbia *Category: User Distribution*	
T.N. Kee	Alberta Agriculture and Rural Development, Edmonton, Alberta *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	
S. Kenny	Carleton University, Ottawa, Ontario	*Associate*
H. Kraft	Calgary, Alberta	*Associate*
K.T. Lau	ABSA, Edmonton, Alberta *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	
T. Lawrence	TMK IPSCO, Houston, Texas, USA *Category: Supplier/Fabricator/Contractor*	
T. Linder	Canadian Energy Pipeline Association (CEPA), Calgary, Alberta	*Associate*

© 2015 CSA Group

R. W. MacDonald	Shell Canada Energy, Calgary, Alberta *Category: Producer Interest*	
J.D. Mackenzie	Kiefner and Associates, Inc (Applus RD), Bellingham, Washington, USA *Category: General Interest*	
D.R. Mann	SaskEnergy, Regina, Saskatchewan *Category: User Transmission*	
T.W. McQuinn	New Brunswick Energy and Utilities Board, Saint John, New Brunswick *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	
G. McShane	Tenaris, Calgary, Alberta *Category: Supplier/Fabricator/Contractor*	
G. Mills	Spectra Energy Gas Transmission, Calgary, Alberta *Category: User Transmission*	
D.B. Milmine	DM Professional Services Ltd., Calgary, Alberta *Category: General Interest*	
C. Moser	Ledcor Pipeline Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta *Category: Supplier/Fabricator/Contractor*	
B.W. Nesbitt	National Energy Board, Calgary, Ontario	*Associate*
R. Paccagnan	ATCO Pipelines, Edmonton, Alberta *Category: User Transmission*	
G.F. Palermo	Palermo Plastics Pipe (P3) Consulting, Friendsville, Tennessee, USA *Category: Supplier/Fabricator/Contractor*	
R.B. Partington	Federation of Alberta Gas Co-ops Ltd., Sherwood Park, Alberta *Category: User Distribution*	

© 2015 CSA Group

D.S. Perkins	ConocoPhillips Canada, Calgary, Alberta	*Associate*
T.J. Pesta	Pesta Consulting Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	*Associate*
D. Petursson	Manitoba Hydro, Winnipeg, Manitoba *Category: User Distribution*	
M. Poehlmann	ABSA, Edmonton, Alberta *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	
A.B. Rothwell	Brian Rothwell Consulting Inc, Calgary, Alberta	*Associate*
J. Sandison	CMC Consultants Inc, Winnipeg, Manitoba *Category: General Interest*	
P. Singh	Bredero Shaw LLC, Houston, Texas, USA *Category: Supplier/Fabricator/Contractor*	
C. Skocdopole	Aluminum Pipe Systems, Eckville, Alberta *Category: Supplier/Fabricator/Contractor*	
J. Sutherland	PII Pipeline Solutions (GE Oil & Gas), Calgary, Alberta	*Associate*
T.N. Tarfa	Velan Incorporated, Montréal, Québec *Category: Supplier/Fabricator/Contractor*	
N. Thalassinos	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Toronto, Ontario *Category: User Distribution*	
H. Wallace	Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta *Category: Government and/or Regulatory Authority*	

© 2015 CSA Group

L. Wojtanowski Sun-Canadian Pipe Line Company Ltd.,
Waterdown, Ontario
Category: User Transmission

J. Zhou TransCanada PipeLines Ltd.,
Calgary, Alberta
Category: User Transmission

S. Capper CSA Group, *Project Manager*
Toronto, Ontario

P. Fernandez Marchi CSA Group, *Project Manager*
Toronto, Ontario

 © 2015 CSA Group

Executive Committee on Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry Pipeline Systems and Materials

J. Paviglianiti	National Energy Board, Calgary, Alberta	*Chair*
D.J.P. Tchir	ATCO Gas, Edmonton, Alberta	*Vice-Chair*
B. Wilson	Acuren Group Inc., Calgary, Alberta	*Vice-Chair*
J. Abes	DNV GL, Calgary, Alberta	
A.J. Afaganis	EVRAZ Inc. NA, Calgary, Alberta	
D. Carnes	Canadian Natural Resources Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
J.A. Fournell	QAi Quality Assurance Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
D.R. Mann	SaskEnergy, Regina, Saskatchewan	
G.F. Palermo	Palermo Plastics Pipe (P3) Consulting, Friendsville, Tennessee, USA	
T.J. Pesta	Pesta Consulting Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
A.B. Rothwell	Brian Rothwell Consulting Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
C. Skocdopole	Aluminum Pipe Systems, Eckville, Alberta	

© 2015 CSA Group

H. Wallace	Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta	
J. Zhou	TransCanada PipeLines Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
S. Capper	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*
P. Fernandez Marchi	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

Subcommittee on Aluminum Pipeline Systems

C. Skocdopole	Aluminum Pipe Systems, Eckville, Alberta	*Chair*
B. Ryder	Campbell Ryder Engineering Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	*Vice-Chair*
R. Andriuk	Altime Engineering Ltd., St. Albert, Alberta	
G. Firth	Firth Corrosion Engineering Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
N. Lesage	AltaGas Utilities Inc., Leduc, Alberta	
D. Lesik	ATCO Pipelines, Edmonton, Alberta	
R.B. Partington	Federation of Alberta Gas Co-ops Ltd., Sherwood Park, Alberta	
T.D. Starodub	Manitoba Hydro, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
M. Rahimi	CSA Group, Calgary, Alberta	*Project Manager*

© 2015 CSA Group

Subcommittee on Coatings

J.A. Fournell	QAi Quality Assurance Inc, Edmonton, Alberta	*Chair*
A. Van Der Veen	TransCanada PipeLines Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	*Vice-Chair*
M. Alliston	Specialty Polymer Coatings, Inc., Langley, British Columbia	
J.I. Andersson	Husky Energy Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
J. Baron	J. Baron Project Services Inc., High River, Alberta	
R. Caesar	BC Ministry of Energy, Victoria, British Columbia	
C. Caba	AkzoNobel Coatings, Inc., Nashville, Tennessee, USA	
K. Crichton	Bayou Perma Pipe Canada, Camrose, Alberta	
B.T. Elliott	Shaw Pipe Protection Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	
A. Geiger	Canusa-CPS, Sherwood Park, Alberta	
A. Glowach	Glowach Pipe Coating Consultant, Beaumont, Alberta	
J.B. Hakkinen	Axalta Powder Coatings, Hummelstown, Pennsylvania, USA	
L. Lai	ROSEN Canada Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
P. Lucas	Axson Coatings, Aubevoye, France	

© 2015 CSA Group

D.J.B. Morrison	DM Pipeline Coating Consulting Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
J. Morse	Enbridge Pipelines Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
N. Nguyen	3M Company, Austin, Texas, USA	
D.P. Ochitwa	National Energy Board, Calgary, Alberta	
S. Papavinasam	CorrMagnet Consulting Inc., Ottawa, Ontario	
N. Park	Shell Canada Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
K. Recsky	FortisBC Energy Inc., Kelowna, British Columbia	
J. Rogozinski	Valspar Corporation, North Kansas City, Missouri, USA	
J. Shore	Union Gas Ltd., Chatham, Ontario	
G. Van Boven	Spectra Energy Transmission, Vancouver, British Columbia	
D. Wong	ShawCor Ltd., Toronto, Ontario	
R. Worthingham	Worthingham Professional Services Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
S. Zahabi	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Toronto, Ontario	
P. Fernandez Marchi	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

© 2015 CSA Group

Subcommittee on Construction

H. Wallace	Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta	*Chair*
R. Mayer	Spectra Energy Transmission, Halifax, Nova Scotia	*Vice-Chair*
W. Celis	Saskatchewan Ministry of the Economy, Regina, Saskatchewan	
R. Caesar	BC Ministry of Energy, Victoria, British Columbia	
R. Cooke	National Energy Board, Calgary, Alberta	
D. Danielson	SaskEnergy/TransGas, Regina, Saskatchewan	
R. Fafara	TransCanada PipeLines Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
D.R. Fedoration	DONNF Enterprises Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
T. Fiddler	Enbridge Pipelines Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
G.A. Harms	Three Streams Engineering Division, AMEC Foster Wheeler Canada Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
R. Hogg	Enbridge Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
R.M. Huntley	RMH Welding Consulting Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
M. Hylton	Stantec Consulting Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	

© 2015 CSA Group

G.R. Johnson	FortisBC Energy Inc., Surrey, British Columbia	
M.A. Kereliuk	Qualimet Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
R. Ostrom	Pipeline Welding Solutions Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
R. Peters	SGS Ludwig Associates Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	
S. Piché	Gaz Métro, Montréal, Québec	
S. Stephenson	Tundra Energy Marketing Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
K. Thorn	CWB Group, Milton, Ontario	
R. Werenich	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Toronto, Ontario	
B. Wilson	Acuren Group Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
T. Yu	Ledcor Pipeline Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	
S. Capper	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

Subcommittee on Design

J. Zhou	TransCanada PipeLines Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	*Chair*
T.J. Zimmerman	Enbridge Pipelines Inc, Edmonton, Alberta	*Vice-Chair*
K. Berntson	BC Oil and Gas Commission, Kelowna, British Columbia	
A. Bhatia	Alliance Pipeline Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
T.D. Brauen	Imperial Oil, Calgary, Alberta	
R. Caesar	BC Ministry of Energy, Victoria, British Columbia	
T. Caveny	WorleyParsons Canada Services Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	
P. Colwell	Union Gas Ltd., Chatham, Ontario	
D. Horsley	Horsley Consulting Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
G.A. Kanzaki	FortisBC Energy Inc (FEI), Surrey, British Columbia	
S. Kenny	Carleton University, Ottawa, Ontario	
P. Kormann	Kormann & Associates Inc, Calgary, Alberta	
S.C. Lee	Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta	
S. Mendell	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Toronto, Ontario	

© 2015 CSA Group

B.W. Nesbitt	National Energy Board, Calgary, Alberta	
M.A. Nessim	C-FER Technologies, Edmonton, Alberta	
M.L. Rew	Canadian Natural Resources Ltd. (CNRL), Calgary, Alberta	
G. Shulhan	Stantec Consulting Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
J. Steeves	WorleyParsons Canada Services Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
R. Steiner	Paramount Resources Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
T. Tomkiw	Husky Oil Operations Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
J.S. van de Panne	KEYERA Energy, Calgary, Alberta	
R.H. Wartlik	Spectra Energy Transmission, Vancouver, British Columbia	
P. Fernandez Marchi	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

© 2015 CSA Group

Subcommittee on Distribution

G. Palermo	Palermo Plastics Pipe (P3) Consulting, Friendsville, Tennessee, USA	*Chair*
C. Dubeau	Union Gas Ltd., Chatham, Ontario	*Vice-Chair*
W.P. Tassie	FortisBC Energy Inc., Vernon, British Columbia	*Vice-Chair*
O. Alonso	Technical Standards and Safety Authority (TSSA), Toronto, Ontario	
M. Amirault	AltaGas Utilities Inc., Leduc, Alberta	
M. Binet	Gaz Métro, Montréal, Québec	
R. Brandvold	SaskEnergy Inc., Regina, Saskatchewan	
R. Brousseau	Régie du Bâtiment du Québec, Montréal, Québec	
G. Butson	Robert B. Somerville Co. Ltd., King City, Ontario	
R.J. Fox	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Richmond Hill, Ontario	
J. Gonzalo	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Toronto, Ontario	
R. Knapp	Plastics Pipe Institute, Excelsior, Minnesota, USA	
K.E. Mills	Energy Consultants International Inc., Winnipeg, Manitoba	
K. Oliphant	Jana, Aurora, Ontario	

© 2015 CSA Group

R.B. Partington	Federation of Alberta Gas Co-ops Ltd., Sherwood Park, Alberta	
D. Prydun	Manitoba Hydro, Winnipeg, Manitoba	
C. Rollings	Heritage Gas Ltd., Dartmouth, Nova Scotia	
C. Windhorst	ATCO Gas, Edmonton, Alberta	
S. Capper	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

Editorial Subcommittee

A.B. Rothwell	Brian Rothwell Consulting Inc., Calgary, Alberta	*Chair*
D. Lesik	ATCO Pipelines, Edmonton, Alberta	
J. Mackenzie	Kiefner and Associates, Inc., Bellingham, Washington, USA	
R. Marsden	Cenovus Energy Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
R. Mayer	Spectra Energy Transmission, Halifax, Nova Scotia	
K. Mills	Energy Consultants International Inc., Winnipeg, Manitoba	
C. Rollings	Heritage Gas Ltd., Dartmouth, Nova Scotia	
K. Thorn	CWB Group, Milton, Ontario	
I.A. Ward	Shell Global Solutions Canada, Calgary, Alberta	
T.J. Zimmerman	Enbridge Pipelines Inc, Edmonton, Alberta	
S. Capper	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

© 2015 CSA Group

Subcommittee on Materials

A.J. Afaganis	EVRAZ Inc. NA, Calgary, Alberta	*Chair*
M. Whitehouse	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Mooretown, Ontario	*Vice-Chair*
H.G. Bentley	WFF Fittings & Flanges (Canada) Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
D.M. Duan	TransCanada PipeLines Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
J.A. Fournell	QAi Quality Assurance Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
C. Guan	TransCanada PipeLines Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
D. Horsley	Horsley Consulting Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
J. Klementis	Alliance Pipeline Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
R.B. Kruger	Tenaris Global Services (Canada) Inc, Calgary, Alberta	
T.H. Lawrence	TMK IPSCO, Houston, Texas, USA	
M.Q. Li	Fortune Group, Edmonton, Alberta	
R. Mackenzie	Enbridge Pipelines Inc, Edmonton, Alberta	
G. McShane	Tenaris, Calgary, Alberta	
G. Melnychuk	Stream-Flo Industries Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta	

© 2015 CSA Group

D.B. Milmine	DM Professional Services Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
K. Ocean	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Toronto, Ontario	
D.P. Ochitwa	National Energy Board, Calgary, Alberta	
H. Ramay	WorleyParsons, Calgary, Alberta	
M. Saric	Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta	
R. Schmidt	Canadoil, Russellville, Arkansas, USA	
V. Sizov	Cenovus Energy Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
S. Tracy	EVRAZ Inc. NA, Calgary, Alberta	
W.R. Tyson	Natural Resources Canada, Ottawa, Ontario	
G. Van Boven	Spectra Energy Transmission, Vancouver, British Columbia	
I. Ward	Shell Global Solutions Canada, Calgary, Alberta	
M. Whitehouse	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Mooretown, Ontario	
B. Wray	Galperti Canada, Edmonton, Alberta	
S. Xu	CanmetMATERIALS Natural Resources Canada, Hamilton, Ontario	
S. Capper	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

© 2015 CSA Group

Subcommittee on Operations and Systems Integrity

D.R. Mann	SaskEnergy, Regina, Saskatchewan	*Chair*
M. Santander	Keyera Corporation, Calgary, Alberta	*Vice-Chair*
C. Billinton	FortisBC Energy Inc, Kelowna, British Columbia	
R. Caesar	BC Ministry of Energy, Victoria, British Columbia	
D. Carnes	Canadian Natural Resources Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
W. Celis	Saskatchewan Ministry of Energy & Resources, Regina, Saskatchewan	
T. Cook	The Cook Group Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
E. Dowdle	Acuren Group Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
S. Gosse	Encana Services Company Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
G.A. Harms	Three Streams Engineering Division, AMEC Foster Wheeler Canada Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
A. Hobbins	ConocoPhillips Canada Ltd., Grande Prairie, Alberta	
L. Hunt	Spectra Energy Transmission, Vancouver, British Columbia	
S. Jehlicka	Enbridge Gas Distribution, Toronto, Ontario	

© 2015 CSA Group

R.A. Marsden	Cenovus Energy Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
R.G. Mora	Imperial Oil Ltd. — Pipeline and Distribution, Calgary, Ontario	
A. Murasan	National Energy Board, Calgary, Alberta	
J.D. Norris	JD Pipeline Consulting, Calgary, Alberta	
A. Rahman	T.D. Williamson Canada ULC, Georgetown, Ontario	
M.T. Reed	Alliance Pipeline Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
B. Sadoway	TransCanada PipeLines Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
D. Skibinsky	Alliance Pipeline Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
R. Sporns	Enbridge Pipelines Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
C. Tremblay	Gaz Métro, Montréal, Québec	
B. Waheed	BC Oil and Gas Commission, Kelowna, British Columbia	
S. Walker	Union Gas Ltd., Chatham, Ontario	
H. Wallace	Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta	
S. Capper	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

© 2015 CSA Group

Subcommittee on Production

D. Carnes	Canadian Natural Resources Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	*Chair*
D. Storrow	Stantec Consulting Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	*Vice-Chair*
J.I. Andersson	Husky Energy Inc, Calgary, Alberta	
O. Baker	KEYERA Energy, Calgary, Alberta	
J. Baron	J. Baron Project Services Inc., High River, Alberta	
R. Caesar	BC Ministry of Energy, Victoria, British Columbia	
M.C. Enwright	Husky Energy Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
D. Foley	Group 10 Engineering Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
J. Gladysz	BC Oil and Gas Commission, Fort St. John, British Columbia	
K.G. Goerz	Shell Canada Energy, Calgary, Alberta	
D. Grzyb	Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta	
A.L. Johnson	Nexen Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
R. W. MacDonald	Shell Canada Energy, Calgary, Alberta	
B. McFadyen	Enbridge Pipelines Inc., Calgary, Alberta	

© 2015 CSA Group

P.K. Mishra	Three Streams Engineering Division, AMEC Foster Wheeler Canada Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
S. Prestie	Imperial Oil Canada, Calgary, Alberta	
D.A. Schmidt	Apache Canada, Calgary, Alberta	
D. Srnic	ABSA, Edmonton, Alberta	
R. Szopa	Enerplus Corp., Calgary, Alberta	
I.A. Ward	Shell Global Solutions Canada, Calgary, Alberta	
B. Watts	Encana Corporation, Calgary, Alberta	
J. Whittaker	Cenovus Energy Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
B. Wilson	Acuren Group Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
S. Capper	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

© 2015 CSA Group

Subcommittee on Management Systems

J. Abes	DNV GL, Calgary, Alberta	*Chair*
D. Mann	SaskEnergy, Regina, Saskatchewan	*Vice-Chair*
R. Bacic	Union Gas Ltd., Chatham, Ontario	
M. Béland	Gaz Métro, Montréal, Québec	
C. Bradley	National Energy Board, Calgary, Alberta	
T. DeLong	Spectra Energy Liquids, Calgary, Alberta	
J. Dusseault	Cenovus Energy Inc., Calgary, Alberta	
J. Harvey	Encana Services Corporation Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
L. Hunt	Spectra Energy Transmission, Vancouver, British Columbia	
M. Maxwell	Enbridge Pipelines Inc., Edmonton, Alberta	
F. Pataki	FortisBC Energy Inc. (FEI), Surrey, British Columbia	
M. Reed	Alliance Pipeline Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	
H. Wallace	Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta	
J. Zhou	TransCanada PipeLines Ltd., Calgary, Alberta	

© 2015 CSA Group

S. Capper	CSA Group, Toronto, Ontario	*Project Manager*

© 2015 CSA Group

Preface

This is the seventh edition of CSA Z662, *Oil and gas pipeline systems*. It supersedes the previous editions published in 2011, 2007, 2003, 1999, 1996, and 1994.

The following are the most significant changes, relative to the previous edition:

a) updating and revising the requirements for safety and loss management systems, integrity management programs, and engineering assessments process. This resulted in significant changes to Clause 3 to clarify the requirements and highlight that requirements for safety and loss management system and for the pipeline system integrity management program must address the full lifecycle of a pipeline, including design, material selection, construction, operation, and maintenance;
b) clarification of the requirements for mitigation programs for internal corrosion and monitoring of the effectiveness of the programs when pipelines are susceptible to internal corrosion (Clause 9);
c) new requirements for training and certification of field applied coating applicators through a Clause 9 reference to CSA Z245.30;
d) clarification of requirements for steam distribution pipelines and high temperature pipelines (Clause 14);
e) broader inclusion of, and additional requirements for, CO_2 pipelines;
f) further requirements for abandonment of pipelines (Clause 10);
g) new requirements for addressing ripples and wrinkles, buckles, and out of roundness on pipe (Clause 10);
h) clarification of the requirements for reinforced composite, thermoplastic-lined, and polyethylene pipelines;
i) clarification of the sour service requirements for gas-free pipeline systems for crude oil, crude oil blends, and low vapour pressure condensate (Clause 16);
j) updating of the requirements for leak detection on liquid hydrocarbon pipelines previously published in Update 3 (August 2013) to CSA Z662-11. The recommended practice considers computational methods and direct leak detection methods (Annex E);
k) expansion of Annex M to address system control, monitoring, and protection for all hydrocarbon pipelines; and
l) new Annex P to provide guidance on the development and qualification of welding procedure specifications.

The requirements of this Standard are considered to be adequate under conditions normally encountered in the oil and natural gas industry. Specific requirements for abnormal or unusual conditions are not prescribed, nor are all details related to engineering and construction prescribed. It is intended that all work performed within the scope of this Standard meet the standards of safety and integrity expressed or implied herein, and that the requirements of this Standard be applied with due regard to the protection of the environment, which includes land, water, plant life, and animal life. Detailed requirements concerning the protection of the environment are not prescribed.

It is expected that changes will be made from time to time, based on new experience and technology. Where necessary, amendments and supplements will be prepared by the Technical Committee and published in accordance with CSA Group practices.

This Standard was prepared by the Technical Committee on Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry Pipeline Systems and Materials, under the jurisdiction of the Strategic Steering Committee on Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry Systems, and has been formally approved by the Technical Committee.

 © 2015 CSA Group

This edition of CSA Z662 is dedicated to the memories of Richard Caesar and Mike Hallihan.

Notes:

1) *Use of the singular does not exclude the plural (and vice versa) when the sense allows.*

2) *Although the intended primary application of this Standard is stated in its Scope, it is important to note that it remains the responsibility of the users of the Standard to judge its suitability for their particular purpose.*

3) *This Standard was developed by consensus, which is defined by* CSA Policy governing standardization — Code of good practice for standardization *as "substantial agreement. Consensus implies much more than a simple majority, but not necessarily unanimity". It is consistent with this definition that a member may be included in the Technical Committee list and yet not be in full agreement with all clauses of this Standard.*

4) *To submit a request for interpretation of this Standard, please send the following information to* ***inquiries@csagroup.org*** *and include "Request for interpretation" in the subject line:*

a) *define the problem, making reference to the specific clause, and, where appropriate, include an illustrative sketch;*

b) *provide an explanation of circumstances surrounding the actual field condition; and*

c) *where possible, phrase the request in such a way that a specific "yes" or "no" answer will address the issue.*

Committee interpretations are processed in accordance with the CSA Directives and guidelines governing standardization *and are available on the* Current Standards Activities *page at* ***standardsactivities.csa.ca****.*

5) *This Standard is subject to review five years from the date of publication. Suggestions for its improvement will be referred to the appropriate committee. To submit a proposal for change, please send the following information to* ***inquiries@csagroup.org*** *and include "Proposal for change" in the subject line:*

a) *Standard designation (number);*

b) *relevant clause, table, and/or figure number;*

c) *wording of the proposed change; and*

d) *rationale for the change.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Z662-15
Oil and gas pipeline systems

1 Scope

Δ 1.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

This Standard covers the design, construction, operation, maintenance, deactivation, and abandonment of oil and gas industry pipeline systems that convey

a) liquid hydrocarbons, including crude oil, multiphase fluids, condensate, liquid petroleum products, natural gas liquids, and liquefied petroleum gas;
b) oilfield water;
c) oilfield steam;
d) liquid or dense phase carbon dioxide; or
e) gas.

Notes:

1) *Vapour phase carbon dioxide pipeline systems fall under Item e).*

2) *Designers are cautioned that the requirements in this Standard might not be appropriate for gases other than natural gas, manufactured gas, vapour phase carbon dioxide, and synthetic natural gas.*

Δ 1.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The scope of this Standard, as shown in Figures 1.1 and 1.2, includes

a) for oil industry fluids, piping and equipment in offshore pipelines, onshore pipelines, tank farms, pump stations, pressure-regulating stations, and measuring stations;
b) oil pump stations, pipeline tank farms, and pipeline terminals;
c) pipe-type storage vessels;
d) carbon dioxide pipelines;
e) for gas industry fluids, piping and equipment in offshore pipelines, onshore pipelines, compressor stations, measuring stations, and pressure-regulating stations;
f) gas compressor stations; and
g) gas storage lines and pipe-type and bottle-type gas storage vessels.

Δ 1.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

This Standard does not apply to

a) piping with metal temperatures below –70 °C;
b) gas piping beyond the outlet of the customer's meter set assembly (covered by CSA B149.1);
c) piping in natural gas liquids extraction plants, gas processing plants (except main gas stream piping in dehydration and all other processing plants installed as part of gas pipeline systems), gas manufacturing plants, industrial plants, and mines;
d) oil refineries, terminals other than pipeline terminals, and marketing bulk plants;
e) abandoned piping;
f) in-plant piping for drinking, make-up, or boiler feed water;

© 2015 CSA Group

g) casing, tubing, or pipe in oil or gas wells, wellheads, separators, production tanks, and other production facilities;
h) vent piping for waste gases of any kind operating at or near atmospheric pressure;
i) heat exchangers;
j) liquefied natural gas systems (covered by CSA Z276);
k) liquid fuel distribution systems;
l) loading/unloading facilities for tankers or barges;
m) refuelling facilities; and
n) hydrocarbon storage in underground formations and associated equipment (covered by CSA Z341 Series).

1.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

This Standard is intended to establish essential requirements and minimum standards for the design, construction, operation, and maintenance of oil and gas industry pipeline systems. This Standard is not a design handbook, and competent engineering judgment should be employed with its use.

Note: *For steel pipe of grade higher than Grade 555, requirements in addition to those specified in this Standard might be needed. Matters that should be considered include joining, thermal aging effects during coating application, strain capacity (including cold bending), pressure testing, assessment of imperfections, and repair.*

1.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The requirements of this Standard are applicable to the operation, maintenance, and upgrading of existing installations. It is not intended that such requirements be applied retroactively to existing installations insofar as design, materials, construction, and established operating pressures are concerned, except as required by Clause 10.7.1 for changes in class location and Clause 10.8.1 for crossings of existing pipelines..

1.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Unless otherwise stated, to determine conformance with the specified requirements, it is intended that observed or calculated values be rounded to the nearest unit in the last right-hand place of figures used in expressing the limiting value, in accordance with the rounding method of ASTM E29.

1.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where any requirements of this Standard are at variance with the requirements of other publications referenced in this Standard, it is intended that the requirements of this Standard govern.

1.8

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

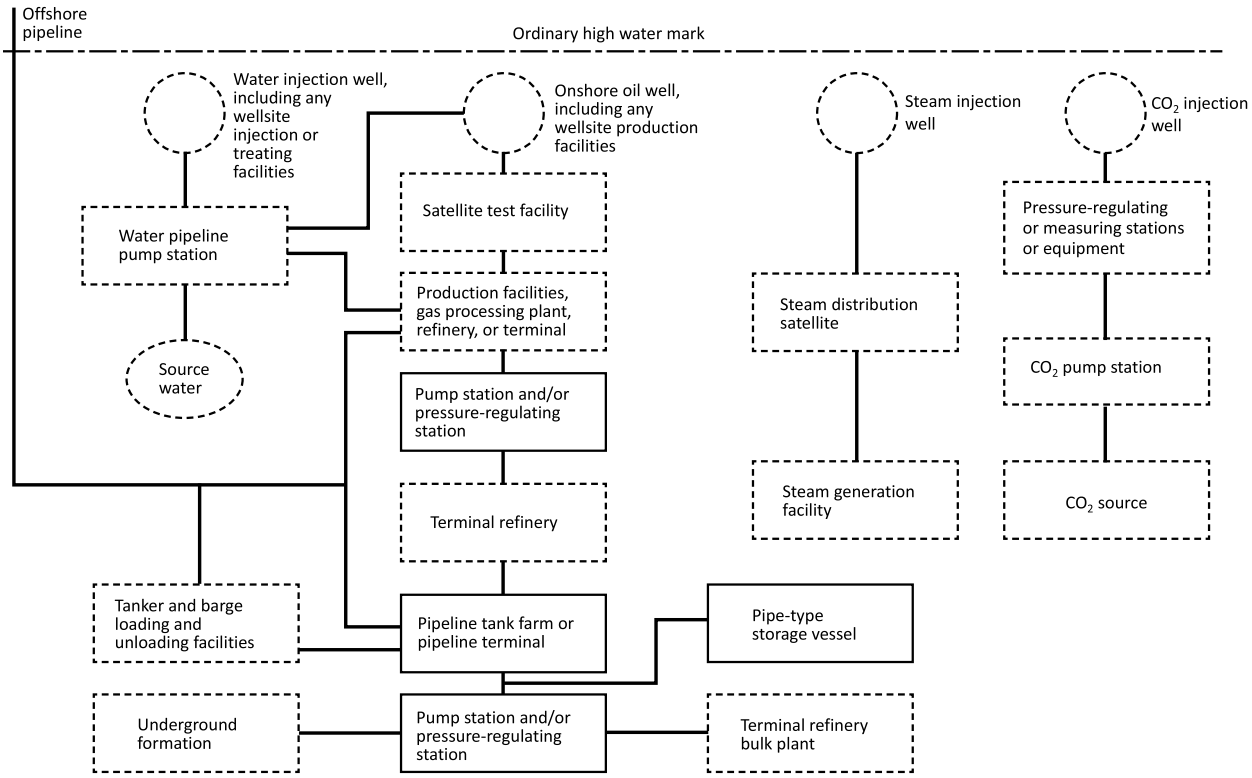
It is not the intent of this Standard to prevent the development of new equipment or practices, or to prescribe how such innovations are to be handled.

 © 2015 CSA Group

1.9

In this Standard, “shall” is used to express a requirement, i.e., a provision that the user is obliged to satisfy in order to comply with the standard; “should” is used to express a recommendation or that which is advised but not required; and “may” is used to express an option or that which is permissible within the limits of the standard. Notes accompanying clauses do not include requirements or alternative requirements; the purpose of a note accompanying a clause is to separate from the text explanatory or informative material. Notes to tables and figures are considered part of the table or figure and may be written as requirements. Annexes are designated normative (mandatory) or informative (non-mandatory) to define their application.

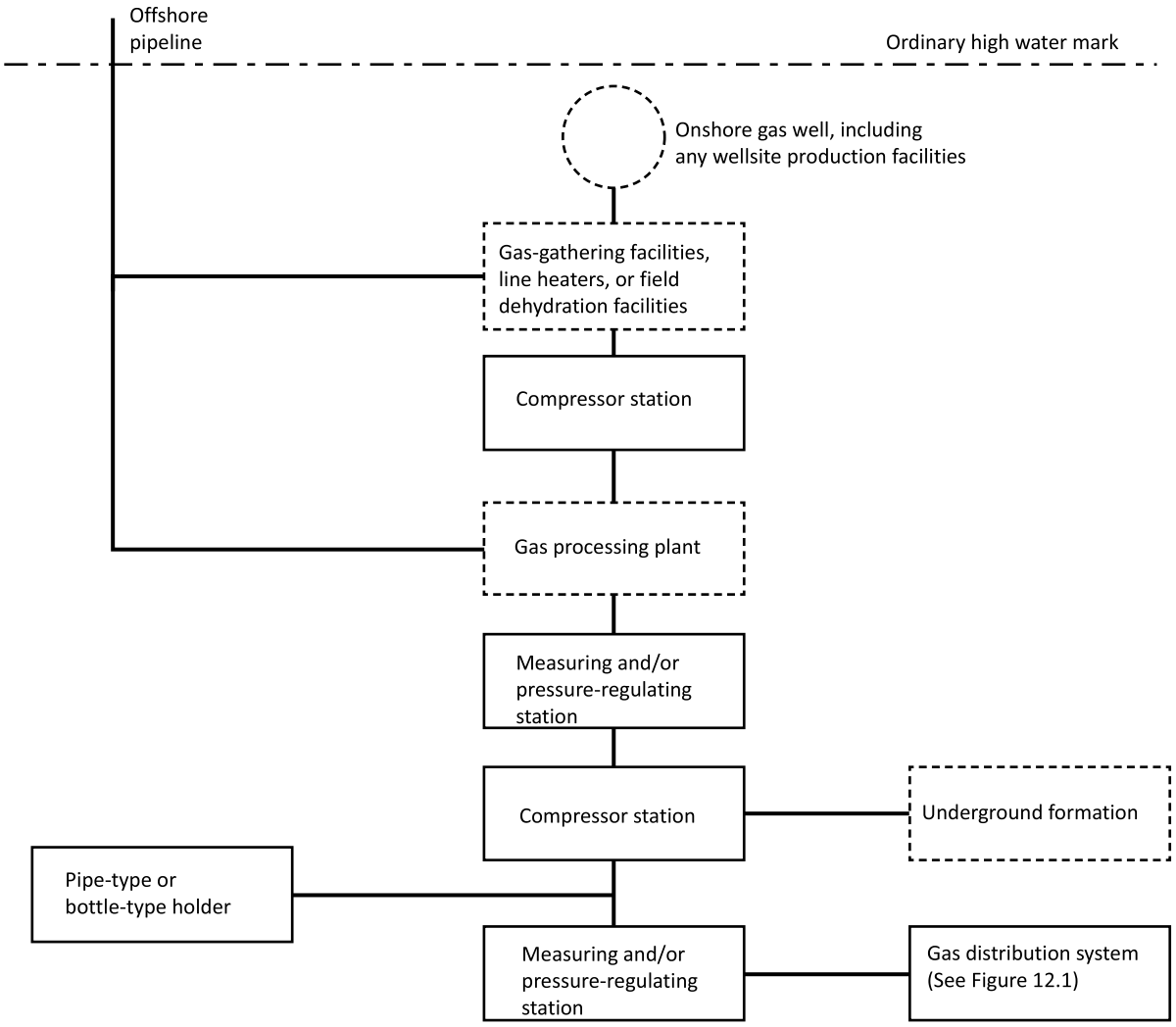
Figure 1.1
Scope diagram — Oil industry pipeline systems
(See Clauses 1.2, 2.2, 14.1.1, and E.1.1.)



Note: *Facilities, including associated pumps and compressors, indicated by dashed lines are not within the scope of this Standard.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 1.2
Scope diagram — Gas industry pipeline systems
(See Clauses 1.2 and 2.2.)



Note: *Facilities, including associated pumps and compressors, indicated by dashed lines are not within the scope of this Standard.*

© 2015 CSA Group

2 Reference publications and definitions

2.1 Reference publications

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

This Standard refers to the following publications, and where such reference is made, it shall be to the edition listed below, unless the user finds it more appropriate to use newer or amended editions of such publications.

CSA Group

A3000-13
Cementitious materials compendium

A3001-13
Cementitious materials for use in concrete

A3002-13
Masonry and mortar cement

B51-14
Boiler, Pressure Vessel, and Pressure Piping Code

B137 Series-13
Thermoplastic pressure piping compendium

B149.1-10
Natural Gas and Propane Installation Code

B149.2-10
Propane Storage and Handling Code

C22.1-15
Canadian Electrical Code, Part I

CAN/CSA-C22.3 No. 4-13
Control of electrochemical corrosion of underground metallic structures

CAN/CSA-C22.3 No. 6-13
Principles and practices of electrical coordination between pipelines and electric supply lines

PLUS 663-04
Land use planning for pipelines: A guideline for local authorities, developers, and pipeline operators

S408-1981-11
Guidelines for the development of limit states design standards

CAN/CSA-S471-04 (withdrawn)
General requirements, design criteria, the environment, and loads

 © 2015 CSA Group

W48-14
Filler metals and allied materials for metal arc welding

W59-13
Welded steel construction (metal arc welding)

W178.2-14
Certification of welding inspectors

Z245.1-14
Steel pipe

Z245.6-06 (R2011)
Coiled aluminum line pipe and accessories

Z245.11-13
Steel fittings

Z245.12-13
Steel flanges

Z245.15-13
Steel valves

Z245.20 Series-14
Plant-applied external coatings for steel pipe

Z245.20-14
Plant-applied external fusion bond epoxy coating for steel pipe

Z245.21-14
Plant-applied external polyethylene coating for steel pipe

Z245.22-14
Plant-applied external polyurethane foam insulation coating for steel pipe

Z245.30-14
Field-applied external coatings for steel pipeline systems

Z246.1-13
Security management for petroleum and natural gas industry systems

Z276-15
Liquefied natural gas (LNG) — Production, storage, and handling

Z341 Series-14
Storage of hydrocarbons in underground formations

CAN/CSA-Z731-03 (R2014)
Emergency preparedness and response

© 2015 CSA Group

CAN/CSA-ISO 9001-08 (R2014)
Quality management systems — Requirements

CAN/CSA-ISO 31000-10
Risk management — Principles and guidelines

AGA (American Gas Association)

B109.1-2000 (R2008)
Diaphragm-Type Gas Displacement Meters (Under 500 Cubic Feet per Hour Capacity)
(Catalogue # XQ0008)

API (American Petroleum Institute)

5L-2012 (SPEC)
Specification for Line Pipe

5LCP-2006 (R2013) (SPEC)
Coiled Line Pipe

6D-2014 (SPEC)
Specification for Pipeline and Piping Valves

15HR-2001 (R2010) (SPEC)
High Pressure Fiberglass Line Pipe

15LE-2008 (R2013) (SPEC)
Polyethylene (PE) Line Pipe

15S-2006 (R2013) (RP)
Qualification of Spoolable Reinforced Plastic Line Pipe

17J-2014 (SPEC)
Specification for Unbonded Flexible Pipe

17K-2005 (R2010) (SPEC)
Specification for Bonded Flexible Pipe

510-20146 (STD)
Pressure Vessel Inspection Code: In-Service Inspection, Rating, Repair, and Alteration

572-2009 (RP)
Inspection Practices for Pressure Vessels

576-2009 (RP)
Inspection of Pressure-relieving Devices

599-2013 (STD)
Metal Plug Valves-Flanged, Threaded and Welding Ends

600-2009 (STD)
Steel Gate Valves-Flanged and Butt-welding Ends, Bolted Bonnets

© 2015 CSA Group

602-2009 (STD)
Steel Gate, Globe and Check Valves for Sizes DN 100 and Smaller for the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industries

608-2012 (STD)
Metal Ball Valves-Flanged, Threaded and Welding Ends

609-2009 (STD)
Butterfly Valves: Double-flanged, Lug- and Wafer-type

610-2010 (STD)
Centrifugal Pumps for Petroleum, Petrochemical and Natural Gas Industries

617-2002 (R2009) (STD)
Axial and Centrifugal Compressors and Expander-compressors for Petroleum, Chemical and Gas Industry Services

618-2007 (STD)
Reciprocating Compressors for Petroleum, Chemical and Gas Industry Services

650-2013 (STD)
Welded Tanks for Oil Storage

651-2007 (RP)
Cathodic Protection of Aboveground Petroleum Storage Tanks

652-2005 (RP)
Linings of Aboveground Petroleum Storage Tank Bottoms

653-2009 (STD)
Tank Inspection, Repair, Alteration, and Reconstruction

1604-1996 (R2010) (RP)
Closure of Underground Petroleum Storage Tanks

2015-2014 (STD)
Requirements for Safe Entry and Cleaning of Petroleum Storage Tanks

2028-2002 (R2010) (RP)
Flame Arresters in Piping Systems

2350-2012 (STD)
Overfill Protection for Storage Tanks in Petroleum Facilities

2610-2005 (R2010) (STD)
Design, Construction, Operation, Maintenance, and Inspection of Terminal & Tank Facilities

Q1-2013 (SPEC)
Specification for Quality Management System Requirements for Manufacturing Organizations for the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry

 © 2015 CSA Group

ASME (The American Society of Mechanical Engineers)

B1.1-2003 (R2008)
Unified Inch Screw Threads, (UN and UNR Thread Form)

B1.20.1-2013
Pipe Threads, General Purpose, Inch

B16.1-2010
Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 25, 125, and 250

B16.5-2013
Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: NPS 1/2 through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard

B16.9-2012
Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings

B16.11-2011
Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded

B16.20-2012
Metallic Gaskets for Pipe Flanges: Ring Joint, Spiral Wound, and Jacketed

B16.21-2011
Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges

B16.24-2011
Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 150, 300, 600, 900, 1500 and 2500

B16.33-2009
Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Gas Piping Systems up to 175 psi (Sizes NPS ½ through NPS2)

B16.34-2013
Valves Flanged, Threaded and Welding End

B16.36-2009
Orifice Flanges

B16.40-2013
Manually Operated Thermoplastic Gas Shutoffs and Valves in Gas Distribution Systems

B16.47-2011
Large Diameter Steel Flanges: NPS 26 through NPS 60 Metric/Inch Standard

B16.48-2010
Line Blanks

B16.49-2012
Factory-Made, Wrought Steel, Buttwelding Induction Bends for Transportation and Distribution Systems

B18.2.1-2012
Square, Hex, Heavy Hex, and Askew Head Bolts and Hex, Heavy Hex, Hex Flange, Lobed Head, and Lag Screws (Inch Series)

B18.2.2-2010
Nuts for General Applications: Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series)

B31G-2012
Manual for Determining the Remaining Strength of Corroded Pipelines

B31.3-2012
Process Piping

B31.8-2012
Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems

B31.8S-2012
Managing System Integrity of Gas Pipelines

B36.19M-2004 (R2010)
Stainless Steel Pipe

Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, 2013:

Section II: Materials

Section V: Nondestructive Examination

Section VIII: Pressure Vessels — Division 1

Section VIII: Pressure Vessels — Division 2 — Alternative Rules

Section IX: Welding and Brazing Qualifications

PCC-2-2015
Repair of Pressure Equipment and Piping

ASTM International (American Society for Testing and Materials)

A53/A53M-12
Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

A105/A105M-13
Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications

A106/A106M-14
Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service

A126-04 (R2014)
Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings

A193/A193M-14
Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting for High Temperature or High Pressure Service and Other Special Purpose Applications

A194/A194M-14
Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts for Bolts for High-Pressure or High-Temperature Service, or Both

A216/A216M-14
Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Carbon, Suitable for Fusion Welding, for High-Temperature Service

A234/A234M-13e1
Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service

A268/A268M-10
Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Ferritic and Martensitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service

A269-14e1
Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service

A307-12
Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

A320/A320M-14
Standard Specification for Alloy/Steel Bolting Materials for Low-Temperature Service

A333/A333M-13
Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Steel Pipe for Low-Temperature Service and Other Applications with Required Notch Toughness

A350/A350M-13
Standard Specification for Carbon and Low-Alloy Steel Forgings, Requiring Notch Toughness Testing for Piping Components

A352/A352M-06 (2012)
Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Ferritic and Martensitic, for Pressure-Containing Parts, Suitable for Low-Temperature Service

A354-11
Standard Specification for Quenched and Tempered Alloy Steel Bolts, Studs, and Other Externally Threaded Fasteners

A381-96 (2012)
Standard Specification for Metal-Arc-Welded Steel Pipe for Use with High-Pressure Transmission Systems

A395/A395M-99 (2014)
Standard Specification for Ferritic Ductile Iron Pressure-Retaining Castings for Use at Elevated Temperatures

A420/A420M-13
Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Low-Temperature Service

A563/A563M-07
Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts

A694/A694M-13
Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Forgings for Pipe Flanges, Fittings, Valves, and Parts for High-Pressure Transmission Service

A707/A707M-13
Standard Specification for Forged Carbon and Alloy Steel Flanges for Low-Temperature Service

A789/A789M-10a
Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Ferritic/Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service

A860/A860M-13
Standard Specification for Wrought High-Strength Ferritic Steel Butt-Welding Fittings

A984/A984M-03 (withdrawn)
Standard Specification for Steel Line Pipe, Black, Plain-End, Electric-Resistance-Welded

A1005/A1005M-00 (2010)
Standard Specification for Steel Line Pipe, Black, Plain End, Longitudinal and Helical Seam, Double Submerged-Arc Welded

A1024/A1024M-02 (2012)
Standard Specification for Steel Line Pipe, Black, Plain-End, Seamless

A1037/A1037M-05 (2012)
Standard Specification for Steel Line Pipe, Black, Furnace-Butt-Welded

B43-14
Standard Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes

B75/B75M-11
Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube

B88-09
Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube

B241/B241M-12e1
Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube

 © 2015 CSA Group

B361-08
Standard Specification for Factory-Made Wrought Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Welding Fittings

D257-14
Standard Test Methods for DC Resistance or Conductance of Insulating Materials

D323-08(2014)
Standard Test Method for Vapor Pressure of Petroleum Products (Reid Method)

D570-98(2010)e1
Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics

D1000-10
Standard Test Methods for Pressure-Sensitive Adhesive-Coated Tapes Used for Electrical and Electronic Applications

D1002-10
Standard Test Method for Apparent Shear Strength of Single-Lap-Joint Adhesively Bonded Metal Specimens by Tension Loading (Metal-to-Metal)

D1525-09
Standard Test Method for Vicat Softening Temperature of Plastics

D1653-13
Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Organic Coating Films

D1693-13
Standard Test Method for Environmental Stress-Cracking of Ethylene Plastics

D2240-05 (2010)
Standard Test Method for Rubber Property — Durometer Hardness

D2290-12
Standard Test Method for Apparent Hoop Tensile Strength of Plastic or Reinforced Plastic Pipe

D2343-09
Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Glass Fiber Strands, Yarns, and Rovings Used in Reinforced Plastics

D2412-11
Standard Test Method for Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-Plate Loading

D2584-11
Standard Test Method for Ignition Loss of Cured Reinforced Resins

D2837-2013 (E2014)
Standard Test Method for Obtaining Hydrostatic Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Materials or Pressure Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Products

D2992-12
Standard Practice for Obtaining Hydrostatic or Pressure Design Basis for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe and Fittings

D3261-2012 (E2014)
Standard Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing

D3350-14
Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Pipe and Fittings Materials

D3839-14
Standard Guide for Underground Installation of "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe

D3895-07
Standard Test Method for Oxidative-Induction Time of Polyolefins by Differential Scanning Calorimetry

D4060-10
Standard Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by the Taber Abraser

D4541-09e1
Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers

D5064-07 (2012)
Standard Practice for Conducting a Patch Test to Assess Coating Compatibility

D5084-10
Standard Test Methods for Measurement of Hydraulic Conductivity of Saturated Porous Materials Using a Flexible Wall Permeameter

E18-14 rev 4
Standard Test Methods for Rockwell Hardness of Metallic Materials

E21-09
Standard Test Methods for Elevated Temperature Tension Tests of Metallic Materials

E23-12c
Standard Test Methods for Notched Bar Impact Testing of Metallic Materials

E29-13
Standard Practice for Using Significant Digits in Test Data to Determine Conformance with Specifications

E114-10
Standard Practice for Ultrasonic Pulse-Echo Straight-Beam Contact Testing

E384-11 (E2012)
Standard Test Method for Knoop and Vickers Hardness of Materials

 © 2015 CSA Group

E747-04 (2010)
Standard Practice for Design, Manufacture and Material Grouping Classification of Wire Image Quality Indicators (IQI) Used for Radiology

E1025-11
Standard Practice for Design, Manufacture, and Material Grouping Classification of Hole-Type Image Quality Indicators (IQI) Used for Radiology

E1820-13
Standard Test Method for Measurement of Fracture Toughness

E1901-13
Standard Guide for Detection and Evaluation of Discontinuities by Contact Pulse-Echo Straight-Beam Ultrasonic Methods

F1290-08 (withdrawn)
Standard Practice for Electrofusion Joining Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings

F1973-2013 (E2013)
Standard Specification for Factory Assembled Anodeless Risers and Transition Fittings in Polyethylene (PE) and Polyamide II (PAII) and Polyamide 12 (PA12) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems

F2206-11 (R2014)
Standard Specification for Fabricated Fittings of Butt-Fused Polyethylene (PE)

F2620-13
Standard Practice for Heat Fusion Joining of Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings

F2634-10
Standard Test Method for Laboratory Testing of Polyethylene (PE) Butt Fusion Joints Using Tensile-Impact Method

G8-96 (2010)
Standard Test Methods for Cathodic Disbonding of Pipeline Coatings

G9-07(2013)e1
Standard Test Method for Water Penetration into Pipeline Coatings

G10-10
Standard Test Method for Specific Bendability of Pipeline Coatings

G11-04(2012)
Standard Test Method for Effects of Outdoor Weathering on Pipeline Coatings

G14-04 (2010)e1
Standard Test Method for Impact Resistance of Pipeline Coatings (Falling Weight Test)

G17-07(2013)
Standard Test Method for Penetration Resistance of Pipeline Coatings (Blunt Rod)

 © 2015 CSA Group

G18-07(2013)
Standard Test Method for Joints, Fittings, and Patches in Coated Pipelines

G19-88 (withdrawn)
Standard Test Method for Disbonding Characteristics of Pipeline Coatings by Direct Soil Burial

G20-10
Standard Test Method for Chemical Resistance of Pipeline Coatings

G21-13
Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi

G42-11
Standard Test Method for Cathodic Disbonding of Pipeline Coatings Subjected to Elevated Temperatures

G55-07 (2013)
Standard Test Method for Evaluating Pipeline Coating Patch Materials

G80-88 (withdrawn)
Standard Test Method for Specific Cathodic Disbonding of Pipeline Coatings

G154-12a
Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Ultraviolet (UV) Lamp Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

UOP163-10
Hydrogen Sulfide and Mercaptan Sulfur in Liquid Hydrocarbons by Potentiometric Titration

AWS (American Welding Society)

A5.32/A5.32M-11
Welding Consumables — Gases and Gas Mixtures for Fusion Welding and Allied Processes

D3.6M-10
Underwater Welding Code

AWWA (American Water Works Association)

C205-12
Cement-Mortar Protective Lining and Coating for Steel Water Pipe — 4 In. (100 mm) and Larger – Shop Applied

BSI (British Standards Institution)

BS EN 253:2013
District heating pipes. Preinsulated bonded pipe systems for directly buried hot water networks. Pipe assembly of steel service pipe, polyurethane thermal insulation and outer casing of polyethylene

BS EN 489:2009
District heating pipes. Preinsulated bonded pipe systems for directly buried hot water networks. Joint assembly for steel service pipes, polyurethane thermal insulation and outer casing of polyethylene

 © 2015 CSA Group

BS 7910:2013
Guide to methods for assessing the acceptability of flaws in metallic structures

PD 6493:1991 (withdrawn)
Guidance on methods for assessing the acceptability of flaws in fusion welded structures

CAPP (Canadian Association of Petroleum Producers)
2004-0022
Planning Horizontal Directional Drilling for Pipeline Construction

2009-0009
Best Management Practice — Use of Reinforced Composite Pipe (Non-Metallic Pipelines)

2009-0010
Mitigation of Internal Corrosion in Oilfield Water Pipelines

2009-0011
Mitigation of External Corrosion on Buried Pipeline Systems

2009-0012
Mitigation of Internal Corrosion in Oil Effluent Pipeline Systems

2009-0013
Mitigation of Internal Corrosion in Sour Gas Gathering Systems

2009-0014
Mitigation of Internal Corrosion in Sweet Gas Gathering Systems

CCME (Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment)
PN 1180
Environmental Guidelines for Controlling Emissions of Volatile Organic Compounds from Aboveground Storage Tanks

CEPA (Canadian Energy Pipeline Association)
Stress Corrosion Cracking Recommended Practices, 2nd ed. (December 2007)

Facilities Integrity Management Program (FIMP) Recommended Practices, 1st ed. (May 2013)

Development of a Pipeline Surface Loading Screening Process & Assessment of Surface Load Dispersing Methods (Final Report No. 05-44R1) (October 2009)

CGA (Canadian Gas Association)
OCC-1-2013
Recommended Practice for the Control of External Corrosion on Buried or Submerged Metallic Piping Systems

CGA (Common Ground Alliance)
Best Practices, Version 10.0 (March 2012)

CGSB (Canadian General Standards Board)
CAN/CGSB-48.9712-2014/ISO 9712:2012
Non-destructive Testing — Qualification and certification of NDT personnel

DIN (Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V.)
30672-2000
Tape and shrinkable materials for the corrosion protection of buried or underwater pipelines without cathodic protection for use at operating temperatures up to 50 °C

DNV (Det Norske Veritas)
DNV-OS-F101-2013
Submarine Pipeline Systems

DNV-RP-F101-2010
Corroded Pipelines

DNV-RP-J202-2010
Design and Operation of CO_2 Pipelines

DOT (US Government, Department of Transportation)
DTRS56-02-D-70036 (2005)
Derivation of Potential Impact Radius Formulae for Vapor Cloud Dispersion Subject to 49 CFR 192

ESI (Electricity Supply Industry)
98-2-1979 (withdrawn)
Ultrasonic Probes: Medium Frequency, Miniature Shear Wave, Angle Probes

Government of USA
US Code of Federal Regulations, Title 33, Chapter I, Part 154, Appendix A, "Guidelines for Detonation Flame Arresters" (referenced as 33 CFR 154, Appendix A)

US Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192, *Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards* (referenced as 49 CFR 192)

IGEM (Institution of Gas Engineers & Managers)
IGEM/TD/1
Steel pipelines and associated installations for high pressure gas transmission, ed. 5

The INGAA Foundation
Guidelines for Parallel Construction of Pipelines, December 2008

ISO (International Organization for Standardization)
2566-1:1984 (R2010)
Steel — Conversion of elongation values — Part 1: Carbon and low alloy steels

3183:2012
Petroleum and natural gas industries — Steel pipe for pipeline transportation systems

3898:2013
Bases for design of structures – Names and symbols of physical quantities and generic quantities

5579:2013
Non-destructive testing — Radiographic testing of metallic materials using film and X- or gamma rays — Basic rules

9080:2012
Plastics piping and ducting systems — Determination of the long-term hydrostatic strength of thermoplastics materials in pipe form by extrapolation

12162:2009
Thermoplastics materials for pipes and fittings for pressure-applications — Classification, designation and design coefficient

12176-1:2012
Plastic pipes and fittings — Equipment for fusion joining polyethylene systems — Part 1: Butt fusion

12176-2:2008
Plastic pipes and fittings — Equipment for fusion joining polyethylene systems — Part 2: Electrofusion

12176-3:2011
Plastic pipes and fittings — Equipment for fusion joining polyethylene systems — Part 3: Operator's badge

12176-4:2003
Plastic pipes and fittings — Equipment for fusion joining polyethylene systems — Part 4: Traceability coding

13953-2001
Polyethylene (PE) pipes and fittings — Determination of the tensile strength and failure mode of test pieces from a butt-fused joint

14175:2008
Welding consumables — Gases and gas mixtures for fusion welding and allied processes

14555:14
Welding — Arc stud welding of metallic materials

15156-2:2009
Petroleum and natural gas industries — Materials for use in H_2S-containing environments in oil and gas production — Part 2: Cracking-resistant carbon and low-alloy steels, and the use of cast irons

15156-3:2009
Petroleum and natural gas industries — Materials for use in H_2S-containing environments in oil and gas production — Part 3: Cracking-resistant CRAs (corrosion-resistant alloys) and other alloys

15653:2010
Metallic materials — Method of test for the determination of quasistatic fracture toughness of welds

 © 2015 CSA Group

16708:2006
Petroleum and natural gas industries — Pipeline transportation systems — Reliability-based limit state methods

19232-1:2013
Non-destructive testing — Image quality of radiographs — Part 1: Determination of the image quality value using wire-type image quality indicators

ISO TR 19480:2005
Polyethylene pipes and fittings for the supply of gaseous fuels or water — Training and assessment of fusion operators

ISO/TS 24817:2006
Petroleum, petrochemical and natural gas industries — Composite repairs for pipework — Qualification and design, installation, testing and inspection

MSS (Manufacturers Standardization Society)

SP-6-2012
Standard Finishes for Contact Faces of Pipe Flanges and Connecting-End Flanges of Valves and Fittings

ANSI/MSS-SP-25-2013
Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions

SP-75-2014
Specification for High-Test, Wrought, Butt Welding Fittings

SP-79-2011
Socket Welding Reducer Inserts (Includes Errata Amended 7/8/2012)

SP-83-2014
Class 3000 Steel Pipe Unions, Socket-Welding and Threaded

SP-95-2014
Swage(d) Nipples and Bull Plugs

SP-97-2012
Integrally Reinforced Forged Branch Outlet Fittings — Socket Welding, Threaded and Buttwelding Ends

NACE International

ANSI/NACE MR0175/ISO 15156-2-2009
Petroleum and natural gas industries — Materials for use in H_2S-containing environments in oil and gas production — Part 2: Cracking-resistant carbon and low-alloy steels, and the use of cast irons
Note: *Including circular 1-2011 and circular 2-2014.*

ANSI/NACE MR0175/ISO 15156-3-2009
Petroleum and natural gas industries — Materials for use in H_2S-containing environments in oil and gas production — Part 3: Cracking-resistant CRAs (corrosion-resistant alloys) and other alloys
Note: *Including circular 1-2011, circular 2-2014, circular 3-2013, circular 4-2014.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

SP0285-2011
Corrosion Control of Underground Storage Tank Systems by Cathodic Protection

SP0204-2008
Stress Corrosion Cracking (SCC) Direct Assessment Methodology

SP0206-2008
Internal Corrosion Direct Assessment Methodology for Pipelines Carrying Normally Dry Natural Gas

SP0502-2008
Pipeline External Corrosion Direct Assessment Methodology

NEB (National Energy Board)
Pipeline Abandonment: A Discussion Paper on Technical and Environmental Issues, November 1996

NEN (Nederlands Normalisatie-instituut)
3650-1:2012 n1
Requirements for pipeline systems – Part 1: General requirements

NFPA (National Fire Protection Association)
10-2013
Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers

30-2015
Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code

NRCC (National Research Council Canada)
National Building Code of Canada, Chapter 4 of Commentary B, 2015

National Fire Code of Canada, 2010

PEI (Petroleum Equipment Institute)
RP100-11
Recommended Practices for Installation of Underground Liquid Storage Systems

PPI (Plastics Pipe Institute)
TR-3-2012
Policies and Procedures for Developing Hydrostatic Design Basis (HDB), Hydrostatic Design Stresses (HDS), Pressure Design Basis (PDB), Strength Design Basis (SDB), Minimum Required Strength (MRS) Ratings and Categorized Required Strength (CRS) for Thermoplastic Piping Materials or Pipe

TR-4-2014
PPI Listing of Hydrostatic Design Basis (HDB), Hydrostatic Design Stress (HDS), Strength Design Basis (SDB), Pressure Design Basis (PDB) and Minimum Required Strength (MRS) Ratings for Thermoplastic Piping Materials or Pipe

PRCI (Pipeline Research Council International)
PR-3-805,1989
Modified Criterion for Evaluating the Remaining Strength of Corroded Pipe (RSTRENG)

PR-218-9822, 1999
Guidelines for the Assessment of Dents on Welds

PR-218-9925, 2008
Acceptance Criteria for Mild Ripples in Pipeline Field Bend

PR-227-9424, 2008
Installation of Pipelines by Horizontal Directional Drilling — An Engineering Design Guide

PR-268-9823, 2003
Guidelines for the Seismic Design and Assessment of Natural Gas and Liquid Hydrocarbon Pipelines

Report 194, 1992
Hydrotest Strategies for Gas Transmission Pipelines Based on Ductile-Flaw-Growth Considerations

SSPC (The Society for Protective Coatings)

PA 2-2004
Measurement of Dry Coating Thickness with Magnetic Gages

Transport Canada

621.19-2000
Standards Obstruction Markings Manual

Other publications

Bruce, W.A. 2002. *Qualification of Procedures for Welding onto In-service Pipelines.* Proceedings, International Pipeline Conference 2002. Calgary, Alberta.

Bruce, W.A., Boring, M.A. 2005. *Realistic Hardness Limits for In-Service Welding.* Gas Research Institute Report GRI-04/0143. Des Plaines, Illinois, USA.

Bruce, WA. 2009. *Guidelines for Heat Sink Capacity Measurement for In-Service Pipelines.* 2009 WTIA/ APIA Welded Pipeline Symposium, Welding Institute of Australia, Sydney, Australia.

Chen, Q. and Nessim, M.A. 1994. *Risk-based Calibration of Reliability Levels for Limit States Design of Pipelines.* National Energy Board of Canada Report NEB PERD 200-4. Calgary.

Liu, M., Wang, Y., and Horsley, D. 2005. *Significance of HAZ Softening on Strain Concentration and Crack Driving Force in Pipeline Girth Welds* (OMAE2005-67039). Proceedings of the Twenty-Fourth International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering Conference.

Warman, D.J., Hart, J.D., and Francini, R. 2009. *Development of a Pipeline Surface Loading Screening Process and Assessment of Surface Loading Dispersing Methods.* Kiefner and Associates Inc. Worthington, Ohio, USA.

 © 2015 CSA Group

2.2 Definitions

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following definitions shall apply in this Standard.

Above-grade installation — installation of a pipeline above the surface of the ground on supports or in an embankment constructed from earth or other materials.

Allowable stress — see **Stress, allowable**.

Ambient temperature — see **Temperature, ambient**.

Applicator — the company responsible for the actual application of the coating systems.

Arc burn — a localized condition or deposit that is caused by an electric arc and consists of remelted metal, heat-affected metal, a change in the surface profile, or a combination thereof.

Axial stress — see **Stress, axial**.

Bar-hole survey — see **Survey, bar hole**.

Bond — a metallic connection that provides electrical continuity.

Bond, interference — a metallic connection designed to control electrical current interchange between metallic systems.

Bottle — a gas-tight vessel that is completely fabricated from pipe with integral drawn, forged, or spun end closures and tested in the manufacturer's plant.

Bottle-type holder — see **Holder, bottle-type**.

Buckle — a diamond-shaped inward and outward deformation of a pipe wall caused by any combination of bending, axial, and torsional loads.

Buckle arrester — a device or element that acts to stop the advance of a propagating buckle.

Carbon dioxide (CO_2) pipeline — a pipeline conveying carbon dioxide or predominantly carbon dioxide mixtures as a liquid or in its dense phase.
Note: *Dense phase refers to the physical state of a fluid above the critical pressure, including the supercritical state.*

Cast iron — all forms and types of cast iron, including ductile cast iron.

Cast iron, ductile — a cast iron in which the graphite present is substantially spheroidal or nodular in shape and the iron is essentially free from other forms of graphite.
Note: *Also known as spheroidal graphite or nodular cast iron.*

Cathodic protection — a technique to prevent the corrosion of a metal surface by making that surface the cathode of an electrochemical cell.

Cement-mortar lining — a mixture composed primarily of cement, sand, and water, shop-applied on the internal surface of line pipe or fittings.

© 2015 CSA Group

Class location — a geographical area classified according to its approximate population density and other characteristics that are considered when designing and pressure testing piping to be located in the area.

Class location assessment area — a geographical area that extends 200 m on both sides of the centreline of the pipeline.

Class location assessment area, undeveloped — a class location assessment area that is
a) at least 400 m long;
b) free of dwelling units, other buildings intended for human occupancy, places of public assembly, and industrial installations; and
c) unlikely to be developed.

Class location end boundary — the demarcation between different class locations.

Cold-spring factor — the amount of cold spring that is provided, divided by the total computed thermal expansion.

Cold-springing — the fabrication of piping to an actual length shorter than its nominal length so that it is stressed in the installed condition, thus compensating partially for the effects produced by expansion due to an increase in temperature.

Collapse — cross-sectional instability of pipe resulting from combinations of bending, axial loads, and external pressure.

Company — the individual, partnership, corporation, or other entity that is in charge of design, materials, or construction, whichever is applicable.
Note: *The company may act through an authorized representative.*

Company, operating — the individual, partnership, corporation, or other entity that operates the pipeline system.

Competent — qualified, trained, and experienced to perform the required duties.

Component — a pressure-retaining member of the piping, other than pipe.

Compressor station — a facility used primarily to increase the pressure in a gas pipeline system, including
a) piping;
b) auxiliary devices (e.g., compressors, drivers, control instruments, enclosures, ventilating equipment, and utilities); and
c) any associated buildings other than residences.

Construction — all activities required for the field fabrication, installation, pressure testing, and commissioning of piping.

Contractor — the prime contractor and any subcontractors engaged in work covered by this Standard.

Control piping — see **Piping, control**.

Corrosion, stray current — corrosion resulting from direct current flow through paths other than the intended circuit.

Crossing, water — the crossing by an onshore pipeline of a bay, lake, river, or major stream.

Current, impressed — direct current supplied by a device employing a power source external to the electrode system.

Current, interference — see **Current, stray direct**.

Current, stray direct — current flowing through paths other than the intended circuit.

Customer's meter — see **Meter, customer's**.

Damage incident — an event that results in damage to a pipe, component, tank, or coating without release of service fluid.

Deactivated piping — see **Piping, deactivated**.

Defect — an imperfection of sufficient magnitude to warrant rejection based upon the requirements of this Standard.

Demonstrate — verify, or describe and explain, by the use of records, measurements, tests, comparison of specimens, experiments, or analysis by a competent person, supported by documentation.

Dent — a depression caused by mechanical damage that produces a visible disturbance in the curvature of the wall of the pipe or component without reducing the wall thickness.

Design operating stress — see **Stress, design operating**.

Diameter, outside — the specified outside diameter (OD) of the pipe, excluding the manufacturing tolerance provided in the applicable pipe specification or standard.

Distribution line — see **Line, distribution**.

Distribution system, gas — the main and service lines, and their associated control devices, through which gas is conveyed from transmission lines or from local sources of supply to the termination of the operating company installation as illustrated in Figure 12.1.

Distribution system, low-pressure — a gas distribution system in which the operating pressure does not exceed 14 kPa.

Ductile cast iron — see **Cast iron, ductile**.

Effective pipe stiffness — the effective stiffness of a pipe, taking into account localized deformations, weight-coating, field joints, and attachments.

Electrical isolation — the condition of being electrically isolated from other metallic structures and the environment.

Engineering assessment — a documented assessment of the effect of relevant variables upon fitness for service or integrity of a pipeline system, using engineering principles, conducted by, or under the direct supervision of, a competent person with demonstrated understanding and experience in the application of the engineering and risk management principles related to the issue being assessed.
Note: *General requirements for engineering assessment are specified in Clause 3.3.*

Engineering critical assessment — an analytical procedure, based upon fracture mechanics principles that allows determination of the maximum tolerable sizes for imperfections in fusion welds.

© 2015 CSA Group

Fabricated assembly — an arrangement of piping that is joined together prior to installation in the pipeline system and contains at least two components that are separated by a distance of less than 10 pipe diameters.

Failure incident — an unplanned release of service fluid.

Fluid, service — the fluid contained, for the purpose of transportation, in an in-service pipeline system.

Foreign structure — any structure that is not part of the operating company's pipeline system.

Gas detector survey — see **Survey, gas detector**.

Gas distribution system — see **Distribution system, gas**.

Gathering line — see **Line, gathering**.

Gouge — a surface imperfection caused by mechanical removal or displacement of metal that reduces the wall thickness of a pipe or component.

Grade installation — installation of a pipeline on the surface of the ground or in a shallow ditch.
Note: *The pipeline may be covered with earth or other materials in the form of a berm.*

Ground temperature — the temperature of the earth, river bottom, or lake bottom at pipe depth.

Hazard — a condition or event that might cause a failure or damage incident or anything that has the potential to cause harm to people, property, or the environment.

Heat-affected zone (HAZ) — that portion of a weld consisting of base metal that has not been melted but whose microstructure or mechanical properties have been altered by the heat of welding.

Heat fusion joint — see **Joint, heat fusion**.

High energy joining (HEJ) — explosion welding of aluminum piping.

High-vapour-pressure (HVP) pipeline system — a pipeline system conveying hydrocarbons or hydrocarbon mixtures in the liquid or quasi-liquid state with a vapour pressure greater than 110 kPa absolute at 38 °C, as determined using the Reid method (see ASTM D323).

Holder, bottle-type — any bottle or group of interconnected bottles installed at one location and used for the sole purpose of storing gas.

Holder, pipe-type — any pipe or group of interconnected pipes installed at one location and used for the sole purpose of storing gas.

Holiday — a discontinuity of the protective coating that exposes the metal surface.

Hoop stress — see **Stress, hoop**.

Horizontal directional drilling (HDD) — a trenchless method of installing pipe in the ground at variable angles using a guidable drill head.

Hot tap — a branch connection made to piping while it is under pressure.

Hyperbaric dry chamber welding — see **Welding, hyperbaric dry chamber**.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Imperfection — a material discontinuity or irregularity that is detectable by inspection as specified in this Standard.

Impressed current — see **Current, impressed**.

Indication — evidence obtained by nondestructive inspection.

Inspection, non-destructive — the inspection of piping to reveal imperfections, using radiographic, ultrasonic, or other methods that do not involve disturbance, stressing, or breaking of the materials.
Note: *Direct visual inspection is not considered a form of non-destructive inspection.*

Instrument piping — see **Piping, instrument**.

Integrity management program — a documented program that specifies the practices used by the operating company to ensure the safe, environmentally responsible, and reliable service of a pipeline system.
Note: *An example of items to be included in an integrity management program is provided in Annex N.*

Interference bond — see **Bond, interference**.

Interference current — see **Current, stray direct**.

Isolating valve — see **Valve, isolating**.

Joint, electrofusion — a joint made in thermoplastic piping using electrical energy where the heating element is an integral part of the fitting, such that when electric current is applied, the heat produced melts the mating surfaces, causing them to fuse together. The heating element is moulded into the fitting or is inserted as part of a multi-stage manufacturing process, or employs a plastic material that is an electrical semiconductor.

Joint, heat fusion — a joint made in thermoplastic piping by heating the parts sufficiently to enable fusion of the materials when the parts are pressed together.

Joint, mechanical interference fit — a non-threaded joint for metallic pipe involving the controlled plastic deformation and subsequent mating of the pipe ends, or the mating of the pipe ends with a coupling; the resultant joint is achieved through the interference fit between the mated parts.

Leakage survey — see **Survey, leakage**.

Leak test — see **Test, leak**.

Life cycle — in a pipeline system, the period of time including design, procurement, construction, operation, and abandonment.

Line, distribution — a pipeline in a gas distribution system that conveys gas to individual service lines or other distribution lines.

Line, gathering — a pipeline that conveys gas from a wellhead assembly to a treatment plant, transmission line, distribution line, or service line.

Line, service — a pipeline in a gas distribution system that conveys gas from a gathering line, transmission line, distribution line, or another service line to the customer.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Line, transmission — a pipeline in a gas transmission system that conveys gas from a gathering line, treatment plant, storage facility, or field collection point in a gas field to a distribution line, service line, storage facility, or another transmission line.

Liner — a tubular product that is inserted into buried piping to form a corrosion-resistant barrier or separate, free-standing, pressure-retaining piping.

Longitudinal stress — see **Stress, longitudinal**.

Long-term hydrostatic strength — see **Strength, long-term hydrostatic**.

Lower explosive limit (LEL) — the smallest proportion of flammable gas mixed with air that would result in combustion when exposed to a source of ignition.

Low-pressure distribution system — see **Distribution system, low-pressure**.

Low-vapour-pressure (LVP) pipeline system — a pipeline system conveying

a) hydrocarbons or hydrocarbon mixture in the liquid or quasi-liquid state with a vapour pressure of 110 kPa absolute or less at 38 °C, as determined using the Reid method (see ASTM D323);
b) multiphase fluids; or
c) oilfield water.

Maximum combined effective stress — see **Stress, maximum combined effective**.

Maximum operating pressure — see **Pressure, maximum operating**.

Measuring station — a facility used to measure the quantity of service fluid flowing through piping, including meters, controls, piping, buildings, and other appurtenances.

Mechanical connector — a device or element, other than a threaded joint, used to join pipe ends by a mechanical process.

Mechanical interference fit joint — see **Joint, mechanical interference fit**.

Mechanical repair sleeve — equipment that can be installed over a leak to reduce or stop the leak.

Meter, customer's — a meter that measures gas delivered to a customer.

Monitor regulator — see **Regulator, monitor**.

Multiphase fluid — oil, gas, and water (in liquid and/or vapour form) in any combination produced from one or more oil wells, or recombined oil well fluids that possibly have been separated in passing through surface facilities.

Nominal wall thickness — see **Wall thickness, nominal**.

Nondestructive inspection — see **Inspection, nondestructive**.

NPS — nominal pipe size, a dimensionless abbreviation followed by the numerical portion of the previously used inch nominal size of the matching pipe to designate the nominal size of components.

Offshore pipeline — see **Pipeline, offshore**.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Oilfield water — fresh or salt water transported by pipeline, regardless of purity or quality, from wells or surface locations for the purpose of
a) providing water injection to underground reservoirs;
b) disposing of waste water from hydrocarbon production, processing, or storage facilities; or
c) transporting water to or between production facilities, process facilities, or terminals.

One-atmosphere welding — see **Welding, one-atmosphere**.

Operating company — see **Company, operating**.

Operating stress — see **Stress, operating**.

Outside diameter — see **Diameter, outside**.

Overpressure protection — the use of pressure-limiting systems or pressure-relieving systems, or both, to continuously and automatically protect piping from fluid pressures in excess of a predetermined value.

Permafrost — the thermal condition in soil or rock at temperatures below 0 °C persisting over at least two consecutive winters and the intervening summer, whether or not moisture in the form of water or ground ice is present.

Pipe — a tubular product made to a pipe specification or standard, or tubing that is allowed by this Standard to be used as pipe.

Pipeline — those items through which oil or gas industry fluids are conveyed, including pipe, components, and any appurtenances attached thereto, up to and including the isolating valves used at stations and other facilities.

Pipeline emergency — an event involving a pipeline system, such as an uncontrolled release of service fluid, that endangers one or more of the following:
a) life;
b) the well-being and health of people;
c) property; and
d) the environment.

Pipeline, high temperature — a pipeline with a design temperature exceeding 230 °C

Pipeline, offshore — a pipeline that is installed seaward of the ordinary high water mark or from a similar point on the shoreline of major inland water.

Pipeline, steam distribution — a pipeline with a design temperature exceeding 120 °C in an oilfield thermal recovery scheme that conveys steam from a steam generation facility to steam injection wells / well pad facilities.

Pipeline system — pipelines, stations, and other facilities required for the measurement, processing, storage, gathering, transportation, and distribution of oil or gas industry fluids.
Note: *See Figures 1.1, 1.2, and 12.1.*

Pipe-type holder — see **Holder, pipe-type**.

Piping — a portion of a pipeline system, consisting of pipe or pipe and components.

Piping, abandoned — piping that is permanently taken out of service.

Piping, control — the piping used to interconnect air-, gas-, or hydraulic-operated control apparatus, or instrument transmitters and receivers.

Piping, deactivated — piping that is taken out of service and maintained for potential return to service.

Piping, instrument — the piping used to connect instruments to main piping, to other instruments and apparatus, or to measuring equipment.

Piping, pretested — piping that has been subjected, prior to being installed, to a pressure test as specified in this Standard.

Piping, sample — the piping used for the collection of samples of gas, steam, water, or oil.

Position welding — see **Welding, position**.

Pressure — gauge pressure, unless absolute pressure is specifically stated.

Pressure-containment repair sleeve — a full-encirclement repair sleeve that has the ability to contain pipeline pressure within the sleeve.

Pressure-control system — a device or system installed for the purpose of regulating or limiting the pressure in piping, either automatically or by continuous monitoring with manual intervention (e.g., systems that use pressure regulators, pressure-control valves, or speed control of a pump or compressor).

Pressure-limiting system — a device or system that will automatically act to reduce, restrict, or shut off the supply of fluid flowing into piping in order to prevent the fluid pressure from exceeding a predetermined value (e.g., systems that use pressure-activated on/off control of a pump or compressor, pressure-limit override on a control valve, automated pressure-activated isolation valves, or monitoring regulators).

Pressure, maximum operating (MOP) — the maximum pressure at which piping is qualified to be operated.

Pressure-regulating station — a facility used to control or limit the pressure within piping, including controls, piping, buildings, and other appurtenances.

Pressure-relieving system — a device or system that automatically operates to actively limit or lower the piping pressure by dumping, flaring, or blowing down the pressurized fluid into containment or the atmosphere (e.g., systems that use pressure-activated blowdown valves, pressure-relief valves, or rupture discs).

Pressure, standard service — the gas pressure to be maintained at the inlet of a domestic customer's meter under normal operating conditions.

Pretested piping — see **Piping, pretested**.

Production welding — see **Welding, production**.

Pump station — a facility used to pump oil industry fluids, including pumps, drivers, controls, piping, and other appurtenances.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Regulator, monitor — a pressure regulator set in series with the working-pressure regulator, for the purpose of taking over the control of the downstream pressure in the case of malfunction of the working-pressure regulator.

Regulator, service — a regulator installed on a service line to control the pressure of the gas delivered to the customer.

Reverse current switch — a device that prevents the reversal of direct current through a metallic conductor.

Ripple — a permanent localized deformation of a pipe wall characterized by several alternating low-amplitude inward/outward lobes.

Riser — the section of piping, together with its supports, integrated components, and corrosion-protection system, commencing at a point 100 m from any offshore structure and ending above the water-line on the structure.

Risk management — the integrated process of risk assessment and risk control.

Road — a generic term denoting a highway, road, or street.

Roll welding — see **Welding, roll**.

Root bead — the weld bead that extends into, or includes part or all of, the region where two or more parts to be welded are closest.

Safety and loss management system — a systematic, comprehensive, and proactive process for the management of safety and loss control associated with design, construction, operation, and maintenance activities.

Sample piping — see **Piping, sample**.

Sea-bottom — the bottom of a body of water (sea water or fresh water) in which an offshore pipeline is situated.

Secondary stress — see **Stress, secondary**.

Sectionalizing valve — see **Valve, sectionalizing**.

Service fluid — see **Fluid, service**.

Service line — see **Line, service**.

Service regulator — see **Regulator, service**.

Service shutoff — see **Shutoff, service**.

Shutoff, service — a valve or cock located in a service line between the gas distribution line and the meter.

Source of ignition — any mechanical, electrical, or other device that can produce sufficient energy and temperature to start combustion of a flammable mixture.

Specified minimum tensile strength — see **Strength, specified minimum tensile**.

Specified minimum yield strength — see **Strength, specified minimum yield**.

Splash zone — the portion of an offshore pipeline subject to periodic wetting.

Standard service pressure — see **Pressure, standard service**.

Steel compression reinforcement repair sleeve — a steel reinforcement repair sleeve that produces a compressive hoop stress in the run pipe under operating conditions.

Storage vessel, pipe-type — pipe or group of interconnected pipes installed at one location and used for the primary purpose of storage.

Stray current corrosion — see **Corrosion, stray current**.

Stray direct current — see **Current, stray direct**.

Strength, long-term hydrostatic — the estimated hoop stress in a plastic pipe wall that causes failure at an average of 100 000 h when the pipe is subjected to a constant hydrostatic pressure.
Note: *The determination of this value is specified in CSA B137.0.*

Strength, specified minimum tensile — the minimum tensile strength prescribed by the specification or standard to which a material is manufactured.

Strength, specified minimum yield (SMYS) — the minimum yield strength prescribed by the specification or standard to which a material is manufactured.

Strength, tensile — the stress obtained by dividing the maximum load attained in a conventional tensile test by the original cross-sectional area of the test specimen.
Note: *Tensile strength is also known as ultimate tensile strength.*

Strength test — see **Test, strength**.

Strength, yield — the stress at which a material exhibits the specified limiting offset or specified total elongation under load in a tensile test as prescribed by the specification or standard to which the material is manufactured.

Stress, allowable — the maximum combined stress allowed for the design of piping.

Stress, axial — the uniform stress component acting over the pipe cross-section in the longitudinal direction.
Note: *This component is often referred to as membrane, average, or direct stress.*

Stress, design operating — the calculated hoop stress developed in a pipe by the maximum expected operating pressure, based upon nominal dimensions.

Stress, hoop — the stress in the wall of a pipe or component that is produced by the pressure of the fluid in the piping, any external hydrostatic pressure, or both, and that acts in the circumferential direction.

Stress, longitudinal — the stress at any point on the pipe cross-section acting in the longitudinal direction.
Note: *Longitudinal stress includes the effects of both bending moments and axial forces.*

Stress, maximum combined effective — the maximum combined stress value obtained when all applicable longitudinal, circumferential, and tangential shear stresses are acting simultaneously.

Stress, operating — the stress in a pipe or structural member under normal operating conditions.

Stress relieving — the heating of a completed weldment in order to reduce stresses produced during the welding process.

Stress, secondary — the stress created in the wall of a pipe or component by loads other than internal or external fluid pressure.

Stress, tangential shear — the shear stress in the wall of a pipe or component acting in the circumferential direction on a plane perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the piping.

Surge — a transient pressure change due to sudden variations in flow conditions.

Survey, bar hole — a gas leakage survey made by driving or boring holes at regular intervals along the route of buried piping and testing the atmosphere in the holes with a combustible-gas detector or other suitable device.

Survey, gas detector — a gas leakage survey made by testing with a combustible-gas detector the atmosphere in water valve boxes, street vaults, cracks in pavements, and other available locations where access to the soil under the pavement is provided.

Survey, leakage — a systematic survey made for the purpose of locating leaks in a pipeline system.

Survey, vegetation — a leakage survey made by observing vegetation above buried piping.

Tank, aboveground — a tank that sits on or above the ground and is installed in a fixed location.

Tank farm — tank facilities for the storage of liquids.

Tank, relief — a tank that provides containment for fluids released during pressure relief.

Tank, underground — a tank that is partially or completely buried.

Temperature, ambient — the temperature of the surrounding medium in which piping is situated or a device is operated.

Tensile strength — see **Strength, tensile**.

Test-head assembly — an assembly of pipe and components that forms a temporary facility used for pressure testing of piping.

Test, leak — a pressure test to determine whether piping leaks.

Test, strength — a pressure test to confirm the pressure-retaining capability of piping and establish the maximum operating pressure.

Tie-in — a connection between
a) two pressure test sections;
b) pretested piping and other piping;
c) new facilities and existing piping; or
d) two lengths of piping that are fixed at their opposite ends or are long enough to act as though they are so fixed.

Transmission line — see **Line, transmission**.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Trenchless installation — any technique, including augering, boring, directional drilling, and tunnelling, whereby pipe is installed without a continuous trench.

Tubing (tube) — a tubular product made to a tubing (tube) specification or standard.

Underwater welding — see **Welding, underwater**.

Undeveloped class location assessment area — see Class location assessment area, undeveloped.

Upgrading — qualifying an existing pipeline system, or portion thereof, for a higher maximum operating pressure or for a changed class location.

Utility — an irrigation system, drain, drainage ditch, sewer, underground communications cable or power line, or foreign pipeline.

Valve, isolating — a valve for isolating laterals, stations, pressure-relieving installations, and other facilities.

Valve, sectionalizing — a valve for isolating a segment of a pipeline.

Vegetation survey — see **Survey, vegetation**.

Ventilated space — a space where there is an effective air change by means of natural ventilation or mechanical means.

Wall thickness, nominal — the specified wall thickness of the pipe purchased.

Water crossing — see **Crossing, water**.

Weld — a localized coalescence of metals produced by heating the materials to the welding temperature, with or without filler metal.

Welding, direct deposition — welding performed directly on the surface of pipe for the purpose of restoring wall thickness and strength.

Welding, hyperbaric dry chamber — welding underwater in a dry environment provided by a chamber fitted over the items to be welded; water is displaced from the chamber by gas at ambient pressure.

Welding, one-atmosphere — welding underwater in a pressure vessel in which the absolute pressure is maintained at approximately one atmosphere, regardless of depth.

Welding, position — welding with the items being welded held stationary while the weld metal is deposited.

Welding procedure specification — a document providing, in detail, the required parameters for welding.

Welding, production — the execution of welds that are covered by this Standard and are to be part of a pipeline system.

Welding, roll — welding with the items being rotated while the weld metal is deposited at or near the top centre.

Welding, underwater — welding performed below the water surface.

Welding, wet — welding with the items being welded in the water and with no physical barrier around the welding arc.

Wet welding — see **Welding, wet**.

Wrinkle — a smooth, sinusoidal-shaped (i.e., continuous wave) outward and inward deformation of the pipe diameter, over a finite arc of the pipe circumference.
Note: *Wrinkles are formed due to pipe wall compression caused by axial or bending loads and are typically more severe than a ripple.*

Yield strength — see **Strength, yield**.

3 Safety and loss management systems

3.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

3.1.1

Operating companies shall develop and implement a documented safety and loss management system for the pipeline system that provides for the protection of people, the environment, and property.

3.1.2

The safety and loss management system shall cover the life cycle of the pipeline system and shall include the following elements:

a) clearly articulated policy and leadership commitment to the development and implementation of the safety and loss management system;
b) an organizational structure with well-defined responsibilities and authorities that supports the effective implementation of the safety and loss management system;
c) a process for the management of resources, including:
   i) the establishment of competency requirements;
   ii) a training program that includes a process for evaluating the effectiveness of the training provided and for maintaining training records; and
   iii) contractor selection and performance monitoring that ensures services are performed in a manner that conforms to the requirements of the safety and loss management system;
d) an internal and external communication process that supports the effective implementation of the safety and loss management system;
e) a document and records management process for the effective implementation of the safety and loss management system, including
   i) procedures for the control and distribution of documents; and
   ii) procedures for the control of records;
f) operational controls, as applicable, for
   i) risk management;
   ii) design, material selection, and procurement;
   iii) construction;
   iv) operations and maintenance;
   v) pipeline system integrity management;
   vi) engineering assessments;
   vii) emergency preparedness, response, and recovery;

viii) security management; and
ix) deactivation and abandonment;

g) a process for the management of change that includes
i) the identification of changes that could affect the safety and loss management system;
ii) assigning responsibilities and authorities for the review, approval, and implementation of changes;
iii) documentation of reasons for the changes;
iv) analysis of implications and effects of the changes;
v) the documentation and communication of changes to affected parties; and
vi) the timing of changes; and

h) a process for continual improvement, including
i) development of measurable objectives and targets;
ii) a process for the reporting, collection, evaluation, and trending of data related to hazards, incidents, and near misses, including the communication of any findings and actions;
iii) a process for learning from events;
iv) performance monitoring against objectives and targets;
v) conformance monitoring, including periodic audits, to assess conformance with the requirements of the standard and the safety and loss management system;
vi) procedures for the control of non-conformances, including procedures for defining responsibility and authority, for handling and investigating non-conformance, taking action to mitigate any impacts, for initiating and completing corrective and preventive action, and for evaluating the effectiveness of any actions taken; and
vii) management reviews of the safety and loss management system at planned intervals to ensure its continuing suitability, adequacy, and effectiveness. The management review shall include an assessment of opportunities for improvement and the need for changes to the safety and loss management system, its policy and objectives.

Notes:

1) *Annex A sets out a recommended practice and provides additional guidance for a safety and loss management system.*

2) *CSA Z246.1 provides guidance on developing security management systems.*

3.2 Pipeline system integrity management program

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The operational controls required by Clause 3.1.2 f) v) shall be in the form of an integrity management program that addresses the life cycle of the pipeline system.

Note: *Guidelines for pipeline system integrity management programs are contained in Annex N.*

3.3 Engineering assessments

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

3.3.1 General

Engineering assessments shall be used to support decisions under an operating company's safety and loss management system, as required or allowed by certain clauses in this Standard.

Note: *Additional requirements for engineering assessments can be specified in other clauses of this Standard (e.g., Clause 4.1.10 for design, Clause 5.8 for material qualification or acceptance, and Clause 10.1 for existing pipelines*

 © 2015 CSA Group

3.3.2 Engineering assessment process

Prior to performing an engineering assessment, operating companies shall develop a documented process for conducting engineering assessments that includes

a) the responsibilities of those individuals conducting and approving the engineering assessment;
b) the competency requirements for those conducting and approving the engineering assessment; and
c) the engineering assessment methodology, including acceptance criteria.

3.3.3 Documentation

The documentation for an engineering assessment shall be retained for the life of the pipeline and shall include

a) the purpose and scope of the engineering assessment;
b) the analysis conducted for the engineering assessment, including assumptions;
c) supporting documentation;
d) conclusions; and
e) recommendations.

3.4 Risk management

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The operational control required by Clause 3.1.2 f) i) shall be in the form of a risk management process that identifies, assesses, and manages the hazards and associated risks for the life cycle of the pipeline system. The risk management process shall include the following:

a) risk acceptance criteria;
b) risk assessment, including hazard identification, risk analysis, and risk evaluation;
c) risk control;
d) risk monitoring and review;
e) communication; and
f) documentation.

Notes:

1) *CAN/CSA-ISO 31000 sets out principles and guidelines for risk management.*

2) *Annex B provides guidance on performing pipeline system risk assessments.*

4 Design

Δ 4.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *CSA PLUS 663 provides guidance related to land use planning for pipeline systems.*

4.1.1

Clause 4 includes the requirements for the design of pipeline systems constructed primarily from steel, including compressor stations over 750 kW and pump stations over 375 kW.

4.1.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design of corrosion control for steel pipeline systems shall be as specified in Clause 9.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.1.3
The use of plastic, cast iron, copper, aluminum, and other materials in pipeline systems shall also meet the requirements of Clauses 12, 13, 15, and 17, where appropriate.

4.1.4
The design of offshore steel pipelines shall be as specified in Clause 11.

4.1.5
The design of steam distribution pipelines and high temperature (> 230 °C) pipelines shall be as specified in Clause 14.

4.1.6
The design of sour service pipelines shall also meet the requirements of Clause 16 where appropriate.
Note: *Clause 16.2 provides the definition of "sour service".*

4.1.7
Steel oil and gas pipelines may be designed as specified in Annex C, provided that such designs are suitable for the conditions to which such pipelines are to be subjected.

4.1.8
Onshore pipelines for non-sour service natural gas transmission may be designed as specified in Annex O. Where such design methods are used, the requirements of Clause O.1 shall be met in their entirety.

4.1.9
External coating systems for piping shall be selected as specified in Clause 9.1.4 or 9.1.9 and Clause 9.2, whichever is applicable.

4.1.10
Engineering assessments for design shall be conducted and documented in accordance with the requirements of Clause 3.3, and the analysis shall include consideration of the following, as applicable:
a) service fluid;
b) operating pressure and temperature range;
c) general and site-specific loading conditions;
d) material specifications and properties;
e) intended range of operating conditions;
f) loads and dynamic effects as specified in Clause 4.2;
g) manufacturing process and installation method;
h) technical data and test records;
i) potential modes of deterioration and means of detecting them;
j) control and protective devices;
k) environmental conditions and potential environmental consequences;
l) hazard type, frequency, and magnitude, including any hazards associated with the presence of foreign structures or environmental conditions;
m) consequences of failure; and
n) potential changes to any of the above.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.2 Design conditions

4.2.1 General

4.2.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design pressure for each segment of the pipeline system shall
a) be specified by the designer;
b) be not less than the intended maximum operating pressure for that segment; and
c) include the pressure required to overcome static head, friction loss, and any required back pressure.

4.2.1.2

The effect of external pressures and loadings on the pipe during installation and operation shall be accounted for using good engineering practice. The pipe wall thickness selected shall provide adequate strength to prevent excessive deformation and collapse, taking into consideration mechanical properties, wall thickness tolerances, ovality, bending stresses, and external reactions (see Clauses 4.6 to 4.10).

4.2.1.3

Fluid expansion effects on pressure shall be considered for exposed piping and pressure-relieving devices shall be installed where required.

4.2.2 Temperature

4.2.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design temperature range for each segment of the pipeline system shall be specified by the designer for the conditions expected during installation, pressure testing, start-up, and operation.

Notes:

1) *For carbon dioxide pipelines, extremely low temperatures can be encountered during pressure-relieving or pressure-reducing situations.*

2) *The environmental effects of pipeline operating temperatures, including any effect on plant growth and agricultural land use, should be considered.*

4.2.2.2

The effects of thermal expansion and contraction shall be provided for in the design as specified in Clauses 4.6 to 4.10.

4.2.2.3

The temperature differential for restrained piping operating at a temperature higher than the installation temperature shall be limited to comply with the stress requirements for restrained portions of pipeline systems in Clause 4.7. The temperature differential shall be the difference between the maximum flowing fluid temperature and the metal temperature at the time of restraint.

© 2015 CSA Group

4.2.2.4

For unrestrained piping, the thermal expansion temperature range to be used in the flexibility analysis in Clause 4.8 shall be the difference between the maximum and minimum operating temperatures.

4.2.2.5

For unrestrained piping, the temperature differential for the calculation of reactions shall be either the difference between the maximum operating temperature and the installation temperature or the difference between the minimum operating temperature and the installation temperature, whichever is greater.

4.2.3 Sustained force and wind loading

The weight of pipe, components, contents, insulation cover, wind loading, and other sustained forces shall be considered in stress analysis for the various piping support circumstances encountered during pressure testing and operation (see Clauses 4.6 to 4.10).

4.2.4 Other loading and dynamic effects

The stress design requirements in this Standard are specifically limited to design conditions for operating pressure, thermal expansion ranges, temperature differential, and sustained force and wind loadings. Additional loadings other than the specified operating loads are not specifically addressed in this Standard; however, the designer shall determine whether supplemental design criteria are necessary for such loadings and whether additional strength or protection against damage modes, or both, should be provided. Additional loadings not specifically addressed in this Standard include

a) occasional extreme loads, such as inertial earthquake;
b) slope movements;
c) fault movements;
d) seismic-related earth movements;
e) thaw settlement;
f) frost heave;
g) loss of support;
h) excessive overburden loads and cyclical traffic loads;
i) construction and maintenance deformations, including those resulting from horizontal directional drilling;
j) mechanical vibrations;
k) hydraulic shock; and
l) vortex shedding.

4.3 Design criteria

4.3.1 General

Notes:

1) *The stress design requirements in this Standard are considered to be adequate under conditions usually encountered and for general stress design of conventional pipeline systems.*

2) *The design factors and stress limits in this Standard ensure that certain minimum resistances are not exceeded by the effects of the loadings specified in Clause 4.2. Such resistances are membrane strength, fatigue strength, and primary bending strength.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.3.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The designer shall be responsible for determining supplemental local stress design criteria for structural discontinuities, high-temperature thermoelasticity, and fatigue evaluations; structural limits for denting, wrinkling, secondary tensile loading, and bending stresses in buried pipelines; and structural stability.

Notes:

1) *The design requirements of this Standard do not provide criteria for all design conditions.*

2) *For stress conditions not covered by Clause 4.3 and Clauses 4.6 to 4.10, reference should be made to Annex C or to the alternative rules in the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (Section VIII, Division 2). Attention should be focused on the nonlinear nature of piping under certain loading conditions, and it should be recognized that linear elastic stress analysis methods used for the usual flexibility analysis might not be sufficient to analyze deformations and related failure or damage conditions.*

3) *This Standard does not provide criteria for nonlinear deformation conditions.*

4.3.1.2

Designers shall provide adequate protection to prevent unacceptable damage to the piping from unusual or special external conditions.

Note: *Examples of such protection include increasing the pipe wall thickness, using additional cover, constructing revetments or other suitable mechanical protective devices, providing erosion protection, installing anchors, replacing potentially unstable soil with stable soil, using insulating materials, using refrigeration or heat tracing, using special construction procedures to reduce surface disturbance, and using right-of-way revegetation. Grade and above-grade installations are additional alternatives.*

4.3.1.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Consideration shall be given to designing pipelines to accommodate the use of internal inspection devices. Items to be considered include the location and sizing of scraper barrels, full-opening mainline block valves, internal bore of components, bend radii, and scraper guide bars.

4.3.2 Class location assessment areas

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

4.3.2.1

Class location assessment areas shall be 1.6 km long, except as follows:

a) Undeveloped class location assessment areas may be any length not less than 400 m.

b) Where the distance between successive undeveloped class location assessment areas is less than 1.6 km, that distance may be used as the length of the class location assessment area between such undeveloped class location assessment areas.

4.3.2.2

Class location assessment areas shall be used in a continuous sliding series of assessments to determine the class location designations, except that the sliding series of assessments may be discontinued on one end of any undeveloped class location assessment area and resumed on the other end of such an area.

© 2015 CSA Group

4.3.3 Class location designations

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Class location designations shall be as given in Table 4.1.

Table 4.1
Class location designations
(See Clauses 4.3.3 and 4.3.4.2.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

Development within the class location assessment area	Class location designation
None	Class 1
10 or fewer dwelling units	Class 1
One or more of the following: a) 11 to 45 dwelling units; b) a building occupied by 20 or more persons during normal use; c) a small, well-defined outside area occupied by 20 or more persons during normal use (e.g., a playground, recreation area, outdoor theatre, or other place of public assembly); or d) an industrial installation (e.g., a chemical plant or a hazardous substance storage area) where release of the service fluid from the pipeline can cause the industrial installation to produce a dangerous or environmentally hazardous condition.	Class 2
46 or more dwelling units	Class 3
A prevalence of buildings intended for human occupancy with 4 or more storeys above ground	Class 4

Notes:

1) *Each dwelling unit in a multiple-dwelling-unit building shall be counted separately.*

2) *If it is likely that there will be future development in the class location assessment area sufficient to increase the class location designation, consideration shall be given to designing, pressure testing, operating, and maintaining the pipeline in accordance with the requirements applicable to the higher class location.*

3) *Consideration shall be given to designating class location assessment areas that contain buildings intended for human occupancy from which rapid evacuation can be difficult (e.g., hospitals or nursing homes) as Class 3 locations.*

4.3.4 Class location end boundaries

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Notes:

1) *Class location end boundaries are perpendicular to the pipeline axis.*

2) *Class location end boundaries are determined by separately applying the requirements of this Clause at each end of the class location.*

4.3.4.1

Where class location designations are determined by the dwelling-unit density, class location end boundaries shall be determined using abutting pairs of class location assessment areas (see Figure 4.1).

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.3.4.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 4.3.4.3, where a Class 2 location designation is determined by the dwelling-unit density (see Table 4.1), the end boundaries for such a Class 2 location shall be located at least 200 m, measured parallel to the pipeline axis, from the dwelling unit that is located

a) just inside a class location assessment area that contains more than 10 but fewer than 46 dwelling units; and
b) just outside the closest class location assessment area that contains 10 or fewer dwelling units.

Note: *See Figure 4.1 a) for an example showing the determination of an end boundary for such a Class 2 location.*

4.3.4.3

Where a Class 2 location designation is determined by the dwelling-unit density and such a Class 2 location is adjacent to an undeveloped class location assessment area, the end boundary for such a Class 2 location may be determined without counting any dwelling units that are beyond the undeveloped class location area.

Note: *See Figure 4.1 b) for an example showing the determination of an end boundary for such a Class 2 location.*

4.3.4.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where a Class 2 location designation is determined by items other than the dwelling-unit density, the end boundaries for such a Class 2 location shall be at least 200 m, measured parallel to the pipeline axis, from each building that is occupied by 20 or more persons during normal use, each place of public assembly that is occupied by 20 or more persons during normal use, and each industrial installation where release of service fluids from the pipeline can cause the industrial installation to produce a dangerous or environmentally hazardous condition, whichever is applicable.

4.3.4.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 4.3.4.6, where a Class 3 location designation is determined by the dwelling-unit density, the end boundaries for such a Class 3 location shall be at least 200 m, measured parallel to the pipeline axis, from the dwelling unit that is located

a) just inside a class location assessment area that contains 46 or more dwelling units; and
b) just outside the closest class location assessment area that contains 45 or fewer dwelling units.

Note: *See Figure 4.1 c) for an example showing the determination of an end boundary for such a Class 3 location.*

4.3.4.6

Where a Class 3 location designation is determined by the dwelling-unit density and such a Class 3 location is adjacent to an undeveloped class location assessment area, the end boundary for such a Class 3 location may be determined without counting any dwelling units that are beyond the far end of such an undeveloped class location area.

Note: *See Figure 4.1 d) for an example showing the determination of an end boundary for such a Class 3 location.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.3.4.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

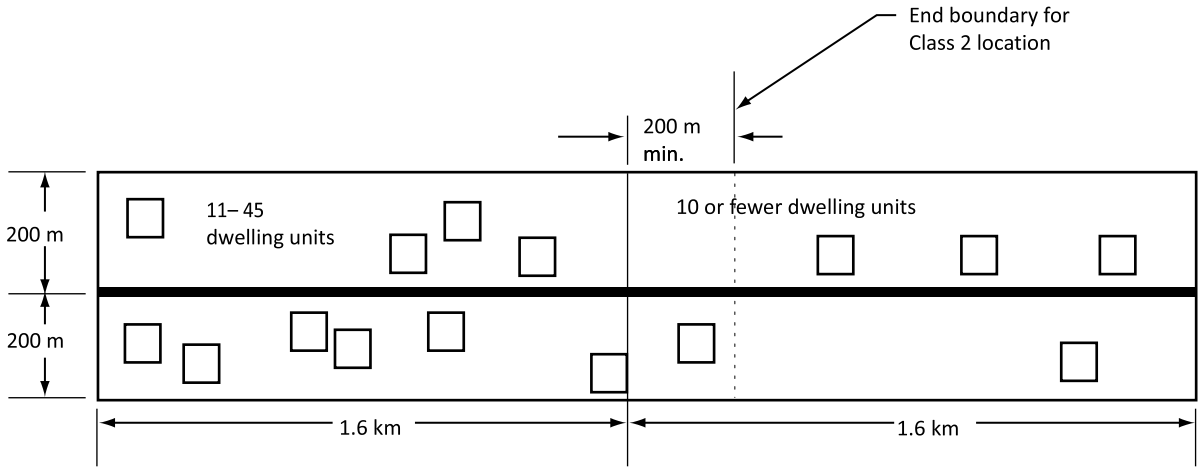
Where a Class 3 location designation results from the consideration of rapid evacuation from a building intended for human occupancy, the end boundaries for such a Class 3 location shall be at least 200 m, measured parallel to the pipeline axis, from each such building where rapid evacuation can be difficult.

4.3.4.8

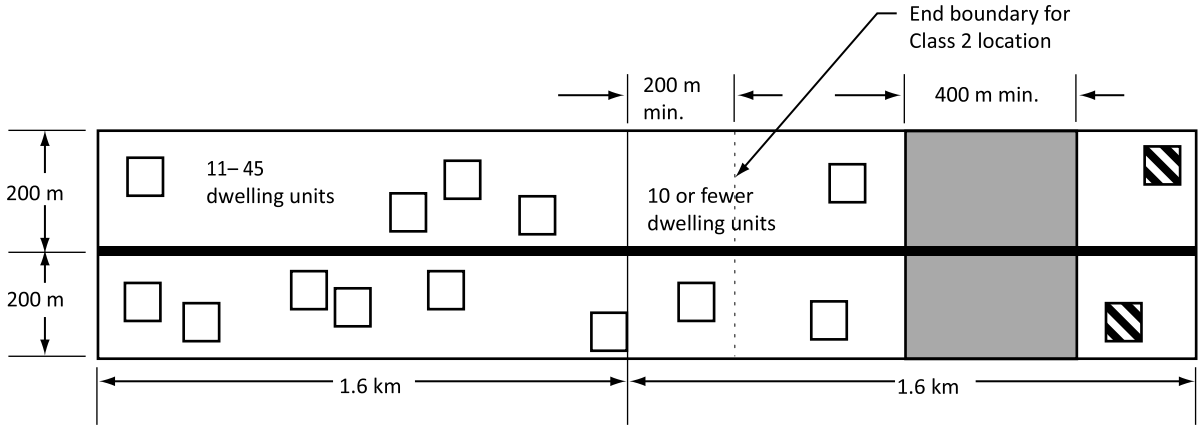
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The end boundaries for Class 4 locations shall be at least 200 m, measured parallel to the pipeline axis, from the nearest building intended for human occupancy with four or more storeys above ground.

Figure 4.1
Class location end boundaries, determined by dwelling-unit density
(See Clauses 4.3.4.1 to 4.3.4.3, 4.3.4.5, and 4.3.4.6.)



(a)

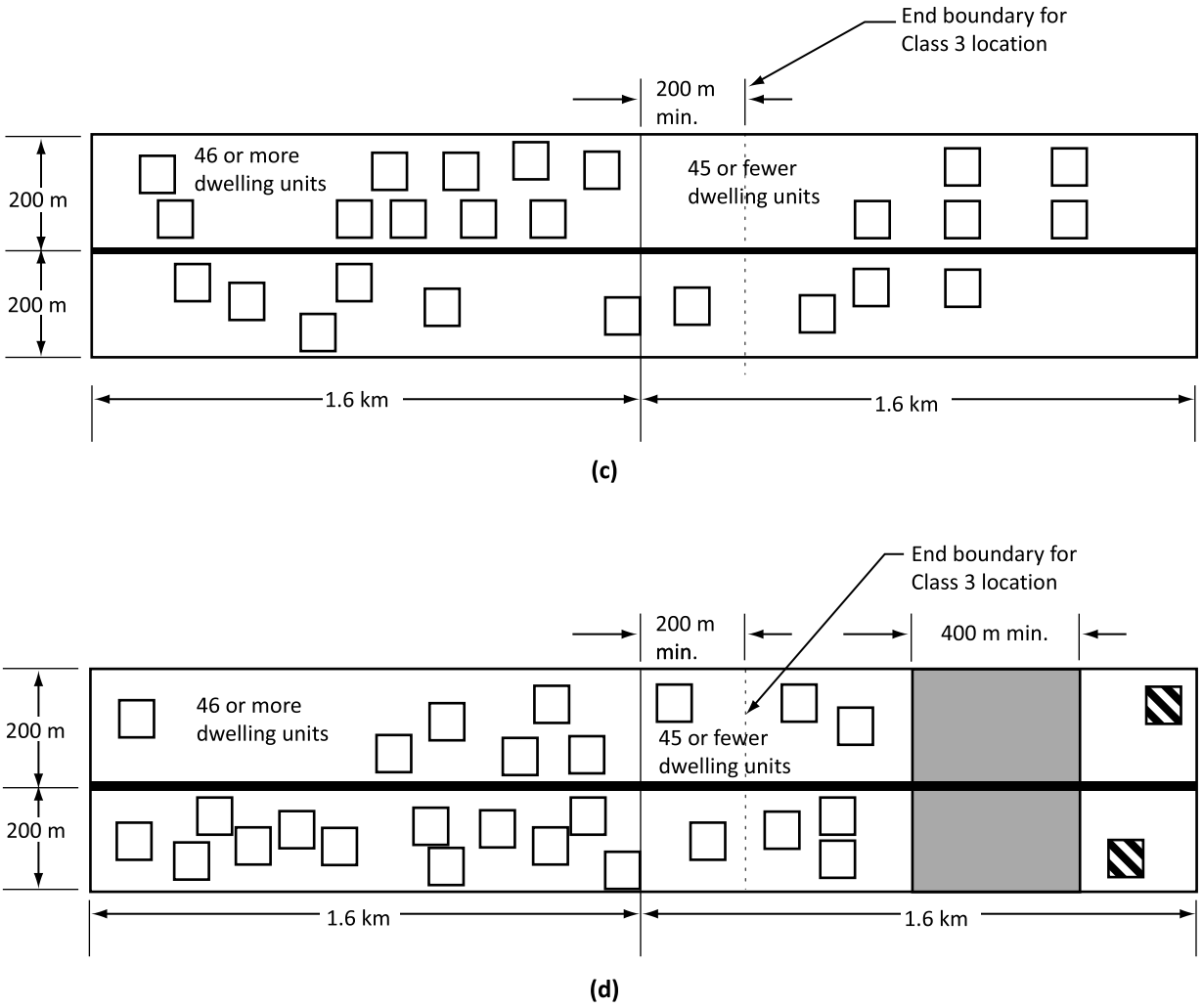


(b)

(Continued)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 4.1 (Concluded)



 © 2015 CSA Group

4.3.5 Pressure design for steel pipe — General

4.3.5.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For straight pipe, the design pressure for a given design wall thickness or the design wall thickness for a given design pressure shall be determined by the following design formula:

$$P = \frac{2St}{D} \times F \times L \times J \times T$$

where

P = design pressure, MPa

S = specified minimum yield strength, as specified in the applicable pipe standard or specification, MPa. For pipe of unknown origin, see Clause 5.6.4

t = design wall thickness, mm

D = outside diameter of pipe, mm

F = design factor (see Clause 4.3.6)

L = location factor (see Clause 4.3.7)

J = joint factor (see Clause 4.3.8). For pipe of unknown origin, see Clause 5.6.4

T = temperature factor (see Clause 4.3.9)

Note: *Calculated design pressures should be rounded to the nearest 10 kPa and calculated design wall thicknesses should be rounded to the nearest 0.1 mm.*

4.3.5.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where steel pipe is intended to be heated, the effects of the time-temperature relationship on the mechanical properties of the pipe shall be considered.

Note: *Examples of post-manufacturing heating activities include fabrication, coating, and installation.*

4.3.5.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design pressure and design wall thickness for field bends made from steel pipe shall be in accordance with the requirements for straight steel pipe.

Note: *Additional wall thickness might be necessary for factory-made bends.*

4.3.5.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design pressure for pipe made to a standard or specification other than CSA Z245.1, API 5L, ASTM A984/A984M, ASTM A1005/A1005M, or ASTM A1024/A1024M shall not exceed the pressure corresponding to 72% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.3.5.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where standards or specifications refer to the specified minimum value of a mechanical property of a pipe, the actual value of such a property shall not be substituted in design calculations.

4.3.6 Pressure design for steel pipe — Design factor (*F*)

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design factor (*F*) to be used in the design formula in Clause 4.3.5.1 shall be 0.800.

4.3.7 Pressure design for steel pipe — Location factor (*L*)

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The location factor (*L*) to be used in the design formula in Clause 4.3.5.1 shall not exceed the applicable value given in Table 4.2.

Δ

Table 4.2
Location factor for steel pipe
(See Clauses 4.3.7, 15.3.1.3, 15.10.4, 16.9.2.1, 17.4.3.4, and Table C.2.)

C There is a commentary available for this Table.

Application	Location factor (*L*)			
	Class 1 location	Class 2 location	Class 3 location	Class 4 location
Gas (non-sour service)				
General	1.000	0.900	0.700	0.550
Cased crossings	1.000	0.900	0.700	0.550
Roads*	0.750	0.625	0.625	0.500
Railways	0.625	0.625	0.625	0.500
Stations	0.625	0.625	0.625	0.500
Other	0.750	0.750	0.625	0.500
HVP (non-sour service) and CO_2 (non-sour service)				
General	1.000	0.800	0.800	0.800
Cased crossings	1.000	0.800	0.800	0.800
Roads	0.800	0.800	0.800	0.800
Railways	0.625	0.625	0.625	0.625
Stations and terminals	0.800	0.800	0.800	0.800
Other	0.800	0.800	0.800	0.800
LVP (non-sour service)				
All except uncased railway crossings	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000
Uncased railway crossings	0.625	0.625	0.625	0.625

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 4.2 (Concluded)

Application	Location factor (*L*)			
	Class 1 location	Class 2 location	Class 3 location	Class 4 location
Sour service fluids†				
General	0.900	0.750	0.625	0.500
Cased crossings	0.900	0.750	0.625	0.500
Roads*	0.750	0.625	0.625	0.500
Railways	0.625	0.625	0.625	0.500
Stations	0.625	0.625	0.625	0.500
Other	0.750	0.750	0.625	0.500

* *For gas pipelines, a location factor higher than the given value, but not higher than the applicable value given for "general", may be used, provided that an engineering assessment demonstrates that the surface loading effects on the pipeline meet the applicable portions of Clauses 4.6 to 4.10.*

† *For the applicable sour service fluids, see Clauses 15.10.1 and 16.9.1.*

Notes:

1) *Roads: Pipe, in parallel alignment or in uncased crossings, under the travelled surface of the road or within 7 m of the edge of the travelled surface of the road, measured at right angles to the centreline of the travelled surface.*

2) *Railways: Pipe, in parallel alignment or in uncased crossings, under the railway tracks or within 7 m of the centreline of the outside track, measured at right angles to the centreline of the track.*

3) *Stations: Pipe between and connected to the station isolation valves and equipment at compressor stations, pump stations, pressure-regulating stations, or measuring stations.*

4) *Other: Pipe that is*

a) *supported by a vehicular, pedestrian, railway, or pipeline bridge;*

b) *between any two components in a fabricated assembly; or*

c) *in a fabricated assembly, within five pipe diameters of the first or last component, other than a transition piece or an elbow used in place of a pipe bend that is not associated with the fabricated assembly.*

4.3.8 Pressure design for steel pipe — Joint factor (*J*)

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The joint factor (*J*) to be used in the design formula in Clause 4.3.5.1 shall not exceed the applicable value given in Table 4.3. For welded pipe, Table 4.3 applies to pipe having a longitudinal seam or a helical seam.

Δ

Table 4.3
Joint factor for steel pipe
(See Clauses 4.3.8, 14.2.2.1, and 14.2.3.)

C There is a commentary available for this Table.

Pipe type	Joint factor (*J*)
Seamless	1.00
Electric welded	1.00
Submerged arc welded	1.00
Continuous welded	0.60

© 2015 CSA Group

4.3.9 Pressure design for steel pipe — Temperature factor (*T*)

The temperature factor (*T*) to be used in the design formula in Clause 4.3.5.1 shall be as given in Table 4.4.

Note: *Notwithstanding the derating associated with temperatures above 38 °C specified by some referenced standards, the design stress level need not be reduced for pipe metal temperatures below 120 °C.*

Table 4.4
Temperature factor for steel pipe
(See Clauses 4.3.9, 4.3.12.4, 4.3.12.5, 11.8.4.5, and 17.4.3.5.)

Temperature, °C	Temperature factor (*T*)
Up to 120	1.00
150	0.97
180	0.93
200	0.91
230	0.87

Note: *For intermediate temperatures, the temperature factor shall be determined by interpolation.*

4.3.10 Pressure design for steel pipe — Allowances

4.3.10.1

Designs incorporating a corrosion or erosion allowance shall be such that the increase in wall thickness is additional to the wall thickness required for pressure containment.

4.3.10.2

For threaded pipe, the depth of thread shall be additional to the wall thickness required for pressure containment and any corrosion or erosion allowance.

4.3.10.3

For grooved pipe, the depth of the groove shall be additional to the wall thickness required for pressure containment and any corrosion or erosion allowance.

4.3.11 Pressure design for steel pipe — Wall thickness

4.3.11.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The nominal wall thickness shall be not less than the design wall thickness calculated from the formula in Clause 4.3.5.1 plus the allowances specified in Clause 4.3.10.

Note: *In determining the nominal wall thickness, manufacturing tolerances need not be considered.*

4.3.11.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The nominal wall thickness for steel carrier pipe shall be not less than the applicable value given in Table 4.5.

Note: *Although experience has shown that pipe with D/t ratios up to 120 can be successfully installed with normal or special handling and construction procedures, the designer is cautioned that susceptibility to flattening,*

 © 2015 CSA Group

buckling, and denting increases with increased D/t ratio, decreased wall thickness, decreased yield strength, and combinations thereof.

Table 4.5
Least nominal wall thickness for steel carrier pipe
(See Clauses 4.3.11.2, 12.7.11.2, and 15.3.5.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

	Least nominal wall thickness for steel carrier pipe, mm			
	Pipelines		Compressor stations and pump stations	
Pipe OD, mm	Plain-end pipe	Threaded pipe	Plain-end pipe	Threaded pipe
10.3	1.7	1.7	2.4	2.4
13.7	2.2	2.2	3.0	3.0
17.1	2.3	2.3	3.2	3.2
21.3	2.1	2.8	3.7	3.7
26.7	2.1	2.9	3.9	3.9
33.4	2.1	3.4	4.5	4.5
42.2	2.1	3.6	4.9	4.9
48.3	2.1	3.7	5.1	5.1
60.3	2.1	3.9	5.5	5.5
73.0	2.1	5.2	5.2	5.2
88.9	2.1	5.5	5.5	5.5
101.6	2.1	5.7	5.7	5.7
114.3	2.1	6.0	6.0	6.0
141.3	2.1	*	6.4	*
168.3	2.1	*	6.4	*
219.1	3.2	*	6.4	*
273.1	4.0	*	6.4	*
323.9	4.4	*	6.4	*
355.6	4.8	*	6.4	*
406.4	4.8	*	6.4	*
457	4.8	*	6.4	*
508	4.8	*	6.4	*
559–660	5.6	*	6.4	*
711–762	5.6	*	7.1	*
813–914	5.6	*	7.9	*
965–1372	6.4	*	7.9	*
1422–1829	9.5	*	9.5	*
1880–2032	10.3	*	10.3	*

** Threaded pipe is not allowed for pipe larger than 114.3 mm OD.*

Notes:

1) *For intermediate pipe outside diameters, the least nominal wall thickness shall be as tabulated for the next larger pipe outside diameter.*

2) *The least nominal wall thickness of threaded pipe having national pipe threads shall be as given in this Table for threaded pipe. The least nominal wall thickness for threaded pipe having other than national pipe threads*

(Continued)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 4.5 (Concluded)

shall be not less than that specified for plain-end pipe, and the thickness under the last engaged thread (based upon nominal dimensions) shall be at least 0.5 times the nominal thickness of the pipe.

3) *For crossings, see also Table 4.10.*

4.3.11.3

Where external or internal coatings or linings of cement, plastic, or other materials are used on steel pipe, such coatings or linings shall not be considered to add strength.

4.3.12 Pressure design for components — General

4.3.12.1

Components shall be designed to withstand operating pressures and other specified loadings.

4.3.12.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 4.3.12.3, the pressure design of components shall be as specified in the applicable component standard or specification. The pressure design of components for which no standard or specification is listed in this Standard shall be

a) as specified in CSA B51 or the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII; or
b) approved by the company as being suitable for the pressures to which the components are to be subjected, based upon an engineering assessment that includes a review of technical data and historical service records.

4.3.12.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Cylindrical portions of fabricated components, such as scraper traps, prover pipes, and strainers, may be designed as specified for straight pipe (see Clauses 4.3.5 to 4.3.11).

Δ

4.3.12.4

The pressure rating of steel components other than flanges at temperatures up to 230 °C shall be determined by multiplying the cold working pressure rating by the applicable temperature factor given for steel pipe in Table 4.4.

Δ

4.3.12.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The pressure rating of flanges shall be in accordance with the ratings provided in the applicable manufacturing standard. For temperatures up to 230 °C, if the applicable manufacturing standard does not specify a flange rating, the maximum permissible flange rating shall be determined by multiplying the cold working pressure rating by the applicable temperature factor given for steel pipe in Table 4.4.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.3.13 Pressure design for components — Closures

Δ

4.3.13.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 4.3.13.2, the materials and design for closures shall be as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII, Division 1. Components fitted with a closure shall be designed to ensure that pressure cannot be trapped in any area of the component, when the closure is opened, due to the presence of internal devices or equipment. Components fitted with a quick-opening closure, such as a pig or scraper sending or receiving device, shall be equipped with suitable isolation and venting equipment. Where practical the component shall be equipped with a pressure indicating interlocking device.

Notes:

1) *Any pig or scraper sending or receiving device should also be equipped with a pressure-indicating device separate from the trap pressure venting connection.*

2) *Closures should be designed in consideration of the requirements of ASME* Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII, Division 1, Non-Mandatory Appendix FF.*

3) *For sour service, see Clause 16.4.2.*

4.3.13.2

The hub material may be dual certified as an ASME/ASTM material. The grade of the ASTM material may be used when calculating the required thickness at the bevel of the weld that will join the hub to the matching pipe (see Figure 7.2).

Note: *An example of the dual-certified material is ASME SA350 LF2 Class 1/ASTM A694 F48.*

4.3.13.3

Orange-peel bull plugs and swages, fish tails, and flat closures shall not be allowed.

Δ

4.3.14 Pressure design for components — Elbows

Wrought steel welding elbows, factory-made bends, and transverse segments cut therefrom may be used, provided that the arc length measured along the crotch is at least 25 mm for sizes NPS 2 to NPS 3.5, and at least 50 mm for sizes NPS 4 and larger. Where applicable, allowances shall be made for the installation of liners and the passage of internal inspection tools and pipeline scrapers.

4.3.15 Pressure design for components — Tees and crosses

Steel buttwelding tees and crosses shall be acceptable for all ratios of branch pipe diameter to run pipe diameter.

4.3.16 Pressure design for components — Branch connections

4.3.16.1

Branch connections shall be made using tees and crosses, integrally reinforced extruded outlet headers, or welded connections, subject to the requirements of Clauses 4.3.17 to 4.3.20, except that mechanical fittings may be used for making hot taps on pipelines, provided that they are designed to withstand the operating pressures of the pipeline and are suitable for the purpose.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.3.16.2

Consideration shall be given to the design of branch connections to withstand all forces and moments to which they can be subjected.

Note: *The design requirements in Clauses 4.3.17 to 4.3.20 are minimum requirements for branch connections subjected to pressure; in addition, however, forces and moments are usually applied to the branch by such factors as thermal expansion and contraction, vibration, mass of pipe, components, cover, contents, and earth settlement.*

Δ

4.3.17 Pressure design for components — Integrally reinforced extruded outlet headers

Integrally reinforced extruded outlet headers shall be acceptable for all ratios of branch pipe diameter to run pipe diameter, provided that they comply with the following requirements:

a) An extruded outlet header shall be a header in which the extruded lip at the outlet has a height above the surface of the run that is equal to or greater than the radius of curvature of the external contoured portion of the outlet, i.e., h_o is equal to or greater than r_o (see Figure 4.2).

b) These requirements shall not apply to any outlet in which additional non-integrated material is applied in the form of rings, pads, or saddles.

c) These requirements shall apply only to cases where the axis of the outlet intersects, and is perpendicular to, the axis of the run.

d) The nomenclature used herein and in Figure 4.2 shall be as follows:

A_R = minimum required reinforcement area, mm^2

D = outside diameter of run pipe, mm

D_c = corroded/eroded inside diameter of run pipe, mm

D_o = corroded/eroded inside diameter of extruded outlet, measured at the level of the outside surface of run pipe, mm

d = outside diameter of branch pipe, mm

d_c = corroded/eroded inside diameter of branch pipe, mm

h_o = height of the extruded lip, mm (this shall be equal to or greater than r_o)

L = height of the reinforcement zone, mm

$= 0.7\sqrt{d \times T_o}$

r_o = radius of curvature of external contoured portion of outlet measured in the plane containing the axes of the run and branch pipe, subject to the limitations in Items e) to h), mm

r_1 = half-width of reinforcement zone, which is equal to D_o, mm

T_b = nominal wall thickness of branch pipe, excluding corrosion/erosion allowance, mm

T_o = corroded/eroded finished wall thickness of extruded outlet, measured at a height equal to r_o above the outside of run pipe, mm

T_r = nominal wall thickness of run pipe, excluding corrosion/erosion allowance, mm

t_b = design wall thickness of branch pipe, excluding corrosion/erosion allowance, mm

t_r = design wall thickness of run pipe, excluding corrosion/erosion allowance, mm

e) The radius of curvature shall be not less than 0.05 d, except that for branch pipe sizes larger than 762 mm OD, it need not exceed 40 mm.

 © 2015 CSA Group

f) The radius of curvature shall be not greater than 0.10 d plus 10 mm for branch pipe sizes 219.1 mm OD or larger, and not greater than 30 mm for branch pipe sizes smaller than 219.1 mm OD.
g) Where the external contoured portion contains more than one radius, the radius of any arc sector of approximately 45° shall meet the requirements of Items e) and f).
h) Machining shall not be employed in order to meet the requirements of Items e) and f).
i) The minimum required reinforcement area, A_R, shall be as determined using the following formula:
$A_R = K(t_r \times D_o)$
where
K = 1.00 for d/D ratios greater than 0.60
K = 0.60 + (2/3 × d/D) for d/D ratios greater than 0.15, up to and including 0.60
K = 0.70 for d/D ratios equal to or less than 0.15

j) The reinforcement area shall be equal to or greater than A_R and shall be the sum of areas A_1, A_2, and A_3, which are as follows:
   i) A_1 is the area lying within the reinforcement zone resulting from any excess thickness available in the run pipe wall, i.e., $A_1 = D_o(T_r - t_r)$;
   ii) A_2 is the area lying within the reinforcement zone resulting from any excess thickness available in the branch pipe wall, i.e., $A_2 = 2L(T_b - t_b)$; and
   iii) A_3 is the area lying within the reinforcement zone resulting from excess thickness available in the extruded outlet lip, i.e., $A_3 = 2r_o(T_o - T_b)$.
k) Multiple outlets shall be reinforced as specified in Clause 4.3.20, except that the reinforcement area shall be as specified in Item j).

Δ
4.3.18 Pressure design for components — Welded branch connections

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welded branch connections shall be designed as specified in the following Items a) to d), whichever is applicable, as given in Table 4.6. Where reinforcement is required, such connections shall also be designed as specified in the following Items e) and f):

a) Where practical, smoothly contoured, wrought steel tees and crosses of proven design or integrally reinforced extruded outlet headers shall be used. Where it is not practical to use such tees, crosses, or headers, the reinforcement shall be a complete encirclement type (see Figure 4.3). Where practical, the inside edges of the finished opening shall be rounded to a 3 mm radius. Where the encircling reinforcement is thicker than the run pipe wall and its ends are to be welded to the run pipe, the ends shall be tapered to a thickness not in excess of two times the run pipe wall thickness, and continuous fillet welds shall be made. Pads, partial saddles, and other types of localized reinforcement shall not be allowed.
b) The reinforcement shall be a complete encirclement type (see Figure 4.3), pad type, saddle type (see Figure 7.4), or welding outlet fitting type. Where attached to the run pipe by fillet welding, the edges of the reinforcement member shall be tapered to a thickness not in excess of two times the run pipe wall thickness.
c) Reinforcement shall not be required for openings suitable to accommodate 60.3 mm OD branch pipe and smaller; however, suitable protection against vibration and other external forces to which these small openings are frequently subjected shall be provided.
d) Reinforcement shall not be mandatory; however, reinforcement might be necessary for special cases involving pressures over 700 kPa, thin-wall pipe, or severe external loads.

 © 2015 CSA Group

e) Where the branch pipe diameter is such that a localized type of reinforcement would extend around more than one-half of the circumference of the run pipe, one of the following shall be used:
   i) a complete encirclement type of reinforcement;
   ii) a smoothly contoured wrought steel tee or cross of proven design; or
   iii) an extruded outlet header.
f) Reinforcements shall be designed as specified in Clauses 4.3.19 and 4.3.20.

Table 4.6
Design of welded branch connections
(See Clause 4.3.18.)

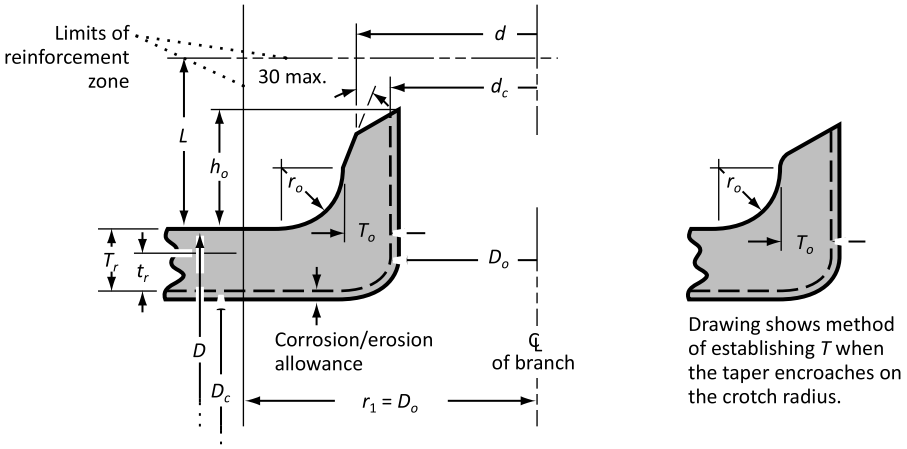
Ratio of design hoop stress to specified minimum yield strength for the run pipe	Applicable Item in Clause 4.3.18		
	Ratio of nominal branch diameter to nominal run diameter		
	Less than 0.25	0.25 to less than 0.50	0.50 or greater
Under 0.2	d)	d)	d)
0.2 or greater	b), c)	b)	a)*

* *For gas pipelines where the ratio of design hoop stress to specified minimum yield strength for the run pipe is less than 0.5, any type of reinforcement that is as specified in Clauses 4.3.19 and 4.3.20 may be used.*

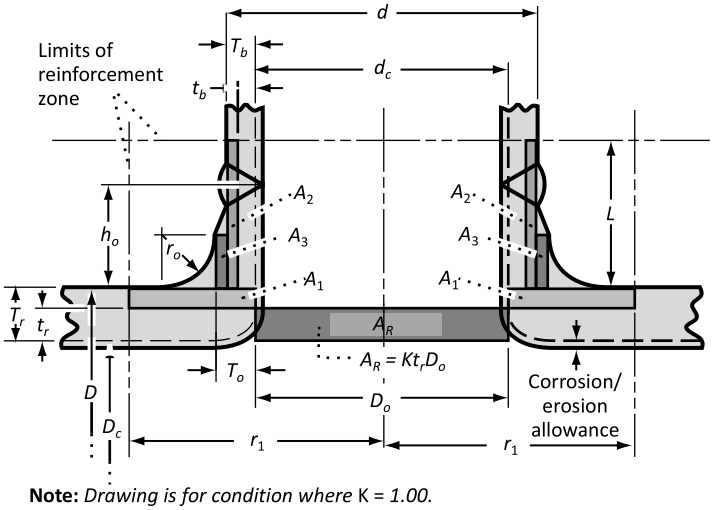
Note: *"Nominal diameter" means the nominal size of the matching fitting.*

© 2015 CSA Group

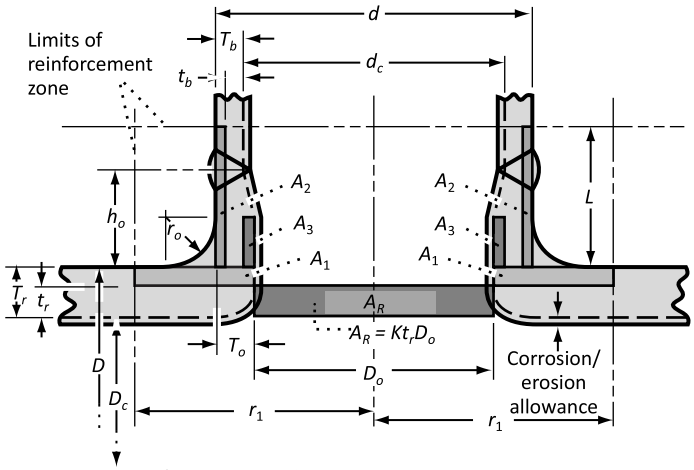
Figure 4.2
Integrally reinforced extruded outlet headers
(See Clause 4.3.17.)



Note: *Taper bore ID (if required) to match pipe 1:3 max. taper.*

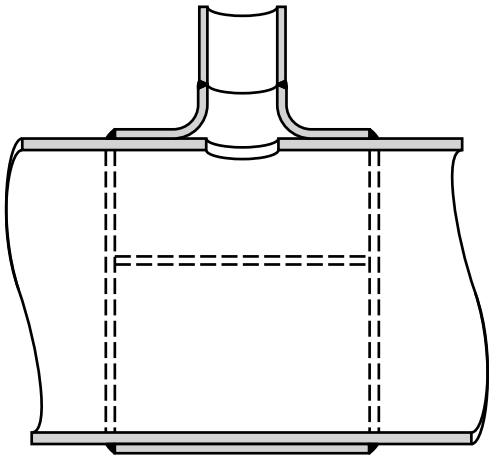


Note: *Drawing is for condition where* K = *1.00.*



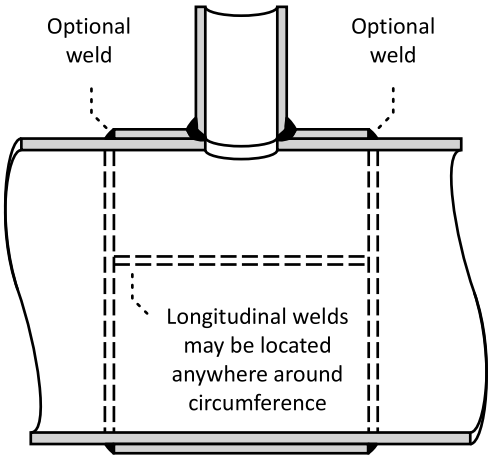
Note: *Drawing is for condition where* K = *1.00.*

Figure 4.3
Details for openings with complete encirclement types of reinforcement
(See Clause 4.3.18.)



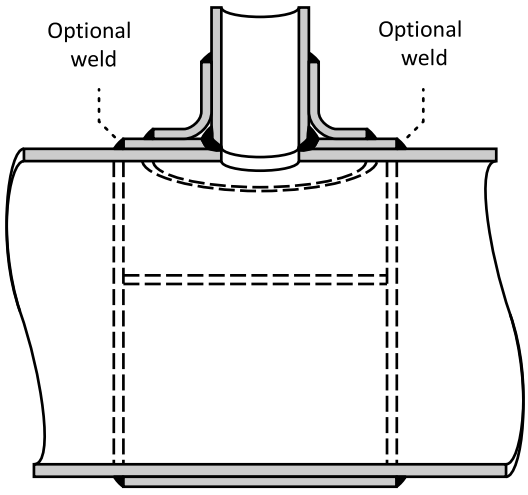
Tee type

Note: *Since the fluid pressure is extended on both sides of the pipe under the tee, the pipe does not provide reinforcement.*

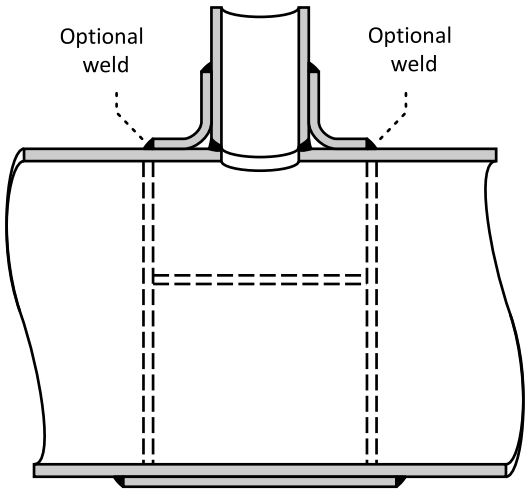


Sleeve type*

Note: *Provide vent hole in the reinforcement to reveal leakage in the weld joining the branch and run pipes and to provide venting during welding and heat-treating operations. [See Clause 4.3.19 g)]. Not required for tee type.*



Saddle and sleeve type*



Saddle type*

* *Stub welds shall be as shown in Figure 7.5.*

© 2015 CSA Group

4.3.19 Pressure design for components — Reinforcement of single openings

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where welded branch connections are made to pipe in the form of a single connection, or in manifolds as a series of connections (see Clause 4.3.20), the design shall be adequate to control the stress levels within safe limits. The following Items a) to k) provide design rules based upon the stress intensification created by the existence of a hole in an otherwise symmetrical pipe, but do not take into account stresses induced by other loads such as those due to thermal effects, mass, and vibration; the overall design shall take such stresses into account:

a) The reinforcement required for welded branch connections shall be determined by the rule that the metal area available as reinforcement in the reinforcement zone [see Item d)] shall be equal to or greater than the minimum required reinforcement area specified in Item b) and shown in Figure 4.4.

b) The minimum required reinforcement area shall be determined by using the following formula:

$A_R = D_o \times t_r$

where

A_R = minimum required reinforcement area, mm²

D_o = length of the finished opening in the run pipe wall, measured parallel to the axis of the run pipe, mm

t_r = design wall thickness of the run pipe, mm

c) Except as limited by Item e), the area in the reinforcement zone available as reinforcement shall be the sum of the cross-sectional area resulting from any excess thickness available in the run pipe wall thickness, the cross-sectional area resulting from any excess thickness available in the branch pipe wall thickness, and the cross-sectional area of any added reinforcing metal, including weld metal.

d) The reinforcement zone shall be a rectangle with dimensions as shown in Figure 4.4.

e) Where the reinforcement materials are of lower strength than the run pipe, the applicable areas available as reinforcement shall be proportionately decreased; however, where the reinforcement materials are of higher strength than the run pipe, such applicable areas shall not be altered.

f) The use of pad- and saddle-type reinforcements having strengths differing from those of the run pipe shall be limited to those reinforcing materials having welding qualities comparable to those of the run pipe.

g) Where reinforcements are used that cover the weld joining the branch and run pipes, a vent hole shall be provided in the reinforcement to reveal leakage and to provide venting during welding and heat-treating operations. Vent holes shall be plugged during service to prevent crevice corrosion between the pipe and reinforcements; such plugging materials shall not be capable of sustaining pressure within the crevice.

h) Ribs and gussets shall not be considered as contributing to the reinforcement of branch connections.

i) Branch pipes shall be attached by welds for the full thickness of the branch or run pipe wall plus a fillet weld (W_1), as shown in Figure 7.5. The use of concave fillet welds is preferred to minimize corner stress concentrations. Pad and saddle reinforcements shall be attached as shown in Figure 7.4. Where full fillets are not used, the edges of the reinforcement shall be relieved or chamfered at approximately 45° to merge with the edge of the fillets.

j) Reinforcement pads and saddles shall be accurately fitted to the parts to which they are attached. Figure 7.4 illustrates some acceptable forms of reinforcement.

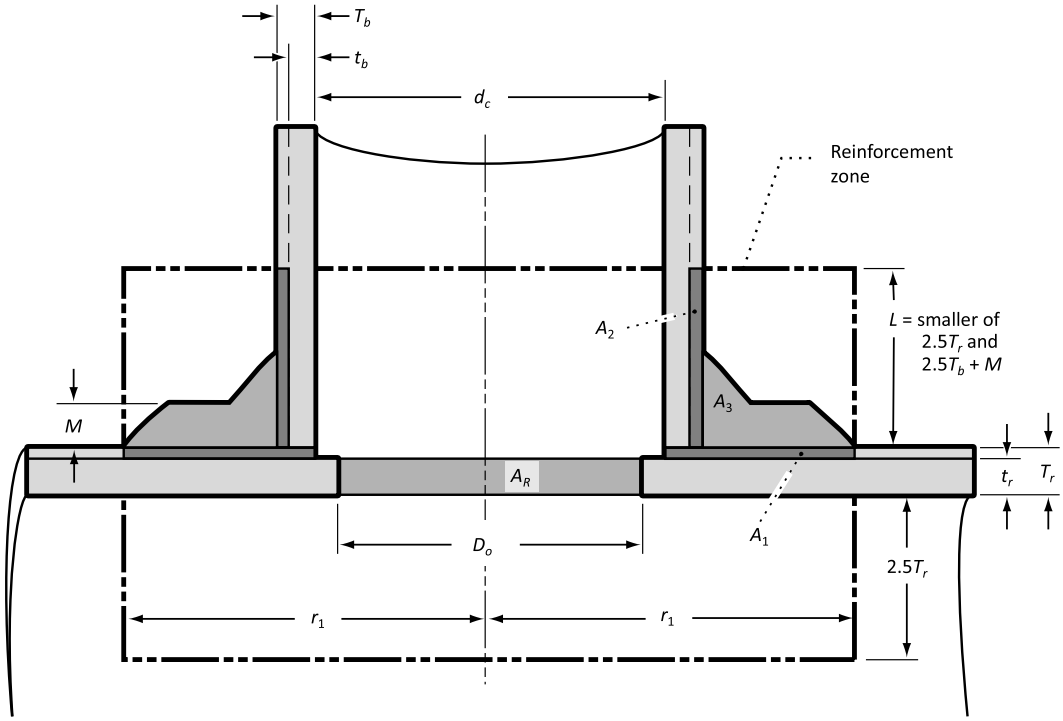
k) Branch pipe connections attached at angles less than 85° to the run pipe are progressively weaker as the angle is decreased. Such designs shall be given individual study and sufficient reinforcement

 © 2015 CSA Group

shall be provided to compensate for the inherent weakness. Where encircling ribs are used to support the flat or re-entrant surfaces, their strengthening effects may be taken into account.

Note: *Partial ribs, straps, and gussets should not be used since stress concentrations near their ends can defeat their reinforcing value.*

Figure 4.4
Reinforcement of branch connections
(See Clause 4.3.19.)



Legend:

D_o = diameter of hole in run pipe, mm
M = actual (by measurement) or nominal wall thickness of added reinforcement, mm
r_1 = half width of reinforcement zone, which is equal to d_c, mm

Minimum required reinforcement area $A_R = D_o \times t_r$, mm^2
Area available as reinforcement = $A_1 + A_2 + A_3$, which shall be equal to or greater than A_R
A_1 = $(T_r - t_r)d_c$, mm^2
A_2 = $2(T_b - t_b)L$, mm^2
A_3 = summation of area of all added reinforcement, including weld areas that lie within the reinforcement zone

where
T_r = nominal wall thickness of run pipe, mm
t_r = design wall thickness of run pipe, mm
T_b = nominal wall thickness of branch pipe, mm
t_b = design wall thickness of branch pipe, mm
d_c = inside diameter of branch pipe, mm

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ 4.3.20 Pressure design for components — Reinforcement of multiple openings

Reinforcement of multiple openings shall be subject to the following provisions:

a) Where two or more adjacent branch pipes are spaced between centres at less than 2 times their average outside diameter (so that their effective areas of reinforcement overlap), the group of openings shall be reinforced as specified in Clauses 4.3.18 and 4.3.19. The reinforcing metal shall be added as a combined reinforcement, the strength of which shall be at least equal to the combined strengths of the reinforcements that would be required for the separate openings. Portions of cross-sections shall not be considered to apply to more than one opening, or be evaluated more than once in a combined area.

b) Where possible, where more than two adjacent openings are to be provided with a combined reinforcement, the minimum distance between centres of any two of these openings shall be equal to at least 1.5 times their average outside diameter and the area of reinforcement between them shall be at least 50% of the total required for these two openings on the cross-section being considered.

c) Where two adjacent openings, as described in Item b), have a distance between centres less than 1.33 times their average diameter, no credit for reinforcement shall be given for any of the metal between such openings.

d) Any number of closely spaced adjacent openings, in any arrangement, may be reinforced as if the group were treated as one opening of a diameter enclosing all such openings.

Δ 4.4 Valve location and spacing

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *For provisions for sour service pipelines, see Clause 16.9.2.3.*

4.4.1

Isolating valves shall be installed for the purpose of isolating the pipeline for maintenance and for response to operating emergencies.

4.4.2

Valves shall be at locations accessible to authorized personnel and protected from damage or tampering, and shall be suitably supported to prevent differential settlement and movement of the attached piping.

4.4.3

Except for multiphase pipelines, oilfield water pipelines, and gas pipelines, isolating valves shall be installed on lateral lines connected to main lines.

4.4.4

Except as allowed by Clause 4.4.5, in determining the number and spacing of sectionalizing valves to be installed, if any, the company shall perform an engineering assessment that gives consideration to relevant factors, such as

a) the nature and amount of service fluid released due to repair and maintenance blowdowns, leaks, or ruptures;

b) the time to blowdown or drain down an isolated section;

c) the effect on inhabitants in the area of the blowdown gas release (e.g., nuisance and any hazard resulting from prolonged blowdowns);

d) continuity of service;

e) operating and maintenance flexibility of the system;

 © 2015 CSA Group

f) future development within the valve spacing section in the vicinity of the pipeline; and
g) significant conditions that could adversely affect the operation and security of the pipeline.

4.4.5

In absence of an engineering assessment conducted in accordance with Clause 4.4.4, the spacing of valves in the pipeline shall be as given in Table 4.7, but may be adjusted by up to 25% based upon factors such as operational, maintenance, access, and system design considerations.

Table 4.7
Valve spacing, km
(See Clause 4.4.5.)

Type of pipeline	Maximum valve spacing, km			
	Class 1 location	Class 2 location	Class 3 location	Class 4 location
Gas	NR	25	13	8
HVP	NR	15	15	15
LVP	NR	NR	NR	NR
CO_2	NR	15	15	15

Note: *NR = not required.*

4.4.6

For HVP and carbon dioxide pipelines, sectionalizing valves shall be located outside cities, towns, and villages, at the transition from Class 1 to a higher class location.

4.4.7

For HVP and carbon dioxide pipelines, in locations where a failure would constitute an extraordinary hazard, sectionalizing valves shall be equipped for remote operation and the maximum spacing between such valves shall not exceed 15 km.

Note: *Extraordinary hazards can exist in areas such as major industrial complexes, commercial navigable waters, and densely populated areas.*

4.4.8

For HVP and carbon dioxide pipelines, emergency connections to facilitate depressuring or evacuating, or both, an isolated section of pipeline shall be provided on both sides of, and adjacent to, sectionalizing valves. The capacity of such connections shall be adequate for emergency conditions.

4.4.9

For HVP and LVP pipelines, valves shall be installed on both sides of major water crossings and at other locations appropriate for the terrain in order to limit damage from accidental discharge.

Notes:

1) *Consideration should be given to the installation of check valves to provide automatic blockage of the pipeline.*

2) *A major water crossing means a water crossing that in the event of an uncontrolled product release poses a significant risk to the public or the environment.*

© 2015 CSA Group

4.4.10

For gas pipelines, blowdown valves shall be located so that the sections of transmission lines between sectionalizing valves can be blown down. Sizes and capacities of the connections for blowing down transmission lines shall be such that under emergency conditions, the sections can be rapidly blown down. Locations of blowdown valves shall be such that the gas can be blown to the atmosphere without undue hazard.

4.5 Selection and limitation of piping joints

4.5.1 Buttwelded joints

4.5.1.1

Buttwelded joints shall be as specified in Clauses 7.2 to 7.15.

4.5.1.2

Consideration shall be given to avoiding welding stresses that can result in damage to any cement-mortar lining.

4.5.1.3

Where piping containing partial-penetration welds required by design is to be installed, the stress and strain effects in the weld zone shall be considered for design, construction, and operating conditions, and appropriate measures shall be taken.

4.5.2 Threaded joints

Threaded pipe-to-pipe and pipe-to-component joints shall not be used for

a) permanently buried installations, except for auxiliary joints (such as drains, valve body bleeds, and instrument taps) directly into components;
b) pipe larger than 114.3 mm OD;
c) pipe larger than 60.3 mm OD with a maximum operating pressure greater than 3.5 MPa; or
d) piping in HVP or CO_2 service, except for joints in instrument piping.

Notes:

1) *Threaded joints should be avoided where crevice corrosion, severe erosion, cyclic loading, bending, or unusual loading conditions can occur.*

2) *For limitation for sour service pipelines, see Clause 16.3.5.*

4.5.3 Sleeve, coupled, mechanical interference fit, and other patented joints

4.5.3.1

Sleeve, coupled, mechanical interference fit, and other patented joints shall not be used in HVP and CO_2 pipeline systems.

4.5.3.2

Sleeve, coupled, mechanical interference fit, and other patented joints may be used in LVP pipeline systems, provided that, where applicable

a) the materials are qualified as specified in Clause 5.1;
b) a sample of the type of joint to be used has been proof tested under simulated service conditions incorporating anticipated vibration, cyclic operation, low temperature, thermal expansion, and other such conditions; and

 © 2015 CSA Group

c) adequate provision is made to prevent separation of the joint as a result of longitudinal or lateral movement that would exceed the capability of the joining members.

4.5.3.3

Mechanical interference fit joints may be used in gas pipeline systems, provided that such joints are installed in a Class 1 location.

4.5.4 Additional requirements for mechanical interference fit joints

Note: *For limitations for sour service pipelines, refer to Clause 16.10.2.*

4.5.4.1

Mechanical interference fit joining methods shall be as specified in Clause 7.16.

4.5.4.2

Piping containing mechanical interference fit joints shall not be installed above grade.

4.5.4.3

Mechanical interference fit joining methods shall be used only on electric-welded or seamless pipe.

Note: *When ordering plain-end pipe that will subsequently be subjected to plastic deformation in preparation for mechanical interference fit joining, designers should consider supplementing the pipe purchase specification with additional requirements, such as the following:*

a) *tighter dimensional tolerances;*
b) *ductility tests or increased minimum elongation requirements for tensile tests;*
c) *limits on the inside and outside height of the weld flash of electric-welded pipe; and*
d) *an upper limit on yield strength.*

4.5.4.4

Designers shall take into consideration the tensile, torsional, and compressive strengths of the mechanical interference fit joint and the effect of torsional and bending loads on the joint.

4.5.4.5

Piping containing mechanical interference fit joints shall not be subjected to service conditions that can adversely affect the performance of the joint.

4.5.4.6

Mechanical interference fit joints shall not be used to join dissimilar pipe materials.

4.6 Flexibility and stress analysis — General stress design

4.6.1 Applicability

The general stress design criteria for pipeline systems in this Standard are limited to elastic stress analysis for the design conditions in Clause 4.2 and provide design specifications for

a) design wall thickness;
b) maximum allowable temperature differential in restrained sections;
c) maximum allowable freely supported spans for axially restrained sections;
d) minimum required flexibility in partially or fully unrestrained sections;
e) maximum allowable support spacings for stress design of unrestrained sections; and
f) maximum allowable cold-sprung reactions on equipment attached to flexible piping.

© 2015 CSA Group

4.6.2 Stress design of restrained and unrestrained portions of pipeline systems

Due to the fundamental differences in loading conditions and structural behaviour for restrained portions of pipeline systems and unrestrained portions not subject to substantial axial restraint, different limits for allowable longitudinal expansion stresses and analysis methods are necessary, and such limits and methods shall be as specified in Clauses 4.7 and 4.8.

Note: *In this Standard, "unrestrained" means that the pipe is able to strain along its length and move laterally. Pipe that does not meet both of the above requirements is referred to as "restrained". Typically, long straight lengths of buried pipe and aboveground pipe on closely spaced rigid supports are classified as restrained, whereas buried pipelines adjacent to bends or unanchored end caps can be regarded as restrained or unrestrained, depending on specific circumstances.*

4.6.3 Discontinuity stresses

The stress design criteria in this Standard are not applicable to gross structural discontinuities such as those that are present at small attachments and partial-penetration welds. The designer shall provide protection against membrane, ratcheting, and fatigue failure for discontinuity conditions, using sound engineering practices.

Note: *For thick-wall components, the equivalent mean diameter pressure-design formula and stress limits for design based on stress analysis from the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 2, may be used.*

4.6.4 Supplemental stress design

Supplemental structural limit criteria as described in Clause 4.3.1 shall be given due consideration for installation, pressure testing, operation, monitoring, and maintenance.

4.6.5 Hoop stress

The hoop stress used in stress analysis for any location on the pipeline system shall be calculated using the following formula:

$$S_h = \frac{PD}{2t_n}$$

where

S_h = hoop stress, MPa

P = design pressure, MPa

D = outside diameter of pipe, mm

t_n = pipe nominal wall thickness, less allowances specified in Clause 4.3.10, mm

4.6.6 Steel properties

Flexibility calculations shall be based upon the modulus of elasticity at the lowest expected pipe temperature. For carbon and high-strength low-alloy steels for temperatures up to 230 °C, the following values may be used:

a) 207 000 MPa for the modulus of elasticity (E_c);

b) 12×10^{-6} °C^{-1} for the linear coefficient of thermal expansion (α); and

c) 0.3 for Poisson's ratio (ν).

4.7 Flexibility and stress analysis — Stress design for restrained portions of pipeline systems

Note: *In the following equations, compressive stresses are negative and tensile stresses are positive in the algebraic equation.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.7.1 Combined hoop and longitudinal stresses

Unless special design measures are implemented to ensure the stability of the pipeline, the hoop stress due to design pressure combined with the net longitudinal stress due to the combined effects of pipe temperature changes and internal fluid pressure shall be limited in accordance with the following formula:

$S_h - S_L \leq 0.90\ S \times T$

Note: *This formula does not apply if SL is positive (i.e., tension).*

where

S_h = hoop stress due to design pressure, MPa, as determined using the formula given in Clause 4.6.5

S_L = longitudinal compression stress, MPa, as determined using the following formula:

$S_L = \nu S_h - E_c \alpha (T_2 - T_1)$

where

ν = Poisson's ratio

E_c = modulus of elasticity of steel, MPa

α = linear coefficient of thermal expansion, $°C^{-1}$

T_2 = maximum operating temperature, °C

T_1 = ambient temperature at time of restraint, °C

S = specified minimum yield strength, MPa

T = temperature factor (see Clause 4.3.9)

4.7.2 Combined stresses for restrained spans

4.7.2.1

For those portions of restrained pipelines that are freely spanning or supported above ground, the combined stress shall be limited in accordance with the following formula:

$S_h - S_L + S_B \leq S \times T$

where

S_h = hoop stress due to design pressure, MPa, as determined using the formula given in Clause 4.6.5

S_L = longitudinal compression stress, MPa, as determined using the formula given in Clause 4.7.1

S_B = absolute value of beam bending compression stresses resulting from live and dead loads, MPa

S = specified minimum yield strength, MPa

T = temperature factor (see Clause 4.3.9)

Δ

4.7.2.2

The maximum beam bending compressive stress shall be calculated using a beam column analysis or other acceptable method and the stability of such free spans shall be checked to ensure that the axial compressive load due to pressure plus positive temperature differential is less than 0.8 of the elastic critical buckling load.

4.7.3 Anchors and restraints

Expansion of partially restrained buried pipelines can cause unacceptable movement, stress or strain at points where such pipelines terminate, change direction, or change size. Unless such unacceptable

 © 2015 CSA Group

movements are restrained by suitable anchors or ground restraint, necessary flexibility shall be provided.

4.8 Flexibility and stress analysis — Stress design for unrestrained portions of pipeline systems

4.8.1

Unrestrained portions of pipeline systems shall be designed to have sufficient flexibility to prevent thermal expansion and contraction from causing excessive stresses in the piping material, excessive bending and unusual loads at joints, and undesirable forces and moments at points of connection to equipment, anchorage points, and guide points.

4.8.2

Where thermal expansion and contraction are expected to occur, flexibility shall be provided by the use of bends, loops, or offsets, or provision shall be made to absorb thermal strains by expansion joints or couplings of the slip joint or bellows type. Where expansion joints are used, anchors or ties of sufficient strength and rigidity shall be installed to withstand end forces due to fluid pressure and other causes.

4.8.3

The stresses due to thermal expansion for those portions of pipeline systems without axial restraint shall be combined in accordance with the following formula:

$$S_E = (S_b^2 + 4S_t^2)^{1/2}$$

where

S_E = thermal expansion stress range, MPa

S_b = $\frac{iM_b \times 10^3}{Z}$ = resultant bending stress, MPa

S_t = $\frac{M_t \times 10^3}{2Z}$ = torsional stress, MPa

where

i = stress intensification factor (see Clause 4.8.7)

M_b = resultant bending moment, N m

M_t = torsional moment, N m

Z = section modulus of pipe, mm^3

4.8.4

The thermal expansion stress range, based upon 100% of the expansion, shall be limited in accordance with the following formula:

$$S_E \leq 0.72S \times T$$

where

S_E = thermal expansion stress range, MPa

S = specified minimum yield strength, MPa

T = temperature factor (see Clause 4.3.9)

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.8.5

The sum of the longitudinal pressure stress and the total bending stress due to sustained force and wind loading (see Clause 4.2.3) shall be limited in accordance with the following formula:

$0.5S_h + S_B \leq S \times F \times L \times T$

where

S_h = hoop stress due to design pressure, MPa, as determined using the formula given in Clause 4.6.5

S_B = absolute value of beam bending compression stresses resulting from live and dead loads, MPa

S = specified minimum yield strength, MPa

F = design factor (see Clause 4.3.6)

L = location factor (see Clause 4.3.7)

T = temperature factor (see Clause 4.3.9)

4.8.6

The effects of restraints, such as support friction, branch connections, and lateral interferences, shall be considered in the stress calculations. The coefficient of friction of steel-to-steel contact for support design shall be a minimum of 0.4 unless special measures are implemented to reduce friction.

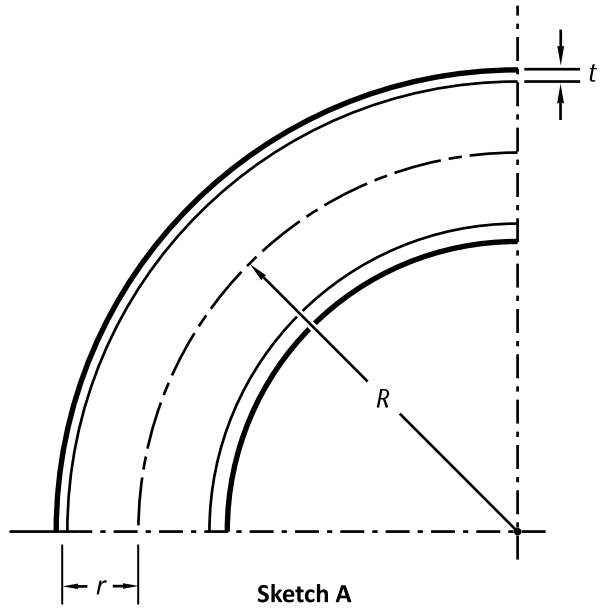
4.8.7

Stress intensification and flexibility of components shall be considered in the stress calculations.

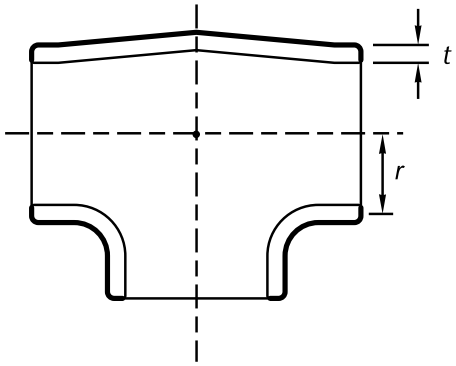
Note: *In the absence of more directly applicable data, the flexibility factors and stress intensification factors given in Table 4.8 should be used.*

© 2015 CSA Group

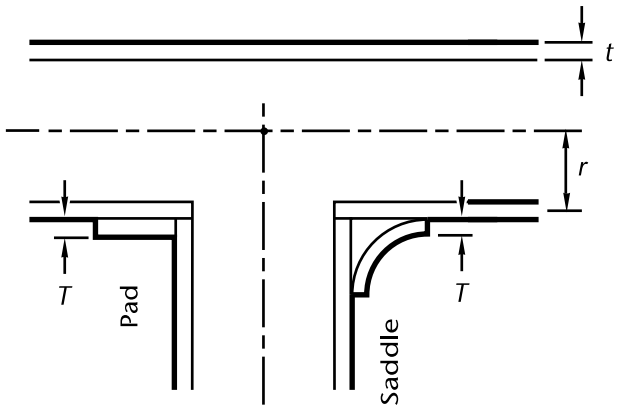
Table 4.8
Flexibility and stress intensification factors
(See Clauses 4.8.7, 11.14.2, and C.5.1.4.)



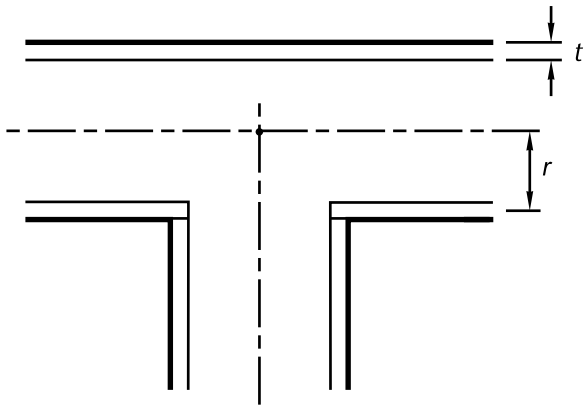
Sketch A



Sketch B



Sketch C



Sketch D

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 4.8 (Concluded)

Description	Flexibility factor, κ*	Stress intensification factor, i*
Buttwelded joint, reducer, or welding neck flange	1	1.0
Double-welded slip-on or socket welding flange	1	1.2
Fillet-welded joint or single-welded socket welding flange	1	1.3
Lap joint flange (with ASME B16.9 lap joint stub)	1	1.6
Screwed pipe joint or screwed flange	1	2.3
Corrugated pipe, straight or curved, or creased bend‡	5	2.5

Description	Flexibility factor, κ*	Stress intensification factor, i*	Flexibility characteristic, h	See sketch
Welding elbow or pipe bend†	$\frac{1.65}{h}$	$\frac{0.9}{h^{2/3}}$	$\frac{tR}{r^2}$	A
Welding tee per CSA Z245.11	1	$\frac{0.9}{h^{2/3}}$	$4.4\frac{t}{r}$	B
Reinforced fabricated tee with pad or saddle	1	$\frac{0.9}{h^{2/3}}$	$\frac{(t+1/2T)^{\frac{5}{2}}}{t^{3/2}r}$	C
Unreinforced fabricated tee	1	$\frac{0.9}{h^{2/3}}$	$\frac{t}{r}$	D

* *The flexibility factors and stress intensification factors apply to fittings of the same nominal wall thickness as the pipe used in the pipeline system and shall in no case be taken as less than unity. They apply over the effective arc length (shown by dash-dot lines in the sketches) for elbows, and to the intersection point for tees.*

† *Where flanges are attached to one or both ends, the values of κ and i in this Table shall be multiplied by the following factors:*

a) one end flanged: $(h)^{1/6}$

b) both ends flanged: $(h)^{1/3}$

‡ *Factors shown apply to bending. Flexibility factor for torsion equals 0.9.*

Note: *Designers are cautioned that more comprehensive analysis than that specified in Clauses 4.6 to 4.10 can be necessary for specific cases.*

4.8.8

Specified dimensions of pipe and fittings shall be used in flexibility calculations.

4.8.9

In addition to the thermal expansion of the piping itself, the linear and angular movements of the equipment to which it is attached shall be considered.

4.8.10

Where cold-springing is used, the reactions R' shall be obtained as follows from the reactions R, derived from the applicable flexibility formula as follows:

$R' = \left(1 - \frac{2}{3}C_s\right)R$ for values of C_s less than 0.6

© 2015 CSA Group

= C_sR for values of C_s from 0.6 to 1.0

where

R' = maximum reaction for the pipe after cold-spring; such reactions shall not exceed limits that the attached equipment or anchorage is designed to withstand

C_s = cold-spring factor, which varies from 0.0 for no cold-spring to 1.0 for 100% cold-spring

R = reactions corresponding to the full thermal expansion range based upon the modulus of elasticity in the cold condition (E_c)

4.9 Flexibility and stress analysis — Loads on pipe-supporting elements

4.9.1 General

The forces and moments transmitted to connected equipment (e.g., valves, separators, tanks, pressure vessels, and compression or pumping equipment) shall be kept within safe limits.

4.9.2 Supports and braces

4.9.2.1

Supports shall be designed to support the pipe without causing excessive local stresses in the pipe and without imposing excessive axial or lateral friction forces that can preclude the desired freedom of movement.

4.9.2.2

Where vibration of piping during operation is anticipated, suitable precautions shall be taken to minimize and control it by installing devices such as dampeners and braces.

4.10 Flexibility and stress analysis — Design of pipe-supporting elements

Attachments to the pipe shall be designed to minimize additional stresses in the pipe wall. Nonwelded attachments, such as pipe clamps and ring girders, should be used where they fulfill the supporting or anchoring function. Where welded attachments are required for pipelines designed to operate at hoop stress levels of more than 50% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe, such attachments shall be welded to a separate cylindrical member that completely encircles the pipe and such an encircling member shall be welded to the pipe by continuous circumferential welds.

Δ

4.11 Cover and clearance

4.11.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The cover requirements for buried pipelines shall not be less than the values given in Table 4.9, except as allowed by Clause 4.11.2.

4.11.2

Where underground structures or adverse conditions prevent installation with the cover required in Table 4.9, buried pipelines may be installed with less cover, provided that they are protected against anticipated external loads.

Note: *ALA document* Design of Buried Steel Pipe *addresses design provisions to evaluate the integrity of buried steel pipe for a range of applied loads.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.11.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The clearance (in any direction) requirements for buried pipelines near other pipelines, structures, conductors, or underground cables which do not form part of the pipeline system shall be specified by the designer in accordance with Clause 4.11.4 and, except as allowed by Clause 4.11.5, shall not be less than the values given in Table 4.9.

4.11.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

When specifying the clearance requirements for a buried pipeline system near other pipelines, structures, conductors, or underground cables which do not form part of the system, the designer shall give consideration to

a) clearance required to perform construction, maintenance, and repair activities on the pipeline and other adjacent pipelines or buried objects;
b) excavation activities (including trenchless excavation) in the same corridor;
c) pipe movement during operation;
d) protection and temporary support of the pipeline and adjacent buried objects during construction, maintenance or repair activities; and
e) interference between cathodic protection and grounding systems.

Notes:

1) *INGAA* Guidelines for Parallel Construction of Pipelines *discusses pre-construction, construction, and post-construction measures to prevent incidents, including pipeline separation distance considerations during initial route selection.*

2) *CGA* Best Practices*, version 9.0 discusses industry best practices relating to damage prevention, including clearance considerations.*

4.11.5

Reduced clearance may be used for pipeline bundles, or where the pipelines are appropriately protected from damage that can result from proximity to other underground facilities.

4.11.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

When specifying the cover and clearance requirements, the designer shall give consideration to the potential for collateral damage to the new pipeline due to failure of the existing pipeline(s), or to all existing buried facilities due to failure of the new pipeline.

Notes:

1) *IGEM/TD/1 establishes minimum separation distances for natural gas pipelines and should be considered in establishing separation distance based on collateral damage considerations.*

2) *For parallel pipelines outside the scope of IGEM/TD/1, the designer should perform an analysis that accounts for crater size and probability of involvement with adjacent buried pipelines or structures. The analysis should account for gas composition, maximum operating pressure, pipe diameter, soil type, and depth of cover of both pipelines.*

4.11.7

Buried oilfield water pipelines shall be covered to a depth sufficient to protect them from freezing.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ

Table 4.9
Cover and clearance
(See Clauses 4.11.1, 4.11.2, 4.11.3, and 4.12.2.1.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

Location	Type of pipeline	Class location	Cover for buried pipelines, minimum, m: Normal excavation	Cover for buried pipelines, minimum, m: Rock excavation requiring blasting or removal by comparable means
General (other than as indicated below)	LVP or gas HVP or CO_2 HVP or CO_2	Any 1 2, 3, or 4	0.60 0.90 1.20	0.60 0.60 0.60
Right-of-way (road or railway)	Any	Any	0.75	0.75
Below travelled surface (road)*	Any	Any	1.20	1.20
Below base of rail (railway)† — Cased — Uncased	 Any Any	 Any Any	 1.20§ 2.00§	 1.20§ 2.00§
Water crossing	Any	Any	1.20‡	0.60
Drainage or irrigation ditch invert	Any	Any	0.75	0.60

Clearance from	Type of pipeline	Class location	Clearance for buried pipelines, minimum, mm
Underground structures and utilities (conduits, cables, and other pipelines)	Any	Any	300
Drainage tile	Any	Any	50

* *See Clause 4.12.3.1.*

† *Within 7 m of centreline of the outside track, measured at right angles to the centreline of the track.*

‡ *Reduced cover, but not less than 0.6 m, may be used if analysis demonstrates that the potential for erosion is minimal.*

§ *Deviations from these requirements are permissible provided that the appropriate cover profile is determined through an engineering assessment in consideration of both normal and abnormal external loadings, and any other factors that could impact the integrity of the pipeline, and that*

a) the cover directly below the base of rail is a minimum of 1.2 m for cased and 2.0 m for uncased pipelines; and

b) a minimum depth of cover of 0.75 m is maintained throughout the remaining area.

Notes:

1) *Cover shall be measured to the top of the carrier pipe or casing pipe, whichever is applicable.*

2) *See also Clause 1.6.*

© 2015 CSA Group

4.12 Crossings

Note: *For additional design requirements applicable to crossings installed by horizontal directional drilling, see Clause 4.22.*

4.12.1 General

4.12.1.1

The requirements of Clause 4.12 are applicable to pipeline crossings of, and by, utilities, roads, railways, and water. Other crossings shall be designed as specified in Clauses 4.1 to 4.3.

Note: *Warman, Hart and Francini (2009) may be used for guidance in designing the pipeline for the anticipated surface loads.*

4.12.1.2

Unless otherwise specified in Clause 4.12, the stresses due to all normally expected loads shall be as specified in Clauses 4.6 to 4.10.

Δ

4.12.1.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where practical, crossings other than water crossings shall be made so that the angle between the centreline of the railway, road, or utility being crossed and the centreline of the pipeline is not less than 45° and is as close to 90° as practical.

4.12.2 Crossings of utilities

Δ

4.12.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where practical, the pipeline shall maintain straight alignment and be at a depth suitable to maintain the required depth of cover (see Table 4.9) for the full width of the right-of-way.

4.12.2.2

Interference with, or from, other systems through the application of cathodic protection shall be dealt with by mutual action of the parties involved (see Clause 9).

4.12.3 Crossings of roads and railways

4.12.3.1 Uncased road crossings

Uncased steel pipelines with welded joints may be installed under roads, provided that the following requirements are met:

a) The pipe has been designed to sustain the loads at the crossing as specified in Clause 4.3.
b) The pipe nominal wall thickness is not less than the applicable least nominal wall thickness given in Table 4.10 or the applicable least nominal wall thickness for steel carrier pipe specified in Clause 4.3.11.2, whichever is the greater.
c) The design requirements are applied to the pipeline for a minimum distance of 7 m beyond the travelled surface of the road, measured at right angles to the centreline of the travelled surface.
d) All circumferential joints that are associated with the crossing and are within the road right-of-way are nondestructively inspected as specified in Clause 7.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 4.10
Least nominal wall thickness for steel casing pipe in cased crossings and carrier pipe in uncased crossings
(See Clauses 4.12.3.1 to 4.12.3.3 and 15.3.5 and Table 4.5.)

Pipe outside diameter, mm	Least nominal wall thickness, mm	
	Roads	Railways
88.9	3.2	3.2
101.6	3.2	3.2
114.3	3.2	3.2
141.3	4.0	4.0
168.3	4.8	4.8
219.1	4.8	4.8
273.1	4.8	4.8
323.9	4.8	4.8
355.6	4.8	5.6
406.4	4.8	5.6
457	4.8	6.4
508	4.8	7.1
559	5.6	7.9
610	6.4	8.7
660	6.4	9.5
711	6.4	10.3
762	6.4	10.3
813	6.4	11.1
864	6.4	11.9
914	6.4	11.9
965	7.9	12.7
1016	7.9	12.7
1067	7.9	12.7
1118	7.9	14.3
1168	7.9	15.9
1219	8.3	15.9
1270	8.7	15.9
1321	9.5	19.1
1372	9.5	19.1
1422	9.5	19.1
1524	10.3	20.6

Note: *For intermediate pipe outside diameters, the minimum wall thickness may be determined by interpolation.*

4.12.3.2 Uncased railway crossings

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Uncased steel pipelines may be installed under railways, provided that the following requirements are met:

a) The pipe has been designed to sustain the loads at the crossing as specified in Clause 4.3.

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) For steel pipe with a joint factor of less than 1.00, the hoop stress in the carrier pipe does not exceed
   i) 50% of its specified minimum yield strength, if such pipe crosses secondary or industry tracks; and
   ii) 30% of its specified minimum yield strength, if such pipe crosses tracks that are other than secondary or industry tracks.
c) The pipe nominal wall thickness is not less than the applicable least nominal wall thickness given in Table 4.10 or the applicable least nominal wall thickness for steel carrier pipe specified in Clause 4.3.11.2, whichever is the greater.
d) The D/t ratio is not greater than the applicable maximum D/t ratio specified in Table 4.11.
e) The design requirements are applied to the pipeline for a minimum distance of 7 m beyond the centreline of the outside track, measured at right angles to the centreline of the track.
f) All circumferential joints within the railway rights-of-way are nondestructively inspected as specified in Clause 7.

Δ

Table 4.11
Maximum pipe diameter to wall thickness (D/t) ratio for uncased railway crossings
(See Clause 4.12.3.2.)

Maximum operating pressure, MPa	Maximum D/t ratio									
	Steel pipe grade									
	241	290	317	359	386	414	448	483	550	690
14.0	15	20	22	25	27	29	32	34	39	49
13.3	16	21	23	26	29	31	33	36	41	51
12.6	17	22	25	28	30	32	35	38	43	54
11.9	18	24	26	30	32	34	37	40	46	57
11.2	18	25	28	32	34	36	40	43	49	61
10.5	19	27	30	34	36	39	42	45	52	65
9.8	21	29	32	36	39	42	45	49	56	70
9.1	22	31	34	39	42	45	49	53	60	75
8.4	23	34	37	42	45	49	53	57	65	82
7.7	25	37	41	46	50	53	58	62	71	85
7.0	26	40	45	51	55	59	64	68	78	85
6.3	28	43	50	56	61	65	71	76	85	85
5.6	31	46	56	64	68	73	80	85	85	85
4.9	33	50	63	73	78	85	85	85	85	85
4.2	36	55	70	85	85	85	85	85	85	85
3.5	39	61	79	85	85	85	85	85	85	85

(Continued)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 4.11 (Concluded)

Maximum operating pressure, MPa	Maximum D/t ratio									
	Steel pipe grade									
	241	290	317	359	386	414	448	483	550	690
2.8	43	67	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85
2.1	48	80	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85

Notes:

1) *For intermediate operating pressures and grades, the D/t ratio may be determined by interpolation.*

2) *D/t ratio means the OD divided by the nominal wall thickness.*

3) *Design conditions used to develop this Table are as follows:*

a) *2.0 m minimum depth of cover;*
b) *55 °C temperature differential;*
c) *maximum hoop stress of 50% SMYS;*
d) *maximum combined circumferential stress of 72% SMYS;*
e) *maximum combined equivalent tensile stress of 90% SMYS;*
f) *E-80 rail loading criteria with an impact factor of 1.4 at the surface, reducing linearly to 1.0 at 3.0 m;*
g) *fluctuating stress limitation of 69 MPa based upon 2 000 000 cycles; and*
h) *maximum D/t ratio of 85.*

4.12.3.3 Cased crossings

Where cased crossings are installed, the design shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Carrier pipe shall be designed as specified in Clause 4.3.
b) For carrier pipe smaller than 168.3 mm OD, the outside diameter of the casing pipe shall be at least 50 mm greater than the outside diameter of the carrier pipe. For carrier pipe 168.3 mm OD or larger, the outside diameter of the casing pipe shall be at least 75 mm greater than the outside diameter of the carrier pipe.
c) Carrier pipe shall be held clear of the casing pipe by properly designed supports, insulators, or centring devices, installed so as to minimize external loads transmitted to the carrier pipe.
d) The ends of the casings shall be suitably sealed to the outside of the carrier pipe. Venting of sealed casings is not mandatory; however, where vents are installed, they shall be protected from the weather to prevent water from entering the casing. Where casing seals of a type that retain more than 35 kPa pressure between the casing and the carrier pipe are installed, and vents are not used, provision shall be made to relieve the internal pressure before carrying out maintenance work.
e) Casing pipe under roads shall be of sufficient length to absorb all of the external loading from the road bed at the point of crossing.
f) Casing pipe under railways shall extend to the greatest of the following distances, measured at right angles to the centreline of the track:
   i) 7 m each side from the centreline of the outside track;
   ii) 0.6 m beyond the toe of slope; and
   iii) 1 m beyond the ditch line or area that can be affected by normal ditch cleaning operations.
g) The nominal wall thickness for steel casing pipe shall be not less than the applicable least nominal wall thickness specified in Table 4.10.

4.12.4 Crossings of water

Note: *Where the designer considers the design and construction requirements of Clause 11 more appropriate, such requirements should be used for water crossings.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.12.4.1

The wall thickness of pipe shall be determined as specified in Clauses 4.2, 4.3, and 4.6 to 4.10. Special attention shall be given to the physical characteristics of crossings, such as composition and stability of the bed and banks, waves, currents, scouring, flooding, type and density of water-borne traffic, and other features that can cause adverse effects. Weight-coatings, river weights, screw anchors, or other means shall be used to maintain the position of pipelines under anticipated conditions of buoyancy and water motion.

4.12.4.2

Where it has been determined by the designer that aerial crossings are preferable to submarine crossings, aerial crossings may be used. Overhead structures used to suspend pipelines shall be designed in accordance with sound engineering practices.

4.13 Requirements for pipelines in proximity to electrical transmission lines and associated facilities

Δ 4.13.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipelines in proximity to electrical transmission lines and associated facilities shall be as specified in CAN/CSA-C22.3 No. 6.

Notes:

1) *Fault currents resulting from lightning and upset conditions of electrical facilities can result in danger to personnel and damage to coating and pipe. Such adverse effects can occur where a pipeline is close to the grounding facilities of electrical transmission line structures, substations, generating stations, and other facilities that have high fault current-carrying grounding networks.*

2) *Where buried pipelines are close to high fault current-carrying grounding networks, remedial measures can be necessary to protect the pipeline from resulting potential gradients in the earth near the pipelines.*

3) *Pipelines paralleling alternating current electrical transmission lines are subject to induced potentials. When such pipelines are under construction, or when personnel are in contact with such pipelines, precautions can be necessary to reduce the effects of induced alternating current potentials to acceptable levels. Where studies or tests show that alternating current potentials will be or are being induced on buried pipelines, it can be necessary to install devices to reduce such potentials to acceptable levels.*

4) *The effects on pipelines of power lines and associated facilities operating at lower voltages than addressed by the scope of CAN/CSA-C22.3 No. 6 should also be considered, and if necessary, mitigated.*

4.13.2 Effects on pipelines in proximity to high-voltage DC lines

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The effects on pipelines of normal and upset operation of high-voltage direct-current electrical transmission lines and associated facilities shall be considered and mitigated to acceptable levels.

Note: *Depending on soil resistivity, the interference effects on pipelines can be significant as far away as 70 km from a ground electrode on a direct-current electrical transmission line.*

4.13.3 Safety requirements

4.13.3.1

The designer shall take the following precautions:

a) for gas pipelines, employ blowdown connections that direct the gas away from electric conductors; and

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) in collaboration with the electric company, study the common problems of personnel safety, corrosion, electrical interference, and lightning.

4.13.3.2

Bonding conductors shall be installed across points where the pipeline is to be separated and shall be maintained while the pipeline is separated.

4.14 Design of compressor stations over 750 kW and pump stations over 375 kW

4.14.1 General

4.14.1.1

Compressor and pump units shall be sized and selected to provide safe and efficient operation, both individually and interactively, throughout the range of operating and upset conditions specified.

4.14.1.2

Main compressor and pump buildings shall be located on property under the control of the operating company and shall be far enough away from adjacent property not under control of the operating company to minimize the possibility of fire spreading to and from structures on adjacent property. There shall be enough open space around main buildings to allow free movement of fire-fighting equipment.

4.14.1.3

Building ventilation shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Sufficient ventilation shall be provided so that employees are not endangered, under normal operating conditions within normal work areas, by an accumulation of hazardous concentrations of flammable or noxious vapours or gases.
b) Forced-air ventilation systems, where provided, shall stop automatically on fire detection and shall energize and run automatically on gas detection.
c) For gases that are less dense than air, roof or wall openings shall be designed to ventilate all areas; particular consideration shall be given to ceiling areas where gases can collect.

4.14.1.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Fences that can hamper or prevent escape of persons in an emergency from the vicinity of stations shall be provided with a minimum of two exits. Such exits shall be located for easy access and shall provide effective escape to a place of safety.

4.14.1.5

Consideration shall be given to providing barriers, signs, or thermal insulation to protect personnel from hot piping and equipment. Thermal insulation shall be protected by an outer covering providing resistance to oil, grease, and dust.

4.14.1.6

The designer shall prepare procedures for commissioning of compressor and pump stations that include checking the satisfactory operation of the protective devices.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.14.1.7

Compressor and pump stations shall have adequate emergency lighting to assist station personnel in evacuating the buildings. The operation of the emergency lighting system shall not be affected by the emergency shutdown system.

Note: *For stations without a primary electric power source, portable battery-powered lighting is considered adequate.*

4.14.1.8

Starting gas systems shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) A check valve shall be installed in the starting gas line near each engine to prevent backflow from the engine into the gas piping system. A check valve shall also be placed in the main gas line on the immediate outlet side of the gas tank or tanks.

   Note: *Equipment for cooling the gas and removing the moisture and entrained oil should be installed between the starting gas compressor and the gas storage tanks.*

b) Gas receivers and storage bottles for use in pump and compressor stations shall be designed and constructed as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII.

c) Suitable provision shall be made to prevent starting gas from entering the compressor or pump unit and actuating moving parts while work is in progress on the unit or on equipment driven by the unit. Acceptable means of accomplishing this are installation of a blind flange, removal of a portion of the gas supply piping, or locking closed a stop valve and locking open a vent downstream from it.

4.14.2 Design of compressor stations over 750 kW

Note: *While the requirements of this Clause apply to the design of stations over 750 kW, consideration should also be given to applying these requirements to the design of smaller stations.*

4.14.2.1

A minimum of two exits shall be provided for basements, each operating floor of main compressor buildings, and elevated walkways or platforms 3 m or more above ground or floor level, except that individual engine catwalks do not require two exits. Items such as fixed ladders or stairways may be used for such exits. The maximum distance of an unobstructed escape path from any point on an operating floor to an exit shall not exceed 23 m, measured along the centreline of the escape path (aisles, walkways, etc.). Such exits shall be unobstructed doorways located to provide a convenient escape and shall provide unobstructed passage to a place of safety. Door latches shall be of a type that can be readily opened from the inside without a key. Swinging doors located in exterior walls shall swing outward. Fully tempered or safety glass shall be used for exit door windows.

4.14.2.2

Compressor station prime movers and gas compressors, together with all auxiliaries, accessories, and control and support systems, shall be designed for safe and efficient operation of the unit throughout the range of operating conditions. Gas compressors shall be designed for continuous service within a range of operating conditions up to the maximum prime mover output.

4.14.2.3

Liquid-removal equipment shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Where liquids are anticipated, provision shall be made to protect the compressors against the introduction of such liquids in quantities that can damage them.

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) Where separators are used to protect compressors, each separator shall
   i) have a manually operable means of removing liquids;
   ii) where slugs of liquids can be carried into gas compressors, have an automatic shutdown device to initiate a unit shutdown upon detection of high liquid levels in the station liquid-removal equipment; and
   iii) be manufactured as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII, except that liquid separators constructed of pipe and fittings without internal welding shall be built with a location factor of 0.50 or less.

   Note: *Consideration should also be given to installing automatic liquid-removal facilities and a high-level alarm.*

Δ **4.14.2.4**

Compressor stations shall have emergency shutdown systems that meet the following requirements:

a) Such systems shall provide a means to isolate the station and blow down the station piping, except that gas supplies to essential station auxiliaries may be maintained.
b) Blowdown piping shall extend to a location where the discharge gas will not create a hazard to the compressor station or surrounding area.
c) Such systems shall provide a means for the shutdown of all gas compressing equipment and gas-fired and electrical facilities in the vicinity of gas headers and compressor buildings, except that electrical equipment may remain energized, provided that it meets the requirements of the applicable code.

   Note: *In Canada, electrical installation requirements are found in the* Canadian Electrical Code, Part I.
d) Such systems shall be operable from at least two locations, each of which is
   i) outside the gas area of the station;
   ii) preferably near the exit gates if the station is fenced, or near the emergency exits if it is not fenced;
   iii) not more than 150 m from the limits of the station; and
   iv) readily visible and accessible.

4.14.2.5

Where compressor stations supply gas directly to distribution systems with no other adequate source of gas available, the emergency shutdown systems shall not vent such gas distribution systems. The emergency shutdown systems shall also be designed to prevent unintended disruptions of the gas supply to the gas distribution systems.

4.14.2.6

Design and construction of compressor stations shall be such that the possibility of explosion or fire damage to equipment or services necessary for the satisfactory operation of the station emergency shutdown systems is minimized.

Note: *Examples of measures that are intended to minimize the possibility of damage include protective barriers, alternative energy sources, redundant controls, and remote location of critical equipment.*

Δ **4.14.2.7**

Compressor buildings shall have suitable systems for the detection of fire and hazardous atmospheres.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Actuation of such systems shall initiate a station emergency shutdown, except that the extent of the station shutdown may be limited to

a) shutdown of all gas-compressing equipment and gas-fired and electrical facilities within the compressor building, except that electrical equipment may remain energized, provided that it meets the requirements of the applicable code;

Note: *In Canada, electrical installation requirements are found in the* Canadian Electrical Code, Part I.

b) blowdown and isolation of gas piping and headers connected to the gas compressors referred to in Item a); and

c) shutdown of the gas-fired facilities in the vicinity of the gas piping and headers referred to in Item b).

Δ **4.14.2.8**

Gas compressor units on transmission line compressor stations shall have individual emergency shutdown systems originating from suitably located manually operated stations in order to bring the units safely to a complete stop in as short a time as practical. The electrical, hydraulic, and pneumatic circuits to the normal unit shutdown auxiliaries shall be maintained.

4.14.2.9

Where the stability of the pipeline system or the ground can be endangered by changes in the temperature of the flowing gas, compressor stations shall be provided with automatic systems that control gas temperatures to acceptable levels or shut down the compressors when such temperatures are exceeded.

4.14.2.10

Fuel gas control shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Compressor station gas engines that operate with pressure gas injection shall be equipped so that stopping the engine automatically shuts off the fuel and vents the engine distribution manifold.

b) Compressor station gas turbines shall be equipped so that initiation of unit shutdown automatically shuts off the fuel supply.

c) Fuel gas lines within compressor stations, serving various buildings, including any associated residences, shall be provided with master shutoff valves located outdoors.

d) The pressure-control devices for the fuel gas system for compressor stations shall limit fuel gas pressure such that

   i) the normal operating pressure of the system is not exceeded by more than 25%; and

   ii) the maximum operating pressure of the system is not exceeded by more than 10% or 35 kPa, whichever is greater.

e) Suitable provisions shall be made to prevent gas from entering the fuel gas manifold or starting motor of gas compressor prime movers while work on the prime movers or the driven equipment is in progress.

Δ **4.14.2.11**

Compressor station piping shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Compressor station gas piping other than instrument, control, and sampling piping shall be made of steel.

b) Emergency valves and controls shall be clearly identified by signs. Aboveground piping shall be clearly identified to indicate its function.

© 2015 CSA Group

c) Each type of piping system or a portion of a piping system within compressor stations may be designed as specified in ASME B31.3, provided that the standard is so used in its entirety and design code or standard breaks are specified.

Notes:

1) *All other requirements in Clause 4 relating to compressor station design are applicable.*

2) *Examples of types of piping systems included are those for main service fluids, lubricating oil, water, steam, processing, and hydraulic fluids.*

4.14.2.12

Additional safety and protective devices shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Compressor station prime movers other than electrical induction or synchronous motors shall have automatic devices to shut down the units before the speed of either the prime movers or the driven units exceeds the maximum safe speed established by the respective manufacturers.

b) Crankcases of gas engines in compressor stations shall be equipped with explosion doors or suitable crankcase ventilation.

c) Mufflers for gas engines in compressor stations shall have vent slots or holes in the baffles of each compartment to prevent gas from being trapped in the mufflers.

d) Gas compressor units shall have shutdown or alarm devices that operate in the event of inadequate cooling or lubrication of the units.

e) Gas compressor units shall have shutdown devices to prevent the temperature of the discharge gas from exceeding the maximum design temperature of the gas compressor and associated gas piping systems.

f) Centrifugal gas compressors that use seal oil as a gas compressor sealing mechanism shall have an emergency seal oil system sized to enable safe shutdown of the compressor on loss of normal seal oil supply.

g) Centrifugal compressors shall have vibration and surge protection.

h) Thrust loads and moments imposed on mechanical equipment shall not exceed the manufacturer's recommended values or, where such recommended values are not available, the limits specified in API 617 and API 618 for centrifugal and reciprocating compressors respectively.

i) Centrifugal and positive displacement gas compressors shall have an automatic high-pressure unit-shutdown or unloading device. The high-pressure-sensing point shall be located between the compressor and the first block valve on the discharge side of the compressor.

4.14.3 Design of pump stations over 375 kW

Note: *While the requirements of this Clause apply to the design of stations over 375 kW, consideration should also be given to applying these requirements to the design of smaller stations.*

4.14.3.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pump prime movers, together with all auxiliaries, accessories, and control and support systems, shall be designed for safe and efficient operation of the unit throughout the range of operating conditions.

4.14.3.2

Flare and drain systems shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Piping systems that handle HVP liquids shall blowdown or relieve to a flare system or to pressure-retaining storage.

b) Piping systems that handle LVP liquids shall drain to adequate containment, collection, and holding facilities.

c) Aboveground flare and drain piping shall be firmly supported and restrained to counteract the reaction force of the discharging liquid.
d) Where the possibility of service fluid leakage (e.g., seal leaks) exists in the pump area, adequate collection and holding facilities shall be installed.
e) Piping and vessels for flare and drain systems shall be designed and arranged such that under all conditions the flare's flame cannot flash back into the drainage tank, the flare and drain system piping, or the pump station.

Note: *Techniques for the prevention of flashbacks include the use of flame arresters and positive purge systems. See API 2028 for guidance on the use of flame arresters. See 33 CFR 154, Appendix A, for guidance on test methods for in-line and firebox flame arresters.*

Δ **4.14.3.3**

Pump stations shall have emergency shutdown systems that meet the following requirements:
a) Such systems shall provide a means to isolate the station, except that fuel supplies to essential station auxiliaries may be maintained.
b) Such systems shall provide a means for the shutdown of all pumping equipment and fuel-fired and electrical facilities in the vicinity of headers and pump buildings, except that electrical equipment may remain energized, provided that it meets the requirements of the applicable code.

   Note: *In Canada, electrical installation requirements are found in the* Canadian Electrical Code, Part I.
c) Such systems shall be operable from at least one manual push-button that is
   i) preferably near the exit gates if the station is fenced or near the emergency exits if it is not fenced;
   ii) not more than 150 m from the limits of the station; and
   iii) readily visible and accessible.

4.14.3.4

Design and construction of pump stations shall be such that the possibility of explosion or fire damage to equipment or services necessary for the satisfactory operation of the station emergency shutdown systems is minimized.

Note: *Examples of measures that are intended to minimize the possibility of damage include protective barriers, alternative energy sources, redundant controls, and remote location of critical equipment.*

Δ **4.14.3.5**

Pump buildings shall have suitable systems for the detection of fire and hazardous atmosphere. Actuation of such systems shall initiate a station emergency shutdown, except that the extent of the shutdown may be limited to the following:
a) shutdown of all pumping equipment and fuel-fired and electrical facilities within the pump building, except that electrical equipment may remain energized, provided that it meets the requirements of the applicable code;

   Note: *In Canada, electrical installation requirements are found in the* Canadian Electrical Code, Part I.
b) isolation of the pump building piping and headers connected to the pump station fluid piping; and
c) shutdown of fuel-fired facilities in the vicinity of the piping and headers referred to in Item b).

Δ **4.14.3.6**

Pump units shall have individual emergency shutdown systems originating from suitably located, manually operated stations in order to bring the units safely to a complete stop as quickly as practical. The electrical, hydraulic, and pneumatic circuits to the normal unit shutdown auxiliaries shall be maintained.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.14.3.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Fuel gas control shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) The pressure-control devices for the fuel gas system for pump stations shall limit fuel gas pressure such that
   i) the normal operating pressure of the system is not exceeded by more than 25%; and
   ii) the maximum operating pressure of the system is not exceeded by more than 10% or 35 kPa, whichever is greater.
b) Suitable provisions shall be made to prevent gas from entering the fuel gas manifold or starting motor of prime movers while work on the prime movers or the driven equipment is in progress.

Δ 4.14.3.8

Pump station piping shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Pump station piping other than instrument, control, and sampling piping shall be made of steel.
b) The designer shall avoid dead-ended piping unless corrosion is mitigated in such piping sections. Consideration shall be given to sizing piping to maintain a flow velocity sufficient to minimize the accumulation of water and sediment.
c) Emergency valves and controls shall be clearly identified by signs. Aboveground piping shall be clearly identified to indicate its function.
d) Each type of piping system or a portion of a piping system within pump stations may be designed as specified in ASME B31.3, provided that the code or standard is so used in its entirety and design code or standard breaks are specified.

Notes:

1) *All other requirements in Clause 4 relating to pump station design are applicable.*

2) *Examples of types of piping systems included are those for main service fluids, lubricating oil, water, steam, processing, and hydraulic fluids.*

4.14.3.9

Additional safety and protective devices shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Pump unit prime movers other than electrical induction or synchronous motors shall have automatic devices to shut down the units before the speed of either the prime movers or the driven units exceeds the maximum safe speed established by the respective manufacturers.
b) Crankcases of gas engines in pump stations shall be equipped with explosion doors or suitable crankcase ventilation.
c) Mufflers for gas engines in pump stations shall have vent slots or holes in the baffles of each compartment to prevent gas from being trapped in the mufflers.
d) Pump units shall have shutdown or alarm devices that operate in the event of inadequate cooling or lubrication of the units.
e) Thrust loads and moments imposed on mechanical equipment shall not exceed the manufacturer's recommended values or, where such recommended values are not available, the limits specified in API 610 for pumps.
f) Positive displacement pumps that have the capability of overpressurizing the station piping shall have an automatic high-pressure unit-shutdown device. The high-pressure-sensing point shall be located between the pump and the first block valve on the discharge side of the pumping unit.
g) Centrifugal pumps that have the capability of overpressurizing the station piping shall have an automatic high-pressure unit-shutdown device. Sensing points shall be located where the shutoff head of the pumps exceeds the pressure rating of the piping.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.15 Liquid storage in oil pipeline pump stations, tank farms, and terminals

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *API 2610 provides guidance relating to the design, construction, operation, inspection, and maintenance of petroleum terminal and tank facilities.*

4.15.1 Aboveground tanks over 4000 L

4.15.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Aboveground tanks having a capacity of over 4000 L shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable codes.

Notes:

1) *In Canada, standards and specifications applicable to the size and intended service are listed in the* National Fire Code of Canada*.*

2) *Consideration should be given to incorporating an undertank leak detection system in the design of aboveground tanks. See API 650 and API 2610 for guidance.*

4.15.1.2

The location and spacing of aboveground tanks shall be as specified in NFPA 30.

4.15.1.3

Venting for aboveground tanks shall be as specified in NFPA 30.

4.15.1.4

Secondary containment for aboveground tanks shall be provided as specified in NFPA 30, except that the volumetric capacity of the diked area shall not be less than 110% of the volume of the largest tank within the diked area, assuming a full tank. To allow for volume occupied by tanks, the capacity of the diked area enclosing more than one tank shall be calculated after deducting the volume of the tanks, other than the largest tank, below the height of the dike. The floor and walls of the diked area shall have an impermeable barrier with a hydraulic conductivity of 1×10^{-6} cm/s or less, determined as specified in ASTM D5084.

4.15.1.5

Overfill protection for aboveground tanks shall be as specified in NFPA 30.

Note: *See API 2350 for guidance on the implementation of the overfill protection requirements set out in NFPA 30.*

4.15.1.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Aboveground tanks other than relief tanks shall be designed and constructed to control emissions of volatile organic compounds.

Note: *Guidelines for volatile organic compound control systems are provided in CCME PN 1180.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.15.2 Aboveground tanks of 4000 L or less

Aboveground tanks of 4000 L or less shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable codes.

Note: *In Canada, standards and specifications applicable to the size and intended service are listed in the* National Fire Code of Canada.

4.15.3 Underground tanks

Underground tanks shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable codes, and secondary containment and leak detection shall be provided.

Notes:

1) *In Canada, standards and specifications applicable to the size and intended service are listed in the* National Fire Code of Canada.

2) *See PEI RP100 for recommended practices and procedures in the installation of underground tanks, including guidance on secondary containment and leak detection.*

Δ

4.15.4 Pressure spheres, bullets, and ancillary vessels

Pressure spheres, bullets, and ancillary vessels shall be designed, constructed, and pressure tested as specified in CSA B51 and provided with appropriate overpressure protection.

4.15.5 Pipe-type storage vessels

Pipe-type storage vessels shall be designed as specified in Clause 4 for pipe.

Note: *For limitations for sour service pipelines, see Clause 16.3.6.*

4.16 Gas storage in pipe-type and bottle-type holders

Note: *For limitations for sour service pipelines, see Clause 16.3.6.*

4.16.1 General

Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation or accumulation in pipe-type and bottle-type holders, connecting piping, and auxiliary equipment of liquids that can cause corrosion or can interfere with the operation of the holders.

4.16.2 Aboveground installations

Δ

4.16.2.1

Aboveground pipe-type and bottle-type holders shall be designed, constructed, and pressure tested as specified in CSA B51 and provided with appropriate overpressure protection.

4.16.2.2

Aboveground holders shall be installed only at sites under the exclusive use of the operating company, and the sites shall be entirely surrounded by fencing to prevent unauthorized access.

4.16.2.3

The minimum clearances between aboveground holders and the fence boundaries of the site shall be 8 m for design pressures of less than 7.0 MPa and 30 m for design pressures of 7.0 MPa or greater.

© 2015 CSA Group

4.16.3 Underground installations

4.16.3.1
Bottle-type holders shall not be installed underground.

Δ **4.16.3.2**
Pipe-type holders for in-line buffer storage purposes intended for underground installation shall be designed, constructed, pressure tested, and operated as specified in this Standard; pipe-type holders for other purposes intended for underground installation shall be designed, constructed, and pressure tested as specified in CSA B51.

4.17 Vaults

4.17.1 Structural design

4.17.1.1
Underground vaults and pits for items such as valves, meters, and pressure-relieving, pressure-limiting, and pressure-regulating stations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with good structural engineering practice to withstand the loads that can be imposed upon them. Equipment and piping shall be suitably sustained by metal, masonry, or concrete supports.

4.17.1.2
Sufficient working space shall be provided so that all the equipment required within the vault can be properly and safely installed, operated, and maintained.

4.17.1.3
Piping entering, and within, regulator vaults and pits shall be steel, except that copper control and gauge piping may be used. Where piping extends through the vault or pit structure, provisions shall be made to prevent the passage of gases or liquids through the openings and to minimize stress in the piping.

4.17.1.4
The design of vaults and pits shall take into consideration the protection of installed equipment from damage caused by falling portions of the roof or cover, or falling tools or other objects. The control piping shall be placed and supported so that its exposure to damage is reduced to a minimum.

4.17.2 Location
For the selection of vault sites, consideration shall be given to accessibility and exposure to
a) traffic;
b) flooding; and
c) adjacent subsurface hazards.

4.17.3 Vault ventilation

4.17.3.1
Underground vaults and closed-top pits containing a pressure-regulating, pressure-reducing, pressure-limiting, or pressure-relieving station shall be ventilated, except that where the internal volume of such vaults and pits is less than 2 m^3, ventilation shall not be required.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ **4.17.3.2**

The following requirements shall apply to the ventilation of vaults and pits with an internal volume of 2 m^3 or greater:

a) Where their internal volume exceeds 6 m^3, vaults and pits shall be ventilated with two ducts, each having at least the ventilating effect of a 114.3 mm OD pipe.

b) Except as required by Clause 4.17.3.1, where their internal volume is less than 6 m^3, vaults and pits shall be either tightly closed or ventilated. Where such enclosures are not ventilated, openings shall be equipped with tight-fitting covers without open holes through which an explosive mixture can be ignited; means shall be provided for testing the internal atmosphere before removing the covers. Where such enclosures are ventilated by means of gratings or openings in the covers, the ratio of the internal volume in cubic metres to the effective ventilating area of such gratings or covers in square metres shall be less than 6.

c) The ventilation provided shall be sufficient to minimize the possible formation of a combustible atmosphere.

d) Ducts shall extend to a height above grade adequate to disperse any gas-air mixtures that can be discharged. The outside ends of the ducts shall be equipped with suitable weatherproof fittings or vent-heads designed to prevent foreign matter from entering or obstructing the ducts. The effective area of the openings in such fittings or vent heads shall be at least equal to the internal cross-sectional area of a 114.3 mm OD pipe. The lateral section of the ducts shall be as short as practical and shall be inclined to prevent the accumulation of liquids in the duct. The number of bends and offsets shall be minimized, and provisions shall be incorporated to facilitate the periodic cleaning of the ducts.

4.17.4 Drainage and waterproofing

4.17.4.1

Provision shall be made to minimize the entrance of water into vaults, and vault equipment shall be designed to operate safely if submerged.

4.17.4.2

Vaults containing gas piping shall not be connected by means of drain connections to other structures, such as sewers.

4.18 Pressure control and overpressure protection of piping

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

4.18.1 General

4.18.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pressure-control systems shall be installed where supply from any source makes it possible to pressurize the piping above its maximum operating pressure. Such pressure-control systems shall be set to operate at or below the maximum operating pressure.

Notes:

1) *For HVP, CO_2 or LVP piping, additional restrictions on operating pressure can apply. (See Clause 8.7.6.4.)*

2) *See Annex M for guidelines for the design and operation of equipment, devices, and system components that are used to control and monitor pressure and flow in liquid pipeline systems.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.18.1.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where failure of the pressure-control system, or other causes, can result in the maximum operating pressure of the piping being exceeded, overpressure protection shall be installed to ensure that the maximum operating pressure is not exceeded by more than 10% or by 35 kPa, whichever is greater.

Δ 4.18.1.3

For pipeline systems containing a liquid phase, the design shall account for surge pressure and make appropriate provisions for controls and protective equipment so that the maximum pressure experienced during surges and other variations from normal operations does not exceed the maximum operating pressure at any point in the pipeline system and equipment by more than 10% or 35 kPa, whichever is greater.

Δ 4.18.2 General design requirements for systems for pressure control and overpressure protection

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Systems for pressure control and overpressure protection shall

a) be designed such that a failure in either system cannot cause the other system to become inoperative;
b) be designed with sufficient capacity and sensitivity for the intended service;
c) be designed for the intended service environment;
d) be designed and installed so that they can be readily tested, inspected, and calibrated;
e) be designed and installed to prevent unauthorized operation of valves or equipment that would make these systems inoperative;
f) be designed to minimize the risk of being physically damaged; and
g) where practical, be designed such that a failure will not result in an overpressure condition of the piping.

4.18.3 Additional design requirements for pressure-relieving installations

4.18.3.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Discharge stacks, vents, and outlet ports of pressure-relieving devices shall be located where fluid can be safely discharged and dispersed into the atmosphere or discharged into containment. Where appropriate, discharge stacks and vents shall be protected with rain caps to prevent the entry of water.

4.18.3.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Vent lines and openings, pipe, and components located on the inlet and outlet of the pressure-relieving devices shall be adequately sized to prevent hammering of the valves and impairment of relief capacity.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.18.4 Additional overpressure-protection requirements for compressor and pump stations

4.18.4.1

For positive displacement gas compressors, a pressure-relieving system shall be installed between the gas compressor and the first block valve on the discharge side of the compressor. The relieving capacity of the pressure-relieving system shall be equal to or greater than the capacity of the compressor.

4.18.4.2

For centrifugal gas compressors, a pressure-limiting or pressure-relieving system shall be installed between the compressor and the first block valve, or between the first and second block valves on the discharge side of the compressor.

4.18.4.3

For positive displacement pump units, a pressure-relieving system shall be installed between the pump unit and the first block valve on the discharge side of the pump. The relieving capacity of the pressure-relieving system shall be equal to or greater than the capacity of the pump.

4.18.4.4

Pump stations shall have an adequate pressure-relieving system to relieve pressures built up due to ambient temperature changes affecting pressure-retaining facilities.

4.19 Instrument, control, and sampling piping

Note: *The requirements of this Clause apply to the design of instrument, control, and sampling piping for the proper operation of the piping itself; they do not cover the design of piping to provide proper functioning of the instruments for which the piping is installed.*

4.19.1

The requirements of Clauses 4.19.2 to 4.19.11 shall not apply to permanently closed piping systems, such as fluid-filled temperature-responsive devices.

4.19.2

Take-off connections and attaching bosses, fittings, and adapters shall be

a) made of suitable material;
b) capable of withstanding the maximum operating pressures and temperatures of the piping or equipment to which they are attached; and
c) designed to withstand all stresses, including cyclic stresses, that can lead to fatigue failure.

4.19.3

Shutoff valves shall be installed in each take-off line adjacent to the point of take-off. Blowdown valves shall be installed where necessary for the safe operation of the piping, instruments, and equipment.

4.19.4

Brass pipe, copper pipe, and copper tubing shall not be used for service with metal temperatures above 200 °C.

Note: *For limitations for sour service pipelines, see Clause 16.4.4.*

© 2015 CSA Group

4.19.5
Piping subject to clogging from solids or deposits shall be provided with suitable connections for cleaning.

4.19.6
Piping shall be protected from damage due to freezing of any contained fluids by heating or other suitable methods.

4.19.7
Piping in which unwanted liquids can accumulate shall be provided with drains or drips.

4.19.8
The arrangement of piping and supports shall be designed to provide for safety under operating stresses and to provide protection for the piping against detrimental sagging and external mechanical, thermal, or other damage due to unusual conditions.

4.19.9
Suitable precautions (e.g., using heavier wall thickness or corrosion-resistant materials) shall be taken where internal corrosive conditions can exist. Underground piping shall be protected against external corrosion as specified in Clause 9.

4.19.10
Joints shall be made in a manner suitable for the pressure, temperature, and service conditions.

4.19.11
Slip-type expansion joints shall not be used; expansion shall be accommodated by providing adequate flexibility in the piping layout.

4.20 Leak detection capability

4.20.1
Liquid hydrocarbon pipeline systems shall be designed to provide appropriate leak detection capability.

Note: *A recommended practice for leak detection for liquid hydrocarbon pipelines is contained in Annex E.*

4.20.2
Δ C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where a leak from an oilfield water or multiphase pipeline system can be harmful to the environment, a leak detection system shall be incorporated in the design of the pipeline system. Leak detection devices and procedures shall be capable of providing early detection of leaks. Material balance methods may be used.

Note: *Regardless of the method of leak detection used, operating companies should comply as thoroughly as practical with Annex E regarding record retention, maintenance, auditing, testing, and training.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.21 Odorization

4.21.1

Fuel gas that is to be delivered to customers through distribution lines or service lines, or to residences associated with a compressor station, and that does not naturally possess a distinctive odour to the extent that its presence in the atmosphere is readily detectable at all gas concentrations not less than one-fifth of the lower explosive limit, shall have an odorant added to it to make it so detectable, except that odorization shall not be necessary for such gas delivered for further processing or use where the odorant would serve no useful purpose as a warning agent. Fuel gas to be used within compressor stations shall be so odorized, or electronic gas detectors that set off an alarm at a gas concentration of one-fifth of the lower explosive limit or less shall be used.

4.21.2

In the concentrations at which they are used, odorants shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Odorants shall not be deleterious to persons or pipeline systems.
b) The products of combustion from odorants shall not be toxic, corrosive, or harmful to those materials to which the products of combustion can be exposed.
c) The odorants shall not be soluble in water to an extent greater than 2.5 parts per 100, by mass.

4.21.3

Equipment for odorization shall introduce the odorants without wide variations in concentration.

4.22 Requirements for pipelines installed by horizontal directional drilling

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipelines may be installed by directional drilling provided that

a) A feasibility assessment is made to assess the suitability of subsurface conditions.
b) The drill path is designed with due consideration given to the location and type of all subsurface features influencing installation operations.
c) An assessment is made to determine the risk of accidental release of drilling fluids from the drilling annulus and an appropriate mitigation plan is prepared.
d) For steel pipe, longitudinal stresses during installation do not exceed the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

Notes:

1) *See Clause 6.2.11 for additional requirements for horizontal directional drilling.*
2) *For guidance, see PRCI PR-227-9424 and CAPP 2004-0022.*

5 Materials

5.1 Qualification of materials

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

5.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Materials and equipment that will become part of pipeline systems constructed as specified in this Standard shall be suitable for the conditions to which they are to be subjected. The use of such

materials shall be limited by the applicable requirements of this Standard, except that compressor and pump station piping designed as specified in ASME B31.3 [see Clauses 4.14.2.11 c) and 4.14.3.8 d) of this Standard] shall be as specified in the listed or unlisted material requirements of ASME B31.3.

Notes:

1) *Not all materials conforming to standards or specifications approved for use under this Standard have properties that are adequate for all conditions that can be encountered in their use.*

2) *For additional requirements for sour service pipelines, see Clause 16.4.*

Δ

5.1.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Materials that comply with appropriate standards or specifications listed in this Standard may be used for appropriate applications. Such publications shall be

a) the editions listed in, or allowed by, Clause 2; or

b) earlier editions that the company has demonstrated to be suitable.

Δ

5.1.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Materials for types of items for which no standard or specification is listed in this Standard may be used, provided that the company has determined that such materials are suitable for the intended use, based upon an engineering assessment that includes an evaluation of technical data or the applicable material standard or specification.

Note: *See Clause 5.8 for requirements for engineering assessment.*

5.1.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Materials may be reused as specified in Clause 5.6.

5.2 Steel materials and gaskets

5.2.1 Design temperatures — Steel materials

5.2.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where the maximum design temperature exceeds 120 °C, particular attention shall be given to the tensile properties of steel materials to ensure that the derating for temperature specified by Clauses 4.3.9 and 4.3.12.4 is adequate. The maximum design temperature shall be taken as the highest expected operating pipe or metal temperature, taking into consideration past recorded temperature data and the possibility that higher temperatures can occur.

5.2.1.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The minimum design temperature for notch toughness purposes shall be taken to be at or below the lowest expected metal temperature when the pipe hoop stress exceeds 50 MPa during pressure testing and service under design conditions, taking into consideration past recorded temperature data, the

 © 2015 CSA Group

minimum fluid temperature that can occur, and the possible effects of lower air and ground temperatures.

5.2.2 Notch toughness requirements — Steel pipe

Note: *The requirements given in Table 5.1 are based upon fracture initiation and fracture propagation considerations. The requirements specified in Clause 5.2.2.3 are based upon fracture propagation considerations. The requirements specified in Clause 5.2.2.4 are based upon fracture initiation considerations.*

5.2.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Proven notch toughness properties shall not be required for

a) pipe smaller than 114.3 mm OD;
b) pipe with a nominal wall thickness of less than 6.0 mm; or
c) pipe for which the design operating stress is less than 50 MPa.

Note: *Pipe made to Category I of CSA Z245.1 is not required to have proven notch toughness properties.*

5.2.2.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where the design operating stress is 50 MPa or more, pipe 114.3 mm OD or larger with a nominal wall thickness of 6.0 mm or more shall have notch toughness properties as given in Table 5.1 and as specified in Clauses 5.2.2.3 and 5.2.2.4, except as allowed by Clause 5.2.4 or Table 5.3. Where applicable, such notch toughness properties shall be proven at or below the applicable minimum design temperature.

Notes:

1) *For uniformity, the following standard test temperatures should be considered: 0 °C, –5 °C, –20 °C, –30 °C, and –45 °C.*

2) *Specified minimum absorbed energy values higher than those required by Table 5.1 should be considered for pipe with both a design operating stress greater than 72% of its specified minimum yield strength and a nominal wall thickness exceeding 12.7 mm.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ

Table 5.1
Pipe body notch toughness for steel pipe
(See Clauses 5.2.2 and 5.2.2.2.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

Service fluid category	Design operating stress, MPa	Minimum design temperature, °C	Pressure-test medium	CSA Z245.1 notch toughness category
LVP	50 or greater	All	Liquid	I
HVP	50 to 225 incl.	All	Liquid	I
HVP	> 225	All	Liquid	III
LVP or HVP	50 to $PTSV_1$ incl.	–30 or higher	Gas	I
LVP or HVP	50 to $PTSV_1$ incl.	Lower than –30	Gas	II*
LVP or HVP	> $PTSV_1$	All	Gas	II
CO_2	50 or greater	All	All	II
Gas	50 to $PTSV_1$ incl.	–30 or higher	All	I
Gas	50 to $PTSV_1$ incl.	Lower than –30	All	II*
Gas	> $PTSV_1$	All	All	II

** Category I pipe may be substituted for Category II pipe in pipe runs shorter than 50 m.*

Notes:

1) *The applicable value for $PTSV_1$ (the pipe threshold stress value for Category I pipe) shall be as given in Column 2 of Table 5.2.*

2) *The absorbed energy and fracture appearance toughness, by category, shall be as specified in CSA Z245.1.*

3) *CSA Z245.1 requires that the pipe body of Category II pipe exhibit a minimum absorbed energy (based upon full-size Charpy V-notch impact test specimens) of 27 J for pipe smaller than 457 mm OD, and 40 J for pipe 457 mm or larger. CSA Z245.1 requires that the pipe body of category III pipe exhibit a minimum absorbed energy (based on full-size Charpy V-notch impact test specimens) of 18 J.*

4) *Pipe with proven notch toughness properties may be substituted for Category I pipe.*

5) *For other than carbon dioxide pipelines and gas pipelines containing predominantly carbon dioxide, Category III pipe may be substituted for Category II pipe in pipe runs shorter than 100 m.*

6) *A pipe run is a continuous portion of the pipeline system in which there are no components and all of the pipe (with or without attachments) has the same nominal wall thickness and is in the same minimum design temperature range (either –30 °C or higher or lower than –30 °C).*

7) *For minimum design temperatures lower than –5 °C, see Clause 5.2.2.4 for weld metal notch toughness requirements.*

Δ

5.2.2.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Supplementary design measures to provide positive control of fracture propagation shall be considered, and used where considered appropriate for

a) gas pipelines for which the design operating stress is higher than the applicable pipe threshold stress value given in Table 5.2;
b) gas, LVP, and HVP pipelines for which the hoop stress developed by a gaseous pressure-test medium is higher than the applicable pipe threshold stress value given in Table 5.2;
c) carbon dioxide pipelines; and
d) gas pipelines containing predominantly carbon dioxide.

© 2015 CSA Group

Such measures include the use of Category II pipe with higher values of absorbed energy, the use of specially designed fracture-arrest devices, increased pipe wall thickness or a combination of these methods.

Notes:

1) *The following is a formula that can be used for estimating arrest toughness values for pipe in buried pipelines containing gases that exhibit single-phase decompression:*

$Cv = 0.00036\ S^{1.5}D^{0.5}$

where

C_v = *full-size Charpy V-notch absorbed energy value, J*

S = *design operating stress or, where applicable, the maximum expected hoop stress during pressure testing with a gaseous medium, MPa*

D = *pipe outside diameter, mm*

The value determined is commonly used as a specified minimum all-heat average value for the pipe from each individual manufacturing process and source. Higher specified minimum absorbed energy values should be considered for pipe in pipeline systems larger than 1067 mm OD or pipeline systems intended to be operated or pressure tested with a gaseous medium at pressures greater than 8.0 MPa.

2) *DNV-RP-J202, Section 5.5 includes information and methodologies for the control of running ductile fractures for carbon dioxide pipelines and gas pipelines that contain predominantly carbon dioxide.*

3) *For carbon dioxide pipelines and gas pipelines containing predominantly carbon dioxide, notwithstanding Clause 5.2.2.1, consideration of fracture propagation control is still required even when notch toughness testing of pipe material is exempted.*

Table 5.2
Pipe threshold stress values
(See Clause 5.2.2.3 and Table 5.1.)

C There is a commentary available for this Table.

	Pipe threshold stress value, MPa	
Pipe OD, mm	**Category I pipe**	**Category II or III pipe**
114.3–141.2	300	365
141.3–168.2	280	340
168.3–219.0	265	320
219.1–273.0	240	295
273.1–323.8	225	275
323.9– 355.5	210	260
355.6– 406.3	205	250
406.4– 456	195	240
457–507	190	300
508–558	180	290
559–609	175	280
610–659	170	275

(Continued)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 5.2 (Concluded)

Pipe OD, mm	Pipe threshold stress value, MPa	
	Category I pipe	Category II or III pipe
660–710	165	265
711–761	165	260
762–812	160	255
813–863	155	250
864–913	155	245
914–964	150	240
965–1015	145	235
1016–1066	145	230
1067–1167	140	225
1168–1218	140	220
1219–1320	135	215
1321–1371	135	210
1372–1421	130	210
1422–1523	130	205
1524–1574	130	200
1575–1675	125	200
1676–1726	125	195
1727–1777	120	195
1778–1980	120	190
1981–2031	120	185
2032	115	185

Notes:

1) *The pipe threshold stress values given in Column 3 are for pipe with a specified minimum absorbed energy for the pipe body (based upon full-size Charpy V-notch impact test specimens) of*

a) *27 J, for pipe smaller than 457 mm OD; and*

b) *40 J, for pipe 457 mm OD or larger.*

2) *For pipe with a specified minimum absorbed energy for the pipe body higher than the applicable value given in Note 1), the applicable pipe threshold stress value shall be calculated using the formula in the note to Clause 5.2.2.3 and rounded to the nearest 5 MPa, with S being the pipe threshold stress rather than the design operating stress or the maximum expected hoop stress during pressure testing with a gaseous medium.*

Δ

5.2.2.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where Category II or III pipe at minimum design temperatures lower than –5 °C is required, proven notch toughness properties of longitudinal, helical, and skelp end welds shall be required of SAW welds

 © 2015 CSA Group

for the deposited weld metal centreline location and the heat-affected zone (HAZ), and of electric welds for the weld zone location, in accordance with Clause 8.5 of CSA Z245.1 (notch toughness tests — weld).

5.2.3 Notch toughness requirements — Steel components

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *The notch toughness values defined by the requirements of Clause 5.2.3.2 are intended to provide protection against fracture initiation.*

5.2.3.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Proven notch toughness properties shall not be required for

a) components smaller than NPS 4; or
b) valves NPS 4 or larger, with a nominal pressure class of PN20.

Note: *Components made to Category I of CSA Z245.11, CSA Z245.12, and CSA Z245.15 are not required to have proven notch toughness properties.*

5.2.3.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where Category II or III notch toughness properties are required for steel pipe by Clause 5.2.2, steel valves NPS 4 or larger with a nominal pressure class exceeding PN20, steel fittings NPS 4 or larger, and steel flanges NPS 4 or larger shall have notch toughness properties as specified for Category II of CSA Z245.11, CSA Z245.12, or CSA Z245.15, whichever is applicable, except as allowed by Clause 5.2.5.1 and Table 5.3. Such notch toughness properties shall be proven at or below the applicable minimum design temperature.

Δ 5.2.4 Steel pipe

Steel pipe shall be made to a standard or specification given in Table 5.3, with the acceptable materials and limitations indicated, except as follows:

a) For the repair of existing piping, new or used steel pipe made to one of the following standards or specifications may be used, without further material qualification, provided that an engineering assessment of the operating experience indicates that the replacement pipe is suitable for the intended service:
   i) the same standard or specification as that of the pipe replaced, except that the year of issue of the standard or specification of the replacement pipe need not be the same as that of the pipe replaced; or
   ii) a standard or specification that the company considers to be equivalent to, or more suitable than, the standard or specification of the pipe replaced.
b) Mill-jointers shall not be used for cement-mortar lining.

Notes:

1) *For used pipe, see also Clause 5.6.*
2) *The method of cement-mortar lining application generally necessitates that special consideration be given to conditions such as pipe straightness and the presence of imperfections such as dents and ovality in the pipe; it can be necessary to require more stringent limitations on such conditions or imperfections than those specified in the applicable pipe manufacturing standard or specification.*
3) *Pipe intended for cement-mortar lining should be handled with extra care to minimize damage prior to the application of the cement-mortar lining.*
4) *See Clause 5.8 for requirements for engineering assessment.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ

Table 5.3
Limitations for pipe and components

(See Clauses 5.2.2.2, 5.2.3.2, 5.2.4, 5.2.5.1, 5.3.3.7, 12.4.14.1, 12.5.2, and 14.3.9.1.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

Type of item	Pipe or component standard or specification	Material	Limitations		
			Category I	Category II	Category III
Pipe	CSA Z245.1	Any grade, Cat. I	*	†	†
		Any grade, Cat. II	*	*	*
		Any grade, Cat. III	*	†	*
	API 5L	Any grade, PSL 1	5	†	†
		Any grade, PSL 2	*	6	7
	ISO 3183	Any grade, PSL 1	5	†	†
		Any grade, PSL 2	*	6	7
	API 5LCP	Any grade	5	1, 5	1, 5
	ASTM A53/A53M	Grade A or B, Type E	5	†	†
		Grade A, Type F	†	†	†
		Grade A or B, Type S	*	†	†
	ASTM A106/A106M	Grade A or B	*	†	†
	ASTM A333/A333M	Grade 6 Seamless	*	†	2
		Other grade or type	†	†	†
	ASTM A381	Any grade	*	1	1
	ASTM A1037/A1037M‡	Any grade	*	†	†
	ASTM A1024/A1024M	Any grade	*	1	1
Fitting	CSA Z245.11	Any grade, Cat. I	*	†	
		Any grade, Cat. II	*	*	
	ASME B16.9	ASTM A234/A234M WPB WPC	17	†	
		ASTM A420/A420M WPL6	17	9, 17	
		ASTM A860/A860M — any grade	17	9, 17	

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 5.3 (Continued)

Type of item	Pipe or component standard or specification	Material	Limitations		
			Category I	Category II	Category III
	ASME B16.11	ASTM A105/A105M	*	†	
		ASTM A234/A234M WPB, WPC	*	†	
		ASTM A350/A350M LF2, Cl. 1 or 2	*	11	
		ASTM A420/A420M WPL6	*	9	
	ASME B16.5	ASTM A216/A216M, WCB or WCC	*	†	
		ASTM A352/A352M, LCB or LCC	17	9, 17	
	ASME B16.49	Any grade	15	15, 16	
	MSS SP-75	Any grade	17	10, 17	
	MSS SP-79	ASTM A105/A105M	*	†	
		ASTM A234/A234M WPB, WPC	*	†	
		ASTM A350/A350M LF2 Class 1 or 2	*	11	
		ASTM A420/A420M WPL6	*	9	
	MSS SP-83	ASTM A105/A105M	*	†	
	MSS SP-95	ASTM A234/A234M WPB	*	†	
		ASTM A420/A420M WPL6	*	9	
	MSS SP-97	ASTM A105/A105M	*	†	
		ASTM A234/A234M WPB, WPC	*	†	
		ASTM A350/A350M LF2, Class 1 or 2	*	11	
		ASTM A420/A420M WPL6	*	9	
Flange	CSA Z245.12	Any grade, Cat. I	*	†	
		Any grade, Cat. II	*	*	
	ASME B16.5	ASTM A105/A105M	*	†	
		ASTM A350/A350M LF2, Class 1 or 2	*	11, 14	
	ASME B16.36	ASTM A105/A105M	*	†	
		ASTM A350/A350M LF2, Class 1 or 2	*	11, 14	
	ASME B16.47 (Series A)	ASTM A105/A105M	*	†	
		ASTM A350/A350M LF2, Class 1 or 2	*	11, 14	

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 5.3 (Concluded)

Type of item	Pipe or component standard or specification	Material	Limitations		
			Category I	Category II	Category III
	ASTM A694/A694M	Any grade	12	†	
	ASTM A707/A707M	Grade L1, L2, or L3, any class	12	12, 13, 14	
Valve	CSA Z245.15	Any Cat I Any Cat II	* *	† *	
	ASME B16.34§	Any	*	3	
	API 6D	Any	*	4	
	API 599	Any	*	3, 8	
	API 600	Any	*	3	
	API 602	Any	*	3, 8	
	API 608	Any	*	3, 8	
	API 609	Any	*	3, 8	

Limitations:

1) *The pipe is acceptable for use for this category, provided that the notch toughness properties are proven as specified in Clause 5.2.2.*

2) *Pipe that has been impact tested as specified in ASTM A333/A333M may be used, provided that the minimum design temperature is not lower than –45 °C.*

3) *Any of the materials referenced in the listed component standards and specifications that have a requirement for proven notch toughness properties may be used, provided that the minimum design temperature is not lower than the Charpy test temperature.*

4) *For all design temperatures, valves that have had the parent metal of pressure-retaining parts and welds joining such parts impact tested in accordance with the test procedures specified in API 6D may be used, provided that the test temperature is not higher than the minimum design temperature and the absorbed energy requirements of API 6D for the applicable specified minimum tensile strength are met.*

5) *Pipe manufactured by the low frequency (less than 1 kHz) welding process shall not be used.*

6) *Pipe that has been impact tested as specified in API 5L or ISO 3183 may be used, provided that the applicable absorbed energy and fracture appearance requirements of Clause 5.2.2 are met.*

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 5.3 (Concluded)

7) *Pipe that has been impact tested as specified in API 5L or ISO 3183 may be used, provided that the absorbed energy requirements of Clause 5.2.2 are met.*

8) *Cast iron of any type shall not be used for pressure-retaining parts.*

9) *Materials shall not be used where the minimum design temperature is lower than –45 °C.*

10) *Materials that are as specified in MSS SP-75 shall not be used where the minimum design temperature is lower than –7 °C, unless SR-7 is specified. Fittings NPS 14 and smaller that are less than Grade 448 shall not be used unless the notch toughness requirements of MSS SP-75, Clause 11.3, are met.*

11) *Class 1 materials shall not be used where the minimum design temperature is lower than –45 °C. Class 2 materials shall not be used where the minimum design temperature is lower than –18 °C.*

12) *For NPS 24 and smaller flanges, the dimensional requirements of ASME B16.5 shall be met. For NPS 26 to NPS 60 flanges, the dimensional requirements of ASME B16.47 (Series A) shall be met.*

13) *Grade L1 materials shall not be used where the minimum design temperature is lower than –29 °C. Grade L2 and Grade L3 materials shall not be used where the minimum design temperature is lower than –45 °C.*

14) *For NPS 24 and larger flanges, the absorbed energy (based upon full-size test specimens) for each Charpy V-notch impact test shall be equal to or greater than 27 J.*

15) *Only pipe material listed in this Table shall be used as starting material.*

16) *Notch toughness test temperature shall be equal to or lower than the design temperature. Marking of supplementary material shall be mandatory. The notch toughness test temperature shall be marked per CSA Z245.11*

17) *Where scraper bars are to be installed, the welding, post weld heat treatment, and inspection requirements of CSA Z245.11 shall apply.*

* *There is no limitation for use of this material for this category.*
† *The material is not acceptable for use for this category.*
‡ *This is a tubing specification rather than a pipe specification.*
§ *This Standard does not contain restrictions on the amount of leakage through the stem or seat.*

Notes:

1) *For sour service materials, see also Clause 16.4.*

2) *Except as allowed by the limitations listed in this Table, the requirements for absorbed energy and fracture appearance toughness shall be as specified in Clause 5.2.2 or 5.2.3, whichever is applicable.*

3) *The manufacturer shall have a documented quality program. API Q1 and CAN/CSA-ISO 9001 can be used for quality management programs.*

© 2015 CSA Group

5.2.5 Steel components — General

Δ **5.2.5.1**

Steel fittings, flanges, and valves shall be made to a standard or specification given in Table 5.3, with the acceptable materials and limitations indicated, except that for the repair of existing piping new or used steel components made to one of the following standards or specifications may be used without further material qualification, provided that an engineering assessment of the operating experience indicates that the replacement components are suitable for the intended service:

a) the same standard or specification as that of the component replaced, except that the year of issue of the standard or specification of the replacement component need not be the same as that of the component replaced; or
b) a standard or specification that the company considers to be at least equivalent to the standard or specification of the component replaced.

Notes:

1) *For used components, see also Clause 5.6.*
2) *See Clause 5.8 for requirements for engineering assessment.*

5.2.5.2

Pressure-reducing devices shall comply with the requirements specified for valves in comparable service conditions.

5.2.6 Steel components — Flanges

5.2.6.1

Flanges shall be suitable for service with the grade of pipe to which they are to be joined.

5.2.6.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Steel flanges ordered to standards or specifications that do not contain requirements for contact face finish shall have contact faces finished as specified in MSS SP-6.

5.2.6.3

Rectangular cross-section slip-on, special weld neck, and other nonstandard flanges may be used, provided that the hub and flange thicknesses meet the design and material requirements specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII. Contact faces shall be as specified in CSA Z245.12. Weld neck end preparations shall be as shown in Figure 7.1 or 7.2, whichever is applicable.

Δ **5.2.6.4**

Blind flanges may be drilled and tapped for instrumentation and pressure testing purposes to a maximum size of NPS 1. Blind flanges may be drilled and tapped greater than NPS 1 up to and including NPS 3 for use as vents and drains during pressure testing only. The tapping criteria of ASME B16.5 shall be followed. Blind flanges shall not be drilled and tapped for the use as reducing threaded flanges.

 © 2015 CSA Group

5.2.7 Bolting

5.2.7.1

After make-up, bolts and studs shall extend a minimum of two full threads beyond the face of the associated nuts and be reasonably consistent throughout the connection. Dimensions for bolting (bolts, studs, and nuts) shall be as specified in ASME B16.5. Bolts and studs shall be as specified in ASTM A193/A193M, ASTM A320/A320M, or ASTM A354, except that ASTM A307 Grade B bolts and studs may be used for PN20 and PN50 flanges at temperatures between –30 and +230 °C.

5.2.7.2

For insulating flanges, 3 mm (1/8 in) undersize alloy-steel bolts and studs that are as specified in ASTM A193/A193M, ASTM A320/A320M, or ASTM A354 may be used.

5.2.7.3

Nuts shall be as specified in ASTM A194/A194M, except that ASTM A563/A563M nuts may be used with ASTM A307 bolts and studs for PN20 and PN50 flanges at temperatures between –30 and +230 °C.

5.2.7.4

Carbon and alloy steel bolts, studs, and their nuts shall be threaded as specified in the following thread series and dimension classes, as specified in ASME B1.1:

a) Carbon steel bolts and studs shall have coarse threads and Class 2A dimensions, and their nuts shall have Class 2B dimensions.
b) Alloy steel bolts and studs 25 mm (1 in) or smaller in nominal diameter shall have coarse threads; those 28 mm (1-1/8 in) or larger in nominal diameter shall be of the 8-thread series. Such bolts and studs shall have Class 2A dimensions and their nuts shall have Class 2B dimensions.

5.2.7.5

Bolts shall have ASME B18.2.1 square heads or heavy hexagon heads and shall have ASME B18.2.2 heavy hexagon nuts.

5.2.7.6

All sizes of nuts cut from bar stock with their axes parallel to the direction of rolling of the bar may be used for joints in which one or both flanges are cast iron and for joints with steel flanges where the pressure does not exceed 1.7 MPa. Such nuts, in sizes larger than 12 mm (1/2 in), shall not be used for joints in which both flanges are steel and the pressure exceeds 1.7 MPa.

5.2.8 Gaskets

5.2.8.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

ASME B16.5, ASME B16.20, or ASME B16.21 gaskets may be used.

5.2.8.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Gaskets with non-metallic materials containing asbestos shall not be used.

© 2015 CSA Group

5.2.8.3
Metallic gaskets, other than spirally wound metal (non-metal filled) gaskets, shall not be used with PN 20 flanges.

5.2.8.4
Special gaskets, including insulating gaskets, may be used, provided that they are suitable for the temperature, moisture, and other conditions to which they can be subjected.

5.2.8.5
Metal and metal-jacketed gaskets (either plain or corrugated) with non-metallic filler may be used without pressure limitations, provided that the gasket material is suitable for the service temperature.

Note: *Such gaskets should be used with small male and female and small tongue-and-groove facings. Such gaskets with steel flanges having raised face, lapped, large male and female, or large tongue-and-groove facing type may also be used.*

5.2.8.6
Full face gaskets shall be used with copper alloy flanges and may be used with Class 125 cast iron flanges. Flat ring gaskets having outside diameters extending to the inside of the bolt holes may be used with cast iron flanges, raised face steel flanges, and lapped steel flanges.

5.2.8.7
In order to secure higher unit compression on gaskets, metallic gaskets having widths less than the full male face of the flange may be used with raised face, lapped, or large male and female facing types. The gasket width for small male and female and tongue-and-groove joints shall be equal to the width of the male face or tongue.

5.2.8.8
Rings for ring joints shall be in accordance with the dimensional requirements of ASME B16.20. The materials for such rings shall be suitable for the service conditions encountered and shall be softer than the flanges.

5.2.8.9
Gaskets used under pressure and at temperatures above 120 °C shall be of noncombustible material.

5.2.9 Steel components — Fittings

5.2.9.1
Fittings shall be suitable for service with the grade of pipe to which they are to be joined.

5.2.9.2
Fittings having nonstandard dimensions may be used, provided that they are designed in accordance with the same principles as standard fittings and are capable of withstanding the same tests.

5.2.9.3
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where scraper bars are to be installed, the welding, post weld heat treatment, and inspection requirements of CSA Z245.11 shall apply.

 © 2015 CSA Group

5.3 Other materials

5.3.1 Aluminum piping

Aluminum piping shall be as specified in Clause 15.4.

5.3.2 Polyethylene pipe and fittings

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene pipe and fittings for gas distribution systems shall be as specified in Clause 12.
Polyethylene pipe and fittings for other services shall be as specified in Clause 13.

5.3.3 Cast iron components

5.3.3.1

Cast iron flanges shall be as specified in ASME B16.1.

5.3.3.2

Cast iron flanges shall have contact faces finished as specified in MSS SP-6.

5.3.3.3

Class 125 cast iron integral or threaded companion flanges may be used with a full face gasket or with a flat ring gasket extending to the inner edge of the bolt holes. Where full face gaskets are used, ASTM A193/A193M alloy steel bolting may be used. Where ring gaskets are used, the bolting shall be carbon steel equivalent to ASTM A307 Grade B without heat treatment other than stress relief.

5.3.3.4

Where two Class 250 integral or threaded companion cast iron flanges having 1.6 mm raised faces are bolted together, the bolting shall be carbon steel equivalent to ASTM A307 Grade B without heat treatment other than stress relief.

5.3.3.5

Class 125 cast iron flanges may be bolted to PN 20 steel flanges, provided that the 1.6 mm raised face on the steel flange is removed. Where flat ring gaskets extending to the inner edge of the bolt holes are used, the bolting shall be carbon steel equivalent to ASTM A307 Grade B without heat treatment other than stress relief. Where full face gaskets are used, ASTM A193/A193M alloy steel bolting may be used.

5.3.3.6

Class 250 cast iron flanges may be bolted to PN 50 steel flanges using carbon steel bolting equivalent to ASTM A307 Grade B without heat treatment other than stress relief.

Note: *The raised face on the steel flange should be removed to minimize the stress on the cast iron flange.*

5.3.3.7

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Valves with cast iron bodies shall not be used in piping in compressor stations, pump stations, measuring stations, pressure-regulating stations, transmission lines, or gathering lines. For piping in

© 2015 CSA Group

other locations, valves with cast iron bodies may be used, provided that all of the following requirements, as applicable, are met:

a) The body material shall be ductile cast iron that is as specified in ASTM A395/A395M.
b) The valve dimensions shall be as specified in one of the valve standards or specifications given in Table 5.3.
c) For Category II valves, the applicable limitations given in Table 5.3 shall apply.
d) The valve shall not be welded, either as part of its manufacture or during installation.
e) For gas pipelines, the operating pressure shall not exceed 7.0 MPa.
f) For oil pipelines, the operating pressure shall not exceed 1.7 MPa.

5.3.4 Copper and copper-based alloys

Δ **5.3.4.1**

Copper and copper-based alloy pipe for pressure applications shall be made to ASTM B43 (O61), ASTM B75/B75M (O50, O60, or H80), or ASTM B88 (O50, O60, or H55). The use of such materials shall be confined to applications involving hoop stresses below 40 MPa.

5.3.4.2

Copper and copper-based alloy pipe shall not be used to convey gas containing more than an average of 7 mg of hydrogen sulphide per cubic metre of gas at an absolute pressure of 101.325 kPa at 15 °C.

Δ **5.3.5 Stainless steels**

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Austenitic, ferritic, martensitic, and ferritic/austenitic (duplex) stainless steel pipe and tubing for instrument, control, and sampling piping, or for piping in the compressor stations and pump stations, shall be made to ASME B36.19M, ASTM A268/A268M, ASTM A269, or ASTM A789/A789M.

5.3.6 Reinforced composite pipe and fittings

Reinforced composite pipe and fittings shall be as specified in Clause 13.

5.3.7 Nonferrous flanges

Nonferrous flanges shall have contact faces finished as specified in ASME B16.24.

5.3.8 Other alloys and composites

Subject to the requirements of Clause 5.1.1, one or more of the following may be used:

a) other alloys; and
b) composites of two or more synthetic materials, synthetic and metallic materials, or metallic materials.

Δ **5.3.9 External coatings for pipe and piping**

Δ **5.3.9.1 General**

The materials selected for external protective coatings for pipe or piping shall be as specified in Clause 9.1.4 or Clause 9.2, whichever is applicable.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ **5.3.9.2 Plant-applied coatings for steel pipe**

Where applicable to the coating system to be used, plant-applied protective coating of the external surface of steel pipe shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of CSA Z245.20, CSA Z245.21, or CSA Z245.22.

5.3.9.3 Field-applied coatings for piping

Where applicable to the coating system to be used, field-applied protective coating of the external surface of piping shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of CSA Z245.30.

Δ **5.4 Oilfield water service**

For oilfield water pipeline service, the requirements of Clauses 5.1 to 5.3 and Clause 16, if applicable, shall apply.

Note: *CAPP 2009-0010 provides information on selection of materials for oilfield water pipeline systems.*

5.5 Cement-mortar linings

Cement-mortar linings shall be as specified in AWWA C205 and shall have lining thickness tolerances as given in Table 5.4.

Note: *The quality of cement-mortar linings is significantly affected by curing practices.*

Table 5.4
Cement-mortar lining thickness tolerances
(See Clause 5.5.)

Pipe outside diameter, mm	Lining thickness tolerance, mm
168.3 or smaller	–1, +2
Larger than 168.3	–2, +3

5.6 Reuse of materials

Δ **5.6.1**

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Piping may be removed and subsequently used in the same pipeline system, provided that the requirements of Clauses 5.6.2 to 5.6.4 are met. Piping may be removed and subsequently used in a different pipeline system, provided that the requirements of Clauses 5.6.2 to 5.6.4 are met and an engineering assessment is completed.

Notes:

1) *This Clause does not cover the reuse of existing piping for different service without removal from its existing location. (See Clause 10.3.7.)*

2) *For the reuse of pipe for the repair of existing piping, see also Clause 5.2.4.*

3) *For the reuse of components for the repair of existing piping, see also Clause 5.2.5.1.*

4) *See Clause 5.8 for requirements for engineering assessment.*

5.6.2

Materials that are as specified in the current or an earlier edition of a standard or specification acceptable under this Standard may be reused, provided that each piece is inspected to determine its suitability for the intended service.

 © 2015 CSA Group

5.6.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Materials made to a known standard or specification not referenced in this Standard may be reused, provided that such materials are tested for conformance to the requirements of an acceptable standard or specification. Random samples of at least one item out of each ten items of the type of items involved shall be tested for chemical and mechanical properties.

5.6.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Steel pipe of unknown origin may be reused, provided that

a) each pipe is inspected, tested, and confirmed to be in conformance with a standard or specification acceptable under this Standard; or
b) it is intended for an application not requiring proven notch toughness properties, and it is designated to have a specified minimum yield strength not exceeding 172 MPa and a joint factor not exceeding 0.60.

5.7 Records of materials

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

5.7.1

The standards or specifications of the pipe, components, and bolting materials used in the construction of pipeline systems shall be recorded, and such records shall be retained as part of the permanent records of the pipeline system. The identity of the material shall be verified prior to its use.

5.7.2

Where materials are reused as specified in Clause 5.6, records of the identity of such materials and the results of any required inspection and testing shall be retained as part of the permanent records of the pipeline system.

Δ 5.8 Engineering assessments

Engineering assessments for material qualification or acceptance shall be conducted and documented in accordance with the requirements of Clause 3.3, and the analysis shall include consideration of the following, as applicable:

a) the design basis, including
   i) service fluid;
   ii) operating pressure and temperature range; and
   iii) the general and site-specific loading conditions that are anticipated throughout the design life of the material;
b) material specifications and properties;
c) intended range of operating conditions;
d) loads and dynamic effects as specified in Clause 4.2.4;
e) manufacturing process and installation method;
f) technical data and test records
g) time and/or cycle dependant material degradation;
h) environmental conditions and potential environmental consequences;
i) hazard type, frequency, and magnitude, including any hazards associated with the presence of foreign structures or environmental conditions; and

j) consequences of failure.

6 Transportation, handling, and installation

6.1 General

6.1.1
Clause 6 covers the transportation, handling, and installation of piping. The requirements apply to new and replacement installations and to the use of new and used materials.

6.1.2
Care and precautions shall be taken to maintain quality of work during adverse weather conditions.

6.1.3
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The transportation, installation, and any repair of pipe shall not reduce the wall thickness at any point to less than 90% of the design wall thickness, determined as specified in Clause 4.3.5, for the design pressure of the pipe.

6.1.4
Compressor and pump station piping designed as specified in ASME B31.3 [see Clauses 4.14.2.11 c) and 4.14.3.8 d)] shall be installed as specified in ASME B31.3.

6.1.5
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

During the installation of piping, records shall be created that provide the information required by Clause 10.4.2.

6.2 Activities on pipeline rights-of-way

6.2.1 Clearing, grading, and ground disturbances

6.2.1.1
Clearing, grading, and ground disturbances shall be limited to those that are necessary for the performance of the work or activity. Areas so disturbed shall be maintained in a condition that adequately controls environmental degradation.

6.2.1.2
In permafrost areas, measures shall be taken to minimize the effects of installation-related activities on the ground thermal regime.

© 2015 CSA Group

6.2.2 Pipe and components handling

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Care shall be taken in the selection of equipment and methods used in handling, transporting, stockpiling, and placing of pipe and components to prevent damage to the pipe, coating, and any lining. Coating protection shall be as specified in Clause 9.4.

6.2.3 Bends and elbows in steel piping

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For steel piping, changes in direction may be made by the use of bends or elbows, or both, subject to the following limitations:

a) Out-of- roundness of the cross-section within the bend shall be controlled so that it is not detrimental to the structural integrity and normal operation of the pipeline system. Where applicable, allowances shall be made for the installation of liners and for the passage of internal inspection tools and pipeline scrapers. Unless the effects of bending are determined through an engineering assessment to be within acceptable limits, the following limitations shall apply:
   i) See Clause 6.3.4 for buckles, ripples, wrinkles, and out-of-roundness acceptance criteria.
   ii) For field cold bends of pipe 323.9 mm OD or larger, the longitudinal axis of the pipe shall not be deflected more than 1.5° in any length along the axis equal to the outside diameter of the pipe.

   Note: *For hot and induction bends, see Clause 4.3.5.2.*

b) Where the effects of bending on the mechanical properties of the pipe are determined through an engineering assessment to be acceptable, the limits in Items a) i) and ii), may be exceeded.

c) For cold bends, any longitudinal pipe welds shall be on or near the neutral axis of the bend.

d) Circumferential welds that are subject to stress during bending shall be nondestructively inspected after bending.

   Note: *Circumferential welds should not be bent cold.*

e) Factory-made wrought steel welding elbows or transverse segments cut therefrom may be used for changes in direction, provided that the requirements of Clause 4.3.14 are met.

   Note: *Field-cut segments of elbows NPS 12 and larger should not be used.*

f) Pipe sections containing mechanical interference fit joints may be bent, provided that the mechanical interference fit joints themselves remain straight and are not subjected to undue stresses during pipe section bending or during installation.

g) When bending coated pipe, care shall be taken to maintain the integrity of the coating. Where the coating is damaged, it shall be repaired as specified in Clause 9.3.2.

h) Mitred bends shall not be used.

   Note: *Deflections up to 3° caused by misalignment are not considered to be mitred bends.*

6.2.4 Alignment and welding

6.2.4.1

Prior to alignment and welding, the pipe shall be free of any foreign substance that can adversely affect welding, nondestructive inspection, or pipeline operation.

6.2.4.2

Pipe alignment, welding, and weld inspection shall be as specified in Clauses 7.9 and 7.10.

 © 2015 CSA Group

6.2.5 Protective coatings

Pipeline protective coatings shall be applied and inspected as specified in Clause 9.

6.2.6 Ditching and lowering-in

6.2.6.1

Where necessary, pipeline ditch spoil shall be handled in a manner that allows for re-establishment of the soil integrity.

6.2.6.2

Ditch depths shall be sufficient to ensure that the applicable depth of cover specified in Clause 4.11 can be achieved.

6.2.6.3

Ditch bottoms shall provide a suitable bed and support for the piping.

6.2.6.4

Piping shall be lowered into the ditch in a manner that avoids excessive stress levels. The lowered piping shall reasonably fit the contour of the ditch without the use of external force, so as to minimize stresses and protect the pipe and coating from damage.

Note: *This Clause does not prohibit the use of slack loops.*

6.2.6.5

Where pipeline weights are required, they shall be installed in a manner that does not damage the pipe or coating.

6.2.7 Backfilling

6.2.7.1

Backfilling shall be performed in such a manner that neither the pipe nor the pipe coating is damaged by the backfill material or by subsequent surface activities.

6.2.7.2

Where the backfill material contains rocks or hard lumps that can damage the pipe or pipe coating, care shall be taken to protect the pipe and pipe coating from damage by means such as the use of mechanical shield material or by making the initial fill with sufficient rock-free material over and around the pipe to prevent rock damage by subsequent fill.

6.2.7.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Backfilling procedures shall not cause distortion of the pipe cross-section that would be detrimental to the operation of the piping or passage of cleaning or internal inspection devices.

6.2.7.4

Backfilling shall be performed in such a manner as to prevent excessive subsidence or erosion of the backfill and support material.

 © 2015 CSA Group

6.2.8 Internal cleaning

Prior to pressure testing, the completed pipeline sections shall be cleaned of construction debris and foreign matter.

6.2.9 Clean-up and restoration

Disturbed areas shall be restored to a stabilized condition and maintained to control erosion. Consideration shall be given to the state of the environment prior to its disturbance and to future access requirements.

6.2.10 Installation of crossings

6.2.10.1 General

Measures shall be taken to protect the carrier pipe and any casing against corrosion, as specified in Clause 9.

6.2.10.2 Open-cut crossings

Open-cut crossings shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Carrier or any casing pipes shall be laid on suitable bedding material with even bearing throughout their length and shall be installed in a manner that prevents the formation of a waterway along them.
b) Backfill shall be compacted adequately to prevent settlement detrimental to the facility being crossed.

6.2.10.3 Bored crossings

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Bored crossings shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Bored installations shall have hole diameters that are as close as practical to the outside diameter of the carrier or any casing pipes.
b) Where it becomes necessary to abandon bored holes, or where the space between pipes and the hole is excessive, prompt remedial measures shall be taken.

6.2.10.4 Water crossings

Water crossings shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Care shall be taken not to overstress the pipe during installation.
b) Piping shall be installed to the required plan and profile dimensions and shall be laid so that no portion is unsupported or resting on objects that are likely to damage the coating or the pipe.
c) Water crossings shall be identified as specified in Clause 10.5.3.7.

6.2.11 Horizontal directional drilling (HDD)

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

6.2.11.1

Prior to commencement of horizontal directional drilling, designed in accordance with Clause 4.22, a written drilling execution plan shall be developed that outlines the procedures to be used in the completion of such drilling. The plan shall include, as a minimum,

a) use of drill bit directing and tracking equipment to confirm the drill path while avoiding the no-drill zone and providing acceptable “as-built” information;

b) workspace requirements for equipment at entry and exit points;
c) workspace requirements to construct and lay out the pipe drag section;
d) drilling mud and water requirements;
e) environmental protection and monitoring plan;
f) drilling fluid management plans (trucking, pits, or tanks);
g) spill or fluid loss contingency, response, cleanup, and mitigation plans;
h) equipment specifications, condition, and integrity; and
i) mitigation of potential detrimental effects of geological formations.

Note: *CAPP 2004-0022 provides guidelines for execution plans.*

6.2.11.2

HDD personnel shall be competent to implement the execution plan.

6.2.11.3

Pipe handling and installation procedures shall be developed to minimize damage to the coating and prevent damage to and overstressing of the pipe during installation. The procedures shall include suitably sized equipment to lift and support the pipe during installation into the drill exit point.

Note: *Pull-back stresses can be reduced through the use of rollers, suitable mud mixtures, or other means.*

6.2.11.4

Evaluation of pipe and coating integrity shall include

a) prior to pull back, visual and nondestructive inspection of all girth welds as specified in Clause 7.10;
b) visual inspection of the pipe and coating for damage where it exits the drill hole upon completion of the pull back; and
c) post-installation pressure test of the drag section as specified in Clause 8.

Note: *Consideration should be given to*

a) *pre-test of the drag section;*
b) *post-installation coating survey; and*
c) *in-line inspection.*

6.3 Pipe and component surface requirements applicable to steel piping

6.3.1 Pipe and component manufacturing defects detected during installation inspection

Where any pipe or component manufacturing defects (as described by the requirements specified in the applicable manufacturing standard or specification) are detected during installation inspection, the defective portion of the pipe or component shall be

a) repaired as allowed by the applicable manufacturing standard or specification; or
b) in the case of pipe cut out as a cylinder and, where necessary, replaced with another cylinder of pipe; or
c) in the case of a component, replaced with another component.

6.3.2 Field repair of gouges and grooves in pipe

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The field repair of defects in the form of gouges or grooves shall be as follows:

a) Such defects may be removed by grinding, provided that the remaining wall thickness is as specified in Clause 6.1.3.

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) Where the conditions of Item a) cannot be met, the damaged portion of the pipe shall be cut out as a cylinder and, where necessary, replaced with another cylinder of pipe.

6.3.3 Dents in pipe

6.3.3.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The depth of a dent shall be measured as the gap between the lowest point of the dent and the prolongation of the original contour of the pipe.

6.3.3.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Plain dents that are deeper than 6 mm for pipe 101.6 mm OD or smaller, or deeper than 6% of the pipe outside diameter for pipe larger than 101.6 mm OD, shall be removed by cutting out the affected portion of pipe as a cylinder or, where permitted by the company, the affected pipe shall be repaired as specified in Clause 10.11.

Notes:

1) *Consideration should be given to limiting plain dents to 2% of the outside diameter of the pipe.*

2) *Consideration should be given to the future passage of internal inspection tools.*

6.3.3.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where dents are found to contain a stress concentrator (e.g., a gouge or arc burn) or where dents deeper than 6 mm are determined to be located on a weld, such dents shall be

a) removed by cutting out the affected portion of pipe as a cylinder and where necessary replaced with another cylinder of pipe; or

b) where allowed by the company, the affected pipe shall be repaired as specified in Clause 10.11.

Note: *Pipe containing shallower dents located on a weld can exhibit reduced bursting strength or fatigue life.*

6.3.3.4

Dents shall not be pounded out.

6.3.4 Ripples, wrinkles, buckles, and out-of-roundness

6.3.4.1

Ripples, wrinkles, and buckles that exceed the acceptable limits established in Clause 10.10.8 shall be removed.

6.3.4.2

Pipe out of roundness shall be limited to the difference between the maximum and minimum diameters not exceeding 5% of the specified outside diameter of the pipe. Pipe not meeting this requirement shall be removed.

6.3.5 Removal of cracks in circumferential butt welds and in fillet welds

Cracks in circumferential butt welds and in fillet welds shall be completely removed or addressed in accordance with Clause 7.12.5.

 © 2015 CSA Group

6.3.6 Field repair of gouges, grooves, and dents in components

Gouges, grooves, and dents found in components shall be repaired in accordance with the applicable manufacturing standard or specification.

6.3.7 Material acceptability

Materials required for the repairs described in Clauses 6.3.1 to 6.3.5 shall meet the following requirements:

a) Patches shall not be used as repair materials.
b) Replacement pipe shall meet the design requirements and, except in stations, the length requirements as specified by Clause 10.11.3 b).
c) Replacement components shall meet the design requirements.

Note: *The pretested piping requirements of Clause 10.11.3 do not apply if the repair is to be pressure tested in accordance with Clause 8 requirements after installation but before being put into operation.*

6.4 Electrical test leads on pipeline systems

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Electrical test leads shall be installed as specified in Clause 9.8 for steel pipelines and as specified in Clause 15.8 for aluminum pipelines.

6.5 Inspection

6.5.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The provisions in Clause 6.5 shall apply, as appropriate, during the period of time from the receipt of materials to the completion of installation; such provisions shall also apply to prefabricated assemblies.

6.5.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

6.5.2.1

The company shall perform inspections to ensure that the requirements of this Standard are met.

6.5.2.2

The company shall have documented procedures for conducting inspections.

Note: *These procedures should include*

a) *the number and type of inspectors;*
b) *the number and type of field and shop measurements;*
c) *the relevant reporting and record requirements; and*
d) *documentation outlining the roles, responsibilities, minimum qualifications, duties, and tasks of inspectors.*

6.5.2.3

Inspection shall be performed by competent personnel.

 © 2015 CSA Group

6.5.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Inspection for piping defects shall be performed immediately prior to the application of any field-applied coating, and during lowering-in and backfilling operations.

6.5.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipe and components shall be inspected for defects. Such inspection shall include, but not be limited to, inspection for flattening, ovality, straightness, pits, slivers, cracks, gouges, dents, defective weld seams, and defective field welds.

6.5.5

Bends shall be inspected for conformance with the requirements of Clause 6.2.3.

6.5.6

Where the pipe is field-coated, inspection shall be carried out to determine that the cleaning/coating machine is not creating defects in the pipe.

6.5.7

Field-applied coatings shall be inspected as specified in Clause 9.3.

6.5.8

Plant-applied coatings shall be inspected immediately after field bending to confirm that the integrity of the coating has been maintained.

6.5.9

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For corrosion resistant lining, the lining inside each pipe end shall be visually inspected for damage prior to joining. Where damage exceeds the limits established by the company or the lining manufacturer, linings shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications, or the section of pipe containing the damaged lining shall be cut out.

Note: *Corrosion resistant linings include cement-mortar, plastic, internal coatings, and other material.*

6.5.10

The company shall confirm that inspection of field and shop welds is as specified in Clause 7.

6.5.11

Inspection of pipe repairs, replacements, and alterations shall be made before backfilling.

6.5.12

Where necessary and as appropriate, nondestructive inspection of piping shall be performed using one or more of the following:

a) radiographic inspection of welds as specified in Clause 7;
b) ultrasonic inspection of welds as specified in Clause 7;
c) ultrasonic inspection of pipe;

 © 2015 CSA Group

d) electrical inspection of protective coatings;
e) inspection using internal inspection devices; and
f) other methods capable of achieving appropriate results.

6.6 Precautions to avoid uncontrolled fires

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Effective prevention and control measures shall be established to address the potential for uncontrolled fires (e.g., grassland, forest, crop, debris, or other fires) during installation activities involving welding, grinding, cutting with torches or operating equipment when weather conditions and vegetation material within or adjacent to the work areas are conducive to wildfires. Such measures shall include the following:

a) controlling smoke and open flames;
b) controlling sparks from construction equipment and welding or grinding operations;
c) locating firefighting and other special equipment close to the work site or consulting with local fire departments about emergency response arrangements; and
d) providing fire extinguishers of appropriate size and type as specified in NFPA 10.

Note: *Recommended precautions to avoid unintentional ignition of gas-air mixtures or hydrocarbon liquids explosive atmospheres while making tie-ins or connections to existing pipeline systems are included in Clause 10.5.7.*

7 Joining

7.1 General

7.1.1

Except as allowed by Clause 7.1.2 and required by Clauses 7.1.3, 7.1.4, 7.1.7, and 7.1.8, Clause 7 covers the requirements for joining pipes, components, and non-pressure-retaining attachments to piping by means of arc welding, gas welding, and mechanical methods.

7.1.2

The joining of piping in gas distribution systems intended to be operated at hoop stresses of less than 30% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe shall be as specified in Clause 7 or 12.7. The requirements of Clause 12.7 may also be used for the joining of piping for systems other than gas distribution systems, provided that

a) The piping is intended to be operated at hoop stresses of less than 30% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.
b) For sour service systems, the additional requirements of Clauses 16.6 and 16.9.3 are met.
c) For LVP and HVP pipelines, the additional requirements of Clause 7.10.3 are met.

7.1.3

The joining of offshore pipelines shall be as specified in Clauses 11.22 and 11.23.

7.1.4

The joining of aluminum pipe and components shall be as specified in Clause 15.6.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.1.5
The joining of sour service pipelines shall be in accordance with Clauses 7, 16.6, and 16.9.3.

7.1.6
Maintenance welding shall be as specified in Clauses 7.2 to 7.17 and 10.13.

7.1.7
Scraper bars installed after shipment from the manufacturing plant shall meet the welding, post weld heat treatment, and inspection requirements of Clauses 6.5 and 13 of CSA Z245.11, as applicable.

7.1.8
Pins that are attached to the pipe by stud welding for the purposes of corrosion monitoring shall be attached as specified in Clause 9.10.3.2.

7.1.9
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For each joint of steel pipe of unknown origin to be used as permitted by Clause 5.6.4 b), the carbon equivalent shall be determined using the formula in Clause 7.6.4.4 by means of chemical analysis prior to the assignment or development of an appropriate welding procedure.

7.2 Arc and gas welding — General

7.2.1
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clauses 7.2 to 7.15 cover the arc and gas butt and fillet welding of piping in both wrought and cast steel materials, including the qualification of welders and the standards of acceptability to be applied to production welds. Welding shall be done by one or more of the following processes, either singly or in combination: shielded metal arc welding, flux cored arc welding, submerged arc welding, gas tungsten arc welding, gas metal arc welding, and oxy-fuel welding. Welds shall be produced by position welding, roll welding, or a combination of position and roll welding. Where components are furnished with welding ends, the design, composition, welding procedures, and postweld heat treatment shall be such that no significant damage results from welding or postweld heat treatment.

7.2.2
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clauses 7.2 to 7.15 do not apply to welds made during the manufacture of pipe, components, and equipment.

7.2.3
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A welding procedure specification shall be established and qualified as specified in Clauses 7.2 to 7.15.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.2.4

Compressor and pump station piping designed as specified in ASME B31.3 [see Clauses 4.14.2.11 c) and 4.14.3.8 d)] shall be welded and examined in accordance with the welding requirements of ASME B31.3, provided that the requirements of Clauses 7.2.7 and 7.10.3.2 of this Standard are additionally met for any welds other than partial-penetration butt welds. The requirements of Clauses 16.6 and 16.9.3 shall be met for sour service.

7.2.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For other than partial-penetration butt welds, welding procedure specifications that are established and qualified as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX may be used, provided that

a) the welder qualification tests are as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX;
b) the methods of visual and non-destructive inspection and the acceptance criteria of the production welds are as specified in the examination requirements of ASME B31.3 with the extent of non-destructive inspection as specified in Clause 7.10.3;
c) the requirements of Clauses 7.2.6, 7.2.7, 7.17, and 10.13.2, whichever are applicable, and for sour service, Clauses 16.6 and 16.9.3, are additionally met;
d) the piping welds
    i) are made at a manufacturing plant or a fabrication shop remote from the final installation;
    ii) are maintenance welds;
    iii) are in a station;
    iv) join pipe to components; or
    v) join components to components; and
e) the necessity and requirements for stress relieving meet Clause 7.9.16.

7.2.6

For the purpose of welding steel piping materials as specified in Clause 7.2.5, the P-Numbers and group numbers shall be established from the material standards or specifications used to manufacture the components, or in the case of weld-end valves, the material standards or specifications of the weld-end connections, as marked on the nameplate and body of the valve. Materials manufactured in accordance with standards or specifications for which P-Numbers are not given in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, shall be considered to be equivalent to P-1 materials with group numbers as given in Table 7.1, provided that the maximum carbon equivalent does not exceed that given in Table 7.1.

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.1
Equivalent ASME P-1 group numbers for welding procedures for piping materials
(See Clause 7.2.6.)

C There is a commentary available for this Table.

Grade	Carbon equivalent, maximum %	P-1 group number
Up to Grade 359	N/A*	1
Up to Grade 448	0.45	2
Up to Grade 483	0.50	3
Higher than Grade 483	0.50	4

* *Not applicable.*

Notes:

1) *Carbon equivalent values shall be determined in accordance with the formula in Clause 7.6.4.4.*

2) *Grade is nondimensional but is numerically equivalent to the specified minimum yield strength in megapascals.*

7.2.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For welding steel piping materials having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 386 MPa using welding procedure specifications qualified as specified in Clause 7.2.4 or 7.2.5, an increase in carbon equivalent of more than 0.05 from that of the material used for the procedure qualification shall be considered to be an essential change and shall necessitate requalification of the welding procedure specification or establishment and qualification of a new welding procedure specification.

7.3 Arc and gas welding — Joint configurations

7.3.1 Butt welds

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.3.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Joint configurations for butt welds shall be of the single-V, double-V, or other suitable type of groove.

Note: *End preparations as shown in Figure 7.1, or combinations of such end preparations, should be used.*

7.3.1.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Butt welds between items of unequal thickness shall be as shown in Figure 7.2.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.3.1.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Partial-penetration butt welds shall be designed with a joint penetration between 85 and 100% of the nominal wall thickness and shall be tested as specified in Clause 7.7.9.

Notes:

1) *Such welds are intended to be used only when the heat of full-penetration welding would adversely affect internal linings or associated joint materials.*

2) *Root gaps should not be used.*

7.3.2 Fillet welds

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Fillet welds shall be slightly concave to slightly convex. The size of a fillet weld is stated as the leg length of the largest inscribed right isosceles triangle, as shown in Figure 7.3. The minimum permissible dimensions for fillet welds used in the attachment of slip-on or socket-welded joints shall be as shown in Figure 7.3. The minimum permissible dimensions for fillet welds used in branch connections shall be as shown in Figures 7.4 and 7.5.

Notes:

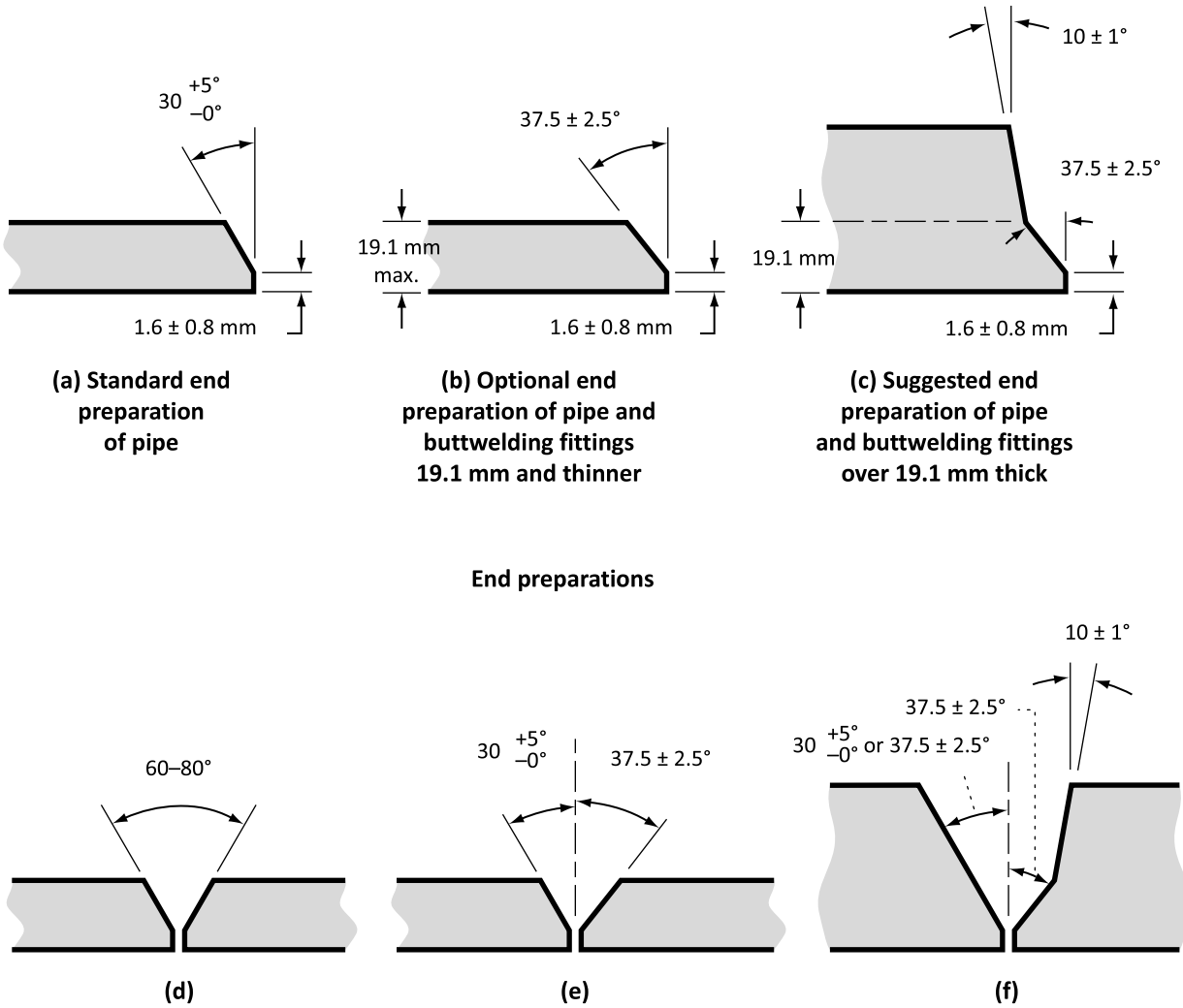
1) *Concavity or convexity should not exceed 3 mm.*

2) *The specified tensile strength of the welding consumables used for fillet and branch weld connections should meet or exceed the minimum tensile strength of the lower strength base material being joined.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.1
Examples of end preparations and combinations of end preparations
(See Clauses 5.2.6.3 and 7.3.1.1.)

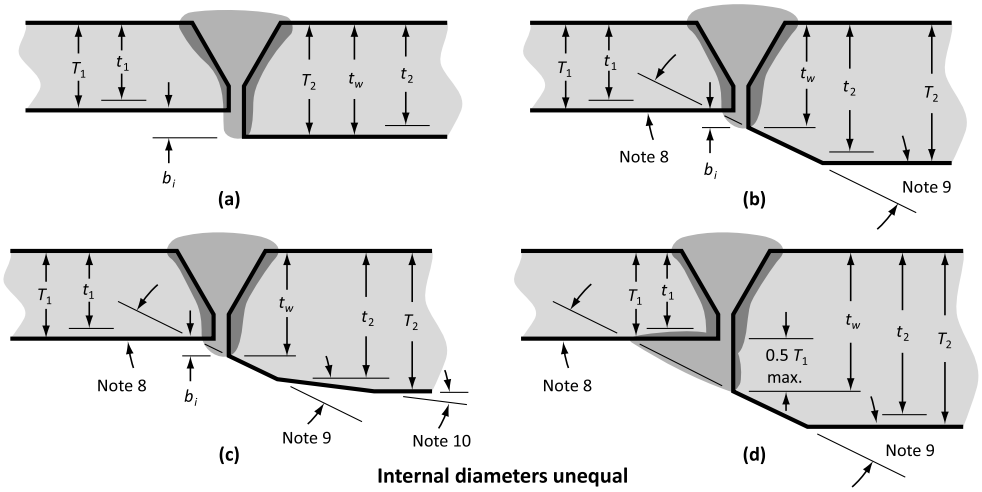
There is a commentary available for this Figure.

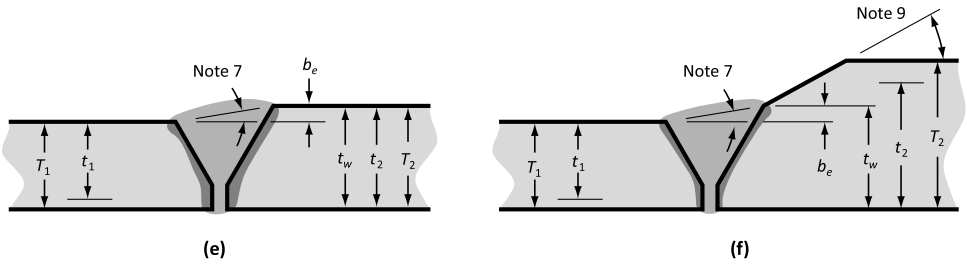


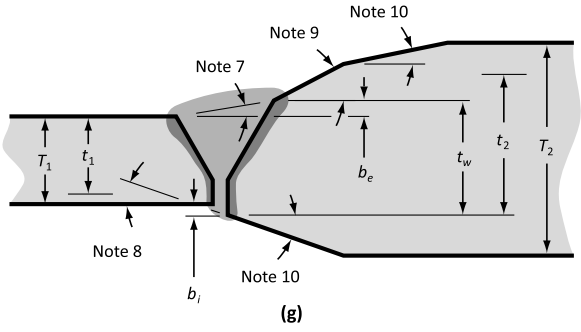
 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.2
Buttwelding details between items having unequal thickness
(See Clauses 4.3.13.2, 5.2.6.3, 7.3.1.2, 7.9.16.1, and 16.6.3 and Tables 7.8 and 7.9.)

There is a commentary available for this Figure.







(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.2 (Concluded)

Legend:

t_1 = design thickness of thinner item, mm

t_2 = design thickness of thicker item, mm

t_w = the effective throat for determining postweld heat-treatment requirements, mm

T_1 = nominal thickness of thinner item, mm

T_2 = nominal thickness of thicker item, mm

b_i = nominal internal offset of the weld bevels, mm

b_e = nominal external offset of the weld bevels, mm

Taper angles measured relative to the piping axis at the joint.

Notes:

1) *General:*

a) *The sketches in this Figure illustrate acceptable examples of welding details between items having unequal thickness.*

b) *The transition between items having unequal thickness shall be made with a taper or taper weld as illustrated in this Figure, or by means of a prefabricated transition piece not less than one-half pipe diameter in length.*

c) *The thicknesses of the items to be joined, beyond the joint design area, shall comply with the design requirements of this Standard.*

d) *Sharp notches or grooves at the edge of the weld where it joins a slanted surface shall be avoided.*

e) *For the joining of items having unequal thickness but equal specified minimum yield strength, the requirements herein apply, except that the minimum angle limit of 14° specified for the taper does not apply.*

2) *Internal diameters unequal:*

a) *Where the nominal internal offset is 2.4 mm or less, no special treatment is necessary, provided that full penetration and bond is accomplished in welding [see Figure 7.2 a)].*

b) *Where the nominal internal offset is more than 2.4 mm and there is no access to the inside of the piping for welding, the transition shall be made with a taper on the inside end of the thicker item [see Figure 7.2 b) or c)].*

c) *Where the nominal internal offset is more than 2.4 mm, but does not exceed one-half the nominal thickness of the thinner item, and there is access to the inside of the piping for welding, the transition shall be made with a taper on the inside end of the thicker item [see Figure 7.2 b) or c)] or with a taper weld [see Figure 7.2 d)].*

d) *Where the nominal internal offset is more than one-half the nominal thickness of the thinner item, and there is access to the inside of the piping for welding, the transition shall be made with a taper on the inside end of the thicker item [see Figure 7.2 b)] or with a taper weld to a maximum of one-half the nominal thickness of the thinner item in combination with a taper from that point [see Figure 7.2 d)].*

3) *External diameters unequal:*

a) *Where the nominal external offset is not more than one-half the nominal thickness of the thinner item, the transition shall be made with a taper weld [see Figure 7.2 e)] and both bevel edges shall be properly fused.*

b) *Where the nominal external offset is more than one-half the nominal thickness of the thinner item, the transition shall be made with a taper weld to a maximum of one-half the nominal thickness of the thinner item in combination with a taper from that point [see Figure 7.2 f)].*

 © 2015 CSA Group

4) *Internal and external diameters unequal:*
Where there are both nominal internal and external offsets, the joint design shall be a combination of Figure 7.2 a) to f), an example of which is shown in Figure 7.2 g), and particular attention shall be paid to proper alignment.

5) *Where the specified minimum yield strengths of the items to be joined are unequal,*
- a) *the tensile strength of the deposited weld metal shall be at least equal to that of the item having the higher specified minimum yield strength;*
- b) *the unit strength (product of the specified minimum yield strength and the design wall thickness) of the item having the lower specified minimum yield strength shall be equal to or greater than the unit strength of the item having the higher specified minimum yield strength; and*
- c) $t_2 \leq 1.5\ t_1$.

6) $b_e + b_i \leq 0.5T_1$.

7) *Where be > 0, the nominal angle of rise of the external weld shall not exceed 30°.*

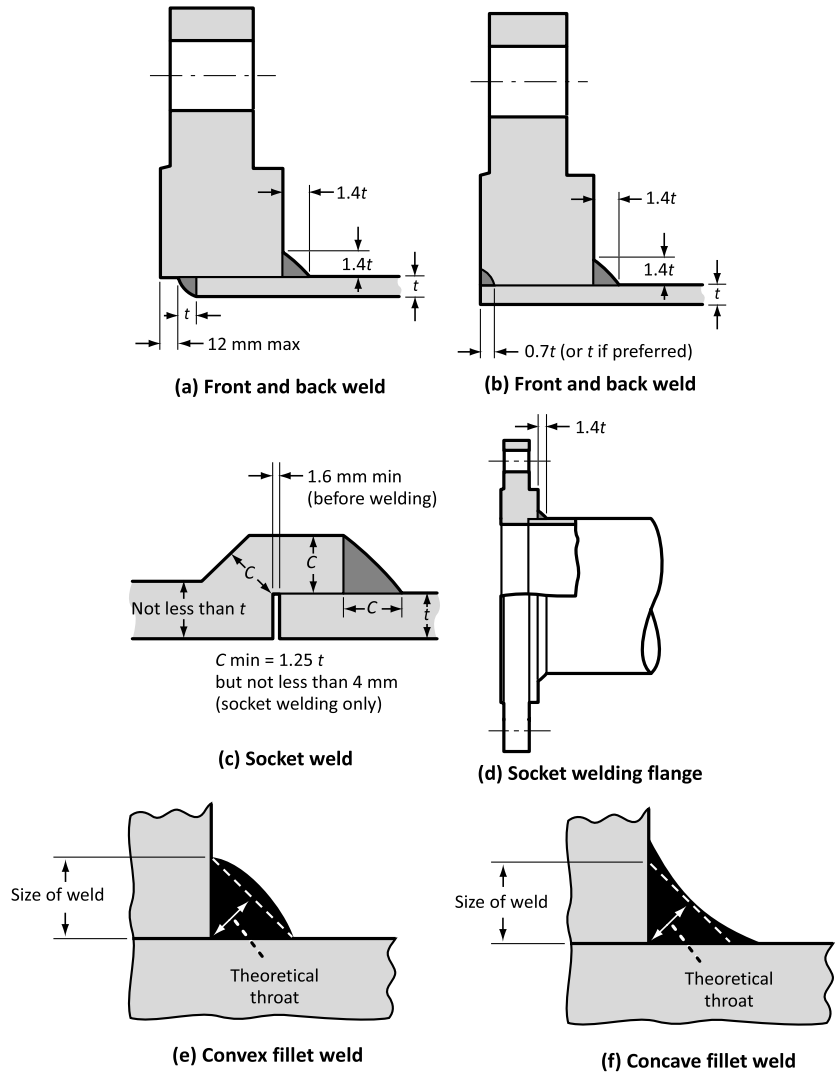
8) *Where $b_i \leq 2.4$ mm, no special treatment is necessary, provided that full penetration and fusion are accomplished in welding. Where $b_i > 2.4$ mm, the transition shall be made by welding, cutting, or grinding, with a slope not greater than 30°.*

9) *The taper within the design thickness shall have a slope not greater than 30° and not less than 14°.*

10) *The taper outside of the design thickness shall have a slope not greater than 30° (no minimum).*

Figure 7.3
Fillet weld details
(See Clause 7.3.2.)

C There is a commentary available for this Figure.



(a) Front and back weld

(b) Front and back weld

(c) Socket weld

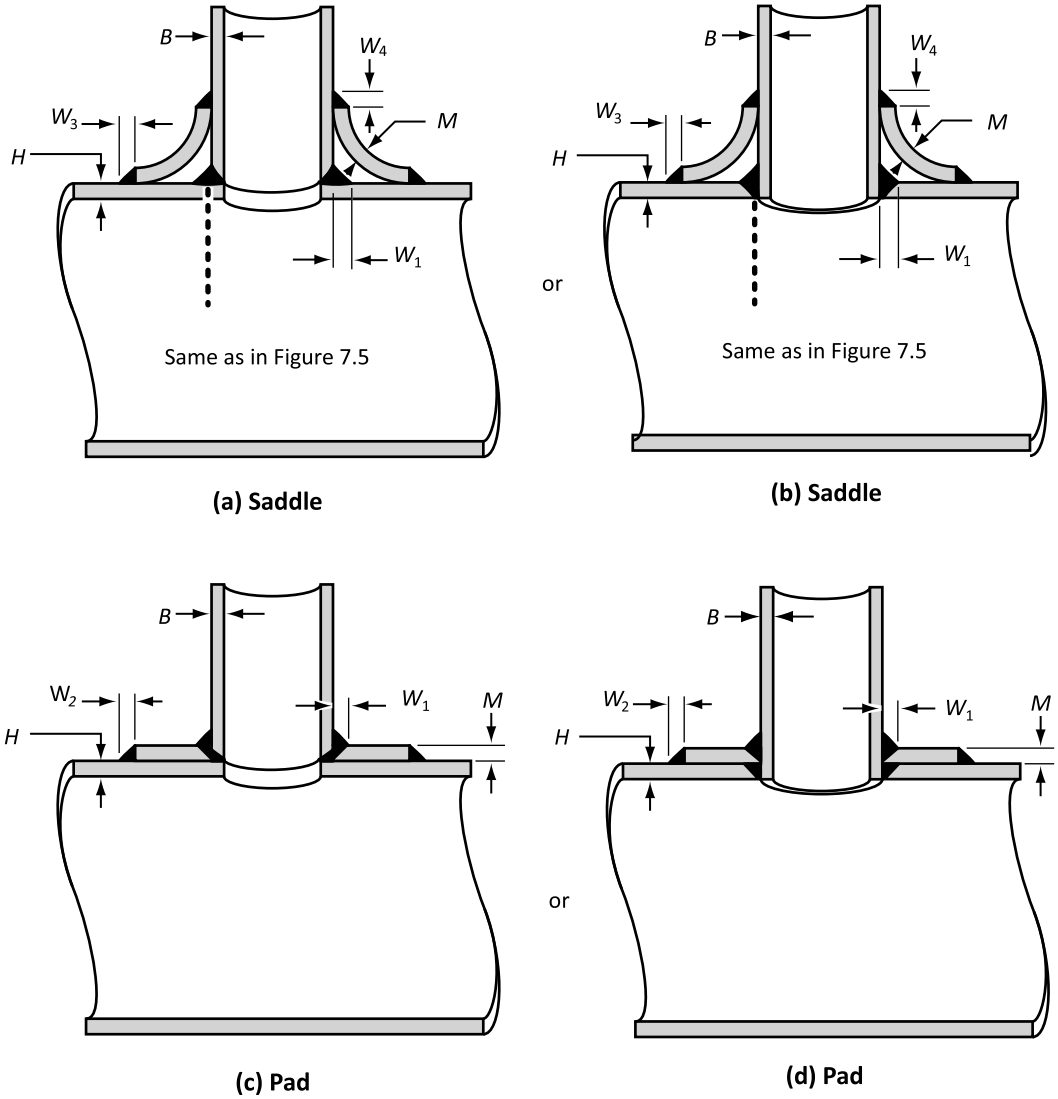
(d) Socket welding flange

(e) Convex fillet weld

(f) Concave fillet weld

Legend:
t = nominal pipe wall thickness

Figure 7.4
Welding details of opening with localized type of reinforcement
(See Clauses 4.3.18, 4.3.19, and 7.3.2.)

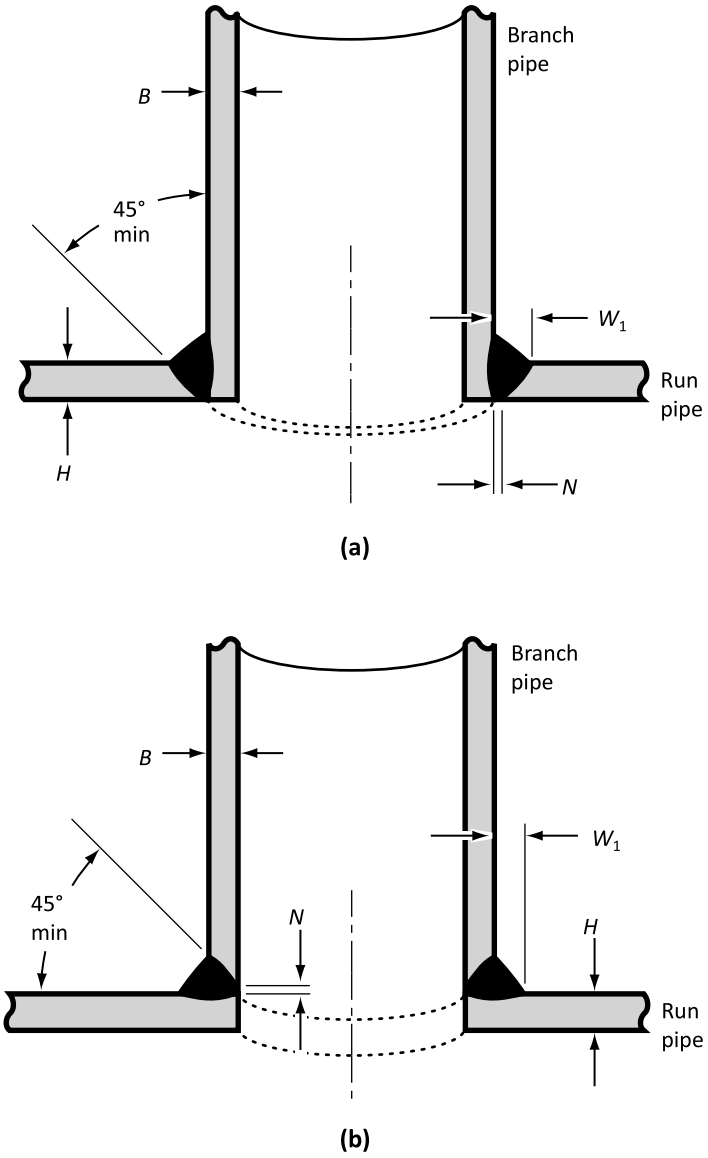


Legend:
B = nominal wall thickness of branch, mm
M = actual (by measurement) or nominal thickness of added reinforcement, mm
H = nominal wall thickness of the run pipe, mm
W_1 = minimum of 0.375B, but not less than 6 mm
W_2 = minimum of 0.5M, but not less than 6 mm
W_3 = minimum of M, but not greater than H
W_4 = minimum of M, but not greater than B

Notes:
1) *All welds have equal leg dimensions and a minimum throat of 0.707 × leg dimension.*
2) *Where M is thicker than 2H, the reinforcing member shall be tapered down to a thickness not exceeding 2H.*
3) *Where M is thicker than 2B, the reinforcing member shall be tapered down to a thickness not exceeding 2B.*
4) *A hole in the reinforcement shall be provided to reveal leakage in buried welds and to provide venting during welding and heat-treating operations.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.5
Welding details for branch-to-run pipe connection
(See Clauses 4.3.19, 7.3.2, 12.7.3.3 and Figures 4.3 and 7.4)



Legend:
N = weld gap 1.5 mm minimum, 3 mm maximum (unless backwelded or backing strip is used)
W_1 = minimum of 0.375B, but not less than 6 mm

Note: *Where a welding pad, saddle, or complete encirclement sleeve-type reinforcement is used, the branch weld fillet reinforcement (W_1) is not required.*

7.4 Arc and gas welding — Welding equipment

7.4.1

Welding equipment, both gas and arc, shall be of a size and type suitable for the work and shall be maintained in such condition as to provide continuity of operation.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.4.2
Arc welding equipment shall be operated within the amperage and voltage ranges given in the qualified welding procedure specification.

7.4.3
Gas welding equipment shall be operated with the flame characteristics and tip sizes given in the qualified welding procedure specification.

7.5 Arc and gas welding — Materials

7.5.1 Pipe and components
Pipe and component materials shall be as specified in Clause 5.

7.5.2 Filler metals and fluxes

7.5.2.1
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Filler metals shall be as specified in CSA W48 or ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section II Part C, or they shall have chemical and mechanical properties that are as specified in CSA W48 or ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section II Part C, even though they were not specifically manufactured in accordance with either.

7.5.2.2
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where low-hydrogen welding is specified, practices shall include
a) for shielded metal arc welding, the use of correctly selected, stored, and handled basic covered electrodes as specified in CSA W48;
b) for gas metal arc, gas tungsten arc, flux cored arc, and submerged arc welding, the use of correctly selected, stored, and handled consumables as specified in CSA W48; and
c) techniques to decontaminate the weld area and to protect against moisture.

7.5.2.3
Filler metals and fluxes shall be stored and handled so that damage is avoided to them and to the containers in which they are shipped. Filler metals and fluxes in opened containers shall be protected from deterioration. Filler metals that are coated shall be protected from excessive moisture changes. Filler metals and fluxes that show signs of damage or deterioration shall not be used.

7.5.2.4
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Basic covered electrodes, after removal from sealed containers, shall be stored in cabinets at temperatures in the 120 to 150 °C range prior to use. Such electrodes that have been exposed to atmospheric conditions for more than 1 h shall be redried prior to use in accordance with the applicable manufacturer’s recommendations.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.5.3 Shielding gases

7.5.3.1

Atmospheres for shielding arcs are of several types and consist of inert gases, active gases, or mixtures of inert and active gases. The shielding gases used shall conform to AWS A5.32/A5.32M as per CSA W48 or ISO 14175.

7.5.3.2

Shielding gases shall be kept in the containers in which they are supplied and shall be stored away from extremes of temperature. Gases shall not be field-intermixed in their containers. Gases that are of questionable purity and those in containers that show signs of damage shall not be used.

7.6 Arc and gas welding — Qualification of welding procedure specifications

7.6.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 7.2.5, prior to the start of production welding, welding procedure specifications shall be established as specified in Clause 7.6.4 and shall be qualified by the production of welds that are made as specified in Clause 7.7.1 and that meet the applicable destructive testing requirements of Clauses 7.7.2 to 7.7.9 and the applicable nondestructive inspection requirements specified for production welds in Clause 7.11 or 7.15.10, whichever is applicable. The requirements specified for the qualification of welding procedure specifications for joining pipe to pipe shall also apply to qualification of welding procedure specifications for joining pipe to components and components to components. In such cases, the requirements shall be governed by the component nominal wall thickness at the bevel and by the outside diameter of the matching pipe.

Note: *Refer to Annex P for further guidance.*

7.6.2 Company approval

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welding procedure specifications shall be approved by the company.

7.6.3 Records

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Details of the welding procedure specification qualification test and the qualified welding procedure specification shall be recorded. During construction, copies of such records shall be available for reference on site where the work is being performed.

Note: *Consideration should be given to the retention of these records for the life of the pipeline. These records can prove useful in performing future engineering assessments.*

7.6.4 Welding procedure specifications

7.6.4.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welding procedure specifications shall state the scope and limitations for the application of the procedures and shall state the intended application, such as field buttwelding of pipe, welding of pipe

 © 2015 CSA Group

to pipe branch connections, welding of lapped pipe connections, or repair welding. Welding procedure specifications shall include the applicable items specified in Clauses 7.6.4.2 to 7.6.4.12 and shall be limited as specified in Clause 7.6.5.

7.6.4.2 Welding process and method

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The combination of welding processes and methods (manual, semi-automatic, mechanized, automatic, or combinations thereof) to be used shall be specified.

7.6.4.3 Joint geometry

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where applicable, the following joint geometry details shall be specified and shown on a sketch:

a) joint type (whether fillet, groove, or a combination of fillet and groove);
b) shape of groove preparation;
c) bevel angle;
d) size of root gap;
e) size of root face;
f) size of fillet welds; and
g) details of backing.

7.6.4.4 Base materials

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following shall be specified for the base materials:

a) standard or specification;
b) grade;
c) specified minimum yield strength;
d) for base materials having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 386 MPa, maximum carbon equivalent used in procedure qualification. The following formula shall be used for determining the carbon equivalent (*C.E.*) value of the materials, expressed in mass %:

$$C.E. = C + F\left(\frac{Mn}{6} + \frac{Si}{24} + \frac{Cu}{15} + \frac{Ni}{20} + \frac{Cr + Mo + V + Nb}{5} + 5B\right)$$

where

F = a compliance factor depending on carbon content as given in Table 7.2;

e) intended range of thicknesses; and
f) intended range of outside diameters.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.2
Compliance factor (*F*) — Carbon equivalent formula
(See Clause 7.6.4.4.)

Carbon content, %	*F*	Carbon content, %	*F*
Less than 0.06	0.53	0.14	0.85
0.06	0.54	0.15	0.88
0.07	0.56	0.16	0.92
0.08	0.58	0.17	0.94
0.09	0.62	0.18	0.96
0.10	0.66	0.19	0.97
0.11	0.70	0.20	0.98
0.12	0.75	0.21	0.99
0.13	0.80	Greater than 0.21	1.00

7.6.4.5 Filler metals and fluxes

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following shall be specified:

a) filler metal classification;
b) filler metal size; and
c) flux classification.

7.6.4.6 Position and direction of welding

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following shall be specified:

a) position:
   i) for circumferential welding, whether vertical or horizontal position is applicable and whether roll welding or fixed position welding is to be used; and
   ii) for branch connections, whether the branch pipe or component is to be attached to the top, bottom, or side of the run pipe or component; and
b) direction of welding: whether the direction of welding is vertical up or vertical down.

7.6.4.7 Preheating and interpass temperatures and controlled cooling

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The minimum and maximum temperature limits, maximum cooling rates, methods of heating, and cooling control methods for each pass shall be specified.

7.6.4.8 Postweld heat treatment

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The heating and cooling rates, limiting temperature ranges, soak times at temperature, and methods of heating and cooling shall be specified.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.6.4.9 Shielding gas

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where applicable, the shielding gas composition, flow rate range, and size of gas shielding cup shall be specified.

7.6.4.10 Electrical characteristics and travel speed

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following shall be specified, as applicable:

a) current type (ac, dc, polarity, pulsing);
b) voltage range;
c) amperage range;
d) travel speed range;
e) nominal heat input range;
f) pulsing conditions;
g) electrode extension;
h) wire feed speed range; and
i) tungsten electrode type and size.

7.6.4.11 Technique

The following shall be specified:

a) number of first pass and second pass welders;
b) whether stringer or weave technique is to be used;
c) number of weld layers;
d) oscillation width, frequency, and dwell time;
e) type of line-up clamp to be used;
f) state of completion of the weld before removal of the line-up clamp; and
g) cleaning methods and quality to be achieved.

7.6.4.12 Flame characteristics

The following shall be specified:

a) flame type (neutral, carburizing, or oxidizing);
b) gas pressure to be used; and
c) torch tip orifice size.

7.6.5 Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except for welding on in-service piping, welding procedure specifications shall be limited by the applicable essential changes given in Table 7.3. Essential changes in welding procedures shall necessitate requalification of the welding procedure specification or establishment and qualification of a new welding procedure specification. For branch connections, the essential changes for outside diameter and wall thickness shall apply to the branch pipe only; the carbon equivalent requirement shall apply to both the branch pipe and the run pipe.

Notes:

1) *For welding on in-service piping, see Clause 7.17.*

2) *For joining of sour service pipelines, see Clause 16.6.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.3
Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications (not applicable for welding on in-service piping)

(See Clauses 7.6.5, P.2, and P.5.1.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

Welding variable change	Manual or semi-automatic welding not exceeding 323.9 mm OD and not exceeding Grade 386	Manual or semi-automatic welding exceeding 323.9 mm OD or exceeding Grade 386	Mechanized or automatic welding
Welding process			
Change in welding process	X	X	X
Joint geometry			
Change in joint type	X	X	X
Change in specified bevel angle exceeding +10%, –5%	—	—	X
Change in specified bevel angle exceeding +20%, –5%	X	X	—
Change in root gap or root face exceeding ± 20%	—	—	X
Change in root gap or root face exceeding ± 50%	X	X	—
Carbon equivalent			
Increase in carbon equivalent exceeding 0.05 for pipe or components having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 386 MPa	—	X	X
Thickness			
(*t* = thickness tested)			
Change to thickness exceeding 1.0 *t*	X*	X*	—

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.3 (Continued)

Welding variable change	Manual or semi-automatic welding not exceeding 323.9 mm OD and not exceeding Grade 386	Manual or semi-automatic welding exceeding 323.9 mm OD or exceeding Grade 386	Mechanized or automatic welding
Change to thickness exceeding 1.1 *t*	X†	X†	X†
Change to thickness exceeding 1.25 *t* for *t* > 10.0 mm	—	X	X
Change to thickness exceeding 1.5 *t*	X	—	—
Change to thickness exceeding 1.5 *t* for *t* ≤ 10.0 mm	—	X	X
Change to thickness less than 0.5 *t* for *t* < 15.0 mm	—	X†	X†
Change to thickness less than 4.0 mm for *t* > 10.0 mm	—	X	X
Change to thickness less than 1.5 mm	X	—	—
Change to thickness less than 1.5 mm for 1.5 mm ≤ *t* ≤ 10.0 mm	—	X	X
Outside diameter			
(*D* = outside diameter tested)			
Change to OD smaller than 0.5 D	—	X	X
Change to OD 60.3 mm or larger for D < 60.3 mm	—	X	X
Change to OD larger than 323.9 mm for D from 60.3 mm to 323.9 mm	X	X	X
Composition of welding consumables			
Change in filler metal classification	X	X	X
Change in flux classification	X	X	X

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.3 (Continued)

Welding variable change	Manual or semi-automatic welding not exceeding 323.9 mm OD and not exceeding Grade 386	Manual or semi-automatic welding exceeding 323.9 mm OD or exceeding Grade 386	Mechanized or automatic welding
Size of filler metal			
Change in filler metal size	X‡	X‡	X
Change in filler metal size greater than one nominal diameter size	X	X	—
Welding position and direction			
Change from horizontal welding to vertical welding	X	X	X
Change from roll welding to position welding	X	X	X
Change in direction of welding	X	X	X
Preheating temperature (T_{min} = minimum preheating temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test; T_{max} = maximum preheating temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test)			
Change to preheating temperature more than 10 °C lower than T_{min}	X	X	X
Change to preheating temperature more than 25 °C higher than T_{max}, where T_{max} > 200 °C	—	X	X
Interpass temperature (T_{min} = minimum interpass temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test			

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.3 (Continued)

Welding variable change	Manual or semi-automatic welding not exceeding 323.9 mm OD and not exceeding Grade 386	Manual or semi-automatic welding exceeding 323.9 mm OD or exceeding Grade 386	Mechanized or automatic welding
T_{max} = maximum interpass temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test)			
Change to interpass temperature more than 10 °C lower than T_{min}	X	X	X
Change to interpass temperature more than 25 °C higher than T_{max}, where T_{max} > 200 °C	—	X	X
Postweld heat treatment temperature			
Change in postweld heat treatment temperature greater than allowed by Paragraph QW-407 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX	X	X	X
Shielding gas composition			
Change of more than 1 in the nominal content of any gas comprising more than 5% of the shielding gas	X	X	X
Shielding gas flow rate			
Change in flow rate exceeding 20%	X	X	X
Welding current type			
Change in current type (dc+, dc–, ac, or pulsed)	X	X	X
Voltage (*V*), amperage (*I*), travel speed (*S*), and wire feed speed (*F*) for arc welding			
Change in *V, I, S*, or *F* exceeding 25%	X	—	—

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.3 (Concluded)

Welding variable change	Manual or semi-automatic welding not exceeding 323.9 mm OD and not exceeding Grade 386	Manual or semi-automatic welding exceeding 323.9 mm OD or exceeding Grade 386	Mechanized or automatic welding
Change in heat input $\left(\frac{V \times I \times 60}{S}\right)$ exceeding 25%	X	—	—
Change in *V, I, S*, or *F* exceeding 20%	—	X	X
Change in heat input $\left(\frac{V \times I \times 60}{S}\right)$ exceeding 20%	—	X	X
Welding technique			
Decrease in the number of root bead or second pass welders	X	X	X
Change in the number of torches used on any layer	—	—	X
Change from single wire to tandem wire or vice versa for any pass	—	—	X

* *Applies to oxy-fuel welds only.*

† *Applies to short-circuiting gas metal arc welds.*

‡ *Applies to welds produced by other than shielded metal arc welding.*

Notes:

1) *For branch connections, see also Clause 7.6.5.*

2) *For essential changes for pipe-to-pipe welds that are to be assessed as specified in Annex K, see Table K.1.*

© 2015 CSA Group

7.7 Arc and gas welding — Testing for qualification of welding procedure specifications and qualification of welders

7.7.1 Welding of test joints

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.7.1.1

Test joints shall be made as specified in the welding procedure specification to be used for production welding.

7.7.1.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 7.7.1.3, test joints shall be full-circumference welds.

7.7.1.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For the qualification of welders to make circumferential butt welds, fillet welds, and branch connection welds on pipe larger than 323.9 mm OD, the test joints may be half-circumference welds.

Note: *A half-circumference weld consists of a minimum of half of the circumference of the joint welded in accordance with the welding procedure specification, with the remainder sufficiently welded to secure the parts against movement.*

7.7.1.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where approved by the company, for the qualification of welding procedure specifications that are to be used only for repair welding, segments of weld repairs may be made on full-circumference welds. In such cases, the test specimens shall be cut from such repaired locations.

7.7.2 Testing of butt welds — General

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.7.2.1

The type and number of test specimens shall be as given in Table 7.4. Test specimens shall be cut from the joint at the locations shown in Figure 7.6. Test specimens shall be prepared as shown in Figures 7.7 to 7.10, as applicable. Test specimens shall be air-cooled to room temperature prior to testing.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.4
Type and number of test specimens for butt welds
(See Clause 7.7.2.1.)

Pipe size, OD mm	Number of test specimens						
	Tension test*	Nick-break test	Root-bend test	Face-bend test	Side-bend test	Total number	
	Nominal wall thickness — 12.7 mm or less					N_p	N_w
Smaller than 60.3	0	2	2	0	0	4†	4†
60.3–114.3	0	2	2	0	0	4	4
Larger than 114.3	2	2	2	2	0	8	6
	Nominal wall thickness — Greater than 12.7 mm						
114.3 or smaller	0	2	0	0	2	4	4
Larger than 114.3	2	2	0	0	4	8	6

* *Not required for qualification of welders.*

† *One nick-break and one root-bend specimen from each of two test welds. For pipe 33.4 mm OD or smaller and components NPS 1 or smaller, see Clause 7.7.2.3.*

Notes:

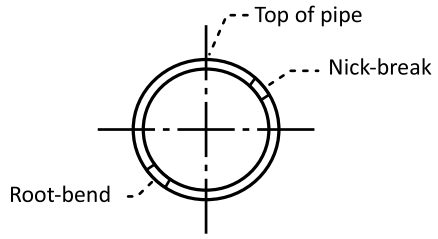
1) *N_P is the total number of test specimens required for qualification of welding procedure specifications.*

2) *N_w is the total number of test specimens required for qualification of welders.*

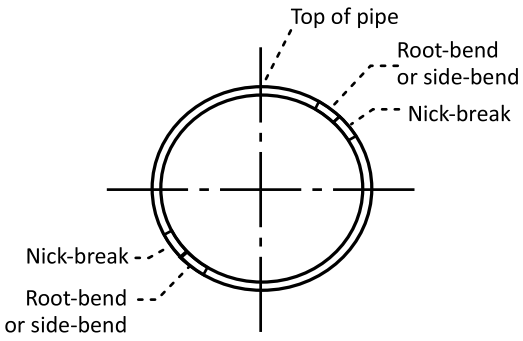
© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.6
Location of test specimens for butt welds
(See Clause 7.7.2.1.)

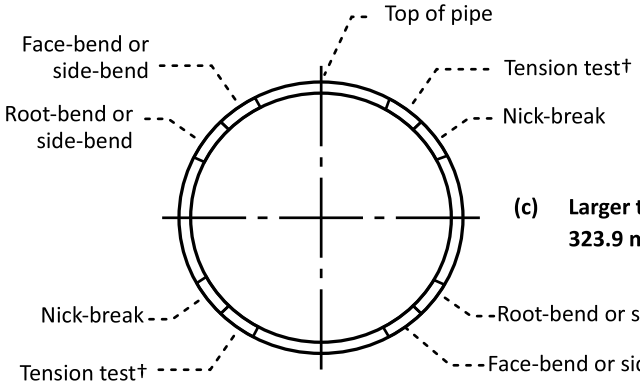
There is a commentary available for this Figure.



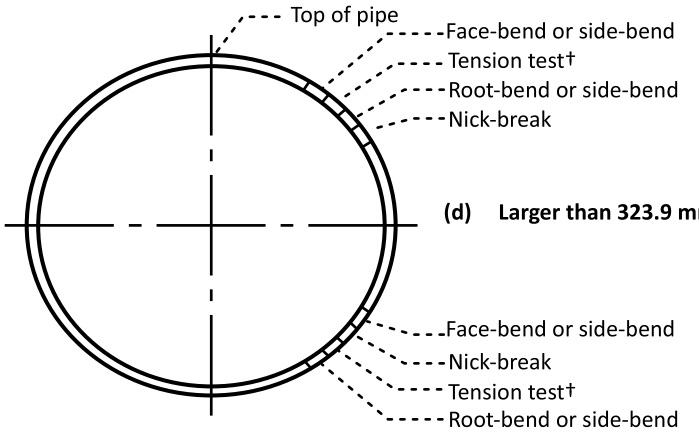
(a) Smaller than 60.3 mm OD with nominal wall thickness 12.7 mm or less*



(b) 60.3 to 114.3 mm OD with nominal wall thickness of 12.7 mm or less or 114.3 mm OD or smaller with nominal wall thickness greater than 12.7 mm



(c) Larger than 114.3 mm to 323.9 mm OD



(d) Larger than 323.9 mm OD‡

(Continued)

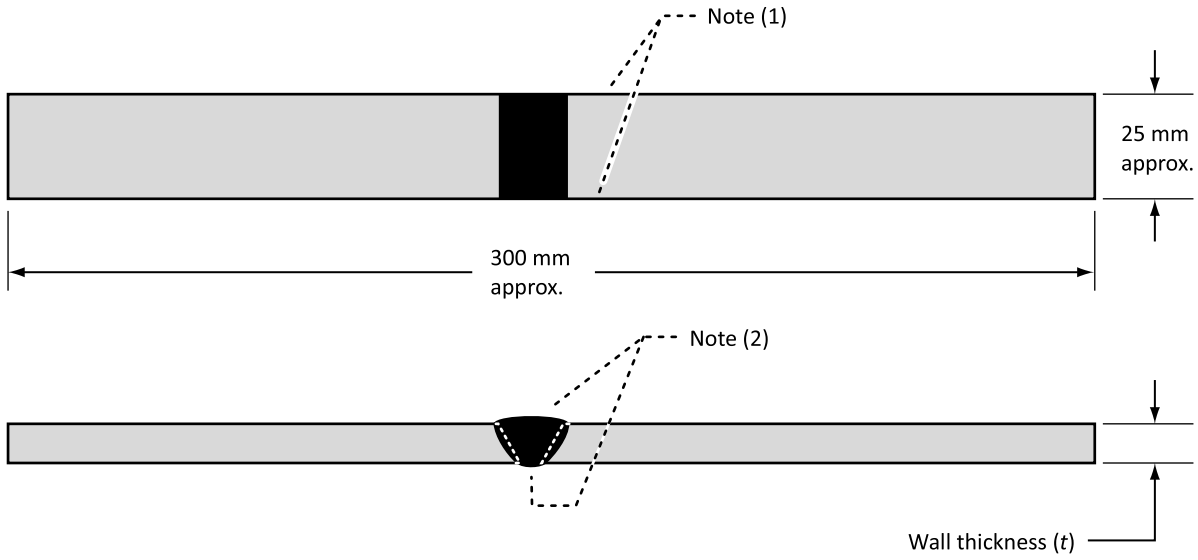
© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.6 (Concluded)

* *For pipe 33.4 mm OD or smaller and components NPS 1 or smaller, see Clause 7.7.2.3.*
† *Not required for qualification of welders.*
‡ *At the company's option, test specimens may be located in other quadrants, provided that an approximately equal number of test specimens are removed from the top and bottom quadrants.*

Note: *At the company's option, the location may be rotated counter-clockwise by an amount not exceeding 45°, or for additional test specimens to be taken, or both.*

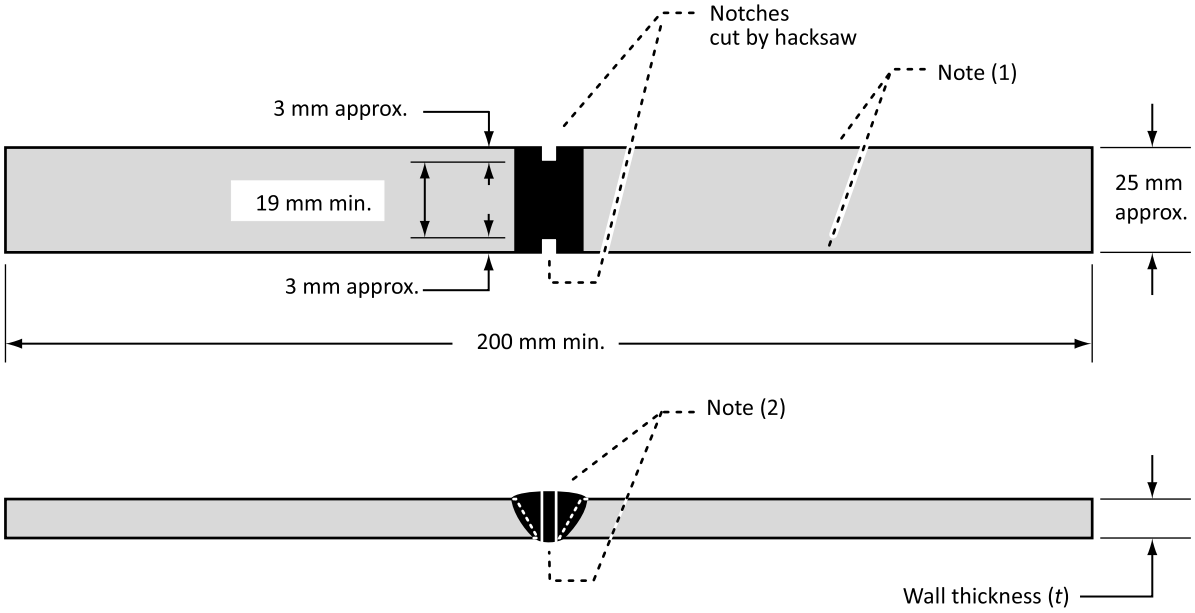
Figure 7.7
Tension test specimen
(See Clauses 7.7.2.1 and 7.7.3.1.)



Notes:
1) *Edges shall be parallel and smooth.*
2) *Weld reinforcement shall not be removed on either side of test specimen.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.8
Nick-break test specimen
(See Clauses 7.7.2.1 and 7.7.4.1.)



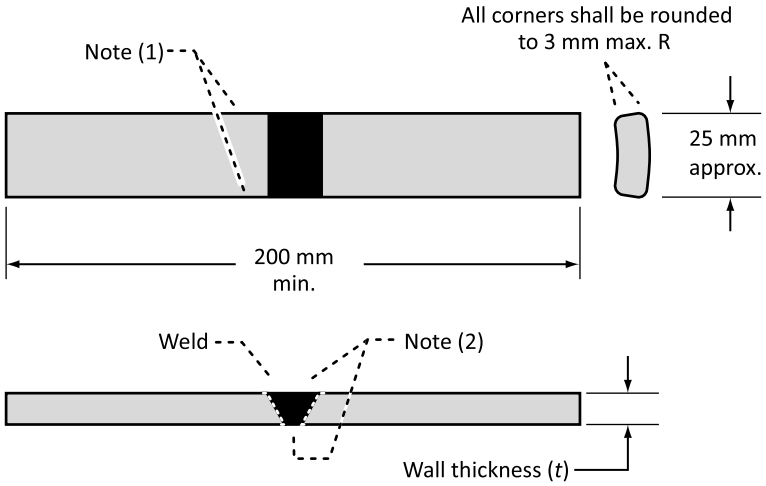
Notes:

1) *Test specimen shall be machine-cut or oxygen-cut.*

2) *Except as allowed by Clause 7.7.4.1, the weld reinforcement shall not be removed on either side of the test specimen.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.9
Root-bend or face-bend test specimen
(See Clauses 7.7.2.1 and 7.7.5.1.)



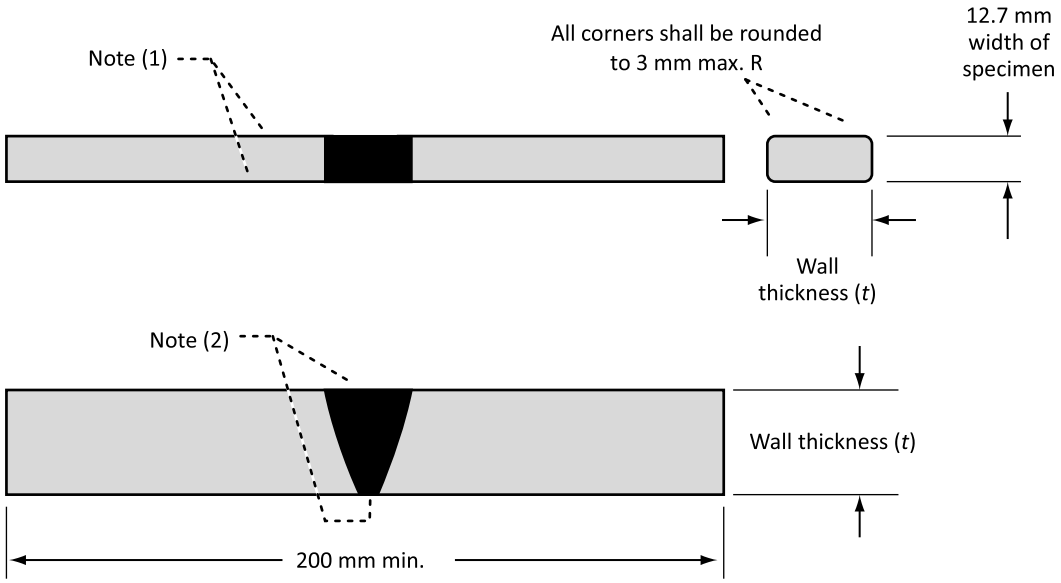
Notes:

1) *Test specimen shall be machine-cut or oxygen-cut.*

2) *Weld reinforcement shall be removed from both sides flush with the surface of the test specimen. The test specimen shall not be flattened for testing.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.10
Side-bend test specimen
(See Clauses 7.7.2.1 and 7.7.6.1.)



Notes:
1) *Cut surfaces shall be smooth and parallel.*
2) *Weld reinforcement shall be removed from both sides flush with the surfaces of the test specimen.*

7.7.2.2

Except as allowed by Clause 7.7.2.3, for pipe smaller than 60.3 mm OD and components smaller than NPS 2, two or more test welds shall be made in order to obtain the required number of test specimens.

7.7.2.3

For pipe 33.4 mm OD or smaller and components NPS 1 or smaller, one full-section tension test specimen may be substituted for the two nick-break and two root-bend test specimens. Such full-section test specimens shall be tested as specified in Clauses 7.7.3.2 and 7.7.3.3.

7.7.3 Testing of butt welds — Tension test

7.7.3.1

Except as allowed by Clause 7.7.2.3, tension test specimens shall be as shown in Figure 7.7. They shall be machine-cut or oxygen-cut. Oxygen-cut surfaces shall be oversized and machined by a non-thermal process to remove a minimum of 3 mm per side. The sides shall be machined such that the edges are parallel and smooth.

7.7.3.2

Tension test specimens shall be ruptured under tensile load. The tensile strength shall be computed by dividing the maximum load at failure by the least cross-sectional area of the test specimen as measured before the load is applied.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.7.3.3

The tensile strength of test specimens shall be equal to or greater than

a) the specified minimum tensile strength of the base metal;
b) the specified minimum tensile strength of the weaker of the two base metals; or
c) 95% of the specified minimum tensile strength of the base metal if the location of failure occurs outside the weld and HAZ.

7.7.4 Testing of butt welds — Nick-break test

7.7.4.1

Test specimens shall be as shown in Figure 7.8. Where failures through the parent metal are expected, the outside weld reinforcement may be notched to a depth not exceeding 1.5 mm, measured from the original weld surface.

7.7.4.2

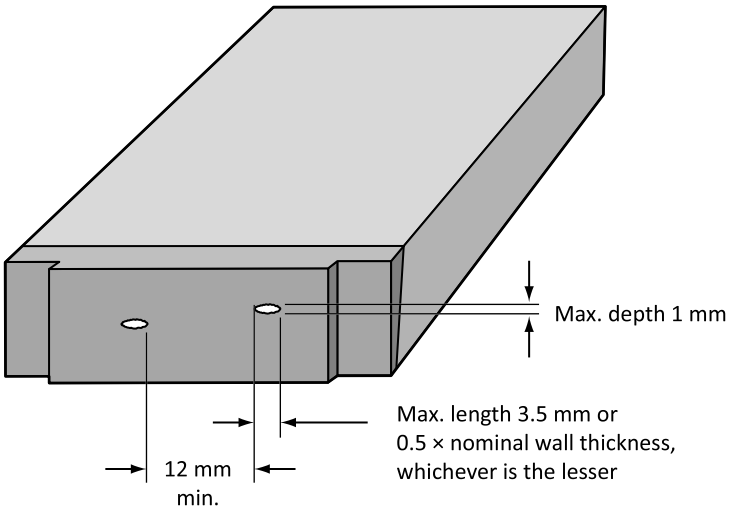
Test specimens shall be broken by pulling them in a tensile testing machine, supporting the ends and striking the centre, or supporting one end and striking the other end. The exposed fracture surfaces shall be at least 19 mm wide.

7.7.4.3

The exposed fracture surfaces of each test specimen shall show complete penetration and fusion, and

a) there shall be no more than three gas pockets per 300 mm^2 of surface area, with the greatest dimension of any gas pocket not to exceed 1.5 mm; and
b) slag inclusions shall be not more than 1 mm in depth or more than the lesser of 3.5 mm and 0.5 times the nominal wall thickness in length, and there shall be at least 12 mm of sound weld metal between adjacent inclusions (see Figure 7.11).

Figure 7.11
Permissible dimensions for slag inclusions in the fracture surfaces of nick-break test specimens
(See Clauses 7.7.4.3 and 7.7.7.3.)



7.7.5 Testing of butt welds — Root-bend and face-bend tests

7.7.5.1
Test specimens shall be as shown in Figure 7.9. They shall be machine-cut or oxygen-cut, and the inside and outside weld reinforcements shall be removed flush with the surfaces of the test specimens. Such surfaces shall be smooth and any scratches shall be light and transverse to the weld.

7.7.5.2
Test specimens shall be bent in a guided-bend test jig similar to that shown in Figure 7.12. Test specimens shall be placed on the die with the weld at mid-span. Face-bend test specimens shall be placed with the face of the weld directed towards the gap, whereas root-bend test specimens shall be placed with the root of the weld directed towards the gap. The plunger shall be forced into the gap until the test specimen is approximately U-shaped.

7.7.5.3
Except as allowed by Clauses 7.7.5.4 and 7.7.5.5, no cracks or other imperfections exceeding the lesser of 3 mm and 0.5 times the nominal wall thickness in any direction shall be present in the weld or between the weld and the fusion zone after bending. Cracks that originate along the edges of the test specimen during testing and that are less than 6 mm, measured in any direction, shall be disregarded unless obvious defects are observed.

7.7.5.4
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For welds of piping materials having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 359 MPa, bend test specimens that do not meet the requirements of Clause 7.7.5.3 shall be considered acceptable if, after being broken apart, their exposed surfaces meet the requirements specified in Clause 7.7.4.3 for nick-break tests.

7.7.5.5
If any of the bend test specimens fail due to lack of penetration that, in the opinion of the company, is not representative of the weld, a test specimen obtained adjacent to the one that failed may be substituted.

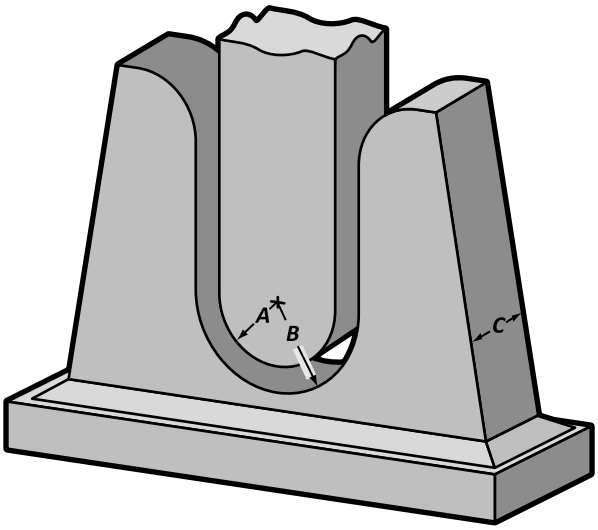
7.7.6 Testing of butt welds — Side-bend test

7.7.6.1
Test specimens shall be as shown in Figure 7.10. They shall be machine-cut or oxygen-cut. Oxygen-cut surfaces shall be oversized and machined by a non-thermal process to remove a minimum of 3 mm per side. The sides shall be smooth and parallel and the long edges rounded. The inside and outside weld reinforcements shall be removed flush with the surfaces of the test specimens.

7.7.6.2
Test specimens shall be bent in a guided-bend test jig similar to that shown in Figure 7.12. Each specimen shall be placed on the die with the weld at mid-span and with the face of the weld at 90° to the gap. The plunger shall be forced into the gap until the test specimen is approximately U-shaped after bending.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.12
Jig for guided-bend tests
(See Clauses 7.7.5.2, 7.7.6.2, and 7.17.4.2.)



Legend:

A	(Radius of the plunger)	= 45 mm
B	(Radius of die)	= 60 mm
C	(Width of die)	= 50 mm

7.7.6.3

Side-bend tests shall meet the requirements specified in Clause 7.7.5.3 for root-bend and face-bend tests.

7.7.7 Testing of fillet welds and branch connection welds — Root-break test

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

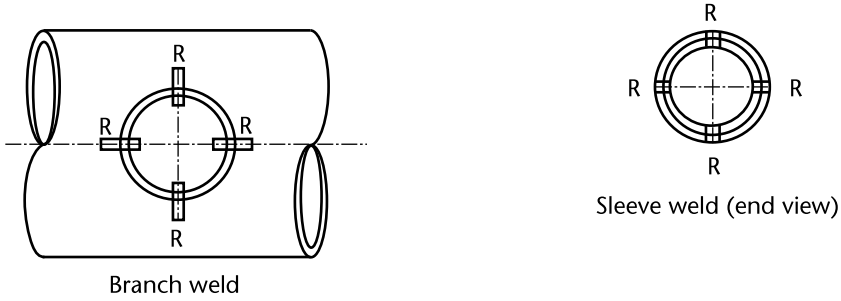
Note: *The company may substitute the macrosection test (see Clause 7.7.8) for the root-break test.*

7.7.7.1

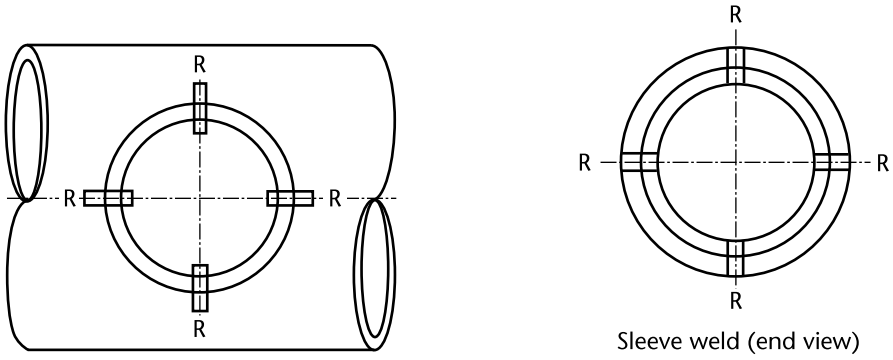
Test specimens shall be cut from the test welds at locations as shown in Figure 7.13 and prepared as shown in Figure 7.14. The number of test specimens shall be as given in Table 7.5; for pipe smaller than 60.3 mm OD and components smaller than NPS 2, two or more test welds shall be made to obtain the required number of test specimens. Test specimens shall be air-cooled to room temperature prior to testing.

© 2015 CSA Group

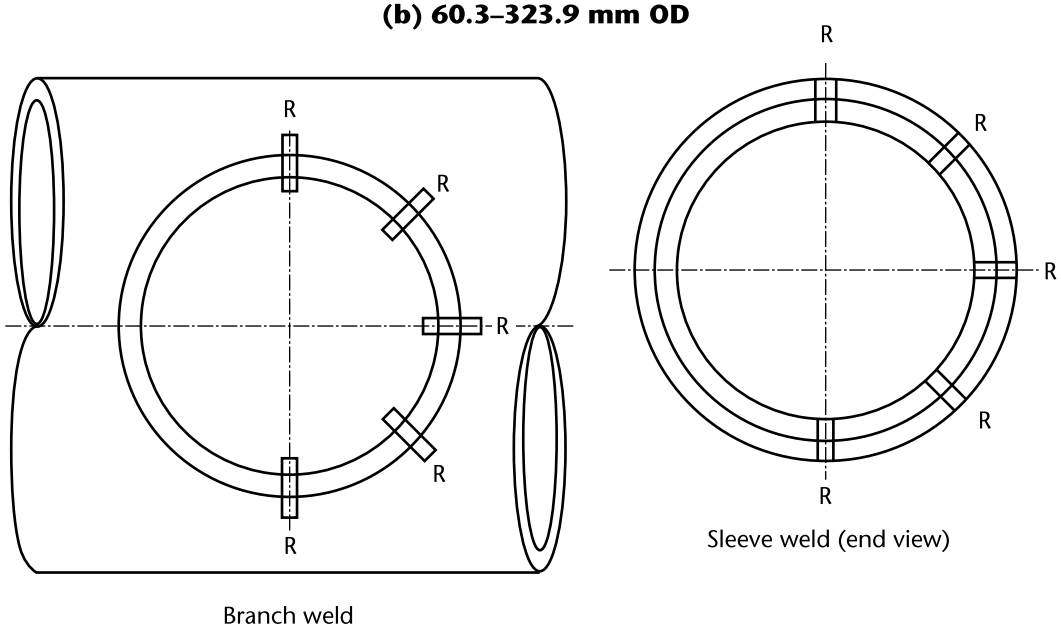
Figure 7.13
Location of root-break or macrosection test specimens for fillet welds and branch connection welds
(See Clause 7.7.7.1.)



(a) Smaller than 60.3 mm OD (obtain from 2 or more welds)



(b) 60.3–323.9 mm OD

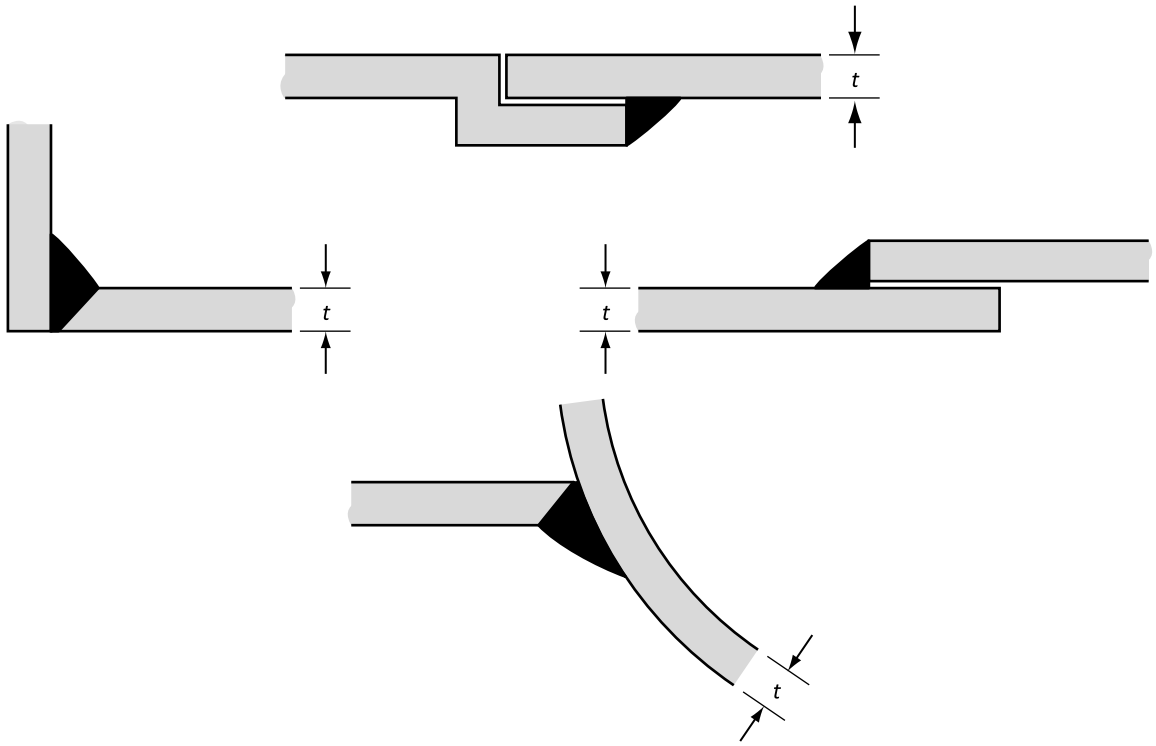


(c) Larger than 323.9 mm OD

Note: *The company may locate test specimens in other quadrants, provided that an approximately equal number of test specimens are removed from the top and bottom quadrants.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.14
Root-break or macrosection test specimens
(See Clauses 7.7.7.1 and 7.7.8.2.)



Legend:
t = thickness

Notes:
1) *Test specimens shall be machine-cut or oxygen-cut.*
2) *Test specimens shall be at least 25 mm wide and there shall be at least 50 mm length of pipe on each side of the test weld.*
3) *Root-break test specimens may be hacksaw-notched in the weld.*

Table 7.5
Number of root-break or macrosection test specimens for fillet welds and branch connection welds
(See Clauses 7.7.7.1. and 7.7.8.2.)

Pipe size, OD mm	Number of test specimens
Smaller than 60.3	4 (obtain from 2 or more welds)
60.3–323.9	4
Larger than 323.9	5

7.7.7.2

Test specimens shall be broken by supporting the ends and striking the centre or by supporting one end and striking the other end. Test specimens shall be struck so that the root of the weld is subjected to the greater strain.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.7.7.3

The exposed fracture surfaces of each test specimen shall show complete penetration and fusion, and

a) there shall be not more than three gas pockets per 300 mm² of surface area, with the greatest dimension of any gas pocket not to exceed 1.5 mm; and
b) slag inclusions shall be not more than 1 mm in depth or more than the lesser of 3.5 mm and 0.5 times the nominal wall thickness in length and there shall be at least 12 mm of sound weld metal between adjacent inclusions (see Figure 7.11).

7.7.8 Testing of fillet welds and branch connection welds — Macrosection test

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.7.8.1

The company may substitute the macrosection test for the root-break test (see Clause 7.7.7).

7.7.8.2

The number of test specimens shall be as given in Table 7.5. The macrosection test specimens shall be as shown in Figure 7.14 and treated with a suitable etchant to clearly show cross-sections of the weld metal and HAZ.

7.7.8.3

The etched macrosection test specimens shall be visually inspected and show complete penetration and fusion, and there shall be no cracks, gas pockets exceeding 1.5 mm in size, slag inclusions exceeding 1 mm in depth, or concavity or convexity exceeding 3 mm.

7.7.9 Additional testing of partial-penetration butt welds

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.7.9.1

A partial-penetration butt weld shall be produced in accordance with a qualified full-penetration butt weld procedure specification except that the root gap may be adjusted to achieve the required partial penetration. The test ring shall be radiographed before sectioning so that it can be used later as a comparative radiograph for estimating incomplete penetration on production welds. Two specimens, one from each of the 12 and 6 o'clock positions, shall be prepared for macroexamination.

7.7.9.2

The penetration shall exceed 85% of the nominal wall thickness. There shall be no root projection inside the pipe.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.8 Arc and gas welding — Qualification of welders

7.8.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.8.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welders shall qualify by demonstrating their ability to produce acceptable welds in accordance with specified company-qualified welding procedure specifications for the particular position involved. The typical button that is produced where the end of a bead joins its beginning in a circumferential weld shall be inspected during the qualification testing.

Welders continuously employed by a company and regularly making welds shall be required to requalify at intervals of not greater than 2 years. Welders not so employed shall be required to requalify at intervals not greater than 1 year.

Note: *Notwithstanding the requirement for requalification at intervals of either 1 or 2 years, company-employed welders who have not made welds for a period in excess of 3 months since they last qualified should be retested.*

7.8.1.2

Welders shall be allowed a reasonable length of time to adjust welding machines prior to starting the test welds. Welders shall make qualification test welds in accordance with the qualified welding procedure specifications. Where required by the company, qualification of welders shall be conducted in the presence of a company representative.

7.8.1.3

Weld acceptability shall be determined in accordance with the applicable visual inspection requirements of Clause 7.8.4 and by one or both of the following, as specified by the company:

a) destructive testing as specified in
   i) Clauses 7.7.2, 7.7.4 to 7.7.6; or
   ii) Clauses 7.7.7 and 7.7.8; and
b) nondestructive inspection as specified in Clause 7.10.4.

Nondestructive inspection shall not be used for the purpose of locating sound areas or areas including discontinuities, and thereafter making destructive tests of such areas to qualify or disqualify welders.

7.8.1.4

Welders shall be qualified for partial-penetration butt welds by completing both a full-penetration butt weld that meets the requirements of Clause 7.8.1.3 and a partial-penetration butt weld that meets the requirements of Clause 7.7.9.2 (based upon macroexamination of two specimens, one from each of the 12 and 6 o'clock positions). If either of the partial-penetration butt weld specimens exhibits insufficient penetration, or root projection, then two additional specimens shall be prepared and both shall meet the test requirements.

7.8.1.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welders qualified to make butt or branch connection welds shall be considered qualified to make fillet welds on pipe in the same outside diameter group and wall thickness group and in the same position

 © 2015 CSA Group

for which they are qualified, unless the welding process and bead deposition techniques to be used for fillet welding are dissimilar to those used when they qualified.

Notes:

1) *For branch connections, such groups and positions are based upon the branch pipe dimensions and position.*

2) *For fillet welding and branch connection welding on liquid-filled piping or flowing-gas piping, see Clause 7.17.*

7.8.1.6

The requirements specified for qualification using pipe shall also apply to qualification using components, in which case, the requirements shall be governed by the component nominal wall thickness at the bevel and by the outside diameter of the matching pipe.

7.8.2 Qualification range

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.8.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welders who have qualified by welding pipe within one of the following outside diameter groups shall be considered qualified to weld pipe of any other outside diameter within that group:

a) smaller than 60.3 mm OD;
b) 60.3 to 323.9 mm OD; and
c) larger than 323.9 mm OD.

7.8.2.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For branch connections, welders who have qualified by welding branch pipe within one of the following outside diameter groups shall be considered qualified to weld all branch pipe within that group on all diameters of run pipe:

a) smaller than 60.3 mm OD;
b) 60.3 to 323.9 mm OD; and
c) larger than 323.9 mm OD.

7.8.2.3

For arc welding, welders shall be considered qualified to weld any nominal wall thickness from 0.75 times the nominal wall thickness with which they qualified up to 1.5 times the nominal wall thickness with which they qualified, except as allowed by Clause 7.8.2.5 or except as follows:

a) If the nominal wall thickness with which they qualified was equal to or less than 4.2 mm, welders shall be considered qualified to weld any nominal wall thickness from 0.75 times the nominal wall thickness with which they qualified up to 6.4 mm.
b) If the nominal wall thickness with which they qualified was equal to or greater than 8.6 mm, welders shall be considered qualified to weld any nominal wall thickness from 6.4 mm up to 1.5 times the nominal wall thickness with which they qualified.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.8.2.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welders qualified to weld branch connections whose outside diameters are at least 50% of the outside diameter of the run pipe shall be considered qualified to weld branch connections in the following positions:

a) all positions, if the qualification test weld was made with the branch on the side of the run pipe;
b) top and bottom, if the qualification test weld was made with the branch on the bottom of the run pipe; or
c) top, if the qualification test weld was made with the branch on the top of the run pipe.

7.8.2.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For arc welding, welders qualified to make fillet welds within the diameter group 60.3 to 323.9 mm OD shall be considered qualified to make fillet welds on nominal wall thickness that is equal to or greater than that with which they qualified.

7.8.2.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welders who have made successful procedure specification qualification test welds shall be automatically qualified for such procedures for the particular position used in qualification.

7.8.2.7

At the option of the company, welders who have qualified by welding pipe with the axis positioned at 45 ± 5° from the horizontal shall be considered qualified to weld pipe in any position.

7.8.2.8

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For oxy-fuel welding, welders shall be considered qualified to weld any nominal wall thickness that is equal to or less than that with which they qualified.

7.8.3 Special qualification — Butt welds

7.8.3.1

At the option of the company, welders whose work is limited to specific weld passes in a multipass butt weld shall qualify by demonstrating their ability to weld those specific passes in accordance with a qualified welding procedure specification, with the other weld passes necessary to make complete welds being made by others.

7.8.3.2

The weld acceptability shall be determined as specified in Clauses 7.7.2 to 7.7.6 and 7.8.4. Welders shall be considered qualified if all tests are acceptable.

7.8.4 Visual inspection

Visual inspection shall be performed to detect incomplete penetration (see Clause 7.11.3), undercut (see Clause 7.11.6), burn-through (see Clause 7.11.11), cracks (see Clause 7.11.15), arc burns (see

 © 2015 CSA Group

Clause 7.11.15), unequal leg length (see Clause 7.11.16), and other surface imperfections in the test welds. Such imperfections shall be assessed as specified in Clause 7.11. Test welds shall have a neat appearance.

7.8.5 Qualification of welders by visual and nondestructive inspection

At the option of the company, butt welders shall be qualified by visual and nondestructive inspection of their qualification test welds. Such welds shall meet the applicable visual inspection requirements of Clause 7.8.4 and the applicable nondestructive inspection requirements specified for production welds in Clause 7.11 or 7.15.10, whichever is applicable.

7.8.6 Retests

7.8.6.1

Where, in the opinion of the company, failure of welders to pass tests is attributable to conditions beyond the control of the welders, such tests shall be considered invalid.

7.8.6.2

Where a welder fails a valid test twice, no further tests shall be given until such welders have submitted proof of subsequent training acceptable to the company.

7.8.7 Records of qualified welders

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Records shall be made of the tests given to welders and of the detailed results of each test. A list of qualified welders and the procedure specifications in accordance with which they are qualified to weld shall be kept current.

Note: *Welders may be required to requalify if their ability is in doubt.*

7.9 Arc and gas welding — Production welding

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.9.1 General

7.9.1.1

Except as allowed by Clauses 7.9.1.2 and 7.9.1.3, welding of piping, including tack welds* that are incorporated into the completed weld, shall be performed using qualified welding procedure specifications (see Clause 7.6). The surfaces to be welded shall be smooth, uniform, and free of fins, laminations, tears, scale, slag, grease, paint, and other deleterious material that might adversely affect welding.

* *Tack welds are welds made to keep the parts in position.*

7.9.1.2

Tack welds that are not incorporated into the completed weld shall be made using the preheating temperature and consumable selection of a welding procedure specification qualified for the materials to be joined. Such welds shall be removed by grinding, gouging, or other methods.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.9.1.3

Seal welds* shall be made using the preheating temperature and consumable selection of a welding procedure specification qualified for the materials to be sealed. The limitations of Clause 4.5.2 shall apply to a threaded joint with sealed threads.

* *Seal welds are threaded connections welded to prevent leakage of the joint.*

7.9.1.4

Welding of piping (including seal welding and the production of tack welds and partial-penetration butt welds) shall be done by welders qualified as specified in Clause 7.8.

7.9.2 Alignment and root gap

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Alignment of abutting ends shall be such that it minimizes the offset between surfaces. For pipe of the same nominal wall thickness and components with the same nominal wall thickness at the bevel, the maximum allowable offset shall be 1.6 mm, except that a greater offset may be present, provided that it is caused by dimensional variations and is distributed around the circumference of the pipe or component in a uniform manner. Prior to welding, the alignment and the root gap between abutting ends shall be confirmed by visual inspection to be in accordance with the applicable dimensional tolerances in the welding procedure specification. Once welding of the root bead has commenced, the pipe or component at that joint shall not be hammered.

Notes:

1) *Hammering of the pipe or component to obtain proper line-up should be held to a minimum.*

2) *Longitudinal seam welds should be staggered and located within the top half of the pipe.*

7.9.3 Grounding

Grounding devices shall be securely attached to avoid arc burns under the device; however, they shall not be welded to the pipe or to the component being welded.

7.9.4 Use of line-up clamps — Butt welds

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Line-up clamps shall be used as specified in the qualified welding procedure specification. Where internal line-up clamps are used, they shall not be removed until after the root bead has been completed. Where external line-up clamps are used, the root bead segments shall be spaced uniformly around the circumference of the joint and should have a cumulative length of at least 50% of the joint circumference prior to clamp removal.

7.9.5 Relative movement

Relative movement of the parts being joined shall not be allowed prior to completion of the root bead.

Note: *Support of the parts on both sides of the weld should be adequate to prevent relative movement.*

7.9.6 Bevelled ends

Bevelled ends shall be reasonably smooth and uniform, and dimensions shall be confirmed by visual inspection. The applicable dimensional tolerances shall be as specified in the welding procedure specification.

Note: *Field-bevelled ends should be prepared by machine-cutting or oxygen-cutting. Where authorized by the company, manual oxygen-cutting may be used.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.9.7 Weather conditions

7.9.7.1

Welding shall not be done when the quality of the weld would be impaired by the prevailing weather conditions (e.g., moisture, blowing sand, high winds, or low temperatures). Wind shields may be used to make conditions satisfactory for welding. Metal surfaces in, and adjacent to, the weld joint shall be dry before welding commences and while welding is in progress. The company shall decide whether the weather conditions are suitable for welding.

7.9.7.2

Welding at air temperatures below 0 °C shall be done only in accordance with a welding procedure that has been qualified

a) at the prevailing or a lower air temperature without preheating and controlled-cooling practices; or
b) with specified preheating or controlled-cooling practices, or both.

7.9.8 Clearance

Where a joint is welded in a trench, there shall be a bell hole of sufficient size to provide welders with sufficient access to the joint so that their skill is not impaired.

Note: *Where the joint is welded above grade, the working clearance around the joint at the weld should be not less than 400 mm.*

7.9.9 Cleaning between beads

Where applicable, scale and slag shall be removed from each bead and joint surface; this shall be done with hand or power tools, or both. Removal of metal during cleaning shall not change the geometry of the joint in a way that significantly reduces its strength. Where automatic or semi-automatic welding processes are used, grinding of clusters of surface porosity, bead starts, and high points can be necessary prior to the deposition of subsequent passes. Where requested by the company, heavy glass deposits on such welds shall be removed prior to the deposition of subsequent passes.

7.9.10 Position welding

7.9.10.1

Position welds shall be made with the parts to be joined secured against movement and with adequate clearance around the joints to allow the welders space to work.

7.9.10.2

Except where the qualified welding procedure specification provides otherwise, filler and finish beads shall not be commenced before the preceding bead has been completed. Two consecutive beads shall not be started at the same circumferential location. Where the carbon equivalent value of the material being joined is in excess of 0.40, the second weld bead shall be commenced as soon as possible, preferably within 5 min after completion of the root bead.

Note: *Where the carbon equivalent value of the material being welded is 0.40 or less, the second bead (if required by the company) should be commenced as soon as possible after the root bead has been completed.*

7.9.10.3

Completed welds shall be thoroughly cleaned.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.9.11 Roll welding

7.9.11.1

At the option of the company, roll welding may be used, provided that alignment is maintained by the use of supports to prevent sag.

7.9.11.2

Filler and finish beads shall be as specified in Clauses 7.9.10.2 and 7.9.10.3 for position welding.

7.9.12 Identification of welds

Welders shall identify their work in the manner prescribed by the company. Die-stamping of the piping for such a purpose shall not be allowed.

7.9.13 Seal welding

7.9.13.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Prior to starting seal welds, the entire thread and weld area shall be free of foreign substances such as oil, grease, and pipe thread sealant.

7.9.13.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

All threads shall be covered by the seal weld.

7.9.13.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Consideration shall be given to the use of low-hydrogen welding practices.

7.9.14 Fillet welds

Fillet welds on pipes or components having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 317 MPa shall be made using low-hydrogen welding practices (see Clause 7.5.2.2).

7.9.15 Preheating, interpass temperature control, controlled cooling, and stress relieving

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.9.15.1

Preheating, interpass temperature control, controlled cooling, stress relieving (see also Clause 7.9.16), or combinations thereof shall be used where necessitated by the combined effect of the hardenability of the steel, the material thickness, the welding conditions, and the prevailing weather conditions. Such practices shall be specified in the qualified welding procedure specification.

7.9.15.2

For welding of dissimilar materials having different preheating requirements, the higher preheating temperature shall be used.

7.9.15.3
Preheating shall be accomplished by any suitable method, provided that it is uniform and that the temperature does not fall below the prescribed minimum during the actual welding operations.

7.9.15.4
The preheating temperature shall be checked by the use of temperature-indicating crayons, thermocouple pyrometers, or another suitable method to determine that the required preheating temperature is obtained prior to, and maintained during, the welding operation. Care should be taken to prevent overheating, and no part of the joint shall be heated to a temperature in excess of 200 °C unless the requirements of Clause 4.3.5.2 are met.

7.9.15.5
The interpass temperature specified in the welding procedure specification shall be maintained during the welding of a multipass weld.

Note: *Reheating between passes can be necessary to maintain the required temperature levels.*

7.9.15.6
Where applicable, precautions shall be taken through the use of insulating covers or other appropriate means to control the cooling rate of the weld after any pass.

7.9.16 Stress relieving

7.9.16.1
Where the effective throat (see Figure 7.2) of the items to be welded exceeds 31.8 mm, the welds shall be stress relieved.

Notes:

1) *For welds joining items of equal thickness, the effective throat is the nominal thickness of the items.*

2) *Stress relieving of welds can be necessary, where the nominal thickness or the effective throat of the items to be welded is 31.8 mm or less, if the mechanical properties of the weld or the residual stresses at the weld are unsatisfactory for the intended service without the use of stress relieving.*

7.9.16.2
Welds shall require stress relieving if either item being welded requires stress relieving.

7.9.16.3
The temperature range for stress relieving shall be as stated in the welding procedure specification.

Notes:

1) *Temperatures in the range of 600 to 660 °C are typical; however, higher or lower temperatures can be necessary for some steels in order to ensure that stress relieving does not produce adverse effects upon the mechanical properties.*

2) *Attention should be paid to avoiding the possibility of over-aging precipitation hardening steels or over-tempering quenched and tempered steels.*

7.9.16.4
Stress relieving shall be conducted using methods and procedures as specified in Paragraph UW-40 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Code*, Section VIII, Division I.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.9.16.5

The parts to be stress relieved shall be gradually heated to the required temperature, held at that temperature for a period of time based upon a minimum hold time of 2 min/mm of effective throat or 30 min, whichever is the greater, and allowed to cool gradually and uniformly.

7.9.16.6

Stress relieving shall be in accordance with one of the following methods:

a) heating the complete structure as a unit;
b) heating a complete section containing the weld or welds to be stress relieved;
c) heating a part of the item by gradually heating a circumferential band containing the weld at its centre. For circumferential welds, the band that is to be heated to the required temperature shall have a width on each side of the centreline of the weld of not less than three times the greatest width of the weld and the temperature shall diminish gradually outward from the ends of the band; and

   Note: *Care should be taken to obtain temperatures that are uniform along the complete length of the weld.*

d) for branch pipes or other welded attachments for which stress relieving is required, local stress relieving by heating a circumferential band with the attachment at the middle of the band. The width of the band shall be at least six times the nominal thickness of the run pipe beyond the weld joining the branch pipe or attachment to the run pipe. The entire band shall be heated to the required temperature and held for the required time interval.

7.9.16.7

Provided that the required temperature is capable of being attained and uniformly maintained during stress relieving, the heat source for localized stress relieving shall be one of the following:

a) electric induction;
b) electric resistance;
c) fuel-fired ring burners;
d) fuel-fired torches; or
e) another suitable source.

7.9.16.8

For localized stress relieving, temperatures shall be monitored by using thermocouple pyrometers or other suitable devices.

7.10 Arc and gas welding — Inspection and testing of production welds

7.10.1 General

7.10.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Inspectors shall be competent and their qualifications shall be approved by the company.

Note: *CSA W178.2 provides an example of welding inspector training and competency requirements.*

7.10.1.2

Except as allowed by Clause 7.10.1.4, production welds that are not required to be nondestructively inspected (see Clause 7.10.3) shall be inspected visually or by a combination of visual and nondestructive methods to determine compliance with the applicable acceptance criteria. The

 © 2015 CSA Group

inspection method or methods to be used shall be at the option of the company and as specified in Clauses 7.10.2 and 7.10.4.

7.10.1.3

Welds that are nondestructively inspected using ultrasonic methods shall be visually inspected as specified in Clause 7.10.2.

7.10.1.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall have the right to inspect production welds nondestructively or by removing them and conducting mechanical tests. Such inspections may be made during or after welding, or both.

7.10.2 Visual inspection

7.10.2.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The completed welds on the outside surface of the piping shall be visually inspected for 100% of the weld length for any imperfections that are not detectable by nondestructive inspection, in accordance with documented procedures approved by the company. Such procedures shall include requirements for extent and frequency of visual inspection, personnel qualification and visual acuity, maximum viewing distance and angle, lighting conditions, evaluation tools, and reporting.

7.10.2.2

Surface imperfections detected by visual inspection shall be evaluated on the basis of the applicable requirements of Clause 7.11.

7.10.2.3

Results of the visual inspection of completed welds shall be reported in a format approved by the company. Reports of defective welds shall include

a) weld identification;
b) description, position, and length of defects;
c) date; and
d) signature of qualified visual inspector.

7.10.2.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Visual inspection records shall be kept until the piping is abandoned.

7.10.3 Mandatory nondestructive inspection

7.10.3.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

All welds within the limits of uncased road and railway crossings, all welds within the limits of water

 © 2015 CSA Group

crossings, all pressure-retaining welds that will not be pressure tested in place, and a minimum of 15% of all other production welds made each day shall be nondestructively inspected

a) for 100% of their lengths;
b) as specified in Clause 7.10.4; and
c) where such welds are butt welds, using radiographic or ultrasonic methods, or a combination of such methods.

Where the daily results of the nondestructive inspection are unacceptable to the company, more nondestructive inspection or remedial actions shall be required.

Note: *Welds that are inspected should be reasonably representative of the daily production.*

7.10.3.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For carbon dioxide pipeline systems and gas pipelines containing predominantly CO_2, all butt welds shall be inspected by radiographic or ultrasonic methods, or a combination of such methods, for 100% of their circumferences, as specified in Clause 7.10.4.

7.10.3.3

Partial-penetration butt welds shall be radiographically inspected for 100% of their circumferences, as specified in Clauses 7.10.4 and 7.11.1.3.

7.10.4 Nondestructive inspection

7.10.4.1 Methods

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In selecting methods of nondestructive inspection, the company shall consider the

a) nature of imperfections that can result from the welding processes to be used;
b) capability of the nondestructive inspection methods to detect such imperfections; and
c) accuracy of indication, interpretation, and evaluation possible with such nondestructive inspection methods.

The nondestructive inspection procedures used shall be documented and approved by the company.

Note: *The company can require personnel responsible for nondestructive inspection to demonstrate the capability of the procedure to detect imperfections and to demonstrate their ability to correctly interpret indications.*

7.10.4.2 Evaluation of results

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 7.10.4.3, welds inspected nondestructively shall be evaluated on the basis of the requirements of Clauses 7.11 or 7.15.10, whichever is applicable.

7.10.4.3 Alternative evaluation of results

At the option of the company, as an alternative to the requirements of Clauses 7.11 and 7.15.10, Annex K may be used for the evaluation of circumferential butt welds in designated portions of lines that

a) are made using a welding procedure qualified as specified in Annex K;
b) are inspected as specified in Annex K;

 © 2015 CSA Group

c) join pipes of equal nominal wall thickness and grade;
d) are intended for other than sour service as defined in Clause 16.2;
e) are located in other than pump stations, compressor stations, measuring stations, or pressure-regulating stations, or other assembly piping; and
f) are located where significant imperfection growth in service is not anticipated.

7.10.4.4

Personnel performing magnetic particle or dye penetrant non-destructive inspection shall be qualified as specified in CAN/CGSB-48.9712/ISO 9712.

7.10.5 Destructive testing

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.10.5.1

Destructive testing shall consist of removing completed welds, sectioning them into test specimens, and testing the specimens as specified in Clauses 7.7.2 to 7.7.9. The company shall have the right to disqualify from further work, or to require further testing of, welders making welds that are not in accordance with such requirements.

7.10.5.2

Trepanning methods of testing shall not be used.

7.10.6 Disposition of defective welds

7.10.6.1

Except as allowed by Clause 7.10.6.2, welds that are unacceptable on the basis of Clause 7.11, Clause 7.15.10, or Annex K, whichever is applicable, shall be removed, or repaired as specified in Clause 7.12.

7.10.6.2

Welds that have previously been accepted and are subsequently found to be unacceptable on the basis of Clauses 7.11.3 to 7.11.17, Clause 7.15.10, or Annex K, whichever is applicable, shall be
a) accepted, provided that the weld imperfections are found to be acceptable on the basis of an engineering critical assessment involving consideration of service history and loading, anticipated service conditions (including the effects of corrosive and chemical attack), accurately established dimensions and location of the imperfections, and weld properties (including fracture toughness);
b) repaired as specified in Clause 7.12; or
c) removed.

Note: *A recommended practice for determining the acceptability of imperfections in fusion welds in pipeline systems using engineering critical assessment is included in Annex J.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.11 Arc and gas welding — Standards of acceptability for nondestructive inspection

7.11.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.11.1.1 Applicability

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

These standards of acceptability shall apply to the determination of the acceptability of indications of imperfections of the size and type located by radiography and other nondestructive inspection methods other than ultrasonic inspection. Requirements specified for welds made using pipe shall also apply to welds made using components and where applicable, shall be governed by the component nominal wall thickness at the bevel and by the outside diameter of the matching pipe. Such standards of acceptability are intended as a measure of adequate welding competence, as performed in accordance with qualified welding procedure specifications.

Notes:

1) *The company has the option of using alternative standards of acceptability as specified in Clause 7.10.4.3.*

2) *Additional standards of acceptability for sour service pipelines are specified in Clause 16.9.3.3.*

7.11.1.2 Rights of rejection

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Since nondestructive inspection methods generally give only two-dimensional results, the company may reject welds that appear to meet these standards of acceptability where, in its opinion, the depth, location, or orientation of imperfections can be significantly detrimental to the structural integrity of the welds.

7.11.1.3 Partial-penetration butt welds

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Radiographic inspection of partial-penetration butt welds shall require the use of the comparative radiograph(s) obtained during the welding procedure qualification (see Clause 7.7.9.1) for estimating incomplete penetration. The standards of acceptability for partial-penetration butt welds shall be as specified in Clauses 7.11.2 to 7.11.17, except that

a) weld penetration shall be from 85 to 100% of the nominal wall thickness;
b) internal projection shall not be allowed;
c) individual indications of burn-through areas shall not be allowed; and
d) indications of incomplete fusion in the root and hot passes shall not be allowed.

7.11.2 Weld crown

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

At no point shall the outside crown surface of welds be below the surface of the adjacent base metal or above it by more than the amount shown in Table 7.6, except that, at the option of the company, an additional 1.0 mm shall be allowed for localized deviations.

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.6
Outside crown height
(See Clause 7.11.2 and Tables 7.8 and 7.9.)

Nominal wall thickness, mm	Outside crown height, maximum, mm
10.0 or less	2.5
Greater than 10.0	3.5

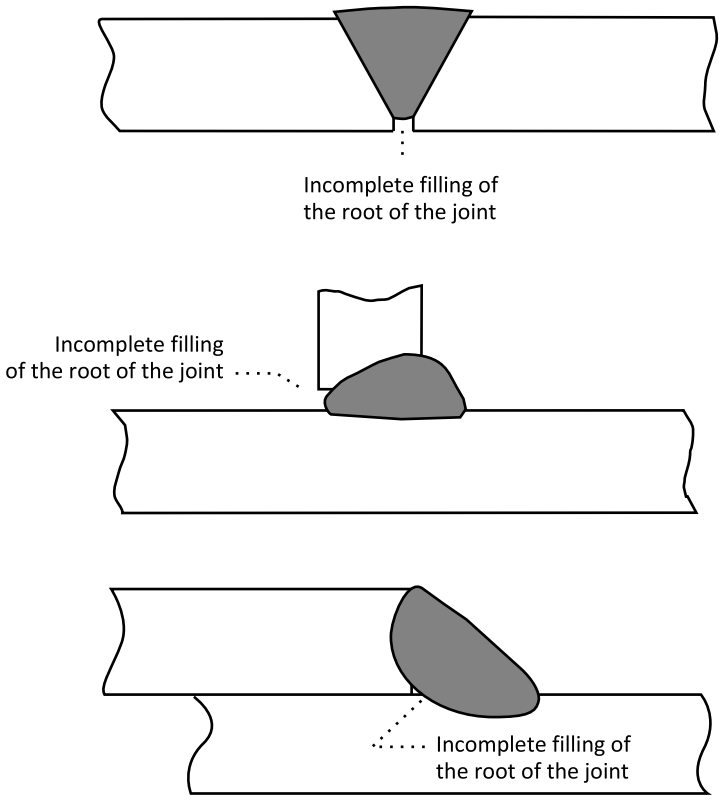
7.11.3 Incomplete penetration of the root bead

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A schematic representation of incomplete penetration of the root bead (incomplete filling of the root of the joint) is shown in Figure 7.15. Except where partial-penetration welds are required by design, the following shall apply:

a) Individual indications of incomplete penetration conditions shall not exceed 12 mm in length.
b) The cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 25 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 8% of the weld length.

Figure 7.15
Incomplete penetration of the root bead
(See Clause 7.11.3)



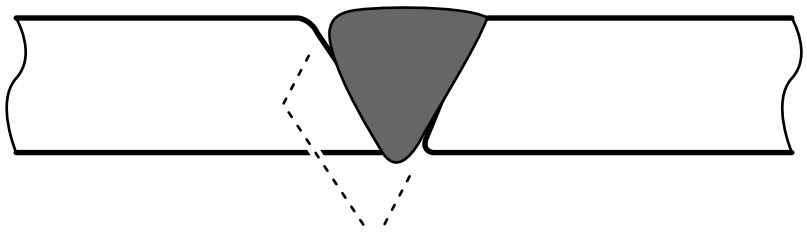
© 2015 CSA Group

7.11.4 Incomplete fusion

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A schematic representation of incomplete fusion (a lack of bond between the weld metal and the base metal at the root or top of the joint) is shown in Figure 7.16. Individual indications of incomplete fusion conditions shall not exceed 12 mm in length. The cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 25 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 8% of the weld length.

Figure 7.16
Incomplete fusion
(See Clause 7.11.4.)



7.11.5 Internal concavity

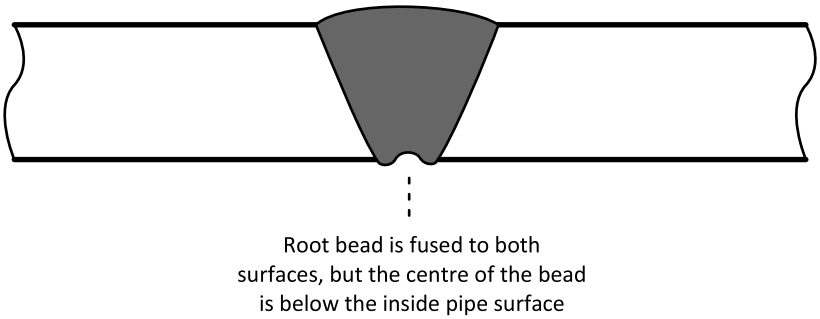
There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A schematic representation of internal concavity (incomplete filling of the root of the joint, wherein the sides of the root are filled and the centre is not) is shown in Figure 7.17. This condition is acceptable regardless of length, provided that the minimum thickness of the weld metal exceeds the thickness of the adjacent base metal. Where the minimum thickness of the weld metal does not exceed that of the adjacent base metal, individual indications of internal concavity shall not exceed 50 mm in length. The cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 50 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 16% of the weld length.

Note: *Where radiography is used to evaluate internal concavity, this imperfection is acceptable regardless of length, provided that the density of its radiographic image does not exceed the density of the radiographic image of the adjacent base metal.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.17
Internal concavity
(See Clause 7.11.5.)



7.11.6 Undercut

7.11.6.1

Undercut is a groove melted into the base metal adjacent to a weld toe at the root or top of the joint and left unfilled by the deposited weld metal.

7.11.6.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 7.11.6.3, the following shall apply:

a) Individual lengths of indications of undercut shall not exceed 50 mm.
b) The cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 50 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 16% of the weld length.
c) For qualification of welders, the maximum depth of undercuts adjacent to the final test weld bead on the outside of the pipe or component shall not exceed 1 mm.

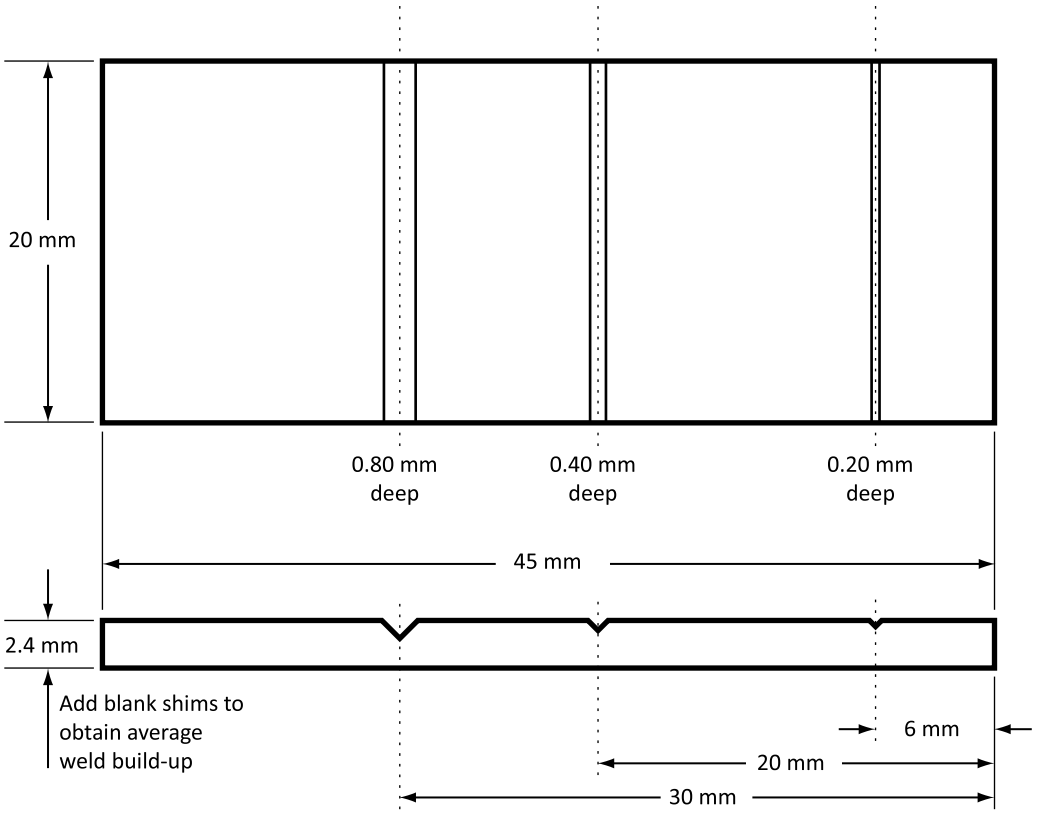
7.11.6.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Undercut depths less than 0.5 mm or 6% of the nominal wall thickness, whichever is the lesser, shall be acceptable regardless of length, provided that a visual, mechanical, or nondestructive method of assessing the depth is used. Assessment of undercut depths using radiography is allowed only where comparator shims as described in Clause 7.13.7 and shown in Figure 7.18 are used.

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.18
Comparator shim
(See Clauses 7.11.6.3 and 7.13.7.)



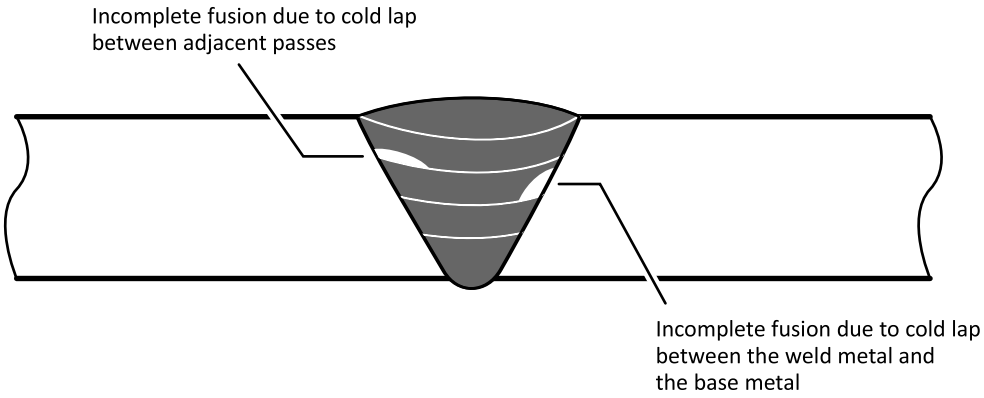
Notes:
1) *Notch location tolerance shall be ± 0.5 mm.*
2) *All notches are V-shaped with 45° included angles.*
3) *Notch depth tolerance shall be ± 0.025 mm.*

7.11.7 Incomplete fusion due to cold lap

Incomplete fusion due to cold lap is a subsurface lack of bond between weld beads (cold lap) or between the weld metal and the base metal (lack of side wall fusion). A schematic representation of an example of this imperfection is shown in Figure 7.19. Individual indications of incomplete fusion due to cold lap conditions shall not exceed 50 mm in length. The cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 50 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 16% of the weld length.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7.19
Incomplete fusion due to cold lap
(See Clause 7.11.7.)

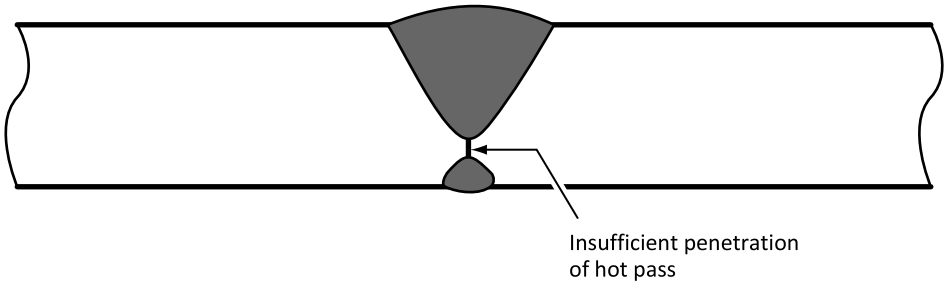


Note: *Incomplete fusion due to cold lap is not surface-connected.*

7.11.8 Lack of cross-penetration

Lack of cross-penetration is a lack of penetration occurring at the weld interior where the joint preparation incorporates abutting surfaces. Such an imperfection occurs due to lack of penetration of the second weld pass. A schematic representation of an example of this imperfection is shown in Figure 7.20. Individual indications of lack of cross-penetration conditions shall not exceed 50 mm in length. The cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 50 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 16% of the weld length.

Figure 7.20
Lack of cross-penetration
(See Clause 7.11.8.)



7.11.9 Elongated slag inclusions

7.11.9.1

Elongated slag inclusions are nonmetallic solids that are entrapped in the weld metal or between the weld metal and the base metal and produce indications that are less than 1.5 mm in width.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.11.9.2

For pipe 60.3 mm OD or larger and components NPS 2 or larger, individual indications of elongated slag inclusions shall not exceed 50 mm in length. The cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 50 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 16% of the weld length. Indications of parallel slag lines shall be considered to be separate indications if the width of one or both of them exceeds 0.8 mm.

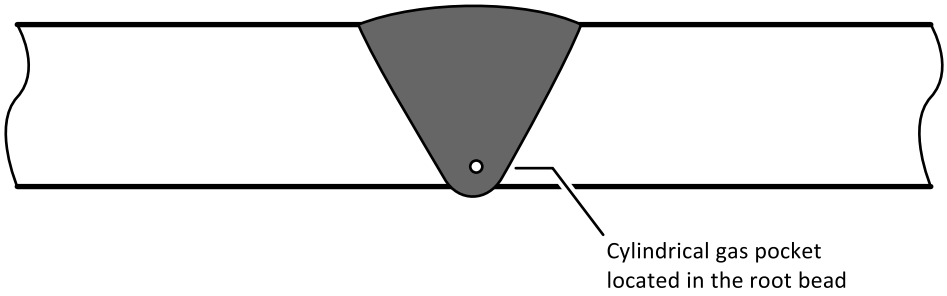
7.11.9.3

For pipe smaller than 60.3 mm OD and components smaller than NPS 2, individual indications of elongated slag inclusions and cumulative lengths of such indications shall not exceed 3 times the nominal wall thickness in length. Indications of parallel slag lines shall be considered to be separate indications if the width of one or both of them exceeds 0.8 mm.

7.11.10 Hollow bead

Hollow bead is linear porosity or cylindrical gas pockets occurring in the root bead. A schematic representation of an example of this imperfection is shown in Figure 7.21. Individual indications of hollow bead conditions shall not exceed 12 mm in length. The cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 25 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 8% of the weld length.

Figure 7.21
Hollow bead
(See Clause 7.11.10.)



7.11.11 Burn-through areas

7.11.11.1

Burn-through areas are those portions of root beads where excessive arc penetration has caused the weld puddle to be blown into the insides of the parts joined.

7.11.11.2

For pipe 60.3 mm OD or larger and components NPS 2 or larger, individual indications of burn-through areas shall not exceed 5 mm or the thickness of the base metal, whichever is the lesser, in any dimension. The cumulative maximum dimensions of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 12 mm.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.11.11.3
For pipe smaller than 60.3 mm OD and components smaller than NPS 2, not more than one indication of burn-through area is acceptable, and it shall not exceed 6 mm or the thickness of the base metal, whichever is the lesser, in any dimension.

7.11.11.4
Welds that contained burn-through areas shall be considered to have been properly repaired if the density of the radiographic image of the repaired area does not exceed that of the adjacent base metal.

7.11.12 Isolated slag inclusions

7.11.12.1
Isolated slag inclusions are nonmetallic solids that are entrapped in the weld metal or between the weld metal and the base metal and produce indications that are 1.5 mm or greater in width.

7.11.12.2
For pipe 60.3 mm OD or larger and components NPS 2 or larger, individual indications of isolated slag inclusions shall not exceed 2.5 mm or 0.33 times the nominal wall thickness of the base metal, whichever is the lesser, in any dimension. The cumulative maximum dimensions of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 10 mm and there shall be no more than four such indications of the maximum dimension allowed in such 300 mm lengths. Adjacent indications of isolated slag inclusions shall be separated by a minimum of 50 mm of sound weld metal.

7.11.12.3
For pipe smaller than 60.3 mm OD and components smaller than NPS 2, individual indications of isolated slag inclusions shall not exceed 2.5 mm or 0.33 times the nominal wall thickness of the base metal, whichever is the lesser, in any dimension. The cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed two times the nominal wall thickness of the base metal.

7.11.13 Spherical porosity

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

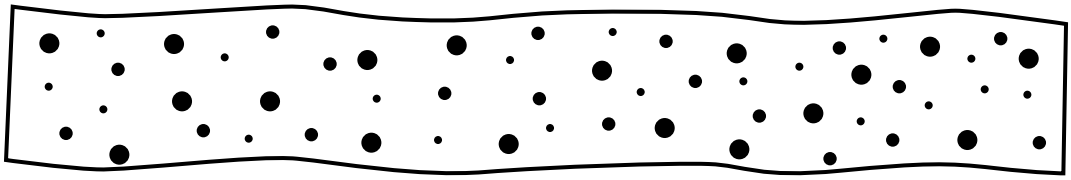
Spherical porosity is gas pockets having a circular section and occurring in the weld metal. Individual indications of spherical gas pockets shall not exceed 3 mm or 25% of the nominal wall thickness of the base metal, whichever is the lesser, in any dimension. The cumulative amount of indications of spherical porosity in any 150 mm of weld length, expressed in terms of the projected area on the radiograph, shall not exceed the value given in Table 7.7. An example of each of such amounts of spherical porosity is shown in Figure 7.22.

 © 2015 CSA Group

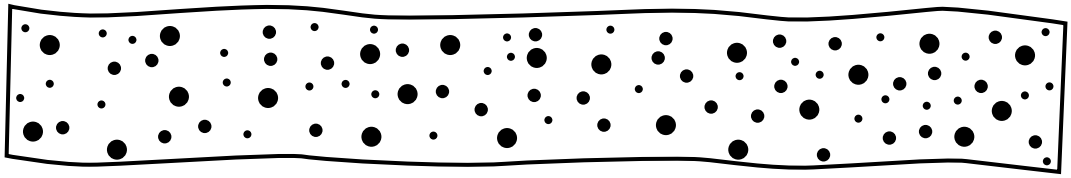
Table 7.7
Maximum acceptable amount of spherical porosity
(See Clause 7.11.13.)

Weld thickness, mm	Maximum acceptable projected area on radiograph, %
Less than 14	3
14–18	4
Greater than 18	5

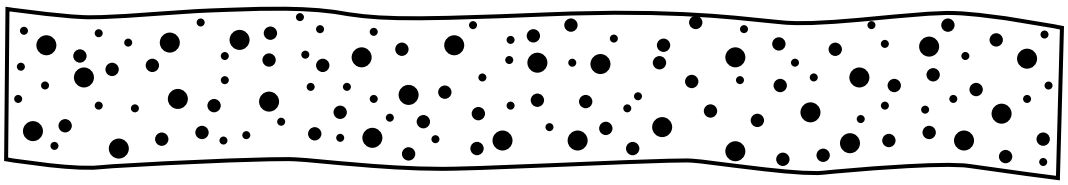
Figure 7.22
Spherical porosity
(See Clause 7.11.13.)



(a) 3% projected area



(b) 4% projected area



(c) 5% projected area

© 2015 CSA Group

7.11.14 Wormhole porosity

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Wormhole porosity is an elongated gas pocket, resulting from gas rising through the solidifying weld metal, that has an orientation that tends to be partly in the through-thickness direction. Individual indications of wormhole porosity shall not exceed 2.5 mm or 0.33 times the nominal wall thickness of the base metal, whichever is the lesser, in any dimension. The cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 10 mm and there shall be not more than four such imperfections of the maximum dimension allowed in such 300 mm lengths. Adjacent indications of wormhole porosity shall be separated by a minimum of 50 mm of sound weld metal. The orientation of wormhole porosity can substantially affect the density of its radiographic image; when applying these limits, consideration shall be given to the requirements of Clause 7.11.1.2.

7.11.15 Cracks and arc burns

7.11.15.1

Indications of cracks shall be unacceptable regardless of location (weld metal or HAZ).

7.11.15.2

Indications of arc burns shall be unacceptable regardless of location.

7.11.16 Unequal leg length — Fillet welds

Except where required by design, there shall be not more than 3 mm difference between the leg lengths of each fillet weld.

7.11.17 Accumulation of imperfections

7.11.17.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The cumulative length of the indications of all imperfections that are restricted by the requirements of Clauses 7.11.3, 7.11.4, 7.11.10, and 7.11.11 shall not exceed 25 mm in any 300 mm length of weld, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 8% of the weld length. The cumulative length of the indications of all other imperfections that are restricted by the requirements of Clauses 7.11.5 to 7.11.9, and of the indications of those imperfections that are restricted by the requirements of Clauses 7.11.12 to 7.11.14, shall not exceed 50 mm in any 300 mm length of weld, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 16% of the weld length.

7.11.17.2

For partial-penetration welds, the cumulative length of the indications of all imperfections, other than those at the root, shall not exceed 25 mm in any 300 mm length of weld, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 8% of the weld length.

7.11.18 Weld conditions limiting radiographic interpretation

Weld conditions that prevent proper interpretation of radiographs shall be cause for rejection of the welds, unless they can be inspected by other acceptable methods.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.12 Arc and gas welding — Repair of welds containing repairable defects

7.12.1 Partial-penetration butt welds

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Root defects in partial-penetration butt welds are nonrepairable and shall be removed by cutting out a cylinder of pipe containing the defect and rewelding.

7.12.2 Authorization for repairs

Without prior company authorization, welds containing defects other than cracks in the cover pass may be repaired. With prior company authorization, welds containing any type of repairable defect may be repaired.

7.12.3 Repair procedures

7.12.3.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Before weld repairs are made, defects shall be entirely removed to expose clean metal. Slag and scale shall be removed by wire brushing.

7.12.3.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Preheating to a temperature of at least 120 °C shall be used when performing repairs. Preheating shall extend to a distance of at least 150 mm from any point of the area to be repaired. Care shall be taken to prevent overheating, and no part of the area shall be heated to a temperature in excess of 200 °C unless the requirements of Clause 4.3.5.2 are met.

7.12.3.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The length of repair welds shall be at least 50 mm.

7.12.4 Removal of arc burns in weld areas

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Arc burns shall be completely removed either by cutting out cylinders containing the arc burns or, where authorized by the company, by using repair procedures that include

a) checking for complete removal of the altered metallurgical structure by etching the repair area with a 10% solution of ammonium persulphate or a 5% solution of nital; and
b) measuring the wall thickness in the repaired area using mechanical or ultrasonic techniques, or both, to determine that the minimum wall thickness requirements are maintained.

Note: *The effectiveness of the etchant should be periodically tested by obtaining a positive indication from an arc burn, since lower metal temperatures and the age of the etchant can adversely affect the results obtained.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.12.5 Removal of cracks in circumferential butt welds and in fillet welds

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Cracks in circumferential butt welds and in fillet welds shall be completely removed by cutting out cylinders containing such cracks, except that where authorized by the company, welds containing cracks may be repaired using a documented repair procedure that includes

a) a requirement to establish the location of the crack;
b) a specification of the crack removal method, which shall be for a crack originating at
   i) an accessible surface, by grinding to remove the crack and to establish the repair welding groove contour; or
   ii) the root and repaired from the outside surface, by grinding, drilling holes at the crack extremities, sawing through to form a new root bead opening, and grinding to establish the repair welding groove contour;
c) a requirement that complete removal of the cracks be confirmed by dye penetrant or wet magnetic particle inspection of the ground areas; and
d) a requirement that areas ground out be repaired by welding as specified in Clause 7.12 and in accordance with qualified welding procedure specifications.

Notes:

1) *For new installations, welds containing cracks should be removed by cutting out cylinders; however, it is recognized that in some circumstances it can be more appropriate to repair such welds.*

2) *Low-hydrogen welding practices should be used for repair welding; where such practices are not used, higher preheating and interpass temperatures should be considered.*

7.12.6 Inspection of repairs

7.12.6.1

Repaired areas of welds shall be inspected by the same means previously used. Where repairs are unacceptable, welds shall be completely removed by cutting out cylinders containing the repaired welds or, where authorized by the company, further repairs shall be made.

Notes:

1) *For welds that contained cracks, consideration should be given to an additional inspection of the full weld by ultrasonic inspection, where this was not the means previously used.*

2) *Consideration should be given to an additional inspection of the repaired areas in cases where the original inspection method may not be applicable to the welding process used for repairing the welds.*

7.12.6.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The acceptability of repaired areas of welds shall be determined as specified in Clause 7.11 or 7.15.10, whichever is applicable.

7.13 Arc and gas welding — Materials and equipment for radiographic inspection

7.13.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Radiographic images shall be produced on film or other imaging media. The resulting radiographic images shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of Clauses 7.13 and 7.14. Non-film radiographic techniques shall produce permanent radiographic image records that can be readily retrieved for viewings and the image data shall be stored in its original unaltered format.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.13.2 Radiographic procedure

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A written procedure shall be developed for each radiographic inspection technique used for both film and non-film imaging systems. The procedure shall be approved by a competent person(s) and detail the specifics of the radiographic technique, including such things as the type and thickness of material for which the procedure is suitable, the image collection and viewing system, radiation source, use of intensifying screens, film type, the type of image quality indicators, exposure geometry, and image storage practices.

7.13.3 Radiation sources

Sources of radiation shall be X-ray machines or radioisotopes.

7.13.4 Imaging media

7.13.4.1

For film radiography, radiographic films shall be classified in accordance with ISO 11699-1 and be of high contrast and relatively fine grain.

7.13.4.2

The use of non-film radiography requires the use of alternative imaging media. Such imaging media shall be capable of consistently producing radiographic images in accordance with the applicable requirements of Clauses 7.13 and 7.14.

7.13.5 Screens

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where intensifying screens are used, the resulting radiographs shall clearly show the image quality indicators as specified in Clause 7.14.6.4.

Note: *Film holders should be backed with sheet lead wherever secondary or scattered radiation would detrimentally influence the results of radiography.*

7.13.6 Image quality indicators

7.13.6.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Image quality indicators (IQIs) shall be used to measure the sensitivity of the radiographic image. Either standard hole-type or wire-type IQIs shall be used. Hole-type IQIs shall conform to ASTM E1025 and wire-type IQIs shall conform to ASTM E747 or ISO 19232-1. The size of the hole-type or wire-type IQI to be used depends on the thickness of the weld to be radiographed and shall be as given in Table 7.8 for X-ray radiography and Table 7.9 for radioisotope gamma radiography.

7.13.6.2

Where weld reinforcement has not been removed, hole-type IQIs require the use of a shim of radiographically similar material, so that the total thickness being radiographed under the IQI is approximately equal to the total weld thickness.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.13.7 Comparator shims

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where comparator shims are used, the depth of internal undercut shall be estimated by comparing the density of the image of the internal undercut with the density of images of known notch depths in the comparator shims (see Figure 7.18). Shims shall be made of material that is radiographically similar to the material being inspected and the image of at least one shall appear on each radiograph.

Table 7.8
Image quality indicator selection criteria for X-ray radiography
(See Clauses 7.13.6.1 and 7.14.6.4.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

	Hole-type IQI(1)			Wire-type IQI		
Weld thickness, mm	Thickness (2), mm	Designation	Essential hole	Essential ISO wire diameter, maximum, mm	ISO wire number	ASTM set(3)
up to 8	0.25	10	2T	0.16	14	A
> 8 up to 11	0.30	12	2T	0.20	13	A
> 11 up to 14	0.38	15	2T	0.25	12	A or B
> 14 up to 18	0.43	17	2T	0.32	11	B
> 18 up to 25	0.51	20	2T	0.40	10	B
> 25 up to 38	0.64	25	2T	0.50	9	B
> 38 up to 44	0.76	30	2T	0.63	8	B

Notes:

1) *For hole-type image quality indicators, a smaller hole in a thicker IQI, or a larger hole in a thinner IQI, may be substituted for any weld thickness given in this Table, provided that an equivalent or better sensitivity is achieved. Approximate equivalence between hole-type IQIs is given in the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section V, Table T-283. Approximate equivalence between hole and wire type IQIs is given in Table 4 of ASTM E747.*

2) *Weld thickness shall not exceed the sum of the nominal wall thickness plus the maximum permissible weld crown height, as defined in Table 7.6. For welds joining material of unequal thickness, the weld thickness shall not exceed the sum of t_w in Figure 7.2 plus the maximum permissible weld crown height, as defined in Table 7.6.*

3) *For equivalent ASTM wire sizes, refer to ASTM E747.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.9
Image quality indicator selection criteria for gamma radiography
(See Clauses 7.13.6.1 and 7.14.6.4.)

C There is a commentary available for this Table.

	Hole-type IQI(1)			Wire-type IQI		
Weld thickness, mm	Thickness(3), mm	Designation	Essential hole	Essential ISO wire diameter, maximum, mm	ISO wire number	ASTM set(4)
up to 8	0.30	12	2T	0.20	13	A
> 8 up to 11	0.38	15	2T	0.25	12	A or B
>11 up to 14	0.43	17	2T	0.32	11	B
>14 up to 18	0.51	20	2T	0.40	10	B
>18 up to 25	0.51	20	2T	0.40	10	B
>25 up to 38	0.64	25	2T	0.50	9	B
>38 up to 44	0.76	30	2T	0.63	8	B

Notes:

1) *For hole-type image quality indicators, a smaller hole in a thicker IQI, or a larger hole in a thinner IQI, may be substituted for any weld thickness given in this Table, provided that an equivalent or better sensitivity is achieved. Approximate equivalence between hole-type IQIs is given in the ASME* Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Table T–283. Approximate equivalence between hole and wire-type IQIs is given in Table 4 of ASTM E747.*

2) *For pipe diameters 114.3 mm OD and smaller and components NPS 4 and smaller, a one size larger essential wire diameter may be used.*

3) *Weld thickness shall not exceed the sum of the nominal wall thickness plus the maximum permissible weld crown height, as defined in Table 7.6. For welds joining material of unequal thickness, the weld thickness shall not exceed the sum of t_w in Figure 7.2 plus the maximum permissible weld crown height, as defined in Table 7.6.*

4) *For equivalent ASTM wire sizes, refer to ASTM E747.*

7.14 Arc and gas welding — Production of radiographs

7.14.1 Radiation source location

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The radiation source shall be located either inside or outside the pipe or component. Where radiation sources are located on the outside, the image of one or both walls shall be acceptable for interpretation.

7.14.2 Geometric relationship

7.14.2.1

During exposure, film or other imaging media shall be as close to the surface of the weld as practical.

7.14.2.2

The distance between the source of radiation and the film or other imaging media shall be not less than

 © 2015 CSA Group

seven times the distance between the film or other imaging media and the weld surface farthest removed from it.

Note: *Preferably, the source-to-imaging media distance should be at least ten times the distance between the imaging media and the weld surface farthest removed from it.*

7.14.2.3

Radiation sources shall not be offset by more than 5° from the plane of circumferential welds, except where necessary for elliptical projection. For elliptical projection, the offset angle shall be increased by the minimum amount required to separate the images of the opposite sides of the weld so that there is no superimposition of such images produced as specified in Clause 7.14.3.

7.14.2.4

An elliptical double-wall viewing technique may be used for welds on pipe 88.9 mm OD or smaller and components NPS 3 or smaller, provided that the technique is applied as specified in Paragraph T271.2(b) of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V.

7.14.3 Size of radiation field

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where both the radiation source and the imaging media are located outside the pipe or component and diametrically opposite each other, at least three equally spaced exposures shall be required to constitute 100% radiographic coverage of the weld, except that where an elliptical projection technique is used, at least two exposures shall be required, taken 90° apart.

7.14.4 Location of image quality indicators

7.14.4.1

For a panoramic single-wall exposure technique, at least three IQIs shall be spaced equally around the weld circumference.

7.14.4.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For a double-wall exposure, single-wall view technique, IQIs shall be placed at both ends within 25 mm of the acceptable limits of coverage for each exposure. For pipe diameters 114.3 mm OD and smaller and components NPS 4 and smaller, an IQI may be used at one end of the acceptable limits of coverage for each exposure.

7.14.4.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The IQI shall be placed on the source side for the double-wall exposure, double-wall view elliptical technique.

7.14.4.4

When a repaired weld is radiographed, at least one IQI shall be placed adjacent to each repair.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.14.4.5

Hole-type IQIs shall be placed adjacent to the weld, using shims if necessary. Wire-type IQIs shall be placed perpendicular to direction of the weld. The IQI wires shall extend completely across the area of interest at the location of the IQI. The area of interest is defined as the width of the weld image plus a width of 3 to 6 mm from both edges of the weld cap profile to include the HAZ.

7.14.5 Radiographic image identification markers

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.14.5.1

Radiographic images shall be clearly identified by the use of lead numbers, letters, or markers, or any combination thereof, so that the weld and any discontinuity in the weld can be quickly and accurately located. Where more than one image is used to inspect a complete circumferential weld, identification markers shall appear on each image and each weld section reference marker location shall be common to two successive images so as to establish that the entire weld has been examined.

7.14.5.2

Except as allowed by Clause 7.14.5.3, markers shall be placed on the joint on the downstream side of the weld so that they can be read clockwise when viewed from the upstream side.

7.14.5.3

The company may specify that markers be placed on the joint on either side of the weld. In such cases, records of the location and orientation of the markers shall be retained for a minimum of two years.

7.14.6 Processing of radiographic images

7.14.6.1 General

Radiographs shall be processed in accordance with the applicable manufacturer's recommended practices.

7.14.6.2 Image defects

Radiographs shall be free of mechanical and processing defects. Radiographic images containing artifacts that interfere with the interpretation of the radiograph shall be discarded, and the welds shall be re-radiographed.

7.14.6.3 Film density

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Film shall be exposed so that the density is between 2.0 and 4.0 throughout the area of interest, except for small localized areas caused by irregular weld configurations. The density in such small localized areas shall be at least 1.5. The unexposed base density of the film shall not exceed 0.30.

7.14.6.4 Definition of the IQI image

The image of the essential hole or wire shall be clearly defined. The essential hole and wire for a given weld thickness shall be as given in Table 7.8 for X-ray radiography and Table 7.9 for radioisotope gamma radiography.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.14.6.5 Film-viewing illuminators

Film-viewing illuminators shall be used that produce sufficient light intensity so that all portions of the radiograph of the weld and base metal transmit sufficient light to reveal the pertinent details of the radiograph.

7.14.7 Radiation protection

7.14.7.1

Every worker shall be informed of the hazards of working in an area where exposure to radiation is possible. Adequate precautions shall be taken to protect the radiographer and any other person in the vicinity. The radiographer shall be responsible for making sure that the area is properly posted.

7.14.7.2

Areas affected by radiation shall be surveyed and the limits of hazards posted.

7.14.8 Radiographers

7.14.8.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Radiographers shall be qualified as specified in CAN/CGSB-48.9712/ISO 9712. For radiographic image interpretation, radiographers shall be qualified as specified in CAN/CGSB-48.9712/ISO 9712 to Level II or III.

7.14.8.2

The company may examine the qualifications of radiographers to determine that the requirements of Clause 7.14.8.1 are met and that radiographs are produced, processed, and interpreted only by experienced radiographers.

7.14.9 Retention of radiographic records

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Records of the interpretation of radiographs shall be kept until the piping is abandoned. Radiographs shall be retained for a minimum of 2 years.

Note: *See also Clause 7.14.5.3.*

7.15 Arc and gas welding — Ultrasonic inspection of circumferential butt welds in piping

7.15.1 Methods

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clause 7.15 describes the methods that shall be employed for ultrasonic inspection of circumferential butt welds in piping, other than partial-penetration butt welds.

Notes:

1) *Ultrasonic inspection might not be appropriate for some combinations of diameter and wall thickness. Factors to consider in selecting methods of nondestructive inspection are specified in Clause 7.10.4.1.*

2) *Visual inspection is a mandatory requirement with ultrasonic inspection (see Clause 7.10.1.3).*

© 2015 CSA Group

7.15.2 Terminology

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The definitions contained in Mandatory Appendix III of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 5, apply in Clause 7.15 of this Standard.

7.15.3 General

7.15.3.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Ultrasonic inspection shall be performed in accordance with a documented procedure approved by the company. Such a procedure shall include the applicable information listed in Paragraph T-421 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 4, and a description of the methodology used to investigate indications, to the extent that they can be evaluated in terms of the standards of acceptability.

7.15.3.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The complete volume of weld metal and HAZ in the weld shall be inspected. Inspection requirements shall be as specified in Paragraph T-471 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 4, except that the entire weld may be inspected using an array of search units operating in pulse-echo or tandem mode, each designed to inspect specific parts of the required inspection volume.

7.15.3.3

The length of imperfections shall be determined using the 6 dB drop technique.

7.15.4 Equipment and supplies — General

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The equipment and supplies shall be as specified in Paragraphs T-431, T-432, T-461, and T-466 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 4. For each search unit used for inspection, the signal to electronic noise ratio shall exceed 40 dB when the maximum response from the basic calibration reflector is set at 80% of full screen height. Under the same conditions, the signal-to-noise ratio of the ultrasonic system shall exceed

a) 20 dB for search units other than creeping wave search units; or
b) 16 dB for creeping wave search units.

7.15.5 Equipment and supplies — Additional requirements for mechanized inspection systems

7.15.5.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In addition to the pulse-echo mode, the instrument shall be capable of operating in pitch-catch transmission mode.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.15.5.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The equipment shall include a means of displaying the weld and the position of imperfections in the weld.

7.15.5.3

The equipment shall include a means of monitoring the effectiveness of the acoustic coupling.

7.15.5.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The maximum temperature differential between the search units and the surface of the material (calibration block or piping, whichever is applicable) to be inspected, within which the required accuracy and resolution are to be maintained, shall be established.

7.15.5.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The equipment shall be capable of measuring the position of indications with an accuracy of 10 mm and a resolution of 2 mm in the circumferential direction. The array of search units shall be centred within 1 mm of the pre-weld centreline of the joint. The effect of search unit beam width, pulse repetition frequency, scanning velocity, and weld shrinkage shall be considered in evaluating the accuracy and resolution of distance measurements. The equipment shall include a means of validating the accuracy of distance measurements.

7.15.5.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The performance of search units shall be as specified in ESI 98-2. Search units shall have contact surfaces that have the same curvature as that of the surface of the material to be inspected. The search unit dimensions that necessitate the repair or replacement of the search unit shall be established by the manufacturer or the inspection company.

7.15.6 Qualification of ultrasonic inspectors

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Ultrasonic inspectors shall be qualified as specified in CAN/CGSB-48.9712/ISO 9712 for Level II or III. The company may require ultrasonic inspectors to demonstrate their competence in operating, and evaluating the results of, the inspection system.

7.15.7 Calibration

7.15.7.1

Except as required by Clause 7.15.7.2, the calibration block and reflectors shall be as specified in Paragraph T-434 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 4.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.15.7.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where welds are to be evaluated as specified in Annex K, a calibration block made of pipe material, with specific reflectors designed to simulate the expected imperfections, shall be used. The effect of variations in acoustic velocity in the pipe material shall be considered in the design of the calibration block.

7.15.7.3

Calibration blocks shall be identified with a unique serial number and shall be under the control of the inspection company. Records of serial number, pipe diameter, wall thickness, acoustic velocity, and reflector dimensions and positions shall be available when the calibration blocks are used.

7.15.7.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The system calibration shall be performed as specified in Paragraphs T-462, T-463, T-464, and T-465 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 4, except that the interval between calibration checks shall not exceed 1 h during a series of similar examinations, and the calibration block required by Clause 7.15.7.2 shall be used where applicable. Reference levels shall be set at 80% full screen height and recording levels shall be set at 40% full screen height (6 dB below the reference level).

7.15.8 Inspection procedure for production welds

7.15.8.1

Except as allowed by Clause 7.15.8.3, the inspection of production welds shall be performed as specified in Paragraph T-472 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 4.

7.15.8.2

Except where the calibration block required by Clause 7.15.7.2 is used, the reference reflector shall be the 2.4 mm diameter side-drilled hole in the calibration block (see Clause 7.15.7.1).

7.15.8.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A distance amplitude correction (DAC) curve shall not be required for inspection of welds in materials with a wall thickness of 15 mm or less.

7.15.9 Inspection procedure for production welds — Additional requirements for mechanized inspection

7.15.9.1

The methodology used to interpret system output in terms of non-recordable indication, acceptable indication of an imperfection, or indication of a defect shall be described in the inspection procedure. Such methodology shall include the positioning of recording gates and the effects of conditions such as bead misalignment.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.15.9.2
Circumferential distance references shall be marked onto the piping surface to allow the positioning of defects from the output of the inspection system.

7.15.9.3
Inspection sensitivity shall be measured using the calibration block at regular intervals not exceeding 1 h or every ten welds, and when any part of the inspection system is changed, the result from the sensitivity measurements shall be recorded. Any decrease of more than 3 dB from the sensitivity established in the calibration required by Clause 7.15.7.4 for any search unit shall require recalibration and a reinspection of all welds inspected since the last acceptable sensitivity verification.

7.15.9.4
The temperature differential between the search units and the surface of the material being inspected shall be determined at regular intervals. Any deviation from the established maximum temperature differential (see Clause 7.15.5.4) shall be recorded and corrected and all welds inspected since the last acceptable verification shall be reinspected.

7.15.9.5
The circumferential position accuracy of the system output shall be validated at regular intervals by comparing it to the actual distance travelled around the piping. Any deviation from the requirements of Clause 7.15.5.5 shall be recorded and corrected.

7.15.9.6
Any change in search unit position shall be recorded and shall require a verification of recording gate positions and inspection sensitivity.

7.15.9.7
Search units shall be examined for wear at regular intervals not exceeding 500 welds. Search units that have dimensions that necessitate repair or replacement (see Clause 7.15.5.6) shall be repaired or replaced.

7.15.9.8
A reinspection of the complete weld, or a supplementary manual inspection, shall be required for any of the following conditions:

a) a coupling loss in a single channel over a circumferential distance not exceeding 12 mm, unless such loss is compensated by data from other inspection channels to maintain full volumetric inspection;
b) concurrent coupling losses in two adjacent inspection channels; or
c) a coupling loss over a circumferential distance exceeding 12 mm.

7.15.10 Standards of acceptability for ultrasonic inspection

7.15.10.1
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

These standards of acceptability shall apply to the determination of acceptability of indications of imperfections of the size and type located by ultrasonic inspection. Such standards of acceptability are

 © 2015 CSA Group

intended as a measure of adequate welding competence, as performed in accordance with qualified welding procedure specifications.

Notes:

1) *The company may use alternative standards of acceptability as specified in Clause 7.10.4.3.*

2) *Additional standards of acceptability for sour service pipelines are specified in Clause 16.9.3.3.*

7.15.10.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company may reject welds that meet these standards of acceptability where, in its opinion, the depth, location, or orientation of imperfections can be significantly detrimental to the structural integrity of the welds.

Note: *Indications of imperfections having an acceptable length should be investigated to ensure that they do not create a potential leak path.*

7.15.10.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The standards of acceptability for indications of imperfections recorded by ultrasonic inspection (i.e., weld imperfections giving indications that exceed the established recording level) shall be as follows:

a) Indications of imperfections characterized as cracks shall be unacceptable regardless of length or location.

b) Individual indications of imperfections (other than those characterized as cracks) that are identified as not extending into the weld beads closest to the piping surfaces shall not exceed 50 mm in length, and the cumulative length of such indications in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 50 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such imperfections shall not exceed 16% of the weld length.

c) Individual indications of imperfections other than those covered by Items a) and b) shall not exceed 12 mm in length and the cumulative length of such imperfections in any 300 mm length of weld shall not exceed 25 mm, except that for welds less than 300 mm long, the cumulative length of such indications shall not exceed 8% of the weld length.

Note: *The recording levels are established in Clause 7.15.7.4*

7.15.10.4

Weld conditions that prevent proper interpretation of the ultrasonic indications shall be cause for rejection of the welds, unless they can be inspected by other acceptable methods.

7.15.11 Ultrasonic inspection reports and records

7.15.11.1

Reports and records shall be as specified in Paragraph T-492 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 4, except that the information may be recorded using a combination of project log books containing the initial information, as well as any changes made thereafter, and individual weld inspection records.

7.15.11.2

Individual weld inspection records shall include inspection personnel identity and level, weld identification, the date and time that the inspection was performed, and a map or record of indications exceeding the recording level or areas clear of recorded indications.

7.15.11.3
Project log books and individual weld inspection records shall be in a format approved by the company.

7.15.11.4
There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Evaluation of the acceptability of any recorded indication shall be reported in a format approved by the company. Such reports shall include
a) weld identification;
b) description, position, and length of indications recorded from weld imperfections;
c) identification of indications recorded from sources other than weld imperfections;
d) date; and
e) the signature of the qualified ultrasonic inspector.

7.15.11.5
Ultrasonic evaluation records shall be kept until the piping is abandoned. Ultrasonic inspection records, calibration records, and log books shall be kept for a minimum of two years.

7.16 Mechanical interference fit joints
There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.16.1 General

7.16.1.1
Clause 7.16 covers the joining of steel pipe by mechanical interference fit methods.

7.16.1.2
The axial tensile, axial compressive, and hoop strengths of the joint shall be as specified by the designer of the mechanical interference fit joining system and shall be based upon test data or experience acceptable to the company.

7.16.1.3
The length of straight pipe adjacent to a bend, required for the joining equipment, shall be as specified by the designer of the mechanical interference fit joining system. [See Clause 6.2.3 e).]

7.16.2 Qualification of joining procedure specifications

7.16.2.1
The designer of the mechanical interference fit joining system shall develop detailed joining procedure specifications that include the end preparation and the joining operation requirements. Qualification of such specifications shall be supported by engineering test data and field trials. The acceptability of such qualifications shall be determined by the company.

7.16.2.2
Any restrictions on joining operations due to weather conditions shall be included in the qualified joining procedures.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.16.3 Qualification of operators

7.16.3.1

Mechanical interference fit joining operators shall be qualified to produce acceptable, consistent joints. The degree of training required for operators shall be determined by the designer of the mechanical interference fit joining system and approved by the company.

Note: *Training should include*

a) *the principles of the joint design;*
b) *the function and operation of the joining equipment;*
c) *the preparation and application of any joint sealant;*
d) *proper pipe-handling techniques;*
e) *the joining procedure;*
f) *cold-weather joining techniques; and*
g) *equipment troubleshooting.*

7.16.3.2

Mechanical interference fit end preparation operators shall be qualified to properly prepare pipe ends for joining. The degree of training required for operators shall be determined by the designer of the mechanical interference fit joining system and approved by the company.

Note: *Training should include*

a) *the principles of the joint design;*
b) *the function and operation of the end preparation equipment;*
c) *the end preparation procedure; and*
d) *equipment troubleshooting.*

7.16.3.3

Evidence of qualification shall be issued to the joining and end preparation operators upon satisfactory completion of the respective training requirements. The evidence shall show an expiry date and shall be valid for a time period not exceeding 2 years.

Notes:

1) *Joining and end preparation operators should be requalified as specified for the initial qualification.*
2) *In Canada, evidence of qualification is normally provided in the form of a document such as a certificate.*

7.16.4 Inspection procedures

7.16.4.1

Inspection procedures shall be developed by the designer of the mechanical interference fit joining system and approved and implemented by the company; such procedures shall include the inspection

a) before joining, of the prepared ends of the pipe and couplings for cracks, dimensional imperfections, and detrimental mating surface conditions; and
b) of the external surfaces of the completed joint for cracks and dimensional imperfections.

Note: *Inspection personnel should receive training in the following topics:*

a) *the principles of the joint design;*
b) *the function of the end preparation and joining equipment;*
c) *the inspection procedure and applicable inspection methods; and*
d) *the end preparation and joining procedure.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.16.4.2
The designer of the mechanical interference fit joining system shall specify the joint dimensions, dimensional tolerances, and interference range within which the joint can meet its designed performance capabilities. Joint designers shall provide or recommend methods for determining that the mechanical interference of installed joints falls within the specified range and shall include such methods in the inspection procedures.

7.17 Welding on in-service piping

7.17.1 General

7.17.1.1
Clause 7.17 covers the requirements for welding on in-service piping. These are additional requirements to the general requirements of Clauses 7.2 to 7.15.

7.17.1.2
In-service piping is piping containing a service fluid at any pressure or flow rate, including zero in both cases.

7.17.1.3
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welding procedure specifications, qualification of welding procedure specifications, and qualification of welders shall be based upon the use of cooling rates and levels of restraint of the weld that are appropriate for the expected line flowing conditions and ambient temperatures.

Notes:

1) *Low-hydrogen welding practices should be considered where rapid cooling of the weldment is anticipated.*

2) *The cooling rate of the weld can be assessed using methods such as the Heat Sink Capacity Measurement developed by EWI. See Bruce (2009).*

3) *The weld restraint level can be influenced by factors such as the branch pipe to run pipe thickness ratio and diameter ratio, and the sleeve thickness-to-run pipe thickness ratio.*

7.17.1.4
Qualification of the welding procedure specifications shall be made at weld cooling rates and restraint levels that are equal to or higher than those expected during production welding. Welding on in-service piping with a thickness less than 6.4 mm shall be performed using welding procedures that control the potential for burn-through.

Notes:

1) *Qualification of the welding procedure specification using a cooling rate that is much higher than expected can result in burn-through areas during production welding.*

2) *Both the type of fluid and the flow rate influence the weldment cooling rate.*

7.17.2 Fillet welds and branch connection welds on liquid-filled piping or flowing-gas piping and direct deposition welds on flowing-gas piping

7.17.2.1
Welders shall be instructed by, or on behalf of, the operating company on the prevention of hydrogen-induced cracking.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.17.2.2

Welding procedures and welders shall be qualified as specified in Clauses 7.2 to 7.15, and 7.17.3 to 7.17.6, whichever is applicable.

7.17.2.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welds on in-service piping shall be made using low-hydrogen welding practice (see Clause 7.5.2.2), except that cellulosic electrodes may be used for the root pass on branch connection welds, provided that the requirements of Clause 7.17.5.2 are met.

7.17.2.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For all material grades, the maximum carbon equivalent of the base material used in procedure qualification shall be recorded in the procedure qualification records. An increase in the carbon equivalent of more than 0.02 from that of the material used for the welding procedure specification qualification shall be considered to be an essential change, and shall necessitate requalification of the welding procedure specification or establishment and qualification of a new welding procedure specification.

7.17.2.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Electrode diameters for direct deposition welds shall not exceed 3.2 mm for remaining wall thicknesses equal to or greater than 4.0 mm or 2.4 mm for remaining wall thicknesses less than 4.0 mm.

7.17.2.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Weld beads deposited directly onto the pipe surface shall be tempered by an additional weld pass.

Note: *Consideration should be given to complete removal of the final tempering pass by grinding.*

7.17.3 Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications intended for welding on in-service piping

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welding procedure specifications shall be limited by the applicable essential changes given in Table 7.10.

Essential changes in welding procedures shall necessitate requalification of the welding procedure specification or establishment and qualification of a new welding procedure specification.

Notes:

1) *Welding procedure specifications qualified as specified in ASME* Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX and used as permitted in Clause 7.2.5 are not limited by Part (1) of Table 7.10.*

2) *An increase in the thickness of the sleeve or of the wall of the branch pipe can increase the weld cooling rate or restraint level and necessitate a requalification of the welding procedure specification or establishment and qualification of a new welding procedure specification.*

3) *"Nominal outside diameter" means the nominal size of the matching fitting.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.10
Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications (WPS) intended for welding on in-service piping
(See Clauses 7.17.3 and P.2.)

Part 1: Applicable to all welding on in-service piping, except where WPS qualified as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, as permitted in Clause 7.2.5

Welding variable change	Branch connection	Sleeve	Direct deposition welding
Welding process			
Change in welding process	X	X	X
Joint geometry			
Change in joint type	X	—	—
Change in specified bevel angle exceeding +20%, –5%	X	—	—
Change in root gap or root face exceeding ±50%	X	—	—
Thickness of the branch pipe (t_b = thickness of the branch pipe tested)			
Change to thickness exceeding 1.0 t_b	X*	—	—
Change to thickness exceeding 1.1 t_b	X†	—	—
Change to thickness exceeding 1.25 t_b for t_b > 10.0 mm	X	—	—
Change to thickness exceeding 1.5 t_b for t_b ≤ 10.0 mm	X	—	—
Change to thickness less than 0.5 t_b for t_b < 15.0 mm	X†	—	—
Change to thickness less than 4.0 mm for t_b > 10.0 mm	X	—	—
Change to thickness less than 1.5 mm for 1.5 mm ≤ t_b ≤ 10.0 mm	X	—	—
Outside nominal diameter of the branch pipe (D_b = outside diameter of the branch pipe tested)			
Change to OD smaller than 0.5 D_b	X	—	—
Change to OD 60.3 mm or larger for D_b < 60.3 mm	X	—	—
Change to OD larger than 323.9 mm for D_b from 60.3 mm to 323.9 mm	X	—	—
Outside diameter of the run pipe (D_r = outside diameter of the run pipe tested)			
Change to OD smaller than 0.5 D_r	—	X	—
Change to OD 60.3 mm or larger for D_r < 60.3 mm	—	X	—
Change to OD larger than 323.9 mm for D_r from 60.3 mm to 323.9 mm	—	X	—
Composition of welding consumables			
Change in filler metal classification	X	X	X
Change in flux classification	X	X	X
Branch or direct deposition weld position and welding direction			
Change from horizontal welding to vertical welding	X	X	X
Change from roll welding to position welding	X	X	—
Change in direction of welding	X	X	X

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.10 (Continued)

Welding variable change	Branch connection	Sleeve	Direct deposition welding
Change from the top of the pipe if the test weld is made on the top	—	—	X
Change to the bottom of the pipe if the test weld is made on the top or side	—	—	X
Preheating temperature (T_{min} = minimum preheating temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test T_{max} = maximum preheating temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test)			
Change to preheating temperature more than 10 °C lower than T_{min}	X	X	X
Change to preheating temperature more than 25 °C higher than T_{max}, where T_{max} > 200 °C	X	X	X
Interpass temperature (T_{min} = minimum interpass temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test T_{max} = maximum interpass temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test)			
Change to interpass temperature more than 10 °C lower than T_{min}	X	X	X
Change to interpass temperature more than 25 °C higher than T_{max}, where T_{max} > 200 °C	X	X	X
Postweld heat treatment temperature			
Change in postweld heat treatment temperature greater than allowed by Paragraph QW-407 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX	X	X	X
Shielding gas composition			
Change of more than 1 in the nominal content of any Gas comprising more than 5% of the shielding gas	X	X	X
Shielding gas flow rate			
Change in flow rate exceeding 20%	X	X	X
Welding current type			
Change in current type (dc+, dc–, ac, or pulsed)	X	X	X
Part 2: Applicable to all welding on in-service piping			

(Continued)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.10 (Continued)

Welding variable change	Branch connection	Sleeve	Direct deposition welding
Carbon equivalent			
Increase in carbon equivalent exceeding 0.05 in the run pipe for materials having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 386 MPa	**X**	**X**	**X**
Increase in carbon equivalent exceeding 0.05 in the branch pipe or component, or in the sleeve for materials having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 386 MPa	X	X	—
Increase in carbon equivalent exceeding 0.02 in the run pipe	**X‡**	**X‡**	**X‡**
Increase in carbon equivalent exceeding 0.02 in the branch pipe or component, or in the sleeve	X‡	X‡	—
Pipeline operating conditions			
Change in the pipeline operating conditions resulting in a higher weld cooling rate	X	X	X
Thickness of the run pipe (t_r = thickness of the run pipe tested)			
Change to thickness less than 6.4 mm for t_r > 6.4 mm	X	X	—
Change to thickness less than t_r for $t_r \leq$ 6.4 mm	X	X	—
Change to thickness less than t_r	—	—	X
Outside diameter of the run pipe (D_r = outside diameter of the run pipe tested)			
Change to OD smaller than D_r	—	—	X
Weld restraint level			
Change to a higher restraint level than used in qualification	X	X	—
Size of filler metal			
Change in filler metal size greater than one nominal size	X	X	X
Change in filler metal size for weld beads in contact with the parent materials and for tempering beads	X‡	X‡	X‡
Voltage (*V*), amperage (*I*), travel speed (*S*), and wire feed speed (*F*) for arc welding Change in *V*, *I*, *S*, or *F* exceeding 20%	X	X	X
Change in heat input $\left(\frac{V \times I \times 60}{S}\right)$ exceeding 20%	X	X	X

* *Applies to oxy-fuel welds only.*
† *Applies to short-circuiting gas metal arc welds.*

(Continued)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 7.10 (Concluded)

‡ *Applies to welding on liquid-filled piping or flowing gas piping.*

Notes:

1) *Welding procedure specifications for branch connections and sleeves include those where buttering is an integral part of the procedure, distinct from direct deposition welding as defined in this Standard. Buttering is the deposition of one or more layers of weld metal on to a surface which will then form part of the welded joint in order to achieve the material properties desired in the final weldment through dilution and tempering.*

2) *A change in the run pipe thickness can increase the weld cooling rate and necessitate a requalification of the welding procedure specification or establishment and qualification of a new welding procedure specification.*

7.17.4 Fillet welds and branch connection welds — Face bend test

7.17.4.1

The minimum number of test specimens for the qualification of welding procedure specifications and welders shall be as given in Table 7.11. Test specimens shall be cut from test welds at locations as shown in Figure 7.23. The test specimens (see Figure 7.24) shall be machine-cut or oxygen-cut. Oxygen-cut surfaces shall be oversized and machined by a non-thermal process to remove a minimum of 3 mm per side. The sides shall be smooth and parallel and the long edges rounded. The sleeve or branch and weld reinforcements shall be removed flush with the surfaces, but not below the surface of the test specimen. Any undercut shall not be removed.

Table 7.11
Number of face-bend test specimens
(See Clause 7.17.4.1.)

Pipe OD, mm	Number of test specimens
Smaller than 60.3	2
60.3–323.9	4
Larger than 323.9	5

7.17.4.2

The test specimens shall be bent in a guided-bend test jig similar to that shown in Figure 7.12. Test specimens shall be placed on the die with the weld at mid-span. Test specimens shall be placed with the face of the weld directed toward the gap. The plunger shall be forced into the gap until the test specimen is approximately U-shaped.

7.17.4.3

The face-bend test shall be considered acceptable if, after bending, no openings or imperfections, in any direction, exceeding the lesser of 3 mm and 0.5 times the nominal wall thickness are present in the weld metal or the HAZ. Cracks that originate along the edges of the test specimen and are less than 6 mm, measured in any direction, shall be disregarded unless obvious defects are observed.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.17.5 Fillet welds and branch connection welds — Macroexamination and hardness tests

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.17.5.1

For the qualification of welding procedure specifications, two cross-sections, cut from locations as shown in Figure 7.23, shall be prepared for hardness testing as specified in ASTM E384. Prior to hardness testing, the weld metal and HAZ shall be examined for cracks at a magnification of 10×. Macroexamination shall be considered acceptable if the specimens are free of cracks.

7.17.5.2

Hardness tests shall be subject to the following requirements:

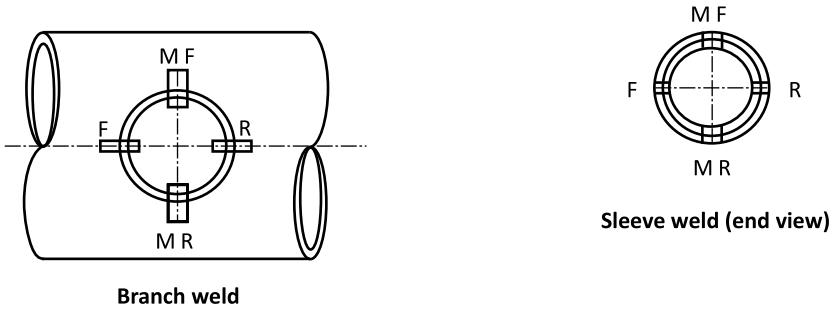
a) The hardness of the deposited weld metal and the HAZ shall be determined as specified in ASTM E384 with loads not exceeding 10 kg.
b) A minimum of five indentations shall be made in the coarse-grained HAZ at each weld toe, with additional indentations in representative locations of the weld metal and other areas of each HAZ.
c) Where cellulosic electrodes are used for the root pass of branch connection welds (see Clause 7.17.2.3), weld metal and HAZ hardness values shall not exceed 300 HV.
d) Where low-hydrogen welding practice is used, weld metal or HAZ hardness values in excess of 350 HV shall require an evaluation of the welding procedure specifications to determine that they are suitable for the avoidance of hydrogen-induced cracking.

For sour service welds, see Clause 16.6.4 b).

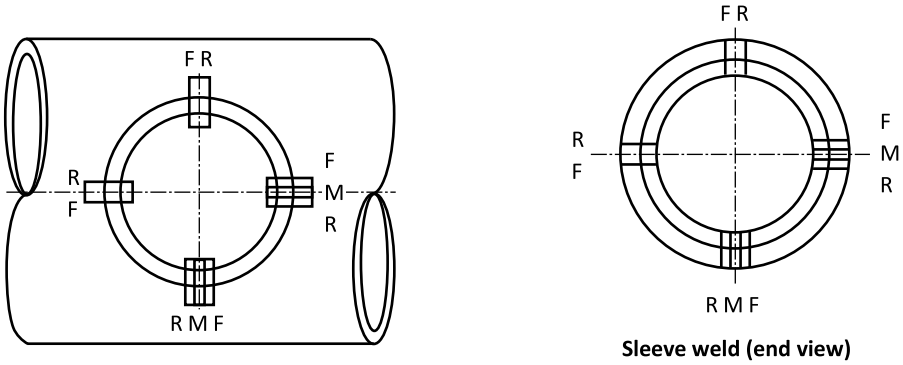
Note: *Bruce (2002) and Bruce and Boring (2005) can be a guide on this matter.*

© 2015 CSA Group

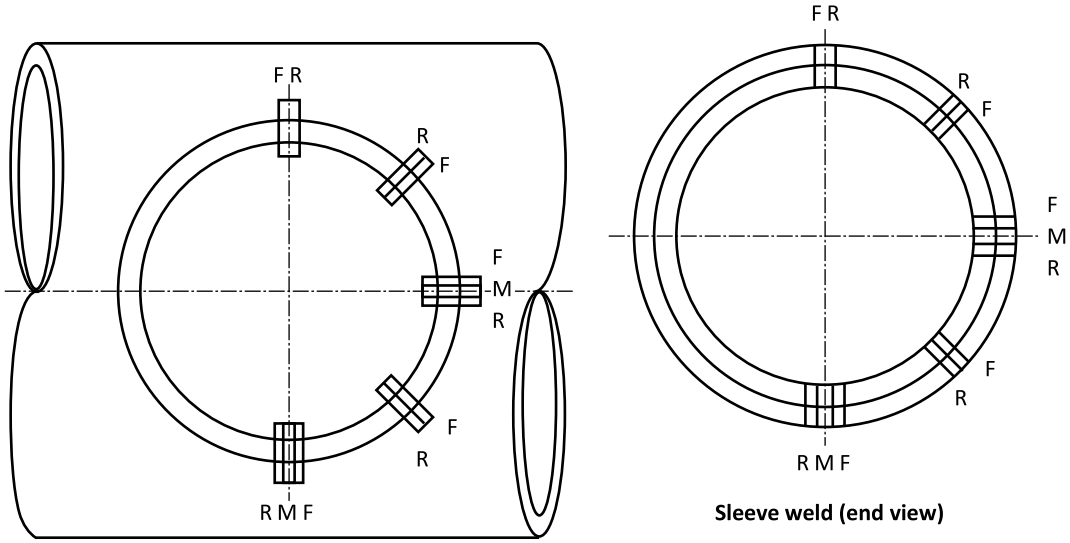
Figure 7.23
Location of test specimens
(See Clauses 7.17.4.1 and 7.17.5.1.)



(a) Smaller than 60.3 mm OD (obtained from 2 or more welds)



(b) 60.3 to 323.9 mm OD



(c) Larger than 323.9 mm OD

Legend:

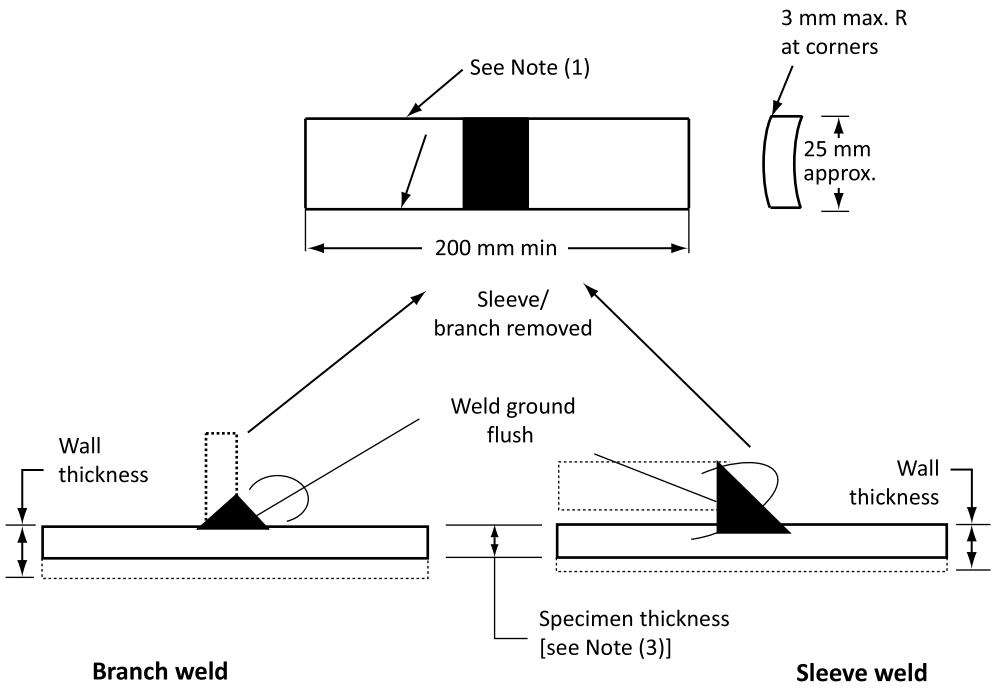
F = face-bend (see Clause 7.17.4)

R = root-break or macrosection (see Clauses 7.7.7.1 and 7.7.8.2)

M = macroexamination and hardness for qualification of welding procedures only (see Clause 7.17.5)

Note: *The company may locate test specimens in other quadrants, provided that an approximately equal number of test specimens are removed from the top and bottom quadrants.*

Figure 7.24
Face-bend test specimen
(See Clause 7.17.4.1.)



Notes:

1) *Test specimens shall be machine-cut or oxygen-cut.*

2) *The sleeve or branch and weld reinforcement shall be removed flush with the surface of the test specimen. The branch weld test specimen is shown in the axial direction; test specimens in other directions are curved. Test specimens shall not be flattened prior to testing.*

3) *Where the wall thickness is greater than 12.7 mm, it may be reduced to 12.7 mm by machining the inside surface.*

7.17.6 Qualification of welding procedure specifications and welders for direct deposition welds

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

7.17.6.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welders and welding procedure specifications shall be qualified for the following positions:

a) all positions, if the qualification weld is performed on the bottom of the pipe;

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) top and side, if the qualification weld is performed on the side of the pipe; and
c) top only, if the qualification weld is performed on the top of the pipe.

7.17.6.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Prior to obtaining destructive test specimens as specified in Clause 7.17.6.7, the welds shall be inspected nondestructively as specified in Clause 7.17.7.

7.17.6.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The minimum number of destructive test specimens shall be as given in Table 7.12.

Table 7.12
Number of test specimens for qualification of procedures and welders for direct deposition welding
(See Clause 7.17.6.3.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

	Number of test specimens		
Pipe nominal wall thickness	**Side-bend test**	**Face-bend test**	**Macroexamination and hardness test**
≤ 12.7 mm	0	4	2
> 12.7 mm	2	2	2

7.17.6.4

Test welds for the qualification of welding procedure specifications and welders shall be made on pipe cylinders having a reduced wall thickness prepared by grinding as specified in Clause 10.11.2.

7.17.6.5

The wall thickness remaining after grinding shall be evaluated over the entire area on which direct deposition welding takes place and the minimum measured remaining wall thickness shall be recorded.

7.17.6.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welders and welding procedure specifications shall be qualified for repairs on all outside diameters equal to or greater than the outside diameter used for qualification testing and for all remaining wall thicknesses equal to or greater than the wall thickness measured as specified in Clause 7.17.6.5.

7.17.6.7

Test specimens shall be taken as shown in Figure 7.25.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.17.6.8

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Face-bend tests shall be as specified in Clauses 7.17.4.2 and 7.17.4.3 for fillet welds and branch connection welds.

7.17.6.9

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Side-bend tests shall be as specified in Clauses 7.7.6.2 and 7.7.6.3 for butt welds.

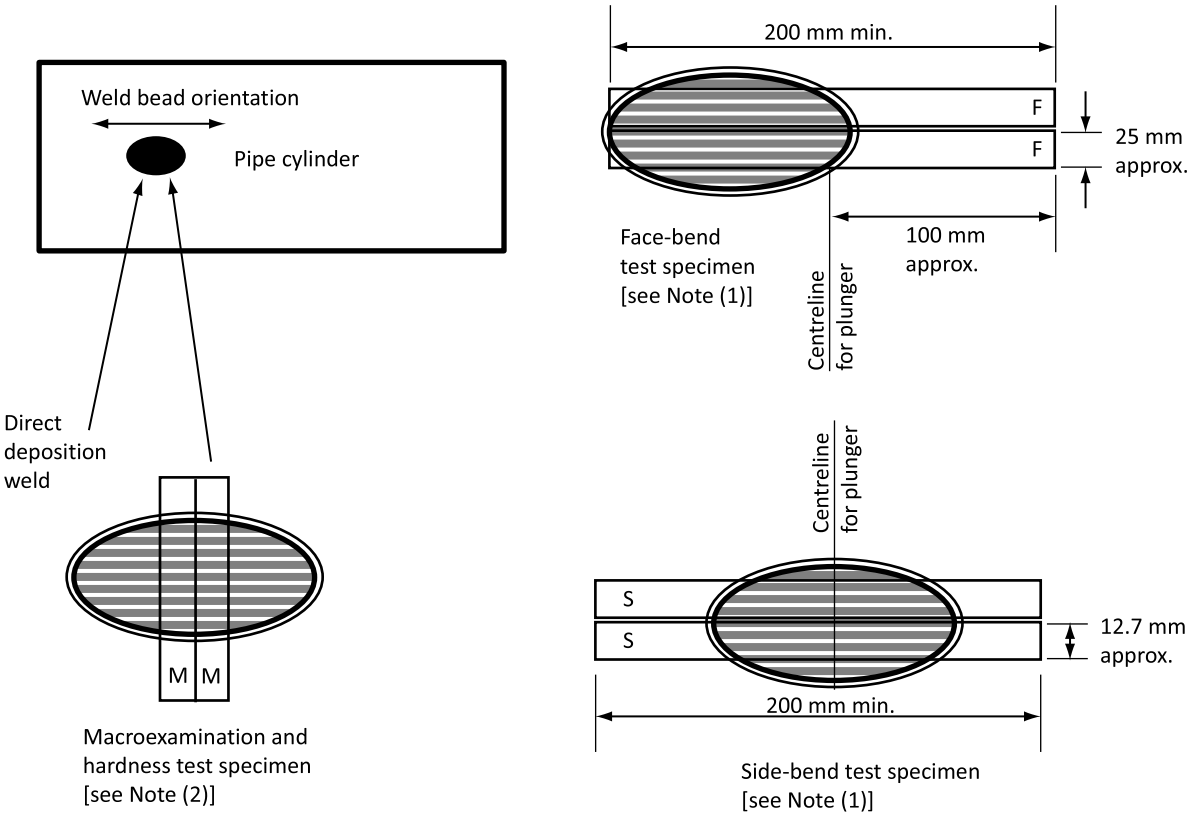
7.17.6.10

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Macroexamination and hardness tests shall be as specified in Clause 7.17.5 for fillet welds and branch connection welds.

Figure 7.25
Test specimens for direct deposition welding
(See Clause 7.17.6.7.)

There is a commentary available for this Figure.



(Continued)

Figure 7.25 (Concluded)

Legend:

F = face-bend test specimen

M = macroexamination and hardness test specimen

S = side-bend test specimen

Notes:

1) *Test specimens shall be machine-cut or obtained by other non-thermal cutting processes. Cut surfaces shall be smooth and parallel. The weld surfaces shall be ground smooth and flush with the pipe surface.*

2) *Test specimens shall be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Clauses 7.17.4 and 7.17.5.*

3) *Face-bend and side-bend test specimens shall be positioned in the guided-bend test jig in such a manner that the HAZ is placed in tension.*

7.17.7 Nondestructive inspection of welds made on in-service piping

7.17.7.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welds (including those in branch connections) made on in-service piping shall be nondestructively inspected for defects upon completion of welding using magnetic particle inspection and, where appropriate, ultrasonic inspection. The company shall consider the risk of delayed cracking and determine whether

a) the nondestructive inspection shall be repeated after a suitable delay to allow for the detection of delayed cracking; and

b) special measures such as pressure reduction and support of the connection shall be taken to prevent propagation of such cracks until the second inspection is complete.

Notes:

1) *Procedures for magnetic particle inspection and ultrasonic inspection should be as specified in the ASME* Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Articles 7 and 4, respectively.*

2) *Factors to consider in establishing a suitable delay between the completion of the weld and the commencement of its final nondestructive inspection include*

a) *material strength and composition;*

b) *weld metal strength and composition;*

c) *material temperature;*

d) *material thickness;*

e) *previous experience with similar welds; and*

f) *any post-weld heating.*

3) *A time delay of 48 h is generally considered suitable for carbon and low-alloy steel materials. Shorter delays might be suitable based upon experience or research. Longer delays might be necessary for high-grade and thick materials, over-matched weld metal, and very low material temperatures after welding. The rationale for the delay selected should be documented.*

7.17.7.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Direct deposition welds shall be subject to a full-volume nondestructive inspection by ultrasonic

methods and a surface inspection by magnetic particle methods. The company shall consider the risk of delayed cracking and determine whether

a) the nondestructive inspection shall be repeated after a suitable delay to allow for the detection of delayed cracking; and
b) special measures such as pressure reduction shall be taken to prevent propagation of such cracks until the second inspection is complete.

Notes:

1) *Procedures for magnetic particle inspection and ultrasonic inspection should be as specified in the ASME* Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Articles 7 and 4, respectively.*

2) *Factors to consider in establishing a suitable delay between the completion of the weld and the commencement of its final nondestructive inspection include*
   a) *material strength and composition;*
   b) *weld metal strength and composition;*
   c) *material temperature;*
   d) *material thickness;*
   e) *previous experience with similar welds; and*
   f) *any post-weld heating.*

3) *A time delay of 48 h is generally considered suitable for carbon and low-alloy steel materials. Shorter delays might be suitable based upon experience or research. Longer delays might be necessary for high-grade and thick materials, over-matched weld metal, and very low material temperatures after welding. The rationale for the delay selected should be documented.*

7.17.7.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 7.17.7.4, ultrasonic inspection of the direct deposition welds shall be as specified in the ASME *Boiler Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 4, Paragraph T-543, Technique Two, and shall cover the entire weld repair surface area. Ultrasonic indications exceeding the reference level and greater than 10 mm in size in any direction shall be rejected.

7.17.7.4

At the option of the company, welds may be evaluated using alternative acceptance criteria, based upon accepted fracture mechanics principles.

7.17.7.5

Nondestructive inspection of welds shall be performed by personnel who

a) are qualified to at least Level II of CAN/CGSB-48.9712/ISO 9712 in the applicable inspection method; and
b) have demonstrated their ability to interpret indications correctly.

Companies shall consider the use of standard branch and fillet test specimens for the purpose of demonstrating the ability of inspection personnel to interpret indications.

8 Pressure testing

8.1 General

8.1.1

Clause 8 covers the requirements for pressure testing of piping.

8.1.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 8.1.3, 8.1.7 or 8.4, piping shall be pressure tested in place after installation but before being put into operation.

8.1.3

Where it is not practical to pressure test a section of piping in place after installation but before being put into operation, it shall be pretested as specified in Clauses 8.7 to 8.9. The effects of transportation, handling, and installation on the integrity of the sections of pretested piping shall be considered and, where necessary, addressed.

8.1.4

Prior to pressure testing, the company shall confirm that the pressure test will not

a) result in greater than allowable stresses or strains in the piping (see Clause 4.2.3);
b) adversely affect the soil surrounding the piping; or
c) damage valve seats.

Note: *All valves having an external operable capability should be placed in the partially open position to prevent damage to seating mechanisms.*

8.1.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For piping containing partial-penetration welds required by design, stress and strain effects in the weld zone during pressure testing shall be considered.

8.1.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall ensure that pressure tests are conducted under the direction of competent personnel, and that the requirements of Clause 8.2 are met.

8.1.7

Fabricated items (e.g., scraper traps, manifolds, volume chambers, and surge pressure accumulators) shall be pressure tested as specified in Clauses 8.7 to 8.9 or pretested as specified in the applicable manufacturing and design standard or specification.

8.1.8

For liquid medium testing the adverse effects the liquid could have upon the piping shall be considered and can necessitate a plan of treatment of the liquid or the completed piping to protect against corrosion or other damage to the piping.

Note: *Adverse effects can be caused by the presence of bacteria, oxygen, suspended solids or metals, and undesirable characteristics such as high salinity levels, acidity, or industrial contaminants.*

© 2015 CSA Group

8.2 Safety during pressure tests

8.2.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Companies shall develop a pressure-testing plan. The pressure-testing plan shall address the safety of the public and the personnel conducting the testing. The testing plan shall consider issues such as pressure, test medium, location, worker and public access control, and the consequences associated with uncontrolled or controlled depressurization.

Note: *Consideration should be given to the use of pretested piping in critical areas.*

8.2.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where a gaseous pressure-test medium is used, suitable measures shall be taken to keep all persons not involved in the testing activities out of the area that can be adversely affected by such activities from the time that the hoop stress is first raised above 50% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe, until the pressure is reduced to 110% of the intended maximum operating pressure. Where allowed by Clause 8.8.2, where the testing medium is pipeline gas, specific consideration shall be given to the elimination of ignition sources.

8.2.3

Safety precautions established for the test section shall also apply to fill lines, instrument lines, and compression or pumping equipment.

Note: *Consideration should be given to minimizing the length of fill lines, routing them away from access routes and areas where workers are to be present, and providing valving to depressurize the fill lines after the strength test pressure is attained.*

8.2.4

Precautions to avoid unintentional ignition of gas-air mixtures of hydrocarbon liquids explosive atmospheres and uncontrolled fires shall be adhered to as specified in Clause 6.6.

8.2.5

Visual inspection of the test section shall not be conducted while the test pressure is producing a hoop stress of 100% or more of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe. For such inspections, consideration shall be given to lowering the pressure from the strength test pressure.

8.2.6

Upon completion of testing, the pressure shall be released under controlled conditions.

8.3 Compressor and pump station piping

Compressor and pump station piping designed as specified in ASME B31.3 [see Clauses 4.14.2.11 c) and 4.14.3.8 d) of this Standard] shall be pressure tested in accordance with the pressure-testing requirements of ASME B31.3.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.4 Instrument and control piping

Pressure testing as specified in Clauses 8.7 to 8.9 shall not be required for instrument or control piping that does not exceed 25 mm OD, provided that the following conditions are met:

a) The piping is intended to be operated at pressures that will not produce a hoop stress in excess of 30% of the specified yield strength of the pipe.
b) During commissioning or initial placing into service, the piping shall be pressurized to the operating pressure and held for 10 min prior to the inspection of the piping and joints for leaks.
c) With the pressure maintained, the piping shall be visually inspected and the joints subjected to a 100% inspection for leaks.
d) The requirements of Clause 8.2 shall be applied and additional measures shall be considered if testing with sour or hazardous service fluids.
e) A company representative shall witness the tests specified in Items a) to d).

8.5 Test-head assemblies

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *Transition pieces are not considered part of test-head assemblies.*

8.5.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The maximum working pressure of test-head assemblies during pressure testing of piping shall not

a) produce hoop stresses in excess of 75% of the specified minimum yield strength of any pipe or fitting in the test-head assembly; or
b) be higher than the maximum cold working pressure of any flange or valve in the test-head assembly.

The ancillary piping (e.g., the pressurizing lines attached to the test-head assembly) shall not be operated at pressures that would produce hoop stresses in excess of 50% of the specified minimum yield strength of the ancillary pipe.

Note: *Where a gaseous pressure-test medium is used or where repeated use of the assemblies can result in fatigue damage due to pressure cycling or impact damage due to handling, consideration should be given to using test-head assemblies at lower hoop stresses.*

8.5.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Steel pipe and components in test-head assemblies shall be as specified in Clauses 4 and 5, except that continuous welded pipe shall not be used.

8.5.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

All welds in new test-head assemblies and all welds that join test-head assemblies to the pipe to be tested shall be

a) made as specified in Clause 7 for production welds; and
b) nondestructively inspected
   i) for 100% of their lengths;
   ii) as specified in Clause 7.10.4; and

© 2015 CSA Group

iii) where such welds are butt welds, using radiographic or ultrasonic methods, or a combination of such methods.

8.5.4

New test-head assemblies that are intended to be used for gaseous-medium pressure testing or are intended to be reused at a hoop stress of 30% or more of the specified minimum yield strength of the test-head pipe shall be pressure tested as specified in Clause 8 for exposed piping, except that any blind flanges that are part of such test-head assemblies need not be pressure tested. Such test pressures shall not

a) be less than 125% of the intended maximum working pressure of the test-head assembly;
b) be more than 1.5 times the maximum cold working-pressure rating of any flange or valve in the test-head assembly; or
c) produce hoop stresses in the test-head assembly in excess of 100% of the specified minimum yield strength of any pipe or fitting.

8.5.5

Prior to each use, the test-head assembly shall be visually inspected for conformance with the applicable requirements of Clause 6.3.

Note: *If the test-head assembly was previously subjected to abnormal loading, consideration should be given to pressure testing the test-head assembly or nondestructively inspecting any affected portion.*

8.5.6

Records of materials in new test-head assemblies that are intended to be reused shall be retained as specified in Clause 5.7, except that such records need only be retained for the life of such test-head assemblies.

8.5.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For test-head assemblies that are intended to be reused, the maximum working pressure shall be marked on each test-head assembly.

8.6 Testing procedures and techniques

8.6.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For liquid-medium testing where the intended test pressure would produce a hoop stress equal to or greater than 100% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe, a pressure-volume plot shall be made, starting at a pressure low enough to establish straight-line proportionality.

Note: *Establishment of straight-line proportionality can generally be obtained if the plot is started at a pressure that produces a hoop stress between 60 and 80% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.*

8.6.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where conditions require that pressure tests be conducted when the pressure-test medium can be subjected to thermal variations, consideration shall be given to establishing a pressure-temperature

 © 2015 CSA Group

gradient so that the effects of such variations can be taken into account in determining the pressure gradient expected during the test period.

8.6.3

Cyclic testing (i.e., where the pressure is brought up to or near the pressure equivalent to the specified minimum yield strength and released more than once) shall not be performed, except as necessitated by the encountering of leaks or ruptures during the test.

8.6.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pressure testing of pipelines with mechanical interference fit joints shall not be performed until any joint sealants used have cured in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

8.6.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Water absorption by any cement-mortar linings shall be considered when determining the time required for stabilization prior to the strength and leak tests.

Note: *The water absorption can be as high as 5% of the cement-mortar lining mass.*

8.6.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For gaseous-medium leak testing, the effect of compressibility on the ability to detect leaks shall be considered when determining the length of the test section. The use of chemical tracers or leak-detection devices shall be considered in order to improve the sensitivity of leak detection.

8.6.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For liquid-medium testing, air and uncondensed gases shall be displaced from the system by the pressure-test medium prior to starting the pressure test.

8.7 Piping to be operated at pressure greater than 700 kPa

8.7.1 Strength and leak tests

8.7.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clauses 8.4, 8.7.1.2, and 8.7.1.3, piping intended for operation at pressures greater than 700 kPa shall successfully undergo a strength test followed by a leak test.

Note: *See Table 8.1 for the relationships between test pressures and maximum operating pressures for steel piping intended to be operated at pressures greater than 700 kPa.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.7.1.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For piping and fabricated assemblies that are completely accessible for visual inspection at the time of pressure testing, a leak test shall not be required, provided that such piping and fabricated assemblies are visually inspected to detect leaks immediately after the strength test, at a pressure of at least 110% of the intended maximum operating pressure and as specified in Clause 8.2.5. Piping and fabricated assemblies that are covered with insulation or concrete coating shall not be considered as completely accessible for visual inspection. Consideration shall also be given to the possibility that other types of coatings might conceal leaks from visual inspection, especially at low pressures.

8.7.1.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Concurrent strength and leak tests may be conducted for piping that is to be tested with a gaseous medium. The test pressure shall not exceed a pressure corresponding to 100% of the SMYS of the pipe and an appropriate method for detecting leaks shall be used.

8.7.1.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Piping that is to be installed in a railway or road crossing and stressed to 80% or more of its specified minimum yield strength during gaseous-medium testing shall be pretested to a pressure equal to or greater than the intended strength test pressure, except that non-pretested piping may be used if the railway or road is closed to traffic during the pressure testing. In determining the length of pipe to be pretested, consideration shall be given to factors such as the fracture propagation characteristics of the pipe material, the pipe diameter, and the traffic density.

8.7.2 Pressure-test mediums

8.7.2.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clauses 8.7.2.2 and 8.7.2.3, water shall be used as the pressure-test medium.

8.7.2.2

Where climate, line capacity, service fluid contamination, or other circumstances make the use of a liquid other than water preferable, LVP liquids, water containing a freezing point depressant, or another appropriate liquid test medium may be used. Where such alternative liquids are used, contingency plans shall be developed to protect the environment in the event of leakage during testing.

Note: *Multiphase fluids should not be used as pressure-test mediums.*

8.7.2.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Air or another nonflammable, nontoxic gas may be used as the pressure-test medium, provided that the

a) piping materials have notch toughness properties that are as specified in Clause 5.2, based upon the hoop stress developed by the gaseous-medium pressure test rather than upon the design operating stress;

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) pipe is not used pipe and has a longitudinal joint factor of 1.00; and
c) at the time of such pressure testing, one or more of the following conditions exist:
   i) The ambient temperature is 0 °C or lower, or is expected to fall to such a temperature before the pressure test can be completed.
   ii) A liquid of appropriate quality is not available in sufficient quantity.
   iii) The piping is such that removal of a liquid pressure-test medium would not be practical.
   iv) The elevation profile of the piping is such that an excessive number of test sections would be required for liquid-medium pressure testing.
   v) The strength test pressure will not produce a hoop stress in excess of 80% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

8.7.2.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Flammable gas, fluids containing H_2S, HVP liquids, and CO_2 in the liquid or dense phase state shall not be used as pressure-test mediums.

Note: *Fluids containing H_2S are defined in Note 2 in Clause 10.2.10.*

8.7.3 Minimum strength and leak test pressures

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

8.7.3.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The minimum strength and leak test pressures shall be as given in Table 8.1.

Note: *Minimum test pressures for piping incorporating a corrosion or erosion allowance, or both (see Clause 4.3.10.1), should be increased to produce the same hoop stresses as would have been produced at the minimum pressures specified in Clause 8.7.3 in the absence of such allowances.*

8.7.3.2

The minimum test pressures for concurrent strength and leak tests using a gaseous test medium shall be as required for strength tests.

8.7.4 Maximum strength and leak test pressures

8.7.4.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The strength test pressure shall not exceed the test pressure specified in the applicable material standard or specification for any component in the test section.

8.7.4.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For liquid-medium testing, the strength test pressure shall not exceed the lesser of
a) the calculated pressure corresponding to
   i) 110% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe for Grades 555 and lower;
   ii) 107% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe for grades greater than Grade 555; and

 © 2015 CSA Group

iii) 66% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe for continuous welded pipe;

b) for pipe grades up to and including Grade 555, the pressure that produces a deviation of 0.2% from straight-line proportionality on a pressure-volume plot for the test section (see Clause 8.6.1); or

c) for pipe grades greater than Grade 555 the pressure that produces a deviation of 0.1% from straight-line proportionality on a pressure-volume plot for the test section (see Clause 8.6.1).

8.7.4.3

For gaseous-medium testing, the strength test pressure shall not exceed the calculated pressure corresponding to 100% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

8.7.4.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The leak test pressure shall not exceed the lesser of the qualification pressure (see Table 8.1) and the pressure corresponding to 100% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

8.7.5 Duration of tests

8.7.5.1

Except as allowed by Clause 8.7.5.2, strength tests shall be maintained for continuous periods of not less than 4 h.

8.7.5.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For piping and fabricated items that are fully exposed at the time of pressure testing, strength tests shall be maintained for continuous periods of not less than 1 h.

8.7.5.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Leak tests shall be maintained for continuous periods of not less than 4 h for liquid-medium testing or 24 h for gaseous-medium testing.

Notes:

1) *For liquid-medium testing, leak test durations in excess of 4 h can be necessary where thermal variations or other factors affect the validity of the tests.*

2) *For gaseous-medium testing of large-volume test sections, leak test durations in excess of 24 h can be necessary to compensate for the compressibility of the pressure-test medium because the pressure drop resulting from a small leak in a large test section might not be sufficient within a 24 h period to clearly indicate the presence of the leak.*

8.7.5.4

Concurrent strength and leak tests using a gaseous medium shall be maintained for a continuous period of not less than 24 h.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.7.6 Maximum operating pressures

8.7.6.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The maximum operating pressure shall not exceed the applicable value given in Table 8.1.

Note: *See Table 8.1 for the relationships between test pressures and maximum operating pressures for steel piping intended to be operated at pressures greater than 700 kPa.*

8.7.6.2

For compressor stations, gas pressure-regulating stations, and gas measuring stations, the maximum operating pressure shall not exceed the lesser of the qualification pressure (see Table 8.1) divided by 1.40 and the design pressure of the pipe.

8.7.6.3

For HVP service in pump stations, tank farms, and terminals, the maximum operating pressure shall not exceed the lesser of the qualification pressure (see Table 8.1) divided by 1.50 and the design pressure of the pipe.

8.7.6.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For liquid-medium testing of piping in LVP, HVP, and carbon dioxide pipeline systems, the qualification pressure (see Table 8.1) may be determined on a point-specific basis, and it may be the lowest pressure achieved, over the duration of the strength test, at each point in the test section, subject to the following requirements:

a) The pressure-test records (see Clause 8.7.7) additionally shall indicate the point-specific maximum operating pressures for the test section.
b) For those portions of the pipeline system that correspond to the test section, in-service pressure-monitoring and pressure-control systems (see Clause 4.18.1.1) shall be used to maintain the operating pressure, at each point, at or below its point-specific maximum operating pressure.

Note: *Use of the point-specific qualification method is usually dictated by the elevation profile.*

8.7.7 Pressure-test measurements and records

8.7.7.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall document pressure tests in a manner that adequately supports the success of the tests. The records shall include the reconciliation of any significant pressure deviations experienced during the test. Where inaccuracies or questionable results cannot be reconciled, tests shall be considered unsuccessful.

Note: *See also Clause 10.4.5.*

8.7.7.2

Pressures during tests shall be accurately recorded and identified on pressure-recording charts produced by pressure recorders connected to the test sections. Pressure-indicating gauges shall be installed where required.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.7.7.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The accuracy of chart recorders shall be verified before and after each pressure test; the accuracy of other test instruments shall be verified periodically.

8.7.7.4

Temperature recorders shall be used to monitor ambient temperatures and the temperatures of the test medium or pipe.

8.7.7.5

For each test section, records shall be prepared to give the location, pressure details, and cause of any leak, rupture, or other failure in the test section. The description of any repair action taken and the results and recommendations of the investigation shall be recorded.

8.7.7.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For each test section, records of the pressure tests that qualified the piping for service shall be prepared. Such records shall contain at least the following information:

a) date of test;
b) pipe standards or specifications for the section tested;
c) location of the test section;
d) location and elevation of the highest, lowest, and pressure-measurement points in the test section;
e) elevation profile for LVP and HVP and carbon dioxide piping, if necessary to determine the point-specific maximum operating pressures (see Clause 8.7.6.4);
f) qualification pressure (see Table 8.1), and its location and elevation;
g) pressure-test medium used;
h) test duration;
i) pressure and temperature recording charts and logs; and
j) pressure-volume charts, if required.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 8.1
Test requirements for steel piping intended to be operated at pressures greater than 700 kPa

(See Clauses 8.7.1.1, 8.7.3.1, 8.7.4.4, 8.7.6, 8.7.7.6, 10.2, 10.3, and 17.8.1.)

Service fluid	Class location	Strength test pressure			Leak test pressure		Maximum operating pressure (MOP)
		Intended minimum pressure*	Maximum pressure†		Minimum pressure	Maximum pressure	
			Liquid medium	Gaseous medium			
LVP	All	125% of intended MOP	Lesser of 0.2% deviation on a P-V plot and 110% of the SMYS of the pipe‡	100% of the SMYS of the pipe	110% of intended MOP	Lesser of the qualification pressure§ and the pressure corresponding to 100% of the SMYS of the pipe	Lesser of qualification pressure§ divided by 1.25 and design pressure of the pipe
HVP or CO_2	1						
Gas	1 or 2						
Gas	3 or 4	140% of intended MOP					Lesser of qualification pressure§ divided by 1.40 and design pressure of the pipe
HVP or CO_2	2, 3, or 4	150% of intended MOP					Lesser of qualification pressure§ divided by 1.50 and design pressure of the pipe
Clause references		8.7.3	8.7.4.2	8.7.4.3	8.7.3	8.7.4	8.7.6

* *See also the note to Clause 8.7.3.1.*
† *See also Clause 8.7.4.1.*
‡ *66% for continuous welded pipe and 107% for pipe grades greater than Grade 555.*
§ *Except as allowed by Clause 8.7.6.4, the qualification pressure shall be the lowest pressure achieved, over the duration of the strength test, at the high point of elevation in the test section, as measured directly or as derived by adjusting the corresponding pressure measured at another point in the test section to account for the elevation difference between the high point of elevation and the pressure-measurement point.*

Notes:

1) *For steel piping intended to be operated at pressures of 700 kPa or less, see Clauses 8.8.1, 8.8.3, 8.8.4, and 8.8.6.*

2) *For steel piping in compressor stations, gas pressure-regulating stations, and gas measuring stations, the intended minimum strength test pressure shall be 140% of the intended MOP; the MOP shall be as specified in Clause 8.7.6.2.*

3) *For steel piping in HVP service in pump stations, tank farms, and terminals, the intended minimum strength test pressure shall be 150% of the intended MOP; the MOP shall be as specified in Clause 8.7.6.3.*

8.8 Piping intended to be operated at pressures of 700 kPa or less

8.8.1 Strength and leak tests

Piping intended to be operated at pressures of 700 kPa or less shall not require a strength test but shall be successfully leak tested.

© 2015 CSA Group

8.8.2 Pressure-test mediums

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Water, air, or another appropriate fluid, excluding fluids containing H_2S and HVP liquids, shall be used as the pressure-test medium.

Note: *Fluids containing H_2S are defined in Note 2) of Clause 10.2.10.*

8.8.3 Minimum leak test pressures

8.8.3.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 8.8.3.2, the minimum leak test pressure shall be 700 kPa.

8.8.3.2

For gas piping, leak tests may be conducted using pipeline gas at the maximum pressure available, provided that the test section is bare and bubble tested, and the requirements of Clause 8.2 are met.

8.8.4 Maximum leak test pressures

8.8.4.1

The leak test pressure shall not exceed the test pressure specified in the applicable material standard or specification for any component in the test section.

8.8.4.2

The leak test pressure shall not exceed 1.4 MPa.

8.8.5 Duration of tests

8.8.5.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 8.8.5.2, leak tests shall be maintained for continuous periods of not less than 4 h for liquid-medium testing or 24 h for gaseous-medium testing.

Notes:

1) *For liquid-medium testing, leak test durations in excess of 4 h can be necessary where thermal variations or other factors affect the validity of the tests.*

2) *For gaseous-medium testing of large-volume test sections, leak test durations in excess of 24 h can be necessary in order to compensate for the compressibility of the pressure-test medium because the pressure drop resulting from a small leak in a large test section might not be sufficient within a 24 h period to clearly indicate the presence of the leak.*

8.8.5.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Leak test durations shorter than those specified in Clause 8.8.5.1 may be used, provided that a leak detection method appropriate for such a test duration is used.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.8.6 Maximum operating pressures

The maximum operating pressure shall be established by the operating company and shall not exceed 700 kPa.

8.8.7 Pressure-test measurements and records

8.8.7.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall document pressure tests in a manner that adequately supports the success of the tests. The records shall include the reconciliation of any significant pressure deviations experienced during the test. Where inaccuracies or questionable results cannot be reconciled, tests shall be considered unsuccessful.

Note: *See also Clause 10.4.5.*

8.8.7.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pressures during tests shall be accurately measured and documented.

8.8.7.3

The accuracy of test instruments shall be verified periodically.

8.8.7.4

For each test section, records shall be prepared to give the location, pressure details, and cause of any leak, rupture, or other failure in the test section. The description of any repair action taken and the results and recommendations of the investigation shall be recorded.

8.8.7.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For each test section, records of the pressure tests that qualified the piping for service shall be prepared. Such records shall contain at least the following information:

a) date of test;
b) location of the test section;
c) pressure-test medium used;
d) test pressure; and
e) test duration.

8.9 Leaks and ruptures during pressure tests

8.9.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where leaks occur during strength tests and the required strength test pressure cannot be maintained, the piping shall be repaired and the strength test repeated. Where leaks occur during leak tests, the piping shall be repaired and the leak tests shall be repeated.

Note: *Repeated testing at stress levels approaching the yield strength of the pipe can cause damage to the piping.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.9.2
Where ruptures occur during the pressure test, the piping shall be repaired and the strength and leak tests shall be repeated.

8.9.3
Leaks and ruptures that occur during pressure testing shall be investigated to determine their causes and any potential impact on future operations.

8.10 Disposal of pressure-test mediums
Pressure-test mediums shall be disposed of in such a manner as to minimize adverse environmental effects.

8.11 Cleaning and drying
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

8.11.1
The company shall determine and mitigate any adverse effects due to moisture, such as internal corrosion, hydrate formation, and malfunction of pressure control systems or metering systems that might occur in the pipeline system or downstream facilities.

8.11.2
Carbon dioxide pipelines and gas pipelines containing predominantly CO_2 that have been hydrostatically pressure tested shall be cleaned and dried upon completion of such testing to prevent corrosion that can otherwise occur on start-up of the system.

Note: *For carbon dioxide pipelines, consideration should be given to delaying the installation of any valves without corrosion-resistant trim until after hydrostatic testing.*

8.12 Tie-ins of tested sections

8.12.1
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where piping is segmented into test sections, retesting of the completed piping after tying in shall not be required, provided that any additional piping used to make the tie-ins is pretested as specified in Clauses 8.7 to 8.9 and is suitably identified.

8.12.2
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Inspection of tie-in welds shall be as specified in Clause 7.10. Tie-in joints that are not welded shall be exposed and visually inspected for leaks during initial pressurization of the piping and the pressure rise shall be monitored closely.

 © 2015 CSA Group

9 Corrosion control

9.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

9.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clause 9 covers the requirements for the control of corrosion of steel pipeline systems that are buried, submerged, or exposed to the atmosphere and shall apply until the piping is abandoned.

Notes:

1) *For additional requirements for sour service pipelines, see Clauses 16.7 and 16.10.3.*

2) *API RP 651 should be used as a guide on cathodic protection for the underside of storage tank bottoms. API RP 652 should be used as a guide on applied linings for internal surfaces of storage tank bottoms.*

3) *NACE SP0285 should be used as a guide to procedures for corrosion control for underground storage tanks.*

4) *CGA OCC-1 provides recommended practices for control of external corrosion on buried or submerged metallic piping systems.*

5) *CAPP 2009-0011 provides information on mitigation of external corrosion on buried pipeline systems.*

9.1.2

Corrosion control for underground steel tanks shall conform to the requirements of the applicable code.

Note: *In Canada, the* National Fire Code of Canada *provides these requirements.*

9.1.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Operating companies shall establish and maintain the procedures necessary to satisfy the requirements of Clause 9, except when an engineering assessment determines that specific corrosion control practices are not necessary. Corrosion control procedures shall be included in the operating company's operating and maintenance manuals.

9.1.4

Piping that is exposed to the atmosphere shall be protected from external corrosion by the application of a protective coating or by the use of corrosion-resistant alloys, unless the operating company can demonstrate that the anticipated extent of corrosion is not detrimental to serviceability.

9.1.5

Piping that is exposed to the atmosphere shall be inspected for corrosion at the intervals outlined in the operating company's operating and maintenance manuals.

9.1.6

Except where allowed by Clause 9.1.3, cathodic protection shall be provided and maintained on existing coated piping that is buried or submerged.

9.1.7

Investigations shall be made to determine the extent and effect of corrosion on existing bare piping. Where such investigations indicate that continuing corrosion can create a hazard, corrosion control measures or other remedial action shall be undertaken.

 © 2015 CSA Group

9.1.8
Except where allowed by Clause 9.1.3, buried or submerged piping shall be externally coated.

9.1.9
Coating systems for buried or submerged piping shall be selected, applied, installed, and inspected to protect the installed pipe, components, and production welds from corrosion damage during service, taking into consideration the potential for coating degradation or coating damage to occur during pipe storage, handling, transportation, and installation.

9.2 Selection of external protective coatings for buried or submerged piping
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

9.2.1
The company or operating company, whichever is applicable, shall be responsible for performing and documenting coating system evaluations and selections. Only those competent in the application of corrosion control through coatings and cathodic protection shall perform such evaluations and selections.

9.2.2
For the coating system being considered, the factors given in Column 1 of Table 9.1 shall be evaluated as applicable to identify the coating properties and characteristics necessary for satisfactory coating performance and to identify situations along the pipeline where coating performance problems are likely to occur. Particular attention shall be given to situations such as

a) installations involving bored crossings, horizontal directional drills, padding, backfilling, or bending;
b) soil-induced stresses (e.g., axial, transverse, and shear) imposed on the coating system;
c) exposure to high and variable operating temperatures; and
d) the possibility of changes to service conditions.

For bends, the combination of bending temperature, coating thickness, coating composition and degree of bend shall be considered and demonstrated to be suitable in preventing damage to the coating during the bending process.

9.2.3
Attention shall be given to the selection of coating systems and application methods to be used in situations where the presence of piping surface contour changes creates a potential for gaps or poor adhesion between the coating and the piping. Such situations include, but are not limited to the presence of

a) submerged-arc seam welds;
b) circumferential pipe-to-pipe and pipe-to-component welds; and
c) reinforcement and pressure-containment repair sleeves.

Note: *Coatings that do not remain bonded to the piping can cause electrical shielding that jeopardizes the effectiveness of cathodic protection and creates conditions for metal loss and environmentally assisted cracking.*

9.2.4
Selected coating systems shall

a) have properties and performance characteristics (see Table 9.1) that are required for satisfactory coating performance and that are resistant to the coating performance problems in the situations as specified in Clause 9.2.2;

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) be repairable under field conditions;
c) have been tested and evaluated as specified in Clauses 9.2.5 and 9.2.6; and
d) except for newly developed coating systems used on an experimental basis, have a history of satisfactory performance in situations similar to those specified in Clauses 9.2.2 and 9.2.3.

9.2.5

Except as allowed by Clause 9.2.7, selected coating systems shall have been tested for the properties and characteristics required for satisfactory performance [see Clause 9.2.4 a)], using the primary test methods given in Table 9.1, unless analysis demonstrates that alternative test methods are more appropriate. The coating test parameters shall meet the following requirements unless analysis demonstrates that alternative parameters are appropriate:

a) Except for flexibility, all tests shall be conducted using the minimum or nominal coating thickness specified for the coating system.
b) Testing for flexibility shall be conducted at, or below, the minimum pipe bending temperature, using the maximum coating thickness specified for the coating system.
c) Testing for peel adhesion shall be conducted at, or below, the minimum installation temperature and at, or above, the maximum operating temperature.
d) Testing for gouge resistance and for impact resistance shall be performed at, or below, the minimum installation temperature and at the maximum installation temperature.
e) Testing for cathodic disbondment and for adhesion shall be performed at, or above, the maximum operating temperature.
f) The immersion time for cathodic disbondment testing and adhesion testing shall be at least 28 days.

Notes:

1) *When selecting maximum testing temperatures, consideration should be given to upset operating conditions and to solar heating of the coated pipe.*

2) *Annex L provides information on test methods for the evaluation of coating properties and characteristics that may be considered as alternative or supplemental test methods to the primary test methods given in Table 9.1.*

3) *Each company or operating company should review the applicator's application procedure and consider the need for testing of the coating system applied by each applicator.*

9.2.6

Results of the testing specified in Clause 9.2.5 for the coating system being considered shall be evaluated on the basis of acceptance criteria established by the company or operating company, whichever is applicable. Consideration shall be given to the relationships between testing results, performance history, and service conditions for the coating systems being considered.

Note: *Where acceptance criteria are included in the referenced testing method (e.g., CSA Z245.20, CSA Z245.21, CSA Z245.22, or CSA Z245.30), the company should evaluate their suitability.*

9.2.7

For coating systems not addressed in Table 9.1, the required testing methods and evaluation of test results shall be determined by the company or operating company, whichever is applicable.

Note: *The test methods identified in Table 9.1 and Annex L should be considered for such coating systems.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 9.1
Selection of external coating systems
(See Clauses 9.2.2, 9.2.4, 9.2.5, 9.2.7, 12.9.1.2, L.1.1, and L.2.)

Storage, handling, transportation, construction, or service factors	Potential coating performance problems	Relevant properties or performance characteristics	Primary test methods for selection	Applicable coating system
Storage	Loss of thickness or flexibility due to atmospheric and ultraviolet exposure	Coating thickness	SSPC-PA 2	P20, P21, F1, F2, F3, F4, F5, F6
		Flexibility	CSA Z245.20, Clause 12.11.* CSA Z245.30, Table 1 CSA Z245.30, Table 2 CSA Z245.30, Table 3	P20, P21 F1, F2, F3 F4 F5
	Loss of adhesion and deterioration of backing due to atmospheric and ultraviolet exposure	Adhesion	CSA Z245.20, Clause 12.14* CSA Z245.30, Table 1 CSA Z245.30, Table 5	P20, F1 F2, F3 F7
		Peel adhesion	CSA Z245.21, Clauses 12.4 and 12.5* CSA Z245.30, Clause 12.2	P21 F4, F5, F6
		Tensile strength of backing	CSA Z245.21, Table 5 CSA Z245.30, Table 2 CSA Z245.30, Table 3	P21 F4, F6 F5, F6
Handling and transportation	Holidays or reduced coating thickness due to handling during storage, loading, transportation, off-loading, construction, and installation	Gouge resistance	CSA Z245.20, Clause 12.15 CSA Z245.21, Clause 12.7	P20, P21, F3
		Impact resistance	CSA Z245.20, Clause 12.12 CSA Z245.30, Table 1	P20 F1, F2, F3
			CSA Z245.21, Table 1 CSA Z245.30, Table 2 CSA Z245.30, Table 3	P21 F4 F5
		Hardness	ASTM D2240 Z245.30, Clause 12.1	P21 F1, F2, F3, F4, F5
Bending	Cracking or deformation of the coating due to cold bends	Flexibility	CSA Z245.20, Clause 12.11 CSA Z245.30, Table 1	P20 F1, F2, F3
			CSA Z245.21, Table 1	P21

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 9.1 (Continued)

Storage, handling, transportation, construction, or service factors	Potential coating performance problems	Relevant properties or performance characteristics	Primary test methods for selection	Applicable coating system
			CSA Z245.30, Table 2 CSA Z245.30, Table 3	F4 F5
Soil and groundwater composition, soil/pipe movement, freeze-thaw, and wet-dry cycling	Deterioration of adhesion and strength leading to holidays and disbondment	Adhesion	CSA Z245.20, Clause 12.14 CSA Z245.30, Table 1	P20 F1, F2, F3
		Peel adhesion	CSA Z245.21, Clause 12.4 & 12.5 CSA Z245.30, Clause 12.2 CSA Z245.30, Table 5	P21 F4, F5, F6 F7
		Microbial resistance	ASTM G21	P20, P21, P22, F1, F2, F3, F4, F5, F6, F7
		Insulation axial shear	CSA Z245.22, Clause 12.3	P22
Soil contaminants		Chemical resistance	ASTM G20	P20, P21, P22, F1, F2, F3, F4, F5, F6, F7
Maximum temperature during operation and upset conditions	Adhesion loss and disbondment	Softening temperature	ASTM D1525	P21, P22, F4, F5, F6, F7
		Adhesion	CSA Z245.20, Clause 12.14 CSA Z245.30, Table 1	P20 F1, F2, F3
		Peel adhesion	CSA Z245.21, Clauses 12.4 and 12.5 CSA Z245.30, Clause 12.2 CSA Z245.30, Table 5	P21 F4, F5, F6, F7
		Creep at maximum design temperature	CSA Z245.22, Clause 12.2	P22, F6
		Cathodic disbondment resistance	CSA Z245.20, Clause 12.8 CSA Z245.30, Table 1	P20, F1, F2, F3
			CSA Z245.21, Clause 12.3 CSA Z245.30, Table 2	P21, F4

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 9.1 (Concluded)

Storage, handling, transportation, construction, or service factors	Potential coating performance problems	Relevant properties or performance characteristics	Primary test methods for selection	Applicable coating system
			CSA Z245.30, Table 3 CSA Z245.30, Table 5	F5 F7
Cathodic protection potentials	Disbondment	Cathodic disbondment resistance	CSA Z245.20, Clause 12.8 CSA Z245.30, Table 1	P20 F1, F2, F3
			CSA Z245.21, Clause 12.3 CSA Z245.30, Table 2 CSA Z245.30, Table 3 CSA Z245.30, Table 5	P21, F4 F5 F7
Compatibility with adjacent coatings	Poor adhesion or chemical/heat reaction causing loss of properties	Adhesion of a coating applied over an existing coating	CSA Z245.30, Table 1 CSA Z245.30, Table 4	P20, F1, F2 F3 F6, P22
		Peel adhesion of a coating applied over an existing coating	CSA Z245.30, Table 2 CSA Z245.30, Table 3 CSA Z245.30, Table 4 CSA Z245.30, Table 5	P21, F4 P21, F5 F6, P22 P21, F7
		Adhesion of a coating applied over an existing coating	Company or operating company procedure	P20, P21, P22, F1, F2, F3, F4,

* *The properties shall be evaluated using the applicable test method, following the exposure of test samples as specified in ASTM G11.*

Legend:

P20 — CSA Z245.20 (fusion bond epoxy)

P21 — CSA Z245.21 A, B1, or B2 coating (polyethylene)

P22 — CSA Z245.22 (foam insulation system)

F1 — CSA Z245.30 F1 coating (liquid applied or FBE coating with a maximum rated service temperature of up to 115 °C))

F2 — CSA Z245.30 F2 coating (liquid-applied or FBE with a maximum rated service temperature of 115 °C or greater)

F3 — CSA Z245.30 F3 coating (liquid-applied or FBE intended for abrasion service)

F4 — CSA Z245.30 F4 coating (adhesive and a polymeric backing e.g., tape or heat shrinkable sleeve)

F5 — CSA Z245.30 F5 coating (epoxy primer, adhesive and a polymeric backing e.g., tape or heat shrinkable sleeve)

F6 — CSA Z245.30 F6 coating (anti-corrosion coating, polyurethane foam insulation and a polymeric backing e.g., tape or heat shrinkable sleeve)

F7 — CSA Z245.30 F7 coating (fibre reinforced petrolatum, paraffin filled or viscoelastic tape)

© 2015 CSA Group

9.2.8

Where an abrasion or foam insulation coating is applied over an anti-corrosion coating, the anti-corrosion coating shall be as specified in Clause 9.2. The company or operating company, whichever is applicable, shall specify

a) the required gouge and impact resistance of the abrasion coating and the adhesion required between the abrasion coating and the anti-corrosion coating; or
b) the axial shear strength required between the foam insulation and the anti-corrosion coating.

9.3 Application and inspection of external protective coatings for buried or submerged piping

9.3.1

Coating materials and procedures intended to be used for selected coating systems shall be qualified prior to application to demonstrate that they are capable of providing the required coating properties and performance characteristics. Coating materials shall be re-qualified if there are changes in formulation. The company or operating company, whichever is applicable, shall specify the testing methods and acceptance criteria for qualification and for requalification of coating materials and procedures.

9.3.2

9.3.2.1

Plant applied protective coating of the external surface of pipe shall be as specified in CSA Z245.20, CSA Z245.21, or CSA Z245.22.

9.3.2.2

Field applied protective coating of the external surface of piping shall be as specified in CSA Z245.30.

9.3.2.3

When applying coatings not covered by CSA Z245.20 Series or CSA Z245.30, coatings shall be applied in accordance with documented procedures and an appropriate quality management system. Such procedures, as applicable, shall address

a) responsibility for quality and compliance;
b) material quality requirements;
c) manufacturer’s qualified application procedures, including surface preparation;
d) packaging and labelling requirements;
e) applicator competency requirements;
f) application procedures and equipment;
g) inspection and testing requirements;
h) repair requirements;
i) product marking requirements;
j) handling and storage requirements;
k) records requirements; and
l) test procedures and acceptance criteria.

 © 2015 CSA Group

9.3.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 9.3.4, coated piping shall be inspected during or after installation to detect coating defects.

9.3.4

Where inspection of the coated piping during or after installation is not practical, the coated piping shall be inspected as near to the time of installation as practical.

9.3.5

Coatings containing defects shall be repaired as specified in Clause 9.3.2.

9.3.6

The company or operating company, whichever is applicable, shall determine the areas in which the coating performance can be negatively affected by heating associated with preheating for welding, welding, and post-weld heat treatment. Coatings shall

a) not be applied over such areas prior to such operations; or
b) shall be removed from such areas
    i) prior to such operations; or
    ii) after the completion of such operations.

9.3.7

Previously applied coating shall be protected to prevent damage from weld spatter.

9.3.8

Bare piping in the vicinity of a weld shall be coated as specified in Clause 9.3.2 after the completion of welding operations.

9.3.9

For repair, maintenance, and tie-in activities on existing pipeline systems, where practical, the requirements of CSA Z245.30 shall be followed.

9.4 Storage, handling, transportation, and installation of coated pipe and components

Storage, handling, transportation, and installation of coated pipe and coated components shall be performed in accordance with documented procedures to protect the coating from degradation and damage.

9.5 Cathodic protection — Design and installation

9.5.1

Except where allowed by Clause 9.1.3, cathodic protection of new piping shall be applied no later than 1 year after installation, and shall be maintained.

© 2015 CSA Group

9.5.2
Cathodic protection systems shall provide sufficient current to satisfy the selected criteria for cathodic protection.

Note: *Criteria are given in Section 6 of NACE SP0169 and Annex B of CGA OCC-1.*

9.5.3
Electrical equipment shall comply with the applicable requirements of the CSA C22.2 series of Standards and shall be installed as specified in the *Canadian Electrical Code, Part I*. Connections of copper electrical conductors using thermite welding shall be as specified in Clause 9.8.3 of this Standard.

9.6 Electrical isolation

9.6.1
Where insulating devices are installed to provide electrical isolation of piping to facilitate the application of corrosion control, they shall be properly rated for temperature, pressure, and electrical properties, and shall be resistant to the service fluid. Insulating devices shall not be installed in enclosed areas where combustible atmospheres are likely to be present unless safeguards appropriate for combustible atmospheres are implemented.

Note: *Consideration should be given to lightning protection and fault current protection at insulating devices (see Clause 4.13.1).*

9.6.2
Electrical contact between pipe and other metallic structures shall be considered in the design and maintenance of the cathodic protection system.

9.6.3
Provision shall be made to prevent harmful galvanic action between dissimilar metals.

Note: *Consideration should be given to installing insulating couplings or insulating gasket sets between such connections.*

9.7 Electrical interference

9.7.1 Direct current
Tests shall be carried out to determine the presence or absence of stray direct currents. Where stray direct currents are present, measures shall be taken to prevent external corrosion and other detrimental effects.

Notes:

1) *Tests for interference from impressed cathodic protection systems and other direct-current-generating systems should be jointly arranged and conducted with the owners of neighbouring foreign structures, and any detrimental effects mitigated. Procedures for the detection of and protection against stray current corrosion are given in CSA C22.3 No. 4 and in Annex C of CGA OCC-1.*

2) *Where a low resistivity service fluid exists across an isolating fitting, the possibility of stray current interference across the inside of the fitting should be considered in order to prevent internal corrosion.*

9.7.2 Alternating current and lightning
The effects of lightning and electrical interference shall be considered as specified in Clause 4.13.1.

 © 2015 CSA Group

9.8 Corrosion control test stations

9.8.1
Test stations for electrical measurements shall be provided at intervals along the pipeline system.

9.8.2
Attachments of test lead wires to the pipe shall be made without causing harmful effects to the pipe and in such a way that they remain mechanically secure and electrically conductive.

9.8.3
The thermite welding process or mechanical means may be used to attach copper electrical conductors directly to pressurized or non-pressurized pipe having a wall thickness of 2.8 mm or greater; however, for wall thicknesses in the range of 2.8 to 3.8 mm, attention shall be paid to the avoidance of burn-through and undesirable microstructures.

9.8.4
Thermite welding shall be carried out in accordance with documented procedures by competent persons. When developing procedures and when determining competency of personnel, consideration shall be given to the following:

a) instructions, recommendations, and safety advice provided by equipment manufacturers and consumable suppliers;
b) safe working pressures;
c) location of the thermite welds relative to girth welds, seam welds, and other thermite welds; and
d) wire placement practices to minimize wire stresses during backfilling.

9.8.5
The charge used in thermite welding shall be a specially designed, low-temperature aluminum and copper oxide powder mixture and shall not exceed a standard 15 g cartridge.

9.8.6
Before thermite welding is performed, the areas to be welded shall be inspected to confirm that the wall thickness is as specified in Clause 9.8.3 and that they are free of imperfections that would adversely affect the weld.

9.8.7
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Other methods such as brazing that involve the application of heat directly onto piping shall not be used to attach electrical wires.

9.8.8
Where current-carrying capacity greater than that provided by a No. 6 AWG conductor is required, a multi-strand conductor shall be used and the strands arranged into groups no larger than No. 6 AWG; each group shall be attached to the pipe with a separate charge.

9.8.9
Test lead wires and attachments shall be coated with an electrically insulating material compatible with the pipe coating and test lead wire insulation.

 © 2015 CSA Group

9.8.10
Where applicable, test lead wires shall be identified or colour coded.

9.9 Operation and maintenance of impressed current and sacrificial cathodic protection systems

9.9.1
There is a commentary available for this Clause.

At regular intervals, operating companies shall verify the satisfactory operation of their cathodic protection systems. CGA OCC-1, Section 4, shall be considered for monitoring and frequency guidelines.

9.9.2
Operating companies shall establish, by means of surveys, that their cathodically protected pipeline systems meet the criteria selected for cathodic protection. Such a satisfactory state of cathodic protection shall be verified at regular intervals and the operating company shall take remedial action to correct any deficiencies found in such surveys.

9.9.3
The intended frequency and content of cathodic protection surveys and verifications shall be documented. Such surveys shall include, but not be limited to, verification of

a) proper operation of impressed current systems;
b) proper operation of sacrificial anode systems;
c) operation of devices (e.g., reverse current switches, diodes, and interference bonds), whose failure would be detrimental to structure protection; and
d) the effectiveness of devices (e.g., insulating fittings, continuity bonds, and casing insulators), whose failure would be detrimental to structure protection.

9.9.4
Survey data shall be documented.

Note: *Section 6 of CGA OCC-1 provides guidance.*

9.9.5
There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where a portion of a buried or submerged pipeline system becomes exposed, it shall be visually inspected for corrosion and condition of coating. Where corrosion is found, it shall be assessed and treated as specified in Clause 10.10.2. The description of the coating condition, the corrosion, its assessment, and its disposition shall be recorded.

9.9.6
There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Techniques (e.g., the use of internal and external inspection equipment) to monitor the effectiveness of the corrosion control program shall be considered.

Notes:

1) *Guidelines for in-line inspection of piping for corrosion imperfections are contained in Annex D.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

2) *The factors to be reviewed when considering such inspection techniques should include, but not be limited to, the following:*
- a) *the availability and capability of the equipment;*
- b) *the age, condition, and configuration of the piping;*
- c) *the service, leak, and corrosion mitigation history of the piping; and*
- d) *population density and environmental concerns.*

9.10 Internal corrosion control

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *CAPP 2009-0014, CAPP 2009-0012, and CAPP 2009-0010 provide information on mitigation of internal corrosion in pipelines.*

Δ 9.10.1 Susceptibility to internal corrosion

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Unless the operating company can demonstrate otherwise, a pipeline system shall be considered susceptible to internal corrosion if it contains
- a) a gas phase with a water dew point that could exceed the minimum pipeline system operating temperature; or
- b) a liquid phase with any free water, singly or in combination with other corrosive agents, such as bacteria, oxygen, hydrogen sulphide, carbon dioxide, suspended or dissolved solids.

Δ 9.10.2 Mitigation

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

If a pipeline is considered to be susceptible to internal corrosion, in accordance with Clause 9.10.1, operating companies shall implement and maintain programs to mitigate internal corrosion.

Note: *Consideration of methods to control internal corrosion should include*
- a) *removal of water and foreign material by scraping or pigging;*
- b) *treatment of residual water or dehydration;*
- c) *injection of environmentally acceptable inhibitors, biocides, or other chemical agents;*
- d) *removal of dissolved gases by chemical or mechanical means;*
- e) *gas blanketing;*
- f) *continuous internal coating or lining; and*
- g) *design.*

9.10.3 Monitoring

9.10.3.1

Operating companies shall monitor the effectiveness of their internal corrosion control programs.

Note: *Consideration of techniques to monitor the effectiveness of an internal corrosion control program should include*
- a) *monitoring the ongoing physical and chemical operating conditions;*
- b) *deployment of corrosion-monitoring devices (e.g., weight-loss coupons, corrosion probes, hydrogen probes, and removable spool pieces);*
- c) *nondestructive inspection (e.g., ultrasonic or eddy current wall thickness measurement);*
- d) *visual inspection of the internal surface of cut-outs; and*
- e) *use of internal electronic inspection equipment (see Clause 9.9.6).*

 © 2015 CSA Group

9.10.3.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where pins are attached to the pipe by stud welding for the purposes of corrosion monitoring, a welding procedure shall be qualified in accordance with ISO 14555. Where the pipe is intended for sour service, the requirements of Clause 16.6.4 shall be satisfied.

9.11 Corrosion control records

Records of the internal and external corrosion control programs of active and deactivated piping shall be maintained.

Note: *Section 6 of CGA OCC-1 provides guidance related to record-keeping.*

10 Operating, maintenance, and upgrading

10.1 Engineering assessments of existing pipelines

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Δ 10.1.1

Engineering assessments of existing pipeline systems shall be conducted and documented in accordance with the requirements of Clause 3.3 and the analysis shall include consideration of the following, as applicable:

a) design basis of the pipeline system, including service fluid, operating pressure and temperature range, and the general and site-specific loading and operating conditions that are anticipated throughout its design life;
b) material specifications and properties;
c) manufacturing process and installation method;
d) construction and testing specifications;
e) the physical configuration and constraints of the part of the pipeline system that are the subject of the engineering assessment;
f) condition of the piping, including types of imperfections, dimensions, and dimensional uncertainty;
g) mechanism or mode of imperfection formation, growth, and failure;
h) service, operating and maintenance history;
i) appropriateness of repair methods;
j) interaction of identified hazards; and
k) risk assessment.

Notes:

1) *Reference should be made to the records required in Clauses 5.7, 6.1.5, 7.6.3, 7.14.9, 7.15.11, 8.8.7, 9.9.4, 9.9.5, 10.4, and 16.5.2.*

2) *Risk assessment (see Annex B), pipeline system integrity management programs (see Annex N), and reliability-based design and assessment (RBDA) (see Annex O) can provide valuable information and guidance for the engineering assessment.*

10.1.2

Where the information required in Clause 10.1.1 is not available, the operating company shall conduct

 © 2015 CSA Group

inspections or testing, or make conservative assumptions that can be supported by rational analysis and valid system experience, to enable the engineering assessment to be carried out.

Notes:

1) *Examples of inspection and testing include in-line inspection (see Annex D), pressure testing (see Clause 10.3.9.), test excavations to verify coating type and condition and effectiveness of cathodic protection, and testing pipe samples for mechanical properties.*

2) *NACE SP0502 for external corrosion, NACE SP0204 for stress corrosion cracking, NACE SP0206 for internal corrosion of normally dry gas pipelines, NACE SP0110 for internal corrosion of wet gas pipelines, and NACE SP0208 for internal corrosion of liquid petroleum pipelines provide guidance for determining piping condition using a methodology such as direct assessment.*

10.2 Safety

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.2.1 Training programs

Operating companies shall have safety training programs for employees. Such programs shall be directed towards the operation and maintenance of pipeline systems in a safe and effective manner and shall include provision for the safety of the public.

10.2.2 Employee information

Operating company employees shall be informed of the safety practices applicable to their work.

10.2.3 Supervisor responsibility

Supervisors shall instruct workers under their control to work safely.

10.2.4 Hazards

Where conditions arise that present hazards, immediate steps shall be taken to manage the hazards.

10.2.5 Security

Conditions that can adversely affect the security of the pipeline system shall be corrected.

Note: *See CSA Z246.1 for guidance.*

10.2.6 Work sites

10.2.6.1

Personnel on work sites shall be informed of the hazards involved, the requirements for the safe conduct of their work, and their responsibilities in the event of an emergency.

10.2.6.2

Clear, unobstructed paths shall be provided as escape routes for all personnel performing work in trenches and the areas adjacent to work sites shall be kept clear of unnecessary equipment.

10.2.7 Firefighting and special equipment

10.2.7.1

The need for firefighting and other special equipment shall be assessed and where considered necessary by the operating company, such equipment shall be made available.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.2.7.2

Operating companies shall maintain appropriate firefighting equipment. Such equipment shall be
a) plainly identified;
b) maintained in proper operating condition;
c) regularly checked and certified;
d) readily accessible; and
e) positioned as specified in NFPA standards.

10.2.8 In-service pipelines

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipeline pressures shall be at safe levels when work is being performed on in-service piping. Variables to be considered in the establishment of safe working pressures shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
a) type of work;
b) condition of the piping;
c) stress level;
d) pipe wall thickness and grade;
e) ground conditions;
f) flow conditions of the service fluid; and
g) temperature of the service fluid.

10.2.9 Additional precautions for pipeline systems transporting high-vapour-pressure hydrocarbons

Notes:
1) *Methods and procedures for the repair and operation of crude oil and product pipeline systems are generally applicable to the repair and operation of HVP pipeline systems.*
2) *HVP vapours can be heavier than air and can remain close to the ground and accumulate in low places.*

10.2.9.1

Personnel working with HVP hydrocarbons shall be well informed of the physical characteristics and behaviour of such fluids under all conditions likely to be encountered.

10.2.9.2

Protective clothing and equipment shall be worn by personnel making repairs or inspecting for leaks. Such equipment shall be chosen, taking into account the refrigeration effect of HVP hydrocarbons.

10.2.9.3

Leaks shall be located and hazardous conditions eliminated as soon as possible.

Note: *HVP hydrocarbons should be moved past leak areas to enable repairs to be made when less volatile liquids are present.*

10.2.9.4

When approaching the area of a suspected leak in an HVP pipeline or other pipeline facilities, particular attention shall be given to surface terrain, wind direction and velocity, and the effects of vegetation and buildings. Possible sources of inadvertent ignition shall be eliminated or immediately isolated. Combustible vapour detectors shall be used when investigating and clearing vapours from hazardous areas.

© 2015 CSA Group

10.2.9.5

Special precautions shall be taken in areas of high population density and where there is increased risk of damage by outside forces.

Note: *Such special precautions can include the following:*

a) *frequent warning signs;*
b) *protective coverings, (e.g., planks or concrete over the pipeline);*
c) *greater depth of burial; and*
d) *advising organizations such as police and fire departments of the hazards related to leaking HVP pipelines.*

10.2.10 Fluids containing H_2S

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Due to the toxic nature of fluids containing H_2S, special training shall be provided to operating personnel to ensure the selection of appropriate equipment (e.g., suitable breathing apparatus and means of leak detection). Provisions shall be included for safely disposing of blowdown gas and for notifying the public of potential hazards, including the posting of suitable notices.

Notes:

1) *Particular attention should be given to surface terrain and the wind direction and velocity when approaching facilities with fluids containing H_2S.*

2) *Fluids are deemed to contain H_2S if, upon release to the atmosphere, they are reasonably expected to result in hydrogen sulphide levels of 10 µmol/mol (10 ppm) or greater.*

10.2.11 Carbon dioxide pipelines and gas pipelines containing predominantly CO_2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Personnel working on in-service carbon dioxide pipelines shall be trained in safe working procedures for oxygen-deficient atmospheres.

Note: *Carbon dioxide and fluids containing predominantly carbon dioxide are asphyxiants, have a specific gravity greater than that of air and can accumulate in low-lying areas.*

10.2.12 Steam distribution pipelines

For additional safety practices related to the operation of steam distribution pipelines, see Clause 14.7.

10.3 Integrity of pipeline systems

Δ

10.3.1 Pipeline system integrity management program

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The pipeline system integrity management program required by Clause 3.2 shall include procedures to monitor for conditions that can lead to failures, to eliminate or mitigate such conditions, and to manage integrity data. Such integrity management programs shall include a description of operating company commitment and responsibilities, quantifiable objectives, and methods for

a) assessing risks;
b) identifying risk reduction approaches and corrective actions;
c) implementing the integrity management program; and
d) monitoring results.

Note: *Guidelines for pipeline system integrity management programs are contained in Annex N.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.3.2 Integrity of existing pipeline systems

10.3.2.1

Where the operating company becomes aware of conditions that can lead to failures in its pipeline systems, it shall conduct an engineering assessment to determine which portions can be susceptible to failures and whether such portions are suitable for continued service.

Notes:

1) *Examples of conditions that can lead to failures include*

a) *mechanical damage that can develop into failures under sustained operation;*
b) *mill defects not detected during the manufacturing process;*
c) *corrosion;*
d) *stress corrosion cracking;*
e) *coating damage;*
f) *coating deterioration;*
g) *unstable slopes;*
h) *the presence of low-frequency (less than 1 kHz) electric resistance welded pipe in areas with significant cyclic loading; and*
i) *loss or reduction of cover.*

2) *Guidelines for pipeline system integrity management programs are contained in Annex N.*

3) *Guidelines for facility integrity management programs can be found in CEPA* Facilities Integrity Management Program Recommended Practice.

10.3.2.2

Where the operating company intends to operate the pipeline system at a pressure that is significantly higher than the established operating pressure, and which can therefore lead to failures in the pipeline system, it shall conduct an engineering assessment to determine which portions can be susceptible to failures and whether such portions are suitable for the intended operating pressure.

Note: *For example, when the operating company intends to increase the operating pressure of a pipeline system that has historically operated well below its maximum operating pressure, such an engineering assessment is required.*

10.3.2.3

Where the engineering assessment indicates that portions of the pipeline system are susceptible to failures, the operating company shall either implement measures preventing such failures or operate the system under conditions that are determined by an engineering assessment to be acceptable.

Note: *Clause N.10 provides options that may be used to reduce the frequency of failure and damage incidents.*

10.3.2.4

Coatings to be used for repair, rehabilitation, or other maintenance projects shall have been previously assessed as specified in Clause 9.

10.3.2.5

Where the operating company intends to operate the pipeline system at a temperature that is higher than the maximum design operating temperature, the existing coatings shall be evaluated to ensure conformance with the requirements of Clause 9.

10.3.2.6

Operating companies shall operate and maintain their pipeline systems in accordance with documented procedures that meet the requirements of Clause 10.5.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.3.3 Leak detection for liquid hydrocarbon pipeline systems

10.3.3.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Operating companies shall make periodic line balance measurements for system integrity.

Note: *The technology for measuring and balancing pipelines containing more than one phase can be limited; for such systems, other techniques should be used to confirm system integrity.*

10.3.3.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Operating companies shall periodically review their leak detection programs to confirm their adequacy and effectiveness.

Note: *A recommended practice for liquid hydrocarbon pipeline system leak detection is contained in Annex E.*

10.3.3.3

Installed devices or operating practices, or both, shall be capable of early detection of leaks.

10.3.3.4

Measuring equipment shall be calibrated regularly to facilitate proper measurement.

10.3.3.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Evidence of leaks shall be investigated promptly.

10.3.4 Leak detection for gas pipeline systems and carbon dioxide pipeline systems

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.3.4.1

Operating companies shall perform regular surveys or analyses for evidence of leaks. Such leak-detection surveys or analyses may consist of gas-detector surveys, aerial surveys, vegetation surveys, gas-volume monitoring analyses, bar-hole surveys, surface detection surveys, mathematical modelling analyses, or any other method that the operating company has determined to be effective.

10.3.4.2

Evidence of leaks shall be investigated promptly.

10.3.4.3

Operating companies shall periodically review their leak detection programs to confirm their adequacy and effectiveness.

© 2015 CSA Group

10.3.5 Leak detection for oilfield water and multiphase pipeline systems

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.3.5.1

Where a leak from an oilfield water or multiphase pipeline system can be harmful to the environment, operating companies shall perform regular surveys or analyses for evidence of leaks. Such leak-detection surveys, right of way inspections, or analyses may consist of right-of-way surveys, right-of-way inspections, aerial surveys, vegetation surveys, volume monitoring analyses, bar-hole surveys, surface detection surveys, service tests, hydrostatic pressure tests, mathematical modelling analyses, or any other method that the operating company has determined to be effective.

Note: *Regardless of the method of leak detection used, operating companies should follow Annex E regarding the record retention, maintenance, auditing, testing, and training.*

10.3.5.2

Evidence of leaks shall be investigated promptly.

10.3.5.3

Operating companies shall periodically review their leak detection programs to confirm their adequacy and effectiveness.

Δ

10.3.6 Pipeline system incident investigations

Operating companies shall investigate damage incidents related to external interference and failure incidents to determine their causes. Measures to prevent the occurrence of incidents due to similar causes shall be identified and implemented.

Note: *Clause N.10 provides options that may be used to reduce the frequency of failure and damage incidents.*

10.3.7 Change in service fluid

10.3.7.1

Prior to a change in service fluid, including non-sour service to sour service, the operating company shall conduct an engineering assessment to determine whether the pipeline systems would be suitable for the new service fluid.

Note: *Clauses 15.10 and 16.2 provide definitions of sour service, as applicable.*

10.3.7.2

Where the engineering assessment indicates that the pipeline system would not be suitable for the new service fluid, the operating company shall implement measures making it suitable before the change in service.

Note: *Examples of such measures include pressure testing (see Clause 10.3.9) and repair or replacement of portions of the pipeline system.*

10.3.8 Upgrading to a higher maximum operating pressure

10.3.8.1

Prior to upgrading a pipeline system for a higher maximum operating pressure, the operating company shall conduct an engineering assessment to determine whether it would be suitable for service at the proposed higher pressure. Upgraded maximum operating pressures shall not exceed those permitted for new piping having the same design and material and shall be determined as specified in Clause 8.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.3.8.2

Where the engineering assessment indicates that the pipeline system would not be suitable for service at the proposed higher maximum operating pressure, the operating company shall implement changes to make it suitable and, except where allowed by Clause 10.3.8.4, shall pressure test the piping as specified in Clauses 8 and 10.3.9.

10.3.8.3

Where the engineering assessment indicates that the pipeline system would be suitable for service at the proposed higher maximum operating pressure, the operating company shall, except as allowed by Clause 10.3.8.4, pressure test the piping as specified in Clauses 8 and 10.3.9.

10.3.8.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For gas pipeline systems where pressure testing is not practical, upgrading to a higher maximum operating pressure shall be done as follows:

a) Select a new maximum operating pressure that is confirmed by the engineering assessment as suitable and that does not exceed the lesser of
   i) 80% of the design pressure permitted for new piping having the same design and material; and
   ii) the pressure corresponding to a hoop stress of 50% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.
b) Before increasing the pressure in the system,
   i) conduct a leakage survey and repair any leaks found;
   ii) repair or replace any piping that is found to be inadequate for the upgraded pressure;
   iii) for service lines, install suitable devices to control and limit the gas pressure as specified in Clauses 12.4.9 and 12.4.10; and
   iv) adequately reinforce or anchor any offsets, bends, and dead ends in coupled pipe to prevent movement of the pipe if the offsets, bends, or dead ends become exposed in excavations.

10.3.9 Pressure testing existing piping

10.3.9.1

Prior to pressure testing existing piping, an engineering assessment shall be carried out to

a) determine whether the piping can sustain the proposed test pressure; and
b) establish appropriate pressure-test limits so that the pressure test does not adversely affect the integrity of the piping.

Note: *Pressure tests on existing pipelines are sometimes carried out for the purpose of exposing suspected defects in a pipeline.*

10.3.9.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The engineering assessment shall include, in addition to the appropriate requirements of Clauses 3.3, 10.1.1, and 10.1.2, consideration of the

a) strength test pressure and duration;
b) leak test pressure and duration;
c) type (blunt or sharp) and orientation of defects;
d) critical imperfection size, growth rate, growth process, and failure criterion;

 © 2015 CSA Group

e) frequency of retesting;
f) potential for the growth of subcritical imperfections during pressure testing;
g) potential for failure due to pressure reversals; and
h) notch toughness properties.

Notes:

1) *For pressure testing of existing gas piping, reference can be made to PRCI Report 194.*

2) *Pressure testing is not effective in removing circumferentially oriented defects.*

3) *For older pipeline systems, testing to yield should not be employed unless the assessment of metallurgical properties and service histories has established that such pipeline systems are capable of withstanding such pressures.*

4) *For piping containing low-frequency (less than 1 kHz) electric resistance welded pipe, consideration should be given to using a test pressure that is higher than the applicable minimum strength test pressure given in Table 8.1, in order to provide increased confidence in the serviceability of the piping.*

5) *Since failures can occur during pressurization, the pressure rise should be closely monitored.*

6) *For pressure-test sections containing both heavy-wall and light-wall pipes, imperfections in the heavy-wall pipe can be more susceptible to subcritical crack growth.*

10.3.9.3

Pressure testing of existing piping shall be as specified in Clause 8, except for those requirements that are determined by the engineering assessment to be inappropriate.

10.4 Records

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.4.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Records covering the operation and maintenance of pipeline systems shall be prepared. Such records shall be kept current and readily accessible to operating and maintenance personnel requiring them.

10.4.2 Pipeline systems

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Records that provide the following information, as applicable, shall be maintained for the life of the pipeline system:

a) locations of the pipelines and major facilities (e.g., compressor or pump stations, measuring stations, terminals, tank farms, water crossings, roads, railways, major utility crossings, block valves, and cathodic protection rectifiers);
b) technical data related to the following:
   i) pipes — locations and lengths for each pipe diameter installed, noting wall thicknesses, grades and standards or specifications, field test pressure, and where practical, burial depth;
   ii) stations and other facilities — maximum operating limits and the specifications and nameplate data of major equipment;
   iii) valves — locations of valves designated as emergency valves, with complete information about the dates of inspection and maintenance, and the current intended operating position, whether open or closed;
   iv) components — locations, types, and pressure ratings;
   v) crossings — locations and details of any crossings of water, roads, railways, pipelines, and other major utilities;

 © 2015 CSA Group

vi) appurtenances — locations and details of appurtenances such as corrosion control devices and weighted sections;
vii) special design and construction methods — locations and details of special design and construction methods;
viii) repairs — locations and details of repairs; and
ix) coating system — evaluation, selection, and application records;

c) measurements of unstable areas where differential settlement or heaving is occurring;

Note: *Such records enable trends toward critical stresses to be established, and remedial action to be taken, before combined stresses reach the design limits.*

d) where pipelines have been designed in accordance with the methods for limit states design in Annex C, any measures related to operation and maintenance that are required to meet the safety and serviceability requirements of Clause C.3.2 throughout the operating life of the pipeline; and
e) where pipelines have been designed in accordance with the methods for reliability-based design and assessment specified in Annex O, target reliability levels to be met for each location along the pipeline, any measures related to operation and maintenance required to meet such target reliability levels and details of such measures that have been undertaken.

10.4.3 Pipeline emergency records

10.4.3.1

Records shall be maintained to assist in the development of procedures for use during pipeline emergencies. Such records shall include

a) a list of agencies to be contacted during an emergency;
b) the names and phone numbers of key personnel; and
c) the location and description of major repair equipment.

10.4.3.2

Records of pipeline emergencies shall be maintained to enable each event to be analyzed. Such records shall include

a) the date, location, and description of each event; and
b) the repair procedure, including acceptance tests.

10.4.4 Pipeline system incidents

10.4.4.1

Records shall be prepared documenting damage incidents related to external interference and failure incidents. Records shall document incident response, incident investigations (see Clause 10.3.6) and the repairs and changes made. Such records, together with leakage survey records, line patrol records, and other inspection records, shall be retained by the operating company as long as the affected portions of the pipeline system remain in operation.

Except as allowed by Clause 10.4.4.2, pipeline failure records shall include the information specified in Annex H that is applicable to each failure incident.

10.4.4.2

Where the operating company considers that the severity of the consequences associated with a failure incident are not significant, the failure records may include only the portions of the information specified in Annex H that the operating company considers to be appropriate.

10.4.5 Pressure-test records

The operating company shall retain in its files, until the piping is abandoned, the pressure-test records specified in Clauses 8.7.7 and 8.8.7, whichever is applicable.

10.5 Operating and maintenance procedures

10.5.1 General

10.5.1.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Operating companies shall

a) operate and maintain their pipeline systems in accordance with documented procedures that meet the requirements of Clause 10.5.1.2;
b) prepare and maintain appropriate maps and drawings;
c) keep records necessary to administer such procedures properly;
d) modify such procedures from time to time as experience dictates and as changes in operating conditions require; and
e) conduct their internal and external corrosion control programs as specified in Clause 9.

10.5.1.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Operating and maintenance procedures shall be based on

a) safety considerations;
b) knowledge of the facilities;
c) operating and maintenance experience;
d) sound engineering principles and environmental practices;
e) service fluid;
f) service conditions that could be anticipated to cause unacceptable damage or deterioration (e.g., environmentally assisted cracking, internal and external corrosion, and ground movement);
g) where pipelines have been designed in accordance with the methods for limit states design in Annex C, any measures related to operation and maintenance that are required to meet the safety and serviceability requirements of Clause C.3.2 throughout the operating life of the pipeline;
h) where pipelines have been designed in accordance with the methods for reliability-based design and assessment specified in Annex O, any measures related to operation and maintenance that are required to meet the applicable reliability targets throughout the operating life of the pipeline; and
i) the applicable requirements of this Standard.

10.5.1.3

Communication facilities shall meet the requirements for safe operation and maintenance of pipeline systems.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.5.2 Pipeline emergencies

10.5.2.1

Operating companies shall establish emergency procedures that include

a) procedures for the safe control or shutdown of the pipeline system, or parts thereof, in the event of a pipeline emergency; and
b) safety procedures for personnel at emergency sites.

Note: *Appropriate emergency procedures related to the pipeline, as determined in conjunction with community agencies, should be included.*

10.5.2.2

Operating companies shall regularly consult and inform the public and agencies to be contacted during an emergency (e.g., police and fire departments), as appropriate, about the hazards associated with its pipelines.

Note: *If community emergency response plans exist, appropriate methods to consult and inform the public can be determined in conjunction with the community agencies.*

10.5.2.3

Operating companies shall prepare an emergency response plan and make relevant sections or information therein available to local authorities.

Note: *CAN/CSA-Z731 should be used as a guide for the preparation of emergency response plans.*

10.5.2.4

Operating companies shall have verifiable capability to respond to an emergency in accordance with their emergency procedures and response plans and shall demonstrate and document the effectiveness of such procedures and plans.

Note: *Operating companies should maintain materials, equipment, and spare parts in adequate quantities and at suitable locations for use in emergency repairs.*

10.5.3 Pipeline identification

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.5.3.1

Signs shall be installed to identify the presence of pipelines to reduce the possibilities of damage and interference. Such signs shall be posted along pipeline rights-of-way, as applicable, as follows:

a) at railway and road rights-of-way; and
b) at strategic areas of
   i) utility corridors;
   ii) subdivision development;
   iii) construction activity;
   iv) drainage systems;
   v) irrigation systems; and
   vi) other anticipated third-party activity.

10.5.3.2

Signs shall be located and spaced on the basis of consideration of the service fluid, population density, land use, nature of terrain, fencing, potential for access by the public to the rights-of-way, and the need for public awareness.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.5.3.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Signs shall include the following information, printed on a background of sharply contrasting colour:

a) the word "Warning"*, "Caution"*, or "Danger"* prominently displayed, in 25 mm high, bold lettering;
b) the type of pipeline system, such as "High-Pressure Natural Gas Pipeline"†, prominently displayed in 13 mm high bold lettering; and
c) the name of the operating company and emergency notification information, including an emergency telephone number with area code.

* *The equivalent French wording is "Avertissement", "Attention", or "Danger", respectively.*

† *The equivalent French wording is "Canalisation de gaz naturel à haute pression".*

Note: *It is recommended that*

a) *signs include a statement such as "Call before you dig" (equivalent French wording: "Téléphoner avant de creuser") or "Call for locate" (equivalent French wording: "Téléphoner pour repérer"); and*
b) *consideration be given also to including the required information in a language appropriate to the region in which the sign is located.*

10.5.3.4

Signs shall be installed where pipelines enter and exit road and railway rights-of-way.

Note: *Signs should be visible from the travelled roadway or track.*

10.5.3.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where the placing of signs would not serve their intended purpose, alternative identification methods shall be considered.

10.5.3.6

Consideration shall be given to placing signs at property boundaries to indicate the presence of a pipeline.

10.5.3.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Water crossings shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Pipelines crossing waterways (including open drainage systems) that can be subjected to periodic dredging or other construction activity shall be identified by signs that are as specified in Clause 10.5.3.3.
b) Where pipelines cross navigable waterways that support commercial marine traffic, signs shall indicate the presence of the pipeline crossing and include a "No Anchorage"* and "No Dredging"* warning. The width of the crossing and the limitations of visibility shall be considered in the establishment of the dimensions of such signs.

   * *The equivalent French wording is "Amarrage interdit" or "Dragage interdit", respectively.*

10.5.3.8

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Aerial pipeline crossings, other than those carried on bridges, that can pose a hazard to air or water navigation shall be marked or lighted, or both.

Note: *In Canada, Transport Canada 621.19 provides these specifications.*

10.5.3.9

Signs shall be inspected periodically and maintained to ensure legibility and visibility.

10.5.4 Signs at stations and other facilities

10.5.4.1

Signs shall be posted to identify the operating company and to provide emergency notification information.

10.5.4.2

Signs indicating that smoking is prohibited shall be displayed in hazardous areas.

10.5.4.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Warning signs shall be posted at locations where hazards or toxic substances can be encountered.

10.5.4.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where a danger of improper operation exists because of similarities in piping, piping shall be properly identified by the use of signs, stencil markings, or colour coding.

Note: *Such identification can include service fluid, direction of flow, temperature, or any other properties where misidentification can lead to an operational incident.*

10.5.5 Ground disturbance

10.5.5.1

At construction sites in the vicinity of pipelines, the operating company, upon request or after becoming aware of construction activity near its pipelines, shall provide visual markings of the location of such pipelines.

Note: *The colour yellow should be used for such markings. Regional associations, also known as Common Ground Alliances, provide guidance in damage prevention best practices and information on one-call systems.*

10.5.5.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Operating companies shall communicate with those who propose ground disturbance to determine the

 © 2015 CSA Group

scope of the proposed ground disturbance work and to communicate the company-specific safe work practices.

Note: *Operating companies should communicate to excavators the importance of pre-marking to outline the boundaries of the dig areas or to identify dig routes. Marks should be appropriate for the site taking into consideration environmental conditions. See* Common Ground Alliance Best Practices 10.0.

10.5.6 Odorization

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.5.6.1

Where required by design (see Clause 4.21), fuel gas shall be odorized.

10.5.6.2

Operating companies shall sample and test odorized gases to confirm that the concentrations of the odorant are appropriate.

Δ 10.5.7 Precautions to avoid unintentional ignition of gas-air mixtures or hydrocarbon liquids

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.5.7.1 Mitigation of hazards related to gas-air mixtures and hydrocarbon liquids during construction and maintenance activities

The following mitigation measures shall be considered during construction and maintenance activities to eliminate or reduce the potential presence of gas-air mixtures or hydrocarbon liquids in oil and gas pipeline systems:

a) isolation of compressor and pump station equipment and piping in accordance with Clause 10.9.1.4;
b) pipeline purging;
c) equipment purging; and
d) blanketing with an inert gas or substance.

10.5.7.2 Mitigating possible sources of ignition

Care and precautions shall be taken to eliminate possible sources of ignition from the proximity of construction and maintenance activities on operating oil and gas pipeline systems. Where the source of ignition hazards cannot be eliminated, safe work practices shall be implemented.

Note: *Work methods that eliminate possible sources of ignition include*

a) *mechanical cutters (pipe cutter, shears, saws, etc);*
b) *high pressure water; and*
c) *low heat input or low energy input.*

10.5.8 Environmental effects

Operating companies shall establish effective prevention and control measures to maintain the effect of pipeline system operations upon the environment within acceptable levels. Precautions listed in Clause 6.6 shall be taken to avoid uncontrolled fires.

Note: *Matters that should be considered include the following:*

a) *thermal effects, including those on land and water;*
b) *containment of spills;*
c) *sensitivity of route and terrain traversed;*

 © 2015 CSA Group

d) *availability of trained and responsible personnel;*
e) *control of erosion and restoration of disturbed areas;*
f) *handling and disposal of toxic substances;*
g) *protection of vegetation;*
h) *control of noise;*
i) *protection of fish and wildlife;*
j) *aesthetics;*
k) *adverse effects on public health;*
l) *inconvenience to the public;*
m) *location, availability, and operating readiness of appropriate equipment; and*
n) *re-evaluation of existing measures.*

10.6 Right-of-way inspection and maintenance

10.6.1 Pipeline patrolling

10.6.1.1

Operating companies shall periodically patrol their pipelines in order to observe conditions and activities on and adjacent to their rights-of-way that can affect the safety and operation of the pipelines. Particular attention shall be given to the following:

a) construction activity;
b) dredging operations;
c) erosion;
d) ice effects;
e) scour;
f) seismic activity;
g) soil slides;
h) subsidence;
i) loss of cover;
j) evidence of leaks; and
k) unauthorized activities.

Note: *Where pipeline patrolling reveals conditions that can lead to failure of the pipeline, see Clause 10.3.2*

10.6.1.2

The frequency of pipeline patrolling shall be determined by considering such factors as

a) operating pressure;
b) pipeline size;
c) population density;
d) service fluid;
e) terrain;
f) weather; and
g) agricultural and other land use.

10.6.2 Vegetation control

Where the terms of the easement permit, vegetation on rights-of-way shall be controlled to maintain clear visibility from the air and provide ready access for maintenance crews.

© 2015 CSA Group

10.6.3 Exposed facilities

Valves and other exposed facilities on pipeline rights-of-way shall have access maintained and shall be protected to minimize the possibility of unauthorized operation.

10.6.4 Crossings

10.6.4.1

Special consideration shall be given to the inspection and maintenance of pipeline crossings of

a) major utilities;
b) other pipelines;
c) railways;
d) roads; and
e) water.

10.6.4.2

Underwater crossings shall be inspected periodically for adequacy of cover, accumulation of debris, and other conditions that can affect the safety or integrity of the crossing.

10.6.4.3

Aerial pipeline crossings and their supporting structures shall be inspected periodically and maintained in a safe, usable condition.

10.6.4.4

Where required, temporary crossings for vehicular traffic over pipelines shall be prepared and used to protect the pipeline from damage.

10.7 Change of class location

Δ

10.7.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where class locations change, the pipeline system in such locations shall be subject to the following requirements for the new class location:

a) design factor or location factor, as applicable;
b) valve spacing;
c) depth of cover and clearance;
d) pressure testing; and
e) evaluation and repair of imperfections as specified in Clause 10.10 and Clause 10.11.

Δ

10.7.2

Conformance or non-conformance to the requirements of the new class location shall be documented, as applicable.

Δ

10.7.3

Where the affected portion of the pipeline does not conform to the requirements of the new class location, as described in Clause 10.7.1, either the non-conformance(s) shall be corrected in accordance with the requirements of Clause 4 or an engineering assessment (see Clause 10.1) shall be carried out

 © 2015 CSA Group

to determine the suitability for continued service at the new class location designation in consideration of the

a) design, construction, and testing procedures followed in the original construction, compared with the applicable requirements of this Standard;
b) condition of the pipeline system as determined by field inspections, examinations of operating and maintenance records, or other appropriate means; and
c) type, proximity, and extent of the development that has increased the class location, giving consideration to concentrations of people, such as those associated with schools, hospitals, small subdivisions, and recreation areas built near existing pipelines.

Note: *Annex O provides guidance on reliability-based design and assessment that can be a useful approach for an engineering assessment.*

Δ **10.7.4**

Where the engineering assessment (see Clause 10.7.3) indicates that the section of the pipeline system is satisfactory for the changed class location, no change to the pipeline system shall be required.

Δ **10.7.5**

Where the engineering assessment (see Clause 10.7.3) indicates that the portion of the pipeline system is not satisfactory for the changed class location, corrective actions shall be taken so that the affected portion of the pipeline system is suitable for continued service at the new class location designation.

10.7.6

Pipeline systems that can be subject to changes in class location, unless previously designed, tested, operated, and maintained for a Class 4 location, shall be inspected annually by the operating company to determine whether any change in class location has occurred. Records of such inspections and of any corrective action taken shall be retained.

Note: *CSA PLUS 663 provides guidance related to land use planning near to or surrounding existing pipeline.*

10.8 Crossings of existing pipelines

10.8.1

Where existing pipelines are to be crossed by roads or railways, the pipelines at such locations shall be either upgraded to meet the applicable design requirements or subjected to

a) an engineering assessment in accordance with the applicable requirements specified for class location changes in Clause 10.7.1; and
b) a detailed engineering analysis of all loads expected to be imposed on the pipeline during construction and operation of the crossing and the resulting combined stresses in the pipeline.

10.8.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where the engineering assessment [see Clause 10.8.1 a)] reveals that the pipeline is in satisfactory condition, any crossing design (such as casing, change in pipe specification, suitable depth of cover, or load-distributing structure) may be used that results in combined pipe stresses in accordance with the requirements of Clause 4.6, as determined from the detailed engineering analysis [see Clause 10.8.1 b)].

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.8.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where existing pipelines are to be crossed at locations other than those identified in Clause 10.8.1, the pipeline may be crossed provided that all of the following requirements are met:

a) The crossing of the pipeline is infrequent (see Clause 4.2.4).
b) The piping is not subjected to secondary stresses (see Clause 4.2.4).
c) An engineering assessment has determined that the pipeline can sustain the anticipated surface load.

Note: *CEPA Final Report No. 05-44R1 can be used for guidance in conducting the engineering assessment to determine acceptable surface load.*

10.9 Operation and maintenance of facilities and equipment

10.9.1 Compressor and pump stations

10.9.1.1 Compressor and pump units

Gas compressor and pump units shall be started, operated, and shut down in accordance with procedures established by the operating company.

10.9.1.2 Shutdown devices and systems

Shutdown devices and systems shall be inspected and tested periodically to determine that they function properly.

10.9.1.3 Corrosion

For stations where corrosive or potentially corrosive conditions exist, procedures shall be established for periodic inspections at sufficiently frequent intervals to enable corrosion to be discovered before serious impairment of the strength of the piping or equipment has occurred. Where needed, repairs or replacements shall be made promptly.

10.9.1.4 Isolation of equipment and piping for maintenance

Equipment and piping shall be isolated for maintenance and, where necessary, purged prior to being returned to service, in accordance with procedures established by the operating company.

10.9.1.5 Storage of fuels and lubricants

Fuels and lubricants for operation of equipment in quantities greater than those required for everyday use, and other than those normally used in compressor and pump buildings, shall be stored in a separate structure built of noncombustible material located a suitable distance from the compressor or pump building. Aboveground storage tanks for such fuels and lubricants shall be protected as specified in the applicable code.

Note: *In Canada, the* National Fire Code of Canada *provides specifications for aboveground storage tanks for such levels and lubricants.*

10.9.2 Aboveground tanks and pressure vessels

Note: *API 2610 provides guidance related to the design, construction, operation, inspection, and maintenance of petroleum terminal and tank facilities.*

© 2015 CSA Group

10.9.2.1

Except as allowed by Clauses 10.9.2.2 and 10.9.2.4, the inspection, repair, alteration, and reconstruction of aboveground atmospheric steel tanks shall be as specified in API 653.

10.9.2.2

For aboveground tanks, welded shell patch plates shall conform to the requirements of API 653, except that

a) shell patch plate repairs may be used for shell course thicknesses (original construction) exceeding 12.7 mm; and
b) subject to the limitations of Clause 10.9.2.3, repair plates positioned on the shell interior may be located within 150 mm of the shell-to-bottom weld.

10.9.2.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For aboveground tanks, welded patch plates shall not be overlapped on the shell with welded patch plates on the floor. If floor repairs are required adjacent to welded patch plates on the shell or if shell repairs are required adjacent to welded patch plates on the floor, then either the floor plate or the shell plate shall be replaced as specified in API 653.

10.9.2.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For aboveground tanks that have undergone a major shell or shell-to-bottom repair as defined by API 653 and that do not meet the material toughness requirements set out in that standard's hydrostatic test exemption criteria, a hydrostatic test shall not be required, provided that an engineering assessment has been conducted confirming that the repair region is not susceptible to an in-service brittle fracture failure. The assessment shall include

a) consideration of the actual shell material properties, the extent and nature of the repair and the level of weld-induced stresses, the accuracy of the nondestructive examination techniques employed, and the tank's maintenance history; and
b) an analytical evaluation, based upon fracture mechanics principles, of the effect that any imperfections revealed by nondestructive inspection can have on the structural integrity of the tank.

10.9.2.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Secondary containment for aboveground tanks shall be inspected periodically and maintained as necessary to be in accordance with the design requirements.

10.9.2.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Any emission control systems for aboveground tanks shall be inspected periodically and maintained as necessary to be in accordance with design requirements.

Note: *Emission control systems designed to CCME PN 1180 should be inspected in accordance with the recommended practices of that guideline.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.9.2.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Operating companies shall periodically monitor any leak detection systems for aboveground tanks and review the adequacy of such systems.

10.9.2.8

Pressure vessels shall be inspected as specified in API RP 510 to determine that they are being maintained in proper operating condition. Repair and alteration, where appropriate, shall be as specified in CSA B51.

Note: *API RP 572 provides guidance for the inspection of pressure vessels.*

10.9.2.9

The entry and cleaning of aboveground storage tanks and pressure vessels shall be as specified in API STD 2015.

10.9.2.10

Aboveground storage tanks or pressure vessels taken out of service shall be emptied of liquids, rendered vapour-free, and safeguarded against trespassing.

10.9.3 Underground storage

10.9.3.1

Underground tanks shall be inspected periodically and maintained as necessary. The inspection program shall include the periodic monitoring of any leak detection systems.

10.9.3.2

Operating companies having underground pipe for the storage of oil shall establish procedures for the routine inspection, testing, and maintenance of such facilities in order to provide for

a) detection of external or internal corrosion before the strength or integrity has been impaired;
b) inspection and testing at least once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 18 months between such inspections and tests, of any pressure-control and pressure-limiting devices, to determine that they are in a safe operating condition and have adequate capacity; and
c) retention of records that detail the inspection and testing performed, the conditions found, and any corrective action taken.

10.9.4 Pipe-type and bottle-type gas holders and pipe-type storage vessels

Operating companies having pipe-type or bottle-type gas holders or pipe-type storage vessels shall establish procedures for the routine inspection, testing, and maintenance of such facilities in order to provide for

a) detection of external corrosion before the strength has been impaired;
b) periodic sampling and testing of the gas in storage to determine the dew point of the contained vapours that can cause internal corrosion or interfere with the safe operation of the holders;
c) inspection and testing at least once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 18 months between such inspections and tests, of pressure-control and pressure-limiting devices, to determine that they are in a safe operating condition and have adequate capacity; and
d) retention of records that detail the inspection and testing performed, the conditions found, and any corrective action taken.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.9.5 Pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving systems

10.9.5.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where the operating company intends to operate a pipeline system at pressures less than the maximum operating pressure, the operating company shall decide the appropriate reduced operating pressures and shall adjust any pressure-control, pressure-relieving, or pressure-limiting systems (or devices) accordingly.

10.9.5.2

Pressure-control and pressure-limiting systems (or devices) as required by Clause 4.18 for overpressure protection of piping shall be

a) inspected at least once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 18 months between such inspections, to determine that they are properly installed and protected from dirt and other conditions that can prevent their proper operation;
b) assessed at least once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 18 months between such assessments, to determine that they are adequate from the standpoint of capacity and reliability for the service in which they are employed; and
c) tested at least once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 18 months between such tests, to determine that they are in good operating condition and set to function at the correct pressure.

Note: *It is not necessary for the systems or devices to be removed for inspection, assessment, or testing, provided that such inspections, assessments, or tests can be safely and properly performed in place.*

10.9.5.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pressure-relieving systems (or devices), except for rupture disks, shall be

a) inspected, assessed, and tested as specified in Clause 10.9.5.2 for pressure-control and pressure-limiting systems; or
b) inspected, assessed, and tested, at intervals appropriate to their application and operation, as determined by the operating company, as specified in API RP 576 and in accordance with supporting evidentiary data and documentation.

Note: *It is not necessary for the systems or devices to be removed for inspection, assessment, or testing, provided that such inspections, assessments, and tests can be safely and properly performed in place.*

10.9.5.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Rupture disks shall be inspected, assessed, and if necessary, replaced as specified in API RP 576.

10.9.5.5

Pressure-limiting and pressure-relieving systems (or devices) shall be set at or below the correct pressure, with the accuracy of the devices and test instruments taken into account.

10.9.5.6

Records of such tests and inspections, and the records of any corrective action taken, shall be retained by the operating company.

© 2015 CSA Group

10.9.6 Valves

10.9.6.1

The open and closed positions of major valves shall be visually identifiable.

Note: *To determine whether or not a valve should be considered a major valve, consideration should be given to the importance of the valve for operation of the pipeline system, the location of the valve, and the consequences of an undesirable valve positioning.*

10.9.6.2

Pipeline valves that can be necessary during an emergency shall be inspected and partially operated at least once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 18 months between such inspections and operations.

10.9.7 Vaults

Regularly scheduled inspections shall be made of vaults housing pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving devices to confirm that they are in good physical condition and adequately vented. Such inspections shall include the testing of the atmosphere in such locations for combustible and toxic gases and vapours. Any leaks found shall be repaired. The ventilating equipment shall also be inspected to confirm that it is functioning properly. Ventilating ducts that are obstructed shall be cleared. Vault and enclosure covers shall be carefully examined for potential safety hazards.

10.9.8 Quick opening closures

The operating company shall have a documented operating procedure for depressurizing a component fitted with a quick-opening closure (e.g., a pig or scraper sending or receiving device) to ensure its safe operation. The operating procedure shall take into consideration situations where the safety equipment required by Clause 4.3.13 becomes ineffective due to equipment failure or adverse operating conditions.

10.10 Evaluation of imperfections

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.10.1 General

10.10.1.1

Where imperfections are found in steel piping, evaluations shall be made to determine the suitability of such piping for continued service. Where considered appropriate, evaluations of imperfections shall include inspection methods capable of detecting cracks.

10.10.1.2

Where it is determined that the piping is subjected to significant secondary stresses, such stresses shall be considered when the suitability of damaged piping for continued service is being assessed.

10.10.1.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Excavation of piping suspected of containing defects and if required, the subsequent permanent or temporary repair of such piping shall be performed after the piping is depressurized as necessary to an operating pressure that is considered to be safe for the proposed work. Caution shall be exercised,

 © 2015 CSA Group

when excavating, to avoid contacting other buried structures or facilities. Extra precautions shall be taken if the excavation is near equipment, tanks, or other structures. (See also Clause 10.2.)

10.10.1.4

Where piping is not suitable for continued service at the established operating pressure due to the presence of defects, either the piping shall be operated at pressures that are determined by an engineering assessment to be acceptable or the affected piping shall be repaired as specified in Clauses 10.10.2 to 10.12. The engineering assessment shall include consideration of service history and loading, anticipated service conditions (including the effects of corrosive and chemical attack), the mechanism of imperfection formation, imperfection dimensions, imperfection growth mechanisms, failure modes, and material properties (including fracture toughness properties).

10.10.1.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For pipeline systems that are likely to contain internal corrosion imperfections or cracks, the assessment of external imperfections in pipe shall include an assessment for any coincident internal corrosion imperfections.

10.10.2 Corrosion imperfections in pipe

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *Annex D provides guidelines for the evaluation of in-line inspection indications of corrosion imperfections in piping.*

10.10.2.1

Corroded areas on the external surface of the pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned to remove corrosion products so that their dimensions can be measured accurately. The longitudinal length and the maximum depth of a corroded area shall be determined

a) as shown in Figure 10.1; or
b) using other interaction criteria that have been shown by an engineering assessment to be appropriate.

10.10.2.2

Exclusively internal and exclusively external corrosion imperfections shall be acceptable regardless of the length of the corroded area, provided that the maximum depth of such imperfections is 10% or less of the nominal wall thickness of the pipe. Areas that have coincident internal and external corrosion imperfections shall be acceptable regardless of the length of the corroded area, provided that the sum of the maximum internal depth and the maximum external depth is 10% or less of the nominal wall thickness of the pipe.

10.10.2.3

Exclusively internal or exclusively external corrosion imperfections and coincident internal and external corrosion imperfections shall be acceptable if the sum of the maximum internal depth and the maximum external depth does not exceed the thickness of material present as a corrosion allowance (see Clause 4.3.10.1).

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.10.2.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Corroded areas that contain cracks, or that are concentrated in the seams of electric resistance welded or flash welded pipe, or that are located in material likely to exhibit brittle fracture initiation, shall be considered to be defects.

Δ 10.10.2.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Corroded areas that are not located in dents and that have a depth greater than 10%, up to and including 80%, of the nominal wall thickness of the pipe shall be acceptable, provided that

a) the longitudinal length of the corroded area does not exceed the maximum allowable longitudinal extent determined as specified in ASME B31G; or

b) the MOP is equal to or less than the failure pressure of the pipe containing the corroded area multiplied by the terms in the following expression:

$MOP \leq P_{fail} \times (F \times L \times J \times T)$

where

P_{fail} = failure pressure for the pipe containing the corroded area determined in accordance with Clause 10.10.2.6

F = design factor (see Clause 4.3.6)

L = location factor (see Clause 4.3.7)

J = joint factor (see Clause 4.3.8)

T = temperature factor (see Clause 4.3.9)

Note: *For corrosion in dents, see Clause 10.10.4.*

For pipe in LVP pipeline systems located in class location assessment areas designated as 2, 3, or 4 shall use a location factor, L, in the equation provided in Item b) that does not exceed

i) for pipeline systems designed in accordance with this Standard, the location factor used in the original construction; or

ii) for pipeline systems designed in accordance with earlier standards that did not use location factors, the design factor used in the original construction divided by the design factor specified in Clause 4.3.6.

10.10.2.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where required by Clause 10.10.2.5, the failure pressure for pipe containing a corroded area shall be determined by one of the following methods:

a) the 0.85 dL method; or

b) the effective area method.

Note: *Such methods are described in PRCI PR-3-805.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.10.2.7

Corroded areas that are not allowed by Clause 10.10.2.2, 10.10.2.3, 10.10.2.4, or 10.10.2.5 shall be considered to be defects, unless determined by an engineering assessment to be acceptable. The engineering assessment shall include consideration of the original design, service history and loading, anticipated service conditions (including the effects of chemical and corrosive attack), the mechanism of imperfection formation and growth, imperfection shape and dimensions, failure modes, and material properties (including fracture toughness properties). Pipe containing such defects shall be repaired using one or more of the acceptable repair methods given in Table 10.1. Where internal corrosion growth has not been arrested, the determination of the repair method shall include an engineering assessment that considers corrosion abatement effectiveness, the inspection interval, and where a repair sleeve is considered, the need for a steel pressure-containment repair sleeve that is as specified in Clause 10.11.4.2.

Note: *Analysis methods applicable to pipe with corroded areas that can be used as part of an engineering assessment are described in BSI BS 7910, DNV-RP-F101, and PRCI PR-3-805.*

10.10.3 Gouges, grooves, and arc burns in pipe

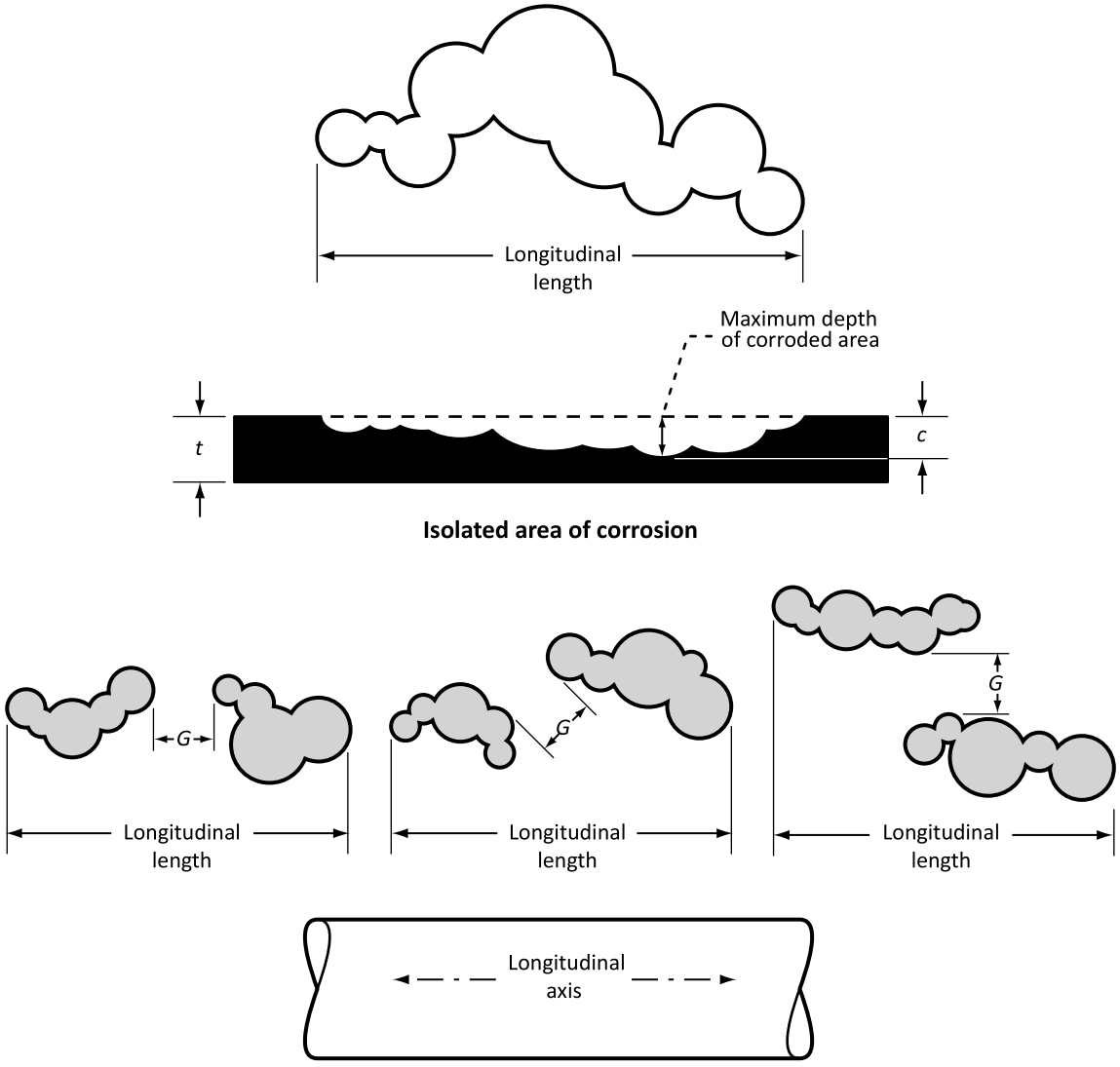
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Gouges, grooves, and arc burns shall be considered to be defects. Pipe containing such defects shall be repaired using one or more of the acceptable repair methods given in Table 10.1.

Note: *For gouges, grooves, or arc burns in dents, see Clause 10.10.4.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 10.1
Method of deriving the longitudinal length of corrosion
(See Clause 10.10.2.1.)



Notes:

1) *Corroded areas in close proximity shall be considered to interact if the distance between them, G, is less than the longitudinal length of the smallest area.*

2) *The longitudinal length in all cases shall be measured along the longitudinal axis of the pipe.*

3) *For areas of internal corrosion, c should be increased and G decreased to compensate for any uncertainty in measurement.*

10.10.4 Dents in pipe

10.10.4.1

Dents shall be inspected using visual and mechanical measurement methods capable of determining the location of the dent with respect to mill and seam welds, the depth and shape of the dent, and the

 © 2015 CSA Group

presence of gouges and grooves. The depth of a dent shall be measured as the gap between the lowest point of the dent and the prolongation of the original contour of the pipe. The length of a dent shall be measured at the greatest distance across the dent, starting and ending where the pipe body deviates from the prolongation of the original contour of the pipe. The strain in a dent shall be calculated in accordance with ASME B31.8, Appendix R, or other engineering methodology. Where considered appropriate, nondestructive methods capable of detecting internal cracks and internal corrosion imperfections shall also be used.

Δ C

10.10.4.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following dents shall be considered to be defects unless determined by an engineering assessment to be acceptable:

a) dents that interact with a mill or field weld and exceed(s)
   i) a depth of 6 mm in pipe 323.9 mm OD or smaller; or
   ii) 2% of the outside diameter in pipe larger than 323.9 mm OD, unless their measured curvature strain is less than 4% and the interacting portion of the weld passes non-destructive inspection with no imperfections;
b) dents that are located on the pipe body and exceed a depth of 6 mm in pipe 101.6 mm OD or smaller or 6% of the outside diameter in pipe larger than 101.6 mm OD, unless their measured curvature strain is less than 6%;
c) dents that are sharp with a length to depth ratio (L/d) less than 20, unless their measured curvature strain is less than 6%;
d) dents that contain corroded areas with a depth greater than 40% of the nominal wall thickness of the pipe;
e) dents that contain corroded areas having a depth greater than 10%, up to and including 40%, of the nominal wall thickness of the pipe and a depth and length that exceed the maximum allowable longitudinal extent determined as specified in ASME B31G; and
f) dents that contain stress concentrators (gouges, grooves, arc burns, or cracks).

Note: *Figure 10.2 shows the process for determining whether a dent should be considered a defect.*

Pipe containing such defects shall be repaired using one or more of the acceptable repair methods given in Table 10.1.

Notes:

1) *Failure can occur in dents with acceptable depths if they are caused by very sharp rocks, are subjected to large pressure fluctuations over a very long period of time, or are located on a seam weld in low frequency (less than 1 kHz) electric resistance welded pipe. For such situations, an engineering assessment should be performed to determine if a repair is necessary.*

2) *Dents in the top half of buried piping can contain gouges caused by excavating equipment. Consideration should be given to excavating dent features located in the top half of the pipe that are reported by in-line inspection and performing visual and nondestructive inspection of such dents.*

3) *When piping containing a dent is excavated, the change in external loading can reduce the depth of the dent.*

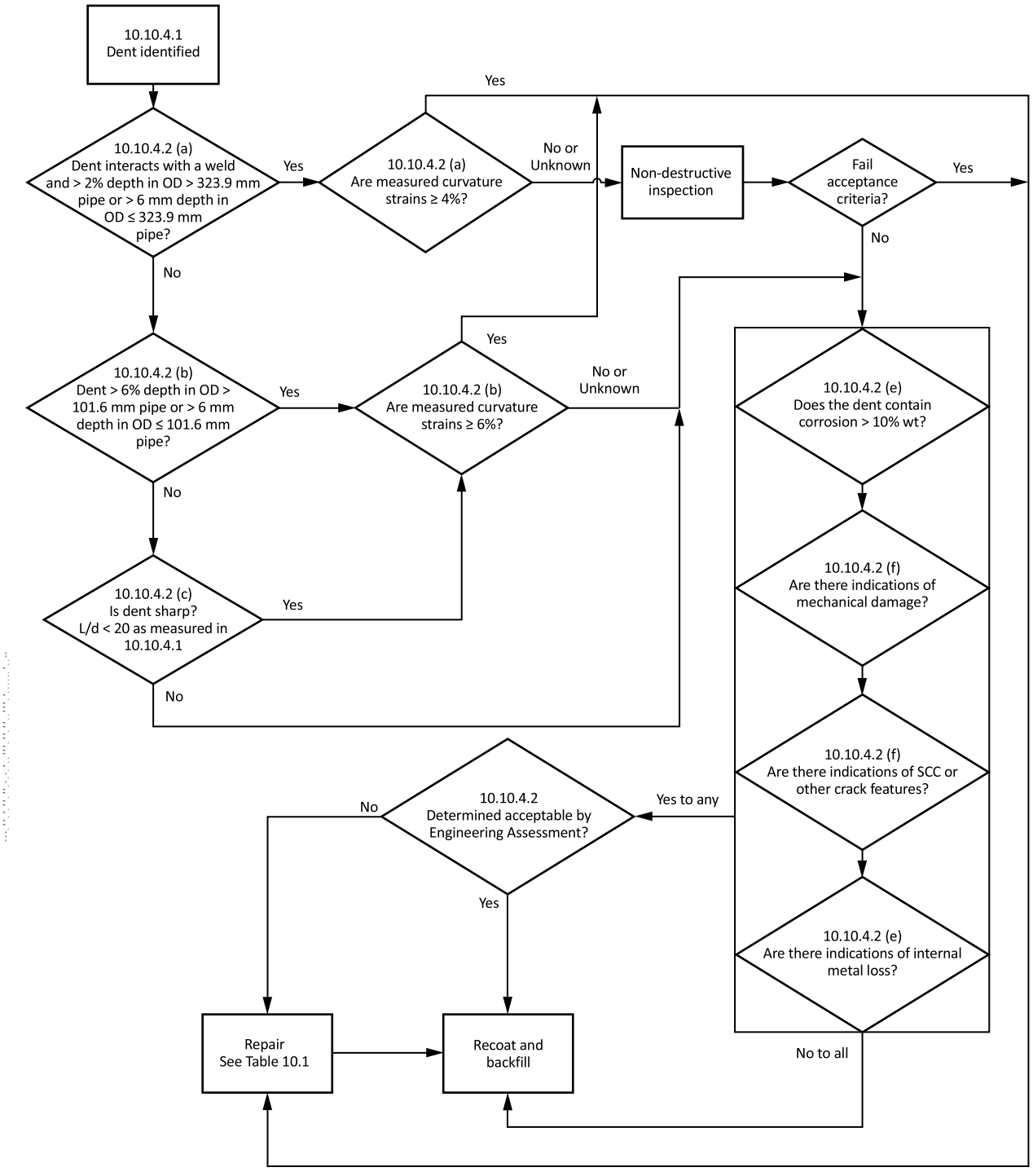
4) *Pressure should be reduced to the lowest feasible level before removing rocks that have caused dents near the bottom of the pipe (see Clause 10.10.1.3).*

5) *Internal pressure should be reduced to 40% SMYS or less as may be necessary for safe excavation of constrained dents that are identified as an integrity issue. Constrained dents typically occur on the bottom of the pipe.*

6) *Consideration should be given to evaluating shallow dents on pipelines that are exposed to pressure cycle fatigue. See DOT DTRS56-02-D-70036.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 10.2
Dents in Pipe
(See Clause 10.10.4.2.)



10.10.4.3

Engineering assessment of dents shall include consideration of pipe design and manufacturing, service history and loading (including fatigue), anticipated service conditions, the mechanism of dent formation, dent shape and dimensions, failure modes, and material properties (including fracture toughness properties).

Note: *An analysis method applicable to dented pipe that can be used as part of an engineering assessment is described in PRCI PR-218-9822.*

10.10.5 Pipe body surface cracks

Pipe body surface cracks shall be considered to be defects unless determined by an engineering assessment to be acceptable. The engineering assessment shall include consideration of service history and loading, anticipated service conditions (including the effects of corrosive and chemical attack), the mechanism of crack formation, crack dimensions, crack growth mechanisms, failure modes, and material properties (including fracture toughness properties). Pipe containing such defects shall be repaired using one or more of the acceptable repair methods given in Table 10.1.

Notes:

1) *Pipe body surface cracks include stress corrosion cracks (cracks that result from the interaction of tensile stress and corrosion).*

2) *For cracks in dents, see Clause 10.10.4.*

3) *Guidelines for managing transgranular (also known as near-neutral pH or low pH) SCC can be found in the CEPA* Stress Corrosion Cracking Recommended Practices*.*

10.10.6 Weld imperfections in field circumferential welds

Field circumferential welds that are found, after the piping has been placed in service, to be unacceptable on the basis of Clause 7.2.4, 7.2.5, 7.11, or 7.15.10, shall undergo nondestructive inspection to determine the extent of the deviations from the standards of acceptability. Such an inspection shall employ an appropriate nondestructive inspection method (or a combination of methods) that is capable of detecting cracks. Such welds may be accepted, provided that the welds comply with the requirements of the code or specification used in the original design of the pipeline and there are no features that would affect the integrity of the pipeline. Alternatively, the welds may be used provided they are judged to be acceptable on the basis of an engineering critical assessment. In all cases acceptance shall be based on consideration of service history and loading, anticipated service conditions (including the effects of corrosive and chemical attack), imperfection dimensions, damage and weld properties. Pipe containing welds that are determined to be unacceptable shall be repaired using one or more of the applicable repair methods given in Table 10.1, or the weld shall be repaired by welding as specified in Clause 7.12.

Notes:

1) *Where the nondestructive inspection is unable to differentiate between cracks and other planar imperfections, either the affected locations should be inspected using a different technique or the planar imperfections should be treated as cracks.*

2) *A recommended practice for determining the acceptability of imperfections in pipeline systems using engineering critical assessment is included in Annex J.*

10.10.7 Weld imperfections in mill seam welds and mill circumferential welds

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Mill seam welds and mill circumferential welds that are found, after the piping has been placed in service, to be unacceptable on the basis of the requirements of the current applicable standard or specification shall undergo nondestructive inspection to determine the extent of the deviations from the standard of acceptability. Such an inspection shall employ an appropriate nondestructive inspection

 © 2015 CSA Group

method (or a combination of methods) that is capable of detecting cracks. Such welds may be accepted, provided that the welds comply with the requirements of the standard or specification used in the original manufacture of the pipe and there are no features that would affect the integrity of the pipeline. Alternatively, the weld may be judged to be acceptable on the basis of an engineering assessment. In all cases, acceptance shall consider service history and loading, anticipated service conditions (including the effects of corrosive and chemical attack), imperfection dimensions, the mechanism of imperfection formation, damage and weld properties (including fracture toughness properties). Pipe containing welds that are determined to be unacceptable shall be repaired using one or more of the acceptable repair methods given in Table 10.1.

Note: *Mill seam welds are longitudinal, helical, or skelp end pipe seam welds.*

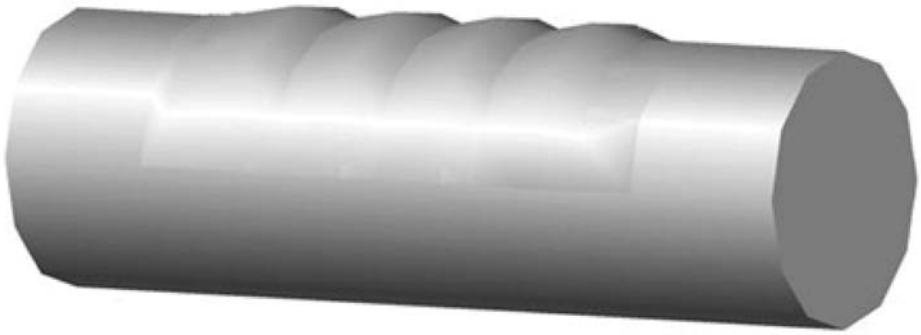
Δ 10.10.8 Ripples, wrinkles, and buckles in steel pipe

10.10.8.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Ripples, wrinkles and buckles exist along a continuum of deformation in response to axial and transverse loading. Ripples can be observed along the inner curve of field cold bends or along extreme compression regions of a pipe. The presence of ripples might be a precursor to the development of more severe deformations such as wrinkles or buckles. An example of a ripple is provided in Figure 10.3.

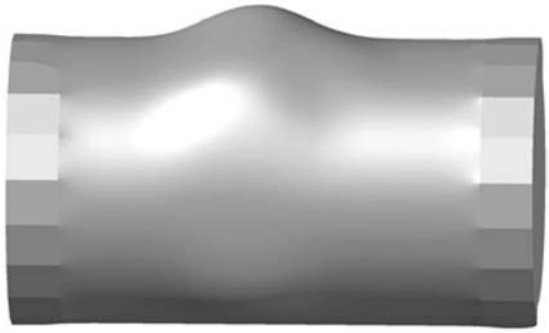
Figure 10.3
Sample image of a typical ripple
(See Clause 10.10.8.1.)



Wrinkles can be formed during pipeline construction, operation or abandonment. Loads leading to formation of wrinkles during the operation of the pipeline are usually caused by geotechnical-related movement resulting in bending or axial loads in combination with operational stress levels, including those imposed by thermal cycles. Wrinkles can be formed fully or partially around the circumference in both round and out-of-round pipe, and in the crotch of a pipe bend (i.e., wrinkle bend). An example of a wrinkle is provided in Figure 10.4.

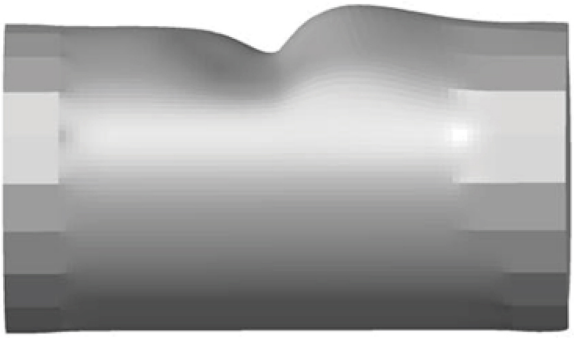
© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 10.4
Sample image of a typical wrinkle
(See Clause 10.10.8.1.)



Buckles can be formed during pipeline construction, operation or abandonment. Geotechnical-related movement (i.e., settlement, frost heave, landslides) is the major post construction factor contributing to buckle formation. Buckles are usually formed at low operational stress levels; otherwise, they could manifest severe distorted outward bulges. An example of a buckle is provided in Figure 10.5.

Figure 10.5
Sample image of a typical buckle
(See Clause 10.10.8.1.)



10.10.8.2

Ripples, wrinkles and buckles shall be inspected using visual and mechanical measurement methods capable of determining the crest-to-trough depth, wavelength, circumferential extent (feature clock position start to end in degrees or millimeters/inches), diameter restriction and the location of the feature with respect to welds and the presence of external corrosion, coating damage, scratches, gouges and grooves.

Nondestructive methods capable of detecting cracks and internal corrosion imperfections shall be used. The location of the damage within the pipeline segment shall be documented (e.g., position relative to slope or changes in direction of the pipeline or pipeline feature(s) such as sleeves, tees or valves).

Ripples, wrinkles or buckles that are expected to grow in size over time, if not removed or repaired, shall be periodically monitored.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.10.8.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following features shall be considered to be defects unless determined by an engineering assessment to be acceptable:

a) Ripples, wrinkles and buckles that contain stress concentrators (corrosion, manufacturing features, gouges, grooves, arc burns, welds, or cracks); and

b) Ripples, wrinkles, and buckles with crest-to-trough dimensions having

   i) ratio of feature height/pipe outside diameter greater than 0.02;

   ii) ratio of feature height/pipe outside diameter greater than $(0.01)\times\left(\frac{30-S[ksi]}{10}+1\right)$ or $(0.01)\times\left(\frac{206.84-S[MPa]}{68.95}+1\right)$ for liquid pipelines with a maximum operating stress (S) between 137.90 MPa (20 ksi) and 206.84 MPa (30 ksi);

   iii) ratio of feature height/pipe outside diameter greater than $(0.005)\times\left(\frac{47-S[ksi]}{10}+1\right)$ or $(0.005)\times\left(\frac{324.05-S[MPa]}{117.21}+1\right)$ for liquid pipelines with a maximum operating stress (S) between 206.84 MPa (30 ksi) and 324.05 MPa (47 ksi);

   iv) ratio of feature height/pipe outside diameter greater than 0.005 for liquid pipelines with a maximum operating stress (S) greater than 324.05 MPa (47 ksi);

   v) ratio of feature height/pipe outside diameter greater than $(0.01)\times\left(\frac{47-S[ksi]}{17}+1\right)$ or $(0.01)\times\left(\frac{324.05-S[MPa]}{117.21}+1\right)$ for gas pipelines with a maximum operating stress (S) between 255.11 MPa (37 ksi) and 324.05 MPa (47 ksi); or

   vi) Ratio of feature height/pipe outside diameter greater than 0.01 for gas pipelines with a maximum operating stress (S) greater than 324.05 MPa (47 ksi).

Figure 10.6 shows a graphical representation of these limits

Pipe containing such defects shall be repaired using one or more of the acceptable repair methods given in Table 10.1. The loading conditions that precipitated the development of the defects should be evaluated for mitigation

Notes:

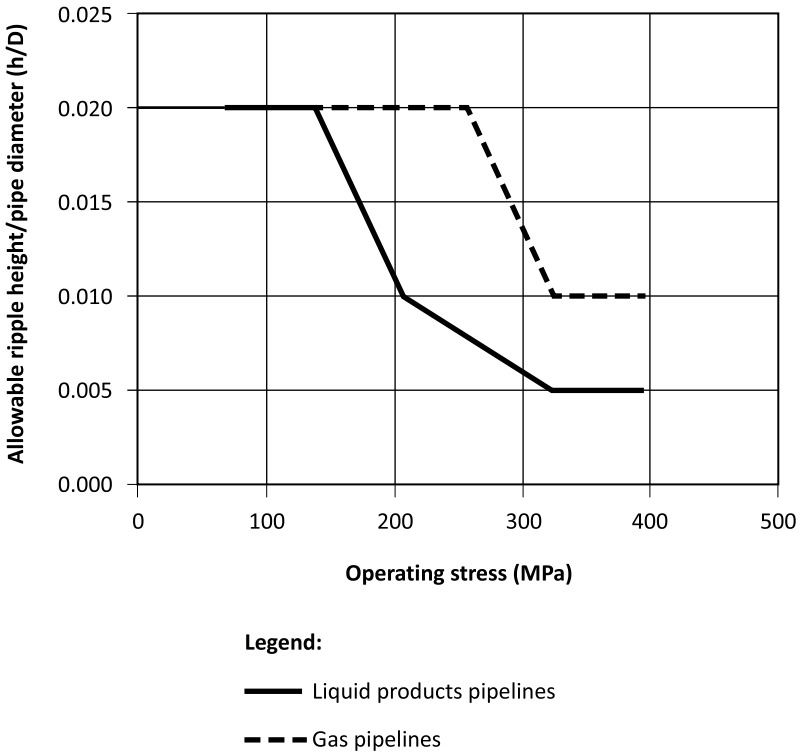
1) *When a group of ripples, wrinkles, or buckles exist in proximity, h, the crest-to-trough feature height measurement, is the largest crest-to-trough height.*

2) *Ripples, wrinkles and buckles may potentially be permissible based on detailed engineering analysis as indicated in PRCI PR-218-9925.*

3) *More restrictive limits can apply to pipelines with intensely cyclical operation, large differential temperatures, inadequate soil support, or high axial loadings as discussed in PRCI PR-218-9925.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 10.6
Recommended maximum allowable ripples, wrinkles and buckles for steel pipe
(See Clause 10.10.8.3.)



Note: *After Rosenfeld et al (2008), p. 94.*

10.10.8.4

Engineering assessment of ripples, wrinkles and buckles shall, at a minimum, include pipe design and manufacturing, service history and loading (including fatigue), anticipated service conditions, the mechanism of ripple, wrinkle or buckle formation and their growth, shape and dimensions, failure modes, material properties (including fracture toughness properties) and interaction with other imperfections.

10.11 Permanent repair methods

10.11.1 General

10.11.1.1

Where flammable mixtures are present, pipeline cuts shall be made with mechanical cutters, except that pipelines containing 100% natural gas may be hot-cut using appropriate procedures that include the provisions of Clause 10.5.7.

10.11.1.2

Appropriate bonding and grounding procedures shall be employed in order to eliminate sources of ignition caused by impressed currents or the removal of pipe sections.

Note: *Consideration should be given to turning off adjacent cathodic protection rectifiers.*

© 2015 CSA Group

10.11.1.3

External coatings that are as specified in Clause 9 shall be applied following cleaning, evaluation, and repair operations.

10.11.1.4

Pipe containing leaks shall be repaired

a) using an acceptable permanent repair method given in Table 10.1; or
b) by making a temporary repair as specified in Clause 10.12, and as soon as practical thereafter, making a permanent repair using an acceptable method given in Table 10.1.

10.11.2 Grinding repairs

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.11.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Grinding as specified in Clauses 10.11.2.2 to 10.11.2.5 shall be acceptable as a permanent repair of steel pipe.

Notes:

1) *Grinding on pipe containing pressure should be conducted utilizing soft-back sanding disks or sanding flappers except where minimizing grind length is critical and specific geometric and temperature control procedures are implemented. Bluing (heat tinting) the metal surface should be avoided and any such tinted material should be removed.*

2) *Caution should be exercised when grinding on low frequency electric resistance weld pipe, continuous weld pipe, or furnace butt welding seams.*

10.11.2.2

Grinding repair procedures shall address the requirements of Clause 10.2.8 and be subject to the following requirements:

a) the maximum allowable grind length and depth limits for safe working pressure conditions shall be established prior to grinding to depths greater than 10% of nominal wall thickness;
b) the actual wall thickness of areas to be repaired by grinding in-service pipelines shall be assessed in accordance with Clause 10.10.1.5 and verified prior to grinding;
c) for arc burns, confirming complete removal of the altered metallurgical structure by etching the ground area with a 10% solution of ammonium persulphate or a 5% solution of nital;

   Note: *The effectiveness of the etchant should be periodically tested by obtaining a positive indication from an arc burn, since lower metal temperatures and the age of the etchant can adversely affect the results obtained.*
d) for gouges, grooves, and cracks, confirming complete removal of the defect by using dye penetrant or magnetic particle inspection;
e) measuring the wall thickness in the ground areas and the length of the ground areas using mechanical or ultrasonic techniques, or both, to determine that the metal loss is as specified in Clause 10.11.2.3; and
f) areas to be repaired by grinding shall be thoroughly cleaned before grinding is initiated. Grinding shall be performed to produce a smooth transition between the surface contour of the repaired area and the surrounding pipe surface.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ C

10.11.2.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Grinding repairs shall meet the following requirements:

a) External metal loss resulting from grinding may be of any length, provided that the maximum depth of such areas is 10% or less of the nominal wall thickness of the pipe.

b) External metal loss resulting from grinding that is located in dents shall not exceed 40%.

Note: *Caution should be taken in defining the limit for removal of the stress concentrator by grinding. The 40% limit might not be suitable in all circumstances and should be evaluated on a case by case basis.*

c) External metal loss resulting from grinding that is not located in dents and that has a depth greater than 10%, up to and including 80%, of nominal wall thickness of the pipe shall be acceptable, provided that

   i) the longitudinal length of the ground area does not exceed the maximum allowable longitudinal extent determined as specified in ASME B31G; or

   ii) the MOP is equal to or less than the failure pressure of the pipe containing the ground area multiplied by the terms in the following expression:

   $MOP \leq P_{fail} \times (F \times L \times J \times T)$

   where

   P_{fail} = failure pressure for the pipe containing the ground area determined in accordance with Clause 10.11.2.4

   F = design factor (see Clause 4.3.6)

   L = location factor (see Clause 4.3.7)

   J = joint factor (see Clause 4.3.8)

   T = temperature factor (see Clause 4.3.9)

   Pipe in LVP pipeline systems located in class location assessment areas designated as 2, 3, or 4 shall use a location factor, L, in the equation provided in Item b) that does not exceed

   i) for pipeline systems designed in accordance with this Standard, the location factor used in the original construction; or

   ii) for pipeline systems designed in accordance with earlier Standards that did not use location factors, the design factor used in the original construction divided by the design factor specified in Clause 4.3.6.

10.11.2.4

Where required by Clause 10.11.2.3, the failure pressure for pipe containing a grinding metal loss area shall be determined by one of the following methods:

a) the 0.85 dL method; or

b) the effective area method.

Note: *These methods are described in PRCI PR-3-805.*

10.11.2.5

Pipe with areas of external metal loss resulting from grinding that are considered acceptable as specified in Clause 10.11.2.3 may be used for continued service.

10.11.2.6

Areas of external metal loss resulting from grinding beyond the depth or length limits specified in Clause 10.11.2.3 shall be considered to be grind defects. Pipe containing such defects shall be repaired using one or more of the acceptable repair methods given in Table 10.1.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.11.3 Piping replacements

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Piping replacements shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Piping may be repaired by cutting out cylindrical pieces of pipe and components containing the defects and replacing them with pretested piping that meets the applicable design criteria and the requirements of Clause 5.2.4. Pressure testing to establish the maximum operating pressure of the pretested piping shall be as specified in Clause 8. Welding and inspection shall be as specified in Clause 10.13.
b) The minimum permissible length of replacement pipe shall be as follows:
   i) 150 mm, for pipe smaller than 168.3 mm OD;
   ii) two times the specified outside diameter, for pipe in the range from 168.3 to 610 mm OD;
   iii) 1220 mm, for pipe larger than 610 mm OD; and
   iv) as specified in Items i) to iii) or the original pipe length, whichever is shorter, for pipe in fabricated assemblies.
c) Pretested piping intended for future use in repairs or tie-ins shall be identified and suitably protected during storage. Test documentation that substantiates that the pretests were satisfactory shall be maintained and verified prior to the use of pretested pipe in repairs. Pretested piping shall be free of defects both before and after installation.

Δ 10.11.4 Repair sleeves for pipe

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.11.4.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Repair sleeves may be used as permanent repairs for pipe, provided that the following is applicable:

a) The repair sleeves extend longitudinally at least 50 mm beyond the ends of the defects.
b) Where a reinforcement sleeve is used as a permanent repair, any internal corrosion has been arrested.
c) Consideration is given to the following:
   i) concentration of bending stresses in the pipe at the ends of repair sleeves and between closely spaced repair sleeves;
   ii) design compatibility of repair sleeves and piping materials;
   iii) spacing of other devices on the pipe;
   iv) adequate support of the repair sleeves during installation and operation; and
   v) present and future operating and pressure-testing conditions.

10.11.4.2 Steel reinforcement repair sleeves and steel pressure-containment repair sleeves

In addition to the requirements of Clause 10.11.4.1, steel reinforcement repair sleeves and steel pressure-containment repair sleeves shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Steel pressure containment repair sleeves shall have a nominal load-carrying capacity at least equal to that of the originally installed pipe.
b) A reinforcing sleeve in conjunction with the damaged pipe shall have a nominal load carrying capacity at least equal to that of the originally installed pipe.
c) Welding and welding procedures shall be as specified in Clause 10.13.
d) Destructive testing and nondestructive inspection shall be used to demonstrate freedom from cracking in the weld and parent material of test welds.

 © 2015 CSA Group

e) Welds shall be nondestructively inspected and their acceptability determined as specified in Clause 7.11 or 7.15.10.
f) Steel reinforcement repair sleeves not welded to the pipe shall meet the following supplementary requirements:
   i) Measures shall be taken to seal the circumferential ends of steel reinforcement repair sleeves in order to prevent migration of water between the pipe and the sleeve.
   ii) Steel reinforcement repair sleeves that do not use grouting material to fill the annulus between the sleeve and the pipe shall be accurately fitted to the pipe, and the damaged area shall be filled with an appropriate material to provide the required mechanical support.
   iii) Electrical continuity shall be ensured between the pipe and the steel reinforcement repair sleeve.
g) Bolt-on pressure-containment repair sleeves may be used as permanent steel pressure-containment repair sleeves, provided that
   i) they are designed for, and constructed of, material that is suitable for welding; and
   ii) they are fillet welded to the pipe and seal welded to have the ability to contain pipeline pressure within the sleeve in accordance with the design requirements.
h) For repairs using steel pressure-containment repair sleeves, appropriate measures (e.g., increasing the wall thickness of the sleeve, filling the annulus, or periodically measuring the remaining wall thickness using ultrasonic inspection) shall be considered in situations where internal corrosion of the sleeve can occur. For the repair of dents by using steel pressure-containment sleeves, the pipe shall be tapped to pressurize the annulus between the pipe and sleeve if the damaged area is not filled with a hardenable filler material such as epoxy to ensure that the dent does not re-round.

Note: *Caution should be exercised when removing steel pressure-containment sleeves because the underlying carrier pipe can be leaking.*

10.11.4.3 Composite reinforcement repair sleeves

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In addition to the requirements of Clause 10.11.4.1, composite reinforcement repair sleeves shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) The sleeve system shall be tested and qualified to satisfy the following:
   i) All tests shall be in accordance with the procedures of ASME PCC-2, Article 4.1, or ISO/TS 24817. Such tests shall be conducted in the appropriate environment and operating conditions, including the maximum design temperature for the sleeve system as appropriate to the intended application, and shall indicate an extrapolated sleeve system rated performance of at least 50 years.
   ii) Cathodic disbondment tests shall verify that the sleeve system is compatible with cathodic protection systems.
   iii) Where applicable, tests shall confirm that sleeve system components are not affected by the service fluids carried in the pipeline.
b) The sleeve system shall be designed to satisfy the following:
   i) The combined nominal load-carrying capacity of the sleeve and the remaining pipe wall shall be at least equal to that of the originally installed pipe.
   ii) An engineering assessment using established relationships shall be conducted to determine the required load transfer from the pipe to the sleeve and the subsequent maximum stress on the sleeve. The maximum stress on the sleeve shall not exceed the maximum qualified stress level from the stress rupture tests. The engineering assessment shall also establish the maximum line pressure to be permitted during the installation and curing of the sleeve system.

 © 2015 CSA Group

iii) The sleeve system shall be designed to operate over the full temperature range expected during operation of the pipeline.
iv) The manufacturer shall provide the acceptable pH range for the material.
v) Products shall have clearly stated expiration dates (if applicable) on each system component.

c) The repair sleeve shall be handled and installed to satisfy the following:
i) Storage, handling, transportation, and installation of sleeve system components shall be performed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and procedures.
ii) Shelf lives quoted by the repair system suppliers shall be observed.
iii) Personnel installing sleeves shall be competent in the installation procedures.
iv) The sleeve system shall only be installed at temperatures that have been qualified by the manufacturer.
v) The operator shall ensure that the pH range qualified by the manufacturer is appropriate for the anticipated operating environment.

Notes:
1) *Further guidance can be found in ISO/TS 24817, which includes installation qualification.*
2) *Cathodic polarization of the pipe surface by the cathodic protection system causes an increase in pH.*

10.11.4.4 Steel compression reinforcement repair sleeves

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In addition to the requirements of Clause 10.11.4.1, steel compression reinforcement repair sleeves shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) The sleeve system shall be designed and tested to satisfy the following over the expected range of operating conditions:
i) A compressive hoop stress shall be maintained in the carrier pipe at the location of the defect.
ii) The hoop stress in the sleeve shall not exceed its maximum design stress.
iii) Any filler used between the carrier pipe and the sleeve shall transfer the force from the sleeve to the carrier pipe, cure at the temperature existing following the sleeve installation prior to normal operation, and not be subject to deterioration under pipeline design operating conditions.

b) The sleeve system installation method shall satisfy the following:
i) The method shall ensure that the steel in the vicinity of the defect remains in compression over the full pressure and temperature range expected during operation of the pipeline and that the stress level in the defect region is reduced to arrest defect growth and deterioration.
ii) The sleeve system shall be used only where its installation prevents further growth or deterioration of the defects under the sleeve.
iii) Where a sleeve is to be installed over a circumferential or mill seam weld with a protruding weld cap, excessive weld cap material shall be removed, or the sleeves shall be grooved, to prevent stress concentrations at the weld locations. Any resultant reduction in wall thickness of the sleeve shall be considered in determining the maximum stress in the sleeve.
iv) Personnel installing sleeves shall be competent in the installation procedures by the sleeve manufacturer or supplier, or by personnel who have been so trained and qualified.
v) Welds used to join the two halves of the sleeve together shall be as specified in Clause 7.

c) An engineering assessment shall be undertaken to verify the installation parameters and inspection method used. The following factors shall be considered:
i) pipe and sleeve design;
ii) pipe and sleeve material properties;
iii) pipe and sleeve cleanliness;
iv) expected service conditions;

 © 2015 CSA Group

v) residual or external stresses;
vi) internal pipe pressure during installation;
vii) cleaning of the pipe;
viii) heating of the sleeve prior to welding;
ix) flow rate and heat transfer coefficient of the service fluid in the pipeline;
x) sleeve clamping methodology;
xi) welding procedures and welding qualifications; and
xii) testing the factors in Items i) to xi).

10.11.5 Defect removal by hot tapping

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Removal of defects by hot tapping shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) The location, orientation, width, and length of the defect shall be determined by visual and nondestructive inspection.
b) The entire defect shall be contained within the metal that is removed by hot tapping.
c) The hot tap shall be performed as specified in Clause 10.14.

10.11.6 Direct deposition welding

10.11.6.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Direct deposition welding procedures developed as specified in Clause 7.17 may be used as a permanent repair of external defects in steel pipe only in non-sour service natural gas piping and provided that

a) the defect to be repaired is not
   i) situated in a dent or gouge; or
   ii) situated on a mill seam or circumferential weld; and
b) the remaining wall thickness at the defect location is equal to or greater than 3.2 mm.

Notes:

1) *Companies should consider developing limitations on usage based upon practical experience obtained during the development of the welding procedures. Limiting factors can include things such as pipe curvature, overlapping HAZ, and defect size.*

2) *Clause 16.2.1 a) provides definitions of sour service.*

10.11.6.2

Prior to welding, the pipe surface shall be prepared by grinding as specified in Clause 10.11.2 and any additional requirements contained in the welding procedure specification.

10.11.6.3

The minimum repair length shall be 50 mm, measured parallel to the direction of weld travel.

10.11.6.4

The finished surface of direct deposition repairs shall be suitable for ultrasonic inspection and shall be contoured to match the pipe surface profile.

10.12 Temporary repair methods

10.12.1 General

10.12.1.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where it is not possible to make permanent repairs immediately, piping containing leaks or defects in the form of gouges, grooves, dents, arc burns, corrosion pits, or cracks may be repaired using temporary repair methods. Temporary repair methods, whether they involve welding or not, shall be based on an engineering assessment.

The engineering assessment shall consider the type of service, the nature and extent of the defect, the material properties, and the class location. The assessment shall indicate the inspection method(s) and interval, the period of time for which the temporary repair shall be used, and any reductions necessary to the normal operating pressure. A record containing engineering assessment information for the temporary repair shall be kept for as long as the repair remains in service.

10.12.1.2

Where special conditions prevent permanent repairs from being made within one year, sufficient periodic inspections, as defined by the engineering assessment specified in Clause 10.12.1.1, shall be made to confirm that the defective condition corrected by the temporary repairs has not extended, that leaks have not recurred, and that the temporary repair device has not deteriorated.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 10.1
Limitations on acceptable permanent repair methods
(See Clauses 10.10.2.7, 10.10.3, 10.10.4.2, 10.10.5–10.10.7, 10.11.1.4, 10.11.2.6, and 16.9.4.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

Type of defect	Grinding repair	Pipe replacement	Steel pressure-containment repair sleeve	Steel reinforcement repair sleeve	Steel compression reinforcement repair sleeve	Composite reinforcement repair sleeve	Hot tap	Direct deposition welding	Welding repair
Corrosion defect (see Clause 10.10.2.7)									
External	†	*	*	*	*	1	*	*	†
Internal	†	*	*	*	*	1	*	†	†
Gouge, groove, or arc burn (see Clause 10.10.3)									
On the pipe body, not in a dent	*	*	*	2	*	1, 2	*	6	†
On a mill seam weld, not in a dent	*	*	*	2	*	1, 2	*	†	†
On a circumferential weld, not in a dent	*	*	*	2	2	1, 2	†	†	†
Dent defect with a stress concentrator [see Clause 10.10.4.2 a)]									
On the pipe body or a mill seam weld	3	*	*	3	*	4	*	†	†
On a circumferential weld	3	*	*	3	2	†	†	†	†
Dent defect without a stress concentrator [see Clause 10.10.4.2 b)– e)]									
On the pipe body	†	*	*	*	*	4	*	†	†
On a mill seam weld	†	*	*	4	*	4	*	†	†

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 10.1 (Concluded)

Type of defect	Grinding repair	Pipe replacement	Steel pressure-containment repair sleeve	Steel reinforcement repair sleeve	Steel compression reinforcement repair sleeve	Composite reinforcement repair sleeve	Hot tap	Direct deposition welding	Welding repair
On a circumferential weld	†	*	*	†	*	†	†	†	†
Pipe body surface crack (see Clause 10.10.5)									
Not in a dent	*	*	*	2	5	1, 2	*	6	†
Weld defect (see Clauses 10.10.6 and 10.10.7)									
In a circumferential weld	*	*	*	†	†	†	†	†	*
In a mill seam weld	*	*	*	†	*	†	*	†	†
Grind defect (see Clause 10.11.2.6)	†	*	*	*	*	1	*	*	†
Leak (see Clause 10.11.1.4)	†	*	*	†	†	†	†	†	†
Applicable repair clause reference	10.11.2	10.11.3	10.11.4.2	10.11.4.2	10.11.4.4	10.11.4.3	10.11.5	10.11.6	10.10.6

Legend:

Limitations additional to any specified in the applicable repair clause:

1 This repair method is not acceptable for defects with metal loss in excess of 80% of the nominal wall thickness of the pipe.

2 The stress concentrator (gouge, groove, arc burn, or crack) shall be removed by grinding as specified in Clauses 10.11.2.2 and 10.11.2.3 prior to the application of the sleeve.

3 The stress concentrator (gouge, groove, arc burn, or crack) shall be removed by grinding as specified in Clauses 10.11.2.2 and 10.11.2.3 prior to the dent being assessed for acceptability as specified in Clause 10.10.4, with the depth of the ground area being excluded from the dent depth. This repair method is not acceptable unless both of the following apply:
   a) The dent is no longer a defect as described in Clause 10.10.4.2.
   b) The pipe is considered to be acceptable based upon an engineering assessment as required in Clause 10.10.4.3 unless a steel reinforcement repair sleeve is applied.

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 10.1 (Concluded)

4 This repair method is not acceptable unless all of the following apply:
   a) The dent is on the pipe body or a mill seam weld.
   b) The dent depth is 15% or less of the specified outside diameter of the pipe.
   c) Any stress concentrators in the dent are removed by grinding as specified in Clauses 10.11.2.2 and 10.11.2.3.
   d) A suitable material is used to fill the dent prior to application of the sleeve, in order to prevent re-rounding of the pipe.

5 Any circumferential cracks shall be removed by grinding prior to application of the sleeve.

6 The stress concentrator (gouge, groove, arc burn, or crack) shall be removed by grinding prior to performing direct deposition weld repairs.

* *There is no limitation additional to any specified in the applicable repair clause.*
† *This repair method is not acceptable for this type of defect.*
‡ *As observed originally, or as determined after the grinding required by Limitation 3 or 4.*

Notes:

1) *Mill seam welds are longitudinal, helical, or skelp end pipe seam welds.*

2) *Permanent repairs may be preceded by temporary repairs. (See Clause 10.12.)*

© 2015 CSA Group

10.12.2 Composite reinforcement repair sleeves

10.12.2.1
Composite reinforcement repair sleeves may be used as temporary repair devices. Except as allowed by Clauses 10.12.2.2 and 10.12.2.3, such sleeves shall be as specified in Clauses 10.11.4.1 and 10.11.4.3.

10.12.2.2
The extrapolated sleeve system rated performance shall be 5 years or more.

10.12.2.3
For the temporary repair of dents, the dent depth shall be 25% or less of the outside diameter of the pipe.

10.13 Maintenance welding

10.13.1 General

10.13.1.1
Maintenance welding shall be considered to be welding performed during the replacement of portions of pipeline systems, the attachment of devices to operating pipeline systems, the repair of defects by direct deposition welding, and the installation of tie-ins to connect new facilities to existing pipeline systems.

10.13.1.2
Operating companies shall include procedures for maintenance welding in their operating and maintenance manuals. Such welding shall be as specified in Clauses 7.2 to 7.15 and, if applicable, 7.17.

10.13.2 In-service piping

10.13.2.1
The requirements for in-service welding are in Clause 7.17. In-service piping is defined in Clause 7.17.1.2.

10.13.2.2
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Production welds shall not be made at weld cooling rates or restraint levels that are higher than those used for qualification of the welding procedure specification.

Notes:

1) *Cooling rates that are much lower than the cooling rates used in the qualification of the welding procedure specification can result in burn-through areas.*

2) *Both the type of fluid and the flow rate influence the weldment cooling rate.*

10.13.2.3
Before welding is performed on in-service piping, the areas to be welded shall be inspected to determine the adequacy of wall thickness and that they are free of imperfections that would adversely affect the weld.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.13.2.4

Welding on in-service piping shall be performed by

a) welders employed by the operating company; or
b) contract welders supervised by an operating company representative responsible for adherence to the prescribed maintenance procedures.

10.13.2.5

Pressures shall be at safe levels when welding work is performed on in-service piping. Safe operating pressures shall be established based upon the factors specified for hot taps in Clause 10.14.3.1.

10.14 Pipeline hot taps

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

10.14.1 General

10.14.1.1

Hot-tap connections shall be made in accordance with established procedures. Such connections shall be considered to be permanent facilities, provided that the attachments are completed in accordance with procedures that comply with the requirements of Clauses 10.13 and 10.14.

10.14.1.2

Welded branch connections shall be reinforced as specified in Clause 4.3.18.

10.14.2 Pipe preparation

10.14.2.1

Branch-to-run pipe welds and hot-tap cuts may pass through the run pipe mill seam weld; however, such welds and cuts shall not pass through weld repairs or circumferential welds.

10.14.2.2

Reinforcement sleeves shall be accurately fitted to the run pipe.

10.14.2.3

For hot-tap connections on steel pipelines, the affected areas of the run pipes (including any affected run pipe mill seam welds) shall be inspected for defects.

10.14.3 Parameters

10.14.3.1

Welds joining run pipes to branches or reinforcement sleeves shall be made in accordance with a qualified welding procedure specification. Maximum permissible pressures during welding shall be established based upon consideration of at least the following factors:

a) the size, grade, and wall thickness of the run pipe;
b) the welding parameters and electrode to be used;
c) the flow and temperature conditions of the service fluid in the run pipe;
d) the applicable temperature derating factor;
e) the size of the branch pipe;

 © 2015 CSA Group

f) the class location of the pipeline; and
g) the means of supporting the piping.

10.14.3.2

All phases of the hot-tap operation, other than the welding specified in Clause 10.14.3.1, may be completed at pipeline system operating pressures, provided that the maximum working pressure of the hot-tap equipment involved is not exceeded.

Note: *It is not necessary to pressure test a hot-tap fitting after installation; however, if pressure testing is performed, damage to the run pipe caused by the external pressure exceeding the internal pressure should be avoided.*

10.15 Deactivation and reactivation of piping

10.15.1 Deactivation of piping

10.15.1.1

Operating companies deactivating piping shall
a) isolate the piping, using blind flanges, weld caps, or blanking plates suitable for the pressure from which the deactivated piping is being isolated;
b) where required, provide a pressure-relief system; and
c) fill the piping with a suitable medium, having regard for the intended duration of the deactivation, the effects of the medium on the integrity of the piping, and the potential consequences of a leak.

10.15.1.2

For deactivated piping, operating companies shall
a) maintain external and internal corrosion control as specified in Clause 9;
b) where considered appropriate, perform other maintenance activities as specified in Clause 10;
c) maintain records as specified in Clauses 9.11 and 10.4; and
d) for piping that is deactivated for more than 18 months, annually confirm the suitability of the deactivation methods used, the corrosion control, and other maintenance activities.

10.15.2 Reactivation of piping

10.15.2.1

Prior to reactivating piping, the operating company shall conduct an engineering assessment (see Clause 10.1.1) to determine whether the piping would be suitable for its intended service.

10.15.2.2

Where the engineering assessment indicates that the piping would not be suitable for its intended service, the operating company shall implement measures necessary to make it suitable before reactivating the piping.

Δ 10.16 Abandonment of pipelines and pipe-type storage vessels

10.16.1 General

The decision to abandon a section of a pipeline, whether in place or through removal, shall be made on the basis of a documented abandonment plan that includes the rationale for the abandonment, landowner consultation, effect on terrain and water, road and railway crossings, as well as current and

 © 2015 CSA Group

potential land use. The plan shall consider the potential for safety hazards and environmental damage that could be created by ground subsidence, soil admixing or contamination, groundwater contamination, erosion, and the creation of water conduits.

Note: *The NEB* Pipeline Abandonment: A Discussion Paper on Technical and Environmental Issues*, National Energy Board, Section 2 provides guidance.*

10.16.2 Buried pipelines

A buried pipeline that is abandoned in place shall be

a) emptied of service fluids;
b) purged or appropriately cleaned or both in a manner that leaves no mobile materials remaining in the pipeline;
c) physically separated from any in-service piping;
d) capped, plugged, or otherwise effectively sealed;
e) cut off at pipeline depth; and
f) left unpressurized.

Note: *Pipelines containing liners or constructed of polymeric pipe might require repeat purging and maintenance to accommodate out gassing of hydrocarbon or H_2S. See Clause 13.2.8.6.*

10.16.3 Removal of related surface equipment

A buried pipeline that has been abandoned in place shall have all related surface equipment removed to pipeline depth, except where surface equipment is within an existing surface facility that is in continuing operation or deactivated. Pipeline signage may be left in place where deemed appropriate.

Note: *Examples of such equipment are pipeline risers, liner vent piping, casing vents, underground valve vaults or valve extenders, inspection bell holes, and cathodic protection rectifiers, test posts, or anode wiring.*

10.16.4 Aboveground pipelines

Abandoned aboveground pipelines and all related surface equipment shall be removed except where they are part of or within an existing surface facility that is in continuing operation or deactivated.

10.16.5 Records

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Records shall be created and maintained for all of the work conducted to meet the requirements of Clauses 10.16.1 to 10.16.3. Additional records for pipelines that are abandoned in place shall include lengths, diameter, material type (e.g., metallic or non-metallic), spatial characteristics, and where practical, burial depth.

Δ 10.17 Abandonment of pipeline related facilities

10.17.1 General

Pipeline related facilities such as compressors and pump stations shall have all rotating and fixed equipment removed, unless they are still part of an operating or deactivated site. Associated piping, utilities, supports, and foundations shall also be removed.

Note: *Testing for site soil contamination and appropriate remediation might be required.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.17.2 Underground vaults and closed top pits

Consideration shall be given to the removal of underground vaults and closed-top pits. For those that are to remain,

a) walls and floors shall be tested for contamination. Contaminated areas shall be remediated or removed;
b) walls shall be removed to an appropriate level below the ground surface; and
c) the insides of the vault shall be filled with clean soil.

10.17.3 Aboveground tanks and pressure vessels

10.17.3.1

Aboveground storage tanks or pressure vessels shall be positively isolated and emptied of liquids, purged, and safeguarded against trespassing.

10.17.3.2

Aboveground storage tanks or pressure vessels on sites to be abandoned shall be removed as well as all associated piping, supports, and foundations.

10.17.3.3

Soils in around and underneath storage tanks shall be inspected for contamination and appropriately remediated.

10.17.4 Underground storage tanks

The abandonment of underground tanks shall be as specified in API 1604.

11 Offshore steel pipelines

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.1 Applicability

11.1.1

Clause 11 covers the requirements specific to offshore steel pipelines, in seawater or fresh water locations, for the transportation of fluids at or between the facilities shown in Figures 11.1 to 11.5.

Note: *The requirements of Clause 11 should be used for long or deep water shore-to-shore pipeline crossings where the designer considers that the provisions of the other clauses of this Standard do not appropriately address the scope, range, and types of loading conditions, joining requirements, construction techniques, repair techniques, or operation procedures expected during the life of the pipeline.*

11.1.2

Clause 11 does not cover the following:

a) risers to floating facilities;
b) auxiliary piping, such as that required for water, air, steam, lubricating oil, and fuel;
c) pressure vessels, heat exchangers, pumps, meters, and other similar equipment at platforms, artificial islands, jetties, tankage, and other production facilities;
d) casing, tubing, and piping used in wells; miscellaneous piping at wellheads, tankage, and other subsea or surface production facilities; and pipeline manifolds;

 © 2015 CSA Group

e) design and fabrication of equipment, including proprietary items of equipment, apparatus, and instruments;
f) pump and compressor stations, including instrumentation and similar items;
g) flexible hoses;
h) tanker and barge loading and unloading facilities;
i) pipe materials other than steel;
j) facilities for the transportation of liquefied natural gas; and
k) pipelines with metal temperatures above 230 °C or below –70 °C.

11.1.3

The provisions in Clauses 4 to 10, Clauses 12 to 17, and the annexes shall not be applicable to offshore pipelines systems except as specified in Clauses 3.1.1, 3.1.2, 3.2, 4.1.4, 7.1.3, and 10.5.1.2, and insofar as such provisions are specifically referenced by the provisions in Clause 11.

11.2 Design — General

11.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clauses 11.2 to 11.19 cover the requirements for the design of pipelines, taking into account the stresses and strains generated by the loads considered for pipeline construction and operation.

11.2.2

Where applicable, pipelines shall be protected from damage that would endanger their structural integrity as a result of sea-bottom erosion, sea-bottom subsidence, impact by fishing gear or anchors, sea-bottom scour by ice, or other conditions particular to the area in which the pipeline is to be constructed and operated.

11.3 Design information

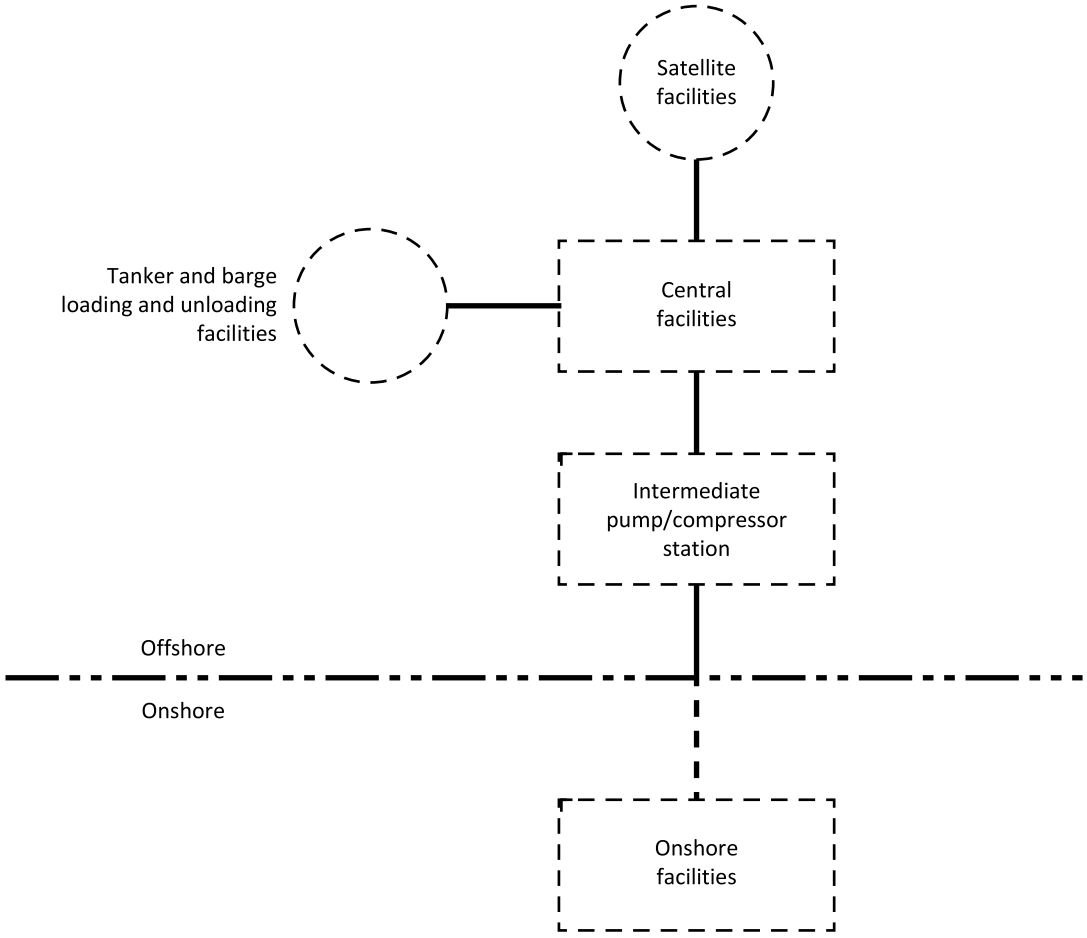
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.3.1 Pipeline route

Factors to be considered in the selection of pipeline routes shall include
a) seabed bathymetry and morphology, including major seabed features such as uneven terrain, deep valleys, canyons, boulder fields, and rock outcrops;
b) landfall topography, shore approach, onshore facilities, and land use;
c) geophysical zones and geotechnical conditions;
d) geohazards, including mass movement such as erosion, slides, and slope stability; seismic activity such as faulting and liquefaction; and natural mechanism such as shallow gas, hydrates, and vents;
e) seabed and coastal hydraulic processes such as erosion, sediment transport, seabed mobility, strudel scour, and water channel migration;
f) existing seabed infrastructure such as pipelines, cables, and subsea facilities;
g) type and intensity of existing marine operations, including commercial traffic, fishing zones, military exercise areas, exploration and development activities, and dredging operations;
h) type and intensity of future marine operations, developments, or infrastructure;
i) seabed obstructions such as shipwrecks, ocean dumping areas, military ordnance, and magnetometer contacts;
j) installation constraints or requirements for connection with facilities;

k) regional ice features including the potential for ice keel interaction and ice gouge events;
l) environmental corrosivity or resistivity;
m) archaeological sites, ecological reserves, and environmentally sensitive regions; and
n) potential consequences of pipeline rupture.

Figure 11.1
Scope diagram
(See Clause 11.1.1.)



Notes:
1) *Pipelines indicated by solid lines are within the scope of this Clause.*
2) *Facilities and pipelines indicated by dashed lines are outside the scope of this Clause.*
3) *Limits of offshore pipelines are further defined in Figures 11.2 to 11.5.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 11.2
Subsea completion to platform and platform to shore (typical arrangement)
(See Clause 11.1.1 and Figure 11.1.)

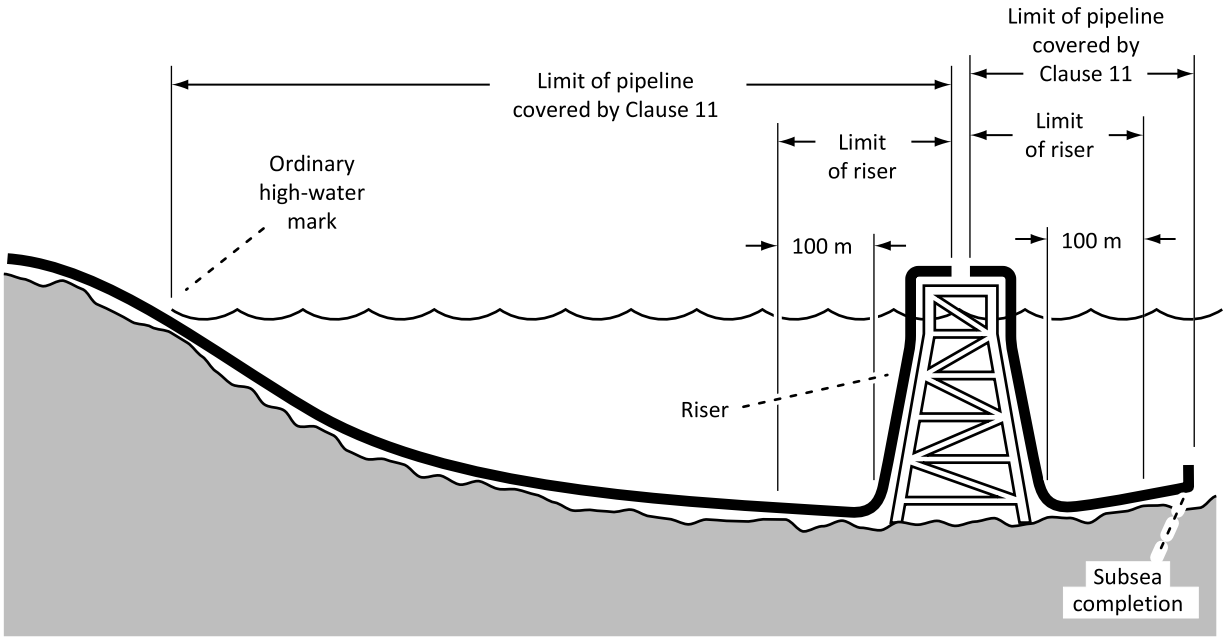
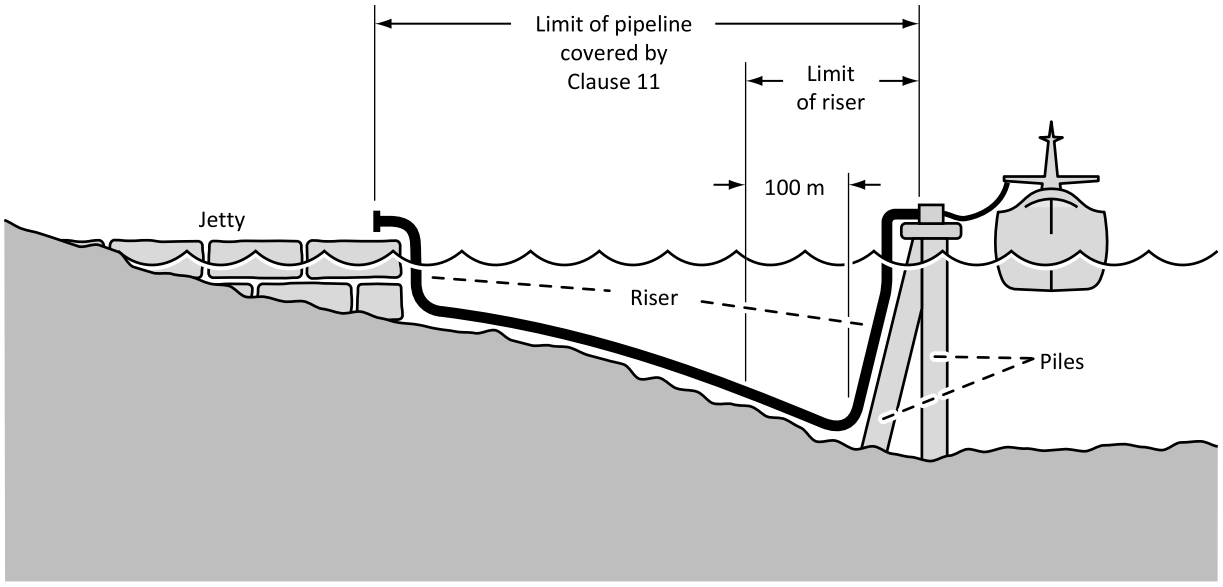


Figure 11.3
Landward jetty system and offshore loading/unloading system (typical arrangement)
(See Clause 11.1.1 and Figure 11.1.)



© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 11.4
Artificial island (typical arrangement)
(See Clause 11.1.1 and Figure 11.1.)

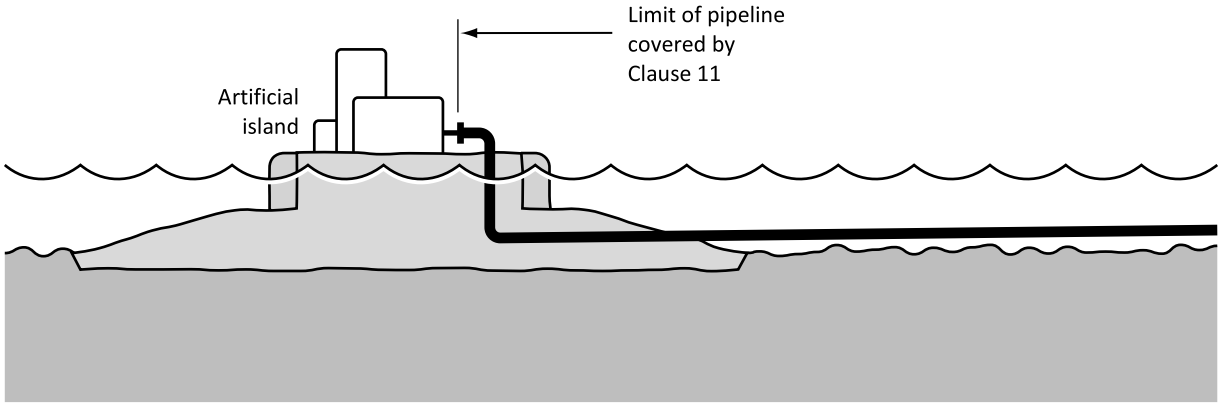
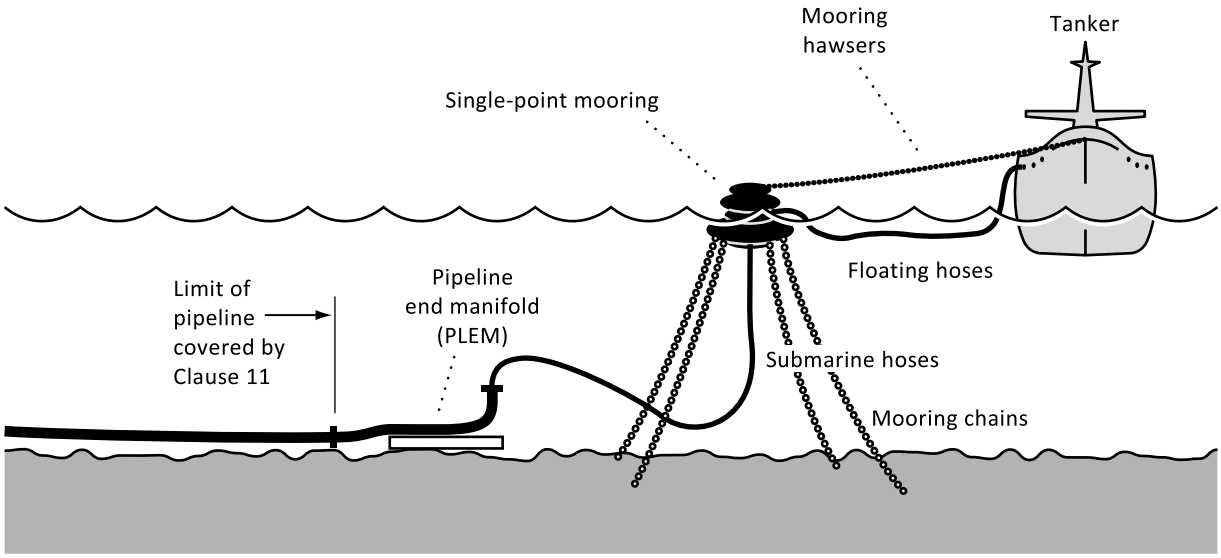


Figure 11.5
Single-point mooring system (typical arrangement)
(See Clause 11.1.1 and Figure 11.1.)



11.3.2 Route survey and data acquisition

11.3.2.1

Engineering surveys shall be performed within an appropriate survey corridor to provide sufficient data for design, construction, and operation with consideration of the factors listed in Clause 11.3.1. The engineering surveys shall

a) examine survey procedures, equipment resolution, and accuracy, and their potential impact on data bias and uncertainty;
b) examine sampling frequency with respect to spatial and temporal variability;
c) establish a sufficient survey corridor width for safe installation and operation; and

 © 2015 CSA Group

d) develop route alignment maps that identify all relevant factors that influence pipeline route selection as listed in Clause 11.3.1.

Note: *Seabed features, physical processes, and environmental conditions can dictate further detailed investigations (e.g., sediment transport mechanisms or shallow gas hazards) and can also require engineering surveys to be conducted over successive seasons (e.g., ice gouging).*

11.3.2.2

Sea-bottom features influencing the stability and installation of pipelines shall be investigated. Such features should include

a) water depth and profile of the sea-bottom;
b) the location and extent of obstructions in the form of rock outcrops, large boulders, and other anomalies that could necessitate a change of pipeline location or levelling or removal operations prior to pipeline installation;
c) the location and extent of features such as potentially unstable slopes, sand waves, deep valleys, and erosion in the form of scour patterns or material deposits; and
d) the location of pipelines, cables, and other structures that can be subject to damage during pipeline installation.

11.3.2.3

Geotechnical properties necessary for evaluating the effects of relevant loading conditions and for the assessment of potentially unstable features shall be determined for the sea-bottom.

Note: *Supplementary information can be obtained from geological surveys, sea-bottom investigations, or chemical analysis and laboratory testing of samples from borings.*

11.3.2.4

The environmental data to be gathered and considered for design and construction include those related to wind, waves, current, tide, ice conditions, air and water temperatures, water density, corrosiveness, and the potential for marine growth.

11.3.3 Pipeline operating conditions

The physical properties and chemical composition of the fluids to be transported and their pressures and temperatures along the pipeline shall be considered.

11.4 Design and load conditions

11.4.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Levels of permissible stress and strain in pipelines shall be considered for the following design conditions:

a) construction; and
b) operation.

Note: *Construction includes installation and pressure testing.*

11.4.2

Pipelines shall be designed for the following load conditions:

a) functional loads (Load Condition A); and

© 2015 CSA Group

b) environmental loads and simultaneously acting functional loads (Load Condition B).

Notes:

1) *Where applicable, load conditions should include the effects of accidental loads (see Clause 11.6.9).*

2) *Functional loads and environmental loads are specified in Clauses 11.5 and 11.6, respectively.*

11.4.3

Both Load Condition A and Load Condition B shall be applied for design conditions of construction and operation given in Clause 11.4.1. For each pipeline segment or cross-section to be considered, the relevant combinations, position, and direction of forces that can act simultaneously shall be used in the analysis.

11.5 Functional loads

11.5.1

Functional loads include all construction and operating loads other than environmental loads.

11.5.2

Where applicable, the cyclical variation of functional loads shall be considered.

11.5.3

Where applicable, the functional loads during construction shall account for, in appropriate combinations, the following:

a) masses, which include
   i) pipe;
   ii) coating and its absorbed water;
   iii) contents of the pipeline; and
   iv) attachments to the pipeline;
b) pressures, which include
   i) distribution of external hydrostatic pressure;
   ii) internal pressure; and
   iii) soil pressure for buried pipelines; and
c) forces, which include those acting on the pipeline due to construction.

Notes:

1) *Variations in mass resulting from manufacturing and construction tolerances should be considered.*

2) *Buoyancy is accounted for by the determination of the effects of external hydrostatic pressure.*

3) *When considering functional loads for pressure testing, the internal pressure is the maximum test pressure.*

11.5.4

Where applicable, the functional loads during operation shall account for, in appropriate combinations,

a) masses, which include
   i) pipe;
   ii) coating and its absorbed water;
   iii) contents of the pipeline; and
   iv) attachments to the pipeline;
b) pressures, which include
   i) maximum internal fluid design pressure;
   ii) external hydrostatic pressure; and
   iii) soil pressure for buried pipelines;

 © 2015 CSA Group

c) thermal expansion and contraction;
d) prestressing (e.g., a permanent curvature or a permanent elongation introduced during construction); and
e) pipeline anchoring.

Notes:

1) *Variations in mass resulting from manufacturing and construction tolerances should be considered.*

2) *Buoyancy is accounted for by the determination of the effects of external hydrostatic pressure.*

11.6 Environmental loads

11.6.1 General

11.6.1.1

Environmental loads shall include all loads due to wind, waves, current, ice conditions, regional ice features, seismic activity, and other natural phenomena.

11.6.1.2

Where relevant, the cyclical variation of environmental loads shall be considered.

11.6.1.3

The total effect resulting from the simultaneous occurrence of environmental loads that can occur during pipeline construction and operation shall be considered. Statistical methods shall be used to evaluate the maximum environmental loads that are random in nature.

Note: *Where applicable, a return period of not less than 100 years should be used to determine the maximum environmental loads during operation.*

11.6.1.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For installation, the maximum environmental loads shall be considered for each load combination case, taking into account the season of the year, the installation procedure and equipment selected, the precautions taken, and the potential consequences of exceeding the loads. The return period selected to establish the maximum environmental loads shall take into account the construction phase duration, historical data records and hindcast analysis, methodology and scope of forecasting techniques employed, and potential consequences.

11.6.2 Wind forces

The wind data used for the determination of wind forces shall be based on statistical information. In conjunction with maximum wave forces, the one-minute sustained wind shall be used, except that where gust wind alone is more unfavourable than the combination of sustained wind and wave, the three-second gust wind shall be used.

11.6.3 Hydrodynamic loads — General

Hydrodynamic loads, caused by the relative motion between the pipe and the surrounding liquid, shall be determined, taking into account the contributions of waves, currents, and where significant, pipe motions.

11.6.4 Wave-induced and current-induced hydrodynamic loads

11.6.4.1

Wave-induced hydrodynamic loads acting on pipelines shall be calculated based on the wave theory appropriate to the water depth and the parameters of the wave or shall be based on reliable and adequate model tests.

11.6.4.2

Where hydrodynamic loads such as inertia, drag, and lift forces act in combination, suitable techniques shall be used to determine their effects.

Note: *In the determination of the hydrodynamic coefficients involved, relevant model test data may be used.*

11.6.4.3

For calculations of hydrodynamic loads, the following shall be taken into account:

a) for the determination of wave-induced loads, any influences of adjacent structural parts; and
b) where risers consist of a number of closely spaced pipes, shielding and solidification effects due to flow interference between the pipes.

Note: *The solidification effect refers to the overall effect of fluid entrapment within a pipe bundle on the hydrodynamic response of the bundle and individual pipes.*

11.6.4.4

Current-induced hydrodynamic loads shall be considered alone and in conjunction with wave-induced loads.

11.6.5 Loads due to ice conditions and regional ice features

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.6.5.1

For locations where ice conditions or ice features can prevail, occur, or develop, the ice loads on the pipeline during its installation and operation shall be taken into account. In addition, the regional characteristics of the ice conditions and ice features corresponding to the different seasons shall be considered. Probabilistic methods and reliability-based design approach may be used and shall be in accordance with recognized engineering practice.

11.6.5.2

Environmental data to characterize the ice regime with respect to route-specific geographic location, season, ice type, dimensions, mechanical properties, drift speed, and direction shall be evaluated. Loads and load effects arising from ice features shall be calculated in accordance with recognized practice. The application of numerical models, physical models, and full-scale data may be used to evaluate ice loads and shall account for ice mechanics, scale effects, ice failure processes, and interaction mechanisms. The principles and methodology of CAN/CSA-S471 or other recognized engineering practices may be used.

11.6.5.3

Additional detailed survey investigations can be necessary to establish design parameters for ice gouge events. Ice gouge data acquired through *in-situ* ice gouge field surveys represent the preferred option to obtain site-specific data. The parameters to be determined include gouge width, depth and length, gouge orientation, recurrence rate, and seabed geotechnical conditions. The ice gouge event frequency,

 © 2015 CSA Group

residence time due to gouge erosion, gouge infilling or seabed mobility, and instrumentation accuracy, bias, and error on gouge data reliability shall be considered.

11.6.5.4

Where field ice gouge data is absent or limited, mathematical models may be used to establish or augment the ice gouge design parameters. Sufficient data to define the environmental driving forces, ice regime, and seabed geotechnical conditions shall be established.

11.6.5.5

Ice gouge interaction forces, soil failure processes, gouge clearing mechanisms, and subgouge deformations shall be evaluated for ice features gouging the seabed. The mechanics of ice gouge events and subgouge deformation shall be evaluated through recognized engineering best practice that includes field investigations, physical modelling (e.g., reduced-scale 1-g experiments or centrifuge modelling techniques), analytical solutions, and numerical methods (e.g., finite element analysis). The analysis shall evaluate the significance of data and technical uncertainty, and the limitations and constraints of the selected approach. The significance of decoupling the ice feature/seabed interaction process from the pipeline/soil interaction event shall be evaluated.

11.6.5.6

Load-control, displacement-control, and dynamic load effects arising from freely floating, seabed gouging, seabed grounding, and shoreline ride-up ice features shall be considered.

11.6.5.7

Loads due to icing and spray ice accretion shall be evaluated. Load effects due to gravity, expansion, wind loads, hydrodynamic loads and companion process, and ice thaw impact shall be considered.

11.6.6 Seismic activity

11.6.6.1

Seismic hazards shall be considered. Empirical relationships based on historical events and standardized seismic hazard spectra may be used with the recurrence interval appropriate for the pipeline design life. Data on geology, seismology, and geotechnical conditions shall be considered. Limitations and constraints of the data record shall be evaluated with respect to site-specific conditions that can influence the seismic hazard energy distribution and amplitude, frequency content, and duration. Factors that shall be considered include the type of active faults, source proximity, signal attenuation, and signal amplification. The principles and methodology of CAN/CSA-S471 or another recognized method may be used.

11.6.6.2

Loads due to ground stress wave propagation, permanent ground deformation, fault movements, and coupled dynamic loads and deformations with connected infrastructure shall be considered.

11.6.6.3

The potential for related seismic-induced effects (e.g., rock slides, slope instability, liquefaction, turbidity slides, tsunamis, and other natural phenomena) shall be considered.

11.6.7 Loads arising from marine growth

The effects of marine growth on risers and pipelines with respect to effective diameter, mass, roughness, hydrodynamic drag, and added mass coefficients shall be considered.

11.6.8 Indirect environmental loads

11.6.8.1

The following conditions, which can occur during pipeline operations and can result in indirect environmental loads on risers, shall be taken into account:

a) significant soil deformation;
b) displacement of the platform due to soil deformation; and
c) significant platform deformation.

11.6.8.2

The effects of vessel movements during installation due to wind, waves, currents, and ice features shall be considered.

11.6.9 Accidental loads

Accidental loads arising from fire and from marine activities (e.g., impact loads from vessels, trawlboards, anchors, and dropped objects) shall be considered and, where appropriate, detailed estimates of their magnitude and frequency shall be made.

11.7 Design analysis

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.7.1

The design analysis shall be based on accepted engineering principles and recognized engineering practice that meet the minimum requirements of this Standard. The design analysis shall be supported by technical verification and shall demonstrate adherence to the minimum requirements of this Standard.

Note: *Technical verification may include theoretical analysis; physical modelling investigations (e.g., full-scale, reduced-scale, or centrifuge experimental methods); in-situ studies and field trials; numerical modelling studies; or a combination thereof.*

11.7.2

Simplified methods may be used provided that the technical approach has been demonstrated to be conservative. More detailed and advanced methods may be used (e.g., theoretical analysis, physical modelling, and numerical methods), provided that the minimum requirements of this Standard are met.

11.7.3

Strain-based design, limit states design, and reliability-based design methods may be considered provided that the design analysis, including selection of partial safety factors and target reliability levels, has been supported by technical verification and has demonstrated adherence to the minimum requirements of this Standard.

Note: *Annex C provides guidance on limit states design.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.7.4
The effects of nonlinear geometric and material behaviour, residual stress and residual strain, accumulated plastic strain, global and local stress concentrations, and strain concentrations shall be considered.

11.7.5
The design analysis shall consider the stress and strain behaviour for load conditions that result in static and dynamic load effects.

11.8 Design for mechanical strength

11.8.1 Design criteria for installation
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.8.1.1
Pipelines shall be analyzed with regard to the intended installation techniques and procedures and the expected limitations and characteristics of the installation equipment.

11.8.1.2
The maximum permissible installation strain in the pipe wall, in any plane of orientation, shall not exceed 0.025 (2.5%).

Notes:

1) *For other than seamless pipe, a maximum permissible tensile strain in the pipe wall of less than 0.025 (2.5%) can be warranted.*

2) *Where plastic strains are anticipated, the ability of welds to undergo such strains without detrimental effect should be considered.*

3) *Except for pipelines having small diameter-to-wall thickness ratios, pipelines are generally not limited by this maximum permissible strain, but they are limited by collapse (see Clause 11.8.1.4) or other criteria.*

4) *See Clause 11.20.2.4.*

11.8.1.3
For all failure modes, the effective pipe stiffness during installation shall be used in all moment-curvature analysis and the effects of weight-coating, field joints, and attachments such as buckle arresters on the stiffness shall be taken into account.

Note: *The effective pipe stiffness is normally less than the nominal pipe stiffness.*

11.8.1.4
Designs shall be checked to confirm that the pipeline does not collapse during installation. Collapse analysis shall take into account the effects of permanent strains (ovalization and reduced stiffness) in the pipeline.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.8.2 Design criteria for pressure testing

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.8.2.1

Pipeline design analysis shall account for the expected pressure-test conditions and the properties of the pressure-test medium.

Note: *The functional and environmental loads to be considered for pressure testing are different from those for operating conditions.*

11.8.2.2

Pipelines shall be designed to withstand strength test pressures as specified in Clause 11.24.3.2 in such a way that during pressure testing, the maximum combined effective stress shall not exceed the allowable stress (see Clause 11.8.4).

11.8.2.3

Where the temperature of the medium used for the pressure testing of the pipeline is different from the ambient pipeline temperature, the stresses and strains induced by thermal expansion and contraction shall be taken into account.

11.8.3 Design criteria for operation

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.8.3.1

Pipelines shall be analyzed for the loading conditions described in Clauses 11.4.2 and 11.4.3.

11.8.3.2

For stresses other than those resulting from strain-controlled loads due to frost heave, subsidence, or earthquake, the maximum combined effective stress, *Sc*, based on the design wall thickness, shall not exceed the allowable stress (see Clause 11.8.4). Where applicable, stresses induced by dynamic response phenomena shall be taken into account.

11.8.3.3

Pipelines shall be designed to resist collapse during operation. Collapse analysis of the pipeline or riser shall consider the effects of permanent strains (ovalization and reduced stiffness) that would be induced as a result of fabrication, installation, and repair.

11.8.3.4

Where strain-controlled loads due to frost heave, subsidence, or earthquake can exist, the resultant tensile strain, in any plane of orientation in the pipe wall, shall not exceed 0.025 (2.5%) less any strain residual from installation.

Notes:

1) *For other than seamless pipe, a maximum permissible tensile strain in the pipe wall of less than 0.025 (2.5%) can be warranted.*

2) *Where plastic strains are anticipated, the ability of welds to undergo such strains without detrimental effect should be considered.*

3) *See Clause 11.20.2.4.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.8.3.5

For the analysis of stresses and strains, the effects of the weight-coating and other attachments on the bending stiffness and stress distribution shall be considered.

11.8.4 Determination of stresses

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.8.4.1

The circumferential stress due to the effects of internal and external fluid pressure shall be calculated using the following formula:

$$S_h = (P_i - P_e)\frac{D}{2t_{min}}$$

where

S_h = hoop stress, MPa

P_i = internal design pressure, MPa

P_e = external hydrostatic pressure, MPa

D = nominal outside pipe diameter, mm

t_{min} = specified minimum pipe wall thickness, mm

Note: *The specified minimum wall thickness is the nominal wall thickness less any specified allowances for corrosion, abrasion, and under-thickness tolerance of the applicable pipe standard or specification.*

11.8.4.2

For thick-walled pipe with a D/t ratio less than or equal to 20, the circumferential stress due to the effects of internal and external fluid pressure may be calculated using the Lamé formula, provided that the design remains elastic, using the following formula:

$$S_h = (P_i - P_e)\frac{D_o^2 + D_i^2}{D_o^2 - D_i^2}$$

where

D_o = nominal outside pipe diameter, mm

D_i = nominal internal pipe diameter, mm

Note: *The nominal internal pipe diameter is the outside diameter minus twice the wall thickness less any specified allowances for corrosion or abrasion.*

11.8.4.3

The longitudinal stress due to axial forces arising from functional, environmental, construction, and accidental loads shall be considered. Longitudinal stress can arise from gravity loads, differential temperature, pressure, flexure, and other load conditions. Determination of pipe wall forces shall include consideration of the effects of surrounding soil, physical supports and guides, appurtenances, changes in pipeline geometry, and end cap effects. Effective axial force shall be considered.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.8.4.4

The equivalent stress for combined loads, such as circumferential, longitudinal, and shear, arising from functional, environmental, construction, and accidental loads shall be calculated using the von Mises stress criterion with the following formula:

$$S_{eq} = (S_h^2 + S_l^2 - S_h S_l + 3\tau^2)^{0.5}$$

where

S_{eq} = equivalent stress, MPa

S_h = total hoop stress, MPa

S_l = total longitudinal stress, MPa

τ = tangential shear stress, MPa

The equivalent stress may be calculated using nominal diameter and nominal wall thickness values. Radial stresses may be neglected when appropriate.

11.8.4.5

The allowable hoop stress or equivalent stress shall be determined using the following formula:

$$S_a = F \times T \times S$$

where

S_a = allowable stress, MPa

F = design factor (see Table 11.1)

T = temperature factor (see Table 4.4)

S = specified minimum yield strength, MPa

The effects of operating temperatures, forming, heat treatment, and other thermal process on material selection, potential material aging effects, and yield strength derating shall also be considered in the selection of the temperature factor.

11.8.5 Pipe wall thickness specification

Additional thickness shall be added to the sum of the design wall thickness and any specified allowances for corrosion or abrasion to account for the under-thickness tolerance of the applicable pipe standard or specification.

11.8.6 Strain-based design

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.8.6.1

Strain-based design may be used as an alternative to the stress-based approach. The design analysis shall be supported by technical verification. The effects of nonlinear geometric and material behaviour, residual stress and residual strain, accumulated plastic strain, global and local stress concentrations, and strain concentrations shall be considered. The circumferential hoop stress shall be calculated in accordance with Clauses 11.8.4.1 and 11.8.4.2.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.8.6.2

The limit on equivalent stress (Clause 11.8.4.5) may be replaced by a strain-based design approach for pipeline operations, provided that

a) pipeline deformations arise from non-cyclic displacement-controlled events (e.g., permanent ground deformation) or support movement due to environmental load events (e.g., subsidence, frost heave, thaw settlement, seismic fault movement, and liquefaction).
b) pipeline deformations arise from non-cyclic load-controlled or displacement-controlled events in which the potential pipeline displacements are bounded by fixed geometric constraints prior to exceeding the permissible strain limit. This condition can arise for pipeline spans with a limited gap distance.
c) elastoplastic pipeline deformations arise from the initial application of non-cyclic maximum functional loads without further plastic deformation.

Table 11.1
Design factors
(See Clauses 11.8.4.5 and 11.16.1.2.)

	Load condition*		
	A	B	Pressure testing
Location	Hoop stress (functional load due to fluid pressure)	Equivalent stress arising from functional and environmental or accidental loads	Equivalent stress arising from construction or hydrotest loads
Pipelines	0.77†	1.00	1.00
Risers	0.67	0.80	1.00
Pig trap and assemblies	0.67	0.80	1.00
Landfall and shore approach	0.67	0.80	1.00

* *See Clause 11.4.2.*

† *The hoop stress design factor may be increased to 0.80 for pipelines conveying nonflammable and nontoxic fluids.*

Notes:

1) *The design factors are based on the design wall thickness of the pipe.*
2) *The use of lower design factors for pipelines in locations that are subject to public assembly or permanent public occupancy shall be considered.*
3) *For pipelines that are to be located in areas where floating production facilities are situated overhead, the portions of pipelines within a horizontal distance of 100 m of the anticipated excursion of the facility shall be designed using the design factor given for risers.*

11.8.6.3

Strain-based design for fabrication and installation shall not be used for cyclic or fatigue load conditions.

© 2015 CSA Group

11.8.7 Strain-based design criteria

11.8.7.1
The potential impact of using strain-based design on other design analyses and design criteria for the design, materials, fabrication, installation, testing, commissioning, operation, maintenance, requalification, and abandonment of offshore steel pipelines shall be evaluated. Factors that may be considered include the reduction in pipeline cover or changes in flexural capacity due to large deformation ground movement and potential impact on in-service buckling.

11.8.7.2
The application of strain-based design methods shall evaluate pipeline integrity for potential failure modes that include bursting, ovalization and ratcheting, accumulated plastic strain, damage, global and local buckling, unstable fracture, and plastic collapse and impact. Other relevant potential failure modes shall be considered.

11.8.7.3
The application of strain-based design methods shall evaluate pipeline mechanical integrity and safety for serviceability conditions to maintain operations and ultimate strength conditions to maintain pressure integrity and containment. The appropriate design load parameters and return periods shall be established with a level of safety consistent with this Standard. Probabilistic methods and a reliability-based design approach may be used and shall be in accordance with recognized engineering practice.

11.8.7.4
The engineering analysis may be supported by theoretical calculations, experimental investigations, centrifuge or other physical modelling techniques, and numerical methods, provided that the investigations are representative of the failure mode or criteria being evaluated. The validity and reliability of these techniques shall be demonstrated.

11.9 Design for thermal expansion
The effects of temperature variations on the deformation of pipelines shall be included in the design analysis for determining pipeline movement; particular consideration shall be given to risers. The long-term effects of temperature variations due to shutdown and start-up cycles shall be included in such analysis.

11.10 Design for on-bottom stability

11.10.1
Pipelines shall be designed to accommodate movements associated with offshore structure deformation, thermal expansion and contraction, settlement after installation, and local sea-bottom erosion near offshore structures. The stability analysis of the pipeline shall include consideration of the integrity of the coatings and attachments.

Note: *Pipelines should be designed to reduce the potential for movement from their installed positions.*

11.10.2
For pipelines located on or near slopes, the potential for slope failure shall be considered.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.10.3
Pipelines shall be designed for vertical stability, based upon being water-filled. Where the density of the water-filled pipeline is greater than that of the soil, the depth of penetration shall be appropriately limited.

11.10.4
Pipelines shall be designed for vertical stability, based upon being gas-filled or air-filled. For pipelines that are to be buried, the density of gas-filled or air-filled pipelines shall be equal to or greater than that of the overburden, except where it can be shown that the shear strength of the overburden would always be sufficient to prevent pipeline uplift.

11.10.5
For shallow water locations, the design analysis shall include the repeated loading effects due to wave action, which can result in an increase in pore pressure and lead to a reduction of the effective shear strength of the soil.

11.10.6
Pipelines shall be designed for transverse stability in the horizontal plane given expected wave and current conditions. Where restraint to pipeline movement is provided only by mobilized resistance (often termed friction) between the pipe and the sea-bottom, or from partial pipe embedment in the supporting soil, such restraint shall be estimated using a minimum factor of safety of 1.1.

Note: *The resistance to pipeline movement on the sea-bottom is often related to the submerged pipeline mass per unit length. The ratio of these values, termed the coefficient of friction, differs for the transverse and longitudinal directions, and has a wide range of variation depending on sea-bottom materials and pipeline surface roughness. Applied resistance values should be based on relevant sea-bottom soil data and applicable field experience or laboratory tests.*

11.10.7
Pipelines shall be designed for transverse and longitudinal stability in the horizontal plane. Sufficient flexibility shall be provided near platforms and other points of restraint as specified in Clause 11.9.

11.11 Design for fatigue life
Pipelines shall be designed for adequate fatigue life. Stress fluctuations imposed during the entire life of the pipeline, including those imposed during the installation phase, shall be estimated. Such stress fluctuations can result from wind effects, vortex shedding, wave and current action, fluctuations in operating pressure and temperature, and other variable loading effects. Corrosion and strain effects on the fatigue life shall also be considered.

Note: *Coatings and appurtenances should be considered in fatigue-life analysis.*

11.12 Design for free spans, anchoring, and supports
Stresses resulting from free spans, anchoring, and supports shall be included in the determination of the maximum combined effective stress (see Clause 11.8.4.4).

11.13 Design for shore approaches

11.13.1
Pipeline stability and environmental aspects shall be taken into account in the design and installation of pipeline shore approaches.

11.13.2

Where the temperature of buried pipelines is less than 0 °C, the frost heave potential of the soil shall be determined. The stresses and strains resulting from differential frost heave combined with the stresses and strains resulting from other loading conditions shall be as specified in Clause 11.8.

Note: *Low pipeline temperatures are typically due to ambient water temperatures; however, gas pipeline temperatures can be lower than the ambient water temperatures due to the Joule-Thompson effect. In such instances, particularly where pipelines encounter fresh groundwater, the potential for differential frost heave can be significant.*

11.13.3

Where the temperature of buried pipelines is equal to or greater than 0 °C and the pipelines are in proximity to permafrost, potential pipeline movements arising from thaw settlement shall be considered. The potential effects of freeze-back on pipelines shall also be considered.

11.14 Design for components

11.14.1

The effects of restraints such as support friction, branch connections, and lateral interferences shall be considered.

11.14.2

Where appropriate, stress concentrations caused by components and the flexibility of components shall be taken into account.

Note: *In the absence of more directly applicable data, the flexibility and stress intensification factors given in Table 4.8 should be used.*

11.15 Design for crossings

11.15.1

There shall be at least 0.3 m of clearance between pipelines and any structures, cables, and pipelines that they cross. Where a clearance of 0.3 m is not practical, protection from potential damage shall be provided by sandbagging, burial, or other suitable means.

11.15.2

Precautions shall be taken to prevent electrical contact of the pipelines with the facilities they are crossing.

11.16 Pipeline components and fabrication details

11.16.1 General

11.16.1.1

Components of pipeline systems, such as valves, flanges, fittings, riser elbows, abandonment caps, pulling heads, and special assemblies, shall be capable of withstanding construction and operating loads without failure or leakage and without impairment of serviceability.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.16.1.2
Pipeline assemblies, such as pig traps and side valve assemblies, shall be designed using the design factors given in Table 11.1.

11.16.2 Supports, braces, anchors, and buckle arresters

11.16.2.1
Pipe supports shall be designed to avoid imposing excessive local stresses on the pipe and excessive axial or lateral friction forces that can prevent the desired freedom of movement.

Note: *Braces and damping devices can be necessary to limit vibration.*

11.16.2.2
Attachments to pipe shall be designed to minimize additional stresses in the pipe wall. Non-integral attachments, such as pipe clamps and ring girders, are preferred where they fulfill the supporting or anchoring function.

Note: *Design for corrosion control can necessitate electrical separation of the attachment from the pipeline.*

11.16.2.3
Where buckle arresters are installed in pipelines to reduce the risk of propagating buckles, the pipeline design shall account for the effects of the mass, strength, and spacing of such buckle arresters.

Note: *The design, materials, manufacture, and installation of buckle arresters should be based on theoretical or experimental results.*

11.16.3 Mechanical connectors
Mechanical connectors shall be designed as specified in Clause 11.23.

11.16.4 Welded branch connections and reinforcements
Welded branch connections and reinforcements of single and multiple connections shall be designed as specified in Clauses 4.3.16 to 4.3.20.

11.16.5 Reducers
Reductions in line size shall be made using smoothly contoured reducers made to an appropriate standard or specification.

11.16.6 Weight-coating

11.16.6.1
Weight-coating design shall include material selection and application requirements to ensure that the weight-coating is suitable for the intended purpose.

Note: *Where the required external weight-coating mass is small compared to the mass of the pipe itself, and depending on the application procedure to be used, it can be necessary to increase the weight-coating thickness to achieve adequate adherence and durability.*

11.16.6.2
Cement used in concrete weight-coating shall be as specified in CSA A3001 or CSA A3002, whichever is applicable. Where admixtures are to be used, the proportions and resultant concrete properties shall be verified by trial mixes and appropriate testing.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.16.6.3
Where bottom tow or bottom pull methods are used for pipeline installation, weight-coatings shall be designed to withstand excessive loss from abrasion caused by contact between the sea-bottom and the pipeline during the towing or pulling operation in such a way that the stability of the pipeline is maintained.

11.16.6.4
Change in negative buoyancy due to water absorption or loss can be critical for bottom pull, bottom tow, or deepwater laybarge installation methods. For such methods, the effects of gain or loss of water by weight-coatings shall be taken into account.

11.16.6.5
Selection of the types and amounts of reinforcement shall take into account anticipated pipeline loadings, operating conditions, cracking patterns, and the effects on pipe stiffness.

Note: *Pre-grooving of weight-coating should be considered where short-radius pipe curvatures during installation are considered.*

11.16.6.6
Reinforcing steel shall not make electrical contact with the pipe or anodes.

11.16.6.7
Water used in concrete mixes shall be free from contaminants in amounts likely to affect adversely the desired properties of the concrete or the reinforcement.

11.16.6.8
Reinforcement fabrication or application shall be such as to provide continuity of the hoop reinforcement. Reinforcing steel shall be accurately placed and adequately supported.

11.16.6.9
Concrete mix designs shall be qualified by trial mixes and the results of strength and density tests shall be documented. Aggregates used shall have suitable strength and durability characteristics and shall be free from deleterious substances.

11.16.6.10
Concrete shall be applied to the pipe using equipment and procedures that will ensure the concrete coating has uniform thickness, density, and strength. Curing conditions and duration shall be such that the strength and durability requirements for the concrete are achieved.

11.16.6.11
Aggregates shall be tested at regular intervals during concrete production. The frequency of testing shall be determined taking into account the quality and uniformity of the material, and the material handling and storage methods.

11.16.6.12
During production, concrete shall be tested for thickness, strength, and density at a frequency of 1 sample per 15 pipes coated or 1 sample per shift, whichever is the greater.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.16.6.13
Electrical measurements shall be performed to demonstrate that there is no contact between the weight-coating reinforcement and the pipe.

11.16.6.14
Where different bulk density weight-coatings are to be used, the coated pipe shall be distinctly marked.

11.16.7 Thermal insulation
Where thermal insulation is used, consideration shall be given to its watertightness, compressive strength, and shear strength.

11.17 Pipeline pressure control

11.17.1
Pipelines connected to fluid sources that can operate at higher pressures than the maximum operating pressure of such pipelines shall be equipped with pressure-control systems to prevent operation above the maximum operating pressure.

11.17.2
Where failure of the pressure-control system, or other factors, can cause the maximum operating pressure of the pipeline to be exceeded, overpressure protection shall be installed to ensure that the maximum operating pressure of the pipeline is not exceeded by more than 10%.

11.18 Leak detection
Where appropriate, pipelines shall have leak detection systems. Leak detection devices and procedures, where used, shall be capable of providing early detection of leaks. Where appropriate, line balance methods may be used.

Note: *Adequate leak detection systems for gas and multiphase pipelines are not necessarily available.*

11.19 Emergency shutdown valve
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For a pipeline carrying gas and connected to a staffed facility, consideration shall be given to the installation of a pipeline emergency shutdown (ESD) valve at a suitable location, taking into account potential pipeline discharge volume, pipeline riser proximity to personnel, the arrangement of surface equipment, and ESD valve access for maintenance and testing.

11.20 Materials
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.20.1 General

11.20.1.1
Materials shall be as specified in Clause 5.1 and shall have adequate properties to withstand all anticipated conditions during the transport and handling of the materials and the construction, operation, and maintenance of the pipeline.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.20.1.2
Materials specified for pipelines shall be suitable for the conditions to which they are to be subjected. Such materials shall be qualified for such conditions by compliance with certain standards and specifications and the special requirements of Clause 11.20.

11.20.1.3
The materials requirements of piping for sour service, as defined in Clause 16.2, shall be as specified in Clause 16.4.

11.20.2 Pipe

11.20.2.1
Pipe shall be made of steel.

11.20.2.2
Continuous welded pipe shall not be used.

11.20.2.3
For pipelines designed using elastoplastic design criteria, consideration shall be given to specifying mechanical property requirements in addition to those required by the referenced pipe manufacturing standards or specifications.

11.20.2.4
For pipelines designed using elastoplastic design criteria, acceptable stress/strain characteristics for the pipe to be used shall be specified. Test results shall be documented.

11.20.2.5
The pipe shall have proven notch toughness properties as specified in Clause 5.2. In determining the toughness requirements of pipeline materials, consideration shall be given to

a) the pressure-test fluid and the fluid to be transported and their decompression characteristics;
b) construction and operating loads; and
c) construction and operating temperatures.

Note: *Additional toughness tests to determine the resistance to fracture of materials or to determine the tolerance of materials and welds to imperfections, or both, can be necessary.*

11.20.3 Fittings, flanges, and valves

11.20.3.1
Steel fittings, flanges, and valves shall be manufactured as specified in Clauses 5.2.5 to 5.2.9, except that threaded valves larger than NPS 2 shall not be used.

11.20.3.2
Valves with cast iron bodies shall not be used.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.21 Installation

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.21.1 General

11.21.1.1

Procedures shall be documented and shall specify the essential parameters that are to be controlled, taking into account the pipeline route, the limitations of equipment for pipe handling, weight-coating, thermal insulation, pipeline installation, and pressure testing, and the tolerances or variations of the data pertaining to the environmental and sea-bottom conditions.

11.21.1.2

Construction activities shall not endanger existing installations.

11.21.2 Transportation, handling, and storage of materials

11.21.2.1

Transportation, handling, and storage of pipeline materials shall be such that damage is avoided and such materials shall be protected from contamination and deterioration.

Note: *Particular attention should be given to any local pipe deformation due to concentrated contact.*

11.21.2.2

Where pipes of different grades or wall thicknesses are used, particular care shall be taken to maintain proper identification during handling and installation.

11.21.3 Ancillary equipment and specialty items

Ancillary equipment and specialty items used for pipeline construction shall be fabricated in accordance with applicable industry standards and good practice.

Note: *This requirement applies to ancillary equipment (e.g., buoys, pulling sleds, and post-trenching plows and sleds) and to specialty items (e.g., underwater measuring tools, tie-in assembly handling equipment, pipe support brackets and clamps, spacer bars, crossing spacer cradles, and any other items not exposed to pipeline pressures).*

11.21.4 Installation procedures

11.21.4.1

Position control systems shall be implemented in such a way that pipelines are installed in selected positions within specified tolerances. The surveying procedure used for pipeline installation shall be consistent with the route survey procedure specified in Clause 11.3.2 and shall be based upon reference points and a grid system consistent with those used in the original survey.

11.21.4.2

Individual pipe ends shall be inspected immediately before they are joined to the pipeline. Pipes shall be swabbed, where necessary, to provide a clean inside surface and inspected to confirm damage-free bevels and proper joint alignment immediately prior to field joining.

Note: *For pipeline installation by laybarge and where warranted by water depth, pipe size, construction equipment, and other conditions, continuous monitoring for buckles should be considered.*

© 2015 CSA Group

11.21.4.3
Tie-in operations shall be performed in accordance with documented tie-in construction procedures.

11.21.4.4
The accuracy of any underwater measurements taken prior to making tie-in assemblies, making tie-in joints, and preparing for placing pipelines shall be sufficient to determine that, after installation, the stresses and strains in the pipeline are within prescribed limits. Particular consideration shall be given to risers.

11.21.4.5
Where backfill is required, care shall be taken in its placement to prevent damage to the pipe and coating.

11.21.5 Installation inspection

11.21.5.1
Pipeline inspection shall be performed in accordance with documented procedures. Provision shall be made for inspection by qualified inspectors of all aspects of installation to determine that pipelines are installed in accordance with the applicable standards, specifications, procedures, plans, and drawings.

11.21.5.2
Pipe and components shall be inspected before coating and before and after assembly into the pipeline. Any defects shall be removed as specified in Clause 11.21.6 or 11.21.7, whichever is applicable.

11.21.5.3
Girth welds shall be inspected as specified in Clause 11.22.4.2.

11.21.5.4
Pipe installed by the reel method shall be inspected after straightening to determine that the quality of the coating has not been impaired. Coating faults shall be repaired.

11.21.5.5
Installed pipelines shall be inspected for verification of condition and position.

Note: *Where the pipeline is to be placed below or buried below the sea-bottom, or covered by placed material, such inspection is normally performed before and after such construction operations.*

11.21.5.6
Where inspection of installed pipelines indicates conditions that are not allowed, remedial procedures shall be undertaken to correct such conditions.

Notes:

1) *Such conditions can include long unsupported spans, contact with rock outcrops or sea-bottom debris, localized loss of weight-coating, excessive pipe bending from laying operations, and pipe damage from anchor contact.*

2) *Such remedial procedures may include provision of pipe anchors, use of sandbags, local placement of stabilization material over the pipe, repositioning of pipeline sections, and pipeline section replacement.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.21.6 Repair of pipe and components prior to installation

11.21.6.1

The repair of pipe and components having surface defects prior to installation shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Surface defects shall be removed by grinding the pipe surface smooth, provided that the minimum wall thickness requirements are maintained.
b) Where repairs by grinding result or would result in a wall thickness less than the minimum permissible wall thickness, the affected portions shall be removed as cylinders.
c) Pipe and components having surface defects shall not be repaired by welding.

11.21.6.2

Pipe containing body laminations shall be removed as a cylinder.

11.21.6.3

Pipe that is distorted or flattened beyond the limits of the standard or specification according to which it was purchased shall not be used.

11.21.6.4

Pipe containing dents shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Dents that contain stress concentrators (e.g., gouges, grooves, and arc burns) and dents that are located in a weld zone and are greater than 6 mm in depth shall be removed by cutting out the affected pipe as a cylinder.
b) Dents that are in pipe 323.9 mm OD or smaller and are deeper than 6 mm and dents that are in pipe larger than 323.9 mm OD and are deeper than 2% of the outside diameter shall be removed by cutting out the affected pipe as a cylinder.

11.21.6.5

Wrinkle bends shall not be allowed.

11.21.7 Repair of pipelines after installation

Pipelines located on the sea-bottom that cannot be reasonably brought to the surface for repair in accordance with the methods specified in Clause 11.21.6 shall be repaired in place as specified in Clause 11.26.10.

11.21.8 As-built surveys

As-built surveys, to provide data to be used for the production of accurate post-construction route maps, shall be performed prior to pipeline operation and shall be based upon reference points and a grid system consistent with those used in the installation of the pipeline.

11.21.9 Commissioning

Commissioning of pipelines shall be performed in accordance with documented procedures.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.22 Welding

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.22.1 General

Clause 11.22 covers requirements for arc and gas welding of pipe and components. Except as required by Clauses 11.22.2 to 11.22.5, welding shall be as specified in Clause 7.2.

11.22.2 Qualification of welding procedures

11.22.2.1

Qualification of welding procedures shall be performed using equipment that is the same as or equivalent to that to be used in production welding. Actual or simulated production site conditions shall be employed, with consideration given to positioning, restraint, and support.

11.22.2.2

In addition to the requirements of Clause 7.6.4, welding procedure specifications for underwater welding shall include, where applicable,

a) pressure range surrounding the welding arc;
b) gas composition range inside the chamber;
c) maximum humidity;
d) temperature range inside the chamber; and
e) temperature of the material to be welded.

11.22.2.3

In addition to the requirements of Clause 7.6.5 or Clause K.3.2, whichever is applicable, essential changes for underwater welding shall include, where applicable

a) for pressure surrounding the welding arc: a change beyond the specified range;
b) for gas composition within the chamber: a change beyond the specified range; and
c) for humidity: an increase beyond the specified maximum.

11.22.3 Testing of welded joints — Pipe butt welds

11.22.3.1

Test welds shall be tested for resistance to the initiation of fracture in both installation and operating conditions. Pipe and welding consumables shall be selected and tested to determine that the fracture toughness properties of the HAZ and weld metal are suitable for the conditions to which they are to be subjected.

11.22.3.2

For non-sour service, the macrohardness of the deposited weld metal and HAZ, determined as specified in ASTM E18, shall not exceed 30 HRC.

11.22.3.3

For sour service, the macrohardness of the deposited weld metal and HAZ shall be limited as specified in Clause 16.6.4

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.22.4 Production welding

11.22.4.1

Except as allowed by Clauses 11.22.5, the metal surfaces in, and adjacent to, the welding groove shall be dry before welding commences and while welding is in progress.

11.22.4.2

Girth welds shall be visually inspected on the outside and nondestructively inspected for 100% of each weld circumference.

11.22.5 Underwater welding

Underwater welding shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Except as allowed by Item b), acceptable underwater welding methods shall be one-atmosphere welding and hyperbaric dry chamber welding.
b) Wet welding may be used for pipelines to be operated at stress levels not greater than 20% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.
c) The methods of storage and handling of welding consumables on the support vessel and within the welding chamber, as well as the procedures for sealing and transfer from one to the other, shall be documented.
d) Welders shall be trained to accommodate the effects of changes in pressure, temperature, and atmosphere on welding.

Notes:

1) *Where possible, low-hydrogen welding processes should be used.*

2) *AWS D3.6M may be used.*

11.23 Mechanical connectors

11.23.1

Mechanical connectors may be used to join pipelines to offshore platforms, underwater facilities, and other pipelines, and to effect repairs to damaged pipelines, provided that

a) A prototype connector of similar size and design has been subjected to tests that demonstrate that the connector has sufficient strength to withstand the strains and stresses to which the connector can be subjected during construction and operation. (Where vibration, fatigue, low temperature, thermal expansion and contraction, or other cyclical or severe conditions are anticipated, such applicable conditions shall be incorporated in the tests.)
b) Adequate provision has been made to prevent separation of the connector and to prevent longitudinal or lateral movement beyond the limits provided for in the joining member.

11.23.2

For mechanical connectors intended to be used in corrosive service,

a) the connector shall be designed so that an acceptable corrosion control method can be implemented at the joint; or
b) the connector shall be constructed of, or coated with, a corrosion-resistant material.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.24 Pressure testing

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.24.1 General

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except for those tie-in welds for which pressure testing is not practical, pipelines shall be pressure tested prior to commissioning as specified in Clauses 11.24.2 to 11.24.6. Pressure testing and where applicable, dewatering and drying shall be performed in accordance with documented procedures. Discharge of test fluids and disposal of debris shall be performed without harmful effects on the environment.

Notes:

1) *Such procedures typically identify a source of water in sufficient quantities for high-rate pipe filling and any treatment (corrosion inhibitor or biocide) needed if the test fluid is to remain in the pipeline for a considerable time prior to pipeline commissioning.*

2) *Short sections of pipe and fabricated components, such as scraper traps and manifolds, may be pressure tested separately from the pipeline.*

11.24.2 Testing of mechanical connector assemblies

Where it is not possible to pressure test mechanical connector assemblies after installation, the assembly pipe sections shall be pressure-tested prior to installation at pressures equal to or greater than those required for the completed pipeline. Where practical, subsequent to installation, the mechanical connector seals shall be pressure-tested.

11.24.3 Test pressure

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.24.3.1

Prior to pressure testing, the installed condition of the pipeline and the environmental conditions in which it is located shall be determined and assessed with respect to the limiting criteria used in the design.

11.24.3.2

Pipelines shall be subjected to strength test pressures of at least 1.25 times their intended maximum operating pressures. Strength test pressures shall be maintained for a continuous period of not less than 4 h and shall be followed by leak tests.

11.24.3.3

The maximum operating pressure shall be the lesser of either the strength test pressure divided by 1.25 or the maximum internal fluid design pressure.

11.24.3.4

Pipelines shall be subjected to minimum leak test pressures of 1.1 times their intended maximum operating pressures. Following a reasonable period to allow for stabilization of the pressure-test medium, leak test pressures shall be maintained for a continuous period of not less than 4 h in cases where a liquid pressure-test medium is used. For gaseous pressure-test mediums, continuous leak tests of not less than 24 h shall be maintained. Consideration shall be given to longer test durations for

 © 2015 CSA Group

section lengths in excess of 30 km, based upon the total test section volume and the leak detection capability.

11.24.4 Pressure-test medium

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The pressure-test medium shall be air, water, or another appropriate fluid, excluding fluids containing H_2S as defined in Note 2) in Clause 10.2.10. Where air is used, precautions shall be taken to prevent the development of an explosive mixture of air and hydrocarbons.

Note: *Where air or gas is used, consideration should be given to*

a) *problems involved in obtaining a satisfactory test due to the difficulties in stabilizing the temperature of the pressure-test medium and in detecting small leaks; and*
b) *fracture resistance properties as specified in Clause 11.20.2.5.*

11.24.5 Safety during pressure tests

Testing procedures for pipelines shall include documented instructions for the safety of personnel during the test.

11.24.6 Pressure-test records

The operating company shall retain a record of each pressure test performed. Such records shall contain at least the following information:

a) time and date of test;
b) pipe specifications;
c) elevation profile and the location of the test section and testing points, where applicable;
d) pressure-test medium used;
e) test pressure at lowest elevation;
f) test duration;
g) pressure- and temperature-recording charts, where applicable;
h) pressure-volume chart, where applicable; and
i) location of any leaks or failures and description of repair action taken.

11.25 Corrosion control

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.25.1 General

Clause 11.25 covers the provisions for the corrosion control of offshore steel pipelines that modify, or are additional to, the provisions of Clause 9.

Note: *CGA OCC-1 should be used as a guide for the design, installation, monitoring, and maintenance of internal and external corrosion control systems for steel pipelines.*

11.25.2 External corrosion control — Protective coatings

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.25.2.1

Protective coatings shall be

a) effective in electrically isolating the external surface of the pipeline from its environment;
b) resistant to degradation of electrical properties during service (e.g., effect of water absorption);
c) resistant to damage from handling, pipeline installation, and anticipated service conditions;

 © 2015 CSA Group

d) capable of withstanding installation temperatures and maximum expected pipe curvature without disbonding;
e) resistant to deterioration due to temperature and pressure variations;
f) compatible with the pipeline material, weight-coating, and cathodic protection;
g) resistant to underfilm water migration;
h) resistant to disbonding, cold flow, embrittlement, cracking, pinholing, and other inherent weaknesses;
i) resistant to chemical, biological, and microbiological deterioration; and
j) compatible with the materials and procedures employed for coating field joints.

Note: *Where weight-coating is applied by the impingement method, consideration should be given to the application of a barrier coating to avoid damage to the protective coating.*

11.25.2.2

Splash zone coatings for pipeline risers shall provide resistance to the adverse effects of sunlight, wave action, and mechanical damage.

Note: *Additional protective measures can be necessary in the presence of ice.*

11.25.3 External corrosion control — Cathodic protection systems

Cathodic protection systems shall be designed as follows:

a) Impressed current systems shall provide sufficient current to satisfy the selected criteria for corrosion protection.
b) Sacrificial anode systems shall employ only alloys that have been successfully tested for offshore applications.
c) Sacrificial anode systems shall be designed either for periodic anode replacement or for the life of the pipeline.
d) Cathodic protection system components shall be installed at locations where the risk of damage is reduced.
e) The potential for electrical interference currents from and to neighbouring pipelines, structures, and cables shall be considered.
f) An allowance for water depth and provisions for the effects of electrical current variations over time shall be considered.
g) Insulation or insulating joints shall be installed where electrical isolation is necessary for proper cathodic protection.

11.25.4 Internal corrosion control

11.25.4.1

Operating companies shall periodically test for corrosive agents and, depending on the results of such testing, shall institute and maintain programs to mitigate and monitor internal corrosion.

Note: *Internal corrosion can be mitigated by the adoption of one or more of the following: scraping, pigging, or sphering at regular intervals; dehydration; inhibition; biocides; oxygen scavengers; and internal coating.*

11.25.4.2

Internal protective coatings shall be resistant to deterioration caused by exposure to the fluid being transported.

Note: *Selection of internal protective coatings should involve consideration of the applicable requirements specified for external coatings in Clause 11.25.2.1.*

© 2015 CSA Group

11.25.5 Maintenance of cathodic protection systems

The effectiveness of cathodic protection systems shall be assessed a minimum of once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 15 months between assessments. Voltage and current outputs of impressed current systems shall be verified and recorded a minimum of six times per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 10 weeks between verifications. Interference bonds whose failure would jeopardize pipeline protection shall be checked for proper operation a minimum of six times per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 10 weeks between checks.

Note: *CGA OCC-1 provides guidelines for operation and maintenance.*

11.25.6 Records

Records of the design, installation, and operation of corrosion control systems shall be maintained for the life of the pipeline.

Note: *CGA OCC-1 provides guidelines for record-keeping.*

11.26 Operating and maintenance

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

11.26.1 General

11.26.1.1

Clause 11.26 covers provisions for the operation and maintenance of offshore pipelines that modify, or are additional to, the provisions of Clause 10.

11.26.1.2

Operating companies shall

a) have documented plans covering operating and maintenance procedures;
b) establish a documented contingency plan to be implemented in the event of failures or other emergencies;
c) analyze and document all failures and accidents for the purpose of determining their causes and minimizing the possibility of recurrence;
d) keep up-to-date maps, charts, and records to administer the plans and procedures properly;
e) modify the plans, charts, and procedures from time to time as experience dictates and as changes in operating conditions require; and
f) establish liaisons with the authorities responsible for dredging, fishing, and other operations in the area of the pipeline to reduce the risk of damage to the pipeline and possible consequent environmental damage.

11.26.2 Manual of operating procedures

11.26.2.1

Operating companies shall have a manual of operating procedures, based on experience, knowledge of facilities and of fluids transported, good engineering practices, and safety, and shall

a) operate and maintain their pipelines in accordance with the manual;
b) provide and maintain necessary maps, records, and drawings; and
c) amend the manual as required.

© 2015 CSA Group

11.26.2.2
The manual of operating procedures shall address the concerns set out in Clauses 11.26.4 to 11.26.12.

11.26.2.3
Particular attention shall be given to the plans and procedures for those portions of the pipeline presenting the greatest risk to the environment.

11.26.3 Contingency manual

11.26.3.1
Contingency manuals shall include plans to be implemented in the event of system failures, accidents, and other pipeline emergencies and shall include procedures for prompt and expedient remedial action, taking into account the safety of personnel, minimization of property damage, protection of the environment, limitation of discharge from the pipeline, and pollution control measures.

11.26.3.2
Plans shall provide for training of personnel responsible for emergency action. Personnel shall be informed of the characteristics of the fluids in the pipelines, safe practices for handling accidental discharges, and the repair procedures for the pipelines.

11.26.3.3
Procedures shall cover the notification of all parties involved in the emergency action and liaison with federal, provincial, and local agencies.

11.26.3.4
Plans shall include procedures for operation, shutdown, and start-up during periods of adverse weather.

11.26.4 Communication systems
Communication systems shall be adequate to meet the requirements for safe pipeline operation and maintenance.

11.26.5 Inspection and patrolling of pipelines

11.26.5.1
Inspections shall be performed to detect pipeline movements or unusual conditions in the pipeline system during and immediately after start-up.

11.26.5.2
Special inspections shall be performed where events occur that can impair the safety, strength, or stability of the pipeline.

Note: *Such events include*

a) *damage or suspected damage to the pipeline;*
b) *signs of deterioration of the pipeline;*
c) *alterations, repairs, or replacements to the pipeline;*
d) *major changes in operating conditions; and*
e) *scour or suspected scour.*

© 2015 CSA Group

11.26.5.3

Underwater portions of the pipeline, or the pipeline route where the pipeline is not exposed, shall be visually inspected regularly, at appropriate intervals.

Note: *The frequency and extent of such inspections should be based on factors such as the following:*

a) *type of inspection;*
b) *design and function of the pipeline;*
c) *sea-bottom conditions and protection;*
d) *environmental conditions;*
e) *corrosion or sea-bottom erosion conditions;*
f) *traffic density;*
g) *experience gained in earlier inspections; and*
h) *consequences of failure.*

11.26.5.4

The pipeline route shall be patrolled at regular intervals to observe

a) surface conditions along the route;
b) evidence of leaks, construction, or unusual marine activity; and
c) other factors that can affect the safety or operation of the pipeline.

11.26.5.5

Risers shall be visually inspected for corrosion, physical damage, and unexpected movement a minimum of once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 18 months between inspections. The extent of observed damage shall be determined and the riser shall be repaired or replaced if necessary.

11.26.5.6

Where riser corrosion is evident, a supplementary program of riser wall thickness inspection and monitoring shall be implemented, with such inspection programs repeated a minimum of once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 18 months between inspections.

11.26.6 Leak detection

Leak detection equipment shall be calibrated periodically.

11.26.7 Valves

Valves shall be inspected and serviced whenever necessary. Valves that, during normal operation, are not opened or closed regularly shall be at least partially operated a minimum of once per calendar year, with a maximum interval of 12 months between operations.

11.26.8 Control and safety devices

11.26.8.1

Control and safety devices shall be inspected and tested at least annually to determine that such devices are functioning properly. Records of such tests and inspections, including any corrective actions taken, shall be kept.

11.26.8.2

Control and safety devices on pipelines operating at 90% or more of the maximum operating pressure shall be set by dead-weight testing to within 2% of the desired pressure.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.26.9 Safety

11.26.9.1

Operating companies shall have safety training programs for their employees. Such programs shall be directed towards the safe operation and maintenance of the pipeline.

11.26.9.2

Where pipelines are purged by or of air, special care shall be exercised to prevent the creation of an explosive mixture. Where necessary, inert gas buffers shall be used.

11.26.9.3

For pipelines containing fluids containing H_2S, as defined in Note 2) in Clause 10.2.10, the requirements of Clause 10.2.10 shall apply.

11.26.10 Repair of pipelines

Temporary and permanent repairs to pipelines shall be made as specified in Clauses 6, 7, 10, and 11, except that mechanical connector assemblies may be used instead of replacement sections of pipe. Welds and mechanical connections shall be made as specified in Clauses 11.22 to 11.23.

11.26.11 Records

The following records shall be maintained for an appropriate period of time:

a) material and construction specifications and reports;
b) route maps and alignment sheets;
c) coating and cathodic protection specifications;
d) pressure-test data as specified in Clause 11.24.6;
e) nondestructive inspection data;
f) necessary operational data;
g) pipeline inspection records;
h) corrosion mitigation records as specified in Clause 11.25.6;
i) leak and break records, and failure investigation records;
j) records of safety equipment inspections; and
k) records of other inspections, such as those of external or internal pipe conditions when the pipelines were cut or hot tapped.

11.26.12 Pipeline deactivation and reactivation

Pipeline deactivation and reactivation shall be as specified in Clause 10.15.

© 2015 CSA Group

12 Gas distribution systems

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

12.1 General

12.1.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clause 12 covers requirements specific to gas distribution systems, as shown in Figure 12.1.

Note: *Where specifically referenced, some requirements are applicable to piping for systems other than gas distribution systems, provided that any steel piping is intended to be operated at hoop stresses of less than 30% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.*

12.1.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clause 12 does not apply to steel distribution or service lines intended to be operated at hoop stresses of 30% or more of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

Note: *Steel distribution lines to be upgraded for operation at hoop stresses of 30% or more of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe can necessitate significant modifications.*

12.2 Applicability

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The provisions in Clauses 1 to 10 shall also be applicable to gas distribution systems, except insofar as such provisions are specifically modified or voided by the provisions in Clause 12.

12.3 Gas containing hydrogen sulphide

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Distribution systems shall not be used to convey gas containing more than an average of 7 mg of hydrogen sulphide per cubic metre of gas at an absolute pressure of 101.325 kPa at 15 °C.

12.4 Design

12.4.1 Steel piping

12.4.1.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 12.4, gas distribution systems made of steel shall be designed as specified in Clause 4.

12.4.1.2

Where the intended maximum operating pressure does not exceed 860 kPa, the design wall thickness of steel pipe and tubing used for service lines shall be determined by using the formula in Clause 4.3.5.1, with *L* taken to be 0.50 and *P* taken to be 860 kPa, except that in no case shall the nominal wall thickness be less than 0.9 mm.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.4.1.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except when permitted by Clause 12.4.1.4, piping containing compression fittings having elastomeric gaskets shall be designed to prevent separation. Forces that shall be considered include those caused by the following:

a) thermal expansion and contraction;
b) vibration;
c) earth settlement;
d) frost heave; and
e) external loads.

Note: *Elimination of natural restraints, such as uncovering the pipeline, can cause the compression fitting and pipe joint to separate.*

12.4.1.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

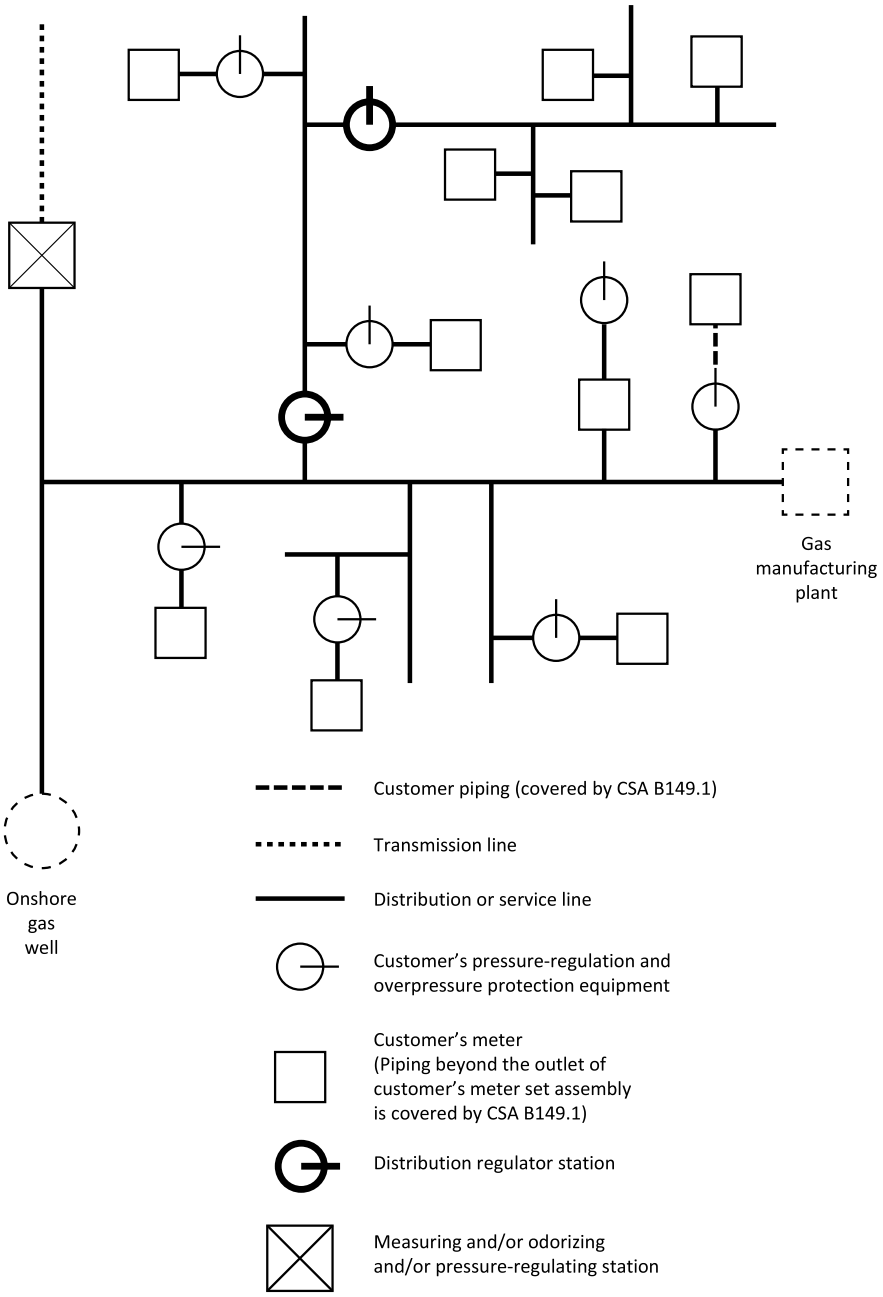
Designs in which unrestrained compression fittings having elastomeric gaskets and pipe are intended to provide a weak link in the event of excessive pullout forces shall be subject to an engineering assessment that accounts for the following:

a) safety;
b) knowledge of the facility;
c) operation and maintenance experience; and
d) location.

© 2015 CSA Group

Δ

Figure 12.1
Scope diagram
(See Clauses 2.2 and 12.1.1.)



Notes:

1) *Facilities and pipelines indicated by solid lines are within the scope of a gas distribution system.*

2) *Facilities and pipelines indicated by dashed lines are outside the scope of a gas distribution system.*

© 2015 CSA Group

12.4.2 Polyethylene piping — Design pressure

12.4.2.1

The design requirements in Clause 12 for polyethylene compounds also apply to other thermoplastic compounds identified in Clause 12.4.6, such as polyamide, unless noted otherwise.

12.4.2.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Subject to the limitations specified in Clause 12.4.3, piping design pressures shall be determined using either of the applicable formulas as follows:

a) HDB-rated materials:

$$P = \frac{2HDB \times F \times F_c}{(R-1)} \quad \text{for pipe}$$

$$P = \frac{2HDB \times t \times F \times F_c}{(D-t)} \quad \text{for tubing}$$

b) MRS and CRS-rated materials:

$$P = \frac{2(MRS \text{ or } CRS) \times F_c}{(R-1) \times C} \quad \text{for pipe}$$

$$P = \frac{2(MRS \text{ or } CRS) \times t \times F_c}{(D-t) \times C} \quad \text{for tubing}$$

where

P = design pressure, MPa

HDB = hydrostatic design basis, MPa — the categorized value of the long-term hydrostatic strength determined in accordance with ASTM D2837 at a fixed time of 100 000 hours (11.1 years) and at a temperature of 23 °C. The *HDB* may also be determined at higher temperatures 38 °C or 60 °C. In this case, the *HDB* at this higher temperature is used in Item a) and there is no need for a temperature factor. For design temperatures between 23 °C and a temperature where the *HDB* was determined, such as 60 °C, the *HDB* is calculated using arithmetic interpolation in accordance with PPI TR-3, and this *HDB* is used in Item a)

F = design factor (for *HDB* only)

F_c = chemical design factor

R = dimension ratio

D = maximum average outside diameter, mm

t = minimum wall thickness, mm

MRS = minimum required strength, MPa — the categorized value of the long-term hydrostatic strength determined in accordance with ISO 9080 and ISO 12162 at a fixed time of 50 years and at a fixed temperature of 20 °C. The *MRS*, which is only determined at this fixed time/temperature, is used to classify the PE material (e.g., PE 100)

 © 2015 CSA Group

CRS = categorized required strength, MPa — the categorized value of the long-term hydrostatic strength determined in accordance with ISO 9080 and ISO 12162 at a selected design time and at a selected design temperature. The design engineer may select the appropriate design time and/or appropriate design temperature for the application. The design pressure using *CRS* is calculated using the same equation as used for the *MRS* in Item b)

Note: *Typical times and/or temperatures for CRS include*

a) *time of 11 years — similar to HDB determined by ASTM D2837;*
b) *time of 100 years — desired design time of 100 years;*
c) *temperature of 14 °C — higher pressure rating at colder temperature; and*
d) *temperature of 60 °C — maximum temperature for PE.*

C = design coefficient (*MRS* or *CRS* only)

HDB, *MRS*, *R*, *D*, and *t* shall be as specified in CSA B137.4.

Note: *Calculated design pressures should be rounded to the nearest 10 kPa.*

12.4.2.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design factor (*F*) or the design coefficient (*C*) to be used in Clause 12.4.2.2 shall be as follows:

a) *HDB*-rated compounds: the design factor (*F*) shall be 0.40 for standard PE compounds. For PLUS Performance PE compounds as specified in Clause 12.5.3.3, the design factor (*F*) shall be 0.45.
b) *MRS* and *CRS*-rated materials: for PE 100 compounds as specified in Clause 12.5.3.5, the design coefficient (*C*) shall be 2.0.

12.4.2.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The chemical design factor (F_c) to be used in the design formula in Clause 12.4.2.2, when liquid hydrocarbons or methanol are present, shall be as given in Table 12.1. The design engineer may determine the appropriate chemical design factor for liquid hydrocarbons between 0.5 and 1.0 based on an engineering assessment taking into consideration the type and concentration of liquid hydrocarbons and duration of exposure.

Table 12.1
Chemical design factor (F_c) for thermoplastic pipe and tubing in the presence of liquid hydrocarbons or methanol
(See Clause 12.4.2.4.)

	Chemical design factor, F_c	
Thermoplastic pipe/tubing	**Liquid hydrocarbons**	**Methanol**
Polyamide	1.0	0.65
Polyethylene	0.5	1.0
Poly (vinyl chloride)	0.5	1.0

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.4.2.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design temperature shall be taken as the expected steady-state operating temperature (average annual temperature) of the pipe or tubing, as follows:

a) for *HDB*-rated compounds:

Design temperature	*HDB*
≤ 23 °C	Published value in PPI TR-4
> 23 °C to < 60 °C or > 60 °C to < 82 °C	Interpolated value from PPI TR-3
60 °C or 82 °C	Published value in PPI TR-4

Note: *Design limitations should be considered in cases of changing operating temperatures. Typically, the average annual temperature is used for design purposes.*

b) for *MRS*- and *CRS*-rated compounds — use *CRS* at the selected design temperature as published in PPI TR-4.

12.4.3 Polyethylene piping — Design limitations

12.4.3.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene pipe, tubing, and components shall not be used at temperatures exceeding 60 °C or where the steady-state operating temperature (average annual temperature) of the pipe or tubing exceeds 30 °C.

12.4.3.2

Polyethylene pipe intended for direct burial shall have a minimum wall thickness of 2.3 mm or greater.

12.4.3.3

Polyethylene pipe intended for insertion in casing shall have a minimum wall thickness of 1.6 mm or greater.

12.4.3.4

Pipe on which saddle fusions are to be performed shall have a minimum wall thickness of 4.2 mm or greater.

12.4.3.5

Joints in polyethylene piping shall be designed and installed to withstand the longitudinal pullout forces caused by contraction of the pipes or by external loadings.

12.4.3.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

When tested in accordance with CSA B137.4 for PE pipe and compounds, the standard PE pipe rapid crack propagation (RCP) full-scale critical pressure shall be at least 1.5 times the maximum operating

 © 2015 CSA Group

pressure. If the RCP small-scale steady state method is used, the RCP full-scale critical pressure shall be determined using the correlation formula in CSA B137.4.

12.4.4 Polyethylene piping — Design pressure of components

Design pressures of polyethylene components shall be not less than the design pressures of the pipe to which they are to be connected.

Δ

12.4.5 Copper pipe and tubing

12.4.5.1

Copper pipe and tubing shall not be used where the pressure exceeds 700 kPa.

12.4.5.2

Copper pipe and tubing shall not be used where piping strains or external loadings can be excessive.

12.4.5.3

Copper pipe and tubing for distribution lines shall have wall thicknesses of at least 1.70 mm.

12.4.5.4

Minimum wall thicknesses for copper pipe and tubing used for service lines shall be not less than those specified in ASTM B88.

12.4.6 Plastic piping materials — Other than polyethylene

12.4.6.1 PVC piping systems

PVC piping and tubing may be used for the repair of existing PVC. The design pressure shall be determined by application of the design formula in Clause 12.4.2.2.

Note: *PVC piping and tubing is frangible in nature; therefore, extra caution should be exercised when excavating near it; similarly, it should only be used for repair if all other alternatives have been exhausted and it should not be used where piping strains or external loading is experienced.*

12.4.6.2 Polyamide (PA) piping systems

Polyamide pipe, tubing, and fittings may be installed and designed in distribution systems in accordance with the requirements for polyethylene pipe, tubing, and fittings in Clause 12, except that for polyamide piping systems, the maximum operating pressure at elevated temperatures up to 82 °C shall be based on the published hydrostatic design basis (HDB) value.

12.4.6.3 Continuous length reinforced thermoplastic pipe and fittings

Continuous length reinforced thermoplastic pipe (RTP) Type 1 may be installed in distribution systems in accordance with the requirements for RTP pipelines in Clause 13.1, except that the maximum pressure rating (MPR) in the design equation in Clause 13.1.2.8 shall be established on the basis of a minimum life expectancy of 50 years. The requirements as specified in Clauses 13.1.1.3 and 13.1.8.2 do not apply.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.4.7 Cover

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

12.4.7.1

The requirements for cover specified in Clause 4.11 shall not apply.

Except as allowed by Clause 12.4.7.2, the cover requirements for buried pipelines shall be as given in Table 12.2.

Note: *Where erosion or other factors are likely to reduce the cover, consideration should be given to providing additional cover or other means of protection.*

12.4.7.2

Where underground structures or adverse subsurface conditions prevent the installation of buried pipelines with the applicable cover given in Table 12.2, such pipelines may be installed with less cover, provided that

a) the pipelines are appropriately protected from physical damage; and
b) pipelines subjected to excessive superimposed loads are cased, bridged, or appropriately strengthened.

12.4.7.3

For polyethylene pipelines with a standard dimension ratio greater than 11, the acceptability of the depth of cover intended to be used shall be confirmed by determining that the combined stresses are within acceptable limits.

12.4.7.4

Precautions shall be taken to prevent electrical contact with, or the imposition of external stresses from or on, any other underground structure or utility.

12.4.7.5

Sufficient clearance shall be maintained, or mitigatory measures installed, between polyethylene pipelines and steam lines, hot water lines, power lines, and other sources of heat, to prevent the temperature of such pipelines from exceeding the limits specified in Clause 12.4.3.1.

12.4.8 Pipelines within road and railway rights-of-way

12.4.8.1 General

The requirements for uncased road crossings specified in Clause 4.12.3.1 c) and d) and the requirements for uncased railway crossing specified in Clause 4.12.3.2 f) shall not apply.

12.4.8.2 Within road rights-of-way

Uncased polyethylene pipelines may be installed within rights-of-way and crossing under roads. The cover of pipelines within and crossing roads shall be as specified in Table 12.2.

12.4.8.3 Within railway rights-of-way

Within railway rights-of-way, pipelines located within 7 m of the centreline of the outermost track, measured at right angles to the centreline of the track, shall be constructed, as follows:

a) For uncased pipelines, the elevation difference between the top of the carrier pipe and the base of the rail shall be at least 2.00 m.

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) For cased pipelines, the elevation difference between the top of the casing pipe and the base of the rail shall be at least 1.20 m.

Where it is not possible to provide such elevation differences, special design and construction procedures shall be used to protect such pipelines from physical damage.

12.4.8.4 Uncased railway crossings

For uncased polyethylene pipeline crossings of railways, the pipe shall have a standard dimension ratio of 11 or less, and the pipeline shall be well supported in a bored hole or with compacted backfill.

Table 12.2
Cover
(See Clauses 12.4.7.1, 12.4.7.2, and 12.4.8.2.)

	Cover for buried pipelines, minimum, m	
Location	**Distribution lines**	**Service lines**
Private property	0.60	0.30*
Right-of-way (road)	0.60	0.45
Right-of-way (railway)	0.75	0.75
Below travelled surface (road)	0.60	0.45
Below base of rail (railway):		
Cased	1.20	1.20
Uncased steel or polyethylene	2.00	2.00
Water crossing	1.20†	1.20†
Drainage or irrigation ditch invert	0.75	0.75

* *Consideration should be given to providing additional cover in areas to be cultivated or gardened.*
† *Reduced cover, but not less than 0.6 m, may be used if analysis demonstrates that the potential for erosion is minimal.*
Note: *Cover is measured to the top of the carrier pipe or casing pipe, whichever is applicable.*

12.4.9 Limitations on operating pressure — General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Operating pressures shall not exceed
a) 860 kPa for service lines that are not equipped with series regulators [see Clause 12.4.11.1 b)];
b) 14 kPa for distribution systems that are equipped with service regulators that do not meet the requirements of Clause 12.4.11.1 a) and do not have the overpressure protective devices specified in Clause 12.4.11.3;
c) 700 kPa for copper piping;
d) pressures that would cause the joints to fail;
e) pressures that would cause the unsafe operation of any connected and properly adjusted low-pressure gas-burning equipment; or
f) for polyethylene piping, the design pressure determined as specified in Clause 12.4.2.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.4.10 Limitations on operating pressure — Piping within customers' buildings

12.4.10.1

Except as allowed by Clauses 12.4.10.2 and 12.4.10.3, the operating pressure of piping within customers' buildings shall not exceed

a) 450 kPa in industrial buildings and in boiler or mechanical rooms located on the roof of commercial buildings;
b) 140 kPa in commercial buildings and in common areas in multi-family residential buildings; or
c) 14 kPa within individual residential units.

12.4.10.2

Except as allowed by Clause 12.4.10.3, the operating pressure shall not exceed 860 kPa for piping between the piping entrance to the building and the pressure regulator in cases where the regulator is installed inside the building. The pressure regulator shall be readily accessible and near the piping entrance.

12.4.10.3

Where customer pressure requirements exceed the applicable limits specified in Clauses 12.4.10.1 and 12.4.10.2, such higher pressures may be supplied, following a documented evaluation of site specific design, installation and operational issues that may include

a) site accessibility;
b) acceptable system pipe and component pressure design;
c) overpressure control;
d) requirement for and ability for remote isolation;
e) site security;
f) physical protection;
g) leak detection;
h) evaluation of site specific risks; and
i) other items that might apply.

12.4.11 Pressure control and overpressure protection

12.4.11.1

For gas delivered to domestic and other small-volume customers, pressures shall be controlled as follows:

a) Where the actual operating pressures of the piping are between 14 kPa and 860 kPa, a service regulator shall be used to control pressures to the customers. The regulator shall conform to the following:
    i) The regulator shall be capable of reducing pipeline system pressures to pressures recommended for household appliances.
    ii) The regulator shall have a single port valve with orifice diameter no greater than that recommended by the manufacturer for the maximum gas pressure at the regulator inlet.
    iii) The valve seat shall be made of resilient material designed to resist abrasion by any impurities in the gas, cutting by the valve, and permanent deformation when pressed against the valve port.
    iv) Pipe connections to the regulator shall not exceed 60.3 mm OD.
    v) The regulator shall be of a type that is capable under normal operating conditions of regulating the downstream pressure within the necessary limits of accuracy and of limiting the

© 2015 CSA Group

build-up of pressure under no-flow conditions to 50% or less of the discharge pressure maintained under flow conditions.

vi) The regulator shall be a self-contained type with no external static or control lines.

vii) The regulator diaphragm case and relief vent shall be designed and tested or located so that the operation of the regulator is not adversely affected by freezing rain, sleet, snow, or ice.

b) Where the maximum operating pressures of the piping exceed 860 kPa, in addition to a service regulator as described in Item a), a second regulator shall be installed upstream from the service regulator. Such upstream regulators shall be set to maintain the pressure at 860 kPa or less, and a protective device shall be installed between the upstream regulator and the service regulator to limit the maximum pressure at the inlet of the service regulator to 860 kPa or the manufacturer's specified safe working pressure for the service regulator, whichever is the lesser, in case the upstream regulator fails to function properly.

12.4.11.2

For large-volume customers, control of the pressure of the gas delivered shall be as specified in Clause 4.18.1 to 4.18.3.

12.4.11.3

For domestic and other small-volume customers, other than those served from low-pressure lines, overpressure protection for piping within customers' buildings shall be provided. Devices for such protection shall be relief valves, monitor regulators, or automatic shutoff devices, which may be an integral part of the service regulators.

12.4.11.4

Types of protective devices used to prevent overpressuring of distribution systems shall be one or more of the following:

a) spring-loaded relief valves complying with the requirements of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII, Division 1;

b) pilot-loaded back-pressure regulators used as relief valves designed so that, in the event of failure of the pilot system or control lines, the regulator will open;

c) weight-loaded relief valves;

d) a monitor regulator installed in series with the operating regulator;

e) a series regulator, installed upstream from the operating regulator;

f) an automatic shutoff device installed in series with the operating regulator; such devices shall remain closed until manually reset;

g) relief valves, internal monitors, and shutoff devices that are an integral part of the regulator; and

h) for low-pressure distribution systems, liquid-seal relief devices that can be set to open accurately and consistently at the desired pressure.

12.4.11.5

Each device for overpressure protection, or combination of such devices, shall have sufficient capacity and shall be set to prevent

a) the pressure from exceeding the applicable limit specified in Clauses 12.4.9 and 12.4.10 by 10% or by 35 kPa, whichever is the greater; and

b) for low-pressure distribution systems, pressures that would cause the unsafe operation of any connected and properly adjusted gas-burning equipment.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.4.11.6
When using a monitor or series regulator configuration, consideration shall be given to the incorporation of a means of detecting the malfunction of the operating regulator.

12.4.12 Distribution system valves — General

12.4.12.1
Valve installations in polyethylene piping shall be designed to protect the pipe material from excessive torsional or shearing loads when the valve or shutoff is operated and from any other secondary stresses that can be exerted through the valve or its enclosure.

12.4.12.2
Valves with cast iron bodies may be used as piping components in distribution systems. Where such valves are used, they shall not be welded, either as part of their manufacture or during installation. Appropriate precautions shall be taken to prevent casting damage from external loading.

Note: *Valves with cast iron bodies have lower bending and shear strengths than the pipe to which they are connected.*

12.4.13 Distribution system valves — Valve location and spacing

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

12.4.13.1
The requirements for valve location and spacing specified in Clause 4.4 shall not apply.

12.4.13.2
Valves in other than low-pressure distribution systems shall be located to limit the time required to shut down a section of the line in an emergency. In determining the spacing of the valves, consideration shall be given to the operating pressure and size of the distribution lines and local physical conditions, as well as the number and type of consumers that can be affected by a shutdown.

12.4.13.3
Valves shall be located to provide for shutting off the flow to each regulator station controlling the flow or pressure of gas in the distribution system. The distance between the valve and regulators shall be sufficient to enable the operation of the valves during an emergency, such as a large gas leak or a fire in the station.

12.4.13.4
Valves, whether for operating or emergency purposes, shall be located in a manner that provides ready access and facilitates their operation during emergencies. Where valves are located in buried boxes or enclosures, ready access shall be required only to the operating stem or mechanism. Boxes and enclosures shall be installed in such a manner that external loads are not transmitted to the distribution lines.

12.4.13.5
Where distribution lines enter customers' buildings, valves shall be installed outside such buildings. Where such a valve is buried, a second valve shall be provided inside the building as close as practical to the piping entrance.

© 2015 CSA Group

Δ **12.4.13.6**

Companies shall evaluate the application of excess flow valves (EFV) on any new and replacement service lines. The evaluation shall include identification of a commercially available EFV that meets the installation and operating requirements.

Note: *Effective EFV operation should consider*

a) *current and future pipe flow parameters;*
b) *the presence of contaminants or constituents that may interfere with EFV operations; and*
c) *operational and maintenance activities that could be limited by an EFV.*

12.4.14 Distribution system valves — Service shutoffs

Δ **12.4.14.1**

Service shutoffs shall meet the requirements of either

a) ASME B16.33 for pressures up to 860 KPa; or
b) for all pressures, the applicable valve standards in Table 5.3.

12.4.14.2

Valves incorporated in meter bars that enable the meters to be bypassed shall not qualify as service shutoffs.

12.4.14.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Service shutoffs in other than low-pressure distribution systems, installed either inside buildings or in confined locations outside buildings where the blowing of gas would be hazardous, shall be designed and constructed to minimize the possibility of their cores being removed, accidentally or wilfully, with ordinary household tools.

Δ **12.4.14.4**

Operating companies shall demonstrate the suitability of valves, including soft seat service shutoffs, for use as service shutoffs, either by conducting their own tests or by reviewing the manufacturer's test results. This demonstration shall include the consideration of the effects of heat, pressure, and external loading on the valve's performance.

12.4.14.5

New and replacement service lines shall be equipped with shutoffs located outside the building in readily accessible locations upstream of the regulator or, where there is no regulator, upstream of the meter. Where such shutoffs are buried, a second readily accessible shutoff shall be installed inside the building as close as practical to the piping entrance. Where several service lines feeding multiple dwelling units are branched from a single supply line, consideration shall be given to the installation of a master shutoff for emergency purposes.

12.4.14.6

Underground service shutoffs shall be located in covered durable curb boxes or standpipes that are designed to enable ready operation of the shutoffs. Curb boxes and standpipes shall be supported independently of the service lines.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.4.14.7

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Operating companies shall consider properly identifying a dedicated line that supplies the gas to a generator that is required for safety purposes. Such service line valves shall be clearly labelled to prevent accidental shutoff.

12.4.15 Customers' meters and service regulators

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *Meter location and installation requirements of Clause 12.4.15 apply to meters that are designed and tested as specified in AGA B109.1 or equivalent.*

12.4.15.1

Customers' meters and service regulators may be located either inside or outside buildings, depending on local conditions. If the service regulator is located inside the building,

a) the service line shall be designed to mitigate an uncontrolled release of gas inside the building if a failure occurs; and
b) the presence of the gas service shall be clearly indicated with permanent marking outside of the building.

Notes:

1) *Permanent marking may be accomplished by labelling or yellow paint and, if practical, words indicating the contents of the piping, as follows:*
   a) *clear indication on the wall of the building using labelling or paint;*
   b) *clear indication on the service piping by labelling or painting the pipe; or*
   c) *pavement markers.*

2) *Examples of satisfactory mitigation methods include, but are not limited to, the following:*
   a) *installing an excess flow valve at or close to the service line connection to the main; or*
   b) *installing an outside above grade shutoff valve prior to the piping entrance.*

12.4.15.2

For service lines requiring series regulation as specified in Clause 12.4.11.1 b), the upstream regulator shall be located outside the building.

12.4.15.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where installed within buildings, customers' meters and regulators shall be in readily accessible locations that afford reasonable protection from thermal stresses and sources of heat, mechanical stresses, and chemical deterioration. Service regulators shall be located near the piping entrance and, where practical, the meters shall be installed at the same locations. For service lines supplying large industrial customers and installations where gas is used at higher than standard service pressure, the regulators may be installed at other readily accessible locations.

12.4.15.4

Where located outside buildings, meters and regulators shall be installed in readily accessible locations. Where outside meters and regulators are installed in locations that do not afford reasonable protection from damage, such protection shall be provided.

© 2015 CSA Group

12.4.15.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Regulators requiring vents for proper and effective operation, unless manufactured or equipped to limit the escape of gas from their vent opening, even in the event of an operating diaphragm failure, to less than 0.071 m^3/h of natural gas or 0.028 m^3/h of propane gas, shall be vented to the outside atmosphere and shall terminate in rain- and insect-resistant fittings. A regulator with vent limiting means, up to 0.071 m^3/h of natural gas or 0.028 m^3/h of propane gas, if installed indoors, shall be installed in a ventilated space only.

Note: *These venting requirements are in accordance with the pressure regulatory requirements for propane and natural gas applications in CSA B149.1.*

12.4.15.6

Where regulator failure would result in the release of gas, open ends of the vents shall be located where the gas can escape freely into the atmosphere and away from any openings in the buildings. Clearances from building openings shall be commensurate with local conditions and the volume of gas that can be released, but shall not be less than those specified in CSA B149.1. Where regulators can be submerged during floods, either a special anti-flood-type breather vent fitting shall be installed or the vent line shall be extended above the height of the expected flood waters.

12.4.15.7

Vaults and pits housing meters and regulators shall be designed and constructed to support the loads that can be imposed upon the meters and regulators.

12.4.15.8

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Meter support shall be provided if the downstream connecting piping is other than rigid piping.

Note: *Inadequate support of the meter can result if the outlet of the meter is connected to flexible metallic tubing.*

12.4.15.9

Regulator and relief vent piping shall be

a) capable of withstanding the maximum pressures as specified in Clauses 12.4.9 and 12.4.10;
b) included in the determination of the relief system capacity specified in Clause 4.18.3.2;
c) composed of metallic material where installed within buildings; and
d) designed, fabricated, and installed to prevent static build-up and mechanical damage where plastic materials are used.

12.4.16 Distribution systems within buildings

12.4.16.1

Meter and regulator installations shall be designed in such a manner that excessive stresses are not imposed upon the connecting piping, meters, or regulators.

12.4.16.2

Piping within buildings shall be in accessible locations or in ventilated ducts or chases and shall be capable of being leak tested in its final position.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.4.17 Liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) pipeline systems

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Notes:

1) *Liquefied petroleum gases typically include butane, propane, and mixtures thereof that can be stored as liquids under moderate pressures (approximately 0.5 to 1.7 MPa at ambient temperatures).*

2) *This Standard covers only certain safety aspects of liquefied petroleum gases in cases where they are vaporized and used as gaseous fuels.*

12.4.17.1

All requirements of this Standard and CSA B149.2 related to design, construction, and operation and maintenance shall apply to pipeline systems handling gaseous butane, propane, or mixtures thereof.

12.4.17.2

Relief valve discharge vents releasing LPG to the atmosphere shall be located to prevent accumulation of the heavy gases at or below ground level.

12.4.17.3

Adequate ventilation shall be provided where excavations are made for the repair of leaks in underground LPG distribution pipelines.

12.4.17.4

The operating pressure of any LPG vapour system shall be low enough to prevent condensation at the expected operating temperature.

12.5 Materials

Δ 12.5.1 General

The requirements of Clause 5.1.2 shall not apply. Materials that comply with appropriate standards or specifications listed in this Standard at the time of purchase may be used for appropriate applications. Such publications shall be

a) the editions listed in, or allowed by, Clause 2; or

b) earlier editions of publications that the company has demonstrated to be suitable.

12.5.2 Steel pipe, tubing, and components

Except as permitted in Clause 12.4.14.1, steel pipe, tubing, and components shall be as specified in a standard or specification given in Table 5.3, with the limitations indicated. Close nipples shall not be used.

12.5.3 Polyethylene pipe, tubing, and components

Δ 12.5.3.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene pipe, tubing, and molded fittings shall be as specified in CSA B137.4. Valves made of polyethylene shall be as specified in ASME B16.40. Fabricated fittings made of polyethylene shall be as specified in ASTM F2206.

© 2015 CSA Group

12.5.3.2

The specific polyethylene pipe or tubing selected for use shall be adequately resistant to the fluids and chemicals that can be encountered.

12.5.3.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The minimum Pennsylvania notch test (PENT) value for HDB-rated PLUS performance PE compounds using the 0.45 design factor shall be 2000 h and the minimum RCP small-scale steady state value shall be 1000 kPa at 0 °C in accordance with Clause 12.4.3.6. Those PLUS performance PE compounds that qualify for a 0.45 design factor shall be designated with a “PLUS” after the pipe material designation code (e.g., PE 2708 PLUS or PE 4710 PLUS).

12.5.3.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For systems using the 0.45 design factor where pipe is made from PLUS performance PE compounds, heat fusion fittings shall be made from PLUS performance PE compounds, or PE 100 compounds in accordance with Clauses 12.5.3.3 or 12.5.3.5.

12.5.3.5

The minimum PENT value for MRS-rated PE 100 compounds using the 2.0 design coefficient shall be 2000 h, and the minimum RCP small-scale steady state value shall be 1000 kPa at 0 °C in accordance with Clause 12.4.3.6.

12.5.3.6

For systems using the 2.0 design coefficient where pipe is made from PE 100 compounds, heat fusion fittings shall be made from PE 100 compounds.

12.5.4 Cast iron valves

The requirements as specified in Clause 5.3.3.7 shall not apply.

Valves with cast iron bodies may be used, provided that

a) the body material is cast iron as specified in ASTM A126 or A395/A395M;
b) the valves are not welded, either as part of their manufacture or during installation; and
c) the operating pressure shall not exceed 1200 kPa.

12.5.5 Polyamide (PA) piping systems

Polyamide (PA) pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be as specified in CSA B137.12. Valves made of PA shall be as specified in ASME B16.40.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.6 Installation

12.6.1 General

12.6.1.1
Piping shall be properly supported on undisturbed or well-compacted soil, so that the piping is not subjected to excessive external loading by the backfill. Backfill materials shall be free of items, such as rocks and building materials, that can cause damage to the piping or its protective coating.

12.6.1.2
Where piping is installed in contaminated soils, consideration shall be given to protecting the coating on steel piping or the polyethylene piping, whichever is applicable.

12.6.2 Steel piping
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Wrinkle bends may be used. Where wrinkle bends in welded pipe are used, the longitudinal weld shall be located as near to 90° from the top of the wrinkle as conditions allow. Wrinkle bends with sharp kinks shall not be used. Wrinkles shall have a spacing, measured along the crotch, not less than a distance equal to the diameter of the pipe. For pipe 406.4 mm OD or larger, the wrinkle shall not produce an angle of more than 1.5° per wrinkle.

Δ

12.6.3 Ditch depth
Ditch depth shall be sufficient to ensure the applicable depth of cover in Clause 12.4.7 can be achieved. The requirements in Clause 6.2.6.2 shall not apply.

12.6.4 Polyethylene piping — General

12.6.4.1
The installation requirements in Clause 12 for polyethylene compounds shall apply to other thermoplastic compounds identified in Clause 12.4.6, such as polyamide, unless noted otherwise.

12.6.4.2
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 12.6.4.6 and Clause 12.6.12.2, polyethylene piping shall not be installed above ground.

12.6.4.3
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene pipe shall not be installed in vaults, unless it is completely encased in gas-tight metal pipe.

12.6.4.4
Polyethylene piping shall be installed in such a way that shear and tensile stresses resulting from installation, backfill, thermal contraction, and external loadings are within acceptable levels.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.6.4.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene pipelines that are not cased with metallic casings shall have electrically conductive wires or other means of locating the pipelines installed with them.

12.6.4.6

Polyethylene piping may be installed on bridges, provided that

a) the temperature of the pipe is as specified in Clause 12.4.3.1; and
b) the pipeline is encased to protect it from ultraviolet radiation and is structurally protected from damage.

12.6.5 Polyethylene piping — Inspection and handling

12.6.5.1

Prior to installation, the pipe shall be carefully inspected for cuts, scratches, gouges, and other imperfections. Pipe containing defects shall be rejected or cylindrical pieces containing such defects shall be cut out.

Note: *A plastic pipe defect is an imperfection whose depth is equal to or greater than 10% of the pipe wall thickness.*

12.6.5.2

The piping shall be inspected during installation for defects such as cuts, scratches, and gouges. Cylindrical pieces containing such defects shall be cut out and replaced.

Note: *A plastic pipe defect is an imperfection whose depth is equal to or greater than 10% of the pipe wall thickness.*

12.6.5.3

Inspection procedures shall be adequate to confirm that sound joints are being made. Joints shall be checked visually for evidence of poor bonding. Where inspection reveals defective joints, they shall be cut out and replaced.

12.6.5.4

Care shall be exercised to protect polyethylene materials from fire, excessive heat, and harmful chemicals.

12.6.5.5

Polyethylene pipe shall be adequately supported and protected during storage and transportation. Pipe and fittings shall be protected from detrimental exposure to direct sunlight.

12.6.6 Polyethylene piping — Direct burial

12.6.6.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene piping shall be laid on undisturbed or well-compacted soil or be otherwise continuously supported and shall not be supported by blocking. The piping shall not be subjected to excessive external loading by the backfill. Backfill materials shall be free of rocks or other materials that can cause

 © 2015 CSA Group

damage to the piping. Where ledge rock, hardpan, or boulders are encountered, the trench bottom shall be padded using sand or compacted fine-grained soils.

12.6.6.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene piping shall be installed with provision for potential contraction.

12.6.6.3

Where long sections of polyethylene pipe are lowered into trenches, care shall be exercised to avoid stresses that can buckle the pipe and to avoid imposing excessive stresses on the joints.

12.6.6.4

The installation of polyethylene pipe installed by ploughing methods shall conform to the following:

a) The pipe shall not be bent during installation to a radius less than the minimum recommended by the manufacturer for the particular pipe used.
b) During installation, the longitudinal force applied on the pipe shall be limited in such a way as to prevent permanent deformation of the pipe.

Note: *Coiled pipe should not be installed by ploughing when the pipe temperature is less than the minimum temperature recommended by the manufacturer.*

12.6.7 Polyethylene piping — Insertion in casing

12.6.7.1

Casing pipes shall be prepared to the extent necessary to remove sharp edges, projections, and abrasive materials that can damage the pipe during or after insertion.

12.6.7.2

Carrier pipes shall be inserted into casing pipes in a manner that protects the carrier pipe during installation. Leading ends of carrier pipes shall be closed before insertion. Care shall be taken to prevent the carrier pipes from bearing on the ends of the casing.

12.6.7.3

Portions of polyethylene carrier pipes exposed due to the removal of sections of casing shall be of sufficient strength to withstand the anticipated external loadings or they shall be protected with bridging pieces capable of withstanding such loadings.

12.6.8 Polyethylene piping — Bends and branches

Changes in direction may be made with bends, tees, or elbows, with the following limitations:

a) Pipes shall not be bent to a radius smaller than the applicable minimum recommended by the manufacturer for the particular pipe used.
b) Bends shall be free of buckles, cracks, and other evidence of damage.
c) Bent portions of pipe shall not contain joints or saddle fusion lateral connections unless the bent portion has a radius larger than the applicable minimum recommended by the applicable pipe or fitting manufacturer, or both. Where the manufacturer's recommendation is not available, a minimum bending radius of 125 pipe diameters shall be used.
d) Where the requirements of Item a) cannot be met, changes in direction shall be made with fittings.
e) Mitred bends shall not be used.

f) Branch connections shall be made with fittings specifically designed for the purpose.

12.6.9 Copper piping

Installation of copper pipe and tubing shall be in accordance with good engineering practice (see Clause 12.7.11 and 12.7.12.3).

12.6.10 Installation of service lines — Drainage

Where there is evidence of condensate in the gas in sufficient quantities to cause interruptions in the gas supply to the customer, service lines shall be sloped to drain into the upstream pipeline or to drip at the low points in the service line.

12.6.11 Installation of service lines into or under buildings

Service lines into or under buildings shall be installed as follows:

a) Buried steel service lines, where installed below grade through the outer foundation walls of buildings, shall be protected against corrosion. Service lines and any sleeves shall be sealed at the foundation walls to prevent entry of gas and water around the pipe.
b) Buried steel and polyethylene service lines, where installed under buildings, shall be encased in gas-tight conduits. Where such service lines supply the buildings beneath which they are installed, the conduits shall be fire-resistant and extend into normally usable and accessible portions of the buildings, and at the points where the conduits terminate, the space between the conduits and the service lines shall be sealed to prevent gas leakage into the building.
c) Steel service lines that are electrically grounded through the house piping shall be electrically isolated at or near the piping entrance to the building (see Clause 9.6.1).
d) Copper service lines may be installed within buildings, provided that any concealed piping and tubing is installed where fittings and joints can be inspected and tested in their final position before being concealed. Any concealed piping and tubing shall be suitably protected against external damage.
e) Buried copper service lines installed through the outer foundation walls of buildings shall be either encased in sleeves or otherwise protected against corrosion; such service lines and any sleeves shall be sealed at the foundation walls to prevent entry of gas and water.
f) Buried copper service lines installed under buildings shall be encased in conduits designed to prevent any gas leaking from such service lines from entering such buildings. Joints shall be of the brazed or soldered type as specified in Clause 12.7.11.4.

12.6.12 Installation of service lines — Additional installation requirements for polyethylene service lines

12.6.12.1

Particular care shall be exercised to prevent damage to service line piping at connections to the distribution line or other facility. Precautions shall be taken to prevent crushing or shearing of piping due to external loading or settling of backfill and to prevent damage resulting from thermal expansion or contraction.

Note: *Measures taken to prevent damage at service connections can include*

a) *using appropriate compaction; and*
b) *installing a protective sleeve at the outlet of the service tee.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.6.12.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Service lines may terminate above ground and outside the building, provided that

a) the aboveground portion of the service line is completely encased with a metallic sheathing of sufficient strength to provide protection from damage; such metallic sheathing shall extend a minimum of 150 mm below grade;
b) the operating temperature of the service line is as specified in Clause 12.4.3.1; and
c) the service line is not subjected to external loading stresses by the customer's meter or its connecting piping.

12.6.12.3

Buried service lines installed through the outer foundations or walls of buildings shall be encased in rigid fire-resistant sleeves with protection from shearing action. Such sleeves shall extend past the outside face of the foundations a sufficient distance to reach undisturbed soil or thoroughly compacted backfill. At points where sleeves terminate inside the foundations or walls, the space between the sleeves and the service lines shall be sealed to prevent leakage into the building. Service lines shall not be exposed inside buildings.

12.6.13 Trenchless installations

12.6.13.1

The requirements for HDD installations as specified in Clause 6.2.11 shall not apply.

12.6.13.2

Prior to trenchless installations, underground structures shall be identified and located to enable the required clearance to be maintained.

Notes:

1) *The drill head, reamer location, or both, should be periodically monitored to determine that the clearance requirements are being met.*

2) *Where the field conditions indicate that the required clearance might be difficult to achieve, the drill head or reamer location should be monitored by exposing some structures to determine that the clearance requirements are being met.*

12.6.13.3

Personnel shall be protected against electrical hazards.

12.6.13.4

Polyethylene pipe shall not be bent to a radius less than the minimum recommended by the manufacturer.

12.6.13.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The longitudinal force applied on the pipe shall not exceed the limit recommended by the pipe manufacturer.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.6.13.6
Drilling fluids and associated waste material shall be disposed of in a manner that minimizes adverse environmental effects.

12.6.13.7
After the installation is completed, the exposed end of the pipe that was pulled through the bore shall be inspected for scratches and other imperfections on the coating or the pipe itself. Where imperfections are found, they shall be evaluated and, if found to be defects, pulling or reaming shall continue until defects are not observed.

12.7 Joining

12.7.1 General

12.7.1.1
Clause 12.7 covers the requirements for joining pipes and components made of steel, polyethylene, or copper.

12.7.1.2
Joining of steel pipes and components shall be as specified in Clause 7, or Clause 7 as specifically modified by the requirements of Clauses 12.7.2 to 12.7.6.

12.7.2 Steel pipe joints and connections — Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Essential changes in welding procedures shall necessitate requalification of the welding procedure specification or establishment and qualification of new welding procedure specifications. Welding procedure specifications shall be limited by the essential changes given in Table 12.3.

12.7.3 Steel pipe joints and connections — Qualification of welders

12.7.3.1
Welders shall be qualified in accordance with one of the following:
a) by qualifying as specified in Clause 7.8;
b) by satisfactorily completing the qualification welds specified in Clauses 12.7.3.2 and 12.7.3.3, using qualified welding procedures for the particular configuration involved; or
c) at the option of the operating company, for welders employed on maintenance welding on pipeline systems, by qualifying as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX.

12.7.3.2
The qualification of welders for butt welds shall be subject to the following requirements:
a) The welder shall make two butt welds with the axis of the pipe either in the horizontal plane or inclined from the horizontal plane at an angle of 45 ± 5°. The first butt weld shall be made on pipe smaller than 60.3 mm OD with a nominal wall thickness of less than 6.4 mm, without the use of a backing strip. Except as allowed by Item b), the second butt weld shall be made on pipe 168.3 mm OD or larger with a nominal wall thickness of 6.4 mm or greater, without the use of a backing strip.

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) Where the operating company's distribution system does not contain pipe 168.3 mm OD or larger, the second butt weld shall be made on pipe having the largest diameter and the thickest wall used in its distribution system; however, if the operating company subsequently installs larger-diameter pipe, the welder shall be requalified on such pipe.
c) The butt welds shall be acceptable if
   i) the requirements specified in Clauses 7.7.2 to 7.7.6 and 7.8.4 are met; or
   ii) at the option of the operating company, the requirements specified in Clause 7.8.5 are met.

Table 12.3
Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications
(See Clauses 12.7.2 and P.2.)

Welding variable change
Welding process Change in welding process
Joint geometry Change from fillet to groove
Carbon equivalent Increase in carbon equivalent exceeding 0.05 for pipe having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 386 MPa
Thickness (t = thickness tested) Change to thickness exceeding 1.0 t* Change to thickness exceeding 1.1 t† Change to thickness exceeding 1.25 t for t > 10 mm Change to thickness exceeding 1.5 t for $t \leq 10$ mm Change to thickness less than 4 mm for t > 10 mm Change to thickness less than 1.5 mm for 1.5 mm < $t \leq 10$ mm
Outside diameter (D = outside diameter tested) Change to OD smaller than 0.5 D Change to OD 60.3 mm or larger for D < 60.3 mm Change to OD larger than 323.9 mm for D from 60.3 mm to 323.9 mm
Composition of welding consumables Change in filler metal classification Change in flux classification
Size of filler metal Change in filler metal size‡ Change in filler metal size greater than one nominal diameter size
Welding position Change from horizontal welding to vertical welding Change from roll welding to position welding Change in direction of welding
Preheating temperature (T_{min} = minimum preheating temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test T_{max} = maximum preheating temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test) Change to preheating temperature more than 25 °C lower than T_{min} Change to preheating temperature more than 25 °C higher than T_{max}, where T_{max} > 200 °C **Interpass temperature** (T_{min} = minimum interpass temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test T_{max} = maximum interpass temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test) Change to interpass temperature more than 25 °C lower than T_{min}

(Continued)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 12.3 (Concluded)

Change to interpass temperature more than 25 °C higher than T_{max}, where T_{max} > 200 °C
Postweld heat treatment Change in postweld heat treatment temperature greater than that allowed by Paragraph QW-407 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX
Shielding gas composition Change of more than 1 in the nominal percentage of any gas constituting more than 5% of the shielding gas
Shielding gas flow rate Change in flow rate exceeding 20%
Welding current type Change in current type (dc+, dc–, ac, or pulsed)
Voltage (*V*), amperage (*I*), travel speed (*S*), and wire speed feed (*F*) for arc welding Change in *V*, *I*, *S*, or *F* exceeding 20% Change in heat input $\left(\frac{V \times I \times 60}{S}\right)$ exceeding 20%
Welding technique Decrease in the number of root bead or second pass welders

* *Applies to oxy-fuel welding only.*
† *Applies to short-circuiting gas metal arc welds.*
‡ *Applies to welds produced by other than shielded metal arc welding.*

Notes:

1) *For branch connections, see also Clause 7.6.5.*

2) *For essential changes for pipe to pipe welds that are to be assessed as specified in Annex K, see Table K.1.*

12.7.3.3

The qualification of welders for branch connections shall be subject to the following provisions:

a) The welder shall weld two branch connections. The first branch connection weld shall be a 60.3 mm OD or smaller branch on a 60.3 mm OD run pipe, with a nominal wall thickness, for both the branch and run pipes, of less than 6.4 mm; the branch connection shall be positioned on the top of the run pipe. Except as allowed by Item b), the second branch connection weld shall be a size-on-size branch connection made on pipe 168.3 mm OD or larger, with a nominal wall thickness of at least 6.4 mm for the branch pipe; the branch shall be positioned on the side of the run pipe. For at least one of such branch connection welds, the wall thickness of the run pipe shall correspond to the least nominal wall thickness on which the welder makes production welds.

   Notes:

   1) *Figure 7.5 shows typical welding details for branch-to-run pipe connections.*

   2) *If the welder is intended to make production welds on flowing-gas piping, consideration should be given to making one of the branch connection welds on a cooling set-up that simulates the cooling rates that are encountered in the field.*

b) Where the operating company's distribution system does not contain pipe 168.3 mm OD or larger, the second branch connection weld shall be made on branch pipe having the largest OD and greatest nominal wall thickness in its distribution system. If the operating company subsequently installs larger OD pipe, the welder shall be requalified on such pipe.

c) The branch connection welds shall be acceptable if they are as specified in Clauses 7.7.7 to 7.7.9 and Clause 7.8.4.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.7.3.4

A welder who has successfully completed the four qualification welds shall be qualified to make production welds as follows:

a) To be qualified to weld in both directions (vertical down and vertical up), at least one of the butt or branch connection welds, other than the first branch connection weld, shall be made in one direction, with the other welds being made in the other direction. Where the butt welds were made with the axis of the pipe in the horizontal plane, the welder shall be qualified to make butt welds in that position only. Where the butt welds were made with the axis of the pipe inclined from the horizontal plane at an angle of 45 ± 5°, the welder shall be qualified to make butt welds in any position. Where butt welds were made in the rotating position, the welder shall be qualified to make butt welds in the rotating position only. Where the butt welds were made in the fixed position, the welder shall be qualified to make butt welds in both the fixed and rotating position.
b) Where the second butt weld or the second branch connection weld, or both, were made on pipe smaller than 168.3 mm OD, the welder shall be qualified to make welds on sizes not exceeding the size tested.
c) Where the second butt weld or the second branch connection weld, or both, were made on pipe in the range 168.3 to 323.9 mm OD, the welder shall be qualified to make welds on sizes not exceeding 323.9 mm OD.
d) Where the second test butt weld and the second branch connection weld were made on pipe larger than 323.9 mm OD, the welder shall be qualified to make welds on all sizes of pipe.
e) For oxy-fuel welding, the maximum thickness qualified is the thickness tested.

Δ 12.7.4 Steel pipe joints and connections — Inspection of production welds

12.7.4.1 General

The requirements of Clauses 7.10.1.2, 7.10.1.3, and 7.10.3 shall not apply. Companies shall have documented visual examination criteria for inspection of production welds.

12.7.4.2 For pipelines operating at pressures of 700 kPa or less

All production welds shall be visually examined by the welder in accordance with company visual examination criteria. Examination shall occur while the weld is produced and at completion of the weld. Where a weld has been deemed to be unacceptable, it shall be repaired or removed from the system.

12.7.4.3 For pipelines operating at pressures above 700 kPa and below 1900 kPa

All production welds shall be visually examined by the welder in accordance with company visual examination criteria. Examination shall occur while the weld is produced and at completion of the weld. A minimum 5% of the production welds shall be visually inspected by either visual inspection per the requirements of Clause 7.10.2 or non-destructive inspection per the requirements of Clause 7.10.4. Where a weld has been deemed to be unacceptable it shall be repaired or removed from the system.

12.7.4.4 For pipelines operating at pressures above 1900 kPa

All production welds shall be visually examined by the welder in accordance with company visual examination criteria. Examination shall occur while the weld is produced and at completion of the weld. A minimum 15% of the production welds shall be visually inspected by either visual inspection per the requirements of Clause 7.10.2 or non-destructive inspection in accordance with Clause 7.10.4. Where a weld has been deemed to be unacceptable it shall be repaired or removed from the system.

© 2015 CSA Group

Δ

12.7.5 Steel pipe joints and connections — Inspection of tie-in welds

12.7.5.1 General

The requirements of Clauses 7.10.1.2, 7.10.1.3, and 7.10.3 shall not apply. Companies shall have documented visual examination criteria for inspection of tie-in welds.

Δ

12.7.5.2 For pipelines operating at pressures of 700 kPa or less

All tie-in welds shall be visually examined by the welder in accordance with company visual examination criteria. Examination shall occur while the weld is produced and at completion of the weld. A minimum 15% of the tie-in welds shall be visually inspected in accordance with Clause 7.10.2 or non-destructive inspection in accordance with Clause 7.10.4. Where a tie-in weld has been deemed to be unacceptable, it shall be repaired or removed from the system.

Δ

12.7.5.3 For pipelines operating at pressures above 700 kPa

All tie-in welds shall be visually examined by the welder in accordance with company visual examination criteria. Examination shall occur while the weld is produced and at completion of the weld. A minimum 25% of tie-in welds shall be visually inspected in accordance with Clause 7.10.2 or non-destructive inspection in accordance with Clause 7.10.4. Where a tie-in weld has been deemed to be unacceptable, it shall be repaired or removed from the system.

Δ

12.7.5.4 Leak testing

All tie-in welds shall be tested for leaks.

12.7.6 Steel pipe joints and connections — Steel pipe joints within buildings

Steel pipe joints within buildings shall be threaded, flanged, or welded. Where possible, pipe 73.0 mm OD or larger shall be joined by welding.

12.7.7 Polyethylene pipe joints and connections — General

12.7.7.1

The joining requirements in Clause 12 for polyethylene compounds shall also apply to other thermoplastic compounds identified in Clause 12.4.6, such as polyamide, unless noted otherwise.

12.7.7.2

Polyethylene pipe and fittings shall be joined by heat fusion, electrofusion, or mechanical methods. Such joining methods shall be compatible with the materials being joined. Methods and specifications for joining polyethylene pipe and components shall comply with the requirements of the procedures recommended by the manufacturer.

12.7.7.3

Joints in polyethylene piping shall be made by personnel who are competent in the applicable procedures.

12.7.8 Polyethylene pipe joints and connections — Joining by heat fusion

12.7.8.1

Heat fusion joints shall be made in accordance with documented procedures that have been proven by tests. Fusion tools thermostatically controlled and electrically heated shall be designed specifically for

© 2015 CSA Group

socket fusion, butt fusion, or saddle fusion and shall be used only for the purpose for which they are designed. Direct application of heat using a torch or open flame shall be prohibited. Joining technique (socket, butt, and saddle fusion) procedures shall include

a) the equipment and tooling required;
b) the joining surface preparation requirements;
c) the heating tool temperature required;
d) the heating time requirements or melt bead size for each size and material melt index;
e) the alignment requirements;
f) the joining pressure and time or melt bead size requirements;
g) the clamped cooling time requirements;
h) the cooling handling time requirements;
i) the elapsed time required before the joint can be subjected to high stress; and
j) cold weather joining techniques.

Note: *The procedures should be as specified in ASTM F2620.*

12.7.8.2

Heat fusion joints shall not be made between different polyethylene piping materials, unless their compatibility has been proven by tests.

12.7.9 Polyethylene pipe joints and connections — Joining by electrofusion

12.7.9.1

Electrofusion joints shall be made in accordance with documented procedures that have been proven by tests. Procedures shall include,

a) the equipment and tooling required;
b) the temperature operating range of the equipment;
c) the joining surface preparation requirements;
d) the alignment requirements;
e) the joining clamp time requirements;
f) the clamped cooling time requirements;
g) the elapsed time requirements before the joint can be subjected to high stress; and
h) cold weather joining techniques.

Note: *The procedures should be as specified in ASTM F1290 and CSA B137.4.1.*

12.7.9.2

Electrofusion joints shall be held with clamps or other aligning devices until cooled. The minimum hold time and minimum time prior to exposure to installation stresses shall be stated in the operating procedure.

12.7.10 Polyethylene pipe joints and connections — Joining by mechanical methods

12.7.10.1

Where mechanical joints are used, gasket materials in the couplings shall not be detrimental to the pipe material.

12.7.10.2

Internal tubular stiffeners shall be used in conjunction with any compression-type couplings. Tubular stiffeners shall reinforce the ends of the pipe or tubing and shall extend at least to the outside ends of

 © 2015 CSA Group

the compression fittings as installed. Stiffeners shall be free of rough or sharp edges and shall not be force-fitted into the pipe. Split tubular stiffeners shall not be used.

12.7.10.3

Mechanical joints in polyethylene piping shall have pullout resistance as specified in CSA B137.4.

12.7.11 Joints in copper pipe and tubing

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

12.7.11.1

Copper pipe and tubing shall be joined by using either a compression-type coupling or a brazed or soldered lap joint; the filler metal used for brazing shall be a copper-phosphorus alloy or a silver-based alloy.

12.7.11.2

Threaded connections may be used to join fittings and valves to copper pipe, provided that the wall thickness is at least equivalent to that given in Table 4.5 for the comparable size of threaded steel pipe. Copper tubing shall not be threaded.

12.7.11.3

Connections shall not be made using butt welding.

12.7.11.4

Piping within buildings shall be joined by all-metal compression fittings or brazed with a material having a melting point exceeding 525 °C.

12.7.11.5

In order to qualify for making joints in copper pipe and tubing, personnel shall make a brazed or soldered copper bell joint on any size of copper pipe or tubing used, with the piping stationary and its axis horizontal. The joint shall be sawed through longitudinally at the 12 o'clock position and spread apart for examination. To be acceptable, the bell end of the joint shall be completely bonded, the spigot end of the joint shall show evidence that the brazing alloy has reached at least 75% of the total area of the telescoped surfaces, and at least 50% of the length of the joint at the 12 o'clock position shall be joined.

12.7.12 Service line connections

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

12.7.12.1

Service lines may be connected to steel distribution lines by using welded connections, service line clamps, or saddles in combination with compression fittings having elastomeric gaskets.

12.7.12.2

Where service lines are connected to polyethylene distribution lines by compression-type connections, such connections shall be designed and installed as specified in CSA B137.4 to withstand the longitudinal pullout forces caused by contraction of the piping or by external loading.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.7.12.3

For buried copper distribution lines, connections shall be made, where possible, using a copper or cast bronze service tee or extension fitting sweat-brazed to the copper distribution line.

Note: *Fillet-brazed joints should not be used.*

12.7.12.4

Service lines may be connected to existing PVC (polyvinyl chloride) mains by the use of tapping tees specifically designed for such use.

12.7.12.5

As an alternative to Clause 12.7.12.4, if the gas flow is stopped, mechanical compression style tees may be installed on the mains. (See Clause 12.10.10.7.)

12.8 Pressure testing

12.8.1 Piping in distribution systems intended to be operated at pressures in excess of 700 kPa

12.8.1.1

A flammable, nontoxic gas may be used as the pressure-test medium, provided that the strength test pressure at any location in the test section does not produce a hoop stress in excess of 30% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

12.8.1.2

Concurrent strength and leak tests using a liquid medium may be conducted, provided that an appropriate leak detection method is used.

12.8.1.3

Concurrent strength and leak tests using a liquid medium shall be maintained for a continuous period of not less than 4 h, except that a shorter test duration period may be used, provided that the leak detection method used is appropriate for the shorter test duration.

12.8.1.4

A shorter leak test duration than that specified in Clause 8.7.5.3 may be used, provided that the leak detection method used is appropriate for the shorter test duration.

12.8.1.5

A shorter concurrent strength and leak test duration than that specified in Clause 8.7.5.4 may be used, provided that such duration is not less than 4 h and the leak detection method used is appropriate for the shorter test duration.

12.8.1.6

For service lines 60.3 mm OD or smaller, a shorter strength test duration than that specified in Clause 8.7.5.1 may be used.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.8.1.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For testing of continuous length RTP Type 1 pipeline systems, a nontoxic gas may be used as the test medium for underground piping that is installed with cover as specified in Clause 12.4.7.1, provided that the test pressure does not exceed 4960 kPa or the manufacturer's recommended maximum operating pressure, whichever is lower.

Δ 12.8.2 Steel piping in distribution systems intended to be operated at pressures 700 kPa or less

Testing shall be at a pressure not less than 1.4 times the maximum operating pressure or 700 kPa, whichever is the greater, except that the test pressure shall not exceed the design pressure of the pipe.

12.8.3 Piping within customers' buildings

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

12.8.3.1

Piping within customers' buildings, except for short lengths between the piping entrance to the building and the customer's meter, shall be leak tested as given in Table 12.4 for a continuous period of not less than 3 h using air or a nonflammable, nontoxic gas as the pressure-test medium.

Table 12.4
Leak test pressure within buildings
(See Clause 12.8.3.1.)

Intended maximum operating pressure, kPa	Minimum leak test pressure, kPa
Less than 3.5	70
3.5 or more	340 or 1.5 times the intended maximum operating pressure, whichever is greater

12.8.3.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Gas piping within customers' buildings shall be purged as specified in CSA B149.1.

12.8.4 Polyethylene piping

12.8.4.1

The pressure test requirements in Clause 12 for polyethylene compounds also apply to other thermoplastic compounds identified in Clause 12.4.6, such as polyamide, unless noted otherwise.

12.8.4.2

Polyethylene piping shall be pressure tested after installation but before being placed into operation, using air, gas, or an appropriate liquid as the pressure-test medium. Tie-in sections and tie-in joints shall be tested for leaks.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.8.4.3
Pressure testing shall not be conducted at temperatures above the maximum allowable design temperature of the compound (23 °C for PVC; 60 °C for PE; 82 °C for PA).

12.8.4.4
Sufficient time shall be allowed for joints to cool properly before the pressure-test medium is introduced.

Δ

12.8.4.5
Testing shall be at a pressure not less than 1.4 times the maximum operating pressure or 350 kPa, whichever is the greater. The test pressure shall not exceed the lesser of 2 times the design pressure of the pipe or the RCP full scale critical pressure as specified in Clause 12.4.3.6.

12.8.4.6
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where exposed joints are to be tested with soaps, detergents, or other liquids, the chemical resistance of the polyethylene to such liquids shall be considered. The piping manufacturers' recommendations or laboratory test data shall be used as a basis for selecting the leak indicator.

Note: *Wiping away excess liquid or rinsing the joints with water can be necessary with some leak detection liquids.*

12.8.4.7
Leak detection tracers may be used to locate leaks in buried piping, provided that their effects on the piping have been investigated. Leak detection tracers and odorants in liquid form shall not be used.

12.8.5 Test-head assemblies
Test head assemblies requirements specified in Clauses 8.5.3 shall not apply.

For steel test-head assemblies that are intended to be used at less than 30% of the specified minimum yield strength of the test-head piping, welds shall be made as specified in Clause 12.7.1.2 and shall be inspected as specified in Clause 12.7.4.

12.9 Corrosion control

12.9.1 Steel piping

Δ

12.9.1.1
Steel distribution systems shall be protected against external corrosion as specified in Clause 9. Internal corrosion requirements specified in Clauses 9.10 and 10.5.1.1 e) shall not apply.

Field-applied coating requirements specified in Clause 9.3 shall be followed where practical.

Δ

12.9.1.2
Plant-applied polyethylene (PE) coating on steel pipe shall be stabilized to protect against deterioration from UV exposure.

Note: *The plant-applied PE coating on steel pipe should have a minimum of 3 years resistance to UV exposure for unprotected outdoor storage.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

For pipe having observed visual degradation of the coating (e.g., cracking, crazing, dis-bonding), production ring samples shall be tested to confirm and where applicable shall meet the requirements for coating performance according to the storage parameters in Table 9.1.

12.9.2 Copper piping

12.9.2.1

Copper pipe and tubing installed in locations where they can be affected by chemical corrosion from materials such as road salts and fertilizers shall be protected against such corrosion.

12.9.2.2

Where cast iron or steel valves or fittings are used in buried copper pipeline systems, such components shall be protected from contact with the soil or insulated from the copper, or both.

Note: *Fittings, such as service tees and pressure-control fittings, that are exposed to the soil should be made of bronze, copper, or brass.*

12.9.3 Corrosion inspection

The requirements for the operation and maintenance of impressed current and sacrificial cathodic protection systems specified in Clauses 9.9.5 and 9.9.6 do not apply.

When piping is exposed and operating company personnel are on site, it shall be visually inspected for the condition of the coating and evidence of corrosion. Where corrosion is found, corrosion in excess of the limits defined by the operating company shall be assessed and, where applicable, the piping shall be repaired as specified in Clause 12.10.7.

12.10 Operating, maintenance, and upgrading

12.10.1 General

Note 1) under Clause 10.1.1, engineering assessments, with reference to Clause 9.9.5 does not apply.

12.10.2 Marking of piping

Where a customer's meter is not near the piping entrance to the building, gas piping within the customer's buildings shall be painted or banded in accordance with the marking requirements of CSA B149.1.

12.10.3 Distribution system maintenance

12.10.3.1

The requirements for right of way inspection and maintenance specified in Clause 10.6 shall not apply.

12.10.3.2

Distribution lines that are installed in locations or on structures where abnormal physical movements or abnormal external loadings can cause failure or leakage shall be patrolled periodically, with the patrol frequencies determined by the severity of the conditions and the associated safety risks.

Note: *Abnormal physical movements and abnormal external loadings include long lengths of pipe installed above ground on bridges with expansion joints, land movements, water crossings, and shallow pipe in major collector roads.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ **12.10.3.3**

The requirements for failure incidents specified in Clause 10.4.4 and the requirements for leak detection for gas pipeline systems in Clause 10.3.5 shall not apply.

Leak management shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Operating companies shall establish, and document in their operating and maintenance procedures, provisions for regular surveys for detecting leaks. It shall be permissible for such surveys to be gas-detector surveys, vegetation surveys, gas volume monitoring surveys, bar-hole surveys, surface-detection surveys, or other detection methods that the operating company has determined, by experience, to be suitable for identifying system leakage.

   Note: *For LPG distribution systems, bar-hole surveys are preferred.*

b) Leakage survey frequencies shall be determined by considering such factors as the age and condition of the system, the population density, and the soil conditions, and shall be documented in the operating company's operating and maintenance procedures.

c) Upon discovery, all leaks shall be immediately assessed and documented by competent personnel in accordance with the company's established guidelines to determine if a hazard exists. Piping containing leaks that can create a hazard shall be repaired as specified in Clause 12.10.7 or 12.10.10, and such repairs shall be documented.

   Note: *A leak can be reported to the operating company by third parties or identified by a leak survey program.*

d) Where the condition of distribution or service lines, as indicated by leak records or visual observation, deteriorates to the point where they are not suitable in service, they shall be replaced, reconditioned, or abandoned.

e) Operating companies shall periodically review their leak detection programs to confirm their adequacy and effectiveness.

12.10.3.4

The requirements for deactivating or reactivating piping specified in Clause 10.15 and the requirements for abandonment of pipelines in Clause 10.16 shall not apply.

The deactivation and abandonment of piping shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Operating and maintenance procedures shall include provisions for sealing off the supply of gas to abandoned piping, including control lines, equipment, and appurtenances.

b) Where piping is abandoned, it shall be purged and
   i) removed; or
   ii) disconnected or separated, and the ends capped, plugged, or otherwise effectively sealed to prevent the flow of gas.

c) Capping, plugging, and sealing of service lines shall be completed outside the buildings served by such lines.

12.10.3.5

Where service lines become inactive, operating companies shall,

a) where there is a meter stop valve or a service valve inside the building, lock or seal the valve in the closed position and, within 1 year, seal off the supply of gas to the service line at a point outside the building; or

b) where there is a service shutoff valve or curb valve outside the building, either close and lock or seal the meter stop or service shutoff valve, or close the curb valve.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.10.4 Pressure recording for distribution systems

12.10.4.1

Operating companies shall determine the necessity of installing telemetering or pressure recorders in the distribution systems and shall install such devices where needed.

12.10.4.2

Where there is evidence of abnormally high or low pressure, regulators and auxiliary equipment shall be inspected and any unsafe operating conditions found shall be rectified.

12.10.5 Valve maintenance

The requirements for valves specified in Clause 10.9.6 shall not apply.

Distribution system valves that are necessary for the safe operation of the distribution system shall be inspected, partially operated, and serviced (including lubrication where necessary) at sufficiently frequent intervals to confirm their reliability. The intended frequency of such inspections, operations, and servicing shall be documented in the operating company's operating and maintenance procedures.

12.10.6 Pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving devices

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The requirements for pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving systems specified in Clause 10.9.5.2 and the requirements for customer meter sets specified in Clause 10.9.5.3 shall not apply.

Pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving devices in customer meter sets shall be periodically inspected and tested as necessary, to determine that they are in safe operating condition. The intended frequency of such inspections shall be documented in the operating company's operating and maintenance procedures.

12.10.7 Repair procedures for steel distribution pipeline systems

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The requirements for the evaluation of imperfections specified in Clauses 10.10.2 to 10.10.8 and the requirements for maintenance welding specified in Clause 10.13 shall not apply.

Repair procedures for steel distribution pipeline systems shall be as specified in Clauses 10.11 (the requirements for permanent repair methods specified in Clause 10.11.1.4 shall not apply) and 10.12, except as follows:

a) The use of pretested piping shall not be required for piping replacements.
b) For pipe having a specified minimum yield strength of 317 MPa or less, or pipe having a minimum yield strength greater than 317 MPa, up to and including 386 MPa, with a carbon equivalent of 0.30 or less, fillet welding steel patches over the defects may be used as a permanent repair method. Such patches shall have rounded corners and their thickness shall be at least equal to the nominal thickness of the pipe. The dimensions of the patches shall be at least twice the dimensions of the defects and the patches shall be centred over the defects.
c) Appropriate mechanical repair fittings may be used as a permanent repair method.

© 2015 CSA Group

12.10.8 Maintenance welding

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

12.10.8.1

The requirements for maintenance welding on in-service piping specified in Clauses 7.17.1.3, 7.17.2 to 7.17.7, and 10.13.2.2 shall not apply.

Maintenance welding on in-service piping shall be as specified in Clauses 12.7.2 to 12.7.6. Welding on in-service piping with a wall thickness less than 6.4 mm shall be performed using welding procedures that control the potential for burn-through.

12.10.8.2

The requirements for maintenance welding on in-service piping specified in Clause 10.13.2.4 shall not apply. Welding on in-service piping shall be performed by a welder qualified by the operating company.

12.10.9 Squeezing of polyethylene and polyamide pipe for pressure-control purposes

12.10.9.1

Where applicable, the suitability of squeezing and reopening of polyethylene and polyamide pipe shall be considered. Where applicable, tests shall be made to determine that the pipe can be squeezed and reopened without causing failure under the conditions that would prevail at the time of the squeezing and reopening.

12.10.9.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Squeezing and reopening of polyethylene and polyamide pipe shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) The work shall be done using equipment and procedures that have been proven by test to be safe and effective.
b) Squeezed and reopened areas of the pipe shall be reinforced, unless it has been determined by investigation and test that squeezing and reopening does not significantly affect the long-term properties of the pipe.
c) Where reinforcement of the squeezed areas is not required after reopening, squeeze points shall be permanently marked and subsequent squeezing at such locations shall be avoided.
d) Methods for mitigation of an accidental static discharge where a gas-air mixture is present at the squeeze location shall be included.
e) Squeezing near previously squeezed locations or fittings shall be avoided.
f) Excessive wall compression of the pipe during squeezing, as determined by investigation and testing, shall be avoided.
g) Care shall be taken to control the rate of release, given that immediate pipe damage most often occurs during the beginning of the reopening procedure.
h) The effect of low temperatures, at the time of squeezing, on the pipe material and on damage formation shall be considered.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.10.10 Maintenance and repair requirements for polyethylene, polyamide, and polyvinyl chloride pipe and tubing

Δ

12.10.10.1 Repair procedures for polyethylene and polyamide pipe and tubing

Pipe and tubing containing defects in the form of gouges or grooves shall be repaired by one of the following methods:

a) Replacing the affected sections with piping that meets the applicable design criteria and is compatible with the existing piping. The use of pre-tested piping shall not be required for piping replacements. Joints made during the repair shall be tested for leaks. (The requirements for piping replacements specified in Clause 10.11.3 c) shall not apply.); or
b) Using repair procedures that
   i) have been qualified by test;
   ii) have been recommended by the applicable pipe manufacturer; and
   iii) are as specified in Clauses 12.10.10.2 to 12.10.10.5.

Note: *Gouges and grooves with depths in excess of 10% of the minimum wall thickness of the pipe are considered to be defects.*

12.10.10.2 Repair methods for polyethylene and polyamide pipe

Pipe may be repaired by using one or more of the following methods:

a) fusing properly designed patch repair fittings to the damaged pipe;
b) using mechanical repair sleeves;
c) using service punch tees; or
d) using branch saddle tees.

12.10.10.3 Fusion patch repair method for polyethylene and polyamide pipe

Fusion patches shall extend at least 25 mm beyond the edges of the defects and they shall not extend over more than one-third of the circumference of the damaged pipe.

12.10.10.4 Polyethylene and polyamide repair patches

Repair patches shall be at least as thick as the repaired pipe.

12.10.10.5 Mechanical full-encirclement repair sleeves for polyethylene and polyamide pipe

Where full-encirclement mechanical split repair sleeves are used, where possible, the joint lines of the sleeves shall not be closer than 25 mm from the defects.

Note: *The joint should be as far as possible from the defects.*

12.10.10.6 Corrosion considerations for metallic repair fittings used for repairing polyvinyl chloride piping

Metallic portions of repair fittings shall be composed of materials that

a) are not susceptible to corrosion; or
b) are protected against corrosion as specified in Clause 9.

12.10.10.7 Effective procedures for repairing polyvinyl chloride pipe and tubing

PVC pipe is fragile by its nature and exposure of this pipe can present the potential of flying plastic, dirt,

 © 2015 CSA Group

and other debris if failure occurs. Therefore, operating companies shall establish effective procedures for performing repairs on PVC pipe and tubing. These repair procedures shall include

a) line stopping, which can be accomplished by the utilization of existing isolation valves or by the use of stopping equipment specifically made for use with PVC pipe. Line stopping of PVC piping cannot be accomplished by squeezing the pipe;
b) mechanical joining procedures for joining PVC pipe to polyethylene or steel pipe;
c) a procedure for utilization of mechanical tapping tees to tap into existing PVC piping; and
d) a procedure for monitoring for potential sources of ignition and the presence of a gas/air mixture during repairs.

12.10.11 Static electricity dissipation

Where applicable, operating companies shall develop procedures for the dissipation of static electricity and shall include such procedures in their operating and maintenance procedures. Such procedures shall be followed when piping is purged, repaired, replaced, or extended in the presence of, or potential presence of, flammable gas-air mixtures.

12.10.12 Pressure upgrading of distribution piping

Pressure upgrading of distribution piping shall be as specified in Clause 10.3.8, except that pressure testing shall be as specified in Clause 12.8. In addition, the following requirements shall be met:

a) Operating companies shall verify and document that the complete system is capable of withstanding the upgraded pressure.
b) The upgraded maximum operating pressure shall not exceed the design pressure calculated as specified in Clause 4.3.5, 12.4.2, 12.4.6.3, or 15.3.1, whichever is applicable.
c) Upgraded polyethylene piping shall be subject to the requirements specified in Clause 12.4.3.
d) A post-upgrading leak survey shall be conducted as soon as practical after completion of the upgrading and as specified in Clause 12.10.3.3.

Note: *For thermoplastic piping that has been in contact with liquid hydrocarbons or methanol, a permanent reduction in the strength of the material can have occurred. See Clause 12.4.2.4.*

12.10.13 Pipeline emergencies

The requirements for pipeline emergencies specified in Clause 10.5.2.2 shall not apply.

Operating companies shall inform the public and consult with the agencies to be contacted during an emergency (e.g., police and fire departments), as appropriate, about the hazards associated with their pipelines.

Note: *If community emergency response plans exist, appropriate methods to inform the public can be determined in conjunction with the community agencies.*

12.10.14 Ground disturbances

12.10.14.1

The requirements for operating and maintenance procedures for ground disturbances specified in Clause 10.5.5 shall not apply.

12.10.14.2

Operating companies shall communicate company-specific safe work practices and conditions to those who propose ground disturbances.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ **12.10.14.3**

Upon receiving a pipeline system locate request, the operating company shall provide visual markings or documentation of the location of its pipeline system. The colour yellow shall be used for visual markings.

Notes:

1) *Regional associations or Common Ground Alliances provide guidance in damage prevention best practices and information on one-call systems.*

2) *Operating companies should communicate to excavators the importance of pre-marking to outline the boundaries of the dig areas or to identify dig routes. White marks for pre-marking should be employed and, in all cases, the marks should be appropriate for the site taking into consideration environmental conditions. This marking is in accordance with the APWA Uniform Color Code.*

Δ **12.10.15 Class location**

The requirements for evaluation and inspections to determine class location change specified in Clause 10.7 shall not apply to gas distribution systems operated and maintained in accordance with Clause 12.

13 Reinforced composite, thermoplastic-lined, and polyethylene pipelines

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

13.1 Reinforced composite pipelines

13.1.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

13.1.1.1

Clause 13.1 covers additional requirements for pipelines constructed of reinforced composite pipe and fittings, including both individual and continuous length pipe. Continuous length reinforced composite pipe is available in two types: spoolable composite pipe (SCP), and reinforced thermoplastic pipe (RTP). RTP comes in two types: fibre-reinforced thermoplastic pipe and steel-reinforced thermoplastic pipe.

Note: *CAPP 2009-0009 provides further non-mandatory guidance and information.*

13.1.1.2

The applicable provisions of Clauses 3 to 10 and Clause 16 shall be applied to reinforced composite pipelines, except insofar as such requirements are specifically modified or voided by the requirements of Clause 13.1.

Δ **13.1.1.3**

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Except as allowed by Clause 12.4.6, reinforced composite pipe may be used only in LVP, gas gathering, multiphase, fuel gas, and oilfield water pipelines.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.1.1.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For gas pipelines, the allowed design pressure shall not exceed 9.93 MPa and the partial pressure of hydrogen sulphide calculated at the pipeline design pressure shall be limited to a maximum of 50 kPa. The reinforced composite pipe shall have been qualified for gas services as specified by Clause 13.1.2.7 and the appropriate industry manufacturing standard given in Table 13.1.

13.1.2 Design

13.1.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The designer shall review the properties published by the manufacturer for conformance with the requirements of Clause 13.1. The designer shall consider the pressure design, effect of cyclic pressure fluctuation, and other loading and dynamic effects imposed on buried piping including pipe connections in accordance with the requirements of Clause 4.2.4.

13.1.2.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following requirements shall apply to the materials used in the manufacture of reinforced composite pipe and fittings:

a) The company shall verify that the chemical and temperature resistance is adequate for the intended application.
b) The reinforced wall layer for pipe shall consist of filament wound fibre or a polymer matrix with fibre or fibre tape or non-bonded steel strip or wire.
c) The non-reinforced wall shall consist of thermoplastic or thermosetting plastic internal liners and external coatings.
d) For sour service applications, as defined in Clause 16.2, the steel strips or wire used in pipes manufactured to API 17J or API 17K shall comply with the sour service requirements of steel reinforcements of API 17J or API 17K.
e) Any metallic fittings for applications in sour service, as defined in Clause 16.2, shall meet the requirements of Clause 16.4.

13.1.2.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Consideration shall be given to the effects of any differences in strength in the hoop and longitudinal directions.

13.1.2.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The internal pressure design of reinforced composite pipelines shall be based on the minimum reinforced wall thickness of the pipe only. No strength credit shall be allowed for the non-reinforced layers.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.1.2.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Reinforced composite pipelines shall be designed to operate at pressures and within temperature ranges specified by the company, using the manufacturer's published test data at the selected design temperature of the pipeline, as the basis of determination.

Note: *Where the pipeline design temperature is lower than the manufacturer's published maximum rated temperature of the pipe, use of an interpolated value of hydrostatic design stress determined in accordance with API 15HR is acceptable.*

13.1.2.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Special consideration shall be given to the design of reinforced composite pipelines in unstable ground conditions, at transitions to steel piping, and at risers.

13.1.2.7

The company shall verify that pipe for gas gathering and multiphase services have been qualified by the manufacturer as suitable for the applicable service. Such assessment shall include verification of the joint design and all materials used within the pipe and joint, including any thread compounds, and assessment of the effects of potential gas permeation on inner liner materials.

13.1.2.8

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The allowable design pressure of reinforced composite pipe shall be determined by the following formula:

$P = MPR \times F_{fluid} \times F_{cyclic}$

where

P = design pressure, MPa

MPR = pipe manufacturer's maximum pressure rating, with no service fluid factor applied determined at the selected design temperature or higher and selected design life of the pipeline or longer, in accordance with the methods specified in the applicable industry standard for the pipe category listed in Table 13.1, MPa

F_{fluid} = service fluid factor (see Table 13.1)

F_{cyclic} = cyclic pressure service factor to be specified by the manufacturer for cyclic pressure service conditions. F_{cyclic} shall be based on ASTM D2992, Procedure A or equivalent testing. See Clause 13.1.2.9

Where the design section of the referenced industry standard in Table 13.1 specifies that the pipe manufacturer perform tests to evaluate the effects of the service fluid and the effects of the service fluid are evaluated, documented, and applied in determining MPR (i.e., F_{fluid} is included in the manufacturers MPR), F_{fluid} may be taken as 1.00 to determine design pressure.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.1.2.9

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

F_{cyclic} shall be applied when the normal operating pressure regularly cycles more than 20% of the design pressure (P). For cyclic operating conditions, where F_{cyclic} is not specified by the manufacturer, a default value of 0.50 shall be used.

Notes:

1) *Where the normal operating pressure cycles are 20% or less of the design pressure, F_{cyclic} may be 1.0.*

2) *Cyclic service factors may vary based on pipe type and the manufacturers testing results.*

3) *Cyclic service typically involves low frequency and high amplitude pressure cycles and differs from high frequency and low amplitude pulsating pipeline services typically associated with positive displacement pumps.*

4) *Where the manufacturer has qualified the pipe for cyclic pressure service in accordance with ASTM D2992, Procedure A, F_{cyclic} may be 1.0.*

13.1.2.10

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The manufacturer's recommendations for protecting against surge pressures due to fluid hammer shall be followed.

Note: *Reinforced composite pipe systems can be damaged by high surge pressure loading, such as caused by fluid hammer, associated with rapid valve opening or closing.*

13.1.2.11

The service fluid factor shall not exceed the applicable values given in Table 13.1.

13.1.2.12

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design of individual length reinforced composite pipelines under external loading shall be based upon the results of the ASTM D2412 parallel loading test. The allowable diametrical deflection shall be the lesser of 5% of the diameter and the value specified by the manufacturer.

13.1.2.13

Where connected to reinforced composite pipelines, any steel pipe, risers, valves, or other heavy components shall be supported so no load capable of damaging the reinforced composite pipe is imposed.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 13.1
Reinforced composite pipes
(See Clauses 13.1.1.4, 13.1.2.8, 13.1.2.11, and 13.1.3.1.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

Pipe category	Spoolable	Inner liner	Reinforced layer materials	Industry standard	Maximum service fluid factor, F_{fluid}		
					Gas	Multiphase; LVP liquids	Oilfield water
Jointed composite pipe	No	Thermoset resin	Fibre in thermoset resin matrix	API 15HR	0.67	0.80	1.00
Jointed composite pipe	No	Thermoset resin	Fibre in a thermoset resin matrix	API 15HR Non-mono-gram*	0.60	0.72	0.80
Continuous length spoolable composite pipe (SCP)	Yes	Thermoplastic tube	Fibre in a thermoset resin matrix	API 15S	0.67	0.80	1.00
Continuous length reinforced thermoplastic pipe (RTP) Type 1	Yes	Thermoplastic tube	Fibre, not in resin matrix	API 15S	0.67	0.80	1.00
Continuous length reinforced thermoplastic pipe (RTP) Type 2	Yes	Thermoplastic tube	Fibre in a thermoplastic tape matrix	API 15S	0.67	0.80	1.00
Continuous length reinforced thermoplastic pipe (RTP) Type 3	Yes	Thermoplastic tube	Steel wire or steel strip, not in a resin matrix	API 17J API 17K	0.67	0.80	1.00

** API 15HR monogrammed pipe is mill pressure tested to 1.5 X MPR. Where pipe is mill pressure tested below 1.5 X MPR and non-monogrammed, reduced service fluid factors are specified in Table 13.1. Clause 13.1.3.2 requires a minimum 1.25 X MPR for the mill proof test for 100% of the pipe unless an alternative test method is approved by the company.*

13.1.2.14

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where reinforced composite pipelines are joined above the ground surface to metallic piping or are part of an aboveground piping system installation, the design of the pipelines shall provide

a) adequate pipe support;
b) anchoring methods in accordance with the manufacturer's installation recommendations;
c) measures to prevent damage to the reinforced composite pipe and the transition connection;
d) management of stresses on piping due to thermal expansion and soil settling/compaction;
e) protection from weather, especially solar heating and ultraviolet damage;
f) protection from unintended contact and mechanical damage; and
g) measures to prevent piping damage from fire such as from grass or brush fire encroachment.

© 2015 CSA Group

13.1.2.15

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where reinforced composite pipelines are joined to metallic piping below ground, the following measures shall be provided in the design to prevent excessive soil settlement at over-excavated areas at pipeline risers:

a) suitable pipe support and anchoring in accordance with the manufacturer's installation recommendations;
b) pipeline backfill in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations; and
c) management of stresses due to thermal expansion and soil settling/compaction.

Δ 13.1.2.16

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For steel risers and below-ground components that are connected to reinforced composite pipe, the requirements for internal and external corrosion control of the steel pipeline portions shall be determined in accordance with Clause 9, except as follows:

a) For corrosion control of risers or below ground-components, where either solid corrosion resistant alloys (CRA) or corrosion resistant metallic coatings are used, additional external corrosion protection such as cathodic protection is not required, provided that an engineering assessment indicates adequate corrosion resistance for the intended life of the pipeline. The engineering assessment shall include consideration of the
   i) expected life of the alloy or coating;
   ii) potential for external corrosion at coating holidays; and
   iii) effect on the life of the coating as a result of such holidays.

   Where the result of the engineering assessment is to retain the requirements for additional external corrosion protection as specified in Clause 9, such protection measures shall be specified in the design.
b) Cathodic protection installed on steel risers shall be monitored.

Notes:

1) *For inline components, if cathodic protection is required, the cathodic protection system is typically a sacrificial anode based design, for the life of the pipeline to mitigate the need for monitoring and consideration of access and the practical ability to monitor.*

2) *The company should decide based on access to the inline components, criticality of service, and cathodic protection design if monitoring is required.*

3) *Monitoring of cathodic protection installed on below ground components is optional.*

13.1.3 Materials

13.1.3.1

Reinforced composite pipe and fittings shall be manufactured as specified in the applicable industry standards listed in Table 13.1 and in Clause 13.1.3.2.

13.1.3.2

Jointed reinforced composite pipe lengths shall be pressure tested at the manufacturer's mill to minimum specified values of 1.25 times the specified manufacturer's pressure rating (MPR) for a minimum of 2 min.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Where mill pressure testing of pipe is restricted by the manufacturer to less than the specified values, this shall be approved by the company. Where mill pressure testing is not practical, an alternative testing method and plan shall be prepared by the manufacturer and approved by the company.

13.1.4 Installation

13.1.4.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A continuous, electrically insulated, minimum 14 gauge metallic tracer wire shall be installed in the ditch adjacent to each reinforced composite pipeline. Tracer wires shall be checked for electrical continuity immediately following installation. Tracer wires shall be resistant to corrosion damage either by use of coated copper wire or by other means. Tracer wires shall be carried to surface in a suitable protective conduit. The tracer wire termination points shall be clearly marked and secured at readily accessible locations above the ground surface.

Note: *For reinforced composite pipe systems that are fully electrically conductive, tracer wires might not be required.*

13.1.4.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The depth-of-cover requirements for reinforced composite pipelines within road or railway rights-of-way shall be determined by the company and shall be not less than the applicable depth of cover specified in Clause 4.11.

13.1.4.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Reinforced composite pipe coupler or termination component installation specifications shall be based upon the manufacturer's recommended practices. Personnel conducting coupling or component installation shall be competent in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended practice.

13.1.4.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Any pipeline trench shall be excavated in such a way as to create a smooth bottom with gradual grade transitions. The trench bottom shall adequately support the pipe. The soil and aggregates used for fill shall be free of rocks and debris that could damage the pipe and shall be composed of clean soil or sand extending a minimum of 150 mm from the pipe wall in all directions. The company, in consultation with the pipe manufacturer, shall determine whether additional backfill compaction is required. The soil characteristics within the pipeline trench shall be in accordance with ASTM D3839 and the pipe manufacturer. Where reinforced composite pipe is installed by ploughing, the company shall determine whether that the soil and aggregates surrounding the pipe provide adequate support and will not cause damage to the pipe.

13.1.4.5

Where reinforced composite pipelines are cased for load protection such as for highway crossings, the casings shall be designed as specified in Clause 4.12.3.3.

© 2015 CSA Group

13.1.4.6

Where reinforced composite pipelines are cased for crossings, appropriate support and protection shall be given to the pipe where it exits the casing pipe and beyond the casing ends by soil compaction or other suitable support, so that shear stresses, thermal stresses, and wear are controlled to acceptable levels. Where reinforced composite pipelines are not cased for crossings, the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the necessary depth of cover for anticipated loads shall be followed.

Note: *Back fill soil type and compaction are important considerations for casings.*

13.1.4.7

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where reinforced composite pipe is installed as a free-standing liner inside a steel pipeline, bend radii and the relative diameters of the liner and the steel pipe shall be in accordance with the reinforced composite pipe manufacturer's recommendations.

Notes:

1) *A preliminary leak test on the liner pipe should be considered prior to insertion.*

2) *Fluids left between the liner and the steel pipeline can damage the liner if allowed to freeze.*

3) *The line should be pigged or otherwise verified to be clear of any obstacles that can damage the liner pipe.*

Δ 13.1.4.8

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Reinforced composite pipe shall not be bent to radii smaller than the minimum recommended by the manufacturer. Bends shall be free from buckles, cracks and other evidence of damage. Field-fabricated mitred bends shall not be used.

13.1.4.9

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Reinforced composite pipe shall be uncoiled, unspooled, or bent in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Care shall be taken not to bend the pipe to radii smaller than the minimum recommended by the pipe manufacturer.

Note: *In cold weather, additional considerations may be necessary.*

13.1.5 Joining

13.1.5.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipe and fittings shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturer's documented reinforced composite pipe joining procedure.

13.1.5.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Reinforced composite pipe systems shall be joined using one or more of the following:

a) a threaded connection as specified in API 15HR. For gas service, threaded connections shall employ a thread type that has been previously tested and found suitable for gas service;

b) a mechanical threaded connection, using an elastomeric seal;

 © 2015 CSA Group

c) piping connections, using a flange joint that is compatible with the pipe;
d) for continuous length reinforced composite pipe, a field-applied splice or fitting that is compatible with the pipe and approved by the pipe manufacturer; or
e) for other than gas service, an adhesive bonded joint, using an adhesive that is compatible with the pipe and is suitable for the conditions to which it is intended to be subjected during installation and service.

Note: *Clauses 9.1 and 13.1.2.16 specify the external corrosion prevention requirements for buried steel piping, such as any steel fittings or couplings or piping that is attached to reinforced composite pipelines.*

Δ
13.1.5.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

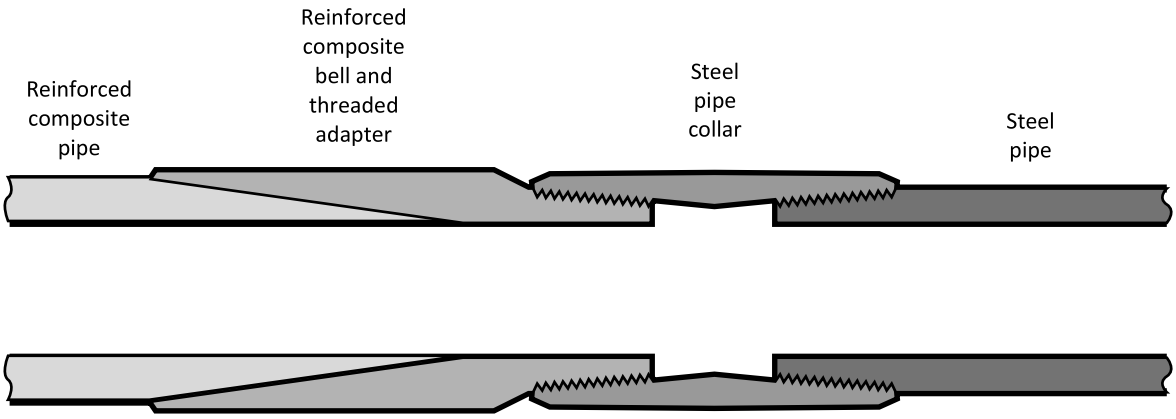
Elastomers supplied by the manufacturer to provide joint sealing in reinforced composite pipe connections shall be rated for all conditions expected to be encountered during installation and use.

13.1.5.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For transitions from reinforced composite pipe to steel pipe that use threaded or adhesive-bonded tapered connections, steel shall form the outside portion of the connection (e.g., the steel collar shall be screwed over the reinforced composite pipe threads) (see Figure 13.1).

Figure 13.1
Typical reinforced composite to steel transition
(See Clause 13.1.5.4.)



Δ
13.1.6 Joining personnel — training and qualification

13.1.6.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall ensure that the personnel performing the joining have been qualified in the joining procedure by the pipe manufacturer or the pipe manufacturer's representative. The company shall ensure that the pipe joining personnel are competent.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.1.6.2
Pipe joiners shall have been trained and assessed by the manufacturer.

13.1.6.3
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The assessment of joining personnel by the manufacturer shall be based on the witnessing of test joint assembly to determine proper adherence to the joining procedure, followed by visual assessment of completed joints.

13.1.6.4
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The manufacturer, upon completion and assessment, shall issue a certificate of qualification that states the joiner's name , the techniques for which the operator is qualified, the type of joining equipment, and the pipe size limitations applicable to that equipment. A unique identification number for the joiner shall be provided on the certificate for traceability.

13.1.6.5
The pipeline installer shall maintain documented evidence of the competency for pipe joiners within their organization.

13.1.6.6
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Re-assessment of pipe joiners by the manufacturer shall be required every two years at a minimum or when no production joining has been performed for a 12 month or longer period.

13.1.6.7
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipe joining personnel shall maintain and provide records of their joining training, qualification testing results, and work experience logs for reinforced composite pipelines including the number of joints completed, pipe sizes, pressure rating types of fittings, project description, pipe length, and tie-in joints.

Δ 13.1.7 Joining inspection

13.1.7.1
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Quality control of joints shall be performed in accordance with an inspection and test plan that is in accordance with the manufacturer's joining procedure and quality control requirements.

13.1.7.2
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Visual inspection of all pipe joints after assembly and makeup shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's written procedures.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.1.8 Pressure testing

13.1.8.1

Reinforced composite pipelines shall successfully undergo concurrent strength and leak tests after installation as specified in Clause 8 and Clauses 13.1.8.2 to 13.1.8.7.

13.1.8.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The pressure-test medium shall be air, water, or water with freezing point depressant, as appropriate. For pressure tests with air, the maximum test pressure shall not exceed 2900 kPa.

Note: *During pressure testing, reinforced composite pipe material is more prone to pressure variances caused by temperature fluctuations of the testing fluid or ambient temperature than steel pipe.*

13.1.8.3

Maximum test pressures shall not exceed the manufacturer's published specification and recommendations.

13.1.8.4

Minimum test pressures shall be 125% of the intended pipeline design pressure.

Note: *For gas pipelines containing H_2S, local regulatory bodies can require a pressure test at a higher percentage than 125%.*

13.1.8.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The pressure test duration following test pressure stabilization shall be either a minimum of 8 h for a liquid test medium or a minimum of 24 h for an air test medium.

13.1.8.6

Portions of reinforced composite pipelines that leak during testing shall be repaired or replaced, and retested as specified in Clause 13.1.6.

13.1.8.7

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where reinforced composite pipelines are segmented into sections for pressure testing, retesting of the completed pipelines shall not be required after tying-in, provided that a flanged connection or an approved mechanical coupler is used. The tie-in joint shall be left exposed and a 1 h visual service test shall be performed at the highest available operating pressure.

13.1.9 Operation

13.1.9.1

The maximum operating pressure at any point shall not exceed the lesser of

a) the design pressure; or
b) 80% of the minimum test pressure.

© 2015 CSA Group

13.1.9.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The operating company shall ensure that maximum temperature during pressure testing and operation does not exceed the pipeline design temperature rating or the manufacturer's maximum recommended operating temperature, whichever has been used as the limiting factor in the pressure design.

Note: *Signage should be provided at the termination points of reinforced composite pipelines with the maximum allowed operating temperature and pressure indicated. This information should also be included in the pipeline operating manuals.*

13.1.10 Pipeline repairs

13.1.10.1

Reinforced composite pipelines may be repaired using one or more of the following methods, provided that the repairs are in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations:

a) cutting out the defective portion as a cylinder and replacing it with pretested pipe that meets the design requirements, using adhesive bonded collars, repair couplings, or flanges; and
b) using suitable repair clamps as approved by the pipe manufacturer and the operating company.

13.1.10.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Immediately following any repair, the repaired pipe shall be left exposed and subjected to a 4 h visual service test at the highest available operating pressure.

13.1.10.3

Reinforced composite pipe might not be electrically conductive, dependent upon materials used; therefore, the operating company, in consultation with the manufacturer, shall develop procedures for dissipation of static electricity and include them in its operation and maintenance procedures. Such procedures shall be followed when pipelines are purged, repaired, replaced, or extended in the presence of, or potential presence of, flammable gas-air mixtures.

Δ 13.1.11 Deactivation or abandonment

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In addition to the requirements specified in Clauses 10.15 and 10.16, when reinforced composite pipelines are being considered for deactivation or abandonment, an assessment of potential hazards from gases that can evolve from the pipeline material shall be considered.

Note: *Assessment should determine whether evolved gases can constitute a hazard to personnel or an explosive atmosphere. If so, repeated purging and rest periods might be necessary to allow absorbed gases to evolve.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.2 Thermoplastic-lined pipelines

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

13.2.1 General

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clause 13.2 covers additional requirements for thermoplastic-lined pipelines. The applicable provisions of Clauses 3 to 10 and 16 shall also be applied to thermoplastic-lined pipelines, except insofar as such requirements are specifically modified or voided by the requirements of Clause 13.2.

Note: *Thermoplastic liners are installed to provide internal corrosion resistance for the pipelines. The steel piping provides the hoop strength requirement for the lined pipeline, thereby allowing pipeline design pressures in excess of the pressure rating of the liner pipe. Liners have been installed in pipe with up to 1321 mm OD.*

13.2.2 Design

13.2.2.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The designer shall review the properties published by the manufacturer of the liner for conformance with the applicable requirements of Clause 13.2.

13.2.2.2

The company, in consultation with the liner supplier, shall verify the suitability of the liner material for all conditions anticipated during installation and service.

Note: *The liner supplier can include the liner installer.*

13.2.2.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Special consideration shall be given to the effects of pipeline service fluids, including any additive chemicals, on the mechanical and physical properties of the liner.

Note: *Absorption of the pipeline service fluid by the liner can result in loss of mechanical properties in the liner under service conditions; therefore, the company should review and determine the suitability of the liner for the specific pipeline service fluid contemplated. Operating experience indicates that such absorption increases with increasing temperature.*

13.2.2.4

The dimensions of the liner shall be determined by the liner installer in consultation with the company. Where external grooves are installed on the liner, the dimensions shall be determined by the liner installer and the manufacturer, in consultation with the company.

13.2.2.5

The installation lengths of the liner sections shall be determined by the liner supplier in consultation with the company.

Note: *Factors such as topography, tie-in points, bends, and the pipeline's internal conditions determine the allowable pulling lengths.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

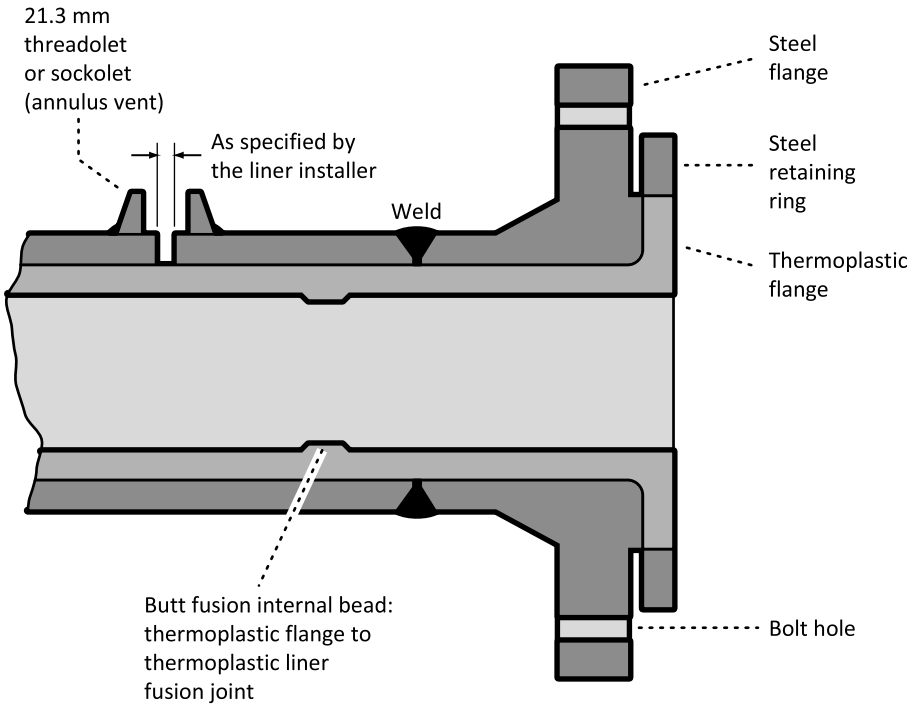
13.2.2.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Suitable fittings or flanges to connect the lined segments shall be installed prior to the liner installation.

Note: *Figure 13.2 shows a typical flange design.*

Figure 13.2
Typical flange configuration for pipe liner
(See Clause 13.2.2.6.)



13.2.2.7

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Prior to the liner installation, fittings to facilitate venting of the annulus between the liner and the carrier pipe shall be installed adjacent to each flange as recommended by the liner installer or manufacturer.

13.2.2.8

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Provision shall be made for the monitoring and removal of any gases that accumulate in the liner annulus.

Note: *This requirement is particularly important for gas and multiphase pipelines. For lined pipelines that contain H_2S gas in the annulus, the associated safety and environmental hazards of the accumulated gas should be addressed by the company.*

© 2015 CSA Group

13.2.2.9

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipelines that are intended to be lined shall be designed with long radius bends to accommodate liner installation.

Notes:

1) *Care should be taken in pulling liners through bends to prevent cutting of the carrier pipe by the cable used to pull in the liner.*

2) *Pulling the pipe liner through elbow or tee fittings that are installed in the pipeline is not normally performed and can result in liner failure.*

13.2.2.10

Immediately prior to liner installation, newly constructed pipelines shall be pressure tested as specified in Clause 8.

13.2.2.11

Prior to the lining of previously in-service pipelines, any leaking areas of the pipeline shall be repaired or replaced as specified in Clause 10.11. Evaluation of other imperfections shall be as specified in Clause 10.10 or by pressure test as specified in Clause 13.2.2.12.

13.2.2.12

For the lining of previously in-service pipelines only, immediately prior to the liner installation, the mechanical integrity of the steel carrier pipe shall be confirmed by

a) a 4 h leak test using fresh water or fresh water with freeze point depressant at the design pressure;
b) a 4 h leak test using fresh water or fresh water with freeze point depressant at a lower pressure in which case the design pressure shall be reduced to the 4 h leak test pressure; or
c) an engineering assessment to determine if the existing pipeline is suitable for lining based on the operating history, intended maximum operating pressure, inspection results, and assessment of known defects based on Clause 10.10.

13.2.3 Materials

13.2.3.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene liners and fittings shall have a minimum cell classification of 345464C as specified in ASTM D3350. Any other thermoplastic liner material shall meet a manufacturing standard of equivalent intent to this Standard.

Note: *Typical polyethylene pipe liner material designation codes include PE 3408, PE 3608, and PE 4710, as defined in PPI TR-4.*

13.2.3.2

Other thermoplastic liner materials, including polyamide and cross-linked polyethylene, shall be manufactured as specified by the liner installer.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.2.3.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Liners and fittings shall conform to the minimum wall thickness requirements as determined by the liner installer in consultation with the company.

13.2.3.4

All metallic pipe and components for sour service, as defined in Clause 16.2, shall meet the requirements of Clause 16.4.

13.2.4 Installation

13.2.4.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Prior to liner insertion, a sizing pig shall be run through the pipeline to verify that the internal diameter is unobstructed and suitable for the liner to be installed without damage.

13.2.4.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Existing pipelines that have been pressure tested prior to lining shall be internally cleaned and pigged prior to liner insertion to minimize residual fluids, including pressure-test liquid.

Notes:

1) *Chemical treatment using a chemical that is compatible with the liner material, prior to lining, to arrest or prevent internal corrosion of the pipeline, should be considered by the company.*

2) *Residual water remaining behind the liner can cause corrosion of the steel pipe or plugging of annulus vents due to ice formation.*

13.2.4.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Following liner insertion, the portion of the liner that is visible at the exit point shall be inspected. Mechanical damage that exceeds the maximum recommended by the liner manufacturer or is deeper than 5% of the liner nominal wall thickness shall not be allowed.

13.2.5 Joining liners

13.2.5.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Liner and flange adapter fittings shall be joined using a butt fusion joining procedure that meets the requirements specified for polyethylene pipelines in Clause 13.3.5.

13.2.5.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall ensure that the personnel performing the joining of liners are determined to be competent in the joining procedure by the liner installer.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.2.5.3

Prior to insertion of the liner, excess external fusion bead on the liner shall be trimmed using equipment and procedures prescribed by the liner installer.

Note: *In some cases, removal of the internal fusion bead may be specified to facilitate pigging or reduce deposition of solids.*

13.2.6 Flange connections

13.2.6.1

Lined flanged joints shall be assembled in accordance with the liner installer's procedure.

13.2.6.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The components of the steel flange connection shall be designed and manufactured to be compatible with the liner system and the pipeline. Any metallic fittings for applications in sour service, as defined in Clause 16.2, shall meet the requirements of Clause 16.4.

Note: *Based upon the liner manufacturer's requirements, steel flanges can need slight modification by machining, such as boring to the same internal diameter as the steel pipe, increasing the radius between the bore and the raised face, or reducing the diameter of the raised face.*

13.2.6.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The circumferential welds made to install steel flanges that are used to join sections of pipelines after liner installation shall be radiographically inspected for 100% of their circumferences as specified in Clause 7.10. All welding on sour service lined pipelines shall be in accordance with Clause 16.

13.2.7 Pressure testing

13.2.7.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Following liner insertion, the lined pipeline shall be given a 4 h leak test at 100% of the maximum operating pressure. Where such a leak test pressure is above 2.0 MPa, the pressure shall then be lowered to 2.0 MPa and held for an additional 4 h.

For liners installed in new steel pipelines that have passed field pressure tests in accordance with Clause 8, the 4 h liner leak test may be performed with air in accordance with a test procedure approved by the company.

13.2.7.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

During the pressure test, the annulus vents shall be periodically opened and monitored for pressure build-up or flow of liquids.

Note: *Typically a small pressure build-up or flow of liquids occurs at the liner annulus vents until the liner has fully expanded.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.2.7.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Liners that leak during leak testing shall be repaired and retested as specified in Clause 13.2.7.

13.2.7.4

Any pressure-test fluids that accumulate in the carrier pipe when a liner fails during pressure testing shall be removed as thoroughly as possible prior to reinsertion of the liner.

13.2.8 Operation and maintenance

13.2.8.1

The annulus of lined pipelines shall be routinely checked for pressure build-up or leakage at a frequency determined by the operating company.

Notes:

1) *To prevent collapse of the liner, liner vents should not be opened while the liner is under vacuum conditions and the liner annulus pressure should not exceed the pipeline operating pressure. The maximum interval between annulus pressure checks should be three months.*

2) *Operators should frequently monitor vent pressures at pipeline start-up and reduce monitoring frequency accordingly as their operating experience shows is appropriate.*

13.2.8.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The operating company shall ensure that fluids or operating conditions that are detrimental to the design life of the liner, determined as specified in Clause 13.2.2.1 to 13.2.2.3, are not introduced without assessment of their effect on the design life of the liner.

Where there is a change in the pipeline service conditions, the liner material shall be compatible with the new service fluid in accordance with Clauses 13.2.2.2 and 13.2.2.3.

13.2.8.3

Where an in-service liner breach is experienced, the company shall

a) determine if the pipeline requires immediate shutdown;
b) consider and implement appropriate additional operational safety measures;
c) perform an engineering assessment or inspections, or both, to determine if the carrier pipe is at risk of failure where the lined pipeline continues to operate with a liner breach; and
d) develop and implement a liner repair plan.

13.2.8.4

Where a liner breach has occurred, confirmation of the ongoing integrity of the carrier pipe shall be required prior to repair of the liner. The company shall demonstrate the integrity of the carrier pipe as specified in Clause 13.2.2.12.

Note: *If annulus vents of adjoining lined sections are interconnected, the service fluid can accumulate in the annulus of the adjacent lined pipeline sections.*

13.2.8.5

The repaired lined pipeline section shall be pressure tested as specified by Clause 13.2.7.1.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.2.8.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In addition to the requirements specified in Clauses 10.15 and 10.16, when lined pipelines are being considered for deactivation or abandonment, an assessment of possible hazards from gases that can evolve from the liner and accumulate in the pipeline shall be considered.

Note: *Assessment should determine whether evolved gases can constitute a hazard to personnel or an explosive atmosphere.*

13.3 Polyethylene pipelines

13.3.1 General

13.3.1.1

Clause 13.3 contains additional requirements for pipelines constructed of high-density polyethylene (HDPE) pipe and fittings for gas, multiphase, LVP, and oilfield water services. HDPE pipe and fittings shall not be used for HVP pipelines.

Notes:

1) *When designing pipelines, consideration should be given to the increased susceptibility of polyethylene pipelines to third-party damage.*

2) *The requirements for polyethylene gas distribution pipelines are contained in Clause 12.*

13.3.1.2

Polyethylene pipe used for gas gathering service shall be limited to a hydrogen sulphide partial pressure of 20 kPa and a maximum H_2S concentration of 5% in the service fluid.

13.3.1.3

The applicable provisions of Clauses 3 to 10 shall also be applied to polyethylene pipelines, except insofar as such requirements are specifically modified or voided by the requirements of Clause 13.3.

13.3.2 Design

13.3.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The designer shall review the properties published by the manufacturer of the pipe or fittings for conformance with the requirements of Clause 13.3.

Note: *Exposure to certain hydrocarbons has a cumulative effect and can reduce the pressure capability of polyethylene pipe. Continued exposure can also cause a reduction in tensile strength and an increase in physical dimensions (swelling) due to absorption of hydrocarbons by the pipe wall. The degree of absorption is a function of pressure, temperature, the nature of the hydrocarbons, and the polymer structure of the polyethylene. The company should consider each of such parameters before verifying the suitability of polyethylene for liquid hydrocarbon pipelines. The effects on polyethylene pipe of chemical additives to pipeline fluids should also be considered.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.3.2.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design pressure for a given minimum wall thickness or the minimum wall thickness for a given design pressure, shall be determined by the following formula:

$$P = \frac{2S}{R-1} \times F \times T$$

where

P = design pressure, MPa

S = hydrostatic design stress (HDS) at 23 °C, MPa (see Table 13.2)*

R = standard dimension ratio (SDR), ratio of pipe average outside diameter to pipe minimum wall thickness

F = service fluid factor (see Table 13.3)

T = design temperature factor (see Table 13.4)†

** The HDS is the maximum stress allowed in the pipe wall and is determined by multiplying the hydrostatic design basis (HDB) by a design factor. See Clause 13.3.3.2.*

† The applicable T must be selected from Table 13.4. If manufacturer's data for HDS at or above the pipeline design temperature is published in PPI TR-4, that data for HDS, in conjunction with a design temperature factor of 1.00, may be used to determine design pressure.

Note: *Calculated design pressures should be rounded to the nearest 10 kPa and calculated minimum required wall thicknesses be rounded to the nearest 0.1 mm.*

13.3.2.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design pressure of fittings and flanges shall be not less than the design pressure of the pipeline system in which they are used.

13.3.2.4

The design temperature for polyethylene pipe shall not exceed 60 °C.

Note: *Instrumented automatic safety shutdown devices should be used when the pipeline design temperature could be exceeded. See Table 13.4 for design temperature factors.*

13.3.2.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene pipelines shall be designed and installed so that stresses resulting from installation, backfill, thermal effects, internal pressurization, and external loading are acceptable.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 13.2
Material classification and minimum property values
(See Clauses 13.3.2.2 and 13.3.3.2.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

Property	Specification of ASTM D3350 minimum cell classifications* and property values	
	Hydrostatic design stress (HDS)	
	HDS 5.5 MPa	HDS 6.9 MPa
Density (natural base resin)	3*	3,4*
Melt index	4*	4*
Flexural modulus	5*	5,6*
Tensile strength at yield	4*	4,5*
Slow crack growth (SCG) resistance, PENT	6,7*	7*
Hydrostatic strength classification	4*	4*
Colour and UV stabilizer (Clause 13.3.3.3)	C*	C*
HDS† at 23 °C, PPI TR-4/TR-3, MPa	5.5	6.9
HDB at 23 °C, PPI TR-4, MPa	11.0	11.0
HDB at 60 °C, PPI TR-4, MPa	5.5	6.9
Thermal stability per ASTM D3350	> 220 °C	> 220 °C
Pipe material designation codes, PPI TR-4	PE 3408 PE 3608 PE 3708	PE 3710 PE 4710

** ASTM D3350 cell classification values reflect typical property values for numerous lots of the material and do not include testing bias or manufacturing tolerances. Values for individual material lots can vary from typical values. The manufacturer should be contacted for information about testing bias and material manufacturing tolerances.*
† Only the selected HDS value from this Table is used to determine design pressure in the equation in Clause 13.3.2.2. Both the HDS and HDB for polyethylene materials are given in PPI TR-4. The HDS is determined by multiplying the HDB at 23 °C by a design factor. For PE 3408, PE 3608, and PE 3708 pipe materials, the design factor is 0.50, and for PE 3710 and PE 4710 pipe materials, the design factor is 0.63. The policy governing these design factors is determined by the PPI and published in PPI TR-3. The HDB values in this Table are not used for determining pipeline design pressure and are listed as material properties only.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 13.3
Service fluid factor (*F*)
(See Clause 13.3.2.2.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

Service	*F*
Dry gas gathering*	1.00
Wet gas gathering	0.50
Multiphase	0.50
LVP liquid hydrocarbons	0.50
Oilfield water (≤ 2% liquid hydrocarbon)	1.00
Oilfield water (> 2% liquid hydrocarbon)	0.50

** Dry gas gathering involves a service fluid that, given the design and operating conditions of the pipeline, contains no associated hydrocarbon liquids and is above the hydrocarbon dew point. The service fluid, in this case, can contain measurable quantities of water.*

Table 13.4
Design temperature factor (*T*)
(See Clauses 13.3.2.2 and 13.3.2.4.)

There is a commentary available for this Table.

	T	
Design temperature, °C	**PE 3408 PE 3608 PE 3708**	**PE 3710 PE 4710**
< 23	1.00	1.00
23–27	0.95	0.96
28–32	0.88	0.91
33–38	0.80	0.85
39– 44	0.72	0.79
45– 49	0.65	0.74
50–55	0.57	0.68
56–60	0.50	0.63

13.3.2.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The depth of cover requirements for polyethylene pipelines shall be as specified in Clause 4.11. For polyethylene pipelines within road and railway rights-of-way, additional requirements for minimum cover shall be determined by the company.

13.3.2.7

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where polyethylene pipelines are cased, the casings shall be designed as specified in Clause 4.12.

Note: *Clause 4.12.3.3 a) is not applicable.*

© 2015 CSA Group

13.3.2.8

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For uncased polyethylene pipeline crossings of roads and railways, the pipe shall have a standard dimension ratio of 11.0 or less and the pipeline shall be well supported in a bored hole or with compacted backfill. Transitions between the bored pipe to the line pipe shall be supported on compacted backfill in such a manner as to minimize stresses on the transition joints.

13.3.2.9

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where polyethylene pipe is installed as a free-standing pipe inside a steel pipeline, bend radii and the relative diameters of the polyethylene pipe and the steel pipe shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Notes:

1) *A pressure test on the liner pipe should be performed prior to insertion.*

2) *Fluids left between the liner and the steel pipeline can damage the liner if allowed to freeze.*

13.3.2.10

Where polyethylene pipelines are joined above the ground surface to metallic piping or are part of an aboveground piping system installation, the design of the pipeline shall include

a) adequate pipe support;
b) anchoring methods in accordance with the manufacturer's installation recommendations;
c) measures to prevent damage to the polyethylene pipe and the transition connection;
d) management of stresses on piping due to thermal expansion and soil settling/compaction;
e) protection from the effects of weather and ultraviolet light exposure;
f) prevention of pipe surface heating to temperatures above the design temperature, whether from ambient conditions or solar heating;
g) protection from unintended contact and mechanical damage; and
h) measures to prevent piping damage from fire such as from grass or brush fire encroachment.

13.3.3 Materials

13.3.3.1

Polyethylene pipe shall be manufactured as specified in API 15LE and as specified in Clauses 13.3.3.2 and 13.3.3.3 of this Standard.

Polyethylene butt fusion fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D3261 and fabricated fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F2206.

Polyethylene to steel transition fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1973.

13.3.3.2

The material shall be any of the grades with pipe designation codes PE 3408, PE 3608, PE 3708, PE 3710, or PE 4710. The resin material shall meet ASTM D3350 and shall have properties in accordance with Table 13.2. Hydrostatic design basis (HDB) shall have been determined in accordance with the requirements of ASTM D2837 and the hydrostatic design stress (HDS) determined in accordance with PPI TR-3. The material shall be as listed in PPI TR-4. The pipe manufacturer shall include the

 © 2015 CSA Group

ASTM D3350 cell classification on the print line marking of the pipe. Fittings shall be of equivalent or superior polyethylene grade to the pipe being used.

The material shall be qualified for butt fusion joining capability by the pipe manufacturer and initial butt fusion joining parameters for the material shall be provided by the pipe manufacturer.

The pipe manufacturer shall confirm the pipe properties by providing a material test report (MTR) that provides the following information as a minimum:

a) resin material and lot number;
b) extruder line;
c) pipe material designation code (i.e., PE 3608);
d) apparent ring tensile strength;
e) pipe diameter and standard dimension ratio (SDR);
f) pipe manufacturing date; and
g) pipe reel or crate number.

13.3.3.3

Pipe shall be black. Black material shall contain a minimum of 2% carbon black. Colour material may be used for co-extruded colour stripes in the pipe's outside surface and shall meet Clauses 13.3.3.1 and 13.3.3.2 but shall be ASTM D3350 colour and UV stabilizer code letter E and shall contain sufficient UV stabilizer for two years' unprotected outdoor storage.

13.3.3.4

Metallic components included as part of an HDPE pipeline installation for which the intended operating conditions meet the definition of sour service in Clause 16.2 shall meet the requirements of Clause 16.4.

Δ

13.3.3.5

Except as permitted by Clauses 13.3.3.6 and 13.3.3.7, for steel risers and below-ground components that are connected to polyethylene pipe, the requirements for internal and external corrosion control of the steel pipeline portions shall be determined in accordance with Clause 9.

Δ

13.3.3.6

For corrosion control of metallic risers or below ground metallic-components, where either solid corrosion resistant alloys (CRA) or corrosion resistant metallic coatings are used, additional external corrosion protection (e.g., cathodic protection) is not required, provided that an engineering assessment indicates adequate corrosion resistance for the intended life of the pipeline. The engineering assessment shall include consideration of the

a) expected life of the alloy or coating;
b) the potential for external corrosion at coating holidays; and
c) the effect on the life of the coating as a result of such holidays.

Where the result of the engineering assessment is to retain the requirements for additional external corrosion protection as specified in Clause 9, such protection measures shall be specified in the design.

Δ

13.3.3.7

Cathodic protection installed on risers shall be monitored.

Note: *Monitoring of cathodic protection installed on below ground components is optional.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.3.4 Installation

13.3.4.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A continuous, electrically insulated, minimum 14 gauge metallic tracer wire shall be installed in the ditch adjacent to each polyethylene pipeline. Tracer wires shall be checked for electrical continuity immediately following installation. Tracer wires shall be made resistant to corrosion damage, either by use of coated copper wire or by other means. Tracer wires shall be carried to surface in a suitable protective conduit. The tracer wires termination points shall be clearly marked and secured at readily accessible locations above the ground surface.

13.3.4.2

Polyethylene pipe shall not be bent to radii smaller than the minimum recommended by the manufacturer. Bends shall be free from buckles, cracks, and other evidence of damage. Field-fabricated mitred bends shall not be used.

Δ

13.3.4.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene pipe shall be uncoiled, unspooled, or bent in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The pipe shall not be bent to radii smaller than the minimum recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Where continuous length polyethylene pipe is installed by ploughing, the company shall determine whether the soil and aggregates surrounding the pipe provide adequate support and will not cause damage to the pipe.

Note: *In cold weather, additional considerations might be necessary; the manufacturer should be consulted.*

13.3.4.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The pipeline trench bottom shall be smooth, with gradual grade transitions. The trench bottom and backfill material shall be free of rocks that can damage the pipe and shall be composed of clean soil or sand that extends a minimum of 150 mm from the pipe wall in all directions. The company, in consultation with the pipe manufacturer, shall determine whether additional backfill compaction is required for the pipeline.

Δ

13.3.4.5

The depth-of-cover requirements for polyethylene pipelines within road or railway rights-of-way shall be determined by the company and shall be not less than the applicable depth of cover specified in Clause 4.11.

Δ

13.3.4.6

Polyethylene component installation specifications shall be based upon the manufacturer's recommended practices. Personnel conducting component installation shall be competent in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended practice.

Δ

13.3.4.7

Where polyethylene pipelines are cased for load protection such as for highway crossings, the casings shall be designed as specified in Clause 4.12.3.3.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ **13.3.4.8**

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where polyethylene pipelines are cased for crossings, appropriate support and protection shall be given to the pipe where it exits the casing pipe and beyond the casing ends by soil compaction or other suitable support, so that shear stresses, thermal stresses, and wear are controlled to acceptable levels. Where polyethylene pipelines are not cased for crossings, the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the necessary depth of cover for anticipated loads shall be followed.

Note: *Back fill soil type and compaction are important considerations for casings.*

Δ **13.3.4.9**

Where polyethylene pipe is installed as a free-standing liner inside a steel pipeline, bend radii and the relative diameters of the liner and the steel pipe shall be in accordance with the polyethylene pipe manufacturer's recommendations.

Notes:

1) *A preliminary leak test on the liner pipe should be considered prior to insertion.*

2) *Fluids left between the liner and the steel pipeline can damage the liner if allowed to freeze.*

3) *The line should be pigged or otherwise verified to be clear of any obstacles that can damage the liner pipe.*

13.3.5 Joining procedure and qualification

13.3.5.1

Polyethylene pipe and fittings shall be joined by fusion, special fittings or flanges, or both. Polyethylene pipe and steel pipe shall be joined using manufacturer-approved special transition fittings or flanges.

13.3.5.2

Threaded connections shall not be used to join polyethylene pipe

Δ **13.3.5.3**

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The fusion joining procedure for the specified resin shall be developed based on the pipe and fitting manufacturer's recommended fusion parameters. The pipe and fitting manufacturer shall provide testing and qualification data for the fusion joining parameters for the specified resin and provide confirmation of this testing to the company.

13.3.5.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The fusion joining procedure shall incorporate provisions for field conditions and adjustments required for different ambient temperature conditions.

13.3.5.5

Fusion joining equipment shall be in accordance with ISO 12176.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ
13.3.5.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For new pipeline installation, the fusion joining procedure for the specified size of pipe and fittings being used shall be qualified based on tests, prior to construction, using the fusion joining process and procedure specified, for the same grade of material, diameter, manufacturer(s), and wall thickness as will be used for the project.

13.3.5.7

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Fusion joining procedure qualification shall include tensile strength testing and bend testing and shall meet the appearance criteria for fusion joint bead size and bead rollback. Tensile strength tests for fusion joint and pipe, for all pipe wall thicknesses, shall be in accordance with either ISO 13953, Type A or Type B specimens, or ASTM F2634. The fusion joint tests shall indicate a ductile failure mode and the minimum tensile strength of the fusion joint shall be a minimum of 90% of the pipe body. Bend testing shall be in accordance with Clause 13.3.7.6.

13.3.5.8

The fusion joining procedure shall include

a) the equipment and tooling required;
b) the joining surfaces preparation requirements;
c) the heating tool temperature required for fusion;
d) the heating soak times for each size and wall thickness of pipe;
e) the alignment procedures and acceptable limits;
f) the joining interfacial pressure and hold time requirements;
g) the clamped cooling time requirements;
h) the cooling handling time requirements;
i) the elapsed time required before the joint can be subjected to high stress;
j) procedural modifications and precautions for cold-weather joining methods;
k) precautions for inclement weather such as wind or rain;
l) documentation and traceability of fusions and fusion joiners unique identification marking procedure;
m) visual assessment acceptance criteria; and
n) the production fusion joint destructive test method.

13.3.5.9

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For new pipeline installation, a joining and installation manual shall be prepared by the installer for the HDPE pipeline installation and shall be consulted by the fusion supervisor.

13.3.5.10

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For new pipeline installation, the qualified fusion joining procedure shall be verified by the installer prior to beginning the pipeline construction project by the completion and testing of a test joint. The verification tests shall be done using the project fusion equipment, project fusion operators and project pipe. The verification test methods shall be in accordance with Clause 13.3.5.7.

© 2015 CSA Group

13.3.6 Joining personnel — Competency requirements

13.3.6.1

The company shall ensure that fusion technicians are competent in fusion joining for the required application.

Δ

13.3.6.2

Fusion technicians shall have been trained and assessed by a fusion training organization. The course content shall provide training and awareness of the requirements of Clause 13.3.5. The training and assessment should be based on ISO 19480 or an equivalent industry standard.

13.3.6.3

Training organizations shall assess fusion joining personnel through

a) evaluation of test fusion joining to determine proper adherence to fusion joining procedure; and
b) evaluation of the visual appearance and dimensions of completed fusion joints.

Bend testing of test fusion joints shall be conducted in accordance with Clause 13.3.7.6. Tensile strength testing of fusion joints by training organizations shall be performed in accordance with Clause 13.3.5.7.

13.3.6.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The fusion training organization, upon completion of the assessment, shall issue evidence of qualification that states the

a) fusion technician's name;
b) fusion joining technique or techniques for which the operator is qualified;
c) type of fusion equipment and the pipe size limitations applicable to that fusion equipment; and
d) fusion technician's specific training.

The evidence shall provide a unique identification number for the fusion operator for traceability.

13.3.6.5

The pipeline installer shall maintain documented evidence of the competency of the fusion technicians within the installer's organization.

Δ

13.3.6.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Re-assessment of fusion technicians by training organizations shall be required every 2 years or when no production fusion joining has been performed for a period of 12 months or longer. The re-assessment procedure should be based on the ISO 19480 methodology or an equivalent industry standard.

13.3.6.7

Production fusion joining shall be performed by either a Level 1 fusion technician (trainee) or Level 2 fusion technician (supervisor), as specified. Production fusion joining shall be performed under direct supervision of a Level 2 fusion technician who is qualified in the fusion procedure.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.3.6.8

Fusion technicians shall maintain and provide records of their fusion joining training, qualification testing results, and work experience logs for high density polyethylene pipelines, including the number of joints completed, pipe sizes, SDR, types of fittings, stick versus coiled pipe, project description, pipe length, and tie-in fusions.

13.3.6.9

The minimum requirements for a Level 1 fusion technician (trainee) are

a) training and assessment completed in accordance with Clauses 13.3.6.2 and 13.3.6.3;
b) possession of valid training certificate for the fusion method, fusion equipment, and pipe size range being installed in accordance with Clause 13.3.6.4;
c) the ability to determine when minor adjustments to the fusion procedure specification are required and the ability to initiate the change process within their work organization;
d) records maintained in accordance with Clause 13.3.6.8; and
e) record entries signed by a Level 2 fusion operator.

13.3.6.10

The minimum requirements and expectations for a Level 2 fusion technician (supervisor) are as follows:

a) requirements for Level 1, as listed in Clause 13.3.6.9, completed;
b) records maintained in accordance with Clause 13.3.6.8
c) record entries signed off by the installer's supervisor;
d) demonstrates competency required for producing acceptable fusions under field conditions that include cold weather, tie-in fusions, heavy walled pipe, and various diameter pipes and has full understanding of fusion quality requirements;
e) minimum of 100 butt fusion joints of pipe or fittings documented on prior pipeline projects with a minimum of 50 butt fusion joints documented on the type of fusion joining machine, coiled or straight length pipe, fittings or tie-in joints for the fusions being supervised;
f) Level 2 fusion technicians shall be endorsed for a different type of fusion joining machine after completion and documentation of three successfully tested fusion joints on that machine and as approved by company/owner; and
g) for supervision of other fusion joining processes, such as electrofusion and saddle fusion, endorsement is required by completion of training in the technique from a training organization and successful completion and documentation of ten fusion joints.

13.3.7 Joining inspection

13.3.7.1

Quality control of fusion joints shall be performed in accordance with an inspection and test plan, which shall include the number and location of test specimens to be inspected and the methods for doing so.

13.3.7.2

Each removed fusion joint shall be destructively tested in accordance with the production fusion joint destructive test as specified in Clause 13.3.5.8 n). Results of testing shall be recorded in the installation manual. Records of testing shall be maintained for the life of the pipeline and pipe test samples shall be saved until project completion by the installer and then disposed of in a manner approved by the company.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.3.7.3

For the installation of straight length pipe, where a fusion joint fails the specified test, the joint completed immediately previous to the failed joint shall be tested. If it fails, the next previous joint shall be tested, and the process shall be repeated until successful test results are achieved. Upon successful testing of previously completed joints, the next produced fusion joint shall be tested.

13.3.7.4

For the installation of coiled pipe, where a fusion joint fails the specified test, a new joint shall be made and tested as soon as sufficiently cooled. If that joint fails, then the fusion joint made previously to the original failed test joint shall be cut out and tested. If that joint fails, the previously made joint shall be removed and tested. The process shall continue until successful test results are achieved, upon which a successful test joint shall be made before production joining can resume.

13.3.7.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The procedures for field destructive testing and visual assessment shall follow the requirements in accordance with the fusion qualification test specified in Clause 13.3.5.7.

13.3.7.6

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The destructive bend test procedure used for fusion joint testing shall be as follows:

a) For nominal pipe diameters of 114.30 mm and smaller, three bend test samples spaced equally around the pipe circumference shall be tested for each removed fusion joint. For pipe nominal pipe diameters of 141.30 mm and larger, a minimum of four bend test samples spaced at quadrants around the pipe shall be tested for each removed fusion joint.
b) For pipe with a wall thickness of 25.4 mm or less, a three point root bend test shall be used where one of the faces that correspond to the interior surface of the pipe at the joint is subjected to extension.
c) For pipe where the wall thickness is greater than 25.4 mm, a three point side wall bend test shall be used where one of the faces of the test specimen that corresponds to the cross section of the joint is subjected to extension.
d) All bend tests shall use a sample of full pipe wall thickness and joint cross section.
e) The sample width dimension shall be measured in the direction of the pipe circumference, parallel to the fusion joint. For root bend tests the sample width shall be no less than the nominal wall thickness of the pipe. For side wall bend tests the sample width shall be 12.7 mm ±1 mm. Where side wall bend tests require the machining of specimens to size, the machined sides shall be smoothly finished so as not to provide cracking initiation points.
f) The sample shall be bent in a controlled manner over a mandrel centered on the fusion joint with the use of two guiding rollers, to a final bend angle of 180°. The mandrel shall have an outside diameter sized to produce 13% ± 2% strain of the test sample and to cover the tested surface of the sample. The strain shall be based on using the mid-point thickness of the test sample as the reference or neutral axis.
g) The mandrel diameter to develop the specified sample strain shall be determined by the following formula:

   $D = 6.667 \times T$

   where

   D = mandrel outside diameter, mm

 © 2015 CSA Group

T = wall thickness of test sample, mm

h) For side wall bend tests, an 88.9 mm diameter mandrel shall be used.
i) For root bend tests, the external bead shall be removed to allow the mandrel to be placed against the exterior of the pipe for testing. For side bend tests, the removal of the external bead for testing is not required except if being removed for the project, in which case it shall be removed for testing.
j) Sample surfaces shall be finished to minimize surface damage or blemishes that could act as crack initiation points. Heat or chemicals shall not be used for surface finishing of bend test samples.
k) Bend tests shall be performed at a test sample temperature of 20 °C ± 5 °C and test samples shall be conditioned at the test temperature for a minimum of 1 h before testing.
l) Pass criteria shall be no visible cracks, tears, or breaks in all tested samples. Where only one test sample does not pass, then retesting a single adjacent sample may be done. Where more than one sample fails, the joint shall be unacceptable. If a retest sample fails, than the joint shall be unacceptable.

Note: *Test mandrel outside diameter used may vary slightly from the calculated diameter in Item g) to develop acceptable 13% ± 2% strain level.*

13.3.7.7

Fusion joining parameters for each joint shall be accurately recorded manually or the fusion joining equipment shall be equipped with an electronic data recording device to record fusion joining parameters. The fusion joining parameters shall be maintained within the fusion joining procedure. Such records shall be maintained for the life of the pipeline.

The minimum fusion parameters to be recorded shall include
a) type and manufacturer of pipe;
b) SDR;
c) pipe designation code;
d) type and manufacturer of fusion equipment;
e) fusion technician;
f) ambient temperature;
g) heater plate temperature;
h) heating time;
i) soak time;
j) cool down time; and
k) fusion pressure.

13.3.7.8

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For services containing H_2S, the first fusion joint of each work day shall be removed for testing, followed by, as a minimum, one-tenth (1/10) of completed fusion joints taken in numerical sequence. A minimum of one sample per 12 h shift shall be tested for each fusion technician and fusion joining machine.

For coiled pipe, the first joint of each work day shall be tested for each fusion joining machine and fusion technician. A new test joint shall be required if the fusion technician changes, machine requires repair/adjustment or is replaced, pipe material type changes, or the pipe size or SDR changes. A

 © 2015 CSA Group

minimum of one sample per 12 h shift shall be tested for each fusion technician and fusion joining machine.

Note: *Fluids are deemed to contain H_2S if, upon release to the atmosphere, they are reasonably expected to result in hydrogen sulphide levels of 10 micromole/mole (10 ppm) or greater.*

13.3.7.9

For services not containing H_2S, the first fusion joint of each work day shall be removed for testing, followed by, as a minimum, one-fifteenth (1/15) of completed fusion joints taken in numerical sequence. A minimum of one sample per 12 h shift shall be tested for each fusion technician and welding machine.

For coiled pipe, the first joint of each work day shall be tested for each fusion joining machine and fusion technician. A new test joint shall be required if the fusion technician changes, machine requires repair/adjustment or is replaced, pipe material type changes, or the pipe size changes. A minimum of one sample per 12 h shift shall be tested for each fusion technician and fusion joining machine.

Note: *Fluids are deemed not to contain H_2S if, upon release to the atmosphere, they are reasonably expected to result in hydrogen sulphide levels of less than 10 micromole/mole (10 ppm).*

13.3.7.10

In addition to the testing requirements for fusion joints specified in Clauses 13.3.7.3, 13.3.7.4, 13.3.7.8, and 13.3.7.9, where fusion joint test failures are experienced repeatedly, the fusion joining procedure shall be reviewed by the installer based on the recommendations of the manufacturer. Where the qualified joining procedure is modified based on the review, then it shall be re-qualified in accordance with Clause 13.3.5

13.3.8 Pressure testing

13.3.8.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipelines shall be given a field pressure test at 125% of the design pressure, using air, water, or water with freezing-point depressant as the test medium.

For tests using water or water with freezing-point depressant, the test pressure shall be monitored and maintained for a continuous period of 3 to 4 h during the pipe expansion period. If required, unmeasured test fluid may be added during the pipe expansion period.

Following the 3 to 4 h pipe expansion period, the pressure test shall commence for an additional 3 h. From this point onward, any test fluid added to maintain the test pressure shall be measured.

The measured volume of test fluid added during the pressure test to maintain the test pressure shall not exceed the amount specified in Table 13.5.

For pneumatic tests, the pipeline shall be buried and the test pressure shall be applied for a continuous period of 24 h after stabilization of the test pressure.

Test fluids shall be maintained at or below the maximum pipeline design temperature. For pneumatic

 © 2015 CSA Group

tests using an air compressor to pressurize the pipeline, the compressor discharge air temperature shall be controlled below the pipeline design temperature.

Notes:

1) *Polyethylene pipe undergoes expansion upon initial pressurization. Therefore, it can be necessary to add the test medium and allow sufficient time (e.g., 3 to 4 h) for the pressure to stabilize prior to initiation of the pressure test. The company should consult the pipe manufacturer regarding the pressure-test procedure.*

2) *Exposed pipe sections can be affected by solar heating and require protection from sunlight to remain below the design temperature.*

Table 13.5
Expansion allowance under test pressure
(See Clause 13.3.8.1.)

Nominal diameter	Volume, L/m
2	0.02
3	0.03
4	0.05
5	0.08
6	0.11
8	0.19
10	0.26
12	0.42
14	0.52
16	0.62
18	0.81
20	0.99
22	1.30
24	1.65
28	2.07
32	2.79
36	3.35
40	4.10
42	4.66
48	5.96
54	7.70

13.3.8.2

Where polyethylene pipelines are segmented into sections for pressure testing, complete retesting of the pipeline after tie-in shall not be required. Where either fusion or flanges are used to connect tested segments, a 1 h leak test of the exposed tie-in joint shall be performed at the highest available operating pressure. For gas gathering pipelines, following backfilling, an additional leak detection test of the tie-in joint shall be performed, using flame ionization test methods or proven equivalent, after a minimum of 48 h and within one month of the pipeline being placed into service.

13.3.8.3

The maximum test pressure shall not exceed the value recommended by the pipe manufacturer.

13.3.8.4

The maximum operating pressure at any point shall not exceed 80% of the test pressure.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.3.8.5
Pipelines that leak during testing shall be repaired or replaced, and retested.

13.3.9 Operation and maintenance

13.3.9.1
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall ensure that pipeline operating personnel are aware of the maximum design temperature and receive training so as to understand the requirements and implications for operation.

Note: *Signs that identify the pipeline material and design temperature should be used at inlet locations where there might be a possibility for operating personnel to allow higher temperature fluids to enter the pipeline.*

13.3.9.2
Permanent repairs to polyethylene pipelines containing defects shall be made by cutting out the defective portions as cylinders and replacing them with pipe, fittings, or flanges that meet the design requirements, using fusion joining.

Note: *Sufficient pipe should be exposed to allow adequate pipe movement to install the repair section using fusion joining. The effects of thermal expansion or contraction of the repaired area after placement into service should be considered.*

13.3.9.3
Temporary repairs to polyethylene pipelines may be made using full-encirclement clamps approved by the pipe manufacturer. Temporary repairs shall be replaced by permanent repairs within 1 year.

13.3.9.4
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipe used for repairs shall be pretested to 1.25 times the pipeline design pressure for a minimum 1 h. Immediately following any repair, the repaired pipe shall be left exposed and subjected to a 1 h leak test at the normal operating pressure. For gas gathering pipelines, an additional leak detection test shall be performed, using flame ionization test methods or proven equivalent, after a minimum of 48 h and within one month of the pipeline being placed into service.

13.3.9.5
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Polyethylene pipe is not conductive; therefore, the operating company, in consultation with the manufacturer, shall develop procedures for dissipation of static electricity and include them in its operation and maintenance procedures. Such procedures shall be followed when pipeline systems are purged, repaired, replaced, or extended in the presence of, or potential presence of, flammable gas-air mixtures.

Δ 13.3.9.6
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In addition to the requirements specified in Clauses 10.15 and 10.16, when polyethylene pipelines are

 © 2015 CSA Group

being considered for deactivation or abandonment, an assessment of potential hazards from gases that can evolve from the pipeline material shall be considered.

Note: *Assessment should determine whether evolved gases can constitute a hazard to personnel or an explosive atmosphere. If so, repeated purging and rest periods might be necessary to allow absorbed gases to evolve.*

14 Steam distribution pipelines and high temperature pipelines

14.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Δ 14.1.1 Scope

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clause 14 covers requirements specific to the design, construction, operation, and maintenance of permanent steam distribution and high temperature pipelines that are within the scope of this Standard (see Figure 1.1).

14.1.2 Applicability

The provisions of Clauses 3 to 10 and 16 shall also be applicable to steam distribution and high temperature pipelines, except insofar as such provisions are modified by the provisions of Clause 14.

14.1.3 Multiple service pipelines

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

If a pipeline or a section of a pipeline is intended to operate alternately in more than one service and any of the multiple service conditions fall within the scope of Clause 14, then the pipeline shall be designed in accordance with the scope of Clause 14. Special consideration shall be given to the characteristics of all the services the pipeline might be exposed to, including factors such as sour service, corrosion, erosion, salt water, low temperature operation, and any other relevant factors of the multiple services.

Δ 14.1.4 Alternate provisions

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The alternate provisions of Annex I shall only be permitted for steam distribution pipelines or designated portions of such pipelines.

14.1.5 Definitions

For the purposes of Clause 14 and Annex I, the following definitions apply:

a) Listed material – a material for which an allowable stress value is published in ASME B31.3 Table A-1 or Table K-1, as applicable, at the pipeline maximum design temperature.

b) Unlisted material – a material that conforms to the requirements of paragraph 323.1.2 of ASME B31.3 but for which the allowable stress value is not published in either Table A-1 or Table K-1 at the pipeline maximum design temperature.

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.2 Design

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

14.2.1 General

Δ

14.2.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipelines shall be above ground except where allowed at below ground crossings. At below ground crossings, pipelines shall be run through conduit or casing to prevent soil contact with the carrier pipe. Adequate space for inspection and maintenance, and suitable provisions for drainage, where necessary, shall be provided.

14.2.1.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipelines shall have an adequate number of:

a) vents to accommodate pressure testing and start-up; and
b) drains to accommodate pressure testing, startups and shutdowns.

14.2.1.3

Support spacing for aboveground pipelines shall be such that deflections of the pipelines are

a) limited to prevent excessive accumulation of liquids between supports; and
b) within the allowable limits determined by stress analysis.

14.2.1.4

For steam distribution pipelines,

a) care shall be taken in the design of the vents to avoid pockets giving rise to severe pressure transients (e.g., steam-induced water hammer);
b) a system of adequately sized drains shall be provided on steam distribution pipelines at low points to allow the removal of fluids to prevent ice damage and pressure transients during start-up and operation;
c) by-passes shall be provided around block valves as necessary to allow for gradual and controlled introduction of steam to steam pipelines; and
d) steam traps, where required by the engineering design, shall be sized for effective operation.

14.2.2 Straight pipe under internal pressure

14.2.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The internal pressure design thickness shall be not less than that determined using the following formula, where t is less than $D/6$ (see Clause 14.2.2.2):

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SJ}$$

where

t = internal pressure design thickness, mm

P = internal design pressure, MPa

 © 2015 CSA Group

D = outside diameter of pipe, mm

S = basic allowable design stress value, in accordance with Table A-1 of ASME B31.3 for listed materials, or established as specified in Paragraph 302.3.2(d) of ASME B31.3 for unlisted materials, MPa

J = joint factor (see Table 4.3)

The nominal wall thickness for the pipe selected shall be not less than the minimum required wall thickness, t_m, as determined using the following formula:

$$t_m = \frac{t + MA}{100 - WM} \times 100 + CA$$

where

t_m = minimum required wall thickness, mm

MA = mechanical allowance for thread or groove depth, mm; for threaded components, the nominal thread depth, h, as specified in ASME B1.20.1

WM = minus tolerance on wall thickness (see Clause 14.2.7), %

CA = corrosion and erosion allowances (see Clause 14.2.6), mm

Note: *Calculated internal pressure design thicknesses and calculated minimum required wall thicknesses should be rounded to the nearest 0.1 mm.*

14.2.2.2

Pipe 60.3 mm OD or larger shall receive special consideration where t is equal to or greater than $D/6$, or P/SJ is greater than 0.385.

Note: *Design and material factors that should be given special consideration include theory of failure, fatigue, and thermal stresses because the thin-wall theory upon which the design formula in Clause 14.2.2.1 is based does not apply for such pipe.*

14.2.3 Pipe bends

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design pressure and minimum required wall thickness for pipe bends shall be in accordance with the following requirements:

a) The internal pressure design thickness of a bend shall be determined using the following formula:

$$t = \frac{PDI}{2SJ}$$

where

t = internal pressure design thickness, mm

P = internal design pressure, MPa

D = outside diameter of pipe, mm

I = the value determined by ASME B31.3, Paragraph 304.2.1, Equations 3d and 3e, for the intrados and extrados, respectively

S = basic allowable design stress value in accordance with Table A-1 of ASME B31.3 for listed materials, or established as specified in Paragraph 302.3.2(d) of ASME B31.3 for unlisted materials, MPa

J = joint factor (see Table 4.3)

Note: *The required internal pressure design thickness, t, is calculated at both the intrados and extrados.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) The minimum required wall thickness of a bend, after bending, at the intrados and extrados, shall be the calculated internal pressure design thickness, *t*, plus corrosion and erosion allowances, CA.
c) The nominal wall thickness of straight pipe selected for bending shall include an allowance for wall thinning that occurs during the bending process.

14.2.4 Limits of calculated stresses due to sustained loads and displacement strains

The allowable displacement stress range (thermal stress) and the sum of longitudinal stresses due to pressure, mass, and other sustained loads shall be limited as specified in Paragraphs 302.3.5(c) and 302.3.5(d) of ASME B31.3.

14.2.5 Expansion, flexibility, and support

14.2.5.1

Pipelines shall have sufficient flexibility to accommodate thermally induced movements of pipe, pipeline supports, and termination points, as specified in Paragraphs 319.1 to 321.4 of ASME B31.3.

14.2.5.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The designs of aboveground pipelines shall include consideration of the
a) effect of the frictional resistance of sliding pipe shoes and supports;
b) use of an appropriate method of stress analysis so that stress levels do not exceed those allowed by ASME B31.3;
c) combined loading on the supports due to the pipelines and facilities so supported;
d) anchor loads, which shall be determined from the stress analysis, including frictional forces and using a coefficient of friction of at least 0.4 for steel on steel; and
e) welded attachments for pipe supporting elements, such as anchors or guides. When such attachments are made to a pipeline operating at stress levels greater than 50% specified minimum yield strength of the pipe, such attachments may be directly attached to the pipeline or may be welded to a separate cylindrical member that either completely encircle the pipe or extends 120° around the circumference. Any cylindrical member shall be welded to the pipe on all sides by continuous welds.

Note: *The designer should consider that supplementary stresses on thin wall pipe can dictate a cylindrical member be used.*

14.2.6 Corrosion and erosion allowances

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Corrosion and erosion allowances are not mandatory. The need for such allowances and their magnitude, where required, shall be determined by the designer.

14.2.7 Wall thickness tolerance

Pipeline designs for which the minus tolerance on wall thickness is less than the minus tolerance specified in the applicable pipe or bend standard or specification may be used, provided that the wall thickness of the pipe or bend installed is as specified in Clause 14.2.2.1 or Clause 14.2.3 respectively.

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.3 Materials

14.3.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

14.3.1.1

Materials shall be suitable for the intended pressures and temperatures in accordance with the allowable stresses at corresponding temperatures stipulated by ASME B31.3. Intended pressures, and both minimum and maximum temperatures are to include those experienced during pressure testing, start-up and operation as applicable. The impact properties shall be in accordance with ASME B31.3. For multiple service pipelines, materials shall comply with requirements of both ASME B31.3 and CSA Z662 Clause 5.2.1.2.

Note: *Materials may be purchased to CSA Z245.1 Cat II or Cat III to meet these requirements.*

14.3.1.2

Detailed material specifications shall be prepared for all unlisted materials (see Clause 14.3.2.1). The material specifications for each material item (e.g., type and grade) shall comply with the requirements of ASME B31.3, Paragraph 323.1.2. The requirements shall include but are not limited to the following:

a) chemical properties;
b) physical properties;
Δ c) tensile properties (including yield strength, tensile strength, and elongation) at both the maximum design, temperature, and room temperature;
d) method and process of manufacture;
e) heat treatment;
f) material examination and testing requirements (refer to the requirements of Clause 14.3.2 and Clause I.3.2); and
g) allowable stress values (to be established as specified in Paragraph 302.3.2(d) of ASME B31.3).

14.3.1.3

Materials intended to be welded shall be field weldable.

Note: *Preference should be given to the use of materials that need not be subjected to field postweld heat treatment.*

14.3.1.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall confirm that the mechanical properties of all materials are suitable for, and adequately maintained at, the maximum design temperature. The company shall consider the potential for loss of mechanical properties over the life of the pipeline and shall consider the need to perform tests, such as aging tests using the Larson-Miller parameter.

14.3.1.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For multiple service pipelines (see Clause 14.1.3), special considerations shall be given to materials selection.

Note: *Special considerations may include (but are not limited to) the acceptability of materials for multiple service pipelines (e.g., special measures may be necessary to assure compliance both with Clause 14 and Clause 16 should the pipeline be exposed to both in high temperature and sour service).*

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.3.1.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Manufacturers of pipe, components, and attachments used in pipelines shall have documented quality programs.

14.3.2 Material testing

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

14.3.2.1

Unlisted materials shall be tension tested (at a minimum including yield, tensile, and elongation) at both the maximum design temperature and room temperature for each grade, wall thickness, outside diameter, and heat number combination, to confirm the required mechanical properties.

Note: *Testing requirements apply to all unlisted pressure containing materials whether pipe, fittings (e.g., elbows, tees, caps, olets, transition pieces, bends), or flanges.*

14.3.2.2

Manufacturing welds of unlisted materials shall be performed in accordance with an ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX qualified welding procedure specification that includes tensile tests at both room temperature and maximum design temperature, for each set of welding electrode classifications used.

14.3.2.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Elevated temperature tension tests shall be conducted as specified in ASTM E21 at the maximum design temperature.

Notes:

1) *The designer should consider the need for additional mechanical tests such as hardness tests.*

2) *Test specimen geometry can influence test results. Round specimens generally indicate less elongation than rectangular strip specimens. ISO 2566-1 may be used as a reference to convert elongation values.*

14.3.2.4

Required properties for all material tests and weld tests shall be as specified in the engineering design.

14.3.3 Fittings (excluding bends and transition pieces)

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

14.3.3.1

Fittings shall be as specified in ASME B31.3 except as modified by Clauses 14.3.3.2 and 14.3.3.3 of this Standard.

14.3.3.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Fittings shall be registered as specified in CSA B51.

© 2015 CSA Group

14.3.3.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Fittings manufactured from listed materials, and their manufacturing weldments when applicable, shall be as specified in ASME B16.9, ASME B16.11, ASME B16.48, MSS SP-75, MSS SP-83, MSS SP-95, or MSS SP-97. Alternatively, CSA Z245.11 or MSS SP-75 fittings manufactured from unlisted materials are permitted when manufactured to a material specification in accordance with Clause 14.3.1.2 and tested in accordance with Clause 14.3.2.

14.3.3.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Socket-welded connections shall not be used for pipe sizes larger than 60.3 mm OD.

Note: *Socket-welded connections are preferred to threaded connections.*

14.3.3.5

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Hollow bullplugs shall not be used.

14.3.3.6

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Threaded connections shall be limited to pipe sizes 60.3 mm OD and smaller.

14.3.3.7

Threaded pipe nipples shall be seamless and have minimum nominal wall thicknesses as given in Table 14.1.

14.3.3.8

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Branch connections, such as those for vents, drains, and instrument connections, may be made with integrally reinforced branch outlet fittings in accordance with MSS SP-97 joined with a full penetration weld. Set-on couplings or half-couplings shall not be used.

Note: *The designer is cautioned to verify the adequacy of integral reinforcement when branch connections materials have a lower strength than the run pipe materials on which they are installed. The designer should apply additional design considerations when external forces and moments (in addition to pressure loadings) are applied, when the branch diameter is greater than one-half of the run diameter.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 14.1
Minimum nominal wall thickness of threaded pipe nipples
(See Clause 14.3.3.7.)

Pipe nipple outside diameter, mm	Minimum nominal wall thickness, mm
26.7	5.6
33.4	6.4
48.3	7.1
60.3	8.7

14.3.3.9

Where scraper bars are to be installed, the welding, post weld heat treatment, and inspection requirements of CSA Z245.11 shall apply.

Note: *PWHT can detrimentally affect the underlying properties of the fitting to which the bars are attached.*

Δ 14.3.4 Flanges

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

14.3.4.1

Flanges shall be as specified in ASME B31.3, except as modified by Clauses 14.3.4.2 and 14.3.4.3.

14.3.4.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Flanges shall be registered as specified in CSA B51.

14.3.4.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Flanges shall be as specified in ASME B16.5, ASME B16.36, or ASME B16.47 (Series A).The pressure-temperature rating of flanges shall be as specified in the applicable flange standard, for the design conditions. Flanges manufactured from materials permitted by the applicable manufacturing standard but which do not appear in Table A-1 of ASME B31.3 are unlisted materials and the requirements of Clause 14.3.1.2 shall apply.

Δ 14.3.5 Non-standard flanges and clamp connectors

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

14.3.5.1

Non standard flanges (those not manufactured to a standard listed in Clause 14.3.4.3) and clamp connectors shall be registered as specified in CSA B51.

14.3.5.2

Non standard flanges shall be designed in accordance with ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII, Division1, Appendix 2.

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.3.5.3

Clamp connectors shall be designed in accordance with ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 24.

Δ

14.3.6 Valves

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

14.3.6.1

Valves shall be as specified in ASME B31.3 except as modified by Clauses 14.3.6.2 and 14.3.6.3.

14.3.6.2

Valves shall be registered as specified in CSA B51.

14.3.6.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Valves shall be as specified in ASME B16.34, API 600, API 602, API 608, or API 609. The pressure-temperature rating of valves shall be as specified in ASME B16.34 for the design conditions.

14.3.6.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where drain and bypass locations are provided on a valve body, such locations shall be as specified in ASME B16.34. The designer shall consider the need for

a) start-up bypass connections on valves NPS 6 or larger having a pressure rating of ASME Class 600 or higher; and
b) an equalizing line between the bonnet of the valve and the upstream side of the valve.

14.3.7 Transition pieces

14.3.7.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where the difference in wall thickness at welded connections between pipe materials having different strengths necessitates the installation of transition pieces between the two materials, such transition pieces shall

a) have mechanical properties at the design temperature matching or exceeding that of the higher strength pipe or fitting to which they are attached; and
b) be tested in accordance with Clause 14.3.2, when manufactured from unlisted materials.

14.3.7.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Transition pieces shall be marked as specified in MSS SP-25 and such markings shall include

a) material (e.g., A 106 Grade B or Q & T Grade 448);
b) heat number; and
c) wall thickness, in mm, at each end of the transition piece.

© 2015 CSA Group

14.3.8 Pipe bends — General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Only pipe bends produced by the induction bending method, shall be allowed and such bends shall be as specified in Clause 4.3.5.2.

14.3.9 Pipe bends — Qualification and production

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

14.3.9.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipe bends shall be in accordance with either CSA Z245.11 or ASME B16.49, with limitations per Table 5.3 of this Standard. The requirements of Clause 14.3.1.2 shall apply to unlisted pipe material. Unless otherwise specified by the designer, the material properties of the completed bend shall meet the requirements of the starting pipe material specification.

14.3.9.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Qualification requirements shall be as specified in Clauses 14.3.9.3 to 14.3.9.6. See Table 3 in ASME B16.49.

14.3.9.3

The manufacturer shall perform procedure qualification testing for each pipe outside diameter, wall thickness, grade, and heat number combination to confirm that the specified properties of the finished bend can be met. One pipe from each such combination shall be bent, using the same bending procedure as for the production bends.

14.3.9.4

The documented procedure qualification shall include

a) details of all nondestructive inspections and mechanical tests;
b) nominal bending parameters with tolerances; and
c) details of heat treatment;

14.3.9.5

The procedure qualification testing shall include

a) post-bend room-temperature tension tests including yield strength, tensile strength and elongation;
b) post-bend maximum design temperature tension tests (including yield strength, tensile strength and elongation), as specified in ASTM E21;
c) post-bend hardness tests;
d) visual and dimensional inspections;
e) post-bend ultrasonic wall thickness checks;
f) dye penetrant or magnetic particle inspection of the entire bent section after heat treatment; and
g) post-bend Charpy impact testing when proven notch toughness properties are required by the design.

 © 2015 CSA Group

When post bend heat treatment is performed, Items a), b), c), and g) shall be completed after heat treatment.

14.3.9.6

Production bend testing shall consist of

a) post-bend hardness tests;
b) visual and dimensional inspections;
c) ultrasonic wall thickness checks; and
d) dye penetrant or magnetic particle inspection of the entire bent section.

When post-bend heat treatment is performed, Items a) and d) shall be completed after heat treatment.

14.3.10 Piping supports

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Material for welded structural steel supports, such as shoes, shall be field weldable and such supports shall be constructed using welding procedures qualified as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, or CSA W59.

Note: *It is not intended that pipe shoes have a yield strength matching the pipeline. It is preferable for the weld or the shoe to fail due to anticipated operating events rather than have the potential for a shoe weld to have sufficient strength to damage the pipeline.*

14.4 Joining

14.4.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Mechanical interference fit joints shall not be used.

14.4.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For the welding of pressure-retaining pipe and components, and any attachments thereto, the following shall apply:

a) Detailed welding procedure specifications shall be established and qualified as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX.
b) Welding procedure qualification tests of unlisted materials shall be performed in accordance with ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, and include tensile tests at both room temperature and maximum design temperature, for each set of welding electrode classifications used. Elevated temperature tension tests shall be conducted as specified in ASTM E21.
c) Where the piping material requires proven impact toughness in accordance with ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, the weld procedure qualification test shall include impact testing and meet the requirements of ASME B31.3.
d) Welders and welding operators shall be qualified as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX.
e) The standards of acceptability and frequency of inspection shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of ASME B31.3 for normal fluid service.
f) For pipelines in sour service, the requirements of Clause 16.6 shall also be met.

 © 2015 CSA Group

g) Attachment welds on pressure-retaining pipe and components shall be examined by magnetic particle or dye penetrant methods at high-stress locations (including but not limited to anchors and limit stops).

14.4.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Butt welds between items of unequal thickness shall conform to the joint preparation requirements of ASME B31.3. Where necessary, a transition piece meeting the requirements of Clause 14.3.7 shall be provided. The design of transition pieces shall comply with the following requirements:

a) The minimum length shall be the greater of
   i) 300 mm,
   ii) 50% of the nominal pipe diameter; and
   iii) the length required to prevent adverse affects to the material properties at the thinner end for pieces subject to post weld heat treatment at the thicker end.
b) The nominal wall thickness shall match the nominal wall thickness of adjoining pipe for at least 25 mm from each butt weld end.

14.4.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Requirements for stress relieving shall be as specified in Clause 7.9.16.

14.4.5

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

At a minimum, the extent of nondestructive examination of pressure retaining welds shall be in accordance with Clause 7.10.3 and the standards of acceptability shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of ASME B31.3 for normal fluid service. For sour service pipelines, the additional requirements of Clause 16 shall apply.

14.5 Pressure testing

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *Pressure-testing programs shall be selected with consideration given to the fact that high temperature pipelines normally have numerous welded attachments, including small-diameter pipe connections such as drains and vents, in order to prevent freezing.*

14.5.1

Pipelines shall be liquid medium tested. Strength tests shall be conducted as specified in Clause 8, except as modified in Clauses 14.5.2 thru 14.5.4.

14.5.2

The minimum strength test pressure shall be 1.5 times the design pressure. The strength test pressure shall be increased in accordance with Equation 24 in Paragraph 345.4.2 of ASME B31.3. Where necessary, the maximum strength test pressure shall be reduced to comply with the limitations of Clause 8.7.4.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ **14.5.3**

Where the provisions of Clause 8.7.1.2 are satisfied, a leak test is not required. The pipeline is not considered fully exposed when insulation is installed prior to testing, therefore both a strength test and a leak test shall be performed in these situations. The strength test duration, and leak test pressure and duration, shall be as specified in Clause 8.

Δ **14.5.4**

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Pipelines shall not be pressure tested at a temperature colder than the minimum design temperature considering all components in the system (see Clause 14.3.1.1).

14.6 Corrosion control

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In addition to the requirements of Clause 9, the establishment of corrosion control programs, consideration shall be given to the corrosion mechanisms specific to steam distribution and high temperature pipelines, including but not limited to

a) external corrosion beneath insulation and weatherproofing;

Note: *The potential for such corrosion is generally greatest when pipelines are out of service.*

b) internal corrosion/erosion mechanisms, such as caustic embrittlement and oxygen pitting, caused by high temperature or service fluids, or both; and

c) internal corrosion for out-of-service pipelines (e.g., steam condensate or other liquid buildup in low spots).

14.7 Steam distribution pipelines — Commissioning and operating

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Δ **14.7.1**

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

During start-up, flow shall be gradually increased to full capacity to allow the pipelines and expansion loops to adjust to increased temperatures and to allow condensed liquids to be gradually removed. As much air as possible shall be removed by venting.

Note: *These requirements are intended to ensure that temperature gradients across the wall and temperature differences between the top and bottom of pipelines are minimized, thereby minimizing the potential for condensate induced waterhammer (CIWH) and bowing of the pipeline which can overstress the pipe. CIWH is a phenomenon in which saturated steam becomes entrapped within subcooled condensate (condensate at a temperature below the saturation temperature of the steam) usually during start-up or upset conditions. With sufficient subcooled conditions, the trapped steam can condense creating a vacuum which rapidly draws in surrounding condensate resulting in an impact and a severe pressure transient and in some cases pipe rupture. Multiple hammers might occur as the steam continues to interact with subcooled condensate. Bowing is a phenomenon in which the centreline of the pipeline is deformed into an arc due to thermal effects.*

14.7.2

Inspections shall be made of sliding supports and expansion loops to verify their proper behaviour during start-up and operation.

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.7.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

During shutdown, steam and condensate shall be removed by blowing down through low-point drains. Isolation valves used during shutdowns shall be double blocked or blinded or examined for leakage on a scheduled basis.

14.7.4

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

During long shutdowns, additional measures shall be taken to prevent excessive corrosion due to steam condensate build-up and pipeline fracture due to ice build-up.

14.7.5

Personnel working with steam shall be informed of the hazards that can be encountered. Protective clothing shall be worn by personnel conducting inspection and maintenance.

Note: *See Clause 10.2.10 for additional precautions necessary for handling steam that contains fluids containing H_2S, as defined in Note 2 in Clause 10.2.10.*

15 Aluminum piping

15.1 General

Clause 15 covers the design, construction, operation, and maintenance of aluminum piping with metal temperatures of 204 °C or less.

15.2 Applicability

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

15.2.1

The provisions of Clauses 3 to 10 and Clause 12, including those whose scope is restricted to steel piping, shall be applicable to aluminum piping, except insofar as such requirements are specifically modified or voided by the provisions of Clause 15.

15.2.2

The requirements of Clauses 4.1.4 to 4.1.6, 4.3.1.3, 4.3.5 to 4.3.20, 4.5.1, and 4.5.2 shall not apply to aluminum piping.

15.2.3

The requirements for aluminum piping in gas distribution systems shall be as specified in Clause 12 for piping, excluding Clauses 12.4.1 to 12.4.6, 12.5 to 12.7, and 12.9.

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.3 Design

15.3.1 Pressure design for aluminum pipe

15.3.1.1 General

The design pressure for a given design wall thickness or the design wall thickness for a given design pressure shall be determined by the following design formula:

$$P = \frac{2St}{D} \times F \times L \times C \times T \times A$$

where

P = design pressure, MPa

S = specified minimum yield strength, as prescribed in the applicable pipe standard or specification, MPa

t = design wall thickness, mm

D = outside diameter of pipe, mm

F = design factor (see Clause 15.3.1.2)

L = location factor (see Clauses 15.3.1.3 and 15.10.4)

C = circumferential joint factor (see Clause 15.3.1.4)

T = temperature factor (see Clause 15.3.1.5)

A = alloy factor (see Clause 15.3.1.6)

Note: *Calculated design pressures should be rounded to the nearest 10 kPa and calculated design wall thicknesses should be rounded to the nearest 0.1 mm.*

15.3.1.2 Design factor

The design factor (F) to be used in the design formula in Clause 15.3.1.1 shall be 0.8.

15.3.1.3 Location factor

The location factor (L) to be used in the design formula in Clause 15.3.1.1 shall be as given for steel pipe in Table 4.2.

15.3.1.4 Circumferential factor

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The circumferential joint factor (C) to be used in the design formula in Clause 15.3.1.1 shall be

a) 1.00 for pipe to be joined by high energy joining or by mechanical interference fit methods; and

b) as given in Table 15.1, for pipe to be joined by arc welding.

15.3.1.5 Temperature factor

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The temperature factor (T) to be used in the design formula in Clause 15.3.1.1 shall be as given in Table 15.2.

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.3.1.6 Alloy factor

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The alloy factor (*A*) to be used in the design formula in Clause 15.3.1.1 shall be as given in Table 15.3.

Table 15.1
Circumferential joint factor
(See Clause 15.3.1.4.)

Alloy designation and temper	Circumferential joint factor (*C*)					
	Maximum design temperature, °C					
	Up to 60	61–93	94–121	122–149	150–177	178–204
3003-H112	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
6061-T4	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
6061-T6	0.77	0.70	0.83	1.00	1.00	1.00
6063-T1A	0.98	0.98	—	—	—	—
6063-T1B	0.98	0.98	—	—	—	—
6063-T6	0.74	—	—	—	—	—
6351-T4A	0.88	0.88	0.88	1.00	1.00	1.00
6351-T6	0.74	0.76	0.79	0.87	0.96	0.94

Table 15.2
Temperature factor
(See Clause 15.3.1.5 and 15.3.4.)

Alloy designation and temper	Temperature factor (*T*)					
	Maximum design temperature, °C					
	Up to 60	61–93	94–121	122–149	150–177	178–204
3003-H112	1.00	0.95	0.90	0.73	0.54	0.41
6061-T4	1.00	0.98	0.98	0.94	0.66	0.38
6061-T6	1.00	0.92	0.80	0.51	0.35	0.21
6063-T1A	1.00	1.00	—	—	—	—
6063-T1B	1.00	1.00	—	—	—	—
6063-T6	1.00	—	—	—	—	—
6351-T4A	1.00	0.98	0.97	0.42	0.29	0.21
6351-T6	1.00	0.91	0.80	0.36	0.20	0.15

© 2015 CSA Group

Table 15.3
Alloy factor
(See Clause 15.3.1.6.)

Alloy designation and temper	Alloy factor (*A*)
3003-H112	1.00
6061-T4	1.00
6061-T6	0.85
6063-T1A	1.00
6063-T1B	1.00
6063-T6	0.94
6351-T4A	1.00
6351-T6	0.89

15.3.2 Pressure design for components

15.3.2.1
The pressure rating of aluminum flanges shall be as specified in ASME B31.3. The design pressure for other aluminum components shall be as given for pipe in Clause 15.3.1, subject to the applicable limitation given in Table 15.5.

15.3.2.2
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Branch connections shall be made using tees and crosses that are made to a standard or specification given in Table 15.5, with the acceptable materials and limitations indicated. Intersections and all other branch connections shall be designed as specified for aluminum materials in ASME B31.3.

15.3.3 Piping joints

15.3.3.1
Arc welded joints shall be as specified in Clause 15.6.2.

15.3.3.2
Mechanical interference fit joints shall meet the design requirements specified in Clauses 4.5.3 and 4.5.4.

15.3.3.3
Threaded joints shall not be used for aluminum piping.

15.3.4 Aluminum properties
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *The property requirements specified in Clauses 4.6 to 4.10 do not apply.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

For aluminum piping, the following may be used:

a) 0.3 for Poisson's ratio (v) for all temperatures up to 204 °C;
b) the applicable value given in Table 15.4 for the linear coefficient of thermal expansion (α);
c) the applicable value given in Table 15.4 for the modulus of elasticity (E_c); and
d) the applicable value given in Table 15.2 for temperature factor (T).

Table 15.4
Linear coefficient of thermal expansion and modulus of elasticity
(See Clause 15.3.4.)

Design temperature, °C	Linear coefficient of thermal expansion (α), °C^{-1}	Modulus of elasticity (E_c), MPa
Up to –46	20.9×10^{-6}	71 700
–45 to 21	22.1×10^{-6}	68 900
22 to 93	23.4×10^{-6}	67 600
94 to 149	23.9×10^{-6}	65 500
150 to 204	24.5×10^{-6}	62 100

15.3.5 Uncased railway crossings

Uncased aluminum pipelines may be installed under railway tracks in any location, provided that

a) the hoop stress at the railway crossing does not exceed to 25% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe;
b) the pipe nominal wall thickness is not less than the greatest of
   i) the applicable least nominal wall thickness given in Table 4.5;
   ii) the applicable least nominal wall thickness given in Table 4.10; and
   iii) the design wall thickness determined using the following formula:

$$t = \frac{10.54 + 0.21D}{\sqrt{S \times C \times A \times T}}$$

where

t = design wall thickness, mm
D = outside diameter of pipe, mm
S = specified minimum yield strength, as specified in the applicable pipe standard or specification, MPa
C = circumferential joint factor (see Clause 15.3.1.4)
A = alloy factor (see Clause 15.3.1.6)
T = temperature factor (see Clause 15.3.1.5)

c) the design requirements are applied to the pipeline for a minimum distance of 7 m beyond the centerline of the outside track, measured at right angles to the centerline of the track; and
d) all circumferential joints within the railway rights-of-way are nondestructively inspected as specified in Clause 15.6.8.

© 2015 CSA Group

15.3.6 Effects on pipelines in proximity to low-voltage alternating current lines and associated facilities

The effects on pipelines of low-voltage alternating current lines and associated facilities shall be considered and, where necessary, mitigated.

15.4 Materials

15.4.1 Design temperatures

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where the maximum design temperature exceeds 93 °C, particular attention shall be given to the tensile properties of applicable aluminum materials to ensure that the derating for temperature specified by Clause 15.3.1.5 and the limitations in Table 15.5 are adequate. The maximum design temperature shall be taken as the highest expected operating pipe or metal temperature, giving due regard to past recorded temperature data and the possibility that higher temperatures can occur.

15.4.2 Notch toughness

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Proven notch toughness properties shall not be required for aluminum piping.

Note: *Aluminum piping does not exhibit any sudden change in fracture behaviour with change in temperature.*

15.4.3 Aluminum pipe and components

Aluminum pipe and components shall be made to a standard or specification given in Table 15.5, with the acceptable materials and limitations indicated.

Table 15.5
Limitations for acceptable pipe and components
(See Clauses 15.3.2.1, 15.3.2.2, 15.4.1, and 15.4.3.)

Type of item	Pipe or component standard or specification	Acceptable materials	Limitation
Pipe	CSA Z245.6	All	*
	ASTM B241/B241M	All	1
Fitting	CSA Z245.6	All	*
	ASTM B361	All	1
Flange	ASME B31.3	All	2

* *There is no limitation for this material.*

Limitations:

1) *The design pressure shall not exceed the pressure corresponding to 72% of the specified minimum yield strength of the material.*

2) *Pressure and temperature limitations shall be as specified in ASME B31.3 for aluminum materials.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.5 Installation of aluminum piping

15.5.1 Bends and elbows

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The requirements for bends and elbows specified in Clause 6.2.3 a) i) shall not apply.

Pipe bends shall have a difference between the maximum and minimum diameters not exceeding 10% of the specified outside diameter of the pipe.

15.5.2 Attachment of test leads

The requirements for test leads specified in Clause 6.4 shall not apply.

Electrical test leads on aluminum piping shall be installed as specified in Clause 15.8.

15.5.3 Storage and handling of aluminum pipe and fittings during installation

15.5.3.1

The requirements for storage and handling as specified in Clause 6.1.3 shall not apply.

15.5.3.2

The transportation, installation, and any repair of pipe shall not reduce the wall thickness at any point to less than 90% of the design wall thickness, determined as specified in Clause 15.3.1 for the design pressure of the pipe.

15.5.3.3

During shipment and subsequent handling, pipe ends shall be covered and fittings shall be protected.

15.5.4 Ambient temperature

Aluminum pipe may be installed at any ambient temperature.

15.5.5 Burial of coiled aluminum pipe by ploughing

15.5.5.1

Ploughing of the pipe shall be done with a plough designed to prevent damage to the pipe or coating during installation and to ensure that it is not over-stretched or kinked. The plough shoe shall have a radius not less than the applicable value given in Table 15.6.

Notes:

1) *In rocky, stony, or abrasive soils that can damage the pipe or coating during the ploughing process, ripping should precede ploughing of the pipe, unless open ditching is required.*

2) *In extremely rocky areas, open ditching in accordance with the requirements of Clauses 6.2.6 and 6.2.7 can be required.*

15.5.5.2

Ploughing shall be done in a manner to ensure that the pipe is at the required depth.

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.5.5.3

Changes of direction may be made by ploughing, provided that

a) the bend radius exceeds the applicable minimum value given in Table 15.6; and
b) the plough design is such that neither the pipe nor the coating can be scuffed, scraped, kinked, or otherwise damaged.

Table 15.6
Minimum bend radius
(See Clauses 15.5.5.1 and 15.5.5.3.)

Pipe outside diameter, mm	Minimum bend radius, mm
33.4	445
42.2	711
48.3	711
60.3	1016
73.0	1066
82.6	1066
88.9	1066
114.3	1066

15.5.5.4

Where it is not practical to make changes in direction as specified in Clause 15.5.5.3, changes in direction shall be made with aluminum fittings.

15.5.6 Plain dents

15.5.6.1

The plain dent requirements as specified in Clause 6.3.3.2 shall not apply.

15.5.6.2

For pipe 114.3 mm OD or smaller, plain dents that are deeper than the lesser of

a) 10% of the outside diameter of the pipe; and
b) 3 times the nominal wall thickness of the pipe

shall be removed by cutting out the affected portion of pipe as a cylinder or, where allowed by the company, the affected pipe shall be repaired as specified in Clause 10.11.

15.5.6.3

For pipe larger than 114.3 mm OD, plain dents that are deeper than 6% of the outside diameter of the pipe shall be removed by cutting out the affected portion of pipe as a cylinder or, where allowed by the company, the affected pipe shall be repaired as specified in Clause 10.11.

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.6 Joining

15.6.1 General

The requirements of Clause 7 shall not apply, except as specified in Clause 7.16.

Clause 15.6 covers the requirements for joining pipes and components to pressure piping by means of arc welding, high energy joining, and mechanical interference fit methods.

15.6.2 Arc welding

15.6.2.1

Arc welding and nondestructive inspection shall be as specified for aluminum materials, for normal fluid service, in ASME B31.3.

15.6.2.2

Arc welding may be used for piping welds that are made

a) at a manufacturing plant;
b) at a fabrication shop remote from the final location of the weld;
c) in a station; or
d) in the field, during the replacement of portions of piping, the attachment of devices to an operating pipeline, or the installation of tie-ins to connect new facilities to existing piping.

15.6.3 High energy joining — General

15.6.3.1

Clauses 15.6.3 to 15.6.8 cover the welding of wrought aluminum materials using high energy joining methods.

15.6.3.2

The design and configuration of the joint specified by the designer of the high energy joining system shall be based on test data and experience acceptable to the company.

15.6.4 High energy joining — Qualification of joining procedure specifications

Prior to the start of high energy joining, a detailed joining procedure specification shall be established and qualified to demonstrate that joints having suitable mechanical properties and soundness can be made by this joining procedure. Three test joints shall be made and the quality of the joints shall be determined by nondestructive inspection, destructive testing, pressure testing, or a combination thereof, as specified in Clause 15.6.6. Details of each qualified joining procedure shall be recorded. Such records shall show complete results of the procedure specification qualification tests. Copies of such records shall be available for reference at the nearest operating headquarters or construction office.

15.6.5 High energy joining — Qualification of personnel

Personnel doing high energy joining shall qualify by demonstrating their ability to produce acceptable joints as specified in Clause 15.6.6.1, 15.6.6.2, or 15.6.6.3. Personnel regularly making high energy joints shall be required to requalify at intervals of not longer than 2 years or if they have not done any high

 © 2015 CSA Group

energy joining in the previous 6 months. A detailed record of the test results, list of qualified personnel, and joining procedure specifications shall be maintained.

Note: *Personnel may be required to requalify if there is a question about their ability to make satisfactory joints consistently.*

15.6.6 High energy joining — Inspection and testing of high energy joints for qualification of joining procedure specifications and personnel

15.6.6.1 Nondestructive inspection

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Nondestructive inspection shall be performed using ultrasonic equipment and procedures that are as specified in ASTM E114 and ASTM E1901. A satisfactory joint shall show a cumulative bonded width greater than three times the nominal wall thickness for 100% of the circumference. The bond shall be made up of one or more continuous bonded rings, with no single bonded ring being less than 2 mm in width. Personnel performing ultrasonic inspection shall be qualified as specified in CAN/CGSB-48.9712/ ISO 9712. The company may require ultrasonic inspectors to demonstrate their competence in operating, and evaluating the results of, their inspection system.

15.6.6.2 Destructive testing

Destructive testing of high energy joints shall be done by peel testing or full-size tension testing. In the peel test, a test specimen approximately 16 mm wide, cut longitudinally from the joint, shall have one end clamped in a vise, and an attempt shall be made to separate the joint by means of a cold chisel and hammer; satisfactory joints shall not cleave. Failure of the tension test specimen outside the joint shall indicate a satisfactory joint.

15.6.6.3 Pressure testing

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Satisfactory joints shall be demonstrated by pressure testing the test joints as specified in Clause 15.7.2, at a pressure corresponding to 100% of the specified minimum tensile strength of the material, without failure.

15.6.7 High energy joining — Production welding

15.6.7.1 General

High energy joining shall be done in accordance with a qualified joining procedure specification.

15.6.7.2 Weather conditions

High energy joining shall not be done when the quality of the joint would be impaired by the prevailing weather conditions.

15.6.7.3 Explosives

Components of the explosive system that show signs of damage shall not be used.

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.6.8 High energy joining — Inspection and testing of high energy joints

15.6.8.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall have the right to inspect high energy joints by ultrasonic methods as specified in Clause 15.6.6.1, or by removing them and conducting mechanical tests as specified in Clause 15.6.6.2. The frequency of inspection shall be as specified by the company. High energy joints that are unacceptable shall be removed as a cylinder.

15.6.8.2

High energy joints shall be visually inspected, and where there is reason to believe the joint is unacceptable, the joint shall be removed. Visual inspection shall consider proper insertion, alignment, signs of collapse in the joint, and the roughness of the joint surface. Results of the visual inspection of completed high energy joints shall be reported in a format approved by the company. Such reports shall include the joint identification; description, position, and length of defects; date; and signature of qualified visual inspector. Visual inspection records shall be kept until the piping is abandoned.

15.6.8.3

Tie-in joints that are not subjected to a pressure test shall be leak tested using the pipeline medium at the maximum pressure available.

15.6.9 Mechanical interference fit joints

Mechanical interference fit joints shall be designed as specified in Clause 7.16 for steel pipe.

15.7 Pressure testing

15.7.1

The requirements for pressure testing as specified in Clauses 8.7.1.4, 8.7.2.1, and 8.7.2.3 shall not apply.

15.7.2

Except as allowed by Clause 15.7.3, water shall be used as the pressure-test medium.

15.7.3

Air or another nonflammable, non-toxic gas may be used as the pressure-test medium, provided that the following conditions exist at the time of such pressure testing:

a) The pipe is not used pipe.
b) The pipe is 114.3 mm OD or smaller.
c) The strength test pressure will not produce a hoop stress that is in excess of 95% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.
d) The piping is installed
    i) below ground, with cover as specified in Clause 4.11; or
    ii) above ground, or with less cover than is specified in Clause 4.11, and
        1) the strength test pressure will produce a hoop stress of 75% or less of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe; or
        2) the strength test pressure will produce a hoop stress of more than 75% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe, but the pipe has been hydrostatically pretested as

 © 2015 CSA Group

specified in Clause 8, and all welds have been nondestructively inspected as specified in Clause 15.6.2 or Clauses 15.6.3 to 15.6.8, whichever are applicable.

15.7.4

Aluminum pipe and fittings in carbon dioxide pipelines that have been hydrostatically pressure tested need not be cleaned and dried after completion of such testing.

15.8 Corrosion control

15.8.1 Test lead attachment

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The requirements for test lead attachment specified in Clauses 9.8.3 to 9.8.5 shall not apply.

Test leads that are connected to the aluminum piping shall be aluminum and shall be No. 6 AWG or smaller. Test leads may be attached directly to the pipe by high energy joining, gas tungsten arc welding, or gas metal arc welding. Thermite welding shall not be used on aluminum piping.

15.8.2 Installation of cathodic protection systems

15.8.2.1

Cathodic protection shall be applied and then maintained during the operating life of the piping. Consideration shall be given to applying cathodic protection during the installation of the piping.

Note: *Excessively high potentials can result in a high pH (alkaline) environment, which would be detrimental to aluminum.*

15.8.2.2

Sacrificial anodes shall be installed in a manner such that the criteria specified in Clause 9.5.2 are satisfied and maintained. Copper wire anode leads shall be joined to aluminum wire leads at test stations.

Note: *Zinc or magnesium anodes are suitable for use in soil and aqueous environments. Attention should be paid to the resultant pipe potentials, particularly if magnesium anodes are used, so that values do not exceed –1200 mV with respect to a copper-copper sulphate reference electrode.*

15.8.2.3

Impressed current cathodic protection systems shall be installed in a manner such that the criteria given in Clause 9.5.2 are satisfied and maintained. Where copper wire negative conductor leads are used, they shall be joined to aluminum wire leads at test stations.

15.8.3 Corrosive medium

15.8.3.1

The requirements for corrosive medium specified in Clause 9.10.1 shall not apply.

15.8.3.2

Gases shall be considered noncorrosive, unless tests or experience indicate otherwise.

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.8.3.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Unless supporting documentation or tests demonstrate otherwise, any fluids that contain free water, bacteria, oxygen, suspended or dissolved solids, or a combination thereof, shall be considered corrosive.

15.9 Operating, maintenance, and upgrading

15.9.1 Evaluation of imperfections and repair of piping containing defects

15.9.1.1

The requirements for evaluation of dents specified in Clause 10.10.4.2 b) shall not apply.

Dents that are located on the pipe body and are deeper than

a) 10% of the outside diameter of the pipe or 3 times the nominal wall thickness of the pipe, whichever is the lesser, for pipe 114.3 mm OD or smaller; or
b) 6% of the outside diameter of the pipe, for pipe larger than 114.3 mm OD

shall be removed by cutting out the affected portion of pipe as a cylinder or, where allowed by the operating company, the affected pipe shall be repaired as specified in Clauses 10.11 to 10.12.

15.9.1.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The basis for assessing weld imperfections specified in Clause 10.10.6 shall not apply.

Field circumferential arc welds that are found, after the piping has been placed in service, to be unacceptable on the basis of the requirements of Clause 15.6.2 shall undergo nondestructive inspection to determine the extent of the deviations from the standards of acceptability. Such an inspection shall employ an appropriate nondestructive inspection method or a combination of methods capable of detecting cracks. Such welds may be accepted, provided that the weld imperfections are judged to be acceptable on the basis of an engineering critical assessment involving consideration of service history and loading, anticipated service conditions (including the effects of corrosive and chemical attack), imperfection dimensions, and weld properties (including fracture toughness properties). Pipe containing welds that are unacceptable shall be repaired as specified in Clause 15.6.2.

Notes:

1) *Where the nondestructive inspection cannot differentiate between cracks and other planar imperfections, either the affected locations should be inspected using a different technique or the planar imperfections should be treated as cracks.*

2) *See BSI BS 7910 for determining the acceptability of imperfections in arc welds in aluminum using engineering critical assessment.*

15.9.1.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The requirements for repair sleeves specified in Clause 10.11.4.2 shall not apply.

 © 2015 CSA Group

In addition to the requirements of Clause 10.11.4.1, aluminum reinforcement repair sleeves and aluminum pressure-containment repair sleeves shall be subject to the following requirements:

a) Sleeves shall have a nominal load-carrying capacity at least equal to that of the originally installed pipe.
b) Reinforcement repair sleeves shall meet the following supplementary requirements:
   i) Measures shall be taken to seal the circumferential ends of the sleeves to prevent migration of water between the pipe and the sleeve.
   ii) Sleeves that do not use grouting material to fill the annulus between the sleeve and the pipe shall be accurately fitted to the pipe and the damaged area shall be filled with an appropriate material to provide the required mechanical support.
   iii) Electrical conductivity shall be ensured between the pipe and the sleeve.

15.9.2 Maintenance welding

The requirements for maintenance welding specified in Clause 10.13 shall not apply. Maintenance welding shall be as specified in Clause 15.6.

15.9.3 Pipeline hot taps

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

15.9.3.1

The requirements for pipeline hot taps specified in Clauses 10.14.1 and 10.14.3.1 shall not apply.

15.9.3.2

Welded branch connections shall be reinforced as specified in Clause 15.3.2.2.

15.9.3.3

Mechanical fittings may be used for making hot taps, provided that they are designed for the operating pressure of the pipeline and are suitable for the purpose.

15.9.3.4

Hot taps shall be installed

a) by competent crews; and
b) in accordance with established procedures.

15.10 Sour service

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

15.10.1 General

The requirements for sour service specified in Clause 16 shall not apply except where such requirements are specifically referenced in Clauses 15.10.8 to 15.10.10.

For aluminum pipelines, the term “sour service” is defined as service in which the hydrogen sulphide concentration in the service fluid is greater than 10 mmol/mol.

15.10.2 Material properties

No additional material properties are required for aluminum pipelines intended for sour service.

© 2015 CSA Group

15.10.3 Exposure to iron sulphides

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where aluminum pipe is used downstream of steel tanks or steel pipeline systems exposed to hydrogen sulphide, precautions shall be taken to prevent iron sulphide from carrying over into the aluminum piping.

15.10.4 Location factor

For aluminum pipelines intended for sour service, the location factor to be used in the design formula in Clause 15.3.1.1 shall be as given for steel pipe in Table 4.2 for sour service.

15.10.5 Sectionalizing valves

For aluminum pipelines intended for sour service, the use of sectionalizing valves equipped with automatic closing devices shall be considered to minimize the volume of hydrogen sulphide that could be released in the event of a pipeline failure.

15.10.6 Nondestructive inspection

15.10.6.1

For aluminum pipelines intended for sour service, all butt welds shall be inspected for 100% of their circumference by radiographic methods that are as specified for aluminum materials for normal fluid service in ASME B31.3.

15.10.6.2

For aluminum pipelines intended for sour service, all high energy joints shall be inspected for 100% of their circumference by ultrasonic methods that are as specified in Clause 15.6.6.1.

15.10.7 Integrity management program

For aluminum pipelines intended for sour service, the operating company shall develop, document, and implement an integrity management program that is in accordance with Annex N.

15.10.8 Construction

For the construction of aluminum pipelines intended for sour service, all the requirements of Clause 16.5 shall apply.

15.10.9 Operating and maintenance

For aluminum pipelines intended for sour service, operating and maintenance procedures shall be based on the limits of the relevant design parameters specified in Clause 16.3.1 and relevant provisions of Clause 10.5.1.2.

15.10.10 Records

For aluminum pipelines intended for sour service, records shall be maintained as specified in Clause 16.8.2.

 © 2015 CSA Group

16 Sour service pipelines

16.1 General

16.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Clause 16 specifies provisions for the design, materials, construction, operation, and maintenance of sour service pipeline systems. These provisions are additional to the provisions of Clauses 3 to 10 and 14.

Notes:

1) *The provisions of Clause 16 are intended primarily for upstream oil and gas gathering pipeline systems constructed of carbon steel materials.*

2) *The user should refer to the clauses addressing other materials of construction (e.g., aluminum, plastic) for other provisions applicable for services containing hydrogen sulphide.*

16.1.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following services are excluded from the requirements of this Clause:

Δ a) gas-free pipeline systems for crude oil, crude oil blends, and LVP condensate, with materials with specified minimum yield strength of 483 MPa or less, containing
   i) less than 0.5 volume % of basic sediment and water;
   ii) less than 425 ppm dissolved H2S, as determined by the ASTM UOP163 test method; and
   iii) liquids that are stabilized (i.e., where the bubble point pressure is less than atmospheric pressure);

b) oilfield water pipeline systems operating at a total absolute pressure below 0.45 MPa;

c) distribution pipeline systems containing hydrogen sulphide below the limits specified in Clause 12.3; and

d) multiphase pipeline systems that
   i) use materials with specified minimum yield strength of 359 MPa or less; and
   ii) have a hydrogen sulphide partial pressure (or effective hydrogen sulphide partial pressure) that is equal to or less than 70 kPa and less than 5% of design pressure.

Notes:

1) *See Clause H.2.11 for descriptions of crude oil, crude oil blends, and LVP condensate.*

2) *For the determination of hydrogen sulphide partial pressure or effective hydrogen sulphide partial pressure see Notes 1) and 2) in Clause 16.2.1.*

16.2 Sour service — Specific definition

16.2.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For pipeline systems not excluded by Clause 16.1.2, “sour service” means the following

a) for pipeline systems containing a gas phase, service in which the hydrogen sulphide partial pressure exceeds 0.3 kPa at the design absolute pressure; and

b) for pipeline systems not containing a gas phase (gas-free liquid pipeline systems), service in which

 © 2015 CSA Group

the effective hydrogen sulphide partial pressure exceeds 0.3 kPa at the bubble point absolute pressure.

Notes:

1) *For pipeline systems containing a gas phase, partial pressure can be determined by multiplying the mole fraction (mol % divided by 100) of hydrogen sulphide in the gas by the design pressure.*

2) *For pipeline systems not containing a gas phase (gas-free liquid systems having no separate gas phase at operating conditions but containing gas dissolved in the liquid), the effective hydrogen sulphide partial pressure at the bubble point pressure can be determined by using ANSI/NACE MR0175/ISO 15156-2, Annex C. For a gas-free liquid pipeline downstream of gas separation units, a good approximation of bubble-point pressure is the total pressure of the last gas separator. The bubble point pressure is the pressure under which gas bubbles will form in a liquid at a particular operating temperature.*

3) *While the concentrations given in Items a) and b) are the normally accepted minimum concentrations at which sulphide stress cracking problems might occur, the presence of other constituents in the phases making up the fluid, such as CO_2 in the gas phase and salts in the liquid phase, and pH can cause problems to occur at lower concentrations of hydrogen sulphide.*

4) *Pipeline systems containing multiphase fluids as defined in Clause 2.2 (multiphase pipelines) include ones containing gas or that are gas-free, depending on the fluids involved, and therefore can fall under Item a) or b) for sour service. Additional requirements for certain sour multiphase pipelines as defined elsewhere in Clause 16 can also apply.*

16.2.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The requirements as specified in Clauses 16.3 to 16.8 apply for all pipeline systems meeting the definitions in Clause 16.2.1.

16.2.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Additional requirements as specified in Clause 16.9 apply to multiphase pipeline systems in which the hydrogen sulphide partial pressure (or effective hydrogen sulphide partial pressure) exceeds 70 kPa or 5% of design pressure, whichever is lowest.

16.2.4

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Additional requirements as specified in Clauses 16.9 and 16.10 apply to gas pipeline systems containing hydrogen sulphide meeting the definition in Clause 16.2.1 a).

16.3 Design

16.3.1 Design parameters

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

All of the parameters used in the design of the pipeline systems (e.g., stress calculations, soil support calculations, anchoring or expansion requirements and calculations, riser design, plot plans, bore details, crossing details, piping transitions, material specifications, welding procedures, and backfill procedures) shall be considered design information. Drawings, documentation, and procedures for design information shall be approved by the company and shall be kept in the pipeline systems design file for the life of the pipeline.

 © 2015 CSA Group

16.3.2 Design information

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

All of the design information that needs to be understood and followed by the contractor shall be provided by the company and indicated on the construction drawings and in the construction documents to ensure that the contractor is aware of such information.

16.3.3 Stress design

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The design shall minimize secondary stresses. Tie-in welds shall not be permitted at pipe-to-riser welds, pipe-to-component welds, and riser-to-component welds.

16.3.4 Anchors and restraints

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where below-ground anchors are to be used, they shall meet the provisions of Clause 4.7.3 and piping on both sides of any anchored circumferential weld shall be properly supported in a manner that ensures secondary stresses are minimized for welds in proximity to the anchor location.

16.3.5 Threaded joints

Consideration shall be given to avoiding the use of threaded pipe-to-pipe and pipe-to-component joints in sour service, especially where crevice corrosion, severe erosion, cyclic loading, bending, fatigue due to vibration, or unusual loading conditions can occur.

Note: *See Clause 4.5.2 for limitations on the use of threaded joints.*

16.3.6 Pipe-type and bottle-type holders and pipe-type storage vessels

Pipe-type and bottle-type holders and pipe-type storage vessels shall not be used in sour service.

16.4 Materials

16.4.1 Environmental cracking

Pipe, components, bolting, and equipment used in sour service can be susceptible to different cracking mechanisms caused by hydrogen sulphide, and due consideration shall therefore be given in design to material selection and heat treatment.

Notes:

1) *The different mechanisms of cracking that can be caused by hydrogen sulphide include sulphide stress cracking, stress corrosion cracking, hydrogen-induced cracking and stepwise cracking, stress-oriented hydrogen induced cracking, soft zone cracking, and galvanically induced hydrogen stress cracking.*

2) *The provisions for environmental cracking apply only to materials in contact with, or that are necessary to contain, the sour fluid.*

16.4.2 Material provisions

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

16.4.2.1

Materials shall comply with the provisions of the sour service clause of the applicable CSA Z245 Standard.

 © 2015 CSA Group

16.4.2.2

Where no applicable CSA Group standard exists, the material provisions of ISO 15156-2 or ANSI/NACE MR0175/ISO 15156-2, or ISO 15156-3 or ANSI/NACE MR0175/ISO 15156-3, shall apply. The specified minimum yield strength for such materials shall not exceed 485 MPa.

16.4.3 Marking

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

16.4.3.1

Materials intended for sour service shall comply with the following requirements:

a) materials purchased in accordance with a CSA Z245 Standard shall be marked in accordance with the requirements of the applicable CSA Z245 Standard; or
b) materials purchased in accordance with another materials standard shall be marked in accordance with the requirements of ISO 15156-2 or ANSI/NACE MR0175/ISO 15156-2, or ISO 15156-3 or ANSI/NACE MR0175/ISO 15156-3, whichever is applicable.

16.4.3.2

Marking of pipe intended for sour service shall be by external paint marking, internal paint marking, labelling, or tagging.

16.4.3.3

For other than die stamps on rims of flanges, markings for components shall be by one of the following methods:

a) hot marking (with the part being marked above 620 °C);
b) cold marking with low-stress impressions; or
c) external or internal paint marking, labelling, or tagging.

16.4.4 Nonferrous materials

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Brass pipe, copper pipe, and copper tubing shall not be used.

16.5 Construction

16.5.1 Deviations

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Deviations from the design information on construction drawings or documents (see Clause 16.3.1) shall not be made without the prior approval of the company. A record of such approval shall be retained in the pipeline design file.

Note: *Photographic records of construction should be used.*

16.5.2 Records

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

All inspection and construction records related to the design information described in Clauses 16.3.1 shall be retained by the company for the life of the pipeline.

© 2015 CSA Group

16.5.3 Inspection plan

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

An inspection plan that describes the inspection, testing, and documentation provisions for the contractor to confirm proper construction in accordance with the design information specified in Clause 16.3.1 shall be developed by the company and provided to the contractor. The contractor shall use the inspection plan to document compliance to the design information as specified in Clause 16.3.1.

16.6 Joining

16.6.1 Carbon equivalent

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For all material grades, the maximum carbon equivalent of the base material used in procedure qualification shall be recorded in the procedure qualification records.

16.6.2 Change in carbon equivalent

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

When steel piping materials with a carbon equivalent greater than 0.45 are being welded, an increase in carbon equivalent of more than 0.02 from that of the material used for the procedure qualification shall be considered to be an essential change and shall necessitate requalification of the welding procedure specification or the establishment and qualification of a new welding procedure specification.

16.6.3 Butt welds of unequal thickness

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Butt welds between items of unequal thickness shall

a) conform to Item a) of Figure 7.2, provided that dimension b_i does not exceed 1.6 mm;
b) conform to Item e) or f) of Figure 7.2; or
c) be made using a machined transition piece that meets the following provisions:
   i) a minimum 25 mm length from each butt weld end shall match the bore of the adjacent item for each end;
   ii) the dimensions for the transition portion shall conform to the applicable details in Figure 7.2; and
   iii) the thickness and strength of the transition piece shall be selected to meet the design provisions for the pipeline.

16.6.4 Weld hardness requirements

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The hardness of the deposited weld metal and HAZ at any location shall meet the following requirements:

a) when determined in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E18, the hardness shall not exceed 22 HRC;
b) when measured using Vickers methods (ASTM E384) based on indenter loads not exceeding 10 kg, the hardness shall not exceed 250 HV; or

 © 2015 CSA Group

c) when measured using Rockwell Superficial method (ASTM E18), the hardness shall not exceed 70 HR15N.

Note: *For additional descriptions of hardness testing details, see ISO 15156-2 or ASNI/NACE MR0175/ISO 15156-2.*

16.6.5 Deposited weld metal composition limitations

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The nickel content of deposited weld metal shall not exceed 1.00%.

16.6.6 Alignment

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Alignment of tie-in welds and component welds shall be achieved using standard lineup clamps or equivalent. Alignment shall not be achieved by excessive use of other forces or equipment.

16.6.7 Preheat

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The weld procedure specification shall specify the minimum preheat temperature, which shall not be less than the preheat temperature used for procedure qualification. If preheat was not used for procedure qualification, the pipe temperature before the start of the welding procedure qualification test shall be specified as the preheat temperature in the weld procedure specification. During production welding, the pipe temperature shall not be lower than the preheat temperature specified in the welding procedure specification.

Note: *A common minimum preheat temperature used in industry is 40 °C. This preheat temperature can be insufficient in controlling hardness of the weldment in all cases. Specific cases can require higher preheat temperatures and more comprehensive analysis that takes into consideration such variables as carbon equivalent, material thickness, heat input, and preheat temperature.*

16.6.8 Backwelding

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Backwelding applied to the inside surface to correct internal misalignment or root bead defects shall be treated as a weld repair and shall be in accordance with the weld repair provisions of Clause 7.12.3.

Note: *Backwelding should not be used as a weld root repair method in sour service. Careful control of the welding procedure and application is required because backwelding can result in high hardness adjacent to the inside surface and microstructures that are susceptible to sulphide stress corrosion cracking.*

16.7 Corrosion and corrosion control

16.7.1 Supplemental mitigation requirements

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Upon completion, stimulation, or servicing of any sour service well that introduces new conditions or fluids that could be detrimental to the pipeline system, the fluids shall be separated for disposal, or a program designed to mitigate corrosion associated with the conditions or fluids shall be implemented. These supplemental measures shall remain in place until it is demonstrated that they can be terminated.

 © 2015 CSA Group

16.7.2 Mitigation and monitoring program

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Before admission of sour fluids to the pipeline system, the operating company shall develop a program to mitigate internal corrosion and shall monitor the effectiveness of its internal corrosion control program.

Note: *CAPP 2009-0013 provides information on mitigation of internal corrosion in sour gas pipeline systems.*

16.7.3 Design and sizing of pigs

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

When pigs are used for maintenance cleaning or batch corrosion inhibitor applications, their design and sizing shall be appropriate for the work being conducted and shall be maintained so as to remain within the specified operational requirements.

Note: *Considerations should include the style of pig, diameter, length, material of construction, hardness, wear, oversizing requirements, and manufacturers' recommendations.*

16.8 Operating and maintenance

16.8.1 Procedures

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In addition to meeting the provisions of Clause 10.5.1.2, operating and maintenance procedures shall be based on the limits specified in the design information specified in Clause 16.3.1.

16.8.2 Records

In addition to meeting the provisions of Clause 10.4.2, all records related to pipeline system design, construction, modification, operations, and maintenance shall be maintained for the life of the pipeline.

16.8.3 Repair methods

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Repair methods shall use materials and procedures meeting the provisions of Clauses 16.4 and 16.6.

16.8.4 Hydrogen charging

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Before welding is performed on a pipeline system that has been in sour service, consideration shall be given to the possibility of prior hydrogen charging and the need for removal of such hydrogen, using a bake-out process, as part of the welding procedure specification.

16.8.5 Direct deposition welding

Direct deposition welding procedures shall not be used.

© 2015 CSA Group

16.8.6 Change management process

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A change management process shall be in place to address all types of change, including mechanical, process, operating, and personnel changes that could affect the integrity, shutdown systems, control systems, and safeguarding of the pipeline system.

Note: *A change management process provides an opportunity for the key operating, maintenance, technical, and management groups to assess the impact of the potential change and address any additional measures that need to be implemented and documented as part of the change.*

16.8.7 Changes in service conditions

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

In addition to meeting the provisions of Clause 10.3.7, the operating company shall conduct an engineering assessment where there is a possibility of a change in the service fluid composition (e.g., a significant increase in chloride content of any produced water) or in operating conditions (e.g., pressure or temperature that could be detrimental to the integrity of the pipeline system). The engineering assessment shall consider the design information described in Clause 16.3.1 to determine whether the pipeline system is suitable for the new service fluid composition or new operating conditions.

16.8.8 Integrity management program

The operating company shall develop, document, and implement an integrity management program that is in accordance with Annex N.

16.9 Gas and multiphase pipeline systems

16.9.1 Additional requirements

In addition to the requirements of Clauses 16.3 to 16.8, the requirements of Clauses 16.9.2 to 16.9.4 shall apply for

a) gas pipeline systems containing hydrogen sulphide meeting the definition in Clause 16.2.1 a); and
b) multiphase pipeline systems, in which the hydrogen sulphide partial pressure (or effective hydrogen sulphide partial pressure) exceeds 70 kPa or 5% of design pressure, whichever is lowest.

16.9.2 Design

16.9.2.1 Location factor for steel pipe

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The location factor (*L*) to be used in the design formula in Clause 4.3.5.1 shall not exceed the applicable value given in Table 4.2 shown for “sour service fluids”.

16.9.2.2 Design considerations

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Specified pipelines shall be designed to accommodate internal maintenance cleaning and inspection devices. In order to satisfy these requirements, the following items shall be considered in the design:

a) a consistent pipeline internal diameter between the pig barrels;
b) capability for maintenance pigging;
c) capability for in-line inspection tools;

 © 2015 CSA Group

d) location and sizing of pig barrels;
e) use of round port, full-bore valves;
f) size of bend radii; and
g) use of pigging guide bars.

16.9.2.3 Sectionalizing valves

The use of sectionalizing valves equipped with automatic closing devices shall be considered to minimize the volume of hydrogen sulphide that could be released in the event of a pipeline failure.

16.9.3 Joining

16.9.3.1 Partial-penetration welds

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Partial-penetration welds shall not be permitted.

Note: *Partial-penetration welds should not be used where the design does not include some form of internal lining or coating between the pipe surface and the service fluid, as the notch created by the weld design can produce a crevice and stress riser, which can contribute to premature cracking failures when exposed to hydrogen sulphide.*

16.9.3.2 Mandatory nondestructive inspection

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

All butt welds shall be inspected by radiographic or ultrasonic methods, or a combination of such methods, for 100% of their circumferences, in accordance with the provisions of Clause 7.10.4.

16.9.3.3 Standards of acceptability for nondestructive inspection

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following limitations shall apply:
a) Indications of incomplete penetration of the root bead shall be unacceptable, regardless of length.
b) Indications of incomplete fusion at the root of the joint shall be unacceptable, regardless of length.

16.9.4 Operating and maintenance

Internal corrosion defects shall be repaired by pipe replacement. Other permanent repair methods for internal corrosion defects given in Table 10.1 shall not be used.

16.10 Additional requirements for gas pipeline systems only

16.10.1 General

In addition to the requirements of Clauses 16.3 to 16.9, for gas pipeline systems containing hydrogen sulphide meeting the definition in Clause 16.2.1 a), the additional requirements of Clause 16.10 shall apply.

 © 2015 CSA Group

16.10.2 Mechanical interference fit joints

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Mechanical interference fit joints shall not be permitted.

Note: *For sour service meeting the definition as given in Clause 16.2.1 b), mechanical interference fit joints are typically used in applications where the design includes some form of internal lining or coating between the pipe surface and the service fluid, as the notch created by some designs can produce a crevice and stress riser, which can contribute to premature cracking failures when exposed to hydrogen sulphide.*

16.10.3 Start-up corrosion mitigation

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Note: *In-line inspection tools can damage protective scales and inhibitor films and thereby provide initiation sites for corrosion damage. To help mitigate this damage, consideration should be given to batch-inhibiting the pipeline immediately after the running of an in-line inspection.*

Δ **16.10.3.1**

New gas pipelines and gas pipelines that are being restored to service after repair shall be batch treated with a corrosion inhibitor before line start-up. Where it is not practical to batch treat before start-up, the batch may be performed during start-up.

16.10.3.2

For gas pipeline systems being returned to service after an extended period of non-use, before admission of sour fluids to the pipeline system, the operating company shall perform an engineering assessment to determine the need for additional corrosion mitigation measures.

Note: *The condition of the line after an extended period of non-use can vary depending on the operating conditions of the pipeline when it was in-use and how the pipeline was treated prior to taking it out of service (e.g., pigging out of production fluids, batching of pipeline as part of pipeline layup, environment left inside the pipeline, etc.). The initial re-start period might require additional mitigative measures until the pipeline is in stable operation. Consideration could include batching the pipeline before returning to service, increasing the continuous inhibitor injection rates (where applicable), and increasing pigging.*

17 Composite-reinforced steel pipelines

17.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

17.1.1

Clause 17 covers additional requirements for the design, materials, construction, pressure testing, operation, and maintenance of non-sour pipelines made from composite-reinforced steel pipe.

17.1.2

Composite-reinforced steel pipelines shall not be used in sour service.

Note: *For definition of sour service fluids, see Clause 16.2.1.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

17.2 Applicability

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The provisions in Clauses 1 to 10 shall also be applicable to composite-reinforced steel pipe, except insofar as such provisions are specifically modified or voided by the provisions of Clause 17.

17.3 Specific definitions

The following definitions shall apply in Clause 17:

Composite-reinforced steel pipe — line pipe consisting of two structural components, an inner steel pipe and an outer reinforcement of fibre-reinforced composite material; the functional circumferential loads are shared between the steel pipe and the composite reinforcement.

Wind angle — the angle between the composite reinforcing fibres and the longitudinal axis of the pipe.

17.4 Design

17.4.1 Stress distribution

17.4.1.1

The distribution of stresses in the steel pipe and fibre-reinforced composite, for all loading conditions, shall be determined using an analysis procedure that takes account of the relative stiffness of each component.

Note: *Fibre reinforcement with a wind angle close to 90° only provides additional strength in the hoop direction.*

17.4.1.2

The strength of the steel pipe and welded joint shall be used to resist bending, axial force, and restrained thermal expansion.

17.4.1.3

In determining the stress distribution in the steel and composite layers under service loads, consideration shall be given to any residual stresses that remain in the steel and composite layers after pressure testing.

Note: *Plastic deformations in the steel pipe that occur during pressure testing normally leave residual hoop tensile stresses in the fibre-reinforced composite layer and residual hoop compressive stresses in the steel pipe, when the pipe is unpressurized. These residual stresses affect the stress distribution under subsequent operating loads.*

17.4.1.4

For the purpose of fatigue evaluations for the steel pipe, the stress distribution shall be determined based on the specified maximum yield strength.

Note: *Using the maximum allowable yield strength for the steel pipe results in a more conservative fatigue evaluation. The higher relative stiffness of the steel pipe, with respect to the fibre-reinforced composite layer, results in a greater percentage of stress being taken by the steel pipe, and thus a larger stress range is used in the fatigue evaluation.*

17.4.2 Maximum operating pressure

The maximum operating pressure shall be the lesser of 80% of the maximum test pressure and the design pressure.

 © 2015 CSA Group

17.4.3 Design pressure

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

17.4.3.1 Calculation

For straight composite-reinforced steel pipe, the design pressure shall be determined by the following design formula:

$$P = \frac{2}{D} \times (StT + T_h w) \times F \times L$$

where

P = design pressure, MPa

D = outside diameter of steel pipe, mm

S = specified minimum yield strength of the steel pipe, MPa

t = design wall thickness of steel pipe, mm

T = temperature factor (see Clause 17.4.3.5)

T_h = 95% lower confidence limit of the tensile strength of the fibre-reinforced composite in the hoop direction, determined from strength tests conducted at the maximum design temperature, MPa

w = design wall thickness of fibre-reinforced composite layer, mm

F = design factor (see Clause 17.4.3.3)

L = location factor (see Clause 17.4.3.4)

17.4.3.2 Fibre-reinforced composite hoop strength tests

The ultimate tensile strength of the fibre-reinforced composite in the hoop direction shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D2290, at the maximum temperature rating. Test samples shall be representative of the fibre-reinforced composite system used in fabricating the composite-reinforced steel pipe (i.e., same resin/fibre system, fibre content, wind angle, lay-up sequence, and fibre tension).

17.4.3.3 Design factor (*F*) for composite-reinforced steel pipe

The design factor to be used in the design formula in Clause 17.4.3.1 shall be 0.5.

17.4.3.4 Location factor (*L*) for composite-reinforced steel pipe

The location factor to be used in the design formula in Clause 17.4.3.1 shall not exceed the applicable value given in Table 4.2.

17.4.3.5 Temperature factor (*T*) for composite-reinforced steel pipe

The temperature factor to be used in the design formula in Clause 17.4.3.1 shall be as given in Table 4.4.

17.4.4 External pressures and loadings

Special consideration shall be given to the design of composite-reinforced steel pipe for external pressure and other loadings.

Note: *Resistance to external pressure and loadings is provided by the steel pipe and must be accounted for using good engineering practice (see also Clause 17.4.1.2 and Clause 4.2.1.2). The ability of the fibre-reinforced composite material to conform to the strains imposed by external pressure and loadings, without degradation in strength or corrosion control functionality, must be considered (see also Clause 17.5.2.8 and Clause 17.9.2).*

 © 2015 CSA Group

17.4.5 Stress limits

17.4.5.1
Stresses in the fibre-reinforced composite, under operating and hydrostatic test conditions, shall be limited to maximum values that account for the stress versus failure-time relationship.

17.4.5.2
Stresses in the steel pipe shall be limited in accordance with the requirements of Clauses 4.7 and 4.8, where the longitudinal and hoop stresses in the steel pipe shall be determined in accordance with Clause 17.4.1.

17.4.6 Design temperature
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

17.4.6.1
Composite-reinforced steel pipelines shall be designed to operate at pressures and within a temperature range specified by the company, using the manufacturer's published test data at the selected design temperature of the pipeline as the basis of the determination.

17.4.6.2
The maximum design temperature shall be at least 20 °C below the maximum use temperature of the resin-reinforced composite resin, as specified by the manufacturer.

17.4.7 Engineering assessment
For aboveground installations, an engineering assessment shall be conducted to ensure suitability for that application, taking into consideration support requirements, ambient weather, solar heating, and ultraviolet degradation of pipe properties.

17.5 Materials and manufacture

17.5.1 Steel pipe
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The supplementary design measures for positive control of fracture propagation specified in Clauses 5.2.2.3 and 5.2.2.4 may be satisfied by providing a suitable design method to select the thickness and strength of the fibre-reinforced composite.

17.5.2 Fibre-reinforced composite
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

17.5.2.1
Fibre-reinforced composite materials shall consist of filament-wound glass fibres embedded in a resin matrix.

 © 2015 CSA Group

17.5.2.2
The glass fibres used in the manufacturing process shall be one or more of the following glass compositions:
a) Type E;
b) Type S; and
c) Type E-CR.

17.5.2.3
The minimum strength and modulus of the glass fibres, measured in accordance with ASTM D2343, shall be not less than the required specified minimum values for resin-impregnated strands.

17.5.2.4
The surface of glass fibre shall be treated to provide a bond between the fibre and resin matrix.

17.5.2.5
The resin system shall be suitable for the intended service conditions and shall consist of an epoxy, polyester, or vinyl ester, plus the resin manufacturer's recommended promoters and curing agents.

17.5.2.6
The maximum use temperature for the resin/cure system shall be established based on heat distortion temperature or glass transition temperature.

17.5.2.7
All materials used shall be traceable to certified material test reports or certificates of compliance and shall be traceable to individual pipes and documented in the construction records.

17.5.2.8
The fibre-reinforced composite pipe shall be capable of withstanding all strains that are imposed upon the pipe during construction and operation without any degradation in the strength of the fibre-reinforced composite layer below the required value.

17.5.3 Composite-reinforced steel pipe manufacture
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

17.5.3.1
A manufacturing specification shall be provided by the manufacturer for every combination of manufacturing method and material used during manufacture. All the information concerning the fibre-reinforced composite materials, manufacturing procedures, and application procedures shall be provided.

17.5.3.2
The following essential variables shall be held within the tolerances specified in the manufacturing specification:
a) fibre type (manufacturer and designation);
b) fibre surface treatment — sizing and finish (manufacturer and designation);
c) resin (type, manufacturer, and designation);
d) curing agent (manufacturer and designation);

 © 2015 CSA Group

e) manner of impregnation;
f) % of fibre in composite;
g) variables of winding process (i.e., speed, tension, and angle);
h) curing schedule (e.g., time, temperature, humidity);
i) metallic layer (e.g., yield strength, thickness);
j) Barcol hardness;
k) volumetric expansion;
l) pipe dimensions (metallic layer OD, length);
m) primer (manufacturer and designation);
n) primer curing schedule (e.g., time, temperature, humidity); and
o) thickness of fibre reinforcement.

17.5.3.3

The weight % of the fibre reinforcement in the laminate, as determined by ASTM D2584, shall conform to that set forth in the laminate procedure specification with a tolerance of +6% and –0%.

17.5.3.4

Specific winding patterns for the continuous fibre strands shall be used as defined in the manufacturing specification.

Note: *Any winding pattern that places the filaments in the desired orientation may be used.*

17.5.3.5

Tension on the strands of filaments during the winding operation shall be controlled to ensure a uniform application of the composite reinforcement onto the metallic layer.

17.5.3.6

The speed of winding shall be limited by the ability to meet the tensioning requirements, to conform to the specified winding pattern, and to ensure adequate resin impregnation.

17.5.3.7

The laminate thickness of each pipe shall be determined at a minimum of three points along its length on each of its four quadrants. The thickness determinations shall be made with mechanical gauges, ultrasonic gauges, or other devices having an accuracy of ±2% of true thickness. Where visual indication of deviation from design thickness exists at points other than those at which measurements are required, thickness determinations shall be made in sufficient number to document the thickness variation. Thickness less than the design value shall not be permitted.

17.5.3.8

Each pipe shall be visually checked for imperfections in the laminate. Classification and acceptance level of imperfections shall be as given in Table 17.1. Imperfections that do not extend into the structural layer may be repaired using a method that restores the minimum thickness, fibre content, and protective capabilities of the protective layer. Imperfections that extend into the structural layer (e.g., structural fibres that are cut or damaged) shall be deemed unrepairable and the pipe shall be rejected.

17.5.3.9

The manufacturer shall prepare, implement, and use a quality program that includes the specific technical issues related to the manufacture of composite-reinforced steel pipe.

 © 2015 CSA Group

17.5.3.10

One pipe, for each one thousand or fewer pipes produced in accordance with the manufacturing specification, shall be subjected to a specification qualification burst test. The test pressure shall be increased to 1.25 times the design pressure, where it shall be held for a continuous period of not less than 1 h, following which the pressure shall be increased until burst at an average rate not greater than 1.0 MPa/min. In order for the manufacturing specification to be qualified, the burst pressure shall be at least two times the design pressure.

17.5.3.11

If the pipe fails to conform to the specified requirement in Clause 17.5.3.10, the manufacturer may elect to make retests on two additional pipes from the same lot. If both of the retest specimens conform to the requirements, all remaining pipes in the lot shall be accepted.

17.6 Installation

17.6.1 Field bending

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

17.6.1.1

Field bends in composite-reinforced steel pipe shall conform to the requirements of Clause 6.2.3 a), b), c), and d) and Clause 4.3.5.2.

17.6.1.2

Care shall be taken during field bending to maintain the integrity of the fibre-reinforced composite.

Note: *The ability of the fibre-reinforced composite material to conform to the strains imposed by field bending, without degradation in strength or corrosion control functionality, must be considered (see also Clause 17.5.2.8 and Clause 17.9.2).*

17.6.2 Damage

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Damage to the fibre-reinforced composite during hauling, field bending, stringing, and lowering-in shall be assessed and repaired in accordance with Clause 17.5.3.8. Pipe sections with unrepairable imperfections shall be cut out as a cylinder.

17.6.3 Crossings

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Composite-reinforced steel pipe shall not be used for bored or drilled crossings, unless a suitable method is used for inspecting the fibre-reinforced composite for damage after installation.

© 2015 CSA Group

17.7 Joining

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

17.7.1 General

17.7.1.1

Composite-reinforced steel pipe shall be joined by arc welding the steel pipe, followed by reinforcing the cut-back joint area.

17.7.1.2

Where longitudinal tensile stresses greater than 40% of the specified minimum yield strength of the steel pipe occur under normal operating conditions, an engineering critical assessment procedure shall be used to derive standards of acceptability for circumferential weld imperfections.

Note: *The recommended method is given in Annex K.*

17.7.1.3

The fibre-reinforced composite shall be cut back a sufficient distance such that it does not interfere with proper set-up for welding and is not damaged due to high temperatures during welding.

17.7.2 Joint reinforcement

Fibre-reinforced composite reinforcement shall be applied over the welded joint in the steel pipe. The joint reinforcement shall be designed and installed to provide equivalent strength to that of the manufactured fibre-reinforced composite steel pipe.

17.7.3 Transitions to steel pipe

Transitions from composite-reinforced steel pipe to steel pipe or steel components shall be designed and installed to provide equivalent strength to that of the manufactured fibre-reinforced steel pipe.

17.7.4 Qualification of joining procedure specifications

The designers of the joint reinforcement and steel pipe transitions shall develop detailed procedure specifications that include material properties, pipe preparation, field installation, and inspection requirements. Qualification of such specifications shall be supported by engineering test data and field trials. The acceptability of such qualifications shall be determined by the company.

Note: *Design considerations include strength, strain compatibility, durability, and suitability of the joint reinforcing as a protective corrosion coating. Additional considerations for transitions to all-steel pipe and components include the required length of the fibre-reinforcement over-wrap.*

17.8 Pressure testing

17.8.1

The minimum test pressure shall be as specified in Table 8.1.

17.8.2

The maximum test pressure shall be limited such that the stress in the composite during pressure testing does not exceed the stress limits specified by Clause 17.4.5.

 © 2015 CSA Group

17.9 Corrosion control

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

17.9.1

Composite-reinforced steel pipe shall meet the requirements of Clause 9.

17.9.2

Where required, special provisions shall be made for the attachment of test lead wires; however, in no case shall the fibre-reinforced composite layer be perforated.

17.9.3

If fibre-reinforced composite material (including joint reinforcement) does not meet the requirements of Clause 9.3, an additional coating that does meet such requirements and is compatible with the fibre-reinforced composite material shall be used.

Note: *The ability of the fibre-reinforced composite material to conform to the strains imposed by field bending, without degradation in corrosion control functionality, should be considered.*

17.10 Operation and maintenance

17.10.1

Hot tap connections to composite-reinforced steel pipe shall not be allowed.

17.10.2

Fibre-reinforced composite material damage assessment and repair shall be in accordance with Table 17.2.

17.10.3

Corroded areas that are not allowed by Clauses 10.10.2.2, 10.10.2.3, and 10.10.2.4 shall be considered to be defects, unless determined by an engineering assessment to be acceptable. The engineering assessment shall include the considerations listed in Clause 10.10.2.7. Pipe containing such defects shall be repaired using a suitable repair method.

Note: *For this application, the nominal wall thickness referred to in Clause 10.10.2.3 is the inner steel pipe thickness, not the total composite-reinforced steel pipe thickness.*

Table 17.1
Visual acceptance criteria for fibre-reinforced composite
(See Clause 17.5.3.8.)

Imperfection name	Definition of imperfection	Maximum allowable imperfection size
Air bubble (void)	Air entrapment within and between the plies of reinforcement, usually spherical in shape	3.2 mm dia., density 4/650 mm^2; 1.6 mm dia., density 10/650 mm^2
Blister	Rounded elevation of the surface of the laminate, somewhat resembling in shape a blister on the human skin	3.2 mm dia., density 1/930 cm^2, none less than 50 mm apart

(Continued)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table 17.1 (Continued)

Imperfection name	Definition of imperfection	Maximum allowable imperfection size
Burned areas from excessive exotherm	Evidence of thermal decomposition through discoloration or heavy distortion	None
Chips*	Small pieces broken off an edge of the laminate that includes fibre breakage	1.6 mm dia. or 6.4 mm length by 1.6 mm deep
Cracks	Actual ruptures or debond of portions of the laminate	None
Crazing	Fine cracks at the surface of the laminate	25 mm long by 0.4 mm deep, density 5 in any 930 cm^2
Delamination (edge)	Separation of the layers in a laminate	None
Dry spot	Area of incomplete surface film where the reinforcement has not been wetted with resin	None
Edge exposure	Exposure of multiple layers of the reinforcing matrix to the environment, usually as a result of shaping or cutting a section of laminate	None
Fish-eye*	Particles included in a laminate that are foreign to its composition (not a minute speck of dust)	3.2 mm dia., never to penetrate lamination to lamination; shall be fully resin-encapsulated
Foreign inclusion*	Small globular mass that has not blended completely into the surrounding material and is particularly evident in a transparent or translucent material	3.2 mm dia.
Pimples	Small, sharp, conical elevations on the surface of a laminate	No limit; shall be fully resin filled and wetted
Pit*	Small crater in the surface of a laminate	3.2 mm dia. by 1.6 mm deep; no exposed fibres
Porosity	Presence of numerous visible tiny pits (pinholes), approximate dimension 0.25 mm	None to fully penetrate the surface; no more than 15/650 mm^2; no exposed fibres
Scratches*	Shallow marks, grooves, furrows, or channels caused by improper handling	None more than 15.2 cm long; no exposed fibres
Wrinkles and creases	Generally linear, abrupt changes in surface plane caused by laps of reinforcing layers, irregular mould shape, or polyester film overlap	None
Band width gap (filament winding)	The space between successive winding fibre bands that are intended to lay next to each other	None
Band width overlap (filament winding)	An area where the edge of a fibre band has laid on top of a previous fibre band, although intended to lay next to each other	2 strands
Band width splaying (filament winding)	An unintended space between individual fibres in a fibre band that results in a gap between fibres	None
Strand drop out (filament winding)	When one or more strands of a fibre band ceases to be applied to the pipe shell being wound due to breakage or inadequate supply	< 2% of strands

(Continued)

Table 17.1 (Concluded)

Imperfection name	Definition of imperfection	Maximum allowable imperfection size
Allowable cumulative sum of imperfections*	Maximum allowable in any 930 cm^2 Maximum allowable in 0.84 m^2	5 30
Maximum % repairs to nonstructural outer layers	The maximum allowable area of repairs made in order to pass visual examination	3% of total pipe surface area

* *Imperfections subject to cumulative sum limitation.*

Notes:

1) *Above acceptance criteria apply to condition of laminate after repair and hydrostatic test.*

2) *Noncatalyzed resin is not permissible to any extent in any area of the laminate.*

Table 17.2
Damage severity and repair guidelines for fibre-reinforced composite
(See Clause 17.10.2.)

Damage severity	Characteristics	Remedial action
Minor		
Scratches Light surface abrasion Coin marking	Depth < 0.1 mm No fibreglass exposed Resin-rich surface intact	None required
Moderate		
Deeper scratches Surface abrasion Light equipment damage	0.1 mm < depth < 0.5 mm Composite whitening Resin-rich surface compromised	Surface requires repair Hot-patch type repair
Severe		
Gouges Denting Heavy equipment damage	Depth > 0.5 mm Glass fibres exposed Laminate strength compromised	Cut out as a cylinder and replace with another cylinder that meets the design requirements

17.10.4

Consideration shall be given to the effects of temporary or permanent strength reductions in the fibre-reinforced steel pipe if the fibre-reinforced composite material is removed for maintenance purposes.

17.10.5

Detailed pipe repair procedure specifications shall be developed that include material properties, pipe preparation, field installation, and inspection requirements. Qualification of such specifications shall be supported by engineering test data and field trials. The acceptability of such qualifications shall be determined by the company.

Note: *Design considerations include strength, strain compatibility, durability, and corrosion control.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Annex A (informative)
Safety and loss management system

Note: *This informative (non-mandatory) Annex has been written in normative (mandatory) language to facilitate adoption where users of the Standard wish to adopt it formally as additional requirements to this Standard.*

A.1 Introduction
This Annex sets out a recommended practice for a safety and loss management system that conforms to the requirements of Clause 3.1.

A.2 Scope
This Annex is applicable to design, construction, operation, and maintenance activities that can affect the safety of people or the protection of property or the environment.

A.3 General

A.3.1 Safety and loss management system
The operating company shall develop and implement a documented safety and loss management system for the pipeline system that provides for the protection of people, the environment, and property and is in accordance with this Annex.

A.3.2 Life cycle approach
The safety and loss management system shall cover the life cycle of the pipeline system.

A.3.3 Process approach
The development, implementation, and maintenance of the safety and loss management system requires that the operating company
a) identify the processes that need to be managed;
b) determine the interaction and cross-functional nature of such processes;
c) determine the criteria, organization, and methods required for the effective control and operation of such processes;
d) determine the resources necessary to support the operation and monitoring of such processes and ensure the availability of such resources;
e) measure, monitor, and analyze such processes; and
f) implement the necessary action to achieve planned results and continual improvement.

A.4 Management responsibility

A.4.1 Policy
The safety and loss management system shall include a clearly articulated policy that
a) is appropriate to the purpose of the organization;
b) includes a commitment to comply with requirements and continually improve the effectiveness of the safety and loss management system;
c) provides a framework for establishing and reviewing objectives;
d) is communicated and understood within the organization; and
e) is periodically reviewed for continuing suitability.

 © 2015 CSA Group

A.4.2 Leadership commitment

The safety and loss management system shall include a commitment to the development and implementation of the safety and loss management system and to continually improving its effectiveness by

a) establishing the safety and loss management system policy;
b) ensuring that objectives are established;
c) communicating to the organization the importance of meeting organization requirements, as well as statutory and regulatory requirements;
d) ensuring the availability of resources; and
e) conducting management reviews.

A.4.3 Organization

A.4.3.1 Responsibilities and authorities

Management shall put in place an organizational structure that supports the effective implementation of the safety and loss management system and shall ensure that responsibilities and authorities are defined and communicated within the organization.

A.4.3.2 Management representative

Management should appoint a member of management who, irrespective of other responsibilities, has responsibility and authority for

a) ensuring that processes needed for the safety and loss management system are established, implemented, and maintained;
b) reporting to executive management on the performance of the safety and loss management system and any need for improvement;
c) ensuring the promotion of awareness of the requirements of the safety and loss management system throughout the organization; and
d) liaising with external stakeholders on matters related to the safety and loss management systems.

A.5 Management of resources

A.5.1 Provision of resources

The operating company shall determine and provide the resources needed to implement and maintain the safety and loss management system and continually improve its effectiveness.

A.5.2 Human resources

A.5.2.1 Training and competency

The operating company shall develop and implement a program that trains personnel to work safely and in an environmentally sound manner, in accordance with their duties and responsibilities, and in conformance to the requirements of this Standard and the safety and loss management system. As part of the program, the operating company shall

a) establish competency needs for critical job functions;
b) provide initial, ongoing, and periodic refresher training to satisfy competency needs;
c) provide orientation for new employees, those newly transferred, and those whose job functions change, as appropriate;
d) evaluate the effectiveness of the training provided; and

 © 2015 CSA Group

e) maintain appropriate records of education, experience, training, qualifications, and competency assessment, especially for critical positions.

A.5.2.2 Contractor services

The operating company shall develop and implement a process such that contractor services are performed in a manner that conforms to the requirements of the safety and loss management system.

Contractor services shall be evaluated and selected on the basis of the contractor's ability and qualifications to perform the specified duties in a safe and environmentally sound manner, and in conformance to the requirements of the safety and loss management system. As part of the evaluation, the operating company should obtain and evaluate information regarding a contractor's safety and environmental policies, procedures, and performance, and should verify contractor employee abilities and qualifications through audits, work-site inspections, or observation of employee performance, as appropriate.

Performance requirements and expectations shall be defined and communicated to the contractor. A system shall be in place to monitor and assess contractor performance, provide feedback, and ensure that deficiencies are corrected.

A.5.3 Infrastructure

The operating company shall identify, provide, and maintain the infrastructure necessary for the effective implementation of the safety and loss management system, including

a) workspace and associated facilities;
b) equipment and technology; and
c) supporting services.

A.5.4 Work environment

The operating company shall identify and manage the human and physical factors of the work environment that could affect the ability of employees to meet the requirements of the safety and loss management system.

A.6 Communication

The operating company shall develop and implement an internal and external communication process that supports the effective implementation of the safety and loss management system.

A.7 Documents and records

A.7.1 General

The operating company shall document the safety and loss management system, and the documentation and records shall include

a) policy and objectives;
b) processes and procedures required by this Annex;
c) documents needed by the operating company to ensure the effective planning, operation, and control of the safety and loss management system; and
d) records required by this Annex.

A.7.2 Control of documents

The operating company shall establish a process for the control and distribution of documents, including procedures for

a) identifying those documents that are required for the effective implementation of the safety and loss management system;
b) identifying those documents that need to be controlled;
c) reviewing of controlled documents for technical adequacy;
d) approving and maintaining documents;
e) ensuring that documents are legible, identifiable, and retrievable;
f) identifying the current revision of each document;
g) readily accessing current revisions of relevant documents at all locations where they might be required;
h) preventing the unintended use of invalid or obsolete documents; and
i) applying suitable marking to invalid or obsolete documents that are retained for legal, historical, or other purposes.

A.7.3 Control of records

The operating company shall establish procedures for the control of records, including procedures for the proper capture, classification, indexing, storage, search, retrieval, backup, retention, and disposition of records that are required for the effective implementation of the safety and loss management system.

Records shall be retained as objective evidence that demonstrates conformance to and effective implementation of the safety and loss management system. Record retention periods shall be established in accordance with operational, legal, and regulatory requirements.

Applicable records shall include

a) management review;
b) contract review;
c) design review;
d) design verification;
e) design validation;
f) design changes;
g) approved suppliers and contractors;
h) traceability records;
i) qualified processes, equipment, and personnel;
j) operation and maintenance records;
k) test records;
l) inspection records;
m) nonconformance reports;
n) internal and external audit reports;
o) training records; and
p) records for monitoring and measurement activities.

A.8 Operational control

A.8.1 General

Clauses A.8.2 to A.10 identify core processes for a pipeline system that need to be managed in order for the safety and loss management system to be effectively implemented. Each core process shall include the following elements:

a) defined policies and objectives, as appropriate;
b) identification of functional area with responsibility and accountability for the implementation of each core process;
c) procedures for the effective implementation of each core process;
d) procedures for the identification and documentation of required interaction between processes;
e) procedures for ensuring conformance to the requirements of this Standard and the safety and loss management system;
f) procedures for the maintenance of and access to documents and records necessary for each process to be administered properly;
g) periodic evaluation for continuing suitability, adequacy, and effectiveness;
h) performance measures and targets, as appropriate; and
i) continual improvement.

A.8.2 Project management

A.8.2.1 General

A project consists of a set of coordinated and controlled activities with start and finish dates, undertaken to achieve an objective conforming to specific requirements, including the constraints of time, cost, and resources. The operating company shall ensure that all projects are managed in order for the project to achieve the stated objectives through appropriate planning, organization, control, reporting, and review of all aspects of the project.

A.8.2.2 Planning

The operating company shall document a plan that specifies the resources, responsibilities, schedules, and procedures necessary to meet the project objectives.

A.8.2.3 Project change control

Project changes shall be reviewed, verified, and validated, as appropriate, and approved before implementation. The review of the project changes shall include an evaluation of the effect of such changes on the project output. Records of the results of the review of changes and any necessary actions shall be maintained in the project file.

A.8.2.4 Project review

At suitable stages, systematic project reviews shall be performed in accordance with planned arrangements to evaluate the ability of the project output to meet requirements and to identify any problems and propose necessary corrective actions. Records of the results of the project reviews and any necessary actions shall be maintained in the project file.

A.8.3 Risk management

A hazard is defined as a condition or event that might cause a failure or damage incident or anything that has the potential to cause harm to people, property, or the environment. The operating company shall implement a risk management process that identifies, assesses, and manages the hazards and

associated risks for the life cycle of the pipeline system. The risk management process shall include the following:

a) risk acceptance criteria;
b) risk assessment, including hazard identification; risk analysis, and risk evaluation;
c) risk controls that reduce or eliminate the probability or consequence of an incident, or both, to an acceptable level;
d) risk monitoring to ensure that controls are effective;
e) regular reviews of the risk management cycle to ensure that corrective and preventive actions are employed and that improvements to the risk management process are implemented, as required;
f) communication; and
g) documentation.

Notes:

1) *CAN/CSA-ISO 31000 sets out principles and guidelines for risk management.*

2) *Annex B provides guidance on performing pipeline system risk assessments.*

A.8.4 Design

Note: *For the purposes of this Annex, design includes material selection.*

A.8.4.1 Planning

During the design and planning of pipeline projects, the operating company shall determine

a) the design stages;
b) the review, verification, and validation that are appropriate to each design stage; and
c) the responsibilities and authorities for design.

A.8.4.2 Design control

The operating company shall establish documented design control procedures for major pipeline projects in order to achieve conformity to applicable standards and project and regulatory requirements. The procedures shall include

a) identification of design input requirements;
b) identification of design outputs in a form that enables verification against the design inputs;
c) design review for the evaluation of the ability of design results to meet the project requirements, and identify any problems and propose necessary actions;
d) design verification to ensure the design outputs have met the design input requirements;
e) design validation to ensure that the resulting design is capable of meeting project requirements;
f) control of design changes;
g) records of design reviews, design verification, design validation, and design changes; and
h) documentation, including the methods, assumptions, formulas, and calculations used in design.

A.8.5 Procurement

The operating company shall develop and implement procedures for the evaluation of suppliers and contractors and the verification of purchased product. The procedures shall identify the necessary purchasing documents and records.

© 2015 CSA Group

A.8.6 Construction

A.8.6.1 Control of construction

The operating company shall plan and carry out the construction of pipeline systems under controlled conditions, including, as applicable,

a) the availability of drawings, documents, and specifications;
b) the use of suitable materials and service providers;
c) the implementation of an effective quality management system;
d) the availability and use of monitoring and measurement devices; and
e) the implementation of commissioning and, where applicable, post-commissioning activities.

A.8.6.2 Qualification of processes for construction and installation

The operating company shall qualify any processes for construction and installation where the resulting output cannot be verified by inspection, audit, or subsequent monitoring or measurement. This includes any processes in which deficiencies become apparent only after the system is in use or the service has been delivered.

Qualification shall demonstrate the ability of these processes to achieve planned results. The operating company shall establish arrangements for these processes including, as applicable,

a) defined criteria for review and approval of the processes;
b) approval of equipment and qualification of personnel;
c) use of specific measures and equipment;
d) requirements for records; and
e) requirements for requalification.

A.8.6.3 Identification and traceability

Where traceability is a requirement, the operating company shall control and record the unique identification of the product or the system components.

A.8.7 Operations and maintenance

The operating company shall identify the activities that could affect safety, system integrity, and environmental protection during the operation and maintenance of the pipeline system. The operating company shall plan those activities so that they are conducted under specified conditions by establishing and maintaining documented procedures and schedules for activities, and setting operating criteria in the procedures, as appropriate. Such activities shall include

a) maintenance of facilities and critical equipment;
b) right-of-way inspection and maintenance;
c) pipeline system integrity management for the pipeline life cycle;
d) emergency preparedness, response, and recovery;
e) security management;
f) incident investigation;
g) operation and control systems; and
h) deactivation and abandonment.

Notes:

1) *Annex N provides guidelines for the development, documentation, and implementation of a pipeline system integrity management program.*

2) *CSA Z246.1 provides guidance on developing security management systems.*

A.8.8 Engineering assessments

A.8.8.1 General

Engineering assessment shall be used to support decisions under an operating company's safety and loss management system, as might be required or allowed by this Standard.

A.8.8.2 Engineering assessment process

Prior to performing an engineering assessment, operating companies shall develop a documented process for conducting engineering assessments that includes:

a) the responsibilities of those individuals conducting and approving the engineering assessments;
b) the competency requirements for those conducting and approving engineering assessments; and
c) the engineering assessment methodology, including acceptance criteria.

A.8.8.3 Methodology

The level of detail and complexity of the methodology shall be commensurate with the degree to which the assessment techniques are established within the operating company, the degree of certainty of the inputs, and the uniqueness of the situations being assessed.

A.8.8.4 Documentation

The documentation for an engineering assessment shall be retained for the life of the pipeline and shall include

a) the purpose and scope of the engineering assessment;
b) the analysis conducted for the engineering assessment;
c) supporting documentation;
d) conclusions; and
e) recommendations.

A.9 Management of change

A.9.1 General

The operating company shall establish a process for the management of changes that could have a significant impact on safety or the effectiveness of the safety and loss management system, including

a) organizational changes, such as changes to organizational structure and key personnel;
b) changes to facilities, equipment, and technology;
c) changes to procedures or practices for design, construction, operations, and maintenance-related activities;
d) changes to technical requirements, such as industry standards, industry recommended practices, and regulations; and
e) physical environment changes, such as adjacent land development.

A.9.2 Management of change process

The management of change process shall include

a) the identification of changes that could affect the safety and loss management system;
b) setting responsibilities and authorities for the review, approval, and implementation of changes;
c) documentation of reasons for the changes;
d) analysis of implications and effects of the changes;
e) documentation and communication of changes to affected parties; and
f) the timing of changes.

A.10 Continual improvement

A.10.1 Objectives

The operating company shall establish objectives and targets at relevant functions and levels within the organization. Objectives and targets shall be measurable and consistent with the safety and loss management system policy.

A.10.2 Reporting

The operating company shall establish a process for the reporting, collection, evaluation, and trending of data related to hazards, incidents, and near misses, including the communication of any findings and actions.

A.10.3 Learning from events

The operating company shall identify and review lessons from past events in order to inform decision-making related to hazard identification, risk management, and operational control. Lessons shall be drawn from various sources, including

a) internal investigation reports;
b) internal hazard, near miss and incident trending;
c) incidents, which have occurred in other operating companies;
d) industry-wide safety advisories;
e) investigation reports and advisories from other high-hazard industries, as these reports may provide important lessons related to technical matters, management systems, human factors, and organizational culture.

Lessons learned shall be communicated internally.

A.10.4 Performance monitoring

The operating company shall establish and maintain documented procedures to monitor and measure, on a regular basis, the performance of the safety and loss management system against established objectives and targets.

A.10.5 Conformance monitoring

The operating company shall establish and maintain documented procedures to monitor and measure on a regular basis, including periodic audits, conformance with the requirements of this Standard and the safety and loss management system.

A.10.6 Control of nonconformance

The operating company shall establish and maintain procedures for defining responsibility and authority for handling and investigating nonconformance, taking action to mitigate any impacts, and for initiating and completing corrective and preventive action and for evaluating the effectiveness of any actions taken.

A.10.7 Management review

A.10.7.1 General

Management shall review the safety and loss management system at planned intervals to ensure its continuing suitability, adequacy, and effectiveness. The management review shall include an assessment

© 2015 CSA Group

of opportunities for improvement and the need for changes to the safety and loss management system, its policy and objectives.

A.10.7.2 Review input

The input to management review shall include information on

a) results of audits;
b) organization and external stakeholder feedback;
c) process performance and conformance to the requirements of the safety and loss management system;
d) status of preventive and corrective actions;
e) follow-up actions from previous management reviews;
f) changes that could affect the safety and loss management system; and
g) recommendations for improvement.

A.10.7.3 Review output

The output from the management review shall include any decisions and actions related to

a) improvement of the effectiveness of the safety and loss management system and its processes, including changes to policies and objectives, as appropriate; and
b) resource needs.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Annex B (informative)
Guidelines for risk assessment of pipeline systems

Note: *This Annex is an informative (non-mandatory) part of this Standard.*

There is a commentary available for this Annex.

B.1 Introduction

This Annex provides guidelines on the application of risk assessment to pipeline systems. These guidelines are intended to

a) identify the role of risk assessment within the context of an overall risk management process;
b) set out standard terminology that is consistent with existing Canadian standards in the field of risk management;
c) identify in general terms the components of the risk assessment process, the associated data requirements, and the requirements for documentation and records; and
d) where applicable, provide reference to methodological guidelines for risk assessment.

B.2 Applicability

B.2.1 General

This Annex applies to the risk assessment of all pipeline systems within the scope of this Standard.

B.2.2 Risk assessment process

B.2.2.1

Risk assessment forms a component of the broader process of risk management and includes the steps of risk analysis (hazard identification, frequency analysis, consequence analysis, risk estimation) and risk evaluation (risk significance and options). The function of risk assessment within the risk management process is shown schematically in Figure B.1.

B.2.2.2

Risk assessment is applicable to hazards affecting public and occupational safety and the environment and to hazards having economic consequences.

B.2.2.3

Risk assessment is applicable to the decision-making process in the design, construction, operation, inspection, monitoring, testing, maintenance, repair, modification, rehabilitation, and abandonment of pipeline systems.

B.3 Specific definitions

The following definitions apply in this Annex:

Hazard identification — the recognition that a hazard exists and the definition of its characteristics.

Risk — a compound measure, either qualitative or quantitative, of the frequency and severity of an adverse effect.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Risk analysis — the use of available information to estimate the risk, arising from hazards, to individuals or populations, property, or the environment.

Risk assessment — the process of risk analysis and risk evaluation.

Risk control — the process of decision-making for managing risk, and the related implementation, communication, and monitoring activities required to ensure the continuing effectiveness of the risk-management process.

Risk estimation — the process of combining the results of frequency and consequence analysis to produce a measure of the level of risk being analyzed.

Risk evaluation — the process of judging the significance of the absolute or relative values of the estimated risk, including the identification and evaluation of options for managing risk.

System — an entity that defines the boundaries of the risk assessment, which includes the applicable portion of the pipeline, the hazards to be analyzed, and any physical, human, and ecological receptors that can be affected by such hazards.

B.4 Risk assessment concepts

B.4.1 Role of risk assessment

B.4.1.1 General

Risk is present in all phases of the life cycle of the pipeline system. Risk management is a process that is intended to control the likelihood or impact of undesirable consequences, including

a) loss of life, injury, or illness;
b) harm to the environment;
c) damage to property; and
d) economic loss.

Risk assessment (which comprises risk analysis and risk evaluation) is a necessary component of the risk management process. The results of such an assessment will assist the decision-maker in determining the appropriate response.

B.4.1.2 Risk analysis

Risk analysis is a structured process used to identify both the extent and likelihood of consequences associated with hazards. Risk analysis answers four fundamental questions:

a) What can go wrong?
b) How likely is it?
c) What are the consequences?
d) What is the level of risk?

B.4.1.3 Risk evaluation

Risk evaluation is a structured process to differentiate levels of risks, to determine if a given level of risk is significant, and to identify and evaluate a range of options for managing risk. Risk evaluation asks two fundamental questions:

a) Is the risk significant?
b) What options are available?

B.4.1.4 Application

Risk assessment can be a valuable tool in applications such as the following:

a) making effective choices among risk-reduction measures;
b) supporting specific operating and maintenance practices for pipeline systems subject to integrity threats;
c) assigning priorities among inspection, monitoring, and maintenance activities; and
d) supporting decisions associated with modifications to pipeline systems, such as rehabilitation or changes in service.

B.4.2 Measures of risk

The applicable measures of risk should be established during the definition of the scope of the risk analysis and should be selected on the basis of the consideration of factors such as the following:

a) annual probability and scale of release incidents;
b) probability of casualty per release incident;
c) number of potential casualties per release incident;
d) potential number of customers or end-users affected per release incident;
e) potential extent of environmental damage per release incident; and
f) potential economic cost per release incident.

B.5 Risk assessment process

B.5.1 Components of the risk assessment process

The risk assessment process should comprise the following components:

a) risk analysis:
   i) definition of objectives;
   ii) system description;
   iii) hazard identification;
   iv) frequency analysis;
   v) consequence analysis; and
   vi) risk estimation; and
b) risk evaluation:
   i) risk significance; and
   ii) options evaluation.

B.5.2 Risk analysis

B.5.2.1 Definition of objectives

The objectives of the risk analysis should be defined and documented. The concern that initiated the assessment should first be identified and described. The adverse effects or concerns should be defined, and the appropriate measures of risk should be selected.

B.5.2.2 System description

A system description should be developed and should include

a) a general description of the pipeline system, including its purpose, capacity, and location;
b) the dimensions and material characteristics of the pipeline, the types of coating, and the location and function of any ancillary equipment;
c) an estimate of the condition of the pipeline, including its coatings, and any ancillary equipment;

d) the operating conditions of the pipeline system, including service fluids, operating pressure, and temperature range;
e) the physical surroundings along the pipeline route; and
f) the physical boundaries of the risk analysis.

Notes:

1) *To the extent that connected pipeline systems and other facilities affect the consequences of incidents, they should be included within the system description.*

2) *For analyses that are limited to specific sites of concern, the physical boundaries referred to in Item f) will be determined by the potential receptors at such sites.*

B.5.2.3 Hazard identification

B.5.2.3.1

Hazards that generate risk associated with the pipeline and that are within the defined scope of the risk assessment should be identified and described in sufficient detail to support the level of analysis to be conducted.

B.5.2.3.2

Methods available for hazard identification fall broadly into the following categories:

a) comparative methods, such as checklists, hazard indices, and reviews of historical failures;
b) structured methods, such as hazard and operability studies (HAZOP) and failure modes and effects analysis (FMEA); and
c) methods that provide a logical pathway to translate different release or initiating events into possible outcomes, such as event tree analysis and fault tree analysis.

Note: *Annex H provides a classification of the causes of pipeline failure incidents that can lead to hazards.*

B.5.2.4 Frequency analysis

B.5.2.4.1

The purpose of frequency analysis is to determine the likelihood of the occurrence of the identified hazardous events, including associated consequences. The frequency may be expressed qualitatively or quantitatively. Frequency may be expressed quantitatively on a collective basis (e.g., failures per year) or on a linear basis (e.g., failures per kilometre-year).

B.5.2.4.2

Approaches available for frequency analysis include

a) analysis of historical operational and incident data;
b) fault and event tree analysis;
c) mathematical modelling; and
d) judgment of experienced and qualified engineering and operating personnel, based on known conditions.

Notes:

1) *The approach adopted should be determined by the objectives of the assessment and by the availability of applicable data and models; where possible, historical data should be used as a check on the other methods.*

2) *Where historical data is used for frequency analysis or for validation of frequency analysis conducted by other methods, the suitability of the data and its compatibility with the characteristics of the system being analyzed should be considered.*

B.5.2.5 Consequence analysis

The purpose of consequence analyses is to estimate the severity of adverse effects on people, property, the environment, or combinations thereof. Consequence analyses predict the magnitude of these effects resulting from such events as releases of toxic or flammable fluids and disruption of pipeline throughput.

Notes:

1) *Knowledge of the release mechanism and the subsequent behaviour of the released material enables qualitative or quantitative estimates to be made of the effects of the release at any distance from the source for the duration of exposure.*

2) *Appropriate methods of consequence analysis vary widely in extent and degree of detail, depending on the type of hazard to be analyzed and the objectives of the assessment.*

3) *Consideration of the relative duration and consequences of indoor and outdoor exposure provides a more accurate estimate of adverse effects on people.*

B.5.2.6 Risk estimation

Risk estimation involves combining the results of frequency and consequence analysis to produce a measure of the risk. The appropriate method depends on the objectives of the risk assessment. Methods that can meet specific objectives for expressing risk include

a) risk matrix methods, in which frequency and consequences estimates are expressed separately and combinations are then presented in a two-dimensional matrix of discrete risk categories (see Figure B.2);

b) risk index methods, in which factors that influence frequency and consequences are assigned values and mathematically combined; and

c) probabilistic risk analysis methods, in which frequency and consequences are estimated quantitatively and mathematically combined.

Outputs from matrix or index methods provide a relative measure of risk and can be used to provide a qualitative or semi-quantitative analysis of risk. Probabilistic risk estimates provide absolute measures of risk by combining numerical estimates of frequencies, probabilities, and consequences.

Notes:

1) *Qualitative risk analysis methods are often employed as a screening tool to identify potentially high-risk scenarios that can warrant a more detailed quantitative analysis. Risk matrices have proven to be an effective tool because they provide a systematic approach that is easy to understand and apply.*

2) *In applying the results of quantitative risk analysis, the user should be aware of the implications resulting from the levels of subjectivity and accuracy implicit in the numerical estimates and from the level of detail used in the analysis.*

3) *In developing a comprehensive estimate of risk, it is important to consider the implications of multiple, and possibly cumulative, hazard scenarios and the combined impact of distinct consequences components (e.g., life safety and adverse environmental effects).*

B.5.3 Risk evaluation

B.5.3.1 General

Risk evaluation is the process of judging the significance of the absolute or relative values of the estimated risk determined by the risk analysis process. It also includes the identification and evaluation of options available for managing the risk.

B.5.3.2 Risk significance

B.5.3.2.1

Assessment of risk significance involves consideration of the importance of the estimated level of risk to those who can be affected by the outcome of the hazardous event. The significance of the estimated risk depends on the context within which the risk assessment is being undertaken.

B.5.3.2.2

In determining the significance of the estimated risk, a number of factors should be considered, including

a) the severity of the consequences associated with the hazardous event;
b) the potential frequency of occurrence of the hazardous event;
c) the benefits of the existence of the risk source to society as a whole and to those potentially affected by the hazardous event; and
d) the costs associated with any incremental reduction in the estimated risk level.

B.5.3.2.3

Guidance in assessing risk significance can be obtained by

a) comparing the estimated risk level to the levels of risk associated with other recognized activities and events;
b) reviewing the body of literature available on risk acceptance criteria and considering the precedents established both nationally and internationally in other industries; and
c) considering industry experience that effectively identifies hazardous events of concern (an example of this approach, based upon the concept of a risk matrix, is illustrated conceptually in Figure B.2).

B.5.3.2.4

Where it is determined that the estimated risk level is significant, the following response is required:

a) the undertaking of a more refined level of risk analysis in an effort to reduce the uncertainty or conservatism associated with key assumptions that might have led to an overestimate of the level of risk; or
b) consideration of the options available to reduce the estimated level of risk.

B.5.3.3 Options analysis

B.5.3.3.1

Options analysis is the process of identifying and analyzing, for the purposes of evaluation, the effectiveness of available risk reduction measures where it has been judged that the risk level is significant. Risk reduction measures include actions that have an effect on the frequency of occurrence or the consequences of hazardous events.

B.5.3.3.2

The results of an evaluation of the risk estimate associated with the base-case scenario and other scenarios identified through options analysis form the basis for the decision-making process that determines the course of action most appropriate for managing the risk associated with the hazardous events under consideration.

 © 2015 CSA Group

B.6 Documentation

B.6.1

The risk assessment process should be documented in a risk assessment report.

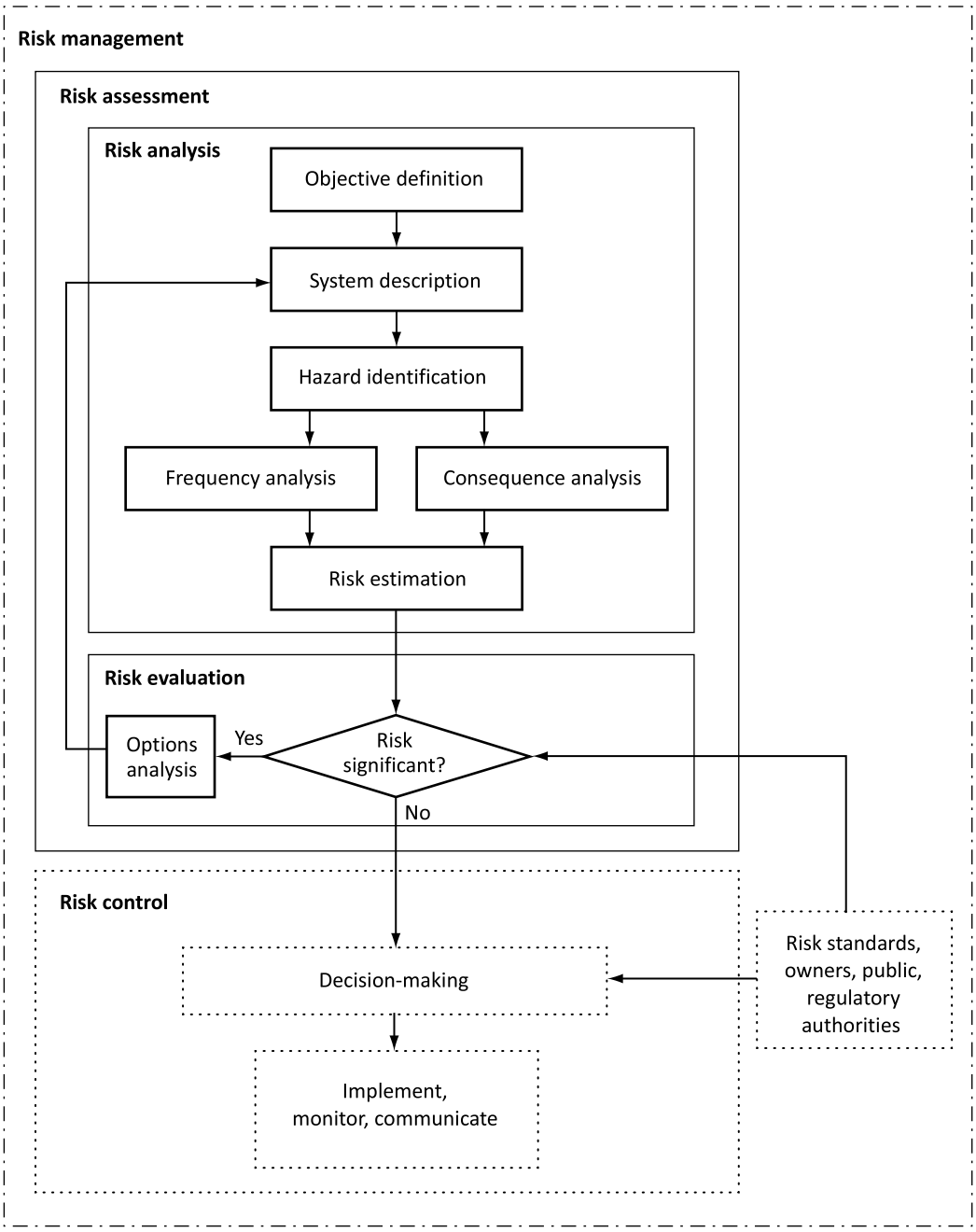
Note: *In such reports, risk estimates should be expressed in terms appropriate for the stated objectives and audience, the strengths and limitations of different risk measures used should be explained, and the uncertainties surrounding estimates of risk should be set out in straightforward language.*

B.6.2

The extent of the risk assessment report depends upon the objectives and scope of the assessment; however, the documentation should include the following, as applicable:

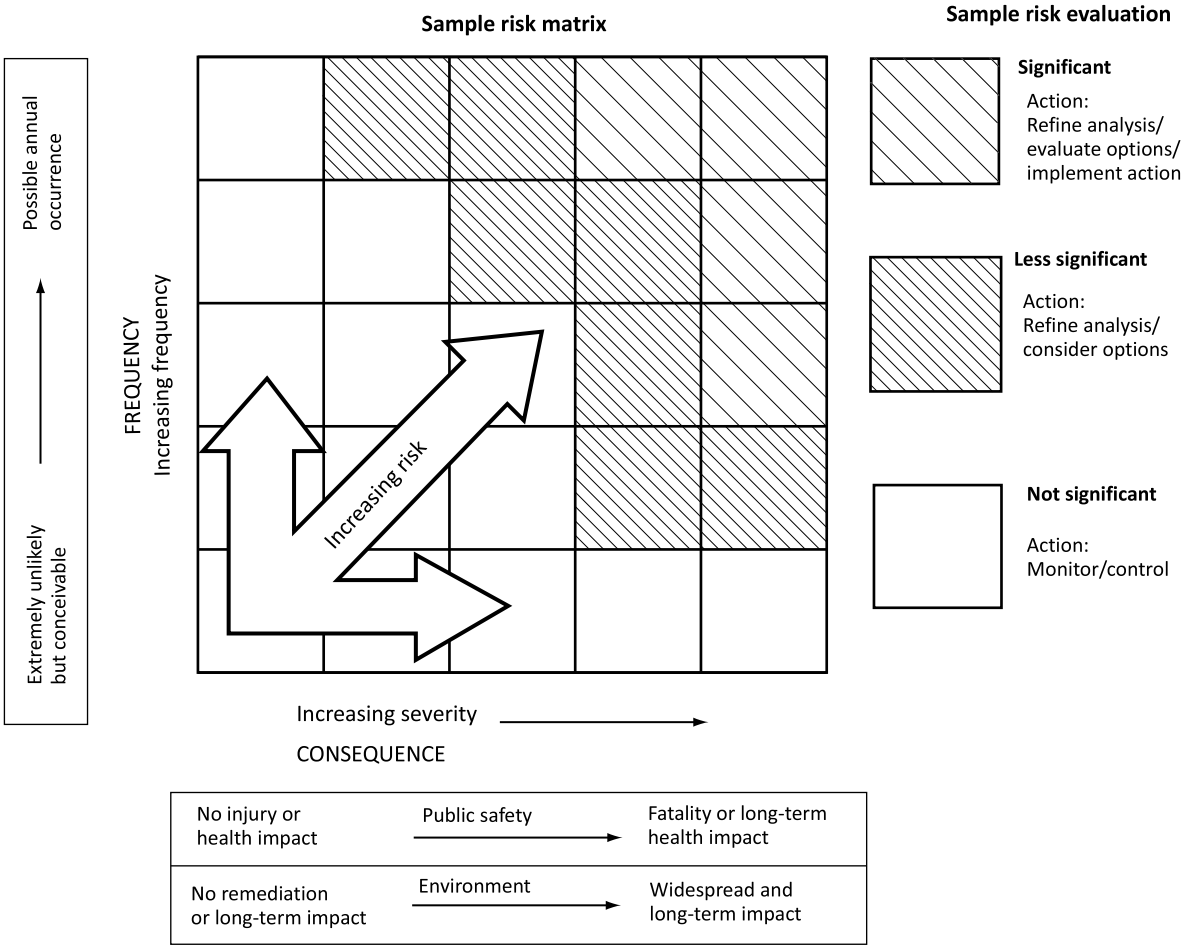
a) objectives and scope;
b) system description;
c) risk analysis methodology;
d) limitations and assumptions;
e) hazard identification results;
f) frequency analysis results, including assumptions;
g) consequence analysis results, including assumptions;
h) risk estimation results;
i) sensitivity and uncertainty analysis;
j) discussion of results (including a discussion of analysis problems);
k) conclusions and recommendations;
l) references, including all sources necessary to support any models or analytical techniques applied; and
m) the names and qualifications of personnel who participated in the analysis.

Figure B.1
The process of risk management
(See Clause B.2.2.1.)



© 2015 CSA Group

Figure B.2
Examples of risk matrix application to risk estimation and evaluation
(See Clauses B.5.2.6 and B.5.3.2.3.)



 © 2015 CSA Group

Annex C (informative)
Limit states design

Notes:

1) *This Annex is an informative (non-mandatory) part of this Standard, unless the pipeline is being designed as permitted by Clause 4.1.7. It has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so.*

2) *Standards and publications referred to in this Annex are listed in Clause C.9. See also Clause 2.*

There is a commentary available for this Annex.

C.1 Applicability

C.1.1 General

This Annex provides guidance for the design of oil and gas industry steel pipelines, excluding steam distribution pipelines, based upon the limit states design method. It is intended to introduce the concept of limit states design and to provide supplemental design criteria for loading conditions not specifically addressed by Clause 4. It does not cover material selection, construction, operation, or maintenance. (See also Clause 4.2.4.)

Note: *This Annex should be used only by designers who are thoroughly familiar with the theory and concepts presented herein. The limit states design method is shown in Figure C.1.*

C.1.2 Symbols

The symbols used throughout this Annex generally conform to ISO 3898. They differ somewhat from those used in other parts of this Standard. The symbols are defined in the clause in which they first appear.

C.2 Design principles

C.2.1 Objective

The objective is to design the pipeline to sustain, during its design life, the anticipated loads and deformations safely, without inhibiting normal operations.

C.2.2 Class location

The class location of a given section of pipeline shall be determined using the class location designations given in Clause 4.3.3 (see also Clause C.8.1).

C.2.3 Design life

The design life of a section of pipeline covers the entire period from the commencement of construction to the decommissioning of that section of the line.

C.3 Design methods and requirements

C.3.1 Specific definition

“Limit states design” means a reliability-based design method that uses factored loads (nominal or specified loads multiplied by a load factor) and factored resistances (calculated strength, based on nominal dimensions and specified material properties multiplied by a resistance factor).

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.3.2 Safety and serviceability requirements

C.3.2.1
The safety of a pipeline shall be verified for each applicable ultimate limit state by ensuring that the factored resistance equals or exceeds the effect of factored loads.

C.3.2.2
The serviceability of a pipeline shall be verified for each applicable serviceability limit state by ensuring that the effects of service loads do not restrict pipeline operations or affect durability.

C.3.2.3
Except as allowed by Clause C.3.3, for the limit states in Clause C.3.4, pipelines shall be designed, for all design life phases, to resist the categories of loads specified in Clause C.4, using the load factors specified in Clause C.4.8, the analysis methods specified in Clause C.5, and the factored resistances specified in Clauses C.6 and C.7.

C.3.2.4
For materials, elements, and systems not specifically addressed in this Annex, the factored resistance shall be determined in accordance with the levels of safety defined in this Annex.

C.3.3 Probabilistic design methods
A probabilistic design method in which the loads and the resistances are represented by their known or postulated distributions may be used, provided that an appropriate level of safety is adequately demonstrated (see also Clause C.8.2).

Note: *An acceptable method for onshore non-sour service natural gas transmission pipelines is given in Annex O.*

C.3.4 Limit states
Note: *See also Clause C.8.3.*

C.3.4.1 Categories of limit states
Limit states fall into the following categories:

a) ultimate limit states; and
b) serviceability limit states.

C.3.4.2 Ultimate limit states
Ultimate limit states are those pertaining to burst or collapse and include

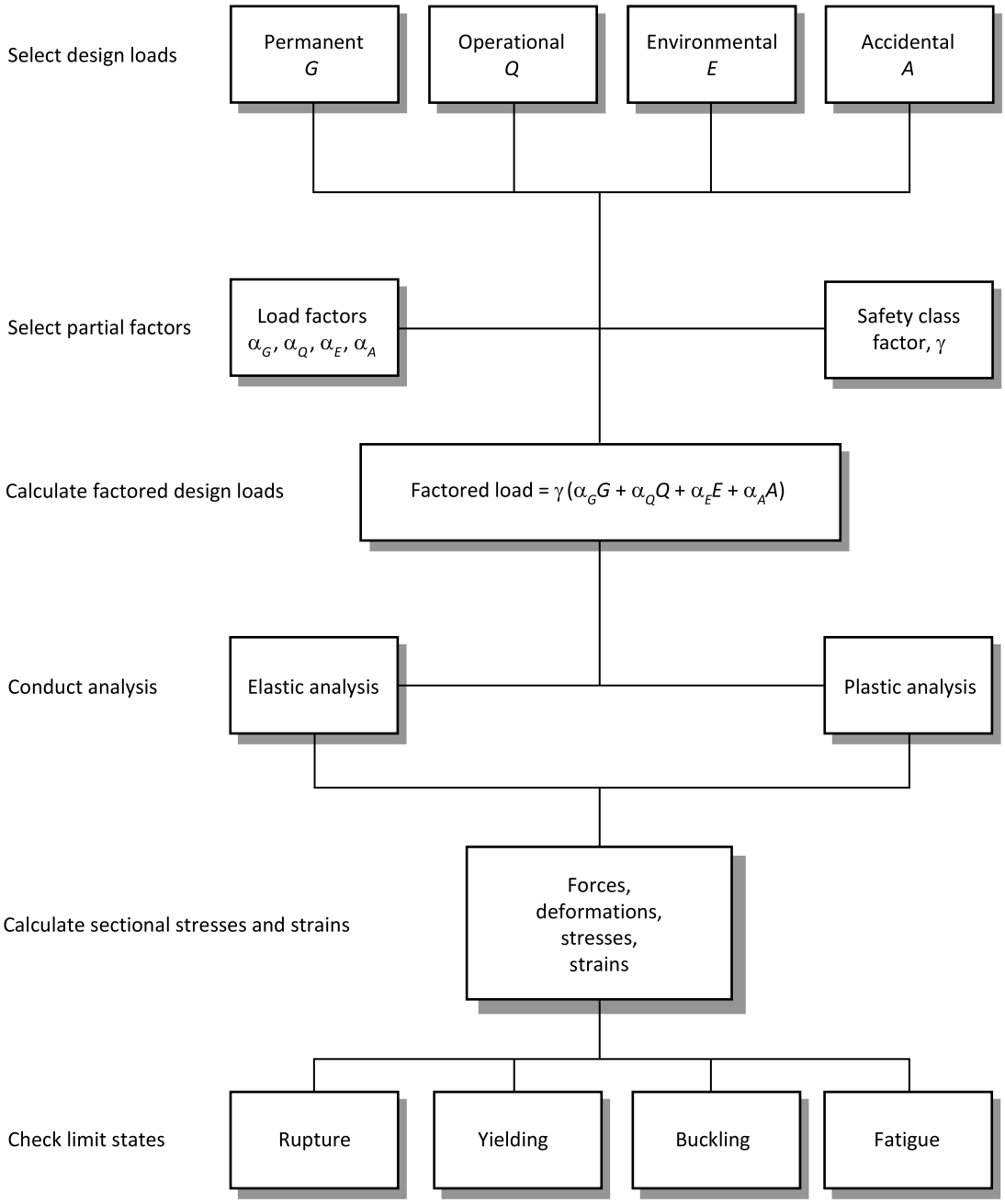
a) rupture;
b) yielding caused by primary loads;
c) buckling resulting in collapse or rupture (e.g., hydrostatic collapse, unstable local buckling, some upheaval buckling modes); and
d) fatigue.

C.3.4.3 Serviceability limit states
Serviceability limit states are those that restrict normal operations or affect durability and include

a) yielding caused by secondary loads; and
b) buckling not resulting in collapse (e.g., stable local buckling, some upheaval buckling modes).

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure C.1
Limit states design methodology
(See Clause C.1.1.)



C.4 Loads and load combinations

C.4.1 General

All static and dynamic components of the loadings and deformations that significantly affect the strength, fatigue life, stability, or serviceability of the pipeline system during construction, operation, and maintenance shall be taken into account.

© 2015 CSA Group

C.4.2 Load categories and types

C.4.2.1 Design loads

Pipelines shall be designed to resist the permanent loads specified in Clause C.4.4, the operational loads specified in Clause C.4.5, the environmental loads specified in Clause C.4.6, and the accidental loads specified in Clause C.4.7. Any significant load not listed here shall be placed into one of these four groups in accordance with the particular characteristics of that load.

C.4.2.2 Load types

C.4.2.2.1

Loads shall be classified as either primary or secondary (see also Clause C.8.4).

C.4.2.2.2

Primary loads are independent of structural deformations in the pipeline and induce internal forces that are necessary to satisfy the laws of static equilibrium. The internal forces act as long as the loads are applied and do not diminish when yielding occurs. Examples of primary loads are internal pressure, self-weight of the pipe and its contents, soil overburden, external hydrostatic pressure, and buoyancy.

C.4.2.2.3

Secondary loads are induced by structural deformations (or the prevention thereof) in the pipeline and are necessary to satisfy the laws of compatibility of strains and deformations. The internal forces induced by secondary loads do diminish when yielding occurs. Examples of secondary loads are differential temperature loads in restrained pipe sections and bending caused by ground movements. Secondary loads do not have to be taken into account where they do not affect the capacity of the member to resist other loads.

C.4.3 Environmental conditions

C.4.3.1

Any extrapolation and prediction methods used to assess environmental factors affecting pipeline loadings shall be documented and accompanied by relevant information to demonstrate their validity and to allow comparison with other recognized techniques of analysis.

C.4.3.2

Environmental data, as well as applicable physical, statistical, and mathematical models, shall be used to develop an appropriate description of both the normal operating environmental conditions and extreme environmental conditions that affect the pipeline during its design life.

Note: *Depending on the pipeline under consideration and the extent of existing databases, site-specific measurements or numerical modelling of geological, meteorological, oceanographic, or ice-related information might be necessary.*

C.4.4 Permanent loads

C.4.4.1 Specific definition

Permanent loads, *G*, are loads that remain constant for long periods of time.

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.4.4.2 Categories of permanent loads

Permanent loads include the following:

a) the self-weight of the pipeline;
b) the weight of permanent equipment;
c) the weight of pipe coatings;
d) the permanent portion of overburden loads;
e) external hydrostatic pressure; and
f) prestressing (cold-springing induced forces).

C.4.4.3 Determination of permanent loads

Permanent loads shall be determined from the material properties and the geometry described by the relevant design documentation. The weight of the pipeline shall include adequate allowance for joints, connections, reinforcement, secondary structures, and attachments.

C.4.5 Operational loads

C.4.5.1 Specific definition

Operational loads, *Q*, are loads associated with operations and normal activities in the design phase under consideration (construction or operation). They generally vary over time and can include static and dynamic components.

C.4.5.2 Categories of operational loads

Operational loads include the following:

a) internal pressure;
b) the weight of contained fluids;
c) thermal forces due to construction-operation temperature differential;
d) the weight of temporary equipment; and
e) the variable portion of overburden loads.

C.4.5.3 Determination of operational loads

Operational loads shall be determined from the relevant design documentation, with due consideration of the actual and prescribed operational requirements, taking seasonal variation and restricted operations due to environmental events into account.

C.4.6 Environmental loads

C.4.6.1 Specific definition

Environmental loads, *E*, are loads caused by environmental processes. They generally vary over time and can include static and dynamic components.

C.4.6.2 Categories of environmental processes

Environmental processes to be considered include the following:

a) variations in ambient temperature;
b) ground movements (e.g., differential settlement or heave, slope failure, fault movement);
c) wind;
d) waves, tide, and currents;
e) earthquakes and related earthquake effects;
f) snow and ice accumulation;

 © 2015 CSA Group

g) marine growth; and
h) icebergs and sea ice.

C.4.6.3 Determination of geotechnical loads

Soil loads shall be calculated in accordance with established methods. Where it is not possible to use the limit states design method to assess the potential for ground movements that would affect the pipeline system, the overall factor of safety method may be used; however, in determining the structural response of the pipeline, soil forces exerted on the pipeline shall be factored using load factors (see Table C.1 and Clause C.8.7).

Table C.1
Load factors
(See Clauses C.4.6.3, C.4.8.1, C.6.3.2.1, C.7.1, and C.8.9.1.)

Load combination ULS = ultimate limit states SLS = serviceability limit states	Load factor, α				
		α_Q			
	α_G*	Internal pressure	Other	α_E	α_A
ULS 1: Max. operational	1.25	1.13	1.25	0.70	0
ULS 2: Max. environmental	1.05	1.05	1.05	1.35	0
ULS 3: Accidental	1.00	1.00	1.00	0	1.00
ULS 4: Fatigue	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	0
SLS	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	0

* *Where G reduces the combined load effects, the load factor shall be taken as 0.90.*

Note: *The factors given in this Table require verification, and may be modified, through a process of code calibration; until then, they should be used for comparative design purposes only (see also Clause C.8.9).*

C.4.6.4 Determination of wind loads

Wind loads and local pressures shall be calculated in accordance with established methods. The effects of the maximum dynamic and static wind forces shall be considered (e.g., fatigue resulting from cyclic loads due to vortex shedding).

Notes:

1) *Wind loads are normally only of concern for aerial crossings and suspended spans of aboveground pipelines. In such cases, consideration should be given to the possibility of fatigue resulting from cyclic loads due to vortex shedding.*

2) *For information concerning the calculation of wind loads, see Annex C of CAN/CSA-S471 or Chapter 4 of Commentary B in the* National Building Code of Canada*.*

C.4.6.5 Determination of wave and current loads

Wave and current loads shall be determined using established methods. The appropriate wave parameters shall be determined to give maximum wave forces, fatigue effects, and other effects such as vortex shedding.

Note: *For information concerning the calculation of wave and current loads, see Annex D of CAN/CSA-S471 or DNV-OS-F101.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.4.6.6 Determination of ice loads

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The determination of loads from moving ice shall be as specified in Clause 11.6.5.

C.4.6.7 Determination of seismic effects

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For aboveground pipelines with distributed supports, the determination of earthquake loads and pipeline displacements from ground motion data shall be based on the response spectrum method, the time history method, or other demonstrated equivalent methods.

For buried pipelines, the determination of seismic effects shall be based on the PRCI *Guidelines for the Seismic Design and Assessment of Natural Gas and Liquid Hydrocarbon Pipelines* or other demonstrated equivalent methods.

Note: *Clause C.8.10 provides additional guidance.*

C.4.7 Accidental loads

C.4.7.1 Specific definition

Accidental loads, *A*, are loads based upon accidental events. Due consideration shall be given to the probability of occurrence and the consequences.

C.4.7.2 Categories of accidental loads

Accidental loads shall include loads caused by accidental events such as the following:

a) outside force during construction and operation;
b) fire and explosion; and
c) loss of pressure control.

C.4.7.3 Determination of accidental loads

An accidental load shall be determined by considering both the probability of occurrence of the event and the probability of exceedance of the load, given that the event has occurred. Specified accidental loads shall have an annual probability of exceedance not greater than 10^{-4} per kilometre. Impulse or dynamic loads shall be described in such a way that analysis for dynamic response, energy absorption, and nonlinear deformation can be considered. An accidental event with an annual probability of occurrence of less than 10^{-4} per kilometre need not be considered (see also Clause C.8.8).

C.4.8 Load factors and load combinations

C.4.8.1

Factored loads shall be determined as follows, for each relevant load combination set forth in Table C.1:

$$\text{Factored Load} = \gamma\left(\alpha_G G + \alpha_Q Q + \alpha_E E + \alpha_A A\right) \qquad \textbf{Equation C-1}$$

where

γ = class factor (see Table C.2)

α_G, α_Q, α_E, α_A = load factors for *G*, *Q*, *E*, and *A* (see Table C.1)

G = permanent loads

Q = operational loads

 © 2015 CSA Group

E = environmental loads

A = accidental loads

C.4.8.2

For serviceability limit states, the class factor shall be taken as 1.0.

C.4.8.3

For each limit state and load combination being considered, the factored loads shall be applied in order to determine the most severe load effects.

C.4.8.4

For a particular section of pipeline, the choice of maximum or minimum load to be used in the load combinations shall be the one that yields the most severe combined load effect.

Table C.2
Class factors for ultimate limit states
(See Clauses C.4.8.1 and C.6.3.2.1.)

Class location	Class factor, γ			
	Gas (sour service)	Gas (non-sour service)	HVP and CO_2	LVP
1	1.1	1.0	1.0	1.0
2	1.3	1.1	1.2	1.0
3	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.0
4	2.0	1.8	1.2	1.0

Notes:

1) *Use of these class factors assumes that the designer has taken account of the effects of all loads (e.g., surface traffic loads) that result from the proximity of the pipeline to roads, railways, stations, bridges, and fabricated assemblies. (See notes to Table 4.2.)*

2) *The factors given in this Table require verification and may be modified, through a process of code calibration; until then, they should be used for comparative design purposes only.*

C.5 Structural analysis

C.5.1 General

C.5.1.1

The distribution of forces, displacements, moments, rotations, stresses, and strains in the pipeline system due to factored loads shall be determined from accepted principles of statics, dynamics, and kinematics, and the use of a model based upon specified material properties and established material behaviour.

C.5.1.2

Sectional forces throughout the pipeline shall be determined from either an elastic or a plastic analysis.

Note: *For many design situations, the only primary load acting is that due to internal pressure; all other loads are secondary. For such situations, an elastic design method can be too conservative because it does not recognize the ability of the pipe to plastically deform and still maintain pressure integrity. A plastic design approach does recognize such behaviour and can therefore be used to advantage. There are situations, however, where complex*

 © 2015 CSA Group

loading situations can make a detailed plastic analysis extremely difficult and an elastic design approach is the only practical approach.

C.5.1.3

In the analysis, due account shall be taken of the effects of both longitudinal and lateral boundary restraint conditions on the structural behaviour of the pipeline system.

Notes:

1) *There is a fundamental difference in loading conditions and structural behaviour for portions of pipelines that are restrained against longitudinal and lateral deformations and those that are unrestrained.*

2) *Generally, long straight lengths of buried pipe and aboveground pipe on closely spaced rigid supports are classified as restrained. In many situations, the pipe has partial restraint or is restrained at discrete points and unrestrained in between; each situation should be assessed on its own. Buried pipelines adjacent to bends or unanchored end caps could be regarded as restrained or unrestrained, depending on specific circumstances.*

3) *The effects of restraints, such as support friction, branch connections, and lateral interferences, should be considered.*

C.5.1.4

The flexibility of components shall be considered in the analysis. In the absence of better data, the flexibility factors given in Table 4.8 shall be used.

C.5.2 Elastic analysis

The forces, moments, stresses, and strains in a pipeline section may be determined by an elastic analysis.

C.5.3 Plastic analysis

C.5.3.1

The forces, moments, stresses, and strains in a pipeline section may be determined by a plastic analysis where nonlinear inelastic methods are used, provided that the pipeline exhibits sufficient toughness and ductility to ensure that it can attain the required plastically deformed state without premature failure.

Note: *Plastic analysis involves consideration of the actual pipe material stress-strain relationship and stress redistribution and can include strain hardening and large deformation effects.*

C.5.3.2

Where inelastic response is invoked to resist factored loads, it is required that joints and connections between pipe members have factored resistances at least equal to that of the members meeting at the joint or connection.

C.5.4 Second-order effects

Where the effects of loads acting on the structure in its displaced configuration are significant, they shall be included in the analysis.

Note: *For buried pipelines, there is an axial component of force resisting longitudinal movement caused by friction forces at the pipe-soil interface. Such frictional forces effectively anchor the pipeline and can result in the induction of significant tensile forces as the displaced pipeline tries to elongate. This is an important second-order effect in a buried pipe subjected to lateral soil loads. It cannot be predicted by an analysis program that lacks second-order capabilities.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.5.5 Dynamic analysis

C.5.5.1

The dynamic effects of forces due to operational, environmental, and accidental loads shall be taken into consideration.

Note: *Dynamic effects can be important for loads due to wind, waves, ice, and earthquakes.*

C.5.5.2

Dynamic analysis shall properly account for the mechanical characteristics of the total dynamic system [i.e., the pipeline, its surrounding medium (e.g., soil, water), and any feature interacting with it (e.g., iceberg)].

C.5.5.3

Local vibration due to cyclic loading (e.g., vortex shedding and mechanical vibration) shall be considered where appropriate.

C.5.6 Pipe-soil interaction analysis

C.5.6.1

The methods of analysis and soil behavioural parameters selected for design shall be appropriate for the intended pipeline system and the proposed route and location of facilities and shall be compatible with all potential failure modes and mechanisms. Methods of calculating the magnitude of deformation may be based upon numerical modelling, empirical relationships, physical models, or combinations thereof.

Note: *The interaction of pipeline and soil may be characterized using a soil-spring model (see also Clause C.8.10).*

C.5.6.2

Geotechnical parameters for stability, deformational, and thermal analysis shall be selected in accordance with good engineering practice.

C.5.7 Material properties for design

C.5.7.1 Stress-strain relationship for steel pipe

C.5.7.1.1

The stress-strain relationship for steel line pipe shall be based upon specified material properties that shall be established through laboratory testing methods based on accepted standards and shall take into consideration the grade of steel and method of manufacture.

Note: *The manufacture process influences material behaviour that might include Bauschinger effect, discontinuous yielding and anisotropic behaviour that must be accounted for in design. (See also Clause C.8.11.)*

C.5.7.1.2

The stress-strain relationship for steel pipe may be assumed to be bilinear, multilinear, or any other characteristic shape that results in prediction of strength in substantial agreement with the results of laboratory tests.

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.5.7.1.3

For stress based design, the requirements of Clause C.5.7.1.2 may be satisfied with a bilinear, elastic-plastic stress-strain relationship, as shown in Figure C.2 a), or by a Ramberg-Osgood material stress-strain model, as shown in Figure C.2 b), where the variables are defined as follows:

E_s = modulus of elasticity of steel pipe

F_y = effective specified minimum yield strength

= $k_t \times SMYS$

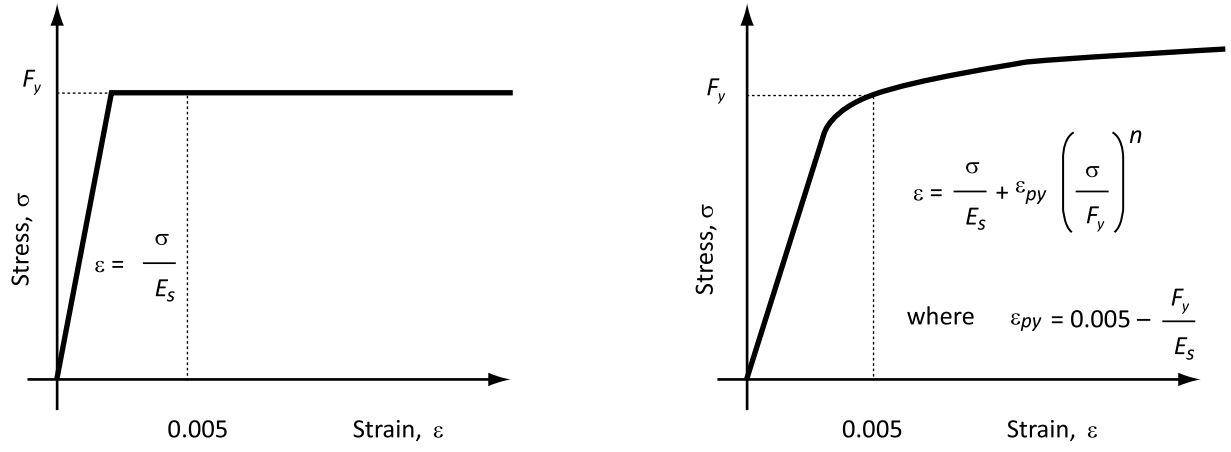
k_t = temperature derating factor for F_y (see Clause C.5.7.2)

n = strain hardening parameter (see Clause C.5.7.1.6)

C.5.7.1.4

For secondary loads (Clause C 4.2.2.2.3), the stress-strain relationship shall be established through laboratory tests for the longitudinal and circumferential, tensile and compressive, stress-strain behaviour, as appropriate. The need for additional laboratory tests and specific test requirements shall take into consideration the steel grade, method of manufacture and coating procedures. The coupon laboratory tests shall be used to establish the range of material properties.

Figure C.2
Stress-strain relationships for steel pipe
(See Clause C.5.7.1.3.)



(a) Elastic-plastic **(b) Ramberg-Osgood**

C.5.7.1.5

For carbon and high-strength low-alloy steels at temperatures up to 230 °C, the following values may be used:

E_s = modulus of elasticity of steel pipe

= 207 000 MPa

α = linear coefficient of thermal expansion

= 12×10^{-6} per °C

v = Poisson's ratio

 © 2015 CSA Group

= 0.3 for the elastic range and 0.5 for the plastic range

C.5.7.2 Temperature effects

For steel pipe operating at temperatures above 120 °C, the following temperature derating factor shall be used in determining the effective specified minimum yield strength, *Fy* :

$$k_t = 1.14 - \frac{T}{850}$$ **Equation C-2**

where

k_t = specified minimum yield strength temperature derating factor

T = temperature, °C

For temperatures below 120 °C, k_t shall be taken as equal to 1.0.

C.6 Pipe strength and behaviour

C.6.1 General

C.6.1.1

Clause C.6 provides requirements for the design of steel pipes subjected to differential pressure, bending, axial load, torsion, and combinations thereof, for both restrained and unrestrained piping systems.

C.6.1.2

The factored stresses shall be calculated from factored loads as specified in Clause C.5. Corrosion allowance shall not be included in wall thickness for determining membrane stresses.

C.6.2 Resistance factors

Factored resistances shall be determined using resistance factors (see Table C.3).

Table C.3
Resistance factors
(See Clauses C.6.2, C.6.3.1.1, C.6.3.2.1, C.6.3.2.2, and C.6.3.3.3.)

Resistance type	Resistance factor, ϕ
Yield strength, ϕ_y	0.9
Stability, ϕ_c	0.7
Tensile strain, ϕ_{et}	0.7
Compressive strain, ϕ_{ec}	0.8

Note: *The factors given in this Table require verification, and may be modified, through a process of code calibration; until then, they should be used for comparative design purposes only.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.6.3 Limit states design

C.6.3.1 Rupture

C.6.3.1.1

To prevent membrane rupture, longitudinal tensile strains due to primary loads, secondary loads, and combined primary and secondary loads shall be limited in accordance with the following minimum strain requirement:

$$\phi_{\varepsilon t}\varepsilon_t^{crit} \geq \varepsilon_{tf} \qquad \textbf{Equation C-3}$$

where

$\phi_{\varepsilon t}$ = resistance factor for tensile strain (see also Table C.3)

ε_t^{crit} = ultimate tensile strain capacity of the pipe wall or weldment

ε_{tf} = factored tensile strain in the longitudinal or hoop direction

C.6.3.1.2

The ultimate tensile strain capacity of the pipe wall or weldment, ε_t^{crit}, shall be determined by sound and proven methods that have been validated with physical tests.

The methods shall take into account flaws, metallurgical damage, and mechanical property changes in the welds and HAZ.

C.6.3.1.3

The methods shall not be used outside of the applicable range of parameters.

C.6.3.1.4

The material property parameters used shall correspond to the state of material at the appropriate time period being considered, with due consideration given to the effects of temperature, strain rate, prior strain history, and strain aging (including that resulting from the pipe coating process), where applicable.

C.6.3.1.5

Weld strength shall be matched or over matched. The effects of girth weld misalignment shall be considered.

C.6.3.1.6

Full stress-strain relations of actual materials shall be obtained using established test methods. Nominal tensile properties are not suitable for use unless proven otherwise. Where a strength difference between transverse and longitudinal directions is possible, the full-thickness longitudinal tensile properties should be used.

C.6.3.1.7

The effects of internal/external pressure on strain demand and strain capacity shall be considered.

Note: *Tests have shown that internal pressure can reduce tensile strain capacity by as much as a factor of two.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.6.3.2 Yielding

C.6.3.2.1

To ensure pressure integrity, tensile hoop stress due to internal pressure shall be limited in accordance with the following minimum strength requirement:

$$\phi_y F_y \geq \sigma_{hf}$$ **Equation C-4**

where

ϕ_y = resistance factor for yield strength (see also Table C.3)

F_y = effective specified minimum yield strength (see also Clause C.5.7), MPa

σ_{hf} = factored hoop stress due to pressure differential, MPa

$$= \frac{\gamma(\alpha_Q p_i - \alpha_G p_e)D}{2t}$$

where

γ = class factor (see Table C.2)

α_Q = load factor for Q (see Table C.1)

p_i = maximum internal design pressure, MPa

α_G = load factor for G (see Table C.1)

p_e = minimum external hydrostatic pressure, MPa

D = outside pipe diameter, mm

t = pipe wall thickness, mm

C.6.3.2.2

For pipeline sections where longitudinal stresses are induced by primary loads (e.g., suspended spans; see also Clause C.4.2.2.2), the stresses at all points in the pipe cross-section shall be limited by the following minimum strength requirement:

$$\phi_y F_y \geq \sigma_{ef}$$ **Equation C-5**

where

ϕ_y = resistance factor for yield strength (see also Table C.3)

F_y = effective specified minimum yield strength (see also Clause C.5.7), MPa

σ_{ef} = maximum factored combined effective stress (von Mises), MPa

$$= \sqrt{\sigma_{hf}^2 + \sigma_{Lf}^2 - \sigma_{hf}\sigma_{Lf} + 3\tau_f^2}$$

where

σ_{hf} = factored hoop stress (tension positive), MPa

σ_{Lf} = factored longitudinal stress (tension positive), MPa

τ_f = factored tangential shear stress, MPa

C.6.3.2.3

For cases of combined bending, axial force, and internal pressure (no torsion), the formula in Clause C.6.3.2.2 is normally satisfied for the entire cross-section if the state of stress at the extreme bending fibre falls on, or inside of, the ellipse shown in Figure C.3. In such cases, the longitudinal stress may be calculated as follows:

 © 2015 CSA Group

$$\sigma_{Lf} = \frac{M_f \times 10^3}{S} + \frac{P_f}{A}$$ **Equation C-6**

where

M_f = factored bending moment, Nm

S = section modulus, mm^3

P_f = factored axial force, N

A = cross-sectional area, mm^2

Notes:

1) *For short shear spans, the state of stress elsewhere on the pipe cross-section should also be checked because tangential shear stresses can be significant.*

2) *For axially restrained pipes, the calculated factored axial force should include the tensile force resulting from the Poisson effect of internal pressure.*

3) *If the pipe cross-section is able to meet the compressive and tensile strain limits specified in Clauses C.6.3.1 and C.6.3.3, the plastic section modulus, Z, may be used in place of the section modulus, S.*

4) *It is more conservative to use the Tresca yield criteria than the von Mises criteria (see Figure C.3). (See also Clause C.8.13.)*

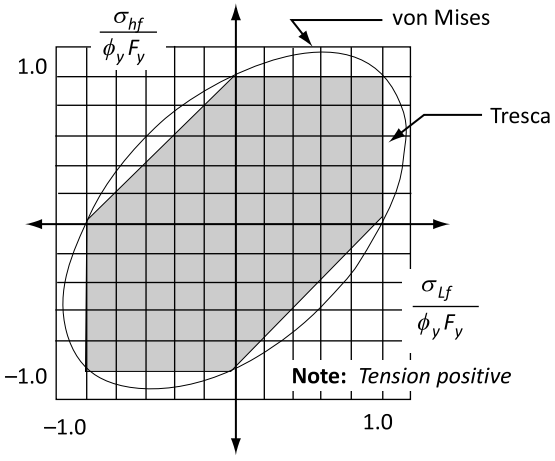
C.6.3.2.4

For suspended spans in axially restrained piping, the axial force developed due to the sag shall be taken into account. If this effect does not violate the strain limit criteria given in Clause C.6.3.1, the value of σ_{Lf} in Equation C-6 may be determined by assuming the span acts as a cable.

C.6.3.2.5

Pipe sections subjected to repeated inelastic deformation shall be designed with due consideration given to incremental collapse and plastic fatigue. It shall be shown that the pipe section will "shake down" to an elastic state so that subsequent load cycles do not cause excessive plastic deformations or fracture due to repeated yielding.

Figure C.3
Yield criteria
(See Clauses C.6.3.2.3 and C.8.13.)



 © 2015 CSA Group

C.6.3.3 Buckling

C.6.3.3.1 General

Pipe sections that are subjected to significant compressive stresses due to primary loads, secondary loads, or both shall be designed to prevent undesirable global or local buckling (see also Clause C.8.14).

C.6.3.3.2 Collapse due to external pressure

Pipelines subjected to external hydrostatic pressure shall be designed to prevent local collapse buckling and propagation collapse buckling, taking into account the effects of ovality, D/t ratio, residual stresses, hoop compression material properties, and coincident bending strains. Collapse resistance shall be determined in accordance with an established method, using the resistance factors given in this Annex.

C.6.3.3.3 Compressive strain limit for axial force, bending, and internal pressure

To prevent local buckling, longitudinal compressive strains due to primary loads or secondary loads, or both, shall be limited in accordance with the following minimum strength requirement, except as allowed by Clause 6.3.3.4:

$$\varphi_{ec}\varepsilon_c^{crit} \geq \varepsilon_{cf} \qquad \textbf{Equation C-7}$$

where

φ_{ec} = resistance factor for compressive strain (see also Table C.3)

ε_c^{crit} = ultimate compressive strain capacity of the pipe wall

ε_{cf} = factored compressive strain in the longitudinal or hoop direction

Notes:

1) *The ultimate compressive strain capacity of the pipe wall, ε_c^{crit}, should be determined by valid analysis methods or physical tests, or both, taking into account internal and external pressure, the effect of line depressurization, initial imperfections, residual stresses, and the shape of the material stress-strain curve.*

2) *For situations where primary loads dominate behaviour (see also Clause C.4.2.2.2), the ultimate longitudinal compressive strain is the strain that is coincident with the attainment of peak load capacity of the member. In the absence of more detailed information, the compressive strain limit, ε_c^{crit}, should be taken as*

$$\varepsilon_c^{crit} = 0.5\frac{t}{D} - 0.0025 + 3000\left(\frac{(p_i - p_e)D}{2tE_s}\right)^2 \text{ for } \frac{(p_i - p_e)D}{2tF_y} < 0.4 \qquad \textbf{Equation C-8}$$

$$\varepsilon_c^{crit} = 0.5\frac{t}{D} - 0.0025 + 3000\left(\frac{0.4F_y}{E_s}\right)^2 \text{ for } \frac{(p_i - p_e)D}{2tF_y} \geq 0.4 \qquad \textbf{Equation C-9}$$

where

ε_c^{crit} = ultimate compressive strain capacity of the pipe wall

t = pipe wall thickness, mm

D = pipe outside diameter, mm

p_i = maximum internal design pressure, MPa

p_e = minimum external hydrostatic pressure, MPa

E_s = 207 000 MPa

F_y = effective specified minimum yield strength, MPa (see also Clause C.5.7)

3) *For situations where secondary loads (combined with internal pressure) dominate behaviour (see Clause C.4.2.2.3), the longitudinal compressive strain limit requirement need not apply, provided that the effects of local wrinkle formation, wrinkle zone softening, and section collapse are accounted for in the analysis. In this*

 © 2015 CSA Group

case, Clause C.6.3.1 limits the tensile strains (in the longitudinal and hoop directions) in the vicinity of the local wrinkle or collapse zone.

C.6.3.3.4 Compressive stress limit for axial force bending and external pressure

Where significant principal membrane stresses are compressive, the stress at all points in the pipe section being designed shall be limited by the following minimum strength requirement:

$$\phi_c F_{cr} \geq \sigma_{ef}$$ **Equation C-10**

where

ϕ_c = resistance factor for compressive stability

F_{cr} = critical buckling stress

σ_{ef} = maximum factored combined effective stress

The critical buckling stress, F_{cr}, is given by

$$F_{cr} = \frac{F_y}{\sqrt{1+\lambda^4}}$$ **Equation C-11**

where

F_y = effective specified minimum yield strength (see also Clause C.5.7)

$\lambda = \left(\frac{F_y}{\sigma_{ef}} \left[\frac{f_a}{F_{ea}} + \frac{f_b}{F_{eb}} + \frac{f_\theta}{F_{e\theta}} + \frac{\tau_{z\theta}}{F_{ev}} \right] \right)^{1/2}$ = effective slenderness factor for shell buckling

where

$f_a = n|\sigma_a|$ = longitudinal stress

$f_b = n|\sigma_b|$ = bending stress

$f_\theta = n|\sigma_\theta|$ = circumferential stress

$\tau_{z\theta}$ = shear/torsion stress

where

n = 0 where σ_a, σ_b, or σ_θ is positive (tensile)

= 1 where σ_a, σ_b, or σ_θ is negative (compressive)

$F_{ei} = k_i \frac{\pi^2 E}{12(1-\nu^2)} \left(\frac{t}{L} \right)^2 (i = a, b, \theta, v)$

 © 2015 CSA Group

where

k_i = buckling coefficient depending on loading conditions, geometric proportions, boundary conditions, and imperfections; in the absence of more detailed information, the buckling coefficient may be determined using the following:

axial compression	$k_a = \sqrt{1 + (K_a\zeta)^2}$	where $K_a = \frac{0.36}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{D}{300t}}}$
bending	$k_b = \sqrt{1 + (K_b\zeta)^2}$	where $K_b = \frac{0.36}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{D}{300t}}}$
shear/torsion	$k_v = 5.34\sqrt{1 + (0.009\zeta)^{3/2}}$	for $\frac{L}{D} \le 0.963\frac{D}{\sqrt{t}}$
or	$F_{ev} = 0.636E\left(\frac{t}{d}\right)^{3/2}$	for $\frac{L}{D} \le 0.963\frac{D}{\sqrt{t}}$
external pressure	$k_\theta = 4\sqrt{1 + 0.025\zeta}$	for $\frac{L}{D} \le 0.563\frac{D}{\sqrt{t}}$
or	$F_{eq} = E\left(\frac{t}{d}\right)^2$	for $\frac{L}{D} \le 0.563\frac{D}{\sqrt{t}}$

where

$\zeta = \frac{2L^2}{Dt}\sqrt{1 - v^2}$

E = modulus of elasticity of steel pipe, MPa

v = Poisson's ratio

t = pipe wall thickness, mm

L = distance between points of support, mm

C.6.3.3.5 Ovalization limit due to bending

In order to prevent premature sectional collapse, the flattening due to bending shall be limited as follows:

$$\Delta_\theta \le \Delta_\theta^{crit}$$ **Equation C-12**

where

Δ_θ = ovalization deformation

$= 2\left(\frac{D_{max} - D_{min}}{D_{max} + D_{min}}\right)$

where

D_{max} = maximum pipe outside diameter, mm

D_{min} = minimum pipe outside diameter, mm

Δ_θ^{crit} = critical ovalization deformation

Notes:

1) *In order to prevent sectional collapse, the critical ovalization deformation limit of the pipe wall, Δ_θ^{crit}, should be determined by valid analysis methods or physical tests, or both, taking into account internal and external pressure, initial imperfections, residual stresses, and the shape of the material stress-strain curve. In the absence of more detailed information, such a limit should be taken as $\Delta_\theta^{crit} = 0.03$.*

2) *Where it can be shown that premature sectional collapse cannot occur as a result of excessive deformation, the critical deformation, Δ_θ^{crit}, may be increased to such a value that unhindered passage of internal inspection devices is still ensured. In the absence of more detailed information, such a limit should be taken as $\Delta_\theta^{crit} = 0.06$.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.6.3.3.6 Global buckling

Pipelines subjected to axial compression shall be designed to prevent global buckling in those cases where such buckling would be detrimental to the pipeline (e.g., upheaval buckling exposing a buried line). Buckling resistance shall be determined in accordance with an established method, using the resistance factors given in this Annex.

C.6.3.4 Fatigue

C.6.3.4.1

Piping systems subjected to fatigue loading shall be designed for adequate fatigue life using recognized methods. All stress fluctuations, during the entire life of the pipeline, of a magnitude and number large enough to have a significant effect on the pipeline shall be considered.

C.6.3.4.2

Typical causes of stress fluctuations in a pipeline include wind effects, vortex shedding, wave and current action, fluctuations in operating pressure and temperature, mechanical vibration, and other variable loading effects.

C.6.3.4.3

Every location of weld or other stress concentration that is a potential source of a fatigue crack shall be included in the fatigue assessment. The effects of corrosion and tensile strain on fatigue life shall also be considered.

C.6.3.4.4

Characteristic resistances are normally given by *S*-*N* curves (i.e., stress range versus number of cycles to failure). The *S*-*N* curve used shall be applicable for the particular material, construction detail, state of stress and strain, and surrounding environment being considered.

C.6.3.4.5

Where stress fluctuations occur with varying amplitude in random order, the linear damage hypothesis (Miner's rule) may be used to determine the cumulative damage for the life of the structure. In such cases, the fatigue criterion is based upon the limit damage ratio as follows:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{s} \frac{n_i}{N_i} \leq \eta$$ **Equation C-13**

where

s = number of stress ranges

n_i = number of stress cycles in stress range i

N_i = number of cycles to failure at constant stress range

η = limit damage ratio, depending on the class location and access for inspection and repair (see Table C.4)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table C.4
Limit damage ratio
(See Clause C.6.3.4.5.)

	Limit damage ratio (η)	
Class location	No access for inspection and repair	Access for inspection and repair
1	0.3	1.0
2	0.2	0.7
3	0.2	0.5
4	0.1	0.3

C.6.4 Design by testing

Full-scale tests conducted in accordance with valid experimental methods may be used to determine structural response and pipe resistance. In such cases, resistance factors shall be determined taking into account statistical uncertainties related to a limited number of test results.

C.7 Joints and connections

C.7.1 General

The design of joints and connections in steel pipes subjected to differential pressure, bending, axial load, torsion, and combinations thereof, due to the combinations of factored loads given in Table C.1, shall ensure that factored resistance exceeds the effects of the factored loads.

C.7.2 Factored resistance

The factored resistance of a joint or connection shall be determined by valid elastic or plastic analysis methods, or physical tests, or both, taking into account internal and external pressure, initial imperfections, residual stresses, and material properties.

C.8 Commentary

Note: *This Clause provides additional information related to some of the subjects dealt with in Clauses C.1 to C.7.*

C.8.1 Class location (see Clause C.2.2)

Class location designations will eventually be replaced by safety classes, which will be defined on the basis of the potential risk to people and the environment. The appropriate safety class for a given section of pipe or structural element would be determined by considering the number of persons exposed to the pipeline (expressed in person-years of exposure per year), the service fluid being transported (gas, sour gas, HVP, CO_2, or LVP), and the environmental sensitivity of the area under consideration (Chen and Nessim, 1994).

C.8.2 Probabilistic design methods (see Clause C.3.3)

A pipeline shall fulfill two basic functional requirements: the individual probabilities of excessive deformations, resulting in an unserviceable line, and burst, resulting in loss of contents, shall be

© 2015 CSA Group

sufficiently low. The probabilities of excessive deformations and burst can be assessed using reliability analysis. There are generally three levels of such analysis at which structural safety may be treated:

a) Level 1 — A semi-probabilistic design process in which the probabilistic aspects are treated specifically in defining partial safety factors to be applied to characteristic values of loads and structural resistances. A Level 1 structural design is what is now commonly called a limit states design. It is used as a practical method of incorporating reliability methods in the normal design process and is the basis of this Annex.
b) Level 2 — A probabilistic design process with some approximation (see Annex O). In this process, the loads and the strengths of materials and section are represented by their known or postulated distributions (defined in terms of relative parameters such as type, mean, and standard deviation) and some reliability level is accepted. Level 2 methods are not necessary for component designs (handled by Level 1 limit states design) but are valuable for economic planning, monitoring, and maintenance decision-making and structural integrity evaluations.
c) Level 3 — A design process based upon full probabilistic analysis for the entire structural system. Level 3 methods, which take into account joint probabilistic distributions of load and strength parameters and uncertainties in the analysis, are extremely complex and limited in practicality. They are used in special circumstances where the environment is particularly sensitive or where cost savings justify the additional expense of complex analysis.

Situations in which probabilistic methods can be used include the determination of the factored resistance of new systems and materials and the evaluation of levels of safety to control new hazards.

CSA S408 and ISO 2394 provide guidance on the determination of factored resistance by probabilistic methods.

C.8.3 Limit states categories (see Clause C.3.4)

Limit states are grouped into two major categories: ultimate limit states are concerned with burst or collapse of the pipeline, conditions that generally pose a threat to the safety of human life or the environment, or both; serviceability limit states are concerned with the ability of the system to meet its functional requirements, which for pipelines basically relates to excessive deformations restricting flow or pigging operations. Local damage (e.g., minor dents or wrinkling) that affects the long-term durability of the pipeline, but does not pose an immediate threat to pressure integrity, may be classified as a serviceability limit state. Such conditions are usually addressed in an ongoing maintenance program because, if left unattended, they can lead to one of the ultimate limit states being exceeded.

Unstable local buckling is included in the list of ultimate limit states since it can cause excessive local strains resulting in plastic collapse. An example is an aboveground pipeline, with an intermittent support structure, that is overloaded by a sustained gravity load. If local buckling occurs, the pipe loses its load-carrying capacity and collapses. This is different than the case for a buried pipeline that develops wrinkling due to a non-sustained load caused by limited ground movements, such as frost heave.

C.8.4 Load types (see Clause C.4.2.2.1)

Primary loads are termed non-self-limiting, which means they induce internal forces as long as the loads are applied and are independent of pipe deformations. If the stress produced by a primary load exceeds the peak strength of the material, failure occurs (or gross deformation, if strain hardening increases the peak strength to a level higher than the induced stress). The most obvious example of a primary load is internal pressure. As long as internal pressure is maintained, a hoop stress acts in the pipe wall to satisfy the basic laws of static equilibrium. Another example is the self-weight (gravity load) of the pipe and its contents acting on a suspended span. If the bending moment that results from the gravity load

exceeds the plastic moment capacity of the pipe section, the span will collapse, since the internal forces in the pipe can no longer balance the external sustained forces due to gravity.

Secondary loads induce internal forces in the system that are developed by the constraint of adjacent parts, or the self-constraint of the structure. Such loads are termed self-limiting because they can be relieved by yielding or distortion, or both, of the structure. Thermal loads fall into this category. Differential temperature induces stresses in a buried pipeline due to restrained axial thermal expansion; however, if some other load effect (e.g., internal pressure) causes material yielding that allows plastic flow in the axial direction, the thermal stresses will be relieved.

Another example relates to ground movements caused by frost heave or seismic faulting. Internal forces are induced in the pipe due to the pipeline bending as it conforms to ground movements; however, if the plastic moment capacity of the pipe section is exceeded, unloading will occur that reduces the internal forces. Collapse will not necessarily occur since the internal forces due to this load effect are not sustained. Failure can occur, however, if the pipe strains exceed the strain limit of the pipe material or welded connections (see also Clause C.6.3.1).

C.8.5 Load based on environmental processes (see Clause C.4.6.2)

Specified loads based on environmental processes normally have an annual probability of exceedance not greater than 10^{-2} per km.

Notes:

1) *Most specified load values are determined on the basis of an annual probability of exceedance, PE. This method of specification has been used throughout this Standard. For most practical purposes, it is equivalent to a specification based on return period, R, where R is expressed in years, such that R = 1/PE.*

2) *For some environmental processes (e.g., earthquakes and icebergs) it is also necessary to design for a rare event of larger magnitude. Rare environmental loads need not be considered for events that have an annual probability of occurrence less than 10^{-4} per km.*

C.8.6 Environmental loads for design life phases of short duration (see Clause C.4.6.2)

Where a pipeline is subject to design life phases that involve a specified time interval, such as can occur during construction, testing, or maintenance, or is subject to an operation with a specified time interval, the annual probability of exceedance of 10^{-2} per km of the value of the environmental process is normally calculated based upon environmental data that correspond to the specified time interval.

C.8.7 Geotechnical loads (see Clause C.4.6.3)

This Annex considers the design loads for pipelines on the basis of probability of occurrence and defines load factors based upon the assumption that they will be used with resistance factors rather than overall factors of safety. Current geotechnical practice is based upon experience rather than probabilistic target safety levels. The determination of geotechnical loads for design must recognize this and distinguish between different types of load effects and load combinations.

Geotechnical engineering typically uses limits states design concepts. Ultimate limit states (i.e., failure) and serviceability limit states (e.g., settlement) checks are routine soil mechanics procedures; however, currently it is not normal geotechnical practice in Canada to use separate load and resistance factors in stability calculations, as it is for structural elements. Geotechnical practice is generally based upon applying an overall factor of safety. Selection of the characteristic material strength to calculate resistance, the design loads, and the method of calculation are largely determined from experience and reflect the judgment of the design engineer as well as the constitutive behaviour of the material.

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.8.8 Accidental loads (see Clause C.4.7.3)

It is not generally required that structures (or pipelines) be designed to resist certain accidental loads (e.g., those arising from acts of terrorism or other events that cannot be foreseen); however, in the case of certain loads or actions (e.g., impact by excavation machinery) where experience shows that such occurrences are anticipated (i.e., those that have an annual probability of occurrence of greater than 10^{-4}), they shall be considered in the design. For offshore pipelines, such loads can include impacts from vessels, trawl boards, anchors, and dropped objects.

Where it is not possible to determine the intensity of the load effect (force or deformation) from an accidental load, it will not be possible to use the basic limit states equation (factored resistance equal to or greater than the effect of factored loads) for design. In such cases, it can be necessary to use empirical design methods to achieve the desired target reliability (e.g., provision of a minimum wall thickness, based upon historical data, to prevent third-party damage in areas of expected future development).

An alternative to designing for accidental loads is to take action that reduces the annual probability of occurrence of the accidental event to less than 10^{-4} (e.g., increasing the burial depth, the provision of cover slabs, or the prevention of access to the right-of-way), in which case it need not be considered.

C.8.9 Load factors and load combinations (see Clause C.4.8)

C.8.9.1

The load factors given in Table C.1 are not the result of a reliability-based calibration procedure; rather, they are estimated values, established to provide designs that are in general agreement with those resulting from current practice. A top priority for future work is the development of load factors that are based upon a proper calibration and verification procedure.

In formulating load combinations, each load is considered in turn to be at its most unfavourable value, which is obtained by applying a load factor such that the factored load has a small probability of exceedance. These comments apply to combining the different categories of permanent and operating loads into their respective groups, as well as to combining the four groups (permanent, operating, environmental, and accidental) into the overall load combinations specified in Table C.1. The load combinations are obtained by following these principles:

a) Loads that are mutually dependent and are highly correlated, i.e., one cannot occur in the absence of the other (e.g., an operating load cannot occur in the absence of permanent load), are combined together at their most unfavourable values.
b) Loads that are unlikely to occur together, i.e., where the probability of simultaneous occurrence is less than 10^{-4} (e.g., an accidental load and a rare environmental event), should not be combined.
c) Loads that can occur together are combined on the basis of the probability of their simultaneous occurrence. Each load should be considered in turn at its most unfavourable value and be combined with appropriate values of the other loads. Where the unfavourable load is transient, it should be combined with a frequent (sustained) value of the others. Therefore, the accidental load is not combined with environmental loads because the average daily value of these loads is very small.

The limit states design equation is used to determine the factored load due to a combination of permanent, operational, environmental, and accidental loads. This formulation is in general agreement with current limit states design methods, including those contained in CAN/CSA-S471 and the *National Building Code of Canada*.

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.8.9.2

The concept of using a class factor (or importance factor), γ, to take into account the consequences of failure is used in both the *National Building Code of Canada* and CSA S408; however, its implementation in this document is slightly different, as follows:

a) It is applied to permanent loads as well as operational, environmental, and accidental loads.
b) There are four factors, one for each class location, that are linked to specific reliability targets, rather than fewer factors that are determined in accordance with less specific safety criteria.

C.8.10 Pipe-soil interaction analysis (see Clause C.5.6.1)

Loads are induced in a pipeline by the relative motion between the pipeline and the surrounding soil. The moving soil mass applies pressure to the pipeline and tries to displace it; the stationary soil mass provides resistance to such motion. In addition to the lateral forces that the soil applies to the pipeline, there is also an axial component of force resisting longitudinal movement that can result in significant tensile forces being induced as the displaced pipeline tries to elongate.

The interaction of pipeline and soil can be characterized by using a two- or three-dimensional soil-spring model. In such a model, the nonlinear stress-dependent behaviour of the soils in the longitudinal and transverse directions is schematically represented by a series of discrete multilinear soil springs. These springs determine the amount of load or restraint exerted on the pipeline for a given displacement. The pipeline itself is modelled as a structural beam, with both nonlinear material behaviour (yielding) and large displacement effects being taken into account. Internal pressure, temperature differentials, and sustained gravity loads are all applied to the model, as appropriate, in combination with the specified displacements.

Using this analysis method, various failure scenarios can be analyzed to determine the elastic-plastic response of the pipe. Output of the analysis includes displacements, curvature, bending moments, axial forces, stresses, and strains. Particular attention is focused on the possible exceedance of tensile strain limits and to the initiation of local buckling (or wrinkling).

Further guidance concerning methods for conducting pipe-soil interaction analysis is contained in the PRCI *Guidelines for the Seismic Design and Assessment of Natural Gas and Liquid Hydrocarbon Pipelines*.

C.8.11 Stress-strain relationship for steel pipe (see Clause C.5.7.1.1)

Stress-strain curves for steel line pipe are highly dependent on both the grade of steel and method of manufacture. Steel grade generally determines both the yield strength and the ultimate tensile strength of the material, while the method of manufacture determines the shape of the stress-strain curve. Seamless pipe, or pipe that has been stress-relieved, generally exhibits a “classical” stress-strain curve shape with a linear elastic portion, a well-defined yield plateau, and a subsequent strain-hardening region. Longitudinal and helical seam pipe that is cold-expanded, on the other hand, generally exhibits a “round-house” stress-strain curve shape with nonlinear behaviour starting well before yield (as defined by the 0.5% strain criterion) and no distinct yield plateau.

The Ramberg-Osgood material stress-strain model is a well-recognized model for representing a wide range of stress-strain curve shapes (single curvature), including those with a sharp transition from elastic to inelastic behaviour and a flat yield plateau, and those with a more gradual transition and significant inelastic stiffness.

C.8.12 Rupture (see Clause C.6.3.1)

Tensile strain capacities as low as 0.2% and as high as 4% have been obtained from experimental tests. Strains as high as 2.5% have been shown to be achievable by welded steel line pipe during offshore pipe

 © 2015 CSA Group

laying operations (reel barges) where special attention has been given to ductility, toughness, and flaw tolerance in girth welding procedures. Guidance on existing methods can be found in Y. Wang, et al., 2011 and X. Wang, et al., 2001.

C.8.13 Failure theories for yielding (see Clause C.6.3.2)

The two most common failure theories used to predict yielding in ductile materials, such as steel, are the Tresca (maximum shear stress) theory and the Huber-Hencky-Mises (maximum distortion energy) theory, also known as the von Mises yield condition. Both are plotted in normalized principal stress space in Figure C.3.

The stress requirement specified in Clause C.6.3.2 uses the von Mises theory because it is generally accepted to be the more accurate of the two. The Tresca theory has been widely used, however, because it is simple to apply and gives a conservative result in design. Clause 4.7 is based upon the Tresca theory.

C.8.14 Stress-based pipe buckling design (see Clause C.6.3.3.4)

This Clause provides an alternative stress-based design method for the prevention of local and overall compressive buckling. It was derived from the requirements for the compressive buckling of cylindrical shells.

C.9 Bibliography

Note: *The publications listed are provided as sources of additional information; not all are cited in Annex C. See also Clause 2.*

BSI (British Standards Institution)

PD 8010-1:2004
Code of practice for pipelines. Steel pipelines on land

PD 8010-2:2004
Code of practice for pipelines. Subsea pipelines

CEN (European Committee for Standardization)

EN 1594:2000
Gas supply systems — Pipelines for maximum operating pressure over 16 bar — Functional requirements

IGEM (The Institution of Gas Engineers & Managers)

IGEM/TD/1 Edition 4-2001
Steel pipelines for high pressure gas transmission

ISO (International Organization for Standardization)

2394:1998
General principles on reliability for structures

NRCC (National Research Council Canada)

National Building Code of Canada, 2015

 © 2015 CSA Group

Other publications

Chen, Q. and Nessim, M.A. 1994. *Risk-based Calibration of Reliability Levels for Limit States Design of Pipelines*. National Energy Board of Canada Report NEB PERD 200-4. Calgary.

Colquhoun, I.R., Saurette, S.J., and Szabo, J.L. 1992. *Maximum Allowable Temperature Differential in Buried Pipelines*. Eleventh International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering.

Gresnigt, A.M. 1986. *Plastic Design of Buried Steel Pipelines in Settlement Areas*. Heron 31(4): 1–113.

Kennedy, D.J.L. 1974. *Limit States Design — An Innovation in Design Standards for Steel Structures*. Canadian Journal of Civil Engineering.

Liu, M., Wang, Y., and Horsley, D. 2005. Significance of HAZ Softening on Strain Concentration and Crack Driving Force in Pipeline Girth Welds (OMAE2005-67039). *Proceedings of the Twenty-Fourth International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering Conference*.

Row, D.G., Hollings, J.P., Sause, R., and Der Kiureghian, A. 1987. *Design Criteria for Offshore Arctic Pipelines*. ASME Pipeline Engineering Symposium, Dallas.

Stephens, D.R., Olson, R.J., and Rosenfeld, M.J. 1991. *Pipeline Monitoring — Limit State Criteria*. Pipeline Research Council International Inc. NG-18 Report No. 188. Arlington, VA.

Wang, Y.-Y., *et al*. 2004. Tensile Strain Limits of Girth Welds with Surface-Breaking Defects, Part I — An Analytical Framework*. Proceedings of the 4th International Conference on Pipeline Technology*, 235–249.

Wang, Y.-Y., *et al*. 2004. Tensile Strain Limits of Girth Welds with Surface-Breaking Defects, Part II — Experimental Correlation and Validation*. Proceedings of the 4th International Conference on Pipeline Technology*, 251–266.

Wang, Y.-Y. and Chen, Y. 2005. *Reliability Based Strain Design*. Gas Research Institute Report 04/0146. Des Plaines, IL.

Wang, Y.-Y. and Cheng, W. 2004. *Guidelines on Tensile Strain Limits*. Gas Research Institute Report 04/ 0030. Des Plaines, IL.

Wang, Y.-Y., Cheng, W., and Horsley, D. 2004. Tensile Strain Limits of Buried Defects in Pipeline Girth Welds. *Proceedings of the International Pipeline Conference*, Calgary, Alberta.

Wang, Y.Y. Liu, M., Song, Y., Stephens, M., Petersen, R. and Gordon, R. *Second Generation Models for Strain-Based Design*. Contract PR-ABD-1, Pipeline Research Council International, Inc., August 2011

Wang, X.,Kibey, S., Tang, H., Cheng, W., Minnaar, K., Macia, M. L., Kan, W. C., Ford, S. J. and Newbury, B. *Strain-based Design — Advances in Prediction Methods of Tensile Strain Capacity*. International Journal of Offshore and Polar Engineering, The International Society of Offshore and Polar Engineers, Vol. 21, No. 1, March 2011, pp. 1–7

Zimmerman, T.J.E., Price, P.St.J., Colquhoun, I.R., and Smith, R.J. 1992. *Development of a Limit States Guideline for the Pipeline Industry*. Eleventh International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Annex D (informative)
Guidelines for in-line inspection of pipelines

Notes:

1) *This informative Annex has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so.*

2) *Further guidance can be found in API 1163.*

There is a commentary available for this Annex.

D.1 Introduction

This Annex provides guidelines for planning and performing in-line inspection to locate corrosion imperfections and to determine the acceptability of reported corrosion imperfections as specified in this Standard.

Note: *The decision to perform in-line inspection on piping can have arisen as a result of the following:*

a) *risk analysis;*
b) *the need to review the effectiveness of corrosion control programs;*
c) *the need to assess the suitability of the piping for continued operation at existing pressures or higher maximum operating pressures; or*
d) *a review of operating experience on the piping selected or piping with similar characteristics.*

D.2 Inspection technology and contractor

Prior to performing an inspection or inspection program, an assessment shall be carried out to

a) determine the performance expectations for the inspection services;
b) determine the pipeline operational constraints of the pipeline such as the pipeline facilities for in-line inspection, pipeline geometry , wall thickness , weld regions, bends and casings service fluid, flow conditions;
c) assess the inspection contractor's abilities and experience in providing analysis and reporting requirements as required from the operating company; and
d) assess the inspection contractor abilities to provide the performance expectations within the pipeline operating constraints.

D.3 Planning an in-line inspection

An inspection plan shall be created taking into consideration the following at a minimum:

a) a schedule for key activities;
b) any pipeline modifications ensuring satisfactory trap, valve operations and pipeline geometry;
c) resource requirements including equipment, personnel, transportation and work shop facilities;
d) required tool runs including pipeline cleaning and bore and bend validations;
e) required tool tracking requirements including deployment of aboveground marker systems;
f) tool operation procedures including launching and receiving procedures, pipeline operational plan and site safety procedures including disposal of pipeline fluids, debris, and any hazardous materials; and
g) Operational plans including plans for communications, monitoring the flow and tool location, contingency for operational concerns, flow condition upsets, weather and medical emergencies.

 © 2015 CSA Group

D.4 Inspection execution

The inspection operation shall be reviewed with all personnel involved in accordance with the operating company's policies. The execution of the inspection shall include the following:

a) pre-inspection review of the tool;
b) review of the pipeline operating conditions;
c) execution of the inspection plan (inspection run);
d) post run data assessment ensuring the quality and completeness of the inspection.

Degraded data shall be reviewed by the operating company to determine if a rerun is required.

D.5 Post execution

The operating company shall, using the inspection report provided by the inspection company, historical pipeline information, and other in line inspections as well as excavations,

a) assess all indications to determine if they are potential defects as specified in Clause 10.10 taking into account allowances for tool reporting inaccuracy and appropriate interaction rules;
b) any potential defects shall be prioritized in accordance to their relative severity, their accessibility and possible consequence of failure for verification;
c) excavations and examinations shall be conducted as specified in Clauses 10.10.1.3 and 10.10.1.4. The imperfections shall be cleaned and measured as specified in Clause 10.10;
d) records of the imperfections shall be kept and correlated to the reported imperfection;
e) an assessment of the reported and actual dimensions of the excavated imperfections shall be performed. If the report accuracy does not meet the operating company expectations, the report shall be reviewed in regard to the correlation with additional excavations and inspections if required or possibly a re-inspection; enough field inspections shall be completed to allow a valid assessment of the tools performance; and
f) the future integrity assessment requirements shall be established taking into consideration future growth of imperfections.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Δ *Annex E (informative)*
Recommended practice for liquid hydrocarbon pipeline leak detection

Notes:

1) *This informative Annex has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so.*

2) *This Annex is consistent with industry practice and commonly used technology; however, it is not intended to exclude other, equally-effective leak detection methods.*

There is a commentary available for this Annex.

E.1 General

E.1.1

This Annex applies to liquid hydrocarbon pipelines within the scope of this Standard, with the exception of pipelines containing a gas phase and pipelines that interconnect onshore oil wells, satellite test facilities, and production facilities (see Figure 1.1). The purpose of this Annex is to provide a practice for leak detection based upon computational methods and direct leak detection methods.

This Annex focuses on methods that provide leak detection capability in keeping with industry practice and commonly used technology.

Regardless of the method of leak detection used, operating companies shall comply as thoroughly as practicable with the design, performance, maintenance, testing, leak detection manual, documentation, auditing, training, and record retention provisions of this Annex.

E.1.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The operating company shall develop, implement, and periodically evaluate the leak detection strategy for new or existing pipelines. The purpose of the leak detection strategy is to ensure methods are in place that will contribute to the certain and timely detection of a service fluid release in order to support and inform appropriate pipeline control and emergency response actions. The leak detection strategy shall consider an integrated leak detection approach that includes surveillance, controller monitoring, and computational and/or leak sensing methodologies. The leak detection strategy should include a pipeline leak detection system with a continuous monitoring capability. The leak detection strategy and systems should be integrated into pipeline control and emergency response procedures (Annex M).

E.1.3

A leak detection system shall be implemented using one or a combination of various methodologies. An operating company shall evaluate applicable leak detection methodologies to determine their effectiveness for the pipeline under consideration and how various methodologies can complement each other. This evaluation shall be documented.

Note: *No single methodology or technology will be applicable to all pipelines because pipeline systems differ in design and operation.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

E.2 Specific definitions

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The following definitions shall apply in this Annex:

Accuracy metric — a measure of the validity of leak parameter estimates.
Note: *Leak flow rate, total volume lost, type of fluid lost, and leak location are indications of leak detection system accuracy.*

Alarm analysis procedure — a written procedure that is understood by and utilized by the pipeline controller to analyze the cause of a leak detection system alarm and to take further action.

Computational leak detection method — a method that relies upon measurement of process variables (pressure, flow rate, temperature) in which an inference engine is used and an algorithm is applied to the results of calculations.
Notes:
1) *The computational leak detection method infers that a leak exists.*
2) *Computational leak detection method is also referred to as internal leak detection method.*

Conservation of mass — the principle, as applied to liquid flow in pipelines, that states that the time rate of mass inflow to a pipe segment minus the time rate of mass outflow equals the time rate of mass increase in the pipe segment.
Note: *The rate of mass outflow includes any leaks that might exist in the pipe segment.*

Control centre — the operational centre for the pipeline(s) from which the pipeline controllers operate the pipeline.

Critical data — any data that drives the leak detection system application or is fundamental to the calculations.

Critical instrument — any instrument that provides critical data.

Critical process — any process upon which the leak detection methodology relies and which is essential for the operation of the leak detection system.
Note: *This includes software, computer hardware and operating system, and communications.*

Direct leak detection method — a leak detection approach that utilizes one or more of various methods that directly sense leaked or leaking hydrocarbons.
Note: *Direct leak detection method is also referred to as external leak detection method.*

Leak detection system — any method used to determine the existence of a pipeline leak.

Material balance — a mathematical procedure based upon the laws of conservation of mass and fluid mechanics, which is used to determine if a release of service fluid has occurred on a pipeline system.
Note: *"Material balance" is also referred to as "mass balance".*

Pipeline controller — the person who is responsible for the monitoring and direct control of a pipeline.
Note: *A pipeline controller might defer action to others, but still have the primary responsibility to monitor and detect abnormal conditions.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Reliability metric — a measure of the leak detection system's ability to render accurate decisions about the existence of a leak on the pipeline while operating within an envelope established by the leak detection system design.

Note: *A system is considered more reliable if it consistently detects actual leaks without generating incorrect alarms.*

Robustness — a measure of the effective size of the operational envelope of a leak detection system.

Robustness metric — a measure of the leak detection system's ability to continue to function and provide useful information even under changing conditions of the pipeline (i.e., transients) or in conditions where data is lost or suspect.

Note: *A system is considered robust if it continues to function under less than ideal conditions.*

Sensitivity metric — a composite measure of the size of leak that a system is capable of detecting and the time required for the system to issue an alarm in the event that a leak of that size occur.

Supervisory control and data acquisition (SCADA) — the technology to remotely monitor and control pipeline facilities from a centralized facility.

Note: *Using communication infrastructure, a SCADA system communicates with programmable logic controllers (PLCs) located at remote pipeline facilities. These PLCs are connected to pipeline equipment and sensors at these facilities. The pipeline controller, using a human-machine interface, is able to monitor and control this pipeline equipment through the SCADA system and the associated infrastructure.*

E.3 Leak detection systems

E.3.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

A leak detection system can comprise one or more methods. Where practicable, pipeline controllers shall compare the results of one method of leak detection with the results of other applicable method(s).

E.3.2 Direct leak detection methods

The assessment shall include any factors that might impact the performance of the system, which can include the probable path of hydrocarbons, soil type, water content, depth of cover of the pipe, and type of product.

Note: *Direct leak detection methods (also called external leak detection systems) utilize one or more of various methods to sense leaked or leaking hydrocarbons. Generically, the methods and technologies include, but are not limited to, the following:*

a) *liquid sensing (e.g., fibre optic cables, electro-chemical, infrared sensors);*
b) *vapour sensing (e.g., hydrocarbon concentration sensing);*
c) *acoustic emissions sensing (e.g., acoustic signals in the pipe); and*
d) *visual methods (e.g., line patrol, on-site inspections, vegetation surveys).*

E.3.3 Computational leak detection methods

E.3.3.1

The operating company shall establish leak detection thresholds based upon expected hydraulic conditions that meet the sensitivity and reliability targets of the internal leak detection system.

© 2015 CSA Group

E.3.3.2

Leak detection thresholds shall be set to the lowest practical values considering the

a) balance between speed of detection and an acceptable number of non-leak alarms;
b) data retrieval interval;
c) quality and quantity of data and instrumentation;
d) calculation windows utilized;
e) leak detection methodology chosen;
f) level of desired performance metrics; and
g) risk to the public and the environment.

E.3.3.3

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Table E.1 provides calculation window intervals limits for a material balance leak detection system and shall be used to determine maximum intervals.

E.3.4 Leak detection system performance and alarm limits

E.3.4.1

Leak detection system performance and alarm limits shall be appropriate for the characteristics of each individual pipeline or particular segment (e.g., laterals) of the pipeline.

Note: *A networked pipeline system might need to have a more sophisticated leak detection system than a point-to-point pipeline.*

E.3.4.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The leak detection system shall provide clear alarms to alert the pipeline controller of a possible release. A leak detection system alarm shall result in initiation of a procedure to evaluate the leak condition and to determine the cause of the alarm. Leak alarm evaluation shall be integrated into pipeline control procedures. The leak alarm evaluation shall lead to control action to mitigate the leak (such as pipeline shutdown) unless such deviations can be readily and clearly explained.

E.3.4.3

The design and implementation of the leak detection system shall take due consideration of the capabilities of the pipeline controller. Leak alarms shall be clearly displayed where they are obvious to the pipeline controller on the monitoring and control panel.

E.4 Instruments, operation, and maintenance

E.4.1 Instrumentation and measurement

E.4.1.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Critical data used to drive a computational leak detection method shall be measured. The cumulative uncertainty in the values used in the leak detection calculations, including uncertainties attributable to processing, transmission, and operational practices, shall not exceed 5% per five minutes, 2% per week, or 1% per month of the sum of the actual receipts or deliveries for volume balance leak detection.

E.4.1.2
Measurement equipment shall be matched to performance requirements of the leak detection system. Instrumentation and measurement devices shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to meet the required performance. System noise in the data shall be minimized.

E.4.2 Critical instruments and processes

E.4.2.1
The data source and the processes for the leak detection system shall be reliable. The operating company shall determine critical processes, instruments, and data.

E.4.2.2
The operating company shall create a list of all the critical instruments and processes and the accuracy that is required of each instrument. The pipeline controller and field staff shall have access to this list and be made aware that, if a critical instrument fails or is taken out-of-service, the loss will degrade or halt the functions of the leak detection system. Critical processes shall be identified as requiring immediate attention and restart if they fail.

E.4.2.3
If critical data is missing or a critical process is inoperative, the pipeline controller shall determine whether the leak detection system is considered to be ineffective and pipeline shall be shutdown, or an alternative leak detection method may be used, allowing the pipeline to remain in service.

E.4.3 Alarms and analysis

E.4.3.1
The operating company shall monitor the reliability of the leak detection system and balance the occurrence of invalid leak alarms with consideration of the impact on the sensitivity of the system.

E.4.3.2
Analysis of leak alarms shall determine the cause of the alarm. The leak alarm shall not be discounted and declared invalid without such analysis; all alarms shall be assumed to have a cause. Methods to determine the cause of the leak alarm shall be developed. The leak detection system analysis procedure shall state a maximum analysis period. If the cause of the leak alarm has not been declared within this period, the pipeline shall be brought to a safe state until the leak alarm cause has been determined.

E.4.3.3
Leak alarms shall be clear, concise, and easily recognizable in a timely fashion by the pipeline controller. Upon specific evaluation of the leak alarm condition, the pipeline controller may request additional support or take corrective action.

E.4.3.4
The operating company shall determine the retention timeframe for the input data that has created both leak and non-leak leak detection system alarms. The captured data may be further analyzed and used for training or to rerun events for tuning and testing of leak detection and SCADA systems.

Note: *The captured data may be further analyzed and used for training or to rerun events for tuning and testing of leak detection and SCADA systems.*

E.4.4 Calibration and maintenance of instruments

E.4.4.1

The instrumentation process piping and the instruments shall be located so as to include provision for convenient testing and calibration of instruments to minimize data disruption to the leak detection system. Critical leak detection system instruments shall be placed at locations where they will not be isolated during normal pipeline operations.

E.4.4.2

Critical instrument calibrations and maintenance shall follow a procedure that coordinates the work with the pipeline controller, the leak detection system maintenance staff, and the field maintenance staff.

E.4.4.3

Critical instruments shall be calibrated to maintain their outputs to meet the performance required by the leak detection system. Operating companies shall develop a plan that specifies the frequency and rationale for calibration of critical instruments. This plan may be a supplement to calibration schedules or procedures for other instruments in the pipeline.

Notes:

1) *Operating experience, criticality, or sensitivity needs might dictate calibration frequency.*

2) *Some instruments that are used by leak detection systems might not need calibration, but might need repair if output is lost (i.e., status values).*

E.4.5 Maintenance of the leak detection system

E.4.5.1

Changes to the leak detection system or to instrumentation shall be evaluated to determine if system testing is necessary to confirm that the leak detection system performance has not been degraded by the changes or new configuration. Where such system testing is determined to be necessary, its level and complexity shall be determined on a case-by-case basis by a competent person.

E.4.5.2

Performance of the leak detection system shall be monitored to detect degradation requiring remedial action. Where such degradation is detected, remedial actions shall be taken.

E.4.5.3

Any changes made to the leak detection system during maintenance or upgrades to the software shall be documented.

E.4.6 Function monitoring

E.4.6.1

Leak detection software is a critical process and shall include features that monitor and report any degradation or loss of function. Monitoring shall include the

a) status of system operational hardware, software, and communications;
b) continuity and quality of the data;
c) continued functioning and timeliness of the process; and
d) integrity of the alarm annunciation system.

 © 2015 CSA Group

E.4.6.2
Where direct leak detection methods are used, the pipeline controller shall have the ability to determine that the sensors are functioning.

E.4.6.3
The pipeline controller shall be notified immediately of a full or partial failure of any critical process.

E.4.6.4
The function monitoring shall be appropriate to the software application and equipment.

Note: *The implementation of function monitoring depends on the type and design of the leak detection system and its supporting systems.*

E.5 Testing

E.5.1 System testing

E.5.1.1
A leak detection system shall be tested to demonstrate that the design thresholds are met and to establish a baseline of achieved performance. The leak detection system shall be tested at least annually and

a) when changes to the leak detection system or the pipeline warrant re-evaluation of system performance;
b) if the leak detection system fails to detect a leak that was within its nominal detection threshold capability; or
c) if a test is needed to re-establish confidence in continuing effectiveness.

E.5.1.2
Prior to testing, a detailed test plan shall be developed to document the purpose of the test, the methods that will be employed, and the process and procedures that will be followed. Leak detection system tests shall be rigorous and be planned and executed using sound engineering and technical judgment regarding issues such as test methods employed, service fluid loss rates, and situations to be simulated.

E.5.1.3
Leak detection system tests may be announced or unannounced to the control centre. The operating company may use the test as an opportunity to evaluate pipeline controller response and control centre procedures. In this case, the scenario shall continue up to the point where a decision is made to shutdown the pipeline.

E.5.1.4
All leak detection systems shall be tested. Tests shall be appropriate for the various leak detection systems.

Notes:

1) *It might not be necessary to test each pipeline that uses a common leak detection system method, but testing should be rotated among the pipeline system.*
2) *Leak detection system self tests do not meet the criteria for periodic re-testing or change-driven testing.*
3) *Operational use of a leak detection system, such as the successful detection of a release, can be an acceptable substitute for periodic re-testing if it demonstrates continued effectiveness of the leak detection*

system. Analysis of the leak and of leak detection system performance will help to validate leak detection system capability.

E.5.1.5

The pipeline controller shall determine the potential for a reduced level of pipeline monitoring capability and for the misdiagnosis of a leak alarm during any type of leak detection system test. The pipeline controller shall be alert to the possibility of an actual service fluid release that could occur simultaneously with the leak detection system test and that an actual release might be undetected during the test interval.

E.5.2 Testing methods

E.5.2.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The leak detection system shall be tested to alarm state with actual or simulated service fluid removal or with a procedure that upsets the pipeline hydraulics and simulates a leak. The test method and testing parameters shall be chosen to be representative of line operating conditions and be capable of being repeatable.

Note: *Methods of testing include*

a) *removal of test quantities of service fluid from the line (withdrawal testing);*
b) *editing of leak detection system configuration parameters or SCADA inputs to simulate loss of service fluid (software simulations) or to create a desired hydraulic condition;*
c) *altering an instrument output that is critical to the leak detection system: for example, altering a meter factor to simulate a volume imbalance or a pressure output to simulate a hydraulic anomaly;*
d) *re-running an archived data set that contains a leak, provided that the method is capable of being a repeatable test; and*
e) *any other method that will hydraulically simulate a pipeline leak.*

E.5.2.2

Where practical, the location of the test shall be varied from one test to the next, so that the leak detection system experiences leak simulations at various locations. In addition, the test shall be performed at more than one withdrawal or simulated withdrawal rate or operating condition so that the time and leak rate response of the leak detection system can be evaluated over a range of possible leak scenarios.

E.5.2.3

If the leak detection system provides leak detection during shut-in or static line conditions, system performance for those situations shall also be tested.

E.5.2.4

If data simulations or alteration of other soft parameters are used to generate a leak test within the leak detection system, sufficient analysis shall be carried out to establish that the test conditions demonstrate a realistic performance test outcome.

E.5.3 Test records

The reasons for the tests, the test parameters and methodology, as well as the test results for initial tests and for any subsequent tests, shall be recorded. The records of at least two previous tests shall be retained for purposes of comparison.

E.6 Leak detection manual

E.6.1 General

The operating company shall develop, implement, and regularly update a leak detection manual for liquid hydrocarbon pipelines. The manual may be developed for each particular pipeline or it may be applicable to a number of pipelines if the same leak detection system is used on all the pipelines. The manual shall be readily accessible in the control centre in printed or electronic format.

E.6.2 Manual contents

The leak detection manual shall include the following elements:

a) a statement on senior management commitment to an effective and efficient leak detection system;
b) a statement of the operating company's philosophy describing objectives and targets to continuously improve performance of the leak detection system;
c) well-defined roles, responsibilities, accountabilities, and authorities associated with the operating company's staff, including a company directive on pipeline controller authority and responsibility to take action when a leak is suspected;

   Note: *Examples of relevant operating company's staff are operations manager, system engineer, pipeline controller, field operator, and maintenance personnel.*
d) an outline of the competency of operating company's staff, including the establishment of qualification, training, and experience requirements;
e) leak detection system operating description, including definition, configuration, and expected performance, as follows:
   i) the leak detection system definition and associated asset database, including leak detection segment map, class locations, key facilities such as stations, critical sensors, and instruments;
   ii) the leak detection system configuration, including description, theory of operations, rationale for selection, applications, and unique features of the leak detection system including critical instrumentation requirements; and
   iii) the expected leak detection performance of the leak detection system or individual pipelines in terms of accuracy, sensitivity, reliability, and robustness in the applicable segment under normal, abnormal, or degraded operating conditions. Limitations of the system in the applicable segment, such as invalid alarm rate and its causes, and operation conditions and factors affecting performance, shall be documented;
f) if applicable, a list of leak alarm and diagnostic messages, including
   i) alarm definition;
   ii) acceptable tolerances;
   iii) critical data to be displayed on host SCADA;
   iv) diagnostic procedures for confirming, locating, and isolating a leak; and
   v) contact points for remedial actions;

   and reference to a detailed alarm management procedure;

   Note: *Examples of leak detection and data display are estimated leak size, leaking product, and effects on safety and environment, location and surrounding map, adjacent valve sites, access, facilities, and places where data is displayed (i.e., SCADA or other terminals).*
g) maintenance, including equipment and information, regular maintenance schedule, and rationale for critical instrument calibration frequency;

   Note: *Examples of equipment and information for maintenance are instrumentation, sensors, communication and SCADA, leak detection-related databases and parameters.*

h) outline of leak detection system testing, including purpose, interval, procedure, method, and validation techniques;

Note: *Examples of purpose of testing are commissioning tests to check the system functions and on-going tests to check the system effectiveness and staff response.*

i) a leak detection system continuous improvement process, including
   i) nonconformity identification related to leak detection procedure and performance;
   ii) internal audits and associated protocols;
   iii) corrective action plans; and
   iv) follow-up; and

j) description of company requirements for leak detection system record keeping and archiving, including history, training, maintenance, testing, and performance.

Note: *If information is required to be readily available in other documents or systems, it may be incorporated in the leak detection manual by reference. Such references should provide a clear and unambiguous hard copy or electronic location.*

E.7 Improving leak detection system performance

E.7.1

For each leak detection system, the sensitivity, accuracy, reliability, and robustness of the performance metrics shall be quantified and periodically evaluated for identifying and continuously improving the performance of the leak detection system. If multiple systems are installed, the operating company shall quantify the appropriate performance metrics and their evaluation frequency for each system. Targets shall be defined for the performance metrics for normal operating conditions. Special operating conditions shall also be identified, for which non-mandatory targets may be defined.

E.7.2

Lessons learned from the leak detection system performance evaluations shall be translated into action items within the operating company's continuous improvement plan. A management-of-change process shall be in place that addresses modifications in processes, procedures, roles and responsibilities, and installations identified within the continuous improvement plan.

E.7.3

During design and during operation, the operating company shall undertake an analysis of the leak detection inputs to identify and minimize uncertainties that would reduce the leak detection sensitivity and performance.

E.8 Audits

E.8.1

The leak detection system shall be reviewed and audited periodically to determine whether they are in accordance with the provisions of this Annex and shall be revised as necessary. The methods, responsibilities and results of the reviews and audits shall be documented. The items considered in performing such reviews and audits should include

a) scope and objectives;
b) review/audit frequency and timing;
c) responsibilities for managing and performing the audit;
d) previous incidents or false alarms;
e) occasions where the leak detection system was inoperative;

f) previous reviews, internal audits, and external audits;
g) reviewer/auditor independence;
h) reviewer/auditor competency;
i) reviewer/audit procedures; and
j) operation under normal and special conditions.

E.8.2
Internal audits shall be conducted periodically by the operating company or designated representative.

E.8.3
All provisions of this Annex shall be evaluated during each audit.

E.8.4
Audits shall also include and evaluate, where applicable, details of the following categories of incidents, the action taken, and the results achieved:
a) pipeline leaks that were not detected by the leak detection system or that were not acted upon by personnel responsible for interpreting and responding to the leak detection system;
b) occasions when the leak detection system was inoperative because of equipment or system failures exceeding 1 h in duration;
c) alarms caused by maintenance;
d) alarms that have an indeterminate cause; and
e) invalid alarms of the same cause that occur frequently.

E.9 Employee training for leak detection system operation

E.9.1
Pipeline controllers shall receive appropriate initial training and retraining. The operating company shall develop a policy for pipeline controller training, testing, and retraining. Testing shall be performed to determine pipeline controller competency before the pipeline controller operates the pipeline. The operating company shall establish competency criteria for pipeline controllers. The leak detection system developers, support staff, and pipeline controllers shall be competent in understanding the leak detection methodology, critical equipment and processes, the software application, and the influence of each on the performance of the leak detection system.

E.9.2
Pipeline controllers shall have sufficient knowledge of the pipeline assets that they operate. They shall be able to recognize the effects of all normal and abnormal operating conditions, understand the impact to the leak detection system, and make informed decisions based on their interpretation of the information presented. Operating companies shall provide the necessary tools and training to the pipeline controller to aid the decision making process.

E.9.3
Where practicable, pipeline controller training shall employ simulations that allow the pipeline controller to operate a model of the actual pipeline or a generic pipeline that offers exposure to various operational scenarios and provides equivalent skill development. Infrequent operational conditions shall be included in the trainer configuration. Scenarios shall be designed to develop condition recognition and alarm response skills and to improve response time. Where practicable, reruns of archived data

from abnormal conditions shall be used in the training model. Table top exercises may be used as a supplement to simulation training.

Notes:

1) *Training the pipeline controllers in the analysis of system operation and hydraulics is vital for effective leak management investigations.*

2) *Knowledge of pipeline hydraulics and fluid behaviour enables pipeline controllers to anticipate pipeline behaviour in changing conditions.*

E.9.4

The training process for pipeline controllers shall include use of the leak detection system, documented procedures, and checklists to ensure a standard approach that results in pipeline controller consistency is followed. Part of the work may involve collecting information that needs to be recorded (see Clauses E.5.3 and E.10)

E.9.5

Training shall outline expected pipeline controller response to leak detection alarms. This shall include reference to company protocols, guidelines, standards, and emergency response plans for all suspected and actual leak incidents.

E.9.6

A training program for pipeline controllers shall include documented qualifications, the required level of experience, and the planned training schedule. Training shall be conducted in accordance with a documented training program to reach the required competency.

Note: *There are many components that make up the foundation of a training plan. Plan contents can vary among operating companies but the fundamentals should be the same and achieve the same results.*

E.10 Record control

E.10.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Any documentation that is required by this Annex shall be considered to be records of the pipeline operation and shall be retained for the periods specified below:

a) Records for the leak detection system shall be kept detailing any over/short calculations, with the focus on small shortages below established tolerances, for all intervals for which they are performed. These records shall be retained for a minimum period of six months.

b) Records pertaining to maintenance, auditing, and testing shall be retained for a minimum of five years.

c) Records pertaining to leaks shall be kept for the life of the pipeline.

d) Records of the training of each pipeline controller and their competency validation shall be kept until one year after the termination of their employment.

e) Initial configuration parameters for the software and baseline setup records shall be retained in accordance with the operating company's policy. Version control or another document management system shall be used to retain records of previous versions of the leak detection system software for the life of the leak detection system.

f) Leak detection system manuals shall be readily available in the control centre. All versions of the leak detection system manuals shall be retained for the life of the pipeline.

© 2015 CSA Group

E.10.2

Records shall be readily accessible to operating personnel and shall be reviewed during the audits outlined in Clause E.8.

Table E.1
Material balance intervals for data retrieval, maximum calculation intervals, and recommended calculation windows
(See Clause E.3.3.3.)

Segment type	**LVP, HVP**							
Normal flow, m^3/h	High ≥ 150		Intermediate < 150 and ≥ 15			Low < 15		
Risk	Low	High	Low	High	High	Low	High	High
Service fluid	HVP or LVP	HVP or LVP	HVP or LVP	HVP	LVP	HVP or LVP	HVP	LVP
Interval for data retrieval	1 h	5 min	24 h	5 min	1 h	24 h	5 min	24 h
Maximum calculation interval/ recommended calculation window	1 h 24 h 1 wk 1 mo	5 min 5 min 24 h 1 wk 1 mo	24 h 1 wk 1 mo	5 min 5 min 24 h 1 wk 1 mo	1 h 24 h 1 wk 1 mo	24 h 1 wk 1 mo	5 min 5 min 24 h 1 wk 1 mo	24 h 1 wk 1 mo

Notes:

1) *The data retrieval intervals and the calculation window are the maximum time suggested.*

2) *In general shorter data retrieval intervals and shorter calculation windows improve leak detection thresholds and shall be considered in high risk areas.*

3) *The calculation windows shall not be shorter than the data retrieval interval.*

4) *To maximize sensitivity, the calculation for the next longer window should accumulate the imbalances of the shorter window.*

5) *Intervals should be adhered to unless it can be technically demonstrated that overall leak detection effectiveness can be equal to or better than achieved when interval is different.*

6) *It is not necessary to calculate all windows if the longer windows do not improve leak detection.*

7) *A shut-in line has zero flow but calculation intervals should be the same as for an operating line.*

8) *Operating companies shall determine low versus high risk through examination of likelihood of a leak and environmental, health and safety, and socioeconomic impacts. See Clauses 3, B.4.1.1, E.3.3, and N.3.2 for further guidance.*

E.11 Bibliography

The following references provide additional information that might be valuable in the implementation of the provisions of this Annex.

API (American Petroleum Institute)

1130-2007 (R2012) (RP)
Computational Pipeline Monitoring for Liquids

1149-1993 (Publ)
Pipeline Variable Uncertainties and Their Effects on Leak Detectability

 © 2015 CSA Group

1165-2007 (R2012) (RP)
Recommended Practice for Pipeline SCADA Displays

1167-2010 (RP)
Pipeline SCADA Alarm Management

ASME (The American Society of Mechanical Engineers)

ASME B31Q-2014
Pipeline Personnel Qualification

© 2015 CSA Group

Annexes F and G have been deleted

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
© 2015 CSA Group

Δ *Annex H (normative)*
Pipeline failure records

Notes:
1) *This Annex is a normative (mandatory) part of this Standard.*
2) *This Annex applies to the records specified in Clause 10.4.4.*

C There is a commentary available for this Annex.

H.1 Introduction

This Annex provides requirements for the information elements to be included in the records of pipeline incidents specified in Clause 10.4.4 and it establishes common terminology for the information required. This Annex was developed for onshore pipelines.

H.2 Incident reporting

H.2.1 General

Records of each failure incident should include the information specified in Clauses H.2.2 to H.2.13. Free form text descriptions may be used for each element unless units or acceptable values are specified.

H.2.2 Incident identification

Records shall include basic incident data specified in Items a) to p):

	Element name	Element description/format
a)	Licensee name	Name of the operating company that is licensed to operate the pipeline.
b)	Address	Mailing address of the operating company.
c)	Incident ID	Unique identification assigned by operating company.
d)	Jurisdiction	The applicable provincial or federal jurisdiction for the incident location.
e)	Pipeline Licence	Licence identification of the applicable provincial or federal jurisdiction.
f)	Province/Territory	Province/territory in which the incident occurred.
g)	Land survey location	Latitude and longitude or legal description of location.
h)	Pipeline segment	Pipeline segment name or identification.
i)	Station	Location of the incident in relation to the pipeline as expressed by an operating company's naming convention (e.g., kilometre post, mile post, mainline valve, etc.).
j)	Class location	The class location designation for the location of the incident.
k)	Date and time of occurrence	Date and time of incident occurrence in local time. Use a 24-hour clock and identify local time zone (yyyy-mm-dd h:min).
l)	Date and time of detection	Date and time of incident detection in local time. Use a 24-hour clock and identify local time zone (yyyy-mm-dd h:min).

 © 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description/format
m)	Incident reported by	Incident reported by, selected from the list of acceptable values: Company or operating company, Third party, General public.
n)	Method of detection	Method of detection selected from the list of acceptable values: line balance, gas detector survey, aerial survey, vegetation survey, surface detection survey, mathematical modelling analysis, other.
o)	Date and time of service restoration	Date and time of restoration of service in local time. Use a 24-hour clock and identify local time zone (yyyy-mm-dd h:min).
p)	Description	Description of the incident.

H.2.3 Weather

Records shall include meteorological conditions prevailing at the time and place of the incident specified in Items a) to d); if such data is not obtainable, data from the closest weather station and its location shall be recorded:

	Element name	Element description/format
a)	Temperature	Air temperature at time and place of incident, (°C).
b)	Wind speed	Wind speed at time and place of incident, (km/h).
c)	Wind direction	Wind direction at time and place of incident, selected from the list of acceptable values: N — North NE — Northeast E — East SE —Southeast S — South SW — Southwest W — West NW — Northwest
d)	Precipitation	Type of precipitation at time and place of incident, selected from the list of acceptable values: Snow Rain Sleet Freezing rain Hail None

 © 2015 CSA Group

H.2.4 Operating conditions

Records shall include operational attributes of the pipeline at the time and location of the incident specified in elements a) to c):

	Element name	Element description/format
a)	Incident pressure	Estimated internal pressure at the incident location at the time of the incident, (MPa).
b)	Service fluid flow rate	Estimated flow rate at the incident location at the time of the incident, (standard m^3/h).
c)	Cyclic operating pressure	Estimated or actual cyclic operation, amplitude and frequency (MPa and Hz).

H.2.5 Failed pipe or components

Records shall include the pipe or component where the failure occurred, selected from the following list of acceptable values:

	Acceptable values
	Pipe
	Valve
	Fitting
	Flange
	Other component or equipment

H.2.6 Failure cause

H.2.6.1 Primary failure cause

Records shall include the primary damage or deterioration mechanism that caused failure, selected from the following list of acceptable values (the failure cause is classified into a number of sub-causes):

	Acceptable values	Value description
	Material loss	Wall thickness reduction due, for example but not exclusively, to corrosion or erosion
	Cracking	Mechanically driven or environmentally assisted cracking of the pipe or component
	Structural degradation	Mechanically driven or environmentally assisted degradation of the mechanical properties in the pipe or components, specific to reinforced composites
	External interference	External activities causing damage to the pipe or component
	Material or manufacturing	Material or manufacturing defect in the failed pipe or component

 © 2015 CSA Group

Acceptable values	Value description
Construction	Construction defect, damage, or deficiency in the failed pipe or component
Geotechnical failure	Loss of integrity of the pipeline due to a geotechnical event
Valve seals or packing	Fluid release caused by defective or damaged seals or packing
Ancillary equipment	Fluid release caused by defective or damaged ancillary piping, tubing, connections, or equipment (e.g., body bleed or valve operator piping)
Gasket/O-ring	Release caused by a leaking flange gasket or o-ring seal
Other cause	Other cause not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)

H.2.6.2 Material loss sub-cause

Records shall include sub-classification of incidents that have a primary failure cause of material loss, selected from the following list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
External material loss	Material loss from the external surface of the pipe or component body or weld due, for example, to corrosion or erosion
Internal material loss	Material loss from the internal surface of the pipe or component body or weld due, for example, to corrosion or erosion

H.2.6.3 Cracking sub-cause

Records shall include sub-classification of incidents that have a primary failure cause of cracking, selected from the following list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
Stress corrosion cracking	Environmentally assisted cracking due, for example but not exclusively, to near-neutral pH SCC, high-pH SCC, or chloride cracking
Sulphide stress cracking	Cracking of metal involving corrosion and tensile stress (residual and/or applied) in the presence of water and H_2S
Hydrogen-induced cracking	Environmentally assisted cracking with an identified role of hydrogen, such as hydrogen-induced cracking or stress oriented hydrogen induced cracking
Mechanical damage delayed cracking	Cracking initiated by mechanical damage on the pipe or component that grows to failure sometimes after several years of operation
Corrosion fatigue	Fatigue-like cracking that occurs under the influence of cyclic loading and a corrosive environment

© 2015 CSA Group

Acceptable values	Value description
Fatigue	Cracking that occurs under the influence of cyclic loading. For reinforced composites, this includes cyclic loading that causes structural degradation of material
Other	Other cracking sub-cause not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)

H.2.6.4 Material degradation sub-cause

Records shall include sub-classification of incidents that have a primary failure cause of material degradation, selected from the following list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
Damage to reinforcement fibres	The progressive loss of reinforcement strength of composite materials due to mechanical damage (e.g., cracking, distortion, wear) of the fibres resulting from service conditions.
Softening from fluid exposure	Softening and loss of strength that can occur when polymers are exposed to either incompatible fluid or excessive temperature conditions or a combination of both. Can occur along with material swelling.
Other chemical degradation	Chemical damage to polymers other than softening, such as hardening, microscopic cracking (crazing), chemical transformation, and/or loss of material due to chemical exposure.
Overheating	Melting, burning, or oxidation type damage from exposure to high temperatures. Does not include chemical changes at elevated temperatures.
Corrosion fatigue	Fatigue-like cracking that occurs under the influence of cyclic loading and a corrosive environment
Weeping	Progressive damage to composite materials typically by decohesion between layers and microcracking through layers, resulting in small leak paths through the component wall.
Other	Other material degradation sub-cause not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description).

H.2.6.5 External interference sub-cause

Records shall include sub-classification of incidents that have a primary failure cause of external interference, selected from the following list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
Company employee	Inadvertent external interference by a person or group of people employed to provide services to the operating company in return for payment
Company contractor	Inadvertent external interference by a person or group of people that has undertaken a contract or agreement with an

Acceptable values	Value description
	operating company employee or an operating company contractor to provide goods or services for a set duration
Third party	Inadvertent external interference by a person or group of people other than the operating company and its employees and contractors
Vandalism	External interference caused wilfully by a person or group of people, including failure caused by attempted theft of service fluid
Other	Other external interference sub-cause not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)
Unknown	The cause of the failure cannot be identified

H.2.6.6 Material or manufacturing sub-cause

Records shall include sub-classification of incidents that have a primary failure cause of material or manufacturing, selected from the following list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
Defective longitudinal seam weld	Defects in the longitudinal seam weld of the pipe or component caused by faulty material or manufacture, or both
Defective helical seam weld	Defects in the helical seam weld of the pipe caused by faulty material or manufacture, or both
Defective circumferential weld	Defects in a mill circumferential weld of the pipe caused by faulty material or manufacture, or both
Defective pipe or component body	Material defect in the pipe or component body caused by faulty material or manufacture, or both (e.g., hard spot, lamination, voids, incomplete resin curing, etc.)
Other	Other defect in the pipe or component caused by faulty material or manufacture, or both, not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)

H.2.6.7 Construction sub-cause

Records shall include sub-classification of incidents that have a primary failure cause of construction, selected from the following list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
Defective circumferential weld	Defects in the circumferential weld of the pipe or component caused by construction
Defective branch connection weld	Defects in branch connection welds caused by construction
Other defective weld	Defects in another weld
Defective other joint	Defects created by a joining method other than welding (e.g., threaded connection, HDPE fusion joint)

Acceptable values	Value description
Defective pipe or component body	Construction defect in the pipe or component body (e.g., hard spot, gouge, etc.)
Overbending	Bending non-metallic pipe below its specified minimum bending radius
Wrinkle or buckle	Wrinkling or buckling of the pipe due to construction
Dent	Dent on the pipe caused by construction activity
Other	Other defect or damage caused by construction not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)

H.2.6.8 Geotechnical failure sub-cause

Records shall include sub-classification of incidents that have a primary failure cause of geotechnical, selected from the following list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
Wash-out or erosion	Removal of supporting soil due to a wash-out, erosion, or scour causing a loss of bearing or subsidence, or both
Freeze-thaw	Ground movement caused by cyclic freezing and thawing of the supporting soil
Construction or undermining	Ground movement caused by construction and mining activities within the vicinity of the pipeline
Earthquake	Ground movement from an earthquake (e.g., fault offsets, upheaval, and subsidence)
Soil subsidence/Slope movement	Ground movement or loss of supporting soil due to settlement or slope instability
Other	Other geotechnical sub-cause not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)

H.2.6.9 Other causes sub-cause

Records shall include sub-classification of incidents that have a primary failure cause of other causes, selected from the following list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
Control system malfunction	Control system failed to perform requested action as designed or performed an action in error
Improper operation	Decision error made by operating company during service causing a failure of the pipeline system and resulting in an incident
Lightning	Failure of the pipeline system due to lightning/electrical storms
Fire	Failure of the pipeline system due to fire within the operating company's facilities or as the result of uncontrolled wild fires

 © 2015 CSA Group

	Acceptable values	Value description
	Other	Other sub-cause not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)
	Unknown	The cause of the failure cannot be identified

H.2.7 Flaw description

Records shall include description of the flaw that caused failure as specified in Items a) to e) for failure incidents with a cause of metal loss or cracking:

a)	Maximum depth of initiating flaw in the through-thickness direction	Depth (mm); optional for minor leaks
b)	Total length of initiating flaw	Length (mm); optional for minor leaks
c)	Distance from material surface to embedded crack or planar flaw	Shortest distance from material surface to embedded flaw (mm); enter zero for flaws that are not embedded; optional for minor leaks
d)	Crack orientation	Angle of crack relative to axis of pipe or component, for failures with a cause of cracking
e)	Flaw description	Text description of flaw origin and failure mechanism; optional for minor leaks

H.2.8 Design of failed piping

Records shall include details of design applicable to the failed pipe or component, specified in Items a) to p):

	Element name	Element description
a)	Standard or specification	Standard or specification to which the failed pipe or component was supplied, including year of publication
b)	Manufacturer	Manufacturer of the failed pipe or component; record “unknown” if manufacturer information is not obtainable
c)	Sour service	State whether the pipeline is designed for sour or non-sour service:

Acceptable values	Value description
Sour	Service meeting the definition for sour service in Clauses 15.10 and 16.2
Non-sour	Service that does not meet the definition for sour service in Clauses 15.10 and 16.2

d)	Commissioning date	(yyyy-mm-dd)
e)	Outside diameter	The specified outside diameter of the pipe, or matching pipe for components, excluding the manufacturing tolerance provided in the applicable specification or standard, (mm)
f)	Nominal pipe or component wall thickness	The nominal wall thickness specified for the pipe, or component, (mm)

 © 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
g)	Maximum operating pressure	Maximum pressure at which the pipeline segment has been qualified by means of pressure testing to be operated, (MPa)
h)	Specified minimum yield strength	The specified minimum yield strength prescribed by the specification or standard to which the material was manufactured, (MPa). Not applicable for reinforced composites and polyethylene.
i)	Specified body toughness	Specified minimum toughness for pipe or component body (J) and specimen size (mm). Not applicable for reinforced composites and polyethylene.
j)	Special design or construction methods	Describe location and characteristics of special design or construction methods for crossings or other situations
k)	Specified depth of cover	Specified depth of cover (mm) above the top of the pipe at the incident location (use zero for aboveground pipeline segments)
l)	Actual depth of cover	Observed or estimated depth of cover (mm) above the top of the pipe at the incident location (use zero for exposed or aboveground pipeline segments)
m)	Damage prevention	Method of damage prevention at the incident location selected from the following list of acceptable values (include all that apply):

Acceptable values	Value description
Concrete slab	Concrete slab is used to protect pipeline against mechanical damage
Steel plates	Steel plates are used to protect pipeline against mechanical damage
Casing	Pipeline is placed within a larger pipe for mechanical protection
Buried markers	Continuous buried markers such as plastic tape or mesh provide an indication of alignment location
Fencing	Continuous fencing provides an indication of alignment location
ROW barriers	Right-of-way encroachment barriers that are installed to prevent the movement of excavation equipment over the pipeline
One-call participant	Pipeline operating company participates in a one-call program
No physical protection	Pipeline is not physically protected
Other	Other unspecified form of damage prevention not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)

n)	MPR	Reinforced composite pipe manufacturer’s maximum pressure rating

© 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
o)	SDR	Standard dimension ratio, ratio of pipe average outside diameter to pipe minimum wall thickness, specific to polyethylene pipe
p)	Material designation code	Specifies the grade of polyethylene pipe

H.2.9 Description of defective joint

H.2.9.1 Description of defective weld

Records shall include attributes of weld specified in Items a) to f) for incidents that have a primary cause of material or manufacturing or construction and a sub-cause of defective weld.

	Element name	Element description
a)	Type of weld joint	Identify the type of weld joint from the list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
Circumferential butt weld between material of equal thickness	Welds between materials with the same nominal thickness
Circumferential butt weld between material of unequal thickness	Welds between materials with a difference in nominal thickness that is greater than 2.4 mm or greater than 1.6 mm for welds in sour gas service
Longitudinal butt weld between material of equal thickness	Welds between materials with the same nominal thickness
Helical butt weld between material of equal thickness	Welds between materials with the same nominal thickness
Fillet weld	
Other weld joint	Other weld joint not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)

b)	Welding process	Process used to produce weld joint selected from the list of acceptable values:

Acceptable values	Value description
Low-frequency ERW	Low-frequency (less than 1 kHz) alternating current or direct current resistance welding
High-frequency ERW	High-frequency (1 kHz or more) resistance welding
Shielded metal arc welding	Welding with filler metal from a covered electrode and shielding from decomposition of the electrode covering
Submerged arc welding	Welding with filler metal from a bare electrode and shielding by a blanket of granular flux

 © 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
	Flux cored arc welding	Welding with a continuous filler metal electrode and shielding gas from a flux within the tubular electrode, with or without additional shielding gas
	Gas tungsten arc welding	Welding with a nonconsumable tungsten electrode and from externally-supplied gas
	Gas metal arc welding	Welding with a continuous filler metal electrode and shielding from externally-supplied gas
	Oxy-fuel welding	Welding that produces coalescence by heating with an oxyfuel gas flame with or without the application of pressure and with or without filler metal
	Other welding process	Other welding process not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)
c)	Required weld toughness	The minimum toughness (J) required by the applicable standard or specification for the weld and the specimen size (mm); if no value was specified, enter “none”
d)	Actual weld toughness	Measured toughness (J) for sound weld, of material and welding design similar to failed weld, and specimen size (mm); optional for minor leaks
e)	Weld flaw type	The type of weld flaw found at the failure initiation site, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Planar flaw	Cracks, lack of fusion or penetration, undercut, concavity, or overlap
	Volumetric flaw	Cavity or solid inclusion
	Shape imperfection	Misalignment or imperfect profile
	None	No flaw present
f)	Weld flaw description	Additional information about weld flaw

H.2.9.2 Description of defective mechanical or adhesive bonded joint

Records shall include attributes of mechanical joints specified in Items a) to d) for incidents that have a primary cause of material or manufacturing or construction and a sub-cause of defective mechanical joint.

	Element name	Element description
a)	Type of mechanical joint	Identify the type of mechanical joint from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Threaded integral joint or coupling	Threaded integral joint or coupling between pipes or between pipe and fitting, or pipe and flange
	Adhesive bonded joint	Adhesive bonded joint between pipes or between pipe and fittings, or pipe and flange

© 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
	Metallic coupling between pipe sections	Specialized mechanical metallic couplings used to join spoolable composite pipes or reinforced thermoplastic pipes at pipe to pipe connections or pipe to steel transitions.
b)	Joining process	Process used to produce joint selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Threaded joints	Joining by use of threaded pipe ends according to pipe manufacturer's procedure for thread compound, make-up torque and tools.
	Bonded joints	Joining by use of pipe or fitting ends prepared according to pipe manufacturer's procedure for dimensions, adhesive application, make-up position, adhesive cure, and tools.
	Metallic couplings	Joining by use of a specialty coupling manufactured and specified by the pipe manufacturer that is installed in accordance with the pipe manufacturer's requirements.
	Other mechanical joining process	Other mechanical joining process not included in the list of acceptable values (add text description)
c)	Joint flaw type	The type of joint flaw found at the failure initiation site, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Thread damage	Threads found in a damaged state in form of thread cracks, thread profile removed
	Joint back out	Threaded or bonded joints pulled apart in service
	Metallic coupling damage	Metallic coupling found leaking due to inadequate sealing to pipe end or from damage to pipe end at the coupling to pipe interfacial area
	None	No flaw visible
d)	Joint flaw description	Additional information about joint flaw

H.2.9.3 Defective fusion joint

Records shall include attributes of polyethylene pipe and components fusion joints specified in Items a) to d) for incidents that have a primary cause of material or manufacturing or construction and a sub-cause of defective fusion joint.

	Element name	Element description
a)	Type of fusion joint	Identify the type of fusion joint from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Butt fusion	Pipe or fitting ends are joined by butt fusion joining
	Electrofusion	Pipe to pipe couplings or fittings are joined by heating and fusing together using embedded heating wires

 © 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
	Saddle fusion	Pipe is joined to side wall of pipes using a saddle fusion fitting that is fusion joined using special heating and joining equipment or electrofusion
b)	Joining process	Process used to produce joint selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Butt fusion joint	Pipe or fitting ends are joined by heating and fusing together under specified interfacial pressure using specified parameters and specialized fusion joining equipment
	Electrofusion	Pipe or fitting ends are joined by heating and fusing together using electrofusion couplings with embedded heating wires. The welding parameters are applied and controlled by a programmable portable device that controls the fusion joining process
	Saddle fusion	a) Standard saddle fusion (sidewall fusion) involves heating of both the external surface of the pipe and the matching surface of the "saddle" type fitting. For heating, concave and convex shaped surface heating tools are applied until both surfaces reach the proper fusion temperature b) Electrofusion with a saddle fitting with embedded heating wires (see "electrofusion" above)
c)	Joint flaw type	The type of joint flaw found at the failure initiation site, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Lack of fusion	Pipe ends break apart showing lack of fusion between joined surfaces
	Crack	Crack visible within fusion bead either exterior or interior surface
	None	No flaw visible
d)	Joint flaw description	Additional information about joint flaw

H.2.10 External coating and corrosion prevention

Records shall include attributes of the coating and corrosion suppression in Items a) to c) for incidents that have a sub-cause of external material loss or a primary cause of cracking; optional for other causes:

	Element name	Element description
a)	External coating	External coating present on the pipeline at the incident location at the time of the incident, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Fusion-bond epoxy	Factory-applied fusion-bond epoxy (FBE) coating
	Extruded polyethylene	Factory-applied extruded polyethylene coating consisting of two layers — a polyethylene layer over a mastic

 © 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
	Coal tar	Field- or factory-applied coal tar enamel coating
	Wax and vinyl tape	Vinyl tape coating with wax primer
	Asphalt enamel	Field- or factory-applied asphalt enamel coating
	Polyethylene tape	Polyethylene tape applied with primer/adhesive
	Polyvinyl-chloride tape	Polyvinyl-chloride tape applied with primer/adhesive
	Polyurethane	Field- or factory-applied thin film polyurethane
	Multi-layer system	A multi-component system
	Foam insulation	Foam insulation applied to the external surface of a pipeline to maintain the temperature of the fluid
	Bare	Bare pipe or component; no external coating present
	Metallic coating	Thin metallic protective coating
	Other	Other external coating type not included in the list of acceptable values; (add text description)
b)	External coating condition	Characterization of the integrity of the external coating system, at or adjacent to the failure location, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Holidays — None	No coating holidays; perfectly intact coating
	Holidays — Local	Less than 10% in total area per pipe joint
	Holidays — Extensive	Greater than 10% in total area per pipe joint
	Wrinkles — None	No coating wrinkles; perfectly intact coating
	Wrinkles — Local	Less than 10% in total area per pipe joint
	Wrinkles — Extensive	Greater than 10% in total area per pipe joint
	Disbondments — None	No coating disbondments; perfectly intact coating
	Disbondments — Local	Less than 10% in total area per pipe joint, including tenting
	Disbondments — Extensive	Greater than 10% in total area per pipe joint, including tenting
	Unknown — destroyed during failure incident	The coating at the failure location was destroyed or removed during the failure incident, for example by fire; describe condition of adjacent coating in Clause H.2.2 o)
c)	Cathodic protection	Method used to provide cathodic protection, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Impressed current	Employs a system using an external power source to cathodically polarize the metal to limit corrosion damage

© 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
	Sacrificial anodes	Reduces the corrosion of a metal in an electrolyte by galvanically coupling it to a more anodic metal
	None	No cathodic protection used on pipeline

H.2.11 Internal corrosion coating and corrosion prevention

Records shall include attributes of the internal coating and corrosion suppression for Items a) to h) for incidents that have a sub-cause of internal material loss:

	Element name	Element description
a)	Internal Coating	Internal coating on the pipeline at the incident location at the time of the incident, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	None	No internal coating present
	Concrete	Coated with concrete
	Low-density polyethylene	Lined with low-density polyethylene (LDPE)
	High-density polyethylene	Lined with high-density polyethylene (HDPE)
	Cement grouted	Coated with cement grout
	PVC	Lined with polyvinyl chloride
	Thin film	Coated with a thin polymer film coating
	Polypropylene	Lined with high-density polypropylene
	Metal cladding	Clad with a higher corrosion-resistant metal than the pipe or component body
	Epoxy	Mill- or field-applied coatings
	Other	Other internal coating type not included in the list of acceptable values; add text description
b)	Internal coating condition	Characterization of the integrity of the internal coating system, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Holidays — None	No coating holidays; perfectly intact coating
	Holidays — Local	Less than 10% in total area per pipe joint
	Holidays — Extensive	Greater than 10% in total area per pipe joint
	Disbondments — None	No coating disbondments; perfectly intact coating
	Disbondments — Local	Less than 10% in total area per pipe joint, including tenting

	Element name	Element description
	Disbondments — Extensive	Greater than 10% in total area per pipe joint, including tenting
	Collapsed internal liner	Internal liner separated from pipe
	Leaking internal liner	Weeping or leaking of internal liner
c)	Corrosion inhibitor type	The type of corrosion inhibitor used at the incident location at the time of failure, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	None	No corrosion inhibitor is used
	Active inhibitor	Inhibitor reacts with the metal surface of the pipe to form a passive film
	Passive inhibitor	Inhibitor is adsorbed onto the metal surface of the pipe to form a passive (hydrophobic) film
	Neutralizing inhibitor	Inhibitor reacts directly to affect the corrosiveness of the environment (e.g., biocides, oxygen scavengers, sodium hydroxide)
	Other	Other internal corrosion inhibitor type not included in the list of acceptable values; add text description
d)	Corrosion inhibition method	The method used to add inhibitor selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Continuous injection	Inhibitor is continuously injected into the service fluid
	Batch inhibition once per period	A batch of inhibitor is added to the pipeline on a fixed schedule (state period in days)
	Ad-hoc batch inhibition	A batch of inhibitor is added to the pipeline on a variable schedule
	Other inhibition method	Another inhibition method not included in the list of acceptable values is used (add text description)
e)	Surface preparation method	The method(s) used to prepare the internal pipe surface prior to inhibition, selected from the list of acceptable values. Choose all that apply
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Chemical cleaning	Cleaning with solvents or acids
	Mechanical cleaning	Cleaning with brush or scraper tools
	Other	Another cleaning method was used (provide text description)
	None	No surface preparation performed
f)	Minimum fluid velocity	Recorded or estimated minimum fluid velocity
g)	Maximum fluid velocity	Recorded or estimated maximum fluid velocity

 © 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
h)	Types of Cleaning pigs	Identify the types of cleaning tools used after inhibition program was initiated, selected from the list of acceptable values (choose all that apply): Ball pig Foam pig Disk pig Plug pig Wire brush pig Other

H.2.12 Release

Records shall include description of the release specified in Items a) to h). All fluid volumes are to be reported under standard conditions of 15 °C and 101.3 kPa:

	Element name	Element description
a)	Fluid type	Type of fluid released during the incident, selected from the list of acceptable values:
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Gas	Natural gas, manufactured gas, or synthetic natural gas,
	Sour gas	Gas meeting the definition for sour service in Clause 15.10 and Clause 16.2
	Liquefied petroleum gas (HVP)	High-vapour-pressure natural gas by-products (e.g., ethane, butane, propane)
	Liquid petroleum products (LVP)	Low-vapour-pressure refined petroleum products (e.g., gasoline, aviation fuels, diesel fuels, and heating oil)
	Condensate (LVP)	Low-vapour-pressure hydrocarbon fluid with a specific gravity greater than that of butane
	Crude oil (LVP)	Unrefined or synthetic crude oil
	Crude oil blends	A mixture of crude oil blended with other constituents (e.g., liquefied petroleum gas fluids or light crude oils)
	Multiphase fluid	Oil, gas, and water in any combination produced from one or more oil wells, or recombined oil well fluids that possibly have been separated in passing through surface facilities
	Sour multiphase fluid	Sour multiphase fluid meeting the definition for sour service in Clause 15.10 and Clause 16.2
	Oilfield water	Fresh or salt water, regardless of purity or quality, from wells or surface locations for the purpose of providing water injection to underground reservoirs or disposing of water from hydrocarbon production, processing, or storage facilities
	Steam	Oilfield steam within the scope of Clause 14.1.2

© 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
	Other gas	Other unspecified fluids flowing as a gas; this option should be used only if the fluid cannot be categorized into another available fluid type
	Other liquid	Other unspecified service fluids flowing as a liquid; this option should be used only if the fluid cannot be categorized into another available fluid type
b)	Circumferential location	The approximate location on the circumference of the pipe (hour of the clock position) where the release occurred or was initiated, as viewed in the downstream direction
c)	Opening area	Actual area of the opening in the pipeline, (mm^2)
d)	Volume released to land	Volume of service fluid released to land during the incident, (m^3)
e)	Volume recovered from land	Volume of service fluid recovered from land subsequent to the incident (m^3)
f)	Volume released to water	Volume of service fluid released to water during the incident, (m^3)
g)	Volume recovered from water	Volume of service fluid recovered from water subsequent to the incident, (m^3)
h)	Volume released to atmosphere	Volume of service fluid released to the atmosphere during incident, (m^3)

H.2.13 Incident consequences

Records shall include information specified in Items a) to j) related to the consequences associated with an incident:

	Element name	Element description
a)	Hazardous condition	The major hazard created by the release of service fluid from the pipeline, selected from the list of acceptable values. Hazards have the potential to cause undesired consequences
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Erosion	Soil loss or relocation due to the flow of service fluid from the pipeline
	Fire	Combustion of service fluid released from the pipeline and accompanied by the persistent presence of a flame. Indicate whether ignition of service fluid occurred during the incident, selected from the list of acceptable values: no fire (no fire occurred), unintentional ignition (fire occurred caused by unintentional ignition), and intentional ignition (a fire was ignited intentionally)
	Explosion	Rapid chemical reaction or expansion of the released service fluid accompanied by a potentially-damaging atmospheric overpressure wave
	Blast damage	State “blast damage” if an explosion (blast damage) occurred during the incident or else state “No blast damage”

© 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description
	Toxic plume	A toxic or asphyxiating column or band of service fluid moving from a point of release through the air, soil, or water (e.g., a smoke plume)
	Contamination	An adverse change in soil or water as a result of contact or presence of a released service fluid
b)	Other hazard and non-hazardous condition	Other unspecified hazard types arising as a direct result of the service fluid release. This option should be used only if the primary effect cannot be categorized into another available choice
c)	Public fatalities	Number of members of the public fatally injured due to the release of the service fluid, who are neither employees nor contractors of the operating company
d)	Contractor fatalities	Number of contractor employees fatally injured due to the release of the service fluid
e)	Employee fatalities	Number of operating company employees fatally injured due to the release of the service fluid
f)	Public injuries	Number of members of the public injured (substantial risk of death, unconsciousness, major bone fracture, third-degree burn, internal hemorrhage, disfigurement, loss/impairment of function of body and mental faculty) who are neither employees nor contractors of the operating company
g)	Contractor injuries	Number of contractor employees injured (substantial risk of death, unconsciousness, major bone fracture, third-degree burn, internal hemorrhage, disfigurement, loss/impairment of function of body and mental faculty)
h)	Employee injuries	Number of operating company employees injured (substantial risk of death, unconsciousness, major bone fracture, third-degree burn, internal hemorrhage, disfigurement, loss/impairment of function of body and mental faculty)
i)	People evacuated	Number of members of the public evacuated as direct result of the incident
j)	Affected land area	Largest land area affected (eroded, contaminated, burned or blast damaged) as a result of the release of service fluid, m^2
k)	Contaminated soil volume	The actual or estimated volume of soil contaminated by released service fluid for which remedial action is required; for gas/HVP/water releases that do not result in soil contamination, enter zero, m^3

H.2.14 Condition monitoring and assessment measures

Records shall include information specified in Items a) to k) regarding preventive measures that had been performed at the location of the incident prior to the incident.

© 2015 CSA Group

	Element name	Element description/format
a)	External coating rehabilitation date	Date that the coating was reapplied to the pipeline during coating rehabilitation (YYYY/MM)
b)	Rehabilitated external coating	Type of external coating applied during coating repair or rehabilitation, selected from the list of acceptable values
	Acceptable values	**Value description**
	Liquid epoxy	Liquid epoxy applied using brush, roller or spray methods
	Coal tar tape	Field-applied coal tar bonded to fabric tape backing applied with heating
	Wax and vinyl tape	Vinyl tape coating with wax primer
	Polyethylene tape	Polyethylene tape applied with primer/adhesive
	Polyvinyl-chloride tape	Polyvinyl-chloride tape applied with primer/adhesive
	Heat-shrink sleeve	Cross-linked polymer backing film coated with heat sensitive adhesive
	Other	Other unspecified coating type. This option should be used only if the coating cannot be categorized into another available choice
	Not applicable	No coating rehabilitation performed on pipeline segment
c)	Pressure test date	Date most recent pressure test was completed (YYYY/MM/DD)
d)	Test pressure	Calculated maximum internal test pressure applied at the location of the incident during the most recent pressure test (MPa)
e)	Test medium	Specify “Gas” or “Liquid” to describe the fluid used to provide internal pressure during the most recent pressure test
f)	In-line crack detection inspection date	Date of in-line inspection to detect cracking at the location of a pipeline failure incident prior to the incident occurring. (YYYY/MM/DD); if no inspection done, record “none”
g)	In-line crack detection inspection comment	Description of the in-line crack inspection, including information about tool type, manufacturer, results, etc.
h)	In-line metal loss inspection date	Date of most recent in-line inspection to detect thinning of the pipe wall at the location of a pipeline failure incident prior to the incident occurring, (YYYY/MM/DD); if no inspection done, record “none”
i)	In-line metal loss inspection comment	Description of the in-line inspection, including information about the tool type, manufacturer, results, etc.
j)	Direct assessment date	Date of the most recent risk-based engineering assessment to evaluate pipe or component condition preceding the incident. (YYYY/MM/DD); if no direct assessment done, record “none”
k)	Direct assessment comment	Description of the direct assessment

© 2015 CSA Group

Annex I (informative)
Oilfield steam distribution pipelines — Alternate provisions

Note: *This informative Annex has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so.*

Δ I.1 General

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

I.1.1

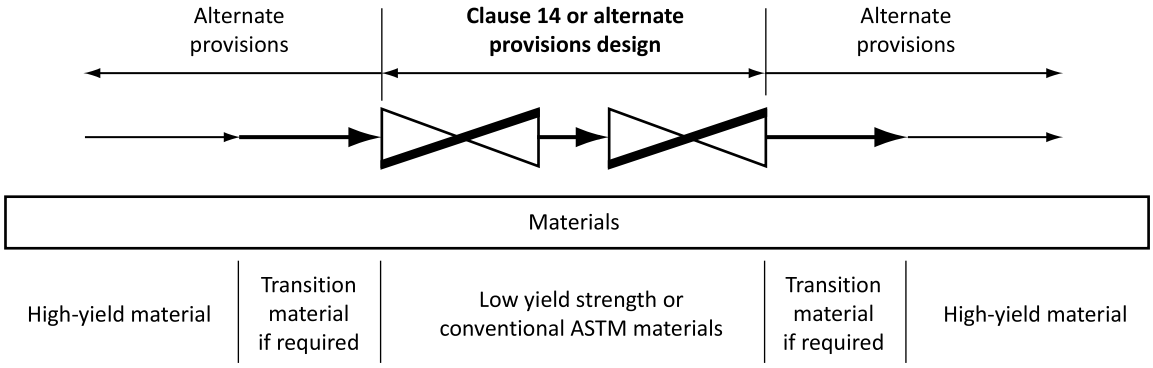
These alternate provisions are based upon the mechanical design methodology of ASME B31.3, Chapter IX: High Pressure Piping. Where possible, consistency of terminology with this Standard has been retained. The provisions of Clause 14 shall be applicable, except insofar as such requirements are modified by this Annex.

I.1.2

The scope of the alternate provisions is limited to oilfield steam distribution pipelines. This Annex shall not be used for multiple service stream distribution or other high temperature pipelines. Design in accordance with the provisions described in this Annex or the requirements of Clause 14 can be used within the same piping system (see Figure I.1). Transition material shall comply with the requirements of Clause 14.3.7 and transition piece welds between items of unequal thickness shall conform to Clause 14.4.3.

Note: *Pipelines or portions of pipelines designed to this Annex should follow this Annex in its entirety.*

Figure I.1
Scope of design example scenario
(See Clause I.1.2.)



 © 2015 CSA Group

I.2 Design

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

I.2.1 Straight pipe under internal pressure

I.2.1.1

The internal pressure design thickness shall be not less than that determined using the following formula:

$$t = \frac{[D - 2C_0][1 - \exp(-1.155P / S)]}{2}$$

where

t = pressure design thickness, mm

D = nominal outside diameter, mm

C_0 = the sum of external mechanical allowances, mm. C_0 includes external corrosion allowance, thread depth, grooves, external erosion allowance, and other potential external wall loss allowances

P = design pressure, MPa

S = i) basic allowable stress for listed materials from ASME B31.3, Paragraph K302.3.2(b), MPa;
ii) not more than the lower of two-thirds of the specified minimum yield strength (SMYS) at room temperature and two-thirds of the yield strength at design temperature for materials listed in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section II, Part D, *Properties*, MPa; or
iii) not more than the lower of two-thirds of the specified minimum yield strength (SMYS) at room temperature and two-thirds of the yield strength at design temperature for materials not listed in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section II, Part D, *Properties*, MPa, as determined from mechanical tests

I.2.1.2

The nominal wall thickness for the pipe selected shall be not less than the minimum required wall thickness, *tm*, as specified in Clause 14.2.2.1.

I.2.2 Pipe bends

The minimum required wall thickness for the intrados and extrados of pipe bends shall be determined as follows:

a) The following formula shall be used:

$$t = \frac{[D - 2C_0][1 - \exp(-1.155PI / S)]}{2}$$

where

I = a value determined by ASME B31.3, Paragraph 304.2.1, Equation 3d and 3e, for the intrados and extrados respectively

b) Thickness variations from neutral axis to intrados/extrados shall be as allowed by ASME B16.49.

c) The nominal wall thickness of pipe selected for bending shall include an allowance for thinning.

© 2015 CSA Group

I.2.3 Limits of calculated stresses due to sustained loads and displacement strains

I.2.3.1
The allowable displacement stress range (thermal stress) and the sum of longitudinal stresses due to pressure, mass, and other sustained loads shall be limited in accordance with the requirements of Paragraphs K302.3.5(c) and K302.3.5(d) in ASME B31.3.

I.2.3.2
The designer shall consider the need to perform fatigue analysis as specified in ASME B31.3, Paragraph K304.8.

I.2.4 Expansion, flexibility, and support
Flexibility analysis shall be performed for each piping system, in accordance with ASME B31.3, Paragraphs 319.1 through 319.7, except that the displacement stress range shall be within the allowable displacement stress range as specified in Clause I.2.3.1 [in accordance with Paragraphs K302.5 (c) and (d)].

I.2.5 Wall thickness tolerance
Pipeline designs for which the minus tolerance on wall thickness is less than the minus tolerance specified in the applicable pipe or bend standard or specification may be used, provided that the wall thickness of the pipe or bend installed is as specified in Clause I.2.1 or Clause I.2.2, respectively.

I.3 Materials
C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

I.3.1 Pipe

I.3.1.1
Pipe shall be manufactured by the seamless or longitudinal seam, submerged arc weld process only.

I.3.1.2
The company shall validate and confirm that materials, listed or unlisted, are suitable for the intended service when pipelines are designed and constructed in accordance with Annex I. Materials that meet all the requirements of the applicable material specification and have the allowable stress values specified in Table K-1 of ASME B31.3, or Section II Part D of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, at the maximum design temperature are classified as listed materials for pipelines designed in accordance with Annex I. Materials that do not meet all requirements of this Clause shall be classified as unlisted as defined in Clause 14.1.5.

I.3.2 Material testing

Δ #### I.3.2.1
Unlisted materials shall be tension tested (including yield strength, tensile strength, and elongation) at both the maximum design temperature and room temperature for each grade, wall thickness, outside diameter, and heat number combination, to confirm the required mechanical properties. The designer

 © 2015 CSA Group

shall consider the potential for loss of mechanical properties over the life of the pipeline and shall consider the need to perform tests, such as aging tests using the Larson-Miller parameter.

Note: *Testing requirements apply to all unlisted materials whether pipe, fittings (e.g., elbows, tees, caps, branch fittings, transition pieces, bends), or flanges.*

I.3.2.2

Procedure qualification welds as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, shall be done for each material and welding electrode classification. This shall include an all-weld-metal tensile test to ensure that the yield strength of the deposited metal is no less than the pipe SMYS at room and design temperature.

All-weld-metal tests shall be as described in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section II, Part C, for the applicable electrode classification, except that post weld heat treatment (PWHT) shall not be done unless the PWHT is required by the WPS.

I.3.2.3

The minimum design temperature requirement shall be determined in accordance with paragraph K323.2.2 of ASME B31.3. Pipe, bends or fitting material, seam welds, and HAZ shall be impact tested in accordance with the procedures specified in the applicable component standard and shall have impact properties at the minimum design temperature that meet the requirements of ASME B31.3, Table K323.3.5.

I.4 Joining

I.4.1

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For the welding of pressure-retaining pipe and components, and any attachments thereto, the following shall apply:

a) Detailed welding procedure specifications shall be established and qualified in accordance with the requirements of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, and as follows:
   i) Procedure qualification welds tests shall be done for each combination of material grade and welding electrode classification, using the same limitations on preheat, interpass temperature and heat input as will be encountered during production welding.
   ii) Circumferential welds and HAZ shall meet the Charpy V-notch absorbed energy requirements of the piping material to be joined.
   iii) Each procedure qualification test shall include full thickness transverse tensile tests at both room temperature and the maximum design temperature. Testing shall be in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, with the additional requirement that results shall include yield strength. The measured yield strength and tensile strength shall be not less than the base material SMYS and tensile strength at room temperature and at maximum design temperature.
b) The performance qualification of welders and welding operators shall be in accordance with the requirements of ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, and shall include both volumetric (radiographic testing or ultrasonic testing) nondestructive examination and mechanical testing as follows:
   i) Each test weld shall meet the acceptance criteria of Table K341.3.2 of ASME B31.3.
   ii) Each test weld shall pass the bend test requirements of ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX.

 © 2015 CSA Group

I.4.2

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Visual examination as defined in ASME B31.3, Paragraph 344.2.1, shall be performed on all welds. All butt welds shall be inspected for 100% of their circumference by radiographic or ultrasonic methods or a combination of these methods. The standards of acceptability for production welds shall be in accordance with Table K341.3.2 of ASME B31.3.

I.5 Pressure testing

Pressure testing shall be conducted in accordance with Clause 14.5 with the following exceptions:

a) the maximum test pressure shall not produce a simple hoop stress ($PD/2t$) that exceeds 100% of the SMYS in the limiting pipe or component in the system under test; and

b) the minimum metal temperature during testing shall be not less than the minimum design temperature determined in accordance with Clause I.3.2.3.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Annex J (informative)
Recommended practice for determining the acceptability of imperfections in fusion welds using engineering critical assessment

Note: *This informative Annex has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so.*

J.1 Introduction

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The purpose of this Annex is to outline the application of the concept of engineering critical assessment (ECA) to fusion welds. Where imperfections are discovered that do not meet the requirements of Clauses 7.10.4.3, 7.11, or 7.15.10, whichever is applicable, this Annex provides a method to determine whether or not repairs are required.

J.2 General

J.2.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Engineering critical assessment of fusion welds is an analytical procedure, based upon fracture mechanics principles, that allows determination of the maximum tolerable size of imperfections.

Note: *The tolerable imperfection sizes determined by ECA are smaller than the critical sizes for failure because of the safety factors employed in the assessment procedure.*

J.2.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Before imperfections are accepted as tolerable on the basis of ECA, it shall be established that growth during service will not result in such imperfections exceeding the tolerable size.

J.3 Application of Annex J

The primary use of this Annex is in the analysis of welds in the pipeline system after the normal construction activity is completed. Examples of such applications are changes in the operating conditions of older pipelines or audits of nondestructive inspection records from recent construction. Where imperfections are discovered that do not meet the requirements of Clause 7.10.4.3, 7.11, or 7.15.10, whichever is applicable, ECA of the specific case will indicate whether or not repairs are required.

 © 2015 CSA Group

J.4 Comparison of work quality standards and engineering critical assessment

J.4.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Work quality standards of acceptability have been based upon experience with traditional welding and inspection practices. This experience has indicated the capabilities of welding procedures and personnel in minimizing the incidence of welding imperfections during production welding of pipe girth welds. The acceptance criteria for the work quality standards are specified in Clauses 7.11 and 7.15.10.

J.4.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Standards of acceptability based upon ECA include consideration of the measured weld properties and intended service conditions for a specific application. Alternatives to the work quality standards of acceptability may be derived for sections of a new pipeline, using the ECA methods of Annex K. The ECA methods of Annex K may also be used to determine the need for repair of specific weld imperfections.

J.5 Methods for conducting ECA

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Although other ECA methods may be used, the recommended method for determining tolerable sizes of imperfections for specific welds is based upon the methods of Annex K, as follows:

a) The stress analysis specified in Clause K.2.1 may be specific to the location of the weld in the pipeline and to the location of the imperfection on the pipe weld circumference.

b) The mechanical properties of the welds being considered shall be determined as specified in Clauses K.4.2 to K.4.4 on a weld made using the same procedure as that used for the welds being considered.

   Note: *The value of CTOD fracture toughness used in the analysis should be representative of the region in which the imperfection is situated and need not be the minimum measured value.*

c) For other than cracks, the maximum tolerable sizes of imperfections shall be determined as specified in Clause K.5, except that
   i) the maximum imperfection length may exceed 0.1 times the nominal pipe circumference;
   ii) for gas service, the maximum imperfection depth may exceed 0.5 times the nominal wall thickness, provided that the requirement of Clause J.2.2 is met; and
   iii) for liquid service, the maximum imperfection depth may exceed 0.25 times the nominal wall thickness, provided that an analysis to determine fatigue crack growth is carried out and the requirement of Clause J.2.2 is met.

d) For cracks discovered after construction, their depth shall be considered to be equal to the full wall or weld thickness, whichever is applicable, and the maximum tolerable length shall be determined as specified in Clauses K.5.3.3 to K.5.3.5.

e) The requirements of Clauses K.7 and K.8 shall be met.

J.6 Responsibility for ECA

The company or operating company, whichever is applicable, is responsible for performing and documenting the ECA analysis. Only those with demonstrated understanding and experience in the application of fracture mechanics should conduct the ECA.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Annex K (informative)
Standards of acceptability for circumferential pipe butt welds based upon fracture mechanics principles

Note: *This Annex is an informative (non-mandatory) part of this Standard except for those welds that are being evaluated in accordance with the requirements of Clause 7.10.4.3. It has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so.*

K.1 Introduction

K.1.1 Purpose

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

This Annex provides the analytical methods that are used to derive standards of acceptability for weld imperfections, as an alternative to the standards of Clauses 7.11 and 7.15.10. The standards of acceptability that are derived are based upon engineering critical assessment and include consideration of the measured weld properties and the intended service conditions. This Annex also includes requirements for stress analysis, weld properties, welding procedure qualification and control, weld inspection, and documentation.

K.1.2 Work quality

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall establish an appropriate quality control program to ensure that good welding work quality is maintained.

K.1.3 Strain-based assessment

If strain-based design is required, the maximum acceptable sizes of imperfections shall be determined in accordance with Annex C.

Note: *Such work should be conducted only by those with demonstrated understanding and experience in the application of both stress-based and strain-based ECA methods.*

K.2 Stress analysis

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

K.2.1 General

Analysis as specified in Clauses 4.6 to 4.10 shall be performed for each segment of pipeline where this Annex applies to determine the axial and longitudinal stresses to which circumferential pipe butt welds may be subjected during construction and operation. Where the axial stress is tensile, the value shall be multiplied by 1.5 and the result added to the longitudinal contribution of all other stresses, except for weld residual stresses, to determine the maximum effective applied tensile bending stress. Where the axial stress is compressive, the value shall be added to the longitudinal contribution of all other stresses, except for weld residual stresses, to determine the maximum effective applied tensile bending stress.

Notes:

1) *Clause K.5 requires that certain calculations be carried out using applied strain rather than applied stress. For such cases, the calculated stress values should be converted to equivalent strains using an appropriate stress-strain relationship.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

2) *The company should be satisfied that environmental and service conditions under which the pipeline system will operate, both internally and externally, would not give rise to significant imperfection growth.*

K.2.2 Residual stress

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The analytical methods used do not require any determination of residual stress for use in the assessments.

K.3 Welding procedure qualification

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

K.3.1

Welding procedures shall be qualified as specified in Clauses 7.6, 7.7, and K.4 and shall be limited as specified in Clause K.3.2.

Notes:

1) *The company should establish a quality program to ensure that the control of welding consumables is adequate.*

2) *Consideration should be given to the effects of changes in residual elements that are not included in the carbon equivalent formula.*

K.3.2

Welding procedure specifications shall be limited by the applicable essential changes given in Table K.1. Essential changes in welding procedure shall necessitate requalification of the welding procedure specification or establishment and qualification of a new welding procedure specification.

K.4 Mechanical properties

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

K.4.1 General

Fracture toughness and other mechanical properties of welding procedure qualification welds shall be determined as specified in Clauses K.4.2 to K.4.4 and used in the applicable calculations required by Clause K.5.

K.4.2 Weldment tensile strength

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

K.4.2.1 Preparation

The test specimens shall be prepared as specified in Clause 7.7.3.1, except that the weld reinforcement on both sides of the specimen shall be removed by machining or grinding.

K.4.2.2 Testing

Two tension test specimens shall be ruptured under tension load. The ultimate tensile strength of the weldment shall be calculated using the maximum load and the original specimen cross section area.

 © 2015 CSA Group

K.4.2.3 Requirements

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The tensile strength for each test shall be equal to or greater than the specified minimum tensile strength of the pipe material. The specimen shall not fail in the weld.

K.4.3 Weldment notch toughness

Where it is intended to evaluate spherical porosity as a non-planar imperfection in accordance with the provisions of Clause K.5.2, three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens, with the axis of the notch located as close as practical to the centreline of the weld metal, and oriented with the longitudinal axis of the specimen parallel to the pipe axis, shall be tested at the minimum design temperature as specified in ASTM E23.

K.4.4 Weldment fracture toughness

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

K.4.4.1 General

Except as modified by this Standard, CTOD tests shall be carried out as specified in ISO 15653 or ASTM E1820. The CTOD specimens shall be removed from approximately the 12 o'clock position and shall be oriented such that the length is parallel to the pipe axis.

Notes:

1) *The need for additional supplementary specimens to assess the effects of particular weld imperfections should be considered.*

2) *Additional testing should be conducted to determine the minimum toughness of any regions that are suspected to be particularly susceptible to brittle fracture.*

K.4.4.2 Preparation

Test specimens shall not be flattened or machined to remove the pipe curvature, unless such processes are deemed necessary to carry out local compression prior to fatigue pre-cracking of the test specimens. For preferred geometry test specimens, weld reinforcements may be removed for fatigue crack monitoring purposes.

Note: *Local compression is not usually necessary for welds less than 15 mm thick.*

K.4.4.3 Testing

Three specimens from each of the groups listed in Table K.2 shall be tested at the minimum design temperature. Pre-cracking shall be done according to the relevant standard, except that the crack shall be extended by fatigue for at least 1.3 mm or $a_o/2$, whichever is less, where a_o is original crack size including the fatigue pre-crack. Crack-front straightness shall be such that the maximum difference between any two of the inner seven of the nine-point-measurement values of original crack size shall not exceed the larger of $0.2a_o$ or $0.1B$, where a_o is pre-crack depth and B is specimen thickness. Difficulty can be experienced in meeting this requirement for thick sections or high-strength materials, or both (e.g., Grade 550, wall thickness 15 mm). In such cases, methods such as those described in ISO 15653 can be required to reduce residual stresses; pre-compression should be employed. For shallow cracks, calculations shall be performed in accordance with ASTM E1820. The minimum value of twelve CTOD toughness measurements shall be used in the calculations required by Clause K.5. Pop-ins shall be considered as the controlling event, unless they can be attributed with certainty to such spurious occurrences as plate delamination.

© 2015 CSA Group

K.5 Determination of maximum acceptable sizes of imperfections

K.5.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Indications identified as cracks shall be unacceptable regardless of dimensions, except as allowed by Clause J.5 d). Except as allowed by Clause K.5.2, weld imperfections shall be considered planar imperfections for the purposes of Clause K.5.3.

K.5.2 Spherical porosity

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For welds having Charpy V-notch energy absorption of not less than 40 J at the minimum design temperature, spherical porosity may be considered to be a nonplanar imperfection, and in such cases, indications of spherical porosity to a maximum of 5% of the projected area on a radiograph shall be considered acceptable. Alternatively, at the option of the company, spherical porosity may be treated as a planar imperfection, with the area containing the spherical porosity being treated as a single planar imperfection.

K.5.3 Planar imperfections

K.5.3.1 General

K.5.3.1.1 Assessment procedures

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The procedures to determine the maximum acceptable planar imperfection size are given in two options. Option 1 is generally a more conservative approach than Option 2. Both options include a method to determine imperfection size to prevent failure by plastic overload as well as by crack growth. Whichever of the two options is used, the maximum acceptable length for each type and depth of imperfection considered shall be as specified in Clause K.5.3.5.

K.5.3.1.2 Nomenclature

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Common letters and symbols used in Clause K.5.3 are defined as follows:

Geometrical parameters (see Figures K.4 and K.5):

D = pipe outside diameter

d = imperfection depth (height)

L = imperfection length

L_1 = critical imperfection length for brittle or elastic/plastic fracture

L_1max = allowable imperfection length to prevent brittle or elastic/plastic fracture

L_2 = critical imperfection length for plastic failure

L_2max = allowable imperfection length to prevent plastic failure

t = pipe wall thickness

p = ligament size at closest proximity of imperfection to surface

 © 2015 CSA Group

α = D/t

β = $L/(\pi D)$

η = d/t

Material properties and loading parameters:

E = Young's modulus

nv = Poisson's ratio

δ = CTOD fracture toughness, mm (see Clause K.4.4)

δ_e = elastic component of applied CTOD, mm

K = stress intensity factor

σ_a = maximum effective applied tensile bending stress, MPa (see Clause K.2.1)

σ_f = flow stress (use Table K.3 or $(\sigma_y + \sigma_{UTS})/2$)

σ_{ref} = reference stress, MPa

σ_{UTS} = tensile strength, MPa (see Clause K.4.2.2)

σ_y = yield strength, MPa (according to CSA Z245.1, Clauses 7.2.2 and 7.2.3)

ε_a = maximum effective applied tensile bending strain (see Clause K.2.1)

ε_y = elastic yield strain σ_y/E

K.5.3.2 Depths of imperfections

K.5.3.2.1

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The maximum depths of imperfections that may be considered in accordance with this Annex are 0.5 times the nominal wall thickness for gas service and 0.25 times the nominal wall thickness for liquid service.

K.5.3.2.2

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

For imperfection depths measured using an appropriately accurate nondestructive inspection method, the maximum allowable imperfection sizes may be specified as maximum lengths, *L*max, related to imperfection depth, *d*.

K.5.3.2.3

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

As an alternative to the requirements of Clause K.5.3.2.2 or for imperfection depths that are not measured, each type of imperfection shall be considered to have a depth, *d*, equivalent to the maximum anticipated through-thickness dimension of its corresponding weld pass in the completed weld. The additional thickness of the reinforcement at the cap and root shall not be considered as part of the weld pass.

 © 2015 CSA Group

K.5.3.3 Determination of maximum size of imperfection — Option 1

K.5.3.3.1 General

The maximum size of imperfection to prevent brittle fracture shall be determined as specified in Clause K.5.3.3.3, and the maximum size of imperfection to prevent plastic failure shall be determined as specified in Clause K.5.3.3.4.

K.5.3.3.2 Embedded imperfections

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Where the minimum ligament p is equal to or greater than the depth (height) of the imperfection d, such an imperfection shall be considered to be an embedded imperfection. Where p is less than the depth of the imperfection, such an imperfection shall be considered to be a surface imperfection having an assigned depth equal to the sum of p and the depth of the imperfection.

K.5.3.3.3 Maximum size of imperfection to prevent brittle fracture

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Calculate the maximum size for each type of imperfection considered using the following steps:

a) Calculate the effective imperfection size parameter using the following formula:

$$\bar{a} = C\frac{\delta}{\varepsilon_y}$$

where

$\bar{a}$ = effective imperfection size parameter, mm

C = $\dfrac{1}{2\pi\left(\dfrac{\sigma_a}{\sigma_y}\right)^2}$ for $\dfrac{\sigma_a}{\sigma_y} \le 0.5$

C = $\dfrac{1}{2\pi\left(\dfrac{\varepsilon_a}{\varepsilon_y} - 0.25\right)}$ for $\dfrac{\sigma_a}{\sigma_y} > 0.5$

b) For surface imperfections, calculate $|\bar{a} / t|$ and, using Figure K.4, determine d/t for convenient values of d/L_1 at the appropriate value of $|\bar{a} / t|$. Calculate the individual values of L_1 for each value of depth.

c) For embedded imperfections, calculate $?/2p + d$ and using Figure K.5, determine $d/(2p + d)$. Calculate the individual values of L_1 for each value of depth.

d) Plot d versus L_1 from the values calculated in Items b) and c), and using the values of imperfection depth of interest, determined as specified in Clause K.5.3.2, determine the maximum acceptable length of imperfection to prevent brittle fracture, L_1max, for the appropriate depth or depths. Where necessary for surface defects, values for L_1 at ratios of $d/L_1 < 0.01$ may be obtained by linear extrapolation of the d versus L_1 curve.

Note: *This treatment for calculating the maximum size of imperfection to prevent brittle fracture uses the original CTOD design curve and the concept of an effective imperfection size ($\bar{a}$), as considered in Level 1 of BSI PD 6493, which has been superseded by BSI BS 7910.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

K.5.3.3.4 Maximum size of imperfection to prevent plastic failure

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The maximum size to prevent plastic failure (L_2max) for each type, location, and depth of imperfection considered shall be calculated using whichever of the following formulae is applicable:

$$\frac{\sigma_a}{\sigma_f} = \frac{\cos(\eta\beta\pi) - \frac{\eta\sin(2\beta\pi)}{2}}{1 + \left(\frac{4}{\pi} - 1\right)\frac{\eta\beta}{0.025}} \quad \text{for } \eta\beta \le 0.025$$

$$\frac{\sigma_a}{\sigma_f} = \frac{\cos(\eta\beta\pi) - \frac{\eta\sin(2\beta\pi)}{2}}{\frac{4}{\pi}} \quad \text{for } \eta\beta > 0.025$$

L_2max = maximum imperfection length, which is determined by plotting the relationship between $d/t(\eta)$ and the allowable relative imperfection length (β) for a series of σ_a/σ_f values

Notes:

1) *Analysis of a large number of full-scale fracture tests has shown that the plastic collapse behaviour of a pipeline can be predicted using the Miller solution. This approach has been used to develop expressions for the maximum size of imperfection to prevent plastic failure, which has been modified to provide a consistent degree of conservatism.*

2) *Since the relationship is not explicit, some form of iterative solution is required.*

K.5.3.4 Determination of maximum size of imperfection — option 2

K.5.3.4.1 General

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The maximum size of imperfection to prevent fracture by elastic/plastic crack growth shall be determined using the failure assessment diagram (FAD) as described in Clause K.5.3.4.3, and the maximum size of imperfection to prevent plastic failure shall be determined as specified in Clause K.5.3.4.4.

K.5.3.4.2 Embedded imperfections

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

When using the FAD for fracture analysis, embedded imperfections shall be treated as surface imperfections of the same size unless the ligament p is less than $d/2$ (see Figure K.5). If p is less than $d/2$, the embedded imperfection shall be treated as a surface imperfection of the same length but with an assigned depth (height) of ($p + d$).

K.5.3.4.3 Maximum size of imperfection to prevent fracture

K.5.3.4.3.1 Critical imperfection size

There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The maximum size of an imperfection to prevent fracture shall be determined from the coincidence of the "assessment point" (K_r, L_r) with the failure assessment curve (FAC). The equation for the FAC (illustrated in Figure K.6) is

$K_r = (1 - 0.14L_r^2)\ \{0.3 + 0.7\exp(-0.65L_r^6)\}$

where

 © 2015 CSA Group

$K_r = (\delta_e / \delta)^{1/2}$

$L_r = \sigma_{ref} / \sigma_y$

The applied CTOD δ_e is obtained from the elastic stress intensity factor K, using the following relation between δ and K:

$$\delta_e = \frac{K^2(1-\nu^2)}{E}\frac{1}{m\sigma_y}$$

where

$m = 1.3$

The stress intensity factor K is given by

$$K = F\sigma_a\sqrt{\pi d}$$

where

$$F = F_b(\alpha,\beta,\eta) = \begin{cases} F_{bo}(\alpha,\beta,\eta) & \eta \geq 0.1 \text{ and } \beta \leq \frac{80}{\pi}\frac{\eta}{\alpha} \\ F_{bo}\left(\alpha,\beta = \frac{80}{\pi}\frac{\eta}{\alpha},\eta\right) & \eta \geq 0.1 \text{ and } \beta > \frac{80}{\pi}\frac{\eta}{\alpha} \\ F_{bo}\left(\alpha,\beta = \frac{80}{\pi}\frac{0.1}{\alpha},0.1\right) & \eta < 0.1 \end{cases}$$

where

$$F_{bo}(\alpha,\beta,\eta) = 1.09 + 2.31\alpha^{0.791}\beta^{0.906}\eta^{0.983} + \frac{m_1}{\alpha\beta} + \alpha^{0.806}\beta m_2$$

$$m_1 = -0.00985 - 0.163\eta - 0.345\eta^2$$

$$m_2 = -0.00416 - 2.18\eta - 0.155\eta^2$$

The reference stress σ_{ref} is given by

$$\sigma_{ref} = \frac{\sigma_a[\pi(1-\eta) + 2\eta\sin(L/D)]}{(1-\eta)[\pi - (L/D)\eta]}$$

Values of K_r and L_r are calculated using the equations above and plotted as an assessment point on the FAD as shown in Figure K.6. If the assessment point lies between the FAC and the origin, no fracture is predicted and the conditions are “acceptable”. If the point is outside of the FAC, the condition is “unacceptable”.

To estimate the imperfection length for fracture from a given imperfection, the variables are adjusted iteratively until the point (K_r, L_r) falls on the assessment curve FAC of the FAD. At this point, the measured fracture toughness δ equals the plasticity-adjusted crack driving force and the condition is a “critical” condition. This iterative procedure may be used to generate a curve of critical imperfection length L_1 as a function of imperfection depth.

K.5.3.4.3.2 Maximum allowable imperfection size

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The allowable imperfection length L_1max shall be calculated by dividing the critical length L_1 by 1.5. Allowable imperfection height shall be adjusted by subtracting an amount of 0.5 mm from d. In

 © 2015 CSA Group

addition, allowable imperfection height shall not exceed 0.5*t* for gas pipelines and 0.25*t* for oil pipelines (see K.5.3.2.1).

K.5.3.4.3.3 Fracture toughness requirements

A minimum CTOD toughness of 0.04 mm is required to use the FAD assessment method.

K.5.3.4.4 Maximum size of imperfection to prevent plastic failure

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

To prevent excessive plastic deformation in the vicinity of the imperfection, the value of σ_{ref} shall not exceed the flow stress σ_f. The cut-off condition to avoid plastic failure is $L_r \leq \sigma_f / \sigma_y$ (see Figure K.6). To assess critical conditions for plastic failure, the critical imperfection length L_2 to satisfy the condition $L_r = \sigma_f / \sigma_y$ is determined as a function of imperfection depth (height). The allowable imperfection length L_2max is then calculated by dividing the critical length L_2 by 1.5.

K.5.3.5 Maximum length of imperfection

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The maximum acceptable length for each type and depth of imperfection shall be the least of L_1max, L_2max, and 0.1 times the nominal pipe circumference.

K.6 Production welding control

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

The company shall institute suitable administrative and inspection procedures to ensure that production welding is consistently performed in accordance with the welding procedure qualified as specified in Clauses 7.6, 7.7, and K.3.

K.7 Inspection

K.7.1 General

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Welds shall be inspected as specified in Clause7.10 using the rule specified in Clause K.7.2, except that all welds shall be non-destructively inspected for 100% of their circumferences. Where possible, ultrasonic inspection in accordance with Clause 7.15 shall be used. Welds containing indications of cracks or indications of imperfections that exceed the applicable maximum acceptable dimensions shall be removed or repaired as specified in Clause 7.12. The company shall ensure that conservative approaches are used for imperfection size estimates.

K.7.2 Interaction between imperfections

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Coplanar imperfections shall be considered to interact if the circumferential distance between their indications is less than the length of the smaller indication. For such imperfections, the effective length shall be the sum of the dimensions of the two indications plus the distance between them.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table K.1
Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications
(See Clauses K.3.2, and P.2 and Tables 7.3 and 12.3.)

Welding variable change	Manual or semi-automatic welding	Mechanized or automatic welding
Welding process		
Change in welding process	X	X
Joint geometry		
Change in joint type	X	X
Change in specified bevel angle exceeding +10%,–5%	—	X
Change in specified bevel angle exceeding +20%,–5%	X	—
Change in root gap or root face exceeding ±20%	—	X
Change in root gap or root face exceeding ±50%	X	—
Pipe carbon equivalent		
Increase in carbon equivalent exceeding 0.05 for pipe having a specified minimum yield strength above 386 MPa	X	X
Pipe thickness		
(t = thickness tested)		
Change to thickness exceeding 1.1t	X	X
Change to thickness less than 0.9t	X	X
Pipe outside diameter		
(D = outside diameter tested)		
Change to pipe smaller than 0.5D	X	X
Change to pipe 60.3 mm OD or larger for D < 60.3 mm	X	X
Change to pipe larger than 323.9 mm OD for D from 60.3 mm to 323.9 mm	X	X
Composition of welding consumables		
Change in filler metal batch or heat	X	X
Change in flux batch	X	X
Size of filler metal		
Change in filler metal size	X	X
Welding position		
Change from horizontal welding to vertical welding	X	X
Change from vertical welding to horizontal welding	X	X
Change from roll welding to position welding	X	X

(Continued)

Table K.1 (Continued)

Welding variable change	Manual or semi-automatic welding	Mechanized or automatic welding
Change from position welding to roll welding	X	X
Change in direction of welding	X	X
Preheating temperature		
(T_{min} = minimum preheating temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test T_{max} = maximum preheating temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test)		
Change to preheating temperature lower than T_{min}	X	X
Change to preheating temperature more than 50 °C higher than T_{max}	X	X
Change to preheating temperature more than 25 °C higher than T_{max} where T_{max} > 200 °C	X	X
Interpass temperature		
(T_{min} = minimum interpass temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test T_{max} = maximum interpass temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test)		
Change to interpass temperature lower than T_{min}	X	X
Change to interpass temperature more than 50 °C higher than T_{max}	X	X
Change to interpass temperature more than 25 °C higher than T_{max} where T_{max} > 200 °C	X	X
Postweld heat-treatment		
Change of more than 25 °C from the postweld heat-treatment temperature	X	X
Change in postweld heat-treatment temperature greater than permitted by paragraph QW-407 of ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX	X	X
Shielding gas composition		
Change of more than 1 in the nominal percentage of any gas constituting more than 5% of the shielding gas	X	X
Shielding gas flow rate		
Change in flow rate exceeding 10%	X	X
Welding current type		
Change in current type (dc+, dc–, ac, or pulsed)	X	X
Voltage (*V*), amperage (*I*), travel speed (*S*), and wire feed speed (*F*)		
Change in *V*, *I*, *S*, or *F* exceeding 10%	X	X

(Continued)

Table K.1 (Concluded)

Welding variable change	Manual or semi-automatic welding	Mechanized or automatic welding
Change in heat input $\left(\frac{V \times I \times 60}{S}\right)$ exceeding 10%	X	X
Welding technique		
Decrease in the number of root bead or second pass welders	X	X
Change from stringer to weave technique for any pass	X	X
Decrease in the number of weld layers for welds having a maximum of four layers	X	X
Decrease exceeding 25% in the number of weld layers for welds having more than four layers	X	X

© 2015 CSA Group

Table K.2
Summary of CTOD tests required
(See Clause K.4.4.3.)

Group No.	Specimen geometry (as defined in ISO 15653)	Notch position	Intention of test
1	Preferred with through-thickness notch	Weld metal centreline	Assess lowerbound toughness of all the weld passes
2	Preferred with through-thickness notch	HAZ within central 50% of specimen (see Figure K.1)	Assess lowerbound HAZ toughness by use of specimen with HAZ in region of highest constraint
3	Subsidiary geometry with surface notch	Root notch crack depth = 3 mm or 0.15*t*, whichever is the greater (see Figure K.2)	Assess root region toughness and simulate a root defect (the most common position for defects)
4	Subsidiary or preferred geometry	Notch positioned into region of highest hardness (see Figure K.3)	Assess areas of local high hardness (which often correspond to regions of low toughness)

Table K.3
Flow stress values
(See Clause K.5.3.1.2)

Pipe grade	Flow stress, MPa
414 or less	$1.10\sigma_y$
Greater than 414 to 448	$1.09\sigma_y$
Greater than 448 to 483	$1.07\sigma_y$
Greater than 483 to 550	$1.06\sigma_y$
Greater than 550	$1.03\sigma_y$

Note: *σ_y is the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe in megapascals.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure K.1
Range of positions for the notch in Group 2 specimens
(See Table K.2.)

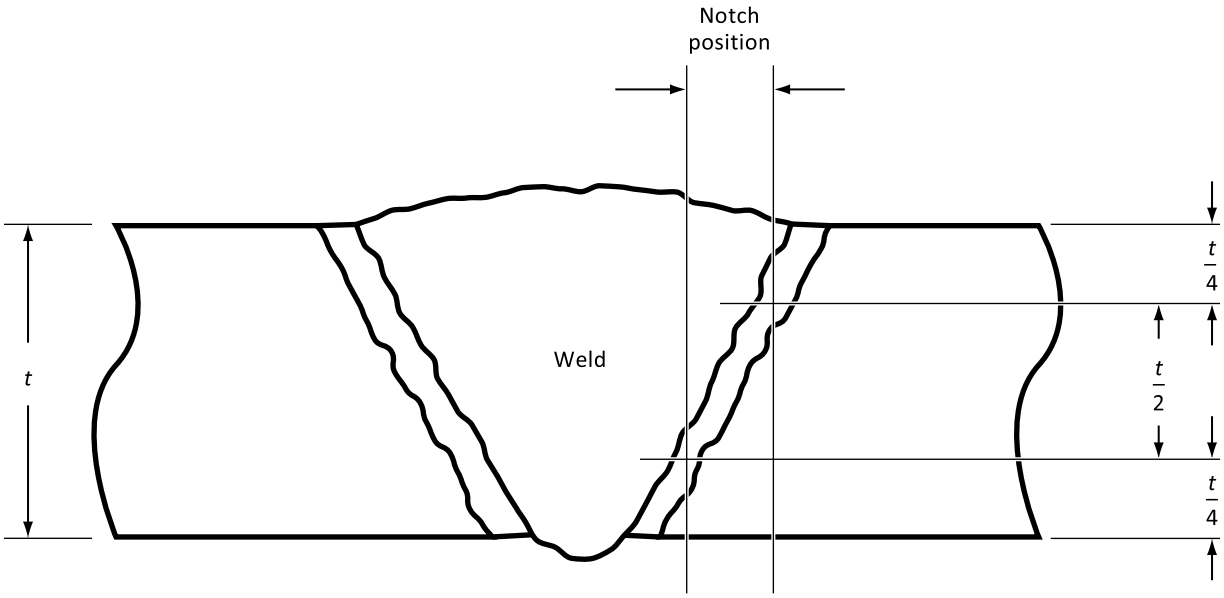
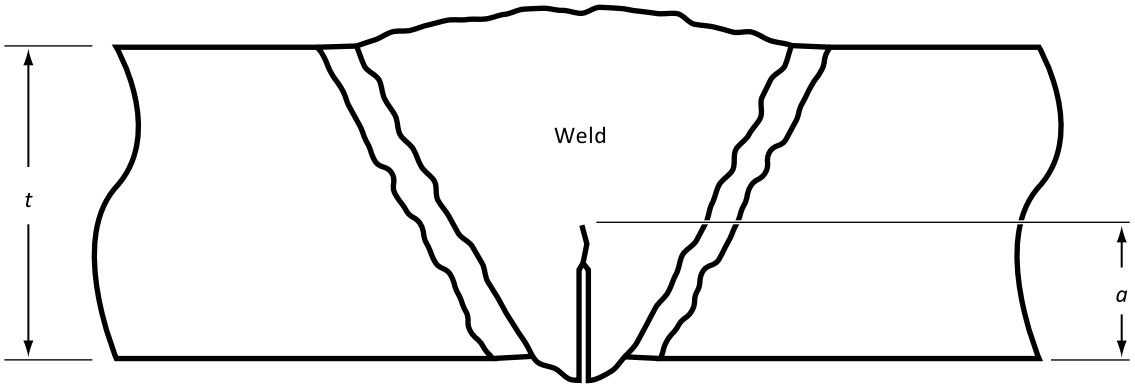
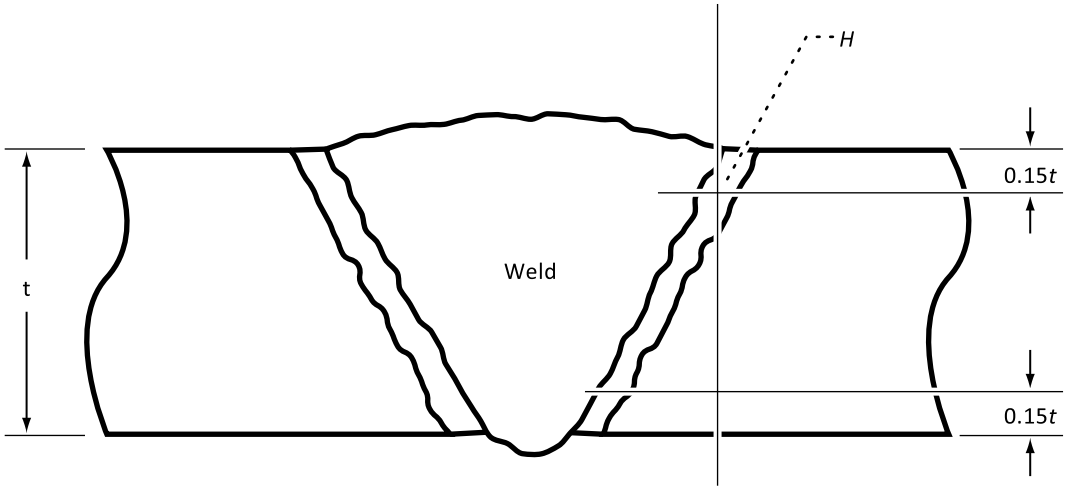


Figure K.2
Notch position for subsidiary geometry specimens (Group 3)
(See Table K.2.)

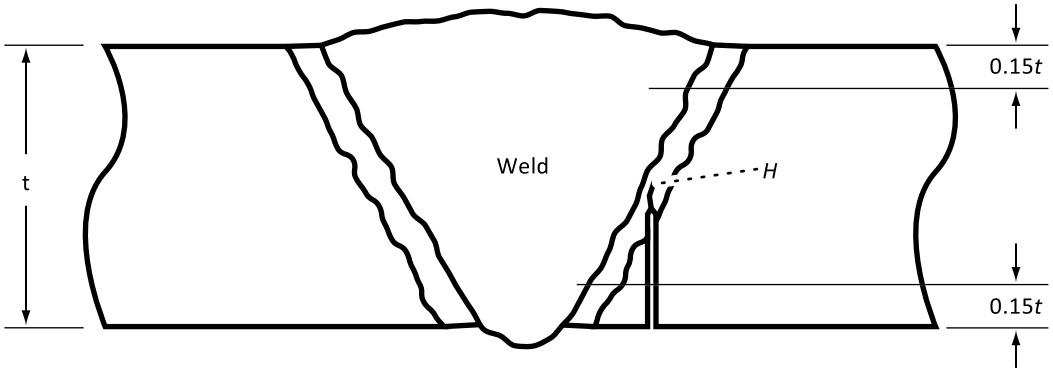


© 2015 CSA Group

Figure K.3
Specimen notch positions for Group 4 tests
(See Table K.2.)



(a)



(b)

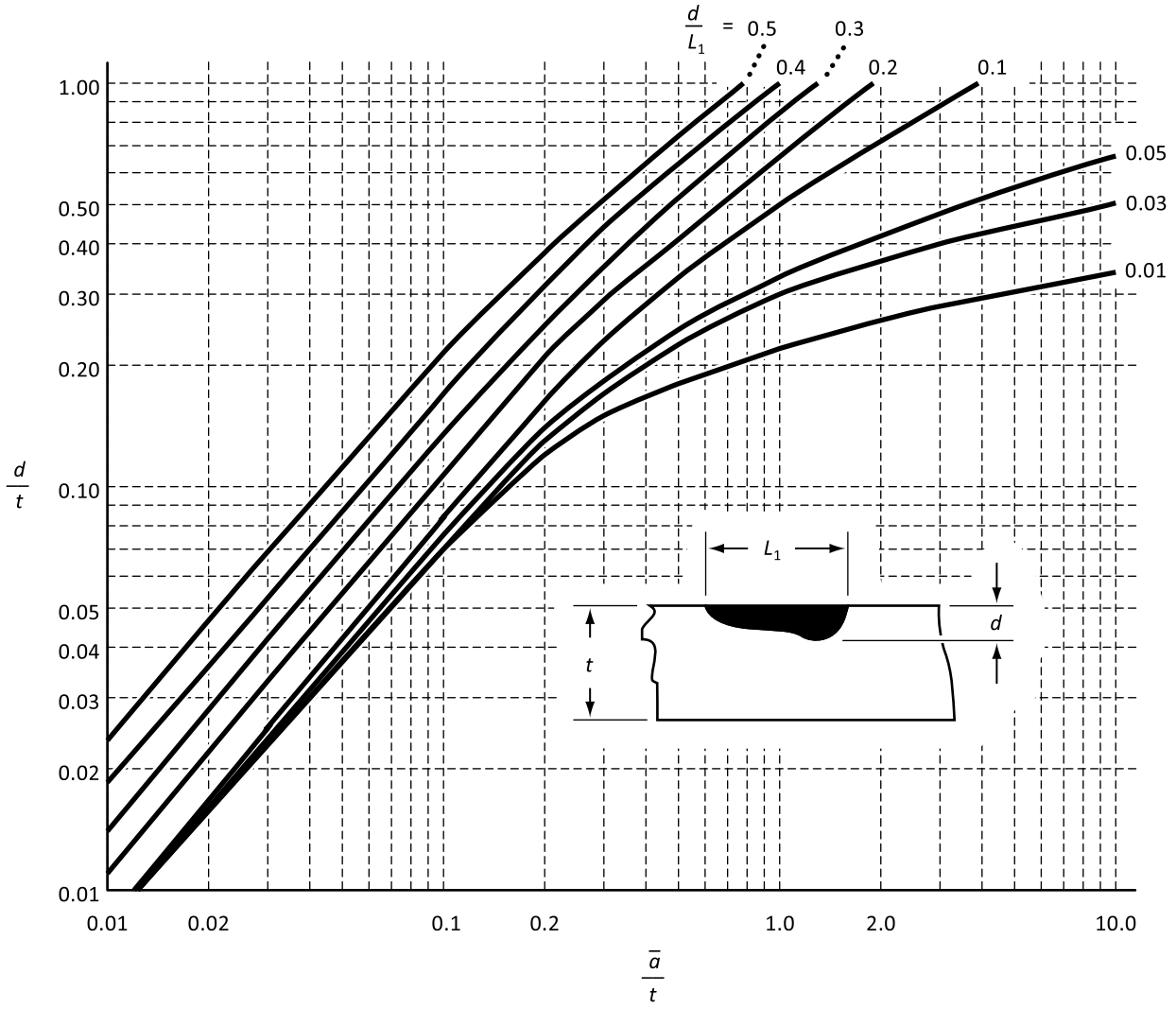
Notes:

1) *H represents the region of maximum hardness.*

2) *Where H is within 0.15t of either specimen surface, a preferred geometry specimen with a through-thickness notch positioned through H should be used [see Figure K.3 a)].*

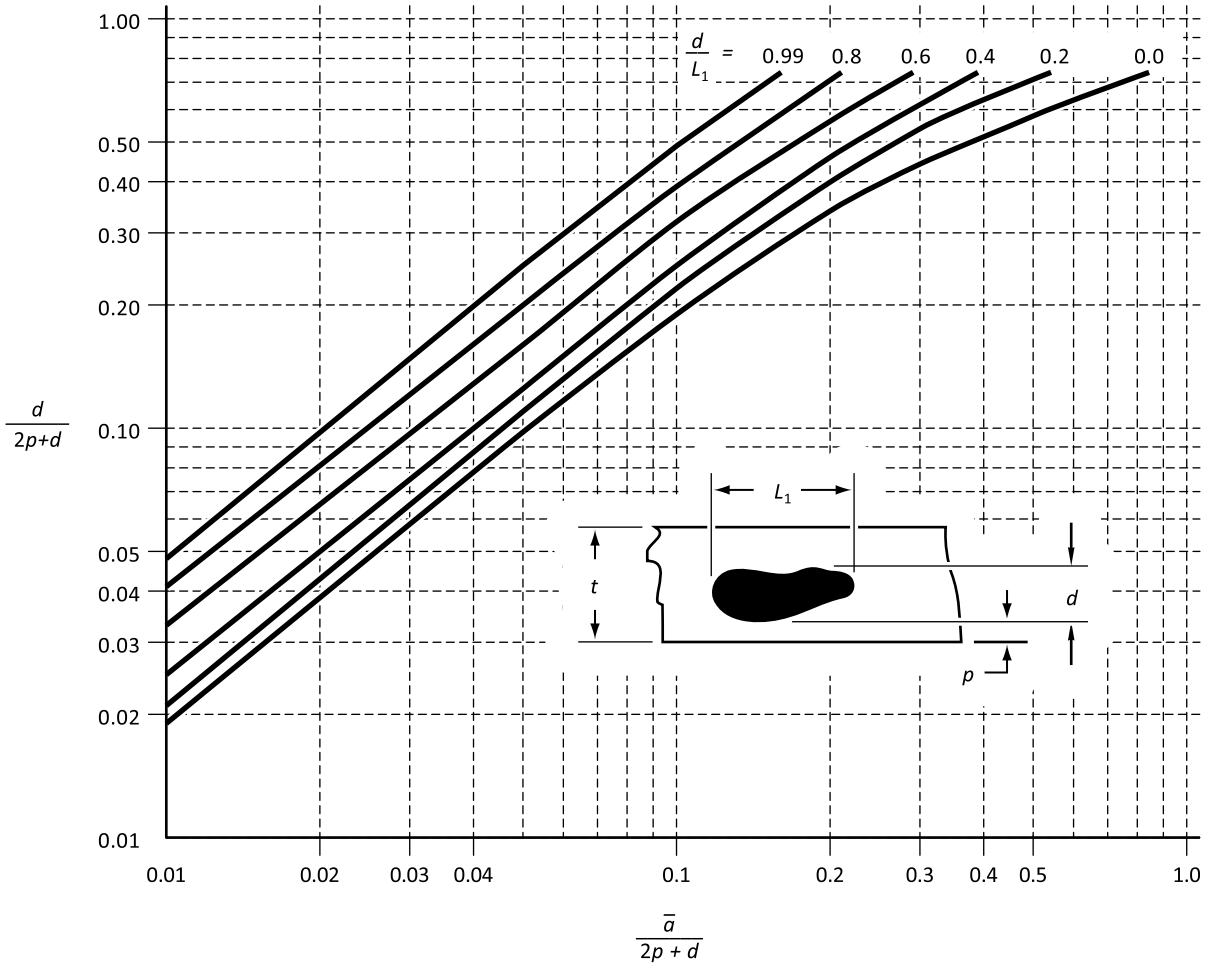
3) *Where H is more than 0.15t from both specimen surfaces, a subsidiary geometry specimen should be used with the notch cut from the nearer specimen surface and the notch tip located at H [see Figure K.3 b)].*

Figure K.4
Relationship between actual dimensions and $\left(\frac{\bar{a}}{t}\right)$ for surface imperfections
(See Clauses K.5.3.1.2 and K.5.3.3.3.)



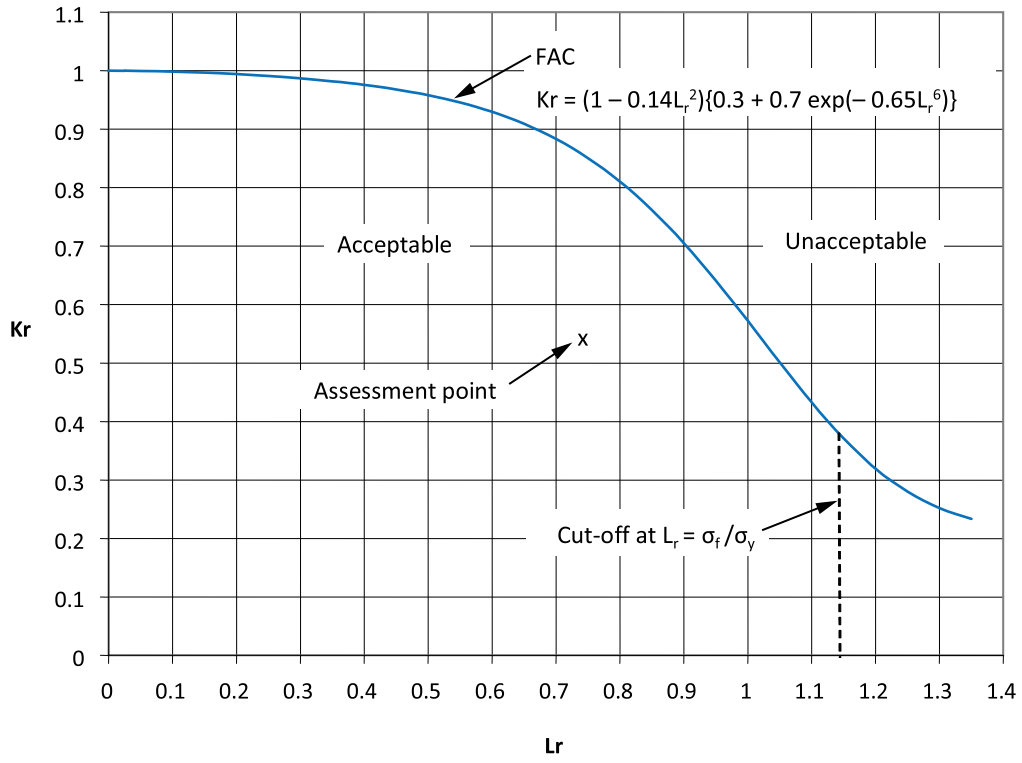
 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure K.5
Relationship between actual dimensions and $\left(\frac{\bar{a}}{2p+d}\right)$ for embedded imperfections
(See Clauses K.5.3.1.2, K.5.3.3.3, and K.5.3.4.2.)



 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure K.6
Failure assessment diagram (FAD)
(See Clauses K.5.3.4.3.1 and K.5.3.4.4.)



 © 2015 CSA Group

Annex L (informative)
Alternative or supplementary test methods for coating property and characteristics evaluation

Notes:
1) *This Annex is an informative (non-mandatory) part of this Standard.*
2) *This Annex applies to coating test methods that are allowed by Clause 9.2.5 and Clause 9.2.7.*

There is a commentary available for this Annex.

L.1 Introduction

L.1.1
This Annex identifies test methods that may be considered as alternatives or supplements to the primary test methods given in Table 9.1 for the evaluation of coating properties and characteristics as specified in Clauses 9.2.5 and 9.2.7. The methods are in some cases not suitable for all coating types or thicknesses. Test methodologies may be modified or customized to suit a particular coating, anticipated environment, or service condition. This Annex identifies test methods only; it does not identify acceptance criteria. Establishment of acceptance criteria is part of the coating evaluation requirements in Clause 9.2.6. Where acceptance criteria are included in the referenced test method, they should be used with caution.

L.1.2
It is not the intent of this Annex to prevent the development of new coatings or practices, or to limit methods used to evaluate coatings.

L.2 Test methods
Table L.1 identifies test methods that may be considered as alternatives or supplements to the primary test methods given in Table 9.1 for the evaluation of coating properties and characteristics as specified in Clause 9.2.5 and Clause 9.2.7.

Table L.1
Alternative or supplementary test methods
(See Clause L.2.)

Properties or performance characteristics	Alternative or supplementary coating test methods
Conductance and resistivity	ASTM D257
Water absorption	ASTM G9 ASTM D570
Water vapour transmission	ASTM D1653
UV and oxidative stability	ASTM D3895 ASTM G154

(Continued)

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table L.1 (Concluded)

Properties or performance characteristics	Alternative or supplementary coating test methods
Chemical resistance	ASTM D1693
Flexibility	ASTM G10
Adhesion and peel adhesion	ASTM G55 ASTM D5064 ASTM D1000 ASTM D1002 ASTM D4541 DIN 30672
Impact, penetration, and abrasion resistance	ASTM G14 ASTM G17 ASTM D4060
Temperature resistance and heat aging	ASTM D1525 BSI BS EN 253 BSI BS EN 489
Cathodic disbondment	ASTM G8 ASTM G19 ASTM G42 ASTM G80
Irregular joints, couplings, and patched areas in coated pipelines	ASTM G18

© 2015 CSA Group

Annex M (informative)
Guidance for system control, monitoring, and protection of hydrocarbon pipeline systems

Note: *This informative Annex has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so.*

M.1 Introduction

This Annex provides guidelines for the design and operation of equipment, devices, and system components that are used to control and monitor pressure and flow.

Note: *Further guidance is available in API 1164, API RP 1113, API RP 1130, API RP 1161, API RP 1165, API RP 1167, API RP 1168, and ASME B31Q.*

M.2 Scope

This Annex is applicable to the design, operation, and maintenance of hydrocarbon pipeline systems, excluding gas distribution systems, comprising

a) an initiating facility where a product is usually stored or processed and which is a receipt point into the pipeline system. This facility generally consists of the following items, as applicable:
   i) liquid storage tank(s);
   ii) suction line and valves, strainers, scrubbers, filters, and pumps or compressors;
   iii) metering and sampling equipment;
   iv) main discharge pump or compressor and discharge valves;
   v) coolers and heaters;
   vi) a sending trap/pig launcher assembly; and
   vii) station auxiliary equipment;
b) pipeline systems that transport received product to delivery facilities. Hydrocarbons may be received or delivered at multiple locations on the pipeline. Along the pipeline, strategically located, are
   i) block valves, check valves, and depressurization valves which can be used to provide maintenance or emergency isolation of portions of the pipeline; and
   ii) booster stations along the pipeline to provide pressure increases as required. Booster stations generally consist of the following items, as applicable:
      1) a mainline block and check valve;
      2) station inlet and discharge valves;
      3) scrubbers and filters;
      4) coolers and heaters;
      5) prime mover and pump or compressor combinations to deliver the required pressure and flow rates;
      6) a means of pressure control; and
      7) station auxiliary equipment; and
c) delivery facilities at the end of the pipeline, which accept and direct products shipped on the pipeline to storage facilities or other destinations as required. These facilities generally consist of the following items, as applicable:
   i) inlet trap/pig receiver and valves;
   ii) metering and sampling equipment;
   iii) pressure/flow control valves;
   iv) delivery selection valves;

 © 2015 CSA Group

v) liquid storage facilities; and
vi) station auxiliary equipment.

M.3 Facility control system design

M.3.1

Hydrocarbon pipeline control systems shall be designed to protect people, property, the environment, the facility, and pipeline systems from abnormal or dangerous conditions and should provide appropriate alarms, corrective control, and shutdown functions.

Note: *Hydrocarbon pipeline control systems typically provide the following functions:*

a) *manual or automatic valve and pump or compressor control;*
b) *alarming and shutdowns;*
c) *safety systems;*
d) *equipment protection;*
e) *data logging, monitoring, and trending of system parameters; and*
f) *monitoring of the facility communications link to a supervisory control and data acquisition (SCADA) system.*

M.3.2

Hydrocarbon pipeline control systems, which generally consist of programmable controllers or other equivalent systems, in addition to specialized instrumentation and electrical equipment, shall be linked to SCADA and leak detection systems or other operator interfaces to provide current operational information to a centralized control centre operator.

M.3.3

The operating philosophy shall be documented and include, but not limited to,

a) alarm and shutdown parameters;
b) a description of automatic or manual sequences;
c) a description of the process controls; and
d) a description of emergency shutdown procedures.

M.4 Control and protection functions

M.4.1

Equipment control and protection shall include the following functions, as applicable:

a) station sequence and permissive logic to allow the station to normally start and stop and operate safely either by local control or remote control via a telecommunication link to a SCADA system;
b) shutdown logic to provide equipment and pipeline protection;
c) custody transfer metering;
d) personnel and facility protection systems (e.g., lower explosive limit (LEL), fire detection and H_2S monitoring alarm and shutdown); and
e) process control over such parameters as pressure and flow.

Notes:

1) *Typical examples of shutdown functions and their causes are*
   a) *emergency shutdown (ESD) (see Clause 4.14.3.3 or 4.14.2.4): local emergency stop push buttons, local control systems and ESD commands from SCADA;*
   b) *high discharge pressure (see Clause 4.18): generally; the result of a downstream blockage or flow limitation;*
   c) *low discharge pressure: typically the result of excess flow or loss of containment;*
   d) *low suction pressure: generally the result of an upstream blockage or reduced supply;*

e) *high product temperature: the received product temperature is above acceptable limits;*
f) *meter fail: generally triggered after the station is running for a predetermined time and no pulses or signal indicating flow is received. Indicates that metering is not registering flow and the pumps or compressors are running;*
g) *high LEL or H_2S: sensors have detected LEL or gas at the station facility;*
h) *high sump: a high sump level has been detected indicating a pressure safety valve (PSV) or thermal relief valve (TRV) is discharging or failure of a pump seal;*
i) *high vibration: indicates excessive vibration has been detected on the pumps, compressors or piping system;*
j) *high bearing temperature: indicates excessive bearing temperature has been detected on pumps, compressors or motors;*
k) *seal fail: pump seals are leaking excessively;*
l) *high basic sediment and water (BS&W): detects if the received product contains high levels of BS&W;*
m) *off Specification product: in-line measurements detect chemical composition out of specification;*
n) *fire detection: sensors have detected smoke or fire at the station facility; and*
o) *local control system: failure of critical local control system components or utilities such as UPS or Instrument Air.*

2) *Communication failure might not result in shutdowns but will impact system operations when the local control system is not communicating with the SCADA system. The SCADA operator will have lost the ability to control or monitor the station and no instrumentation readings are being obtained which limits safe operation of the system. This can require stopping of pumps, compressors or the adjustment of pressure or flow setpoints to values that permit safe operation when relying on local control only.*

M.4.2

Shutdown and alarm settings including any time delays or bypasses shall be documented and readily available to the operating and maintenance personnel. Changes to these settings shall follow management of change procedures.

M.5 Pressure and flow control

M.5.1 General

Pressure and flow control setpoints implemented using locally programmed proportional integral derivative (PID) controllers or equivalent algorithms may be changed through the local human machine interface (HMI) or SCADA system to vary operating pressures or flow rates within specified parameters as required (see Clause 4.18).

Pressure control and overpressure protection of the facility and, to varying degrees, associated pipelines may be accomplished by the local control system using pressure monitoring transmitters and pressure control devices such as control valves or variable frequency drives (VFDs) on pumps or compressors. Independent overpressure protection systems such as relief valves, rupture disks, or redundant transmitters or switches shall be provided as applicable to protect against failures of the pressure control system (e.g., in the case of a pipeline backpressure control system, if the pressure transmitter failed, the control valves would close to raise the backpressure, potentially over-pressuring the pipeline; to avoid this, an option could be to install a second pressure transmitter or to implement control logic to detect the failed transmitter and to take appropriate action).

SCADA systems should not be used to provide real-time pressure or flow control to end devices such as control valves or VFDs because signal delay times will generally be too long to provide real-time control or control will be lost in the event of a SCADA communication outage. SCADA and local control systems may be used as part of an integrated system to provide overpressure detection and protection by

monitoring various operating parameters, including the position of pipeline block valves and delivery valves using limit switches, pressure transmitters, and alarm conditions.

The SCADA and local control systems shall be programmed to automatically alarm and should send shutdown commands, or take appropriate corrective action, to protect the pipeline from an over-pressure condition in the event that the pipeline flow path is lost.

M.5.2 Leak detection

To satisfy leak detection requirements (see Clause 4.20 and Annex E), local control systems shall provide relevant data so that calculations can be performed. If communication is lost and insufficient data is available to perform the required calculations, the affected pipelines shall be shutdown unless alternative methods are used to satisfy leak detection requirements.

M.5.3 Flow path logic

SCADA systems may be used to monitor the position of pipeline block valves and delivery valves using limit switches or position transmitters. If this operating flow path is lost, the operating company should consider programming the SCADA/local control system to automatically shutdown or take appropriate corrective action to protect the pipeline from an overpressure condition.

Shutdown settings for devices that provide overpressure protection shall be selected to protect the facility and the pipeline system. Pressure transmitters should be ranged to exceed 110% of maximum operating pressure to allow for calibration error and forensic analysis of overpressure events. For liquid pipelines, ranges below 0 kPag shall also be considered for detecting column separation.

Note: *The requirements for shutdown settings are intended not only to set the high discharge pressure settings at the pipeline MOP but to ensure that the pipeline hydraulics are reviewed and settings adopted such that individual facilities cannot overpressure the pipeline system.*

M.6 Wiring methods

Field devices shall be wired fail safe so that loss of power or interruption of signal would be interpreted by the control system as an abnormal, failed, or alarm condition. In the event that the loss of a signal would potentially cause a pipeline overpressure condition, a back-up device should be installed or the system should be configured to detect the loss of signal and react accordingly.

A separate/parallel hardwired shutdown system shall be considered to provide a second method of putting the facility in a safe mode, which may include bypassing the station. At incoming facilities, this system may be time delayed to allow a controlled system shutdown rather than a quick block-in of incoming lines. The type of valves and their closing times shall be considered in the facility design.

M.7 Testing and calibration

Control system components shall be tested, calibrated and the results documented regularly to ensure accuracy and functionality; the manufacturer's recommendations, operating conditions, and criticality of components shall be considered when determining frequency.

M.8 Valve control

C There is a commentary available for this Clause.

Unless it is determined by an engineering assessment that fail positions are appropriate, fail positions of

control valves, motor or electrically operated valves (MOVs), and pressure operated valves (POVs) shall be as shown in Tables M.1 and M.2.

Note: *Valves form an integral part of systems necessary to control pressure and flow and to protect pipeline systems from overpressure conditions.*

Table M.1
Fail positions for valves in liquid pipeline systems
(See Clause M.8.)

Location	PCV — (Pressure or flow regulation)		MOV or POV (open/close block)	
	Control signal loss	Motive power loss	Control signal loss	Motive power loss
Flow from a tank (producer or pipeline company) into pipeline	FC	FLP or FC	FLP	FLP (preferred) or FC
Flow to a tank or to a delivery point from a pipeline	FO*	FLP or FO	FLP	FLP
Pipeline Junctions	FO	FLP	FLP	FLP
Booster pump stations (no tanks) — Valves on station bypass piping	NA	NA	FLP	FLP
Booster pump stations (no tanks) — Pump or station isolation or control valves	FO†	FLP	FLP	FLP

* *If the delivery point is an intermediate point along the pipeline and a closed valve would not result in an overpressure condition occurring, the valve may be FC. There is the potential that failure of the control system would result in the inability to shut off flow into the delivery facility therefore a valve failing in the closed position would be safer for the delivery facility.*

† *FO requires an alternative method of over pressure protection. FC may be considered provided that in no instance, if a valve fails in the closed position, could it block in the pipeline (e.g., no station by-pass check valve installed).*

Notes:

1) *On pipelines carrying liquid products, pipeline block valves should not close automatically unless precautions are taken to ensure that the closing of these valves will not cause pressures or pressure transients that could exceed the MOP of the pipeline. Closing times should be reviewed to ensure overpressure conditions are not caused by stopping flow too quickly.*

2) *FC — Fail closed*
FLP — Fail last position
FO — Fail open
NA — Not applicable

© 2015 CSA Group

Table M.2
Fail positions for valves in gas pipeline systems
(See Clause M.8.)

Location	Control signal loss	Motive power loss
Mainline valves	FLP	FLP
Station bypass valve†	FLP or FO	FLP
Station isolation valves	FC**	FC**
Station configuration valves‡	FLP	FLP
Station pressure/flow control valves	FC	FLP
Station/plant/unit automated pressurizing valves	FC	FC
Plant/unit vent valves	FO	FO
Unit isolation valves	FC or FLP††	FC or FLP††
Unit surge/recycle valves	FO	FO
Fuel isolation valves§	FC	FC
Fuel vent valves§	FO	FO

* *Located on transmission system pipeline for line isolation or line to line crossover purposes outside facility boundary limits.*
† *Located on transmission system pipeline inside facility boundary limits.*
‡ *Used for the purpose of configuring multiple compressor plants in various operating configurations (i.e., series/parallel modes).*
§ *For liquid or gas fired compression units only.*
** *Integrated volume tank is acceptable means of providing FC action.*
†† *Fail Last Position if recycle/surge valve located outside of unit isolation valves.*

Notes:

1) *Station refers to a compressor station with multiple compressor plants or a custody transfer or pressure/flow regulation station.*

2) *Plant refers to a compressor plant which could be composed of multiple compression units sharing a common suction/discharge path.*

3) *Unit refers to a single compressor unit.*

4) *FC — Fail closed*
FLP — Fail last position
FO — Fail open
NA — Not applicable

© 2015 CSA Group

Δ

Annex N (informative)
Guidelines for pipeline system integrity management programs

Note: *This informative Annex has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so. However, for sour service pipelines (see Clause 16), this Annex is normative.*

N.1 Introduction

N.1.1
This Annex provides guidelines for developing, documenting and implementing an integrity management program to provide safe, environmentally responsible, and reliable service.

N.1.2
The major steps in an integrity management program are shown in Figure N.1, which contains references to relevant clauses in this Annex.

N.2 Integrity management program scope
An integrity management program shall address the life cycle of the pipeline system and shall be documented. The program should include methods for collecting, integrating, and analyzing information related to the following, as appropriate for the type of pipeline system:

a) design and construction;
b) condition monitoring,
c) maintenance and repair;
d) operating conditions;
e) failure incidents;
f) damage incidents;
g) damage and deterioration (e.g., corrosion);
h) manufacturing imperfections;
i) environmental protection; and
j) safety.

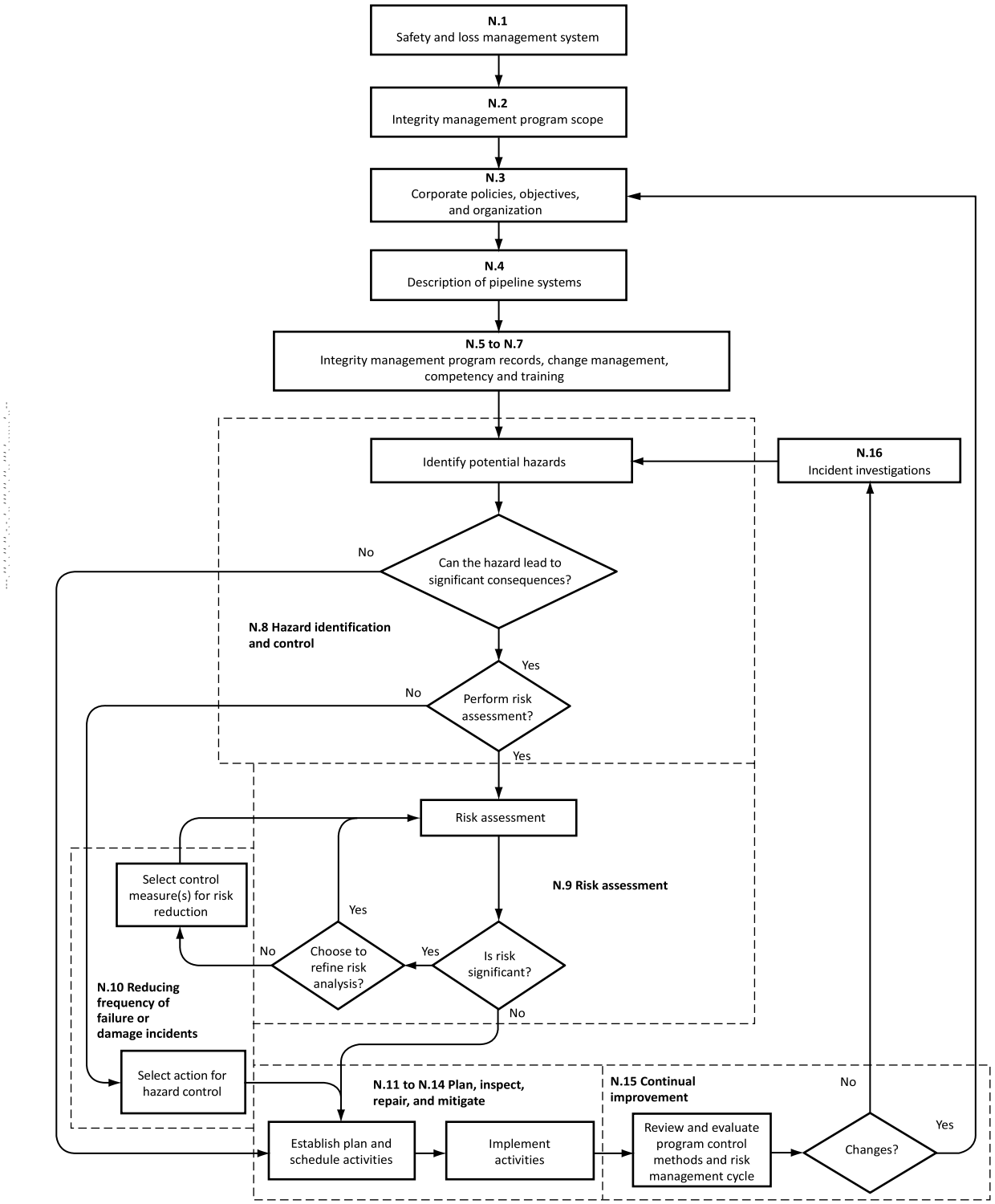
N.3 Corporate policies, objectives, and organization

N.3.1
The operating company shall document integrity-related corporate policies, values, objectives, and performance indicators.

N.3.2
The operating company shall document the types of consequences they consider to be significant and the rationale for determining the significance of those consequences.

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure N.1
Pipeline system integrity management program process
(See Clause N.1.2.)



N.3.3

The operating company shall identify and document the organization of personnel that are responsible for the various elements of the integrity management program, as identified in this Annex, including the following, as appropriate for the type of pipeline system

a) integrity management program development and improvement;
b) records management;
c) integrity management program planning and reporting;
d) implementation of plans;
e) integrity performance indicators; and
f) integrity management program audits, reviews, and evaluations.

N.4 Description of pipeline systems

Operating companies shall develop descriptions of pipeline systems included in the integrity management program. When parts of the pipeline system are not included in the integrity management program, reasons for such exclusions shall be stated.

Consideration shall be given to including the following in the description, as appropriate for the type of and included portions of the pipeline system:

a) purpose, capacity, and location;
b) the dimensions and material characteristics of the pipeline system, the types of coating, and the location and function of any ancillary equipment;
c) an estimate of the condition of the pipeline system, its coatings, and any ancillary equipment;
d) the operating conditions of the pipeline system, including service fluids, operating pressure, and temperature range;
e) the physical surroundings along the pipeline route; and
f) the physical boundaries of the pipeline system.

N.5 Integrity management program records

N.5.1

Operating companies shall prepare and manage records related to pipeline system design, construction, operation, and maintenance that are needed for performing the activities included in the integrity management program. Items to be considered for inclusion in such records shall include the following, as appropriate for the type of pipeline system:

a) the location of the pipeline system with respect to crossings and land use and structures;
b) class location(s);
c) the design of the pipeline system or segments of the pipeline system, including limits on pressure, temperature, loading, and other operating conditions;
d) the standards and specifications for the pipe, components, bolting, and coating materials;
e) material test reports;
f) joining and inspection records;
g) coating and inspection records;
h) terrain, soil type, backfill material, and depth of cover;
i) pressure testing;
j) cathodic protection system design and performance; and
k) the methods used and the results obtained for the activities included in the integrity management program.

 © 2015 CSA Group

N.5.2

The operating company shall document the methods used for managing the pipeline system integrity management program records. Items to be considered shall include

a) the responsibilities and procedures for the creation, updating, retention, and deletion of records;
b) methods of storage and retrieval of records related to a particular pipeline location or segment;
c) evidence of past activities, events, changes, analyses, and decisions; and
d) an index describing the types, forms, and locations of records.

N.6 Change management

N.6.1

The operating company shall develop, document, and implement a change management process for changes that might affect the integrity of the pipeline system or the ability to manage the integrity of that system. This shall include the following types of change, as appropriate for the type of pipeline system:

a) those that are initiated and controlled by the operating company, such as changes to
    i) ownership of the pipeline system;
    ii) organization and personnel of the operating company;
    iii) piping and control systems;
    iv) system operating status;
    v) operating conditions;
    vi) service fluid characteristics;
    vii) methods, practices, and procedures related to pipeline system integrity management;
    viii) records related to pipeline system integrity management; and
b) those that are not initiated and not controlled by the operating company, such as changes in
    i) technical requirements (e.g., industry standards, industry recommended practices, and regulations); and
    ii) physical environment changes (e.g., new rights-of-way, land development, or new structures).

N.6.2

The change management process shall have procedures in place to address and document the following, as appropriate for the type of pipeline system:

a) method of monitoring to identify anticipated and actual changes that could affect the integrity of the pipeline system;
b) identification of responsibilities for approving and implementing changes;
c) reasons for the changes;
d) analysis of implications and effects of the changes;
e) method of communication of changes to affected parties; and
f) timing of changes (e.g., dates of approvals and completions).

N.7 Competency and training

N.7.1

The operating company shall develop and implement competency and training requirements for company personnel, contractors, and consultants to give them the appropriate knowledge and skills for performing the elements of the integrity management program for which they are responsible. Personnel shall have appropriate knowledge and skills to perform the task associated with the development and implementation of the integrity management program.

 © 2015 CSA Group

N.7.2
The operating company shall consider documenting the methods used to evaluate the knowledge and skills of personnel, contractors, and consultants.

N.7.3
When evaluation of knowledge and skills indicates that development is required, training shall be arranged. Such training can include participation in

a) formal training courses provided by educational institutions or industry organizations;
b) workshops and conferences related to pipeline system integrity;
c) the work of technical committees of industry and standards development organizations;
d) research and development projects related to pipeline system integrity; and
e) supervised work experience.

N.8 Hazard identification and control

N.8.1
The operating company shall identify hazards that might lead to a failure or damage incident.

Note: *Clause B.5.2.3 can be used to provide guidance on hazard identification.*

N.8.2
The methods and data used for hazard identification shall be documented and take into consideration the primary causes and any additional failure or damage incident causes that are relevant.

Note: *Clause H.2.6 provides guidance when identifying primary causes and sub-causes.*

N.8.3
Where hazards that might lead to a failure or damage incidents are identified, the operating company shall

a) assess and document the risks associated with such hazards in accordance with Clause N.9; or
b) implement and document measures for monitoring conditions that could lead to an incident with significant consequences and eliminate or mitigate such conditions, taking into consideration the options specified in Clause N.10.

N.9 Risk assessment

N.9.1 General
Annex B provides risk analysis and risk evaluation guidelines for

a) estimating the frequency and consequences of incidents;
b) evaluating the significance of the estimated risk; and
c) identifying, evaluating, and implementing options for risk reduction.

N.9.2 Risk analysis approach
When selecting an appropriate approach for performing risk analysis (see Clause B.5.2), operating companies shall consider

a) the features that are unique to the design, construction, and operation of the pipeline system;
b) the availability of procedures, models, and information needed to perform the analysis; and
c) how the results of the risk assessment will be used.

 © 2015 CSA Group

N.9.3 Risk evaluation

When it is determined that the estimated risk level is significant (see Clause B.5.3.2), the following response shall be required:

a) the undertaking of a more refined level of risk analysis in an effort to reduce the uncertainty or errors that might have led to an overestimate of the risk level; or
b) a consideration of options (see Clause N.9.5) that might be available to reduce the estimated risk level.

Note: *The options to be considered for refinement of the risk analysis include the following:*

a) *selection of a more rigorous approach for the analyses and estimates;*
b) *additional observations and analysis of the operating conditions;*
c) *inspections to provide more accurate and detailed information about the presence, location, and severity of identified hazards or imperfections; and*
d) *an analysis using more detailed information about*
    i) *the size, characteristics, and location of potential releases; and*
    ii) *the location, characteristics, and susceptibility of people, property, and the environment to adverse effects.*

N.9.4 Risk reduction evaluation

The risk analysis and risk evaluation shall be repeated to establish that the options selected reduce the estimated risk to a level that is considered to be not significant. The options considered shall include the items specified in Clause N.10.

N.10 Options for reducing frequency and consequences of failure or damage incidents

N.10.1 Operating errors

The options that may be used to reduce the frequency of failure and damage incidents associated with improper operation or control system malfunction include the following, as applicable:

a) enhanced personnel training, employee evaluation, and worksite assessments;
b) improved pipeline system control and monitoring methods;
c) modified operating and maintenance practices; and
d) improvements or modifications to piping and equipment.

N.10.2 External interference

The options that may be used to reduce the frequency of failure and damage incidents associated with external interference include the following, as applicable:

a) participation in one-call utility location organizations;
b) measures to improve public awareness of and education about the pipeline system;
c) vegetation control to improve right-of-way visibility;
d) supplemental markers and signs to identify the presence of pipeline systems;
e) increased frequency of right-of-way inspections and patrols;
f) enhancement of procedures for pipeline system location and excavation;
g) installation of structures or materials (e.g., concrete slabs, steel plates, or casings);
h) increased depth of cover; and
i) increased pipe wall thickness.

© 2015 CSA Group

N.10.3 Imperfections

The options that may be used to reduce the frequency of failure and damage incidents associated with imperfections (e.g., metal loss, cracking, and material, manufacturing, and construction defects) include the following, as applicable:

a) temporary or permanent reductions in the established operating pressure;
b) close-interval surveys;
c) coating assessment surveys;
d) improved performance of cathodic protection systems;
e) repair or rehabilitation of external coatings;
f) improved internal corrosion mitigation and monitoring methods (see Clauses 9.10.2 and 9.10.3);
g) installation of liners;
h) in-line inspection programs;
i) pressure testing as specified in Clause 10.3.8;
j) improved quality measures for manufacturing, design, construction, and operation; and
k) assessment, repair, rehabilitation, and replacement programs.

N.10.4 Natural hazards

The options that may be used to reduce the frequency of failure and damage incidents associated with natural hazards include the following, as applicable:

a) alternative design, materials, and location;
b) inspection and evaluation of areas subject to washout erosion, freeze-thaw, settlement due to construction or undermining, earthquake, or slope movement;
c) increased frequency of right-of-way inspections and patrols;
d) programs to monitor the pipeline system or soil movement (e.g., inspections using in-line geometry tools, survey techniques, and slope inclinometers);
e) excavation and reburial to relieve loads;
f) relocation; and
g) installation of structures or materials to protect the system from external loads.

N.10.5 Consequence reduction

The options that may be used to reduce the consequences associated with failure and damage incidents include the following, as applicable:

a) improved methods for early detection of a service fluid release;
b) improved methods for control and shutdown of the supply sources;
c) improved methods to limit the size of a service fluid release (e.g., reduced spacing of block valves or isolating valves, and the use of remotely operated valves);
d) improved methods for recovery and cleanup of liquid releases;
e) improved emergency response procedures;
f) improved public awareness and education programs; and
g) improved pipeline system design.

N.11 Integrity management program planning

N.11.1

Operating companies shall establish and document plans and schedules for activities related to pipeline system integrity management.

 © 2015 CSA Group

N.11.2

Pipeline system integrity management program planning shall take the following into consideration, as appropriate for the type of pipeline system:

a) known conditions, damage, or imperfections (e.g., corrosion or manufacturing imperfections) that might lead to failure incidents;
b) the potential growth of any damage or imperfections;
c) the options selected to control identified hazards (see Clause N.8);
d) method of inspections and analyses to refine the estimates of risk (see Clause N.9.4);
e) the options selected to reduce the estimated risk level (see Clauses N.9.5 and N.10 and Annex B);
f) inspections, testing, patrols, and monitoring (see Clause N.12);
g) recommendations from previous integrity reviews and activities;
h) the failure and damage incident history of the operating company;
i) the failure and damage incident experience of the industry; and
j) the use of either direct or indirect inspection activities or a combination of both.

N.11.3

The methods used to prioritize and schedule activities related to pipeline system integrity management shall be documented.

N.11.4

Pipeline system integrity management program plans shall include steps for reviewing completed integrity activities in order to

a) verify that the relevant methods and procedures for such activities were properly performed;
b) verify that changes in planned activities were reviewed and approved;
c) determine whether the intended objectives were achieved;
d) identify incomplete work and unresolved issues;
e) develop recommendations and plans for future work; and
f) verify that the relevant records were created or revised.

N.11.5

Pipeline system integrity management program plans shall include steps for consulting with and informing appropriate personnel about integrity issues and programs.

N.12 Inspections, testing, patrols, and monitoring

N.12.1

Operating companies shall document and implement the methods and procedures used to conduct inspections, testing, patrols, and monitoring in accordance with Clauses 9 and 10 and, as appropriate, Clause 12.

Consideration shall be given to

a) cathodic protection systems;
b) corrosion monitoring systems and devices;
c) leak detection methods and devices;
d) shutdown devices and systems;
e) pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving systems;
f) size, location and operational position of pipeline system valves;
g) pipeline system patrolling; and

 © 2015 CSA Group

h) inspection of exposed piping for corrosion and other types of imperfections.

N.12.2

When the timing or frequency of inspection, testing, patrols, or monitoring is not specified in this Standard, the rationale and methods used to determine the timing or frequency shall be documented. Consideration shall be given to

a) the types of conditions or imperfections that are intended to be detected by each inspection, test, patrol, or monitoring activity;
b) experience related to the rate or timing of changes in the imperfections or conditions; and
c) the effect of such changes on the estimated risk of failure incidents.

N.12.3

When an inspection is performed using indirect methods (e.g., in-line inspection or close-interval surveys) operating companies shall consider whether supplemental inspections using more direct methods are needed.

N.12.4

Consideration shall be given to using in-line inspection equipment to detect

a) internal and external corrosion imperfections (see Annex D);
b) dents;
c) cracks; and
d) excessive pipe movement.

N.12.5

Operating companies shall document the methods used to detect corrosive agents in the service fluids transported and, where applicable, the methods used to detect and evaluate imperfections caused by internal corrosion (see Clause 9.10).

N.12.6

Close-interval and coating-assessment surveys should be considered to assist in investigating the performance of the cathodic protection system and to provide additional information to address corrosion concerns.

N.12.7

Records of inspections, testing, patrols, and monitoring shall include

a) the dates when performed;
b) the methods and equipment used;
c) the results and observations; and
d) an evaluation of the acceptability of the results and observations.

N.13 Evaluation of inspection, testing, patrol, and monitoring results

N.13.1 General

When inspection, testing, patrol, and monitoring results indicate the presence of conditions or imperfections that might lead to failure or damage incidents with significant consequences, operating companies shall perform an engineering assessment as specified in Clause 10.3.2.1, or take corrective action as specified in Clause 10.3.2.3.

 © 2015 CSA Group

N.13.2 Evaluation of indications of imperfections

N.13.2.1

Except as allowed by Clause N.13.2.2, pipeline systems with indications of imperfections shall be subject to detailed visual inspection, mechanical measurement, nondestructive inspection, as appropriate, for the type of pipeline system and evaluation as specified in Clause 10.10.

N.13.2.2

An engineering assessment in accordance with Clause 3.3 may be performed to establish that indications of imperfections are not associated with defects and shall take the following additional items into consideration:

a) knowledge and experience of the performance capabilities and limitations of the inspection method;
b) the types of imperfection that might correspond to the reported indications;
c) the accuracy of reported dimensions and characteristics needed for evaluating such imperfections;
d) the likelihood of unreported defects (e.g., cracking) being associated with an imperfection indication;
e) the piping design and material properties; and
f) service conditions.

Notes:

1) *The principles described in Clauses D6 to D.10 for assessing indications of corrosion imperfections detected by in-line inspection should be considered for evaluating other types of imperfection indications detected by in-line inspection.*

2) *DNV-RP-F101 describes evaluation methods that include uncertainties in the values of reported depth and length measurements for corroded pipe.*

N.13.3 Natural hazard evaluations

When inspections and patrols indicate soil settlement, slope movement, or washout that could cause excessive longitudinal stress or deflection of the pipe (see Clause 4.6), operating companies shall consider implementing a monitoring and evaluation program that includes criteria for corrective action to prevent failure incidents. The use of increased line patrols, in-line geometry tools, and slope inclinometers, as appropriate for the type of pipeline system, should be considered for such programs.

N.13.4 Records of recommendations

The operating company shall maintain records of recommendations and dispositions of recommendations.

N.14 Mitigation and repair

N.14.1

Operating companies should document the types of corrective actions that will be considered for conditions or imperfections that could cause a failure or damage incident with significant consequences.

N.14.2

Operating companies shall document procedures for mitigation and repair.

 © 2015 CSA Group

N.15 Continual improvement

N.15.1 General

The operating company shall plan and implement the monitoring, measurement, analysis, and improvement process needed to

a) demonstrate conformity to the requirements of the integrity management program; and
b) continually improve the effectiveness of the integrity management program.

N.15.2 Integrity management program review and evaluation

Integrity management programs shall be reviewed and evaluated periodically to determine whether they are in accordance with the provisions of this Standard and shall be revised as necessary. The methods for and responsibilities related to review and evaluation and the results of reviews and evaluations shall be documented. The items to be considered in such reviews and evaluations shall include the

a) timing of such reviews and evaluations;
b) effects of changes in the operating company, the pipeline, or external factors;
c) findings, status, and trends of corrective actions identified during internal and external audits;
d) status and trends of integrity performance indicators related to the frequency and consequences of failure and damage incidents and the completion of integrity-related work;
e) status and trends of integrity-related issues and recommendations identified during previous reviews and evaluations, operation, maintenance, or integrity-related work;
f) root cause or causes of recent failure incidents; and
g) successes and problems experienced in detecting and preventing potential failure incidents.

N.15.3 Monitoring and measurement

The operating company shall establish and maintain documented procedures to monitor and measure, on a regular basis, the performance of the integrity management program. Performance measures shall include

a) conformance to the established requirements and acceptance criteria; and
b) effectiveness in achieving stated objectives and targets.

N.15.4 Audits

Operating companies shall periodically audit the integrity management program. The items addressed in performing such audits should include

a) audit scope and objectives;
b) audit frequency and timing;
c) responsibilities for managing and performing the audit;
d) auditor independence;
e) auditor competency; and
f) audit procedures.

N.15.5 Control of nonconformance

The operating company shall establish and maintain procedures for defining responsibility and authority for handling and investigating nonconformances, taking action to mitigate any impacts, and for initiating and completing corrective and preventive action.

 © 2015 CSA Group

N.16 Incident investigations

The operating company shall develop procedures for investigating and reporting failure and damage incidents. Failure incidents shall be addressed in accordance with the requirements specified in Clause 10.3.6 .The procedures shall, as appropriate for the type of pipeline system, include the recording of incident information as specified in Clause H.2.

Annex O (informative)
Reliability-based design and assessment (RBDA) of onshore non-sour service natural gas transmission pipelines

C There is a commentary available for this Annex.

Notes:

1) *This Annex is an informative (non-mandatory) part of this Standard, unless the pipeline is being designed in accordance with the provisions of Clause 4.1.8 or assessed in accordance with the provisions of Clause 3.3. It has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so.*

2) *Specific definitions applicable to this Annex are given in Clause O.1.2.*

3) *Standards and publications referred to in this Annex are listed in Clause O.3.*

4) *Designers are advised to consult the commentary and the reference material that support the provisions of this Annex to ensure that the parameters to be used in the design are within the range of applicability of the consequence model used for calibration. If this is not the case, adjustments to the reliability targets might be required (see Clause O.1.1.2.)*

5) *The analysis required by this Annex should be carried out by personnel who are thoroughly familiar with the theory of structural reliability and competent in its application to pipelines.*

O.1 Provisions concerning RBDA

O.1.1 Introduction

O.1.1.1 Purpose

Clause O.1 contains provisions governing the application of reliability-based methods to the design and assessment of natural gas transmission pipelines. Where reliability-based design or assessment methods are used in accordance with the provisions of Clause 4.1.8 or 3.3.3, they shall be implemented in accordance with the provisions of this Annex.

For the purpose of this Annex, the reliability-based method is the method that demonstrates the structural adequacy of a pipeline by making an explicit estimate of its reliability and comparing it to a specified reliability target.

Notes:

1) *Reliability-based methods are particularly useful for pipelines involving large uncertainties, application of new materials and technologies, unique loading situations, and severe failure consequences.*

2) *The reliability targets suggested in this Annex do not incorporate consideration of environmental risks.*

O.1.1.2 Application

This Annex deals with the application of reliability-based methods to the design and assessment of onshore natural gas transmission pipelines. This Annex shall not be applied to pipelines transporting natural gas that, if released to the atmosphere, is reasonably expected to result in hydrogen sulphide levels of 10 µmol/mol (10 ppm) or greater. It is applicable to all engineering analyses carried out to demonstrate structural reliability and integrity of the pipe, including design of new pipelines, fitness-for-service evaluation of existing lines, assessment of changes in operational parameters (e.g., location class or pressure changes), and evaluation of inspection and maintenance alternatives. This Annex covers design and assessment of pipe and does not explicitly consider components or appurtenances.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Clauses O.1.4 to O.1.8 of this Annex specify
a) the limit states to be considered;
b) the reliability targets to be met for each limit state category; and
c) the methodology to be used and key factors to be included in estimating reliability.

Clause O.2 of this Annex provides guidance regarding the technical methods used to develop limit state functions, select appropriate probabilistic models for the basic input variables, and calculate reliability over the pipeline life.

In addition to specifying the process to be used for direct application of the reliability-based approach, this Annex provides a basis for calibrating safety factors for the load and resistance factor design (LRFD) approach. This approach uses deterministic limit state checks with specified safety factors that are calibrated to meet a given set of reliability targets. The ULS target reliability levels specified in Clause O.1.5.1 are based on a model that evaluates the consequences of an ignited lean natural gas release at pressures consistent with the assumption of ideal gas behaviour (Nessim *et al.*, 2004). Provided that the said underlying release consequence model can be shown to be applicable for the particular gas composition and service conditions being considered, these targets may also be used for rich gas and/or higher operating pressures. If the consequence model does not apply, alternate ULS targets that meet the risk tolerance criteria underlying the Annex based on the relative failure consequences may be used. This Annex does not cover the calibration process; however, it specifies the limit states to be considered and the reliability targets to be met by the calibrated load and resistance safety factors.

O.1.1.3 Information requirement

Applications of this Annex to operating pipelines shall be based on comprehensive information regarding the condition of the pipeline.

Note: *The information required might include design parameters, as-built records, operating history, condition with respect to various deterioration mechanisms and rate of deterioration, previous repairs, and failure mitigation activities. This information is required to identify applicable limit states and to define representative deterministic and probabilistic inputs to the reliability calculation process.*

O.1.2 Specific definitions

The following definitions shall apply in this Annex:

Accidental loads — loads based on accidental events, including loads caused by outside force during construction and operation.

Assessment area — area within which the occupants of buildings and facilities are counted for the purpose of calculating the population density.

Assessment width — width of the area within which buildings are counted for the purpose of calculating population density, equal to $0.158\sqrt{(PD^2)}$ m, where P is the pressure in MPa and D is the diameter in mm.

Basic variable — random variable (x) used in a limit state function. The basic variables can include loads, pipe geometry, pipe mechanical properties, and defect properties.

Companion load — a load, other than the principal load, that contributes to a load combination.

Continuous random process — a random process whose parameter changes continuously with time (e.g., wind load).

Note: *Although the parameter can assume an instantaneous value of zero, its value is generally nonzero.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Discrete random process — a random process whose parameter assumes nonzero values only at discrete points in time (e.g., seismic and equipment impact loads).

Environmental loads — loads caused by environmental processes, which are generally variable with respect to time (e.g., loads due to thermal variations, ground movement, earthquakes, and wind).

Evaluation length — maximum pipeline length over which a reliability target must be met.

Extreme distribution — the probability distribution of the maximum or minimum value occurring in a number of realizations of a random variable.

Failure — a condition in which the pipeline violates one of its limit states.

Independent model error — a random model error component whose magnitude is independent of the model output.

Individual risk — annual probability of fatality due to a pipeline incident for an individual situated at a particular location.

Leakage limit state — a limit state characterized by a small leak (less than 10 mm in diameter), leading to limited loss of containment that does not normally result in a safety hazard.

Limit state — a state beyond which a pipeline no longer satisfies a design requirement.

Limit state function — a function, g(x), of a set of basic random variables $x = x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$, that assumes negative values when the limit state is exceeded (i.e., the pipeline fails) and positive values when the limit state is not exceeded (i.e., the pipeline does not fail).

Limit state surface — a surface in the basic variable space that is defined by setting the value of the limit state function to zero, defining the boundary between random variable combinations that result in exceeding the limit state function and random variable combinations that do not result in exceeding the limit state function.

Load and resistance factor design (LRFD) — design method in which reliability calibrated load and resistance factors are used.

Note: *The design procedure is deterministic, but the design method is considered probabilistic because the load and resistance factors are calibrated to meet specified reliability targets.*

Load effect — effect of a single load or combination of loads on the pipeline.

Note: *The load effect can be defined in terms of such parameters as force, stress, strain, deformation, or displacement.*

Location-specific limit state — a limit state that occurs at a known location, such as failure of a known corrosion defect or at a known moving slope.

Note: *The probability of failure for a location-specific limit state is defined on a per-location basis.*

Margin of safety — load effect subtracted from resistance.

Maximum permissible failure probability — the maximum allowable failure probability (per km-yr) for a particular limit state category, equal to 1.0 minus the reliability target.

Model bias — the average value of model error.

Model scatter — the random scatter associated with model error.

Non-stationary random process — a random process for which the statistical properties change with time.

Operational loads — loads associated with normal activities during construction or operation.
Note: *Operational loads are generally variable with respect to time and include internal pressure, weight of contained fluids, thermal forces due to construction operation temperature differential, and variable surcharge (e. g., crossing traffic).*

Partial safety factors — factors by which the characteristic value of a design variable is multiplied to give the design value.
Note: *Partial safety factors are typically divided into load factors and resistance factors.*

Permanent loads — constantly applied loads whose values do not change with time, including pipe weight, weight of permanent equipment and coatings, and permanent overburden.

Pipeline segment — pipeline length over which a single set of reliability targets is defined for the relevant limit state categories.

Principal load — the dominant load in any load combination.

Probability of failure — the probability that a component or a system will fail during a specified time interval (usually taken as one year), equal to 1.0 minus the reliability.

Proportional model error — a random model error component whose magnitude is proportional to the model output.

Randomly distributed limit state — a limit state that is equally likely to occur anywhere along a specific length of the pipeline, such as failure due to equipment impact or yielding of a defect-free pipe under internal pressure.
Note: *The probability of failure for a randomly distributed limit state is defined on a per-unit length (e.g., per km) basis.*

Reliability — the probability that a component or system will perform its required function without failure during a specified time interval (usually taken as one year), equal to 1.0 minus the probability of failure.

Reliability-based design and assessment — design and assessment method in which the pipeline is designed and operated to meet specified target reliability levels.

Resistance — the maximum load effect that can be withstood by a pipeline without leading to a limit state being exceeded (i.e., without leading to failure).

Serviceability limit state — a limit state that violates a design or service requirement without leading to loss of containment.

Societal risk — a measure of the risk where the consequence considered is a function of the expected number of fatalities occurring due to pipeline failures.

Stationary random process — a random process for which the statistical properties do not change with time.

Target reliability level — minimum reliability level that is considered acceptable for a specific limit state or class of limit states, equal to 1.0 minus the maximum permissible failure probability.

Time-dependent limit state — limit state for which reliability (or the annual probability of failure) changes as a function of time.

Time-dependent random variable — a random variable whose value changes with respect to time.
Note: *If the time variation is random, the variable can be modelled by a random process. If the time variation is systematic, the variable can be modelled by a time-dependent probability distribution.*

Time-independent limit state — limit state for which reliability (or the annual probability of failure) does not change as a function of time.

Time-independent random variable — a random variable whose value does not change with time.
Note: *A time-independent random variable is modelled by a time independent probability distribution.*

Ultimate limit state — a limit state that leads to loss of containment and results in a safety hazard.

O.1.3 Overview of RBDA methodology

The steps involved in implementing RBDA for a given pipeline segment are shown in Figure O.1. A general description of these steps is as follows:

a) Hazard assessment. The purpose of the hazard assessment is to identify applicable loads throughout the life cycle of the pipeline. The results are used as a basis for identifying applicable limit states. The execution of this step is not discussed further in this Annex.
b) Identification of relevant limit states. The limit states relevant to a given pipeline are identified based on the outcome of the hazard assessment. The list can be reduced by eliminating limit states with insignificant contributions to the failure probability. Clause O.1.4.2 provides a list of limit states and a number of criteria that can be used to identify those that are insignificant.
c) Development of limit state functions. A limit state function is a deterministic model defining the threshold between failure and acceptable performance in terms of basic parameters such as diameter, wall thickness, load, and defect size. For each relevant limit state, a limit state function is developed based on appropriate models of the applied loads and pipe structural response. Clause O.1.6 defines the requirements associated with the development of limit state functions.
d) Development of probabilistic models for basic variables. The uncertainties associated with the basic variables used in each limit state function are characterized using appropriate probabilistic models. Definition of these models requires statistical data; if such data are sparse, engineering judgment may be used. The requirements associated with the development of probabilistic models for basic variables are given in Clause O.1.7.
e) Definition of design and operational parameters. All the parameters required to evaluate lifetime reliability are defined at this stage. These can include
    i) material properties;
    ii) design parameters;
    iii) corrosion mitigation strategies, such as coating type and cathodic protection system characteristics;
    iv) damage prevention factors, such as burial depth, right-of-way patrols, and first-call system; and
    v) in-line inspection plans, including tools to be used, inspection frequency, and repair criteria.
f) Reliability calculation. For a given limit state, probabilistic analysis techniques are used to calculate the reliability from the probabilistic models of the basic random variables and the deterministic limit state function. The reliability with respect to a given limit state category (i.e., ultimate, leakage, or serviceability) is calculated by subtracting the total probability of failure for all contributing failure causes from 1.0. Requirements associated with reliability calculations are given in Clause O.1.8.

 © 2015 CSA Group

g) Reliability evaluation. The calculated reliability levels for each limit state category are compared to the target values using the following basic check:

$$1 - p_f > R_T \qquad \textbf{Equation O-1}$$

where

p_f = the total probability of failure associated with the limit state category

R_T = the corresponding reliability target

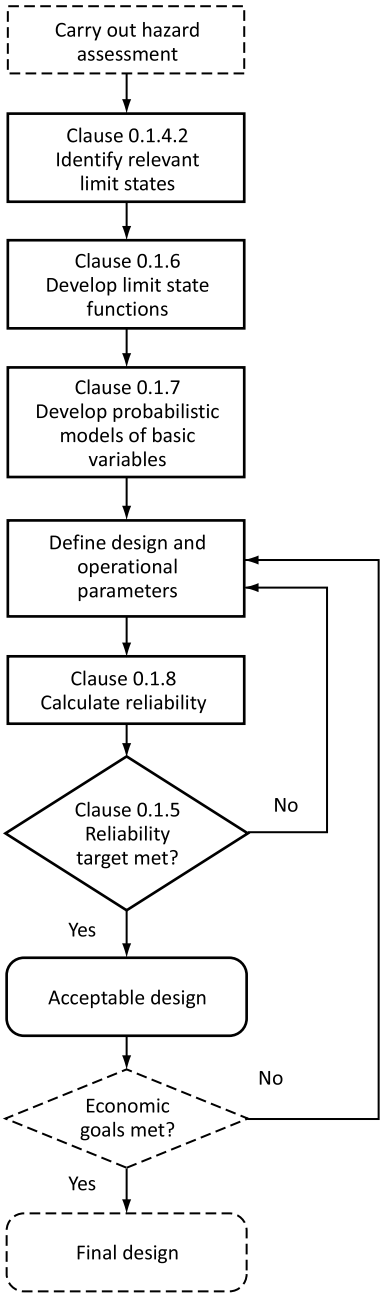
The required target values are given in Clause O.1.5. If the reliability targets are not met, a new set of design and operational parameters is defined, and the reliability is recalculated and evaluated. This process is repeated until the reliability targets are met, which means that an acceptable solution has been found.

h) Economic assessment. Since multiple solutions that meet the reliability targets could exist, it is often prudent to compare a number of alternative solutions to ensure cost-effectiveness. This analysis involves calculating the life cycle costs associated with each alternative and using the results to carry out a formal or informal cost optimization analysis. Since the need for this step is at the discretion of the user, it is not addressed further in this Annex.

Note: *The design and operational parameters that are varied to meet the reliability target, in accordance with Item g), depend upon the application. For new pipeline design, there is typically a high degree of flexibility to define both physical attributes (e.g., wall thickness, grade, burial depth, and coating type) and operational parameters (e.g., inspection intervals and protection methods). For existing pipelines, the pipeline physical attributes are typically fixed and decisions are limited to operational aspects.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure O.1
Steps involved in implementing RBDA
(See Clause O.1.3.)



Note: *Steps indicated in dashed lines are not addressed by this Annex.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

O.1.4 Limit states

O.1.4.1 Limit state categories

Limit states for natural gas transmission pipelines shall be classified into one of the following three categories:

a) ultimate limit state (ULS): a limit state that leads to loss of containment and results in a safety hazard. This category expressly includes large leaks and ruptures, which can result from defect failures, equipment impact, or tensile failures under bending. It also includes other structural conditions, such as local or global buckling, or section collapse, if these conditions can progress into large leaks or ruptures;
b) leakage limit state (LLS): a leak of less than 10 mm in diameter leading to limited loss of containment that does not represent a significant safety hazard; and
c) serviceability limit state (SLS): a limit state that leads to violation of a design or service requirement, without resulting in loss of containment. This category includes yielding, ovalization, denting, and excessive plastic deformation. It can also include other structural conditions, such as local or global buckling, if it is demonstrated through detailed analysis or implementation of an appropriate monitoring and maintenance program that these conditions will not progress to cause loss of containment.

O.1.4.2 Applicable limit states

O.1.4.2.1

Limit states resulting from all loads occurring throughout all life cycle phases of the pipeline shall be considered. The load effects shall be calculated considering the combination of all loads that influence the limit state.

Note: *Table O.1 provides a listing of relevant life cycle phases, loads, and limit states that are generally applicable to onshore natural gas transmission pipelines. Table O.1 lists the principal load for each limit state and the companion loads that could occur in combination with the principal load.*

O.1.4.2.2

Limit states that are demonstrated to have a negligible contribution to the probability of failure need not be considered in the reliability analysis. These include

a) a limit state for which it is demonstrated by a deterministic, worst-case analysis that the highest credible load effect is lower than the lowest credible resistance;
b) a limit state resulting from a loading event that has a probability of occurrence less than 10% of the maximum permissible failure probability; and
c) a limit state for which an upper bound on the probability of failure is less than 10% of the permissible failure probability.

Note: *The highest credible load and lowest credible resistance are conservative estimates of the maximum possible load and minimum possible resistance. For example, the highest credible thermal expansion stresses may be calculated based on conservative estimates of the lowest possible installation temperature and the highest possible operating temperature.*

O.1.4.2.3

Each limit state shall be classified as an ultimate, leakage, or serviceability limit state based on the provisions of Clause O.1.4.1. This classification determines the applicable reliability target for the limit state. The SLS classification shall be used only if it is demonstrated that the limit state cannot progress into a ULS.

© 2015 CSA Group

Table O.1 includes a classification of each limit state as a ULS, LLS, or SLS. Limit states that are classified in the table as "SLS or ULS" start as serviceability limit states but have the potential to progress into ultimate limit states. For these cases, the SLS classification shall not be used unless it is demonstrated that progression into a ULS will not occur. This may be accomplished by classifying the limit state as stress-based or strain-based. Stress-based limit states should typically be treated as ULS, while strain-based limit states may be treated as SLS, provided that any appropriate mitigative measures are provided.

Note: *A strain-based limit state is one that is deformation-controlled, so that strains cannot increase unless further deformations are imposed (e.g., frost heave and thaw settlement). A stress-based limit state is one that is load-controlled, causing strains to increase dramatically once the applied load reaches the load carrying capacity (see Clause C.4.2.2.2 for more detailed information). A strain-controlled limit state is less likely to progress from an SLS into a ULS. For example, local buckling due to frost heave is strain-controlled and may therefore be treated as an SLS, provided that a monitoring process is in place to detect and repair the damage before it leads to a ULS. By contrast, local buckling under gravity loads is load-controlled and, unless adequate reserve load capacity is demonstrated, should be treated as a ULS.*

O.1.4.2.4

Each limit state shall be classified as time-dependent or time-independent for the purpose of reliability estimation and evaluation. The classification shall be based on the time characteristics of the corresponding load effect and resistance processes, as follows:

a) a limit state is time-independent if both the load effect and resistance are
   i) constant;
   ii) time-independent random variables; or
   iii) time-dependent stationary random processes; and
b) a limit state is time-dependent if either the load or resistance is
   i) a deterministic function of time;
   ii) a time-dependent random variable; or
   iii) a non-stationary random process.

Note: *Table O.1 includes a classification of each limit state as time-dependent or time-independent. This classification may be used if it is deemed appropriate for the pipeline.*

O.1.5 Reliability targets

O.1.5.1 General

O.1.5.1.1

For the purpose of demonstrating that the requirements of this Annex are met, the pipeline may be divided into segments, with a single set of reliability targets being used for each segment. Segmenting the pipeline for the purpose of defining ultimate limit state reliability targets shall be in accordance with Clause O.1.5.2.2.

O.1.5.1.2

The reliability targets shall be met along the entire length of each pipeline segment. To demonstrate this, the targets shall be met for all possible positions of the evaluation length within the segment. The evaluation length shall be

a) the segment length, for segments with a length less than or equal to 1600 m; and

 © 2015 CSA Group

b) any 1600 m length that falls within the segment boundaries, for segments with a length greater than 1600 m.

Note: *These requirements imply that a single reliability check suffices for segments that are shorter than or equal to 1600 m. For a segment that is longer than 1600 m, a separate reliability check is required for each position of the 1600 m evaluation length that produces a unique value of the average failure probability (see Clause O.1.8 for the method used to calculate the average failure probability). This number thus depends on the manner in which the failure probability varies along the segment length.*

O.1.5.1.3

The probability of failure used in demonstrating reliability shall be the average value over the evaluation length. The reliability targets for a particular limit state category shall be met considering the combined contributions to the failure probability from all limit states in that category (see Clause O.1.8 for calculation methods).

O.1.5.1.4

Reliability targets shall be met throughout the operating life of the pipeline.

Notes:

1) *Since reliability generally decreases gradually with time, due to time-dependent limit states, and increases immediately after maintenance events, the critical time points for meeting the reliability targets occur immediately prior to maintenance events.*

2) *To meet the requirements of this Annex, analysis should be carried out to demonstrate that pipeline reliability will meet the specified targets over a user-defined future period of time (the evaluation period). Operation beyond the end of the evaluation period requires a new analysis to be carried out, to demonstrate continued reliability in accordance with this Annex.*

O.1.5.1.5

Reliability targets may be met by implementing a combination of design and operational measures. If future operational procedures (such as specific maintenance events at certain intervals) are required to meet the reliability targets, the requirements of Clause O.1.5.5 apply.

Note: *The reliability targets given in this Annex represent minimum requirements. In some cases, it can be advantageous to exceed the specified reliability targets as a means of achieving lower life cycle costs.*

O.1.5.1.6

Alternative reliability targets to those given in Clause O.1.5.2 to O.1.5.4 may be used, provided that they are demonstrated to meet acceptable case-specific criteria with respect to the societal and individual risk measures addressed in developing the targets in this Annex, as described in Clause O.2.2.2.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table O.1
Load cases and limit states relevant to onshore pipelines
(See Clauses O.1.4.2.1, O.1.4.2.3, and O.1.4.2.4.)

Life cycle phase	Load case		Companion load cases	Limit state	Limit state type	Stress limit	Strain limit	Time-dependent
Transportation	1	Accidental impact	—	Denting/gouging	SLS	✓		No
	2	Cyclic bending	—	Fatigue crack growth	SLS	✓		Yes
	3	Stacking weight	—	Ovalization	SLS	✓		No
Construction	4	Cold field bending	—	Local buckling	SLS		✓	No
	5	Bending during installation	—	Plastic collapse	SLS	✓	✓	No
				Local buckling	SLS	✓	✓	No
	6	Directional drilling tension and bending	—	Girth weld tensile fracture	SLS		✓	No
				Local buckling	SLS		✓	No
	7	Hydrostatic test	—	Excessive plastic deformations	SLS	✓		No
				Burst of defect-free pipe	SLS	✓		No
				Burst at dent-gouge defect	SLS	✓		No
				Burst at seam weld defect	SLS	✓	✓	No
Operation	8	Internal pressure	—	Excessive plastic deformations	SLS or ULS*	✓		No
				Burst at corrosion defect	ULS	✓		Yes
				Small leak at corrosion defect	LLS	✓		Yes
				Burst at environmental crack (SCC)	ULS	✓		Yes

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table O.1 (Continued)

Life cycle phase	Load case		Companion load cases	Limit state	Limit state type	Stress limit	Strain limit	Time-dependent
				Small leak at environmental crack (SCC)	LLS	✓		Yes
				Burst of a manufacturing defect	ULS	✓		Yes
				Small leak of a manufacturing defect	LLS	✓		Yes
	9	Overburden and surface loads	8	Burst of a weld defect	ULS	✓		Yes
				Small leak of a weld defect	LLS	✓		Yes
				Plastic collapse	SLS or ULS*	✓		No
				Ovalization	SLS	✓		No
	10	Gravity loads on aboveground spans	8	Formation of mechanism by yielding	SLS or ULS*	✓		No
				Local buckling	SLS or ULS*	✓		No
				Girth weld tensile fracture	SLS or ULS*	✓		No
	11	Aboveground span support settlement	8, 10	Local buckling	SLS or ULS*	✓		Yes
				Girth weld tensile fracture	ULS	✓		Yes
	12	Wind on aboveground spans	8, 10	Excessive vibration	SLS or ULS*	✓		No
				Burst of crack by fatigue	ULS	✓		Yes

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table O.1 (Continued)

Life cycle phase	Load case		Companion load cases	Limit state	Limit state type	Stress limit	Strain limit	Time-dependent
	13	Slope instability, ground movement	8, 14, 15	Local buckling	SLS or ULS*		✓	Yes
				Girth weld tensile fracture	ULS		✓	Yes
Operation	14	Seismic load	8, 15, 13 or 16 or 17	Local buckling	SLS or ULS*		✓	No
				Girth weld tensile fracture	ULS		✓	No
Operation	15	Restrained thermal expansion	8	Local buckling	SLS or ULS*		✓	No
				Upheaval buckling	SLS or ULS*	✓		No
	16	Frost heave	8, 14, 15	Local buckling	SLS or ULS*		✓	Yes
				Girth weld tensile fracture	ULS		✓	Yes
	17	Thaw settlement	8, 14, 15	Local buckling	SLS or ULS*		✓	Yes
				Girth weld tensile fracture	ULS		✓	Yes
	18	Loss of soil support (e.g., subsidence)	8, 15	Excessive plastic deformation	SLS or ULS*	✓		Yes
				Local buckling	SLS or ULS*		✓	Yes
				Girth weld tensile fracture	ULS	✓	✓	Yes
	19	River bottom erosion	8, 15, 20	Dynamic instability	SLS or ULS*	✓		No
				Formation of mechanism by yielding	SLS or ULS*	✓		No

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table O.1 (Concluded)

Life cycle phase	Load case		Companion load cases	Limit state	Limit state type	Stress limit	Strain limit	Time-dependent
				Local buckling	SLS or ULS*		✓	No
				Girth weld tensile fracture	ULS		✓	No
	20	Buoyancy	8, 15	Flotation	SLS	✓		No
	21	Outside force	8	Denting	SLS	✓		No
				Puncture	ULS	✓		No
				Burst of a gouged dent†	ULS	✓		No
				Small leak of a gouged dent†	LLS	✓		No
	22	Sabotage	8	Rupture Puncture Puncture	ULS LLS ULS	✓ ✓ ✓		No No No

* *Starts as a serviceability limit state but could progress to an ultimate limit state.*

† *Includes immediate as well as delayed failures.*

© 2015 CSA Group

O.1.5.2 Ultimate limit state targets

O.1.5.2.1 Reliability targets

Ultimate limit state reliability targets are defined as a function of pipeline diameter, pressure, and population density. The targets shall be as specified in the following equations and Figure O.2, where ρ is the population density (people per hectare), P is the pressure (MPa), and D is the diameter (mm). For a segment with $\rho > 0$, the target shall be not less than the target calculated for the same segment with $\rho = 0$.The targets are defined on a per km-yr basis.

Note: *The low reliability values associated with small values of ρPD3 in Figure O.2 are unlikely to govern; they are usually superseded by the minimum wall thickness and maximum D/t ratios required for pipe transportation and welding.*

Equation O-2

$$R_T = \begin{cases} 1 - \dfrac{1650}{(PD^3)^{0.66}} & \text{for } \rho = 0 \\ 1 - \dfrac{197}{(\rho PD^3)^{0.66}} & \text{for } 0 < \rho PD^3 \le 1.16 \times 10^7 \\ 1 - \dfrac{49\,700}{\rho PD^3} & \text{for } 1.16 \times 10^7 < \rho PD^3 \le 7.1 \times 10^9 \\ 1 - \dfrac{4.05 \times 10^{10}}{(\rho PD^3)^{1.6}} & \text{for } \rho PD^3 > 7.1 \times 10^9 \end{cases}$$

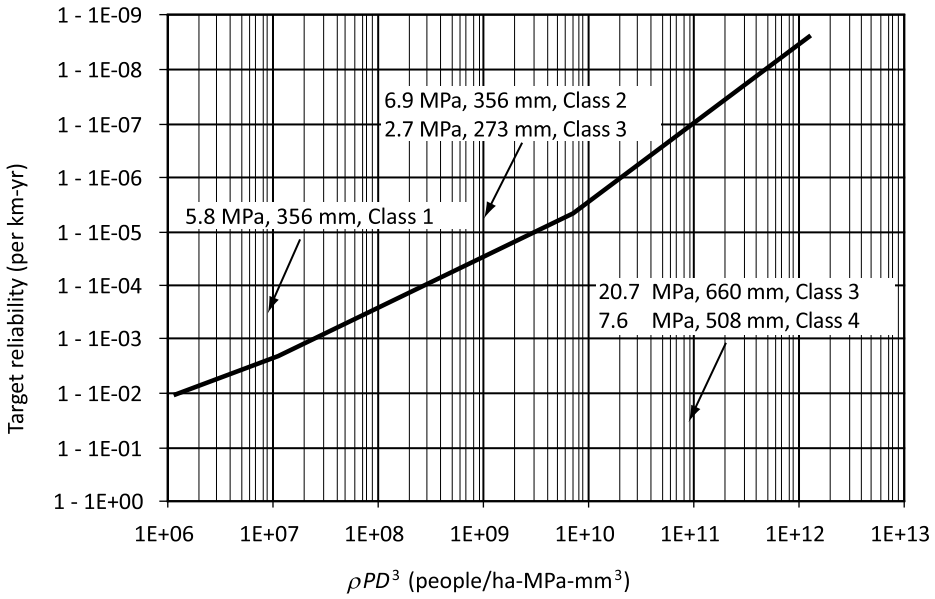
where

ρ = the population density (people per hectare)

P = the pressure, MPa

D = the diameter, mm

Figure O.2
Reliability targets for ultimate limit states
(See Clauses O.1.5.2.1 and O.1.5.2.4.)



O.1.5.2.2 Pipeline segmentation

The reliability target may be defined on a segment-by-segment basis with a single reliability target being used for each segment. Segmentation may be based on the population density or on the applicable location class system. If segmentation is based on population density, the population density shall be calculated as specified in Clause O.1.5.2.3. The pipeline segments used shall meet the following criteria:

a) Unpopulated segments are permitted, provided that the population density is zero along the entire length of the segment.
b) The maximum population density at any point along a segment that has unpopulated portions shall not exceed 0.4 people per hectare.
c) The ratio between the maximum population density at a given point along a segment and the minimum population density at a given point along the same segment shall not exceed 10.
d) The reliability targets for a given pipeline segment shall be calculated using the average population density along the segment. The average population density shall be calculated as specified in Clause O.1.5.2.3.

O.1.5.2.3 Population density calculation — Assessment area

The population density at any point along the pipeline shall be calculated as the number of occupants of all buildings and facilities within an assessment area centred on that point, divided by the size of the assessment area. For any location along the pipeline, the population density shall be the lesser of the two values calculated using the following two definitions of the assessment area:

a) a rectangle with a length of 1600 m and width equalling the assessment width, with the length parallel to the pipeline axis; and
b) a square with sides equalling the assessment width.

Note: *The assessment width, defined as* $0.158\sqrt{PD^2}$*, represents the diameter of the hazard area around a failure location on the pipeline. Using a 1600 m long rectangle in calculating the population density is consistent with existing pipeline codes. It does not, however, give a correct indication of the appropriate boundaries between segments. Using a length of* $0.158\sqrt{PD^2}$ *gives an accurate characterization of segment boundaries but gives unrealistic, sharp increases in population density around isolated structures. Using the minimum of the density values calculated from the two methods is equivalent to using the first approach to calculate the population density and the second approach to define the segment boundaries.*

O.1.5.2.4 Population density calculation — Average population density

The average population density for a given segment shall be calculated as the number of occupants of all buildings and facilities within half an assessment width on either side of the pipeline along the length of the segment, divided by the product of the assessment width and segment length. Where the segment length is less than 1600 m, this calculation shall be based on a 1600 m segment created by extending the original segment equally on either end. The number of occupants used in calculating the population density shall be the average number of people in the building or facility during its normal use and shall not be reduced based on the fraction of time during which the building or facility is occupied. In the absence of specific information on the population density around the pipeline, ULS reliability targets may be selected based on the applicable location class designations (see Figure O.2). In this case, the reliability targets for each location class shall be calculated in accordance with Clause O.1.5.2.1, using the average population density for the class.

Note: *Table O.2 gives suggested average population densities corresponding to the location classes defined in Clause 4.3.2. The average population densities given in Table O.2 for Classes 1, 2, and 3 are based on data describing actual structures around 20 000 km of Canadian gas transmission pipelines.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Table O.2
Population density by location class
(See Clause O.1.5.2.4.)

Class	Average population density (people per hectare)
1	0.04
2	3.3
3	18
4	100

Note: *See Nessim and Zhou (2005a).*

O.1.5.2.5 Large leaks versus ruptures

In accordance with the definition of ULS in Clause O.1.4.1, the reliability targets in this Clause shall be met taking into consideration the combined probability of large leaks and ruptures. To meet this requirement,

a) if the probability calculation method used does not distinguish between large leaks and ruptures, the failure probability used in the reliability check in Equation O-1 shall be the joint probability of large leaks and ruptures; and

b) if the probability calculation method used provides distinct estimates of the probability of large leak, p_{LL}, and the probability of rupture, p_{RU}, the ULS reliability targets may be met using the following equation:

$$1 - [p_{LL}c_r + p_{RU}] > R_T \qquad \textbf{Equation O-3}$$

where

c_r = the ratio between large leak and rupture consequences as specified in Equation O-4 and Figure O.3

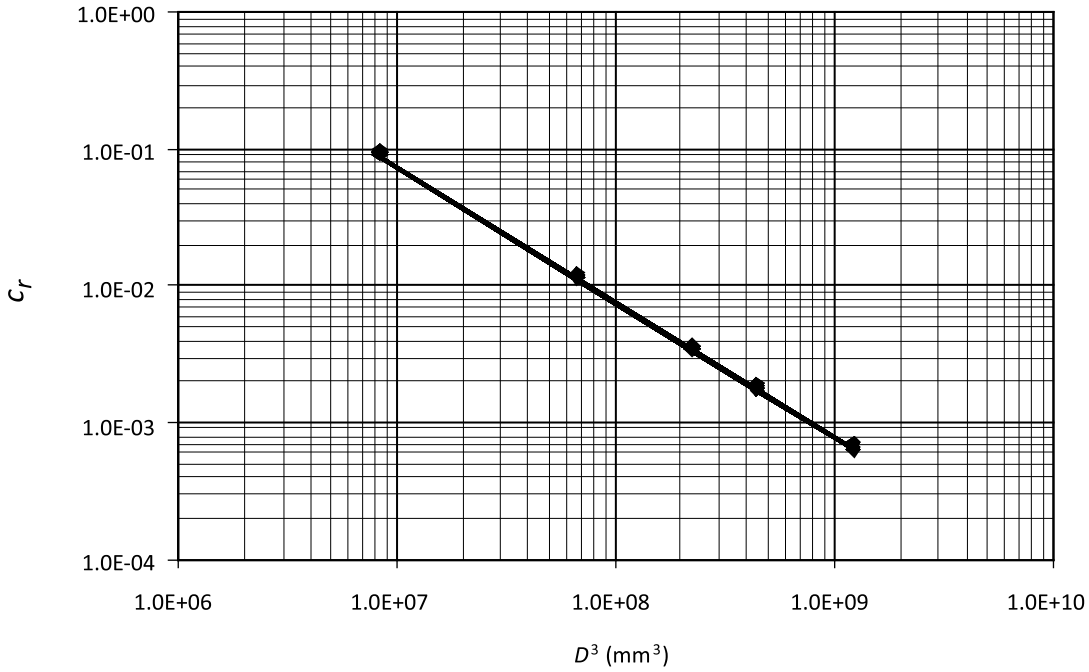
$$= \frac{7.5\times 10^5}{D^3},\ c_r \le 1 \qquad \textbf{Equation O-4}$$

If the method described in Item b) is used to demonstrate compliance with the ULS target, the probability used to demonstrate compliance with the LLS target in Clause O.1.5.3 shall be the sum of the probability of a large leak and the probability of a small leak.

Note: *Using the joint large leak and rupture probability in Equation O-1 is conservative because it assumes that large leak consequences have the same magnitude as rupture consequences. This approach is relatively simple to implement because it does not require distinction between large leak and rupture probabilities in the reliability calculations. The failure probability calculations for corrosion and equipment impact, for example, would require consideration of only a single limit state function representing burst; a second limit state function representing unstable axial growth of the resulting hole would not be required. Equation O-4 is less conservative because it converts large leaks to an equivalent number of ruptures based on the ratio of large leak to rupture consequences. In this case, the target reliability is achieved by ensuring that the reliability level corresponding to the sum of the probabilities of "equivalent ruptures" and ruptures exceeds the reliability target. When Equation O-4 is used, large leaks are included in the LLS check to limit the total leak probability in the unlikely (but theoretically possible) situation where a very low value of cr (for a large-diameter pipeline) results in converting an unacceptably high large leak probability to an acceptably low equivalent rupture probability.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure O.3
Relative consequences of large leaks and ruptures
(See Clause O.1.5.2.5.)



O.1.5.2.6 Location-specific limit states

In addition to the reliability targets given in Clause O.1.5.2.1, the following reliability targets shall be met for location-specific limit states:

$$R_{TLS} = \begin{cases} 1 - \dfrac{1650}{(PD^3)^{0.66}} & \text{for } \rho = 0 \\ 1 - \dfrac{197}{(\rho PD^3)^{0.66}} & \text{for } \rho > 0 \end{cases}$$

Equation O-5

For a segment with $\rho > 0$, the target shall be not less than the target calculated for the same segment with $\rho = 0$. The evaluation length used in connection with the reliability target in the equations above shall be equal to $0.158\sqrt{PD^2}$ m. The reliability targets shall be met for evaluation length positions that contain one or more location-specific limit states.

Note: *The reliability targets are designed to ensure adequate safety in the immediate vicinity of location-specific hazards such as known isolated corrosion features or moving slopes.*

O.1.5.3 Leakage limit states

The reliability target for LLS (i.e., small leaks) shall be $1–10^{-3}$ per km-year.

Note: *Many pipelines are likely to be governed by ULS targets and will have small leak probabilities that are significantly smaller than that implied by the LLS target value specified in this Clause. In cases where LLS targets govern, the targets may be met through enhancements to inspection and maintenance practices rather than through increases in wall thickness. Operators can choose to have higher reliability targets to minimize repair costs, ensure continued operation, or meet other considerations.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

O.1.5.4 Serviceability limit states

The reliability target for SLS shall be $1–10^{-1}$ per km-year.

Note: *Since the consequences of exceeding an SLS are mainly economic, operators might choose to have higher reliability targets to minimize overall life cycle costs.*

O.1.5.5 Operational issues

Appropriate activities shall be implemented and incorporated in operational procedures to ensure that the reliability targets specified in Clauses O.1.5.2 to O.1.5.4 are met throughout the operating life of the pipeline. Where future operational activities (e.g., specific maintenance events at certain intervals) are required to meet the reliability targets, these procedures shall be carried out in a manner that is at least as safe as assumed in the reliability analysis and may be relaxed only based on a reassessment of reliability in accordance with this Annex. A monitoring program shall be implemented to ensure that all operational activities required pursuant to this Clause are followed throughout the life of the pipeline, and the continuity of such programs shall be ensured regardless of any changes in ownership or operating responsibility. The operational procedures and monitoring program shall be incorporated into all relevant record keeping, quality management, and communication procedures for the pipeline system.

O.1.6 Developing limit state functions

Note: *Guidance on the methodology used to develop limit state functions is given in Clause O.2.3 and in more detail in Section 7.0 of Nessim and Zhou (2005b).*

O.1.6.1

A limit state function shall be defined for each limit state considered in the reliability analysis.

Note: *A limit state function can represent a transition between safe structural behaviour and structural failure (e.g., formation of a through-wall crack from a surface crack). It can also define a transition between two failure modes (e.g., unstable growth of a through-wall crack).*

O.1.6.2

The limit state function may be defined in terms of any parameter or set of parameters that describes the load effect, l, and corresponding resistance, r. It has the following basic format:

$$g = r - l \qquad \textbf{Equation O-6}$$

Load effect and resistance may be defined in terms of stresses, strains, deformations, geometric properties, or defect size.

O.1.6.3

Limit state functions are developed by expressing the load effect, l, and resistance, r, in terms of the appropriate influencing parameters representing material properties, geometry, defect characteristics, and loading conditions, using accepted analytical, empirical, or numerical models.

Note: *Limit state functions for a number of key limit states are given in Clause O.2.6.*

O.1.6.4

Model uncertainty associated with a limit state function shall be characterized by adding an appropriate number of random variables representing model error.

Note: *Model error can have a systematic component (model bias) and a random component (model scatter). It is typically characterized based on comparisons between model results and actual data obtained from experimental measurements.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

O.1.7 Probabilistic characterization of input variables

Note: *Guidance on the methodology used to develop probabilistic characterizations of random input variables to a limit state function is given in Clause O.2.4 and in more detail in Section 8.0 of Nessim and Zhou (2005b).*

O.1.7.1

A variable influencing the limit state function may be assigned a deterministic value, if it is demonstrated that ignoring the uncertainty has an insignificant impact on the probability of failure or that the deterministic value used is conservative. Otherwise, the variable shall be treated as a random variable and shall be characterized by an appropriate probabilistic model. Guidance on the selection of probabilistic models for various parameters is given in Clause O.2.7.

O.1.7.2

Time-independent random variables shall be modelled by a probability distribution. Time-independent random variables include loads, mechanical properties, geometric parameters, defect sizes, and model error factors. A time-dependent random variable shall be modelled by a random process that accounts for the time frequency characteristics of the variable. Time-dependent random variables include operational loads, such as internal pressure, environmental loads, such as wind and earthquake loads, and accidental loads, such as equipment impact. The probabilistic model used in the reliability analysis for a time-dependent random variable shall be the distribution of its extreme value during the reference time period used in the analysis.

Notes:

1) *This extreme generally refers to the maximum value in the case of load effects and minimum value in the case of resistance.*

2) *A probability distribution of the process extreme can be calculated from the random process characterization using standard extremal analysis methods.*

3) *Depending on the analysis model used, some time-dependent random variables may be treated as time-independent random variables. Equipment impact load, for example, is a time-dependent variable because impact events occur randomly in time. A possible method to calculate the annual probability of failure is to model the equipment impact load as a random process. In this case, the random process model would be used to estimate the probability distribution of the maximum annual load, which would be combined with the resistance distribution to calculate the annual probability of failure. An alternative approach is to calculate the probability of failure as the number of impact events during the design life multiplied by the probability of failure given an impact. In this approach, the equipment impact load given an impact is a time-independent random variable, which would be modelled by a simple probability distribution.*

O.1.7.3

A probabilistic model for a particular uncertain variable may be assigned on the basis of relevant statistical data, theoretical probabilistic models, logical arguments, or expert judgment. Expert judgment shall be used to assign distributions only in cases where use of the other methods is not practical.

Note: *Theoretical probabilistic models refer to distribution types that are derived theoretically under certain assumptions. An example is the use of extreme-type distributions to model parameters that are defined as the maximum or minimum of a large number of values of the random variable. Logical argument refers to use of random variable characteristics to assign a distribution. An example is the use of a uniform distribution to represent the location of equipment impact on a given pipeline segment, on the basis that the impact is equally likely to occur anywhere along the segment.*

O.1.7.4

Where probability distributions are assigned on the basis of statistical data, they shall be based on a distribution fitting analysis. The best-fit distribution may be identified based on a combination of goodness-of-fit tests and visual inspection on probability plots. In the fitting analysis, special attention

shall be paid to the tail region contributing to the probability of failure (upper tail for load effects and lower tail for resistance).

O.1.7.5

Probabilistic models shall reflect any additional uncertainty associated with the underlying data and analysis methods. In the case of distributions based on small data samples, this may be accomplished by treating the distribution parameters (e.g., mean and standard deviation) as random variables and modelling them with appropriate probability distributions based on the sample size. In the case of distributions based on expert judgement, appropriate conservatism shall be included in the subjective distribution definition.

O.1.8 Reliability estimation

Note: *Guidance on the methodology used to calculate reliability is given in Clause O.2.5 and in more detail in Section 9.0 of Nessim and Zhou (2005b).*

O.1.8.1

For a given limit state category, reliability shall be calculated taking into consideration all limit states contributing to the failure probability for the pipeline segment, as follows:

Equation O-7

$$R = 1 - p_f$$
$$= 1 - \sum_{\text{all } i} p_{fi}$$

where

i = a specific limit state

To be comparable to the reliability targets given in Clause O.1.5, the reliability shall be calculated on a per km-year basis.

O.1.8.2

The probability of failure used in the reliability check shall be the average value over the evaluation length. Such average probability shall be calculated as follows:

Equation O-8

$$p_f = \frac{\left(\sum_{\text{all } j} p_{fj} \times l_j + \sum_{\text{all } k} p_{fk} \right)}{l}$$

where

p_{fj} = the failure probability per unit length for a randomly distributed limit state

l_j = the length within the evaluation length, m, over which p_{fj} applies

l = the evaluation length, m

p_{fk} = the probability of failure at a given location due to a location-specific limit state that occurs within the evaluation length

O.1.8.3

The segment probability of failure due to a given limit state shall account for the frequency of occurrence of the limit state as well as the probability of failure per occurrence.

Note: *The frequency of occurrence depends on the threat leading to the limit state and the formulation being used to calculate reliability. For corrosion, for example, frequency is defined as the number of corrosion defects per kilometre and combined with the annual probability of failure per defect to estimate the probability of failure per*

 © 2015 CSA Group

kilometre-year. For burst of defect free pipe, a similar approach is used with the frequency being equal to the number of joints of pipe per kilometre.

O.1.8.4

Correlations between the frequency of occurrence of the limit state and the probability of failure per occurrence shall be taken into consideration.

Note: *This type of correlation occurs for seismic loads, for which hazard occurrence (e.g., soil liquefaction) and the magnitude of the resulting load effect (e.g. permanent ground deformation) both depend on the earthquake magnitude and source.*

O.1.8.5

For time-dependent limit states, systematic variation of the probability of failure as a function of time shall be accounted for.

Note: *Time-dependent limit states typically include those resulting from corrosion, stress corrosion cracking, growing cracks or gouges, and ground deformations due to slope movement or frost/thaw deformations. Time-independent limit states typically include those resulting from equipment impact, seismic loads, and burst or excessive deformations of defect-free pipe. The total reliability for a combination of time-independent and time-dependent limit states is a time-dependent quantity.*

O.1.8.6

Reductions in the probability of failure due to planned maintenance and damage prevention activities may be considered in the reliability calculation. Failure probability reductions due to defect rehabilitation shall take into account the uncertainty associated with the capability of the method used to identify existing defects and the uncertainty associated with the defect size indications provided. The criterion used in making defect excavation and repair decisions shall be at least as conservative as the criterion used in calculating the failure probability reduction, unless a less conservative criterion is justified during operation based on a subsequent reliability analysis carried out in accordance with this Annex.

O.1.8.7

Where multiple failure mechanisms exist under a given load effect, the failure probability shall be calculated as the probability of the load reaching the lowest resistance associated with such failure mechanisms. This calculation shall take account of correlations between the failure mechanisms involved.

Note: *An example of this is failure due to equipment impact, where failure could occur due to puncture under the excavator tooth load or by burst of a resulting gouged dent after removal of the excavator load. These two failure mechanisms are correlated because they are both dependent on common parameters, such as the wall thickness and excavator force. The minimum resistance in this case is the lower of the resistance values associated with the two failure mechanisms.*

O.1.8.8

If multiple limit state categories are possible under the same load effect, the probabilities of failure for the individual limit state category shall be calculated taking into account correlation between the limit state functions. If the calculation method does not consider multiple limit state categories, a conservative method shall be used to calculate the probability of failure for the limit state category.

Note: *An example of this requirement is failure at a corrosion defect. The failure could occur by burst, which is a ULS, or small leak, which is an LLS. The two limit states are correlated because they both depend on common parameters, such as defect depth and wall thickness. The reliability calculation method used to calculate the probability of burst and the probability of small leak is based on joint consideration of the corresponding limit state*

functions, taking account of the correlation between them. If this is not possible, the probabilities of ULS and LLS may be evaluated independently. The results are conservative in this case because the probability of joint occurrence of the ULS and LLS would be included in the probabilities of failure for both categories.

O.1.8.9

Failure probability calculation models shall be validated to demonstrate their ability to estimate failure probabilities that are consistent with relevant historical failure rates.

Note: *Guidance in conducting such validation work can be found in Nessim and Zhou, 2005b.*

O.2 Commentary

O.2.1 Basic concepts

O.2.1.1 Limit state

A limit state is defined as a state beyond which the pipeline no longer satisfies a particular design requirement. It can be regarded as a failure mode, where "failure" is understood in the broad sense of failing to meet a design requirement. To maintain consistent risk for all failures, limit states are typically classified into categories with similar failure consequences and higher reliability targets are assigned to limit states with more severe failure consequences.

O.2.1.2 Limit state function

A limit state function is a mathematical expression that assumes a negative value if the corresponding limit state is exceeded (i.e., failure) and a positive value if the limit state is not exceeded (i.e., adequate performance). A limit state function can be expressed as follows:

$$m = r - l$$ **Equation O-9**

where

r = the resistance

l = the load effect

m = the margin of safety defined as the difference between the resistance and the load effect

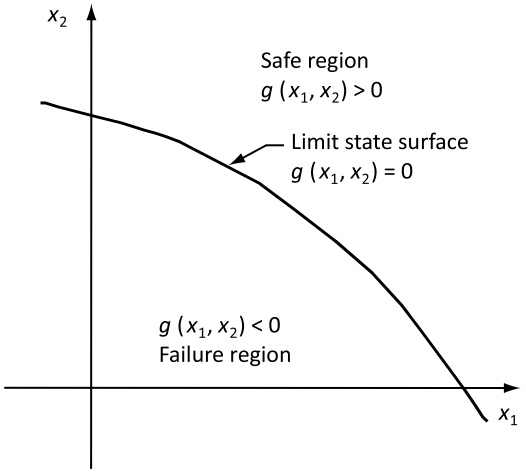
The load effect and resistance distributions are usually estimated from other (more basic) variables using analytical models. Examples are the estimation of earthquake load effects from peak ground accelerations or the calculation of pipeline pressure resistance from yield strength, diameter, and wall thickness. Given this, the margin of safety, m, can be expressed as a function of a set of n basic variables (denoted by vector $x = x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$) that influence the load effect and resistance. This function is denoted $g(x)$ and is called the limit state function. Equation O-9 becomes:

$$m = g(x)$$ **Equation O-10**

Since $g(x)$ equals the safety margin, $g(x) \leq 0$ indicates a negative (or zero) safety margin, which implies failure, while $g(x) > 0$ indicates a positive safety margin, which implies that failure will not occur (safe). This means that $g(x) = 0$ separates combinations of x that lead to failure from those that lead to a safe pipeline. This is illustrated in Figure O.4 for a special case with two basic random variables. Because $g(x) = 0$ defines the boundary between the failure region and the safe region, it represents the failure condition and is usually referred to as the limit state surface.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure O.4
Illustration of the limit state surface
(See Clause O.2.1.2.)



O.2.1.3 Reliability and probability of failure

Reliability, R, is defined as the probability that a certain length of pipeline (taken here as 1 km) will meet all of its design requirements for a specified period of time (taken here as one year). For a given limit state category, reliability is related to the probability of failure, p_f, by

$$R = 1 - p_f \qquad \textbf{Equation O-11}$$

It is customary to express reliability in terms of the corresponding probability of failure. For example, if the probability of failure is 10^{-5} per km-year, reliability is expressed as $1–10^{-5}$ (rather than 0.99999) per km year. The probability of failure for a given limit state category is calculated as the joint probability of reaching all limit states within the category.

O.2.1.4 Reliability-based design and assessment

In the reliability-based design and assessment (RBDA) methodology, pipeline safety is identified with the estimated reliability. The essence of the methodology is to make decisions that maintain a minimum required level of reliability (referred to as a reliability target) or, synonymously, a maximum permissible failure probability. The steps required for the application of the methodology in accordance with Clause O.1 are illustrated in Figure O.5.

Reliability targets are usually selected to maintain substantially uniform risk, where risk is defined as the failure probability multiplied by the failure consequences. To achieve this, higher reliability targets (i.e., lower permissible failure probabilities) are usually specified for limit states with more severe consequences.

The benefits of RBDA include the following:

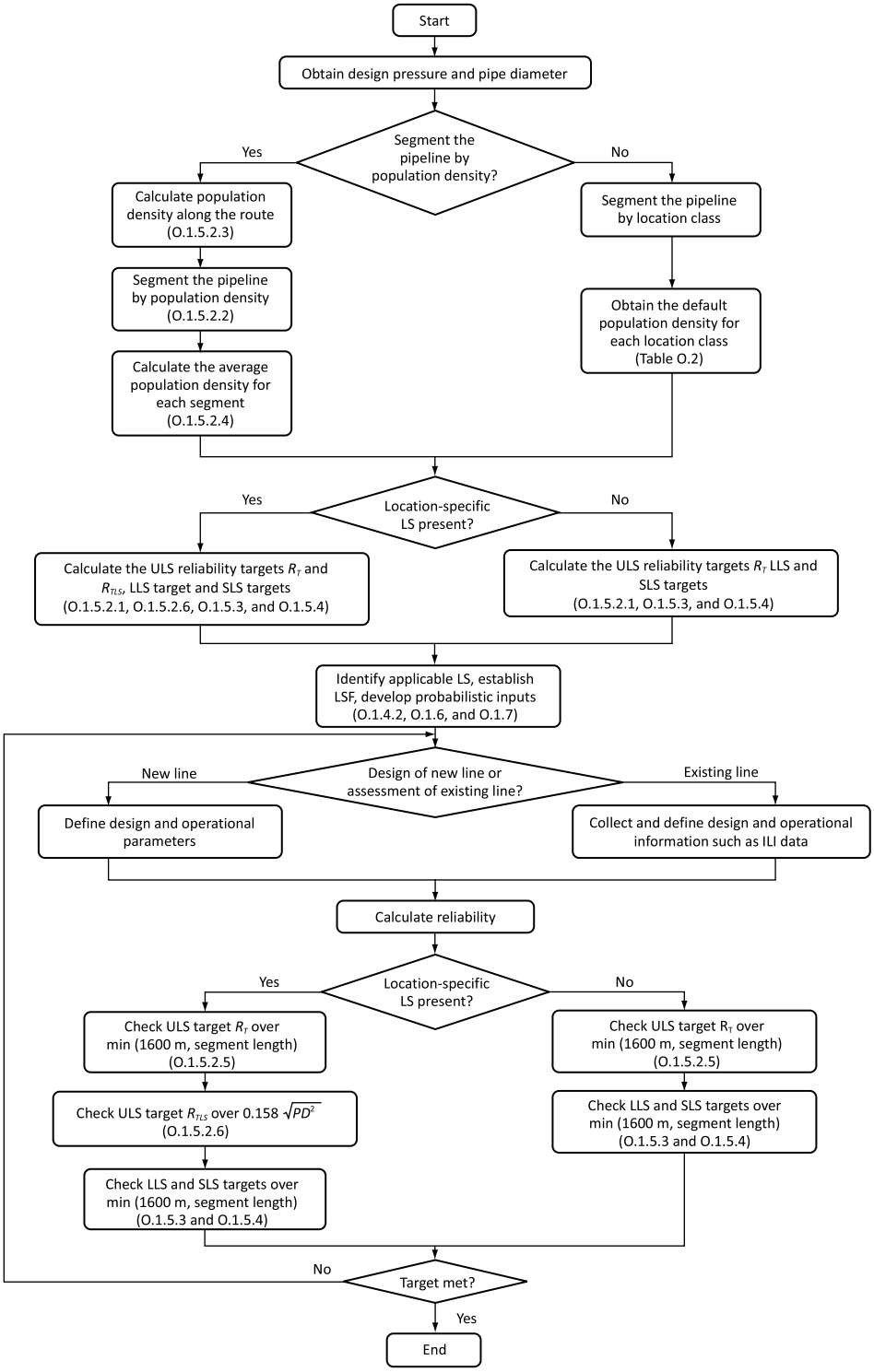
a) Structural performance of the pipeline is assessed with respect to its true failure modes.
b) A consistent safety level is achieved by limiting the failure probability for each failure mode to a level commensurate with failure consequences.
c) The required safety level is achieved through optimal use of available resources.
d) The approach is readily applicable for unique pipelines involving unconventional loads (e.g., frost heave and thaw settlement) or new materials (e.g., high-strength steels).

 © 2015 CSA Group

e) Design and operational decisions are integrated in a unified decision-making process aimed at meeting reliability targets throughout the design life.
f) Criteria are made available to measure and evaluate pipeline safety.

RBDA is applicable to the design of new pipelines and assessment of existing pipelines. For new pipelines, reliability targets are met by selecting an appropriate combination of all design and operational parameters. For existing pipelines, design parameters are predetermined and decisions are typically focused on operational parameters.

Figure O.5
A flowchart describing application steps
(See Clause O.2.1.4.)



 © 2015 CSA Group

O.2.2 Reliability targets

O.2.2.1 General

The reliability targets specified in this Annex were developed as minimum requirements to ensure that adequate safety levels are maintained throughout the life of a pipeline. Since the environmental risks associated with natural gas pipelines are negligible in comparison to human safety risks, the reliability targets were based on human safety considerations. Clauses O.2.2.2 to O.2.2.4 provide an overview of the methodology and criteria used in developing the reliability targets. Details of the methodology are described in Nessim *et al*. (2004) and Nessim and Zhou (2005a).

O.2.2.2 Ultimate limit states

O.2.2.2.1 Approach

The ultimate limit state reliability targets given in Clause O.1.5.2 were defined using a risk-based approach. The approach follows from the basic definition of risk as a product of the failure probability and failure consequences. Based on this, the maximum permissible failure probability can be calculated as the maximum permissible risk level divided by the failure consequences. The reliability target is calculated by subtracting the maximum permissible failure probability from 1 (see Equation O-11). By using a given tolerable risk level for all pipelines and substituting the appropriate pipeline-specific consequences, the resulting reliability targets ensure that the maximum risk level for any pipelines does not exceed the tolerable value.

The consequences of failure, as measured by the number of people affected by an ignited release, are proportional to the population density, the probability of ignition, and the size of the hazard area (defined as the area within which people would potentially be exposed to a lethal heat dosage). Since the probability of ignition is approximately proportional to the diameter, D, and hazard area is proportional to PD^2, where P is the pipeline pressure, failure consequences are proportional to ρPD^3. The ULS reliability target is therefore defined as an increasing function of ρPD^3. This approach reflects the reasonable expectation that reliability targets should become more stringent for larger pipelines operating at higher pressures in more heavily populated areas.

Because of the complex issues associated with quantifying risk, a number of measures that focus on different aspects of risk have been in use by the pipeline industry. To ensure comprehensive consideration of all safety-related aspects, the reliability targets were based on a combination of these criteria. These criteria can be classified into two major categories, namely societal risk (Clause O.2.2.2.2) and individual risk (Clause O.2.2.2.3). Two societal risk criteria were used, one intended to minimize the overall expectation of fatalities and the other to reduce the probability of incidents involving a large number of people. The final targets for any value of ρPD^3 were defined as the most conservative of the three risk criteria just mentioned.

O.2.2.2.2 Societal risk criteria

Societal risk is a measure of the overall risk of fatality due to pipeline incidents. It can be quantified using one of two approaches. The first approach is to use the number of fatalities as a measure of consequences, in which case risk is measured by the expected number of fatalities. This measure implies that the risk associated with a low probability incident causing a large number of fatalities is equivalent to the risk associated with a higher probability incident causing a proportionately lower number of fatalities. The second approach is to measure failure consequences by the number of fatalities raised to a power greater than one, in which case risk is measured by the expected value of the consequence measure. This measure implies that the risk increases exponentially with the number

 © 2015 CSA Group

of fatalities, which means that a low probability incident causing a large number of fatalities represents a higher risk than a higher probability incident causing a proportionately lower number of fatalities. This trend represents society's aversion to incidents causing large numbers of fatalities: the power to which the number of fatalities is raised represents the degree of aversion.

Tolerable societal risk levels were generated by calibration to existing codes, including ASME B31.8, ASME B31.8S, and US Federal Regulation 49 CFR 192. Since new pipelines designed and maintained to the requirements of these codes are widely accepted as safe, the average level of societal risk implied by these codes can be considered tolerable. Based on this, the maximum tolerable societal risk levels were specified as equal to the calculated average societal risk for a network of new pipelines that are designed, operated, and maintained in accordance with the above-mentioned codes and regulations. The average risk level resulting from this calculation (see Nessim *et al*. 2004) is valid and appropriate for the calibration of target reliability, but should not be construed as an absolute risk target, nor used outside of the purpose for which it was intended, without a thorough understanding of how it was determined.

Based on the above rationale, the risk level implied by current codes was estimated using a calibration process, in which a large number of pipeline cases were designed according to ASME B31.8. The probability of failure was calculated for each case as a function of time, assuming that the pipeline is operated and maintained in accordance with ASME B31.8S and US Federal Regulation 49 CFR 192. The consequences of failure and average lifetime risk were then calculated and multiplied by the failure probability to calculate the risk level for each case. The overall average risk level was calculated as the sum of the risk levels for all design cases, each weighted by the associated relative length in the existing North American gas transmission pipeline network.

A total of 240 design cases were analyzed in the calibration, covering all combinations of four location classes (1, 2, 3, and 4), three design pressures (4.1, 6.9, and 9.7 MPa), four grades (241, 359, 414, and 483), and five outside diameters (219.1, 406.4, 610, 762, and 1067 mm). These parameter ranges were intended to ensure that the reliability targets are based on comprehensive coverage of existing natural gas transmission pipelines. The targets can be applied to any onshore pipeline transporting product that conforms to the specifications set out in this Annex and are not restricted to the range of pressures, diameters, or grades used in the calibration studies. The practical implications of using them for pipelines that are within the parameter ranges used in the calibration are described in Nessim and Zhou (2004).

O.2.2.2.3 Individual risk criteria

Individual risk is a measure of risk to specific individuals who are present at a particular location (e.g., home or workplace). It is usually measured by the annual probability of fatality due to a pipeline incident for a person located at a specific point within the pipeline hazard zone. An individual risk criterion is required because societal risk criteria could lead to high permissible failure probabilities in sparsely populated areas where the number of expected fatalities is low. This would imply that the societal risk, although tolerable, is concentrated in a small number of individuals who might not be adequately protected.

Maximum tolerable individual risk criteria used in this work were selected based on information published by HSE (2001) and MIACC (1995). Although these sources do not explicitly specify target individual risk levels by location class, the information they provide was used to select annual tolerable risk levels of 10^{-4} in Class 1, 10^{-5} in Class 2, and 10^{-6} in Classes 3 and 4, where the various classes are defined in accordance with Clause 4.3.2. The decrease in tolerable individual risk as a function of class reflects a requirement to decrease risk as the number of people exposed increases. This is an

 © 2015 CSA Group

established method to include aversion to large incidents (see discussion in Clause O.2.2.2.2) in individual risk criteria.

O.2.2.2.4 Lower bound

A minimum ULS reliability target of 1-10-3 per km-yr is used to ensure that ULS reliability target is not less than the LLS reliability target specified in Clause O.1.5.3. Analysis of a wide range of design cases demonstrates that this minimum target does not have a significant design impact because wall thickness selection of pipelines with ULS targets less than 1-10-3 per km-yr is generally governed by the minimum wall thickness requirement or the SLS target, not the ULS target.

O.2.2.3 Leakage limit states

The leakage limit state reliability target specified in Clause O.1.5.3 was selected based on a combination of leak impact analysis, historical leak rates, and calibration to ASME B31.8. Because the human and environmental safety consequences of a small leak in a non-sour natural gas pipeline are insignificant and have a similar magnitude for all pipelines, the target is defined as a fixed value that does not depend on pipeline characteristics.

The LLS targets are only likely to govern for small-diameter and low-pressure pipelines because large-diameter and high-pressure pipelines require thick walls for pressure containment (i.e., will be governed by ULS targets) and therefore have small leak rates that are much smaller than the targets. In cases where LLS targets govern, it is likely that the targets will be met through enhancements to inspection and maintenance rather than through increases in wall thickness. Further, operators may choose to exceed the target for economic or corporate reasons. Factors that should be considered in selecting an appropriate actual reliability level can include ease of access, repair costs, security of supply, availability of alternative product sources, regulatory response, and public reaction.

O.2.2.4 Serviceability limit states

The serviceability limit state target specified in Clause O.1.5.4 is based on values suggested in other standards (CAN/CSA-S471 and ISO 16708). It is based on the SLS definition used in this Annex, which explicitly excludes any conditions leading to loss of containment (see Clause O.1.4.1), thus ensuring that an SLS does not have any significant safety or environmental consequences. To use this target, it shall be established through detailed analyses, including consideration of the effect of any relevant maintenance programs, that the deformation level associated with the SLS will not progress to loss of containment and a ULS.

Since the consequences of exceeding an SLS are mainly economic (repair costs and operational delays), operators can choose to exceed this target in cases where the probability of exceeding an SLS or the cost of repair, or both, is high. This is an economic decision that should be based on balancing the cost of increasing reliability against the expected costs of failure.

O.2.3 Developing a limit state function

O.2.3.1 Definition of main limit state parameter

A parameter that characterizes the structural behaviour associated with the limit state is required as a basis for defining the load effect and resistance in Equation O-9. Any representative parameter may be used, with the following being common examples:

a) force (e.g., excavator impact load for failure due to mechanical damage);
b) stress (e.g., hoop stress for burst under internal pressure);
c) strain (e.g., compressive strain for buckling due to bending deformations); and

 © 2015 CSA Group

d) defect size (e.g., crack length for unstable growth of a through-wall defect).

Both the load and resistance need to be defined in terms of the main limit state parameter. For example, if the load effect is represented by the excavator force applied to the pipeline, the resistance is represented by the maximum excavator force that can be resisted by the pipeline.

O.2.3.2 Development of the limit state function

The limit state function, g(*x*), is developed by substituting the load effect, *l*, and resistance, *r*, in Equation O-9 with models that express their values in terms of the basic random variables, *x*. The basic random variables include such parameters as material properties, dimensions, defect characteristics, and loading conditions. An example of these models is the relationship used to estimate pressure resistance at a corrosion defect in terms of pipeline diameter, wall thickness, tensile strength, and defect geometry.

Analytical or semi-empirical models are available to define the required relationships for many key limit states, such as those related to corrosion, equipment impact, and manufacturing defects. For some limit states, such as those related to ground movement strains, numerical models are used because simple models are not available. In principle, any analytical, empirical, or numerical model can be used in developing a limit state function, but since the function is typically evaluated many times to calculate the probability of failure, simple and efficient functions are needed. Because of this, complex numerical models are commonly reduced to simplified regression-based relationships using the "response surface" method, in which the numerical model is used to produce a reasonable number of data points representing the relevant range of input parameters, and a simple regression-based model is derived from this data.

Clause O.2.6 gives limit state functions for a number of key limit states. Literature sources containing relevant information for the development of pipeline limit states include Andrew Palmer and Associates, 2002, DNV-OS-F101, NEN 3650-1, and the PRCI *Guidelines for the Seismic Design and Assessment of Natural Gas and Liquid Hydrocarbon Pipelines*.

O.2.3.3 Characterization of model uncertainty

Deterministic models involve idealizations and limitations that lead to some error in the results. Model error can be accounted for by adding appropriate model error factors that are quantified based on comparing model results to experimental data or to the results of more accurate models. Since model error dominates other sources of uncertainty in some cases, it is necessary to quantify and include it in any reliability analysis.

Model error may have a systematic component (model bias) and a random component (model scatter). Model bias represents an error component with a fixed value, which causes the model results to be different, on average, from the actual values. Model scatter represents an error component that changes randomly from one application of the model to another, causing the results to fluctuate randomly around the average prediction. The mean value of a model error factor represents bias, whereas the standard deviation represents model scatter.

The appropriate format for characterizing model error depends on the relationship between the error magnitude and the quantity being estimated by the model. Although, in principle, any relationship is possible, simplifying assumptions are typically made. The two most common assumptions are those of proportional error and independent error. Proportional error is applicable when the model scatter component is proportional to the model result. It can be represented by multiplying the model result by a random model error factor. Independent error is applicable when the model scatter component is independent of the model result and can be represented by adding the random model error factor to

the model result. It is important to choose a model that reflects data trends, which can be observed visually by plotting the model results against the actual (usually experimental) data.

O.2.4 Probabilistic characterization of input variables

O.2.4.1 Time-independent variables

O.2.4.1.1

A time-independent random variable has an uncertain value that does not change as a function of time and is modelled by a standard probability distribution. Examples include loads (e.g., pipe weight and overburden), mechanical properties (e.g., yield strength and fracture toughness) pipe geometry (e.g., diameter and wall thickness), and model error factors. Uncertainty regarding time-independent random variables is typically the result of measurement limitations. For example, the yield strength or fracture toughness at a particular location cannot be determined with certainty because this would require a destructive test. Therefore it is necessary to describe these parameters by probability distributions that represent the variability associated with the pipe manufacturing process.

O.2.4.1.2

Probability distributions are normally selected based on statistical data collected by sampling the population of values associated with the random variable (e.g., yield strength values from coupon tests). The steps involved in this process are as follows:

a) Data analysis. The data are analyzed to calculate summary statistics such as the mean value and standard deviation and to identify the shape of the distribution from histogram and cumulative frequency plots.
b) Candidate distribution selection. A number of candidate distribution types are selected that match key data characteristics such as the range of the random variable (e.g., positive only, or positive and negative) and general shape of the distribution (e.g., symmetric or non-symmetric). Standard distribution types are described in probability texts (e.g., Benjamin and Cornell, 1970).
c) Distribution parameter estimation. The distribution parameters can be estimated from the data using the following methods:
    i) the method of moments, which is based on matching the distribution parameters (e.g., mean and standard deviation) to the corresponding data parameters;
    ii) the method of maximum likelihood, in which the distribution parameters are selected such that the likelihood of obtaining the data sample from the distribution is maximized; or
    iii) the least square method, in which the distribution parameters are selected such that the resulting distribution represents a least square fit to the data plot on the appropriate probability paper type (Ang and Tang, 1975).
d) Best-fit distribution selection. The most appropriate distribution can be identified using standard statistical techniques such as the chi-square and Kolmogorov-Smirnov goodness-of-fit tests. These tests determine appropriateness of a given distribution based on a statistic that represents the difference between the relative frequencies obtained from the data and those calculated from the distribution. Goodness-of fit tests have limitations, including sensitivity to the bin width used in generating the data histogram and lack of sensitivity to quality of the fit in the tail region. Since failure occurs due to a combination of high load and low resistance, calculated reliability is heavily influenced by the upper tail of the load distribution and the lower tail of the resistance distribution. Fit quality in the tail regions can be examined visually on probability paper plots of the data and distribution. Therefore distribution fitting should be based on a combination of statistical tests and visual inspection on probability paper plots to ensure fit quality in the entire parameter range and in the relevant tail regions.

Clause O.2.7 gives a summary of previously published data and distributions for some of the key parameters used in pipeline reliability analyses. A number of commercial software packages are available to facilitate fitting probability distributions to statistical data (see Nessim and Zhou, 2005b, for a partial listing).

O.2.4.1.3

Sufficient statistical data are not always available to assign probability distributions. Other methods that can be used are as follows:

a) Knowledge of the statistical characteristics of the parameter based on previous analyses. For example, it is known based on previous analyses of many data sets that the yield strength of steel follows a normal or lognormal distribution with a mean value and standard deviation that can be estimated from SMYS.
b) Theoretical basis. It can be theoretically shown, for example, that the normal distribution is a good model for the sum of a large number of independent identically distributed random variables and that the lognormal distribution is appropriate for the product of a large number of independent identically distributed random variables (Feller, 1971). Similarly, standard distributions of extremes (Gumbel, Frechet, and Weibull) are good models for the maximum or minimum value out of a large number of independent samples of a given random variable.
c) Logical basis. For example, it may be appropriate to model the location of an excavator hit along a segment with a uniform distribution between 0 and the segment length, based on the argument that a hit is equally likely to occur anywhere along the segment.

In all cases, distribution selection must employ appropriate judgment to verify the quality and relevance of the information used and compensate for any data deficiencies.

O.2.4.2 Time-dependent variables

A time-dependent random variable changes randomly as a function of time and is modelled by a random process. Examples of time-dependent random variables include operational, environmental, and accidental loads. For the pipeline to operate safely for a certain time period under a variable load, it shall withstand the maximum load applied during that period. Reliability shall therefore be calculated from the probability distribution of the maximum (or extreme) load for the specified time period. If reliability is calculated, for example, on an annual basis, a variable load shall be characterized by the probability distribution of its annual maximum. If the resistance is represented by a time-dependent random variable, the distribution of annual minimum resistance would be required.

There are two basic types of random processes:

a) Discrete random process. The process parameter assumes a non-zero value as a result of an event that has a sufficiently short duration to be treated as discrete with respect to time. This type of process, which is representative of equipment impact load, for example, is described by the frequency of occurrence of the event and the probability distribution of the process parameter when the event occurs (referred to as the parent distribution). In most cases, individual occurrences of the process can be treated as independent events.
b) Continuous random process. The process parameter changes continuously with time. Although the parameter may assume an instantaneous value of zero, its value is generally non-zero. This type of process is representative of internal pressure and wind loads, for example. A continuous random process is typically characterized by sampling the parameter at regular time intervals. In general, values of the process parameter that are separated by a certain time interval can be correlated. The correlation, which is referred to as autocorrelation, is typically strong for short time separations, becoming weaker as the time separation increases. For the purpose of calculating

extremal distributions, the process can be discretized by defining it at specific points in time. If these points are selected in such a way as to minimize the effects of autocorrelation, individual process values can be treated as independent. One method to achieve this is to divide the time scale into equal intervals, and take the maximum value within each interval as one occurrence of the process. Independence can be achieved in this case by ensuring that the time interval used to divide the process is sufficiently long. Another method is the so-called peak-over-threshold approach, in which an occurrence of the process is assumed each time the parameter exceeds a specified threshold, and the process parameter is defined as the maximum value reached before the parameter drops below the threshold. In this case, independence is achieved by selecting a sufficiently high threshold.

The distribution of the maximum value of a discrete random process (or a discretized continuous random process) can be calculated using standard extremal analysis methods, which typically assume independence between individual occurrences of the process. Extremal distributions can be calculated numerically from the parent distribution and frequency of occurrence, or analytically using asymptotic extremal distributions (specifically, the Gumbel, Frechet, and Weibull distributions). Details of extremal analysis methods can be found in Ochi (1990), and Ang and Tang (1990).

O.2.4.3 Effect of sample size

The parameters of a given distribution are typically estimated from the mean and standard deviation of a given data sample, which represents a set of actual values drawn from the underlying probability distribution of the variable. Two samples of the same size contain different data points leading to different parameter estimates. These differences reflect an additional source of uncertainty, which relates to using statistics from a limited sample to estimate distribution parameters. Statistical uncertainty is large for small samples, reducing to near zero for very large samples.

The basic approach used to account for statistical uncertainty for small sample sizes is to treat the distribution parameters (such as mean and standard deviation) estimated from data as random variables and model them by appropriate probability distributions. The probability distribution of a given distribution parameter depends on the distribution of the basic random variable from which the sample is drawn and on the size of the sample. These distributions and their parameters can be defined analytically for some special cases. Where analytical solutions do not exist, the numerical "bootstrapping approach" can be used (Efron and Tibshirani, 1993).

Once the probability distribution of the distribution parameters is determined, it can be used in a number of ways, including the following:

a) Subsequent reliability analyses can be carried out conditionally on different possible values of the distribution parameters being treated as random. If, for example, the basic random variable under consideration is fracture toughness, and the mean fracture toughness is treated as a random variable because it is estimated from a small sample, the reliability analysis would be carried out for a number of possible values of the mean fracture toughness. The probability of each outcome equals the probability of the mean fracture toughness used to obtain it. Carried out for all possible values of mean fracture toughness, this produces a probability distribution of the reliability, which exclusively reflects the statistical uncertainty associated with the mean fracture toughness. The results can be used to calculate confidence intervals or other probabilistic representations of the calculated reliability values.
b) The statistical uncertainty can be integrated into the random variable distribution, producing a final distribution that combines the basic uncertainty regarding the random variable and the statistical uncertainty regarding its distribution parameters. The final distribution can be calculated as the sum of the random variable distributions associated with all possible combinations of distribution

parameters, each weighted by the probability of occurrence of the corresponding distribution parameter combination. For the fracture toughness example mentioned in the last paragraph, the fracture toughness distribution would be calculated as the sum of the distributions corresponding to all possible values of the mean fracture toughness, each weighted by the probability of the corresponding mean fracture toughness. As a reflection of the additional statistical uncertainty, the resulting distribution has a higher standard deviation than the one obtained from a single best estimate of the mean fracture toughness. Using this distribution in subsequent analysis results in commensurately more conservative outcomes.

O.2.5 Reliability estimation

O.2.5.1 Basic formulation

Reliability, R, with respect to a given limit state category is defined as the probability that none of the limit states within the category are exceeded during a given period of time. It is related to the probability of failure, p_f, by

$$R = 1 - p_f$$
$$= 1 - \sum_{\text{all } i} p_{fi}$$

Equation O-12

where

i = a specific limit state within the category

For the small failure rates that are typical of transmission pipelines, the probability of multiple failures in a given km-year is negligible. The probability of one failure per km-year is approximately equal to the expected failure rate, λ_f. Therefore the reliability can also be expressed as

$$R = 1 - \lambda_f$$
$$= 1 - \sum_{\text{all } i} \lambda_{fi}$$

Equation O-13

Equation O-13 shows that estimating reliability requires calculation of the failure rates associated with all contributing limit states.

O.2.5.2 Time variability

O.2.5.2.1

Pipeline limit states can be classified as either time-dependent, if the reliability changes with time, or as time-independent, if the reliability does not change with time. This classification depends on the time characteristics of the load and resistance processes involved. Figure O.6 shows the types of load processes relevant to onshore pipelines, which include

a) Time-independent. The load is fixed with respect to time, although its value may be uncertain (i.e., a random variable). This category includes permanent loads such as dead load, which does not change with time but is uncertain due to variability in wall thickness.
b) Time-dependent stationary — continuous. The load is continuously applied to the pipeline, but its value changes randomly as a function of time. Stationarity means that, although the load value changes randomly as a function of time, the statistical properties of the load process do not change due to a shift of the time scale. The figure shows that the load could be changing either continuously or at specific points in time. Intermittent processes are also included in this category,

 © 2015 CSA Group

as they can be treated as continuous processes applied for a certain proportion of time. Examples of loading processes in this category include wind and internal pressure loads (continuous and continuously changing), operational loads (continuous and changing at specific points in time), and snow and ice loads (intermittent).

c) Time-dependent stationary — discrete. The load occurs at specific (discrete) points in time and has a very short duration when it occurs. Its value changes randomly between different occurrences, but its statistical properties do not change due to a shift of the time scale (stationarity). Examples are equipment impact, earthquakes, and severe storms.

d) Time-dependent increasing. The load is applied continuously and increases as a function of time. The increase is not subject to significant random fluctuations, although the parameters governing the change may be uncertain. An example is ground movement due to frost heave.

O.2.5.2.2

Resistance processes fall into one of two major categories, as shown in Figure O.7:

a) Time-independent. The resistance is fixed with respect to time, although its value may be uncertain (i.e., a random variable). Examples are yield and burst resistance of defect-free pipe and pipe resistance to equipment impact loads.

b) Time-dependent decreasing. Resistance decreases with time without being subject to significant random fluctuations. Examples include resistance at growing defects such as corrosion, SCC, or weld cracks.

O.2.5.2.3

Table O.3 shows the type of limit state arising from each combination of load and resistance processes. “N/A” is used for combinations that are unlikely to apply to onshore natural gas pipelines. The table shows that a time-dependent stationary load or resistance process does not by itself lead to a time-dependent limit state because reliability is a function of the statistical properties of the load and resistance processes, which do not change with time in the case of a stationary process. Only systematically increasing or decreasing load or resistance processes lead to time-dependent limit states.

Although the classification shown in Table O.3 is not comprehensive, it represents the majority of practical onshore gas pipeline limit states and is used as a basis for the information provided in this Annex. Special cases in which these idealizations are not deemed appropriate shall be addressed from first principles.

Figure O.6
Types of loading processes applicable to onshore pipeline
(See Clause O.2.5.2.1.)

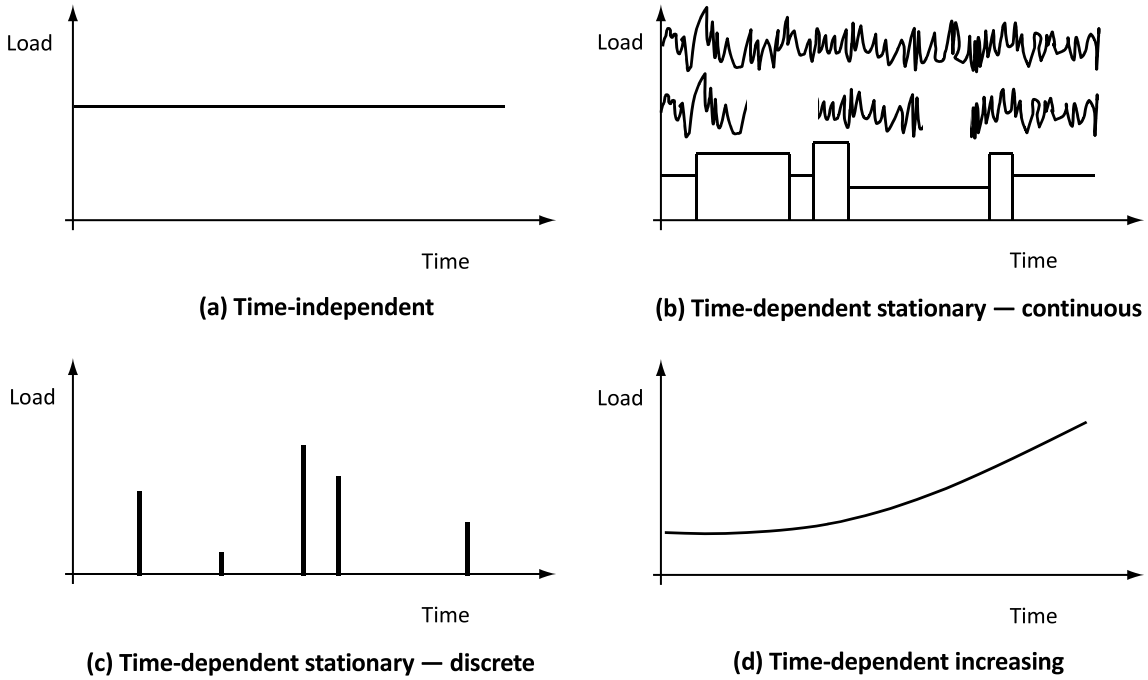
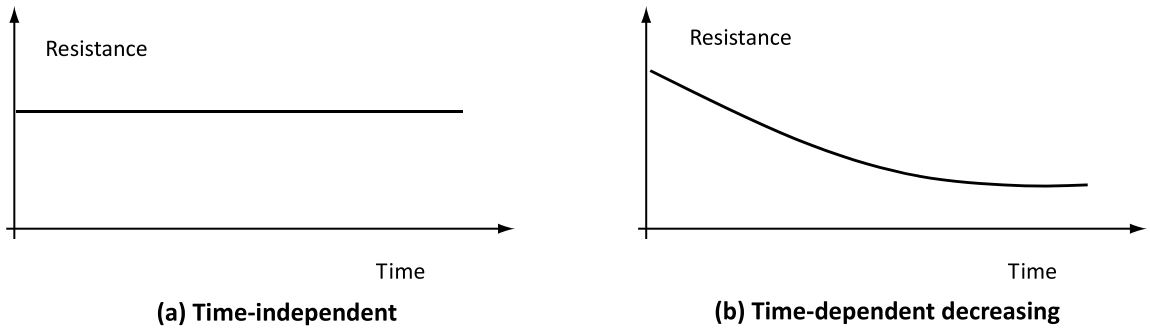


Figure O.7
Types of resistance processes
(See Clause O.2.5.2.2.)



 © 2015 CSA Group

Table O.3
Classification of limit states with respect to time dependence
(See Clause O.2.5.2.3.)

	Loading process			
Resistance process	**Time-independent**	**Time-dependent stationary — continuous**	**Time-dependent stationary — discrete**	**Time-dependent increasing**
Time-independent	Time-independent	Time-independent	Time-independent	Time-dependent
Time-dependent decreasing	N/A	Time-dependent	N/A	N/A

O.2.5.3 Single time-independent limit state

Time-independent limit states include those resulting from equipment impact, seismic events, wind, gravity loads, and internal pressure for defect-free pipe. With the exception of seismic-related limit states, the failure rate, λ_f (failures per km-year), can be calculated from

$$\lambda_f = \omega \times p_f \qquad \textbf{Equation O-14}$$

where

ω = the frequency of occurrence of the loading event

p_f = the conditional probability of failure given an occurrence of the event

For equipment impact, for example, ω represents the frequency of impact events and p_f the probability of failure given an impact (failure per impact). Equation O-14 assumes that individual events are independent.

Given a limit state function in the form of Equation O-10, the conditional probability of failure, p_f, can be calculated as the probability that the margin of safety is less than zero. This gives (see Figure O.8)

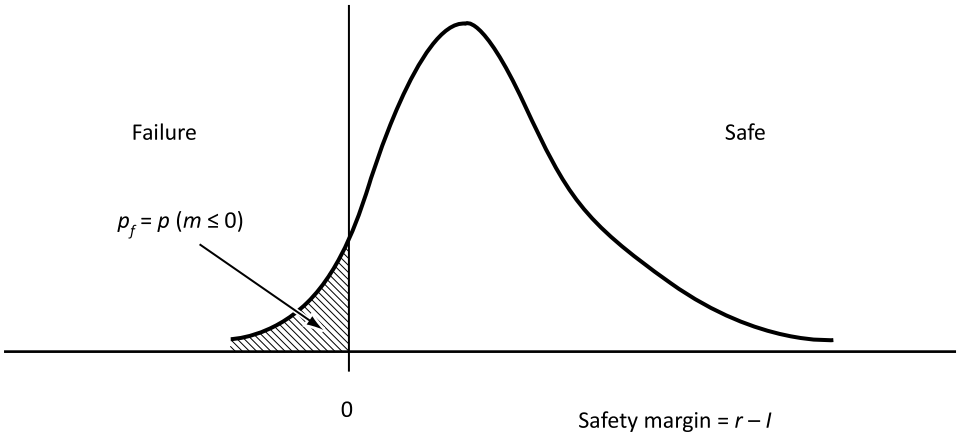
$$p_f = p[m = g(x) \leq 0] \qquad \textbf{Equation O-15}$$
$$= \int f(x)dx$$

f(x) = the joint probability distribution of the basic random variables.

Equation O-15 is a standard probability integral that can be solved using first- or second-order reliability methods (Thoft-Christensen and Baker, 1982, Madsen *et al*., 1986, and Melchers, 1999) or simulation techniques (Rubinstein, 1981, Engelund and Rackwitz, 1992, and Avramidis and Wilson, 1996).

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure O.8
Illustration of failure probability calculation as the probability of a negative safety margin
(See Clause O.2.5.3.)



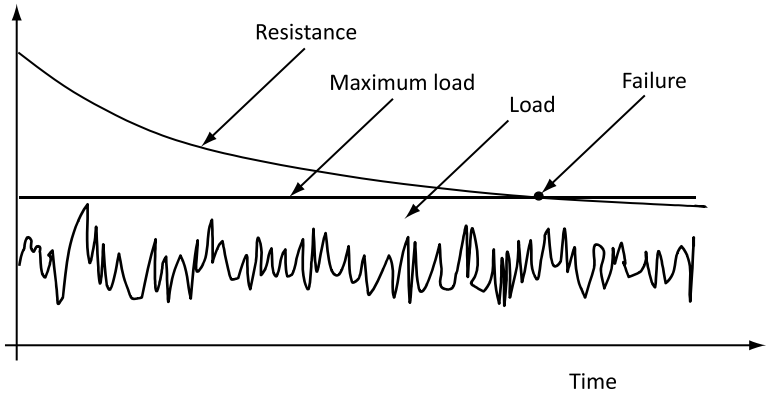
A special methodology is required to calculate the probability of failure for seismic-related limit states because the frequency of occurrence of seismic hazard and the severity of the resulting load are correlated. A description of this special methodology can be found in Nessim and Zhou (2005b).

O.2.5.4 Single time-dependent limit state

O.2.5.4.1 Failure rate calculation

Time-dependent limit states include all those related to growing defects such as corrosion and SCC defects under internal pressure or increasing loads such as soil deformations. Figure O.9 shows the load and resistance processes for the limit state representing failure at a corrosion defect. To simplify the problem in this case, the random load process may be conservatively replaced by a maximum credible sustained load, which is assumed to be applicable on a continuous basis.

Figure O.9
Idealization of a time-dependent load as time-independent for reliability calculations
(See Clause O.2.5.4.1.)



 © 2015 CSA Group

Assuming independence between potential failure locations, the failure rate, $\lambda_f(\tau)$ in failures per km-year, is calculated from

$$\lambda_f(\tau) = \omega \times p_f(\tau) \qquad \textbf{Equation O-16}$$

where

ω = the frequency of potential failure locations (per km)

$p_f(\tau)$ = the conditional probability of failure for a randomly selected failure location (failures per location per year)

τ = time, years

For corrosion and other types of defects, for instance, ω represents the average number of defects per km and $p_f(\tau)$ is the conditional annual probability of failure at a randomly selected defect. Both the failure rate and conditional failure probability are defined as functions of time.

Figure O.9 shows that failure occurs at a given location when sufficient time has elapsed for the resistance to drop below the load. The probability that failure will occur before time, τ, has elapsed is equal to the probability that the time to failure is less than τ, which (by definition) is equal to the cumulative probability distribution of the time to failure. The cumulative probability of the time to failure can be expressed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} F(\tau) &= p[g(x,\tau) \le 0] \\ &= p[g'(x) \le \tau] \\ &= \int_{g'(x)\le\tau} f(x)dx \end{aligned} \qquad \textbf{Equation O-17}$$

where

$f(x)$ = the joint probability distribution of the basic random variables

Using the same methods mentioned in connection with Equation O-15, Equation O-17 can be solved at different values of τ to obtain $F(\tau)$. This can be used to calculate the annual probability of failure in year τ' using

$$\begin{aligned} p_f(\tau') &= p(\tau' - 1 < \tau < \tau') \\ &= F(\tau') - F(\tau' - 1) \end{aligned} \qquad \textbf{Equation O-18}$$

Although the discussion in this Clause is based on the case of a time-independent load and decreasing resistance (see Figure O.9), the same approach is applicable to the case of increasing load and time-independent resistance.

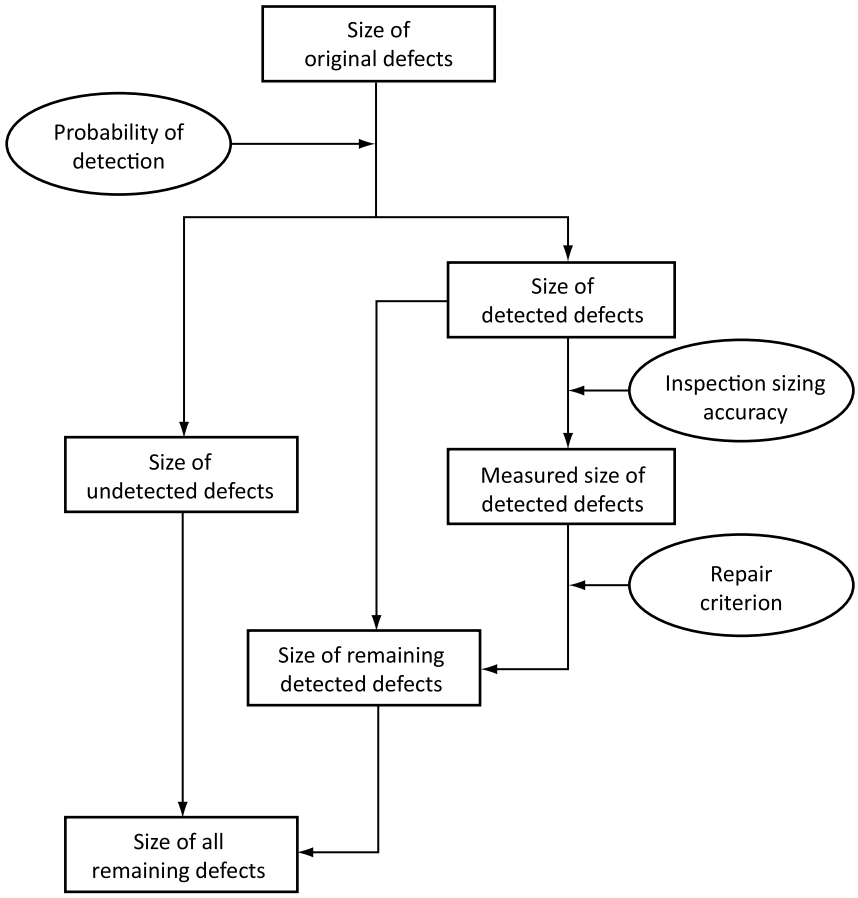
O.2.5.4.2 Impact of rehabilitation

Rehabilitation improves reliability by reducing the number of growing defects, where “defect” is used in a general sense to describe actual imperfections (e.g., corrosion or cracks) as well as other detectable anomalies (e.g., excessive bending strains due to ground movement). Targeted rehabilitation methods (e.g., hydrostatic testing or in-line inspection coupled with appropriate repairs) also improve reliability by reducing the percentage of large damage features in the population.

Figure O.10 shows a conceptual model of the inspection process. Before inspection, the pipeline will have a certain defect population. The probability distribution of defect size for that original population can be estimated from previous inspection results or estimated defect growth rates, or both. The

inspection and repair process acts as a filter that removes defects above a certain size. The degree of improvement in reliability depends on the effectiveness of the inspection method and the degree of conservatism built into the repair criterion used.

Figure O.10
Illustration of the rehabilitation process
(See Clause O.2.5.4.2.)



The population of remaining defects after rehabilitation consists of all undetected defects, as well as detected defects that are not repaired. The following uncertainties affect the probability distribution of the size of remaining defects:

a) Probability of detection. The probability of detection for a given inspection method/tool is a function of defect size and geometry, and this function is typically provided by tool vendors. The inspection divides the population of original defects into two separate populations, one comprising defects that are detected and the other comprising defects that are not detected. The size distributions of detected and undetected defects are different because there is usually a higher chance of detecting a larger defect; therefore, defects that are detected are more likely to be large than defects that are not detected.

b) Sizing accuracy. The defect size estimated from inspection is subject to random measurement errors caused by accuracy limitations of inspection tools/methods. Because of this, the probability distribution of measured defect size generally differs from that of the actual defect size, with the

 © 2015 CSA Group

difference being a function of measurement error. The probability distribution of measurement error can be defined based on verification excavation results or inspection tool specifications.

c) Repair criterion. The decision to excavate a defect for repair is based on the measured defect size as provided by the inspection tool. Since the measured defect size differs from the actual defect size (due to measurement error), there is a probability that a significant defect is undersized and therefore not repaired or that a insignificant defect is oversized and excavated unnecessarily.

Methods to account for these uncertainties in calculating the probability distribution of defect size after repair are described in Nessim and Zhou (2005b). Once the probability distribution of the defect size after the rehabilitation is calculated, it can be used in the approach illustrated in Figure O.10 to calculate the updated probability of failure.

O.2.5.5 Multiple limit states

O.2.5.5.1 General

Simultaneous consideration of multiple limit states is required to account for multiple failure mechanisms or distinguish between failure modes (i.e., leaks and ruptures). The appropriate formulation and best solution method is case-dependent. Two examples are given in Clauses O.2.5.5.2 and O.2.5.5.3 to demonstrate the methodology.

O.2.5.5.2 Leak and rupture due to equipment impact

Two failure mechanisms with different limit state functions are possible in an equipment impact event, namely puncture and failure of a gouged dent. In addition, a third limit state is required to determine whether failure occurs by leak or rupture. The limit state surfaces corresponding to these limit states are illustrated in Figure O.11. The figure is based on two random variables representing load and resistance, but in reality, there can be a number of random variables representing impact load, internal pressure, wall thickness, yield strength, fracture toughness, gouge geometry, and model error. The limit states involved are

a) puncture (g_1): occurs if the load imposed by the excavator tooth exceeds the combined shear and membrane resistance of the pipe wall;

b) gouged dent failure (g_2): occurs if the load is not sufficient to cause puncture, but large enough to cause a gouged dent that fails under pressure after removal of the load; and

c) leak versus rupture (g_3): a puncture or gouged dent failure results initially in a leak. If the length of the resulting breach is large enough, unstable axial growth could occur leading to a rupture.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure O.11
Limit states for different failure modes associated with equipment impact
(See Clause O.2.5.5.2.)

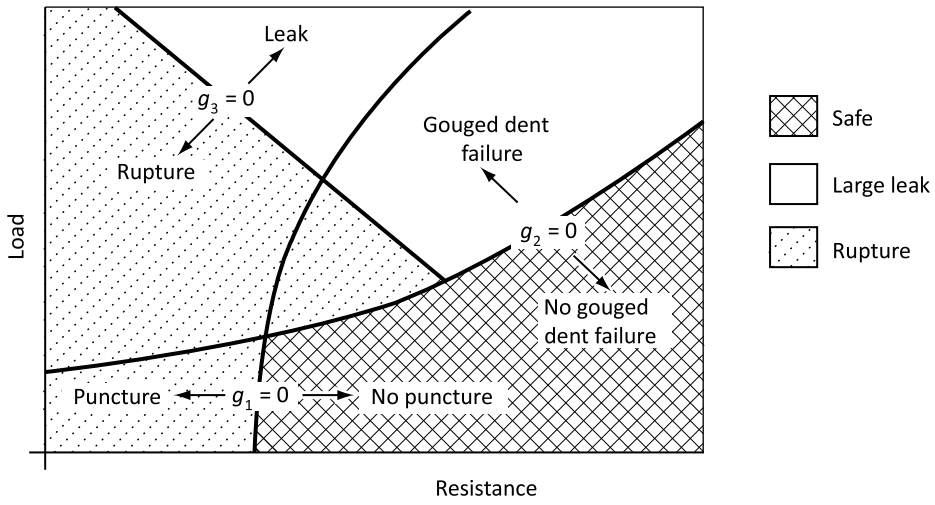


Figure O.11 shows combinations of the load and resistance that lead to a safe pipeline (no failure) and to failure by a leak or rupture. The safe area is the area on the safe side of both g_1 and g_2. The failure domain is the area on the failure side of either or both of g_1 and g_2. The failure domain is split into two areas on either side of g_3, which represent conditions that lead to rupture or leak.

Reliability calculation in this case requires estimation of the probability that the basic random variables assume a combination that falls within each of the different safe and failure domains in Figure O.11. This problem can be solved using the reliability analysis methods mentioned in Clause O.2.5.3, in conjunction with system reliability techniques (see Madsen *et al*., 1986, and Thoft-Christensen and Murotsu, 1986, for detailed information).

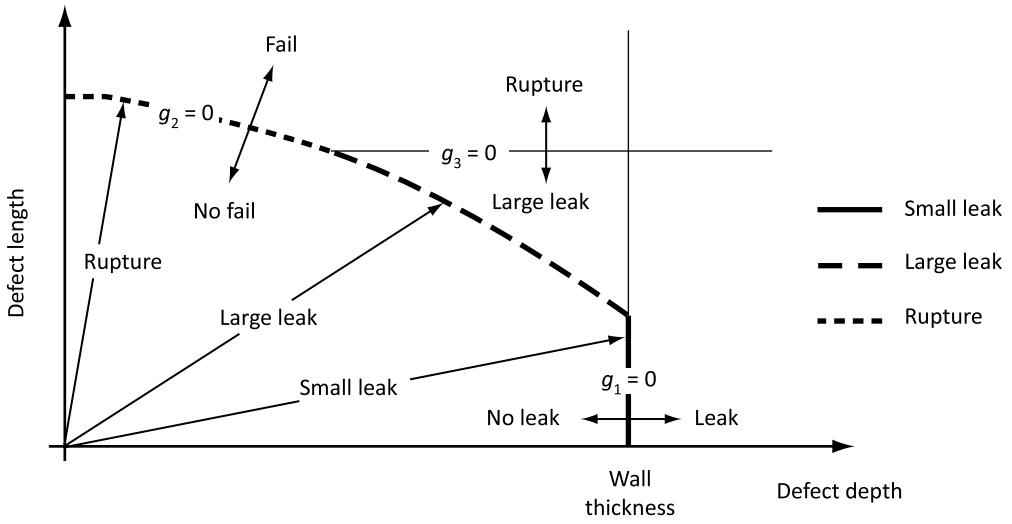
O.2.5.5.3 Leak and rupture due to corrosion

A corrosion feature may fail by a small leak, large leak, or rupture. The limit states corresponding to these failure modes are illustrated in Figure O.12. For illustration purposes, the figure is based on two random variables representing defect depth and length, but in reality, there can be a number of random variables representing internal pressure, wall thickness, yield strength, defect dimensions, and model error. The limit states involved are

a) small leak (g_1): occurs if the maximum defect depth exceeds the wall thickness. As indicated in the figure, small leaks occur for defects that are short enough to corrode through the wall without violating the burst pressure criterion;
b) burst (g_2): occurs if the internal pressure exceeds the burst resistance at the corrosion defect. It is a function of both defect depth and length. As indicated in the figure, burst occurs for defects that are long enough to violate the burst criterion before corroding through the wall; and
c) rupture (g_3): burst of a corrosion defect results initially in a leak. If the length of the resulting breach is large enough, unstable axial growth could occur leading to a rupture.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure O.12
Limit states for different failure modes associated with corrosion
(See Clause O.2.5.5.3.)



Reliability calculation in this case requires estimation of the probability that the defect will cross the limit state surface along the small leak, large leak, or rupture zone within a given time interval. This problem can be solved using the reliability analysis methods mentioned in Clause O.2.5.4, in conjunction with system reliability techniques (see Madsen *et al*., 1986, and Thoft-Christensen and Murotsu, 1986, for detailed information).

O.2.6 Key limit state functions

O.2.6.1 General

Clauses O.2.6.2 to O.2.6.4 contain limit state functions for some of the key limit states associated with onshore natural gas transmission pipelines. These functions are based on recognized analysis models and may be used as a basis for reliability calculation where appropriate.

The following notation for common parameters is used in Clauses O.2.6.2 to O.2.6.4:

t = wall thickness, mm

D = pipe diameter, mm

σ_y = yield strength, MPa

σ_u = tensile strength, MPa

P = internal pressure, MPa

O.2.6.2 Yielding and burst of defect-free pipe

The limit state function for yielding of defect-free pipe is given by

$$g_1 = 2\sigma_y t - PD \qquad \textbf{Equation O-19}$$

The limit state function for burst of defect-free pipe is given by

$$g_2 = 2c\sigma_f t - PD \qquad \textbf{Equation O-20}$$

where

 © 2015 CSA Group

σ_f = the flow stress, MPa

c = a model error factor

If the flow stress is defined as $0.953\sigma_u$ (representative of API 5L X60 or X65 steel; see Jiao *et al*., 1995a), Equation O-20 becomes

$$g_2 = 1.906c\sigma_u t - PD$$ **Equation O-21**

where

c = a model error factor that accounts for uncertainty regarding the definition of the flow stress; it has a normal distribution with a mean of 1.0 and a coefficient of variance of 4% (Jiao *et al*., 1995a)

O.2.6.3 Equipment impact

O.2.6.3.1 Puncture

The limit state function described here is appropriate for a load generated by an indentor having a shape corresponding to that of an excavator bucket tooth. The model was developed by C-FER (Driver and Playdon, 1997, and Driver and Zimmerman, 1998) based on other existing models (Spiekhout et al., 1987, Spiekhout,1995, and Corbin and Vogt, 1997), theoretical considerations and available test data (Muntiga, 1992, Hopkins *et al*., 1992, Chatain, 1993, and Maxey, 1986). This model was calibrated for values of t between 4 and 12.5 mm, D between 168 and 914 mm, and steel grades up to 483.

The limit state function g_1 for puncture is as follows:

$$g_1 = r_a - q$$ **Equation O-22**

where

r_a = the estimated resistance, kN, including model error

= $[1.17 - 0.0029\ (D/t)]\ (l_t + w_t)\ t\ \sigma_u/1000 + e$

where

l_t = the cross-sectional length of the indentor, mm

w_t = the cross-sectional width of the indentor, mm

e = model error term, characterized by a normal distribution with a mean of 0.833 kN and a standard deviation of 26.7 kN

q = the normal impact force (kN)

= $16.5w^{0.6919}R_D R_N$

where

w = the excavator mass (tonne)

R_D = the dynamic impact factor, equal to 2/3

R_N = the normal load factor, which is the ratio between the component force normal to the pipe wall and the total force, characterized by a random quantity uniformly distributed between 0 and 1

O.2.6.3.2 Dent-gouge failure

The limit state function for dent-gouge failure, presented below, is a version of the EPRG semi-empirical model. The dent depth is calculated from the impact force using a model published by Linkens *et al*. (1998). The resulting gouged dent is checked for failure under hoop stress using a model developed for EPRG (Hopkins *et al*., 1992) and later modified by Francis *et al*. (1997). The method is based on an evaluation of the fracture ratio, K_r, and the load ratio, S_r, in accordance with the BSI PD 6493 procedure

 © 2015 CSA Group

for defect assessment. The model makes the conservative assumption that all gouges have an axial orientation, which overestimates the stresses acting on the gouge.

The limit state function, g_2, for dent-gouge type failures is as follows, given an impact with a force q, kN, normal to the pipe wall (as defined by Equation O-22) and a gouge of length l_g, mm, and depth d_g, mm:

$$g_2 = \sigma_c - \sigma_h$$ **Equation O-23**

where

σ_c = the calculated critical hoop stress resistance, determined as a solution of Equation O-24, MPa

σ_h = the hoop stress resulting from internal pressure = $PD/2t$, MPa

Note: *Model error is not considered in this calculation.*

The critical hoop stress resistance is calculated as follows:

$$\sigma_c = \frac{2}{\pi b_2}\arccos\left[\exp\left\{-125\pi^2\left(\frac{b_2}{b_1}\right)^2\frac{K_{IC}^2}{\pi d_g}\right\}\right]$$ **Equation O-24**

where

K_{IC} is the critical stress intensity, MPa m$^{0.5}$, defined as

$$K_{IC} = \left(\frac{E \times c_{v0}}{a_c}\right)^{0.5} \times \left(\frac{c_{v2/3}}{c_{v0}}\right)^{0.95}$$

b_1 and b_2 are given by

$$b_1 = (S_m Y_m + 5.1 Y_b d_{d0} / t)$$

$$b_2 = \frac{S_m\left(1 - \frac{d_g}{M_T}\right)}{1.15\sigma_y\left(1 - \frac{d_g}{t}\right)}$$

M_T is the Folias factor, approximated as

$$M_T = \left(1 + \frac{0.52 \times l_g^2}{D \times t}\right)^{0.5}$$

d_{d0} is the dent depth at zero pressure, mm, approximated by

$$d_{d0} = 1.43\left[\frac{q}{0.49\left(l_t \times \sigma_y \times t\right)^{0.25} \times \sqrt{(t + 0.7 \times P \times D / \sigma_u)}}\right]^{2.381}$$

S_m, Y_m, and Y_b are given by

$$S_m = (1 - 1.8 d_{d0} / D)$$

$$Y_m = 1.12 - 0.23\left(\frac{d_g}{t}\right) + 10.6\left(\frac{d_g}{t}\right)^2 - 21.7\left(\frac{d_g}{t}\right)^3 + 30.4\left(\frac{d_g}{t}\right)^4$$

$$Y_b = 1.12 - 1.39\left(\frac{d_g}{t}\right) + 7.32\left(\frac{d_g}{t}\right)^2 - 13.1\left(\frac{d_g}{t}\right)^3 + 14.0\left(\frac{d_g}{t}\right)^4$$

 © 2015 CSA Group

and the basic input parameters are defined as follows:

E = Young's modulus

$c_{v2/3}$ = the Charpy energy of 2/3 size specimens (2/3 of full size specimen energy), J

c_{v0} = an empirical coefficient equal to 110.3 J

a_C = the cross-sectional area of 2/3 Charpy V-notch specimens, equal to 53.6 mm^2

l_t = the cross-sectional length of the excavator tooth, mm

O.2.6.3.3 Differentiating leaks and ruptures

Given puncture or failure of a dent-gouge, the mode of failure is determined based on whether or not unstable axial growth of the resulting through-wall defect occurs. The defect is assumed to fail as a through-wall crack-like (i.e., sharp) defect. The initial defect length is assumed to equal the indentor length in the case of puncture and the gouge length in the case of gouged dent failure. If the length of the resulting through-wall crack exceeds the critical defect length for unstable growth, as determined using the criterion developed by Kiefner *et al*. (1973), the failure is classified as a rupture. Otherwise the failure is classified as a leak.

The limit state function g for rupture is

$$g_3 = S_{cr} - \sigma_h \qquad \textbf{Equation O-25}$$

where

$$S_{cr} = \frac{2\left(\sigma_y + 68.95\right)}{\pi M_T}\cos^{-1}\left[\exp - \left\{\frac{125\pi E C_v}{c\left(\sigma_y + 68.95\right)^2 A_c}\right\}\right]$$

where

σ_y = yield stress, MPa

$$M_T = \left[1 + 1.255\frac{c^2}{Rt} - 0.0135\frac{c^4}{R^2t^2}\right]^{1/2} \text{ for } \frac{c^2}{Rt} \le 25$$

$$M_T = 0.064\frac{c^2}{Rt} + 3.3 \text{ for } \frac{c^2}{Rt} > 25$$

where

c = one-half the defect length, mm, where 2c equals the indentor cross-sectional length for the case of puncture and equals the gouge length in the case of dent-gouge failure

R = pipe radius

= D/2, mm

E = elastic modulus, MPa

C_v = full-size Charpy V-notch plateau energy, J

A_c = the ligament area of full-size Charpy specimens, mm^2

σ_h = hoop stress, MPa

O.2.6.4 Corrosion

O.2.6.4.1 Small leaks

The limit state function for small leaks due to corrosion is

 © 2015 CSA Group

$g_1 = t - d_{max}$ **Equation O-26**

where

d_{max} = maximum corrosion depth, mm

O.2.6.4.2 Large leaks and ruptures

The limit state function for burst at a corrosion defect is a variant of the semi-empirical model for failure of a ductile pipe with a longitudinally oriented metal loss defect, which was developed by Battelle (Kiefner, 1969) and later modified by Kiefner and Vieth (1989) and Bubenik *et al*. (1992). The version used here has been published by Brown *et al*. (1995). Two separate definitions of the flow stress were used, one for high- grade steels (SMYS > 241 MPa) and the other for low-grade steels (SMYS ≤ 241 MPa). Both models were calibrated with burst tests carried out on corroded segments of pipe removed from service (Kiefner and Vieth, 1989). The condition used for unstable defect growth is taken from Kiefner *et al*. (1973) and Shannon (1974). The model error factors were based on 25 burst test data points for high grade steels and 38 points for low-grade steels.

The limit state function g_2 for plastic collapse at a surface corrosion defect with total axial length 2*c*, mm, and average depth d_a, mm, is defined as follows:

$g_2 = r_a - P$ **Equation O-27**

where

r_a = the estimated pressure resistance including model error, MPa

= $e_1 r_c + (1 - e_1) r_0 - e_2 \sigma_u$ for SMYS > 241 MPa

= $e_3 r_c + (1 - e_3) r_0 - e_4 \sigma_y$ for SMYS ≤ 241 MPa

where

r_c = the calculated pressure resistance, MPa

$$= r_0 \times \left(\frac{1 - \frac{d_a}{t}}{1 - \frac{d_a}{M_T \times t}} \right)$$

r_0 = the pressure resistance for perfect pipe, MPa

$$= 1.8 \frac{t\sigma_u}{D} for \ \text{SMYS} > 241 \ \text{MPa}$$

$$= 2.3 \frac{t\sigma_y}{D} for \ \text{SMYS} \leq 241 \ \text{MPa}$$

where

M_T = the Folias factor

$$= \left[1 + 1.255 \frac{c^2}{Rt} - 0.0135 \frac{c^4}{R^2 t^2} \right]^{1/2} \text{ for } \frac{c^2}{Rt} \leq 25$$

$$= 0.064 \frac{c^2}{Rt} + 3.3 \text{ for } \frac{c^2}{Rt} > 25$$

e_1 = a deterministic multiplicative model error term that equals 1.04

e_2 = an additive model error term, defined by a normally distributed random variable with a mean of –0.00056 and a standard deviation of 0.001469

e_3 = a deterministic multiplicative model error term that equals 1.17

e_4 = an additive model error term, defined by a normally distributed random variable with a mean of –0.007655 and standard deviation of 0.006506

 © 2015 CSA Group

O.2.6.4.3 Differentiating large leaks and ruptures

Failure of a corrosion defect is assumed to result in a through-wall defect with axial length 2*c*. Rupture occurs if unstable growth of the through-wall defect takes place. The limit state function for rupture is

$$g_3 = \frac{1.8t\sigma_u}{M_T \times D} - P \quad for \quad \text{SMYS} > 241 \quad \text{MPa} \qquad \textbf{Equation O-28}$$

$$g_3 = \frac{2.3t\sigma_y}{M_T \times D} - P \quad for \quad \text{SMYS} \leq 241 \quad \text{MPa}$$

where

M_T = the Folias factor defined as for Equation O-27

O.2.7 Statistical data

O.2.7.1 General

Clauses O.2.7.2 to O.2.7.5 include a summary of published information that can be used to define probability distributions for the key basic random variables required for RBDA of onshore natural gas transmission pipelines.

O.2.7.2 Loading parameters

O.2.7.2.1 Internal pressure

Pressure records from one pipeline operator indicate that the ratio between the annual maximum pressure and MOP can be modelled by a beta distribution with a mean of 0.993, COV of 0.034, lower bound of 80%, and upper bound of 110%. The ratio between the arbitrary-point-in-time operating pressure and MOP can be modelled by a beta distribution with a mean of 0.865, COV of 0.084, lower bound of 60%, and upper bound of 110%. These distributions are based on the assumption that the pipeline is operating at its capacity (i.e., the highest pressure under normal operating conditions is equal to MOP).

Based on assumptions regarding the probability of over-pressure as a function of normal pressure control settings and the reliability of pressure control systems, Jiao *et al*. (1995b) suggested that the ratio between the maximum annual pressure and MOP has a Gumbel distribution with a mean of between 1.03 and 1.07 and a COV between 1 and 2%. This relationship is applicable at locations operating close to the MOP (i.e., immediately downstream of a compressor station). Since the pressure drops along the line between compressor stations, this distribution is a conservative estimate of the maximum annual normal operating pressure at locations that are further downstream of a compressor station.

O.2.7.2.2 Equipment impact

O.2.7.2.2.1 Impact frequency

Chen and Nessim (1999) describe a fault tree model to derive impact frequency from the frequency of construction activity and the damage mitigation measures implemented for a given pipeline. Damage mitigation measures considered in this model include right-of-way patrols, marking and signs, one-call system, excavation procedures, and public awareness programs. Activity rates and estimates of the effectiveness of various mitigation measures were quantified based on survey responses from 15 pipeline companies. Excavation rates of between 0.076 per km-year in agricultural areas and 0.52 per km year in commercial and industrial areas were reported. With typical prevention measures, these lead to hit rates of between 0.004 per km-year for undeveloped areas and 0.05 per km-year for

 © 2015 CSA Group

developed areas. These values are consistent with the hit rates reported in a GRI study (Doctor *et al*., 1995).

On the average, approximately 75% of equipment impacts are by backhoes, which are too small to cause serious damage to the range of diameters typical of transmission pipelines (greater than about 200 mm). The rates of significant hits (i.e., by excavators) are therefore approximately 25% of the numbers quoted in the previous paragraph.

O.2.7.2.2.2 Impact severity

Table O.4 summarizes the probability distributions of the parameters required to characterize the maximum load resulting from excavator impact.

Table O.4
Parameter distributions for load parameters
(See Clause O.2.7.2.2.2.)

Variable	Units	Distribution type	Mean	COV, %	Source
Impact rate	per km-year	Deterministic	Up to 0.02	0	Chen and Nessim (1999)
Excavator weight	tonne	Beta*	5.7*	8.0*	Wolvert *et al*. (2004)
		Gamma†	15.2†	10.8	Wolvert *et al*. (2004)
		—	29‡	38‡	Chen and Nessim (2000)
		—	20.7§	18§	Chen and Nessim (2000)
Excavator force	kN	Shifted gamma**	164	45	Driver and Zimmerman (1998)
Excavator bucket tooth length	mm	Uniform††	90	32	Chen and Nessim (2000)
Excavator bucket tooth width	mm	Uniform††	3.5	25	Chen and Nessim (2000)

* *For urban and semi-urban areas from usage survey data, lower bound = 0.5 tonnes, upper bound = 34 tonnes.*
† *For rural area-based excavator sales data.*
‡ *For excavators in Class 1 and 2 areas only.*
§ *For excavators in Class 3 and 4 areas only.*
** *Based on the mass of excavators sold in North America, combined with a mass-force relationship.*
†† *Assumes that values are equally likely within range obtained from a survey of excavator manufacturers.*

O.2.7.3 Mechanical properties

Table O.5 summarizes available statistical data and distributions for yield strength, tensile strength, flow stress, ultimate tensile strain, Charpy V-notch impact energy, CTOD fracture toughness, and Young's modulus.

© 2015 CSA Group

Table O.5
Parameter distributions for pipe mechanical properties
(See Clause O.2.7.3.)

Variable	Units	Distribution Type	Mean	COV, %	Source
Yield strength/SMYS	—	Normal	1.11	3.4	Jiao *et al*. (1997) API 5L X60*
		Normal	1.08	3.3	Jiao *et al*. (1997) API 5L X65*
		N/A	1.07–1.10	2.6–3.6	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) API 5L X80†
		Lognormal	1.08	4	Sotberg and Leira (1994)‡
		Normal or lognormal	1.1	3.5	Proprietary data§
Tensile strength/ SMTS	—	Normal	1.12	3.0	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) API 5L X60 hoop**
		Normal	1.12	3.5	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) API 5L X65 hoop**
		Normal	1.07	2.6	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) API 5L X60 axial**
		Normal	1.08	2.9	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) API 5L X65 axial**
		N/A	1.12	N/A	Proprietary data ††
		N/A	1.14	N/A	Proprietary data ††
		N/A	1.13	N/A	Proprietary data ††
Ultimate tensile strain	%	Lognormal	36	6	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) API 5L X60
		Lognormal	46	7	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) API 5L X65
Pipe body Charpy V-notch impact energy	J	N/A	30–70	Formula‡‡	Leewis (1997)§§
		Lognormal	149–259	18–24***	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) API 5L X60 & X65†††
		N/A	110	13***	Hillenbrand *et al*. (1999) API 5L X80†††
		N/A	176–183	16–18***	Gartner *et al*. (1992) API 5L X80†††
Seam weld Charpy V-notch impact energy	J	Lognormal	131–291	4–47	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) API 5L X60 & X65‡‡‡

(Continued)

© 2015 CSA Group

Table O.5 (Concluded)

Variable	Units	Distribution Type	Mean	COV, %	Source
Pipe body critical (CTOD)	mm	Lognormal	N/A	40	Sotberg and Leira (1994)†††
Seam weld critical (CTOD)	mm	Beta	0.67	41	Jiao *et al*. (1995b)‡‡‡,§§§
		Beta	N/A	30–60	ISO 16708‡‡‡
Young's modulus	GPa	Normal	210	4%	Sotberg and Leira (1994)

* *Based on a mixture of various samples from different mills (760 tests for API 5L X60 and 2753 tests for API 5L X65).*
† *Based on three sets of tests.*
‡ *No information on original source provided.*
§ *Based on mill data for API 5L X60 to X70 pipe.*
** *Based on similar numbers of samples as for yield strength/SMYS.*
†† *Based on an analysis of GRI proprietary data by C-FER.*
‡‡ *Equation O-29 in text.*
§§ *Pre-1971 pipes of all grades.*
*** *See also Equation O-30 in text.*
††† *Modern steels.*
‡‡‡ *Modern welding techniques.*
§§§ *Based on range of welding techniques, pipe suppliers, and wall thicknesses.*

Published distributions of yield and tensile strength are based on data from routine mill tests and are generally not sensitive to steel grade. Jiao *et al*. (1997) show that the COV can vary by a factor of two depending on the quality of the mill and therefore mill-specific data should be used where possible. The average ratio between actual and minimum specified tensile strength is reasonably consistent (around 1.12 to 1.14) for API 5L X60 to X70 pipe. Jiao *et al*. (1997) provide data indicating that tensile strength is higher for welds than for the pipe body. The yield and tensile strengths could be different in the hoop and axial directions. Table O.5 shows that both the mean and COV of the tensile strength are lower in the axial than in the hoop direction.

Fracture toughness has been shown to be largely independent of steel grade but is highly dependent on construction vintage and specific purchaser's requirements. The Charpy energy for older line pipe, manufactured prior to the 1970s (when no specific toughness requirements existed), exhibits considerable variability. Analysis of data from North American mills provided by Leewis (1997) indicates that the mean value of the Charpy shelf energy for the body of older pipe can range between 30 and 70 J. Some older pipe may exhibit brittle behaviour as it may be operating below the transition temperature. Analysis of statistical Charpy toughness data reported by AGA (1993) and Eiber (1977) suggests that the COV can be estimated from the mean value using the following equation:

$$\mathrm{COV} = 0.0223\mu^{0.46}$$ **Equation O-29**

This formula is considered applicable to the pipe body of lower strength steels (up to API 5L grade X70) with mean Charpy energies not significantly exceeding 100 J. More modern steels, and in particular the higher strength grades, are typically associated with much higher Charpy plateau energies. Expanding the data set that formed the basis for Equation (0-29), to include modern API 5L X60, X65, and X80

 © 2015 CSA Group

material (from Gartner *et al*., 1992, Graf *et al*., 1993, Jiao et al., 1995b, and Hillenbrand *et al*., 1999), yields the following expression for the COV of the Charpy energy:

$$\mathrm{COV} = 0.0421\mu^{0.29}$$ **Equation O-30**

This formula gives similar results to Equation O-29 for steels with mean Charpy values below 100 J and is applicable for higher values as well.

Charpy plateau energies associated with the seam weld zone have been shown to be dependent on weld vintage, weld process, and wall thickness. For older line pipe there is insufficient data in the public domain to facilitate the development of a representative probabilistic characterization of Charpy toughness. However, it is commonly assumed that the weld zone toughness in older steels is significantly less than that of the pipe body, with older problematic welds (e.g., low-frequency ERW pipe) exhibiting weld zone toughness values as low as 3 J (Kiefner, 1992). For modern line pipe employing modern seam welding techniques, it is possible to achieve weld zone toughness comparable to that of the pipe body; however, weld zone toughness typically exhibits a higher COV (e.g., Jiao *et al*., 1995b).

O.2.7.4 Pipe geometry

Table O.6 gives published distributions for pipe diameter and wall thickness. Available information indicates that different mills produce different levels of variability. Defining probability distributions of pipe geometric parameters is also aided by dimension and mass tolerance specifications. Jiao *et al*. (1995b), for example, suggest that the standard deviation can be calculated by assuming that the width of the tolerance interval equals three standard deviations on either side of the mean value.

Table O.6
Parameter distributions for pipe geometry
(See Clause O.2.7.4.)

Variable	Distribution type	Mean	COV, %	Source
Diameter/nominal diameter	Deterministic	1.0	0	Jiao *et al*. (1995b)*
Diameter/nominal diameter	Normal	1.0	0.06%	Zimmerman *et al*. (1998)
Wall thickness/ nominal wall thickness	Normal	1.0	0.25 /nominal‡	Jiao *et al*. (1997)†
	Normal	1.1	3.3%	Jiao *et al*. (1997)§
	Normal	1.01	1.0%	Zimmerman *et al*. (1998)

* *Based on 16–56 inch pipe, COV < 0.1%.*
† *For welded pipe with thickness values between 15 and 37 mm.*
‡ *Equivalent to a fixed standard deviation of 0.25 mm.*
§ *For seamless pipe based on permissible tolerances.*

 © 2015 CSA Group

O.2.7.5 Defect characteristics

O.2.7.5.1 External corrosion

Corrosion dimensions and growth rates are highly dependent on pipeline-specific attributes such as coating type and condition, level of cathodic protection, and soil corrosivity. Significant amounts of relevant data are being collected by high-resolution in-line inspections. Although most of this data is proprietary, organizations with access to data from several pipelines have published representative values and ranges (Table O.7).

Table O.7
Parameter distributions for external corrosion defect characteristics
(See Clause O.2.7.5.1.)

Variable	Units	Distribution type	Mean	COV, %	Source
Defect length	mm	Lognormal	27–105	35–130	Proprietary data*
Growth rate of average defect depth	mm/year	Weibull	0.01–0.20	30–70	Proprietary data*
		Non-standard	0.05–0.15	45–140	ISO 16708†
Ratio of maximum to average defect depth	—	Shifted lognormal‡	2.08	50	Kiefner and Vieth, 1989§

* *Based on in-house in-line inspection data (nine pipelines of 700 km total length), information in literature and judgment; majority of pipe was tape coated.*
† *From Annex D of ISO 16708, which presents an example based on a project carried out to justify pressure uprating of an offshore pipeline.*
‡ *Minimum value = 1.0.*
§ *Based on geometric defect data from corroded pipe section taken out of service.*

Depth growth rates in Table O.7 were estimated assuming linear growth from a depth of zero over the pipeline life. The values in the table are further supported by the results of field tests for unprotected steel (e.g., Crews, 1976, and Matsushima, 2000). Test results published by Matsushima (2000), for example, give pitting corrosion rates between 0.033 and 0.33 mm per year. Given that the ratio between maximum and average defect depths is approximately two, the growth rate for average defect depth is between 0.016 and 0.16 mm per year. The COV of growth rate is also corroborated by Sheikh *et al*. (1990), who suggested a Weibull distribution with a COV of 60% for corrosion growth rates in water injection lines.

The range of observed defect density is very wide (between 0.1 and several thousand per km), with the high values typically corresponding to pipelines with problematic coating.

O.2.7.5.2 Dents and gouges

Available data on the geometry of dents and gouges are summarized in Table O.8, which shows considerable variations in data obtained from different sources.

 © 2015 CSA Group

O.2.7.5.3 Seam weld cracks

Table O.9 summarizes available information related to seam weld crack size and growth rate constants. The flaw growth parameters given in the table are those associated with the "Paris law", which gives the change in crack depth h, mm, per stress cycle N as

$$\frac{dh}{dN} = g_{h1}(\Delta K)^{g_{h2}} \text{ for } \Delta K \geq \Delta K_0 \qquad \textbf{Equation O-31}$$

where

g_{h1} and g_{h2} = growth rate parameters that are estimated from regression of experimental data representing dh/dN versus ΔK

ΔK = the stress intensity range, N mm$^{-3/2}$

ΔK_0 = a threshold stress intensity range, N mm$^{-3/2}$

In characterizing the uncertainty on fatigue crack growth rates, it is common practice to treat the growth model exponent g_{h2} (i.e., the slope of the best-fit line) as a constant and associate all of the growth model uncertainty with the growth model constant g_{h1}. Although the growth parameter values in the table were developed for the base metal, evidence presented by Mayfield and Maxey (1982) suggests that their use in the weld zone is conservative.

Table O.8
Parameter distributions for dent and gouge defect characteristics
(See Clause O.2.7.5.2.)

Variable	Units	Distribution type	Mean	COV, %	Source
Dent depth	mm	Weibull	13	95	ISO 16708*,†
		Deterministic	50	0	Jiao *et al*. (1992)
Gouge depth	mm	Weibull	1.2	92	Fuglem (2003)
		Exponential	0.53	100	Jiao *et al*. (1992)
		Weibull	0.5	100	Fuglem *et al*. (2001)
Gouge length	mm	Offset logistic‡	N/A	N/A	ISO 16708*
		Weibull	249	125	Wattis and Noble (1998)
		Weibull	153	125	Fuglem *et al*. (2001)
Gouge orientation	rad	Uniform	π/4	58	Fuglem *et al*. (2001)

* *From Annex D of ISO 16708, which presents an example based on a project carried out to justify pressure uprating of an onshore pipeline.*
† *For a number of pipelines with different characteristics.*
‡ *Defined by distribution parameters (see ISO 16708); mean and COV of data not given.*

© 2015 CSA Group

Table O.9
Parameter distributions for seam weld defect characteristics
(See Clause O.2.7.5.3.)

Variable	Units	Distribution type	Mean	COV, %	Source
Seam weld defect depth	mm	Exponential	0.18 mm	100	Jiao *et al*. (1995b) *†
Flaw growth parameter g_{h1}	—	Lognormal	2.5×10^{-13}	54	Stacey *et al*. (1996)‡
		Lognormal	1.1×10^{-13}	55	Jiao *et al*. (1997)
Flaw growth parameter g_{h2}	—	Deterministic	3.0	0.0	Stacey *et al*. (1996)‡
		Deterministic	3.1	0.0	Jiao *et al*. (1997)

* *Based on cracks that are likely to escape QA process.*
† *Authors assume constant crack aspect ratio a/c = 0.2 where a is the depth (mm) and c is the half length (mm).*
‡ *For base metal, evidence presented by Mayfield and Maxey (1982) suggests that these values are still conservative for the weld zone.*

O.3 References

CSA Group

CAN/CSA-S471-04
General requirements, design criteria, the environment, and loads

PLUS 663-04
Land use planning for pipelines: A guideline for local authorities, developers, and pipeline operators

ASME (American Society of Mechanical Engineers)

B31.8-1999
Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems

B31.8S-2001
Managing System Integrity of Gas Pipelines

DNV (Det Norske Veritas)

DNV-OS-F101-2002
Submarine Pipeline Systems

Government of USA

US Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192, *Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards* (referenced as 49 CFR 192)

 © 2015 CSA Group

ISO (International Organization for Standardization)

16708:2006
Petroleum and natural gas industries — Pipeline transportation systems — Reliability based limit state methods

NEN (Nederlands Normalisatie-instituut)

3650-1:2002
Requirements for Steel Pipeline Transportation Systems

PRCI (Pipeline Research Council International)

Guidelines for the Seismic Design and Assessment of Natural Gas and Liquid Hydrocarbon Pipelines, 2004

PR-3-9113, 1993
Fracture Control Technology For Natural Gas Pipelines

Other publications

Andrew Palmer and Associates. 2002. *Pipeline Defect Assessment Manual (PDAM) — Version Two*. Report Number NR00018/4238.1.10/R0.3, Aberdeen, U.K.

Ang, A.S. and Tang, W.H. 1975. *Probability Concepts in Engineering Planning and Design Volume 1 — Basic Principles*. New York: John Wiley and Sons.

Ang, A.S. and Tang, W.H. 1990. *Probability Concepts in Engineering Planning and Design*. New York: John Wiley and Sons.

Avramidis, A.N. and Wilson, J.R. 1996. Integrated Variance Reduction Strategies for Simulation. *Operations Research* 44(2): pp. 327–346.

Benjamin, J.R. and Cornell, C.A. 1970. *Probability, Statistics, and Decision for Civil Engineers*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Brown, M., Nessim, M., and Greaves, H. 1995. *Pipeline Defect Assessment: Deterministic and Probabilistic Considerations*. Second International Conference on Pipeline Technology, Ostend, Belgium.

Bubenik, T.A., Olson, R.J., Stephens, D.R. and Francini, R.B. 1992. Analyzing the Pressure Strength of Corroded Line Pipe. *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering*, *Volume V-A*, *Pipeline Technology*, pp. 225–232.

Chatain, P. 1993. An Experimental Evaluation of Punctures and Resulting Dents in Transmission Pipelines. *Proceedings of the Eighth Symposium on Line Pipe Research, American Gas Association*, 11-1 to 11-12.

Chen, Q., and Nessim, M.A. 1999. Reliability-Based Prevention of Mechanical Damage to Pipelines. Proceedings of the EPRG/PRCI Twelfth Biennial Joint Technical Meeting on Pipeline Research, 25-1–25-12.

Chen, Q., and Nessim, M.A. 2000. *Reliability-Based Prevention of Mechanical Damage to Pipelines*. PRCI Project PR-244-9729; C-FER Report 97034, Arlington, VA.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Corbin, P. and Vogt, G. 1997. *Future Trends in Pipelines*. Proceedings of the Banff/97 Pipeline Workshop: Managing Pipeline Integrity — Planning for the Future.

Crews, D.L. 1976. Interpretation of Pitting Corrosion Data from Statistical Prediction Interval Calculations. *Galvanic and Pitting Corrosion — Field and Laboratory Studies* (ASTM STP 576), 217–230.

Doctor, R.H., Dunker, N.A. and Santee, N.M. 1995. *Third-Party Damage Prevention Systems*. Gas Research Institute Report 95/0316. Des Plaines, IL.

Driver, R., and Playdon, D. 1997. Limit States Design of Pipelines for Accidental Outside Force. Report to National Energy Board of Canada.

Driver, R.G., and Zimmerman, T.J.E. 1998. A Limit States Approach to the Design of Pipelines for Mechanical Damage (OMAE-981017). *Proceedings of the Seventeenth International Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering Conference*.

Efron, B. and Tibshirani, R. 1993. *An Introduction to the Bootstrap*. New York: Chapman and Hall.

Eiber, R.J. 1977. Investigation of Charpy Plateau Energy Variation in Production Pipe Orders. *Proceedings of the Nineteenth Mechanical Working and Steel Processing Conference*, pp. 55–73.

Engelund, S. and Rackwitz, R. 1992. Comparison of Some Importance Sampling Techniques in Structural Reliability. *Proceedings of the ASCE Speciality Conference on Probabilistic Mechanics and Structural and Geotechnical Reliability*, pp. 108–111.

Feller, W. 1971. *An Introduction to Probability Theory and its Applications*: *Volume 2*. Third Edition. New York: John Wiley and Sons.

Francis, A., Espiner, R., Edwards, A., Cosham, A., and Lamb M. 1997. *Uprating an In-Service Pipeline Using Reliability-Based Limit State Methods, 2nd International Conference on Risk-Based and Limit State Design and Operation of Pipelines*. Aberdeen, UK.

Fuglem, M. 2003. *Software for Estimating the Lifetime Cost of High Strength, High Design Factor Pipelines*. Gas Research Institute Report GRI-8505. Des Plaines, IL.

Fuglem, M., Chen, Q., and Stephens, M. 2001. *Pipeline Design for Mechanical Damage*. Submitted to the Pipeline Research Committee International, Project PR-244-9910, C-FER Report 99024.

Gartner, A.W., Graf, M.K., and Hillenbrand, H.G. 1992. *A Producer's View of Large Diameter Linepipe in the Next Decade.* International Conference on Pipeline Reliability, Calgary, Alberta.

Gräf, M.K., Hillenbrand, H.G., and Niederhoff, K.A. 1993. *Production of Large Diameter Linepipe and Bends for the World's First Long-Range Pipeline in Grade X80 (GRS550)*. Eighth Symposium on Line Pipe Research, Houston.

Hillenbrand H., Koppe T., and Niederhoff K.A. 1999. *Manufacture of Longitudinally Welded Large-Diameter Pipe from Fully Martensitic Low-Carbon 13% Chromium Steels*. EPRG/PRCI 12 Biennial Joint Technical Meeting on Pipeline Research, Groningen, The Netherlands.

Hopkins, P., Corder, I., and Corbin, P. 1992. The Resistance of Gas Transmission Pipelines to Mechanical Damage. *Proceedings of the CANMET International Conference on Pipeline Reliability*, pp. VIII-3-1–VIII-3-18.

HSE 2001. *Reducing Risks*, *Protecting People* — HSE's Decision-making Process. London: Health and Safety Executive (HSE).

Jiao, G., Sotberg, T., Bruschi, R., Igland, R. 1997. The SUPERB Project: Linepipe Statistical Properties and Implications in Design of Offshore Pipelines. *Proceedings of the Sixteenth International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering, Vol. V, Pipeline Technology*, 45–56.

Jiao, G., Sotberg, T., and Bruschi, R. 1992. Probabilistic Assessment of the Wall Thickness Requirement for Pressure Containment of Offshore Pipelines. *Proceedings of the Eleventh International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering, Volume V-A, Pipeline Technology*, pp. 249–256.

Jiao, G., Sotberg, T., Bruschi, R. 1995a. SUPERB 2M Project: *Wall Thickness Sizing: Limit-States Based Design for Offshore Pipelines*. SUPERB JIP Report No. 5TF70 F95226. SUPERB Project 700411.

Jiao, G., Sotberg, T., and Igland, R. 1995b. *SUPERB 2M Statistical Data — Basic Uncertainty Measures for Reliability Analysis of Offshore Pipelines*. SUPERB JIP Report No. STF70 F95212. SUPERB Project 700411.

Kiefner, J.F. 1969. Fracture Initiation. *Proceedings of the Fourth Symposium on Line Pipe Research, Paper G*. American Gas Association Catalogue No. L30075.

Kiefner, J.F. and Vieth, P.H. 1989. *A Modified Criterion for Evaluating the Remaining Strength of Corroded Pipe*. Report to the Pipeline Corrosion Supervisory Committee of the Pipeline Research Committee of the American Gas Association. Project PR 3-805. Arlington, VA.

Kiefner, J.F., Maxey, W.A., Eiber, R.J., and Duffy, A.R. 1973. Failure Stress Levels of Flaws in Pressurized Cylinders. *Progress in Flaw Growth and Fracture Toughness Testing, (ASTM STP 536)*, pp. 461– 481.

Kiefner, J.F. 1992. Installed Pipe, Especially Pre-1970. Plagued by Problems (Part 1); Pressure Management Key to Problematic ERW Pipe (Part 2). *Oil and Gas Journal*, August 10 and August 17.

Leewis, K. 1997. Gas Research Institute (GRI), Arlington, VA. Personal communication.

Linkens, D., Shetty, N. and Bilo, M. 1998. A Probabilistic Approach to Fracture Assessment of Onshore Gas-Transmission Pipelines. *Pipes and Pipelines International* 43(4): 5–16.

Madsen, H.O., Krenk, S. and Lind, N.C. 1986. *Method of Structural Safety*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J: Prentice-Hall.

Matsushima, 2000. Part 33: Carbon Steel — Corrosion by Soils. *Uhlig's Corrosion Handbook*. Ed. R.W. Revie. New York: John Wiley and Sons.

Maxey, W.A. 1986. *Outside Force Defect Behavior.* Seventh Symposium on Line Pipe Research, American Gas Association, Houston.

Mayfield, M.E., and Maxey, W.A. 1982. *Final Report on ERW Weld Zone Characteristics*. American Gas Association NG-18 Report No. 130. Arlington, VA.

Melchers, R.E. 1999. *Structural Reliability Analysis and Prediction*. Second Edition. West Sussex: John Wiley and Sons.

Muntiga, T.G. 1992. *Wall Thickness in Relation to Puncture: Summary of GU Results*. Report to EPRG, N. V. Nederlandse Gasunie, The Netherlands.

Nessim, M.A., Zhou, W., Zhou, J., Rothwell, B., and McLamb, M. 2004. Target Reliability Levels for Design and Assessment of Onshore Natural Gas Pipelines (Paper IPC04-0321). *Proceedings, International Pipeline Conference*, Calgary, Alberta.

Nessim, M.A. and Zhou, W. 2005a. T*arget Reliability Levels for the Design and Assessment of Onshore Natural Gas Pipelines*. Gas Research Institute Report 04/0230. Des Plaines, IL.

Nessim, M.A. and Zhou, W. 2005b. *Guidelines for Reliability Based Design and Assessment of Onshore Natural Gas Pipelines*. Gas Research Institute Report GRI-04/0229. Des Plaines, IL.

Ochi, M.K. 1990. *Applied Probability and Stochastic Processes — In Engineering and Physical Sciences*. New York: John Wiley and Sons.

Rubinstein 1981. *Simulation and the Monte Carlo Method. Wiley Series in Probability and Mathematical Statistics*. New York: John Wiley and Sons.

Shannon, R.W.E. 1974. The Failure Behaviour Line Pipe Defects. *International Journal of Pressure Vessel and Piping* 2: 243–255.

Sheikh, A.K., Boah, J.K. and Hansen, D.A. 1990. Statistical Modelling of Pitting Corrosion and Pipeline Reliability. *Corrosion*, 46(3): pp. 190–197.

Sotberg, T. and Leira, B.J. 1994. Reliability-based Pipeline Design and Code Calibration. *Proceedings of the Thirteenth International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering*, *Vol. V*, 351–363.

Spiekhout, J. 1995. A New Design Philosophy for Gas Transmission Pipelines: Designing for Gouge-Resistance and Puncture-Resistance. *Proceedings of the Second International Conference on Pipeline Technology*, *Vol. I*, 315–328.

Spiekhout, J., Gresnigt, A.M., and Kusters, G.M.A. 1987. The Behaviour of a Steel Cylinder Under the Influence of a Local Load in the Elastic and Elasto-Plastic Area. *Proceedings of the International Symposium on Shell and Spatial Structures: Computational Aspects*, 329–336.

Stacey, A., Burdekin, F.M., and Maddox, S.J. 1996. The Revised BS PD 6493 Assessment Procedure — Application to Offshore Structures. *Proceedings of the Fifteenth International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering*, *Vol. III*, *Materials Engineering*, pp. 13–34.

Thoft-Christensen, P., and Baker, M.J. 1982. *Structural Reliability Theory and its Applications*. Berlin; New York: Springer-Verlag.

Thoft-Christensen, P., and Murotsu, Y. 1986. *Application of Structural Systems Reliability Theory.* Berlin; New York: Springer-Verlag.

Wattis, Z.E., and Noble, J.P. 1998. Development of a Mathematical Model for the Minimization of Total Cost of Building, Operating, and Maintaining a Buried, Onshore, Gas Transmission Pipeline. Conference Documentation — Risk Based and Limit State Design and Operation of Pipelines, IBC UK Conferences Ltd.

Wolvert, G., Zarea, M., Rousseau D., and Andrieux, C. 2004. *Probabilistic Assessment of Pipeline Resistance to Third Party Damage: Use of Surveys to Generate Necessary Input Data* (IPC04-0656). Proceedings of the International Pipeline Conference, Calgary, Alberta.

Zimmerman, T.J.E., Cosham, A., Hopkins, P., and Sanderson, N. 1998. Can Limit States Design be Used to Design a Pipeline Above 80% SMYS? (OMAE98-902). *Proceedings of the Seventeenth International Conference on Offshore Mechanics and Arctic Engineering*.

Δ *Annex P (informative)*
Development and qualification and welding procedure specifications

Note: *This informative Annex has been written in mandatory language to facilitate adoption by anyone wishing to do so.*

P.1 Introduction

P.1.1
This Annex provides guidelines for acquiring welding data, application of the welding data and the preparation of welding procedure documentation. The scope of this document is limited to manual and semiautomatic welding that does not incorporate the use of wave form controlled welding equipment or software. Where work performed is out of scope to this Annex, the requirements contained herein shall be followed as far as practicable. This document does not preclude the use of data loggers or other technology to record and analyze data. These requirements are in addition to the welding requirements listed in Clauses 7 and 12 and Annex K, as applicable.

P.1.2
ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX welding procedures may be used within this Standard provided the requirements of Clause 7.2.5 are met.

P.2 Definitions
The following definitions shall apply in this Annex:

Calibrated meter — a voltage or amperage meter that has been calibrated to a national standard.

Essential change — welding variables that have a significant effect on the mechanical properties of the weld and heat affected zone. (See Tables 7.3, 7.10, 12.3, and K.1.)

Heat input — a measure of the arc energy transferred into the weld region by the welding process expressed as kJ/mm.

Material test report (MTR) — also known as a certificate of compliance.
Note: *Refer to the applicable CSA Z245 Standard for definition.*

Procedure qualification record (PQR) — the record of the data recorded during the welding of the test coupons.

Test coupons — the materials that have been selected for the procedure qualification.

Travel speed — the distance travelled per unit of time by the welding process (also known as arc speed), expressed in mm/min.

Welding data sheet — a summary of the welding procedure specification which serves as quick reference for the welders and inspectors to help ensure familiarization and adherence to all the essential changes required by the welding operation. The welding data sheets should include project specific requirements.

 © 2015 CSA Group

P.3 Data acquisition

P.3.1 General

The main objective of data acquisition is to ensure that

a) the recorded values obtained during welding of the test coupons accurately reflect the actual conditions during welding;
b) all PQR data can be appropriately applied to the WPS to help ensure that all welds produced will meet the requirements of engineering design; and
c) the PQR data is formally documented and filed with associated records.

Data acquisition, as a minimum, consists of the recording of all essential change information during the welding of the test coupons for the development of the PQR. The details of the materials used including grade and heat number, if applicable, shall be recorded so that carbon equivalent can be calculated and recorded on the PQR. In the absence of MTRs, it is acceptable to perform a chemical analysis of the test coupon(s).

P.3.2 Welding variables

All applicable essential changes shall be monitored and documented for each weld pass. The welding parameters recorded shall be representative of the entire weld pass. The recorded ranges on variables such as amperage and voltage will incorporate a range representative of the entire weld pass and should not include the highest peaks and lows displayed. Amperage and voltage should be recorded to the smallest range possible but should not exceed a range of plus or minus 15 A range and voltage plus or minus 2 V. Digital gauges which incorporate a data averaging function prove helpful for this task. Travel speed shall be recorded as a single value for the total length of weld being performed by each welder for every weld pass. Having multiple travel speeds for short increments of weld length on the same weld pass shall be avoided.

Preparation and fit up of the test coupons shall be done with the same care and consistency as would be expected during production welding.

As much information as possible should be recorded and archived during the qualification stage.

P.3.3 Measuring equipment

Ammeters, volt meters, infrared temperature guns, and contact thermometers shall be calibrated to a national standard at a suggested time increment of 12 months. Tape measures, stop watches. and temperature-indicating crayons may be assumed to be inherently accurate and do not require calibration.

P.3.4 Personnel training

Personnel shall be competent in the use of the equipment necessary for data acquisition and of the welding processes being used during procedure qualification. It is also necessary that these individuals have a working knowledge of the requirements of Clauses 7 and 12 and Annex K as applicable.

P.4 Procedure qualification record

P.4.1 Preparation

The data recorded during the welding of the test coupons shall be used to create the procedure qualification record and shall include all of the essential changes required by the applicable section of this Standard. For the purpose of performing the heat input calculations, the average recorded values

shall be used for amperage, voltage, and travel speed. The welding data shall be included for every welding pass used to weld the test coupons.

Note: *In the example of welding data recorded for one pass with an amperage range of 100 A to 110 A, a voltage range of 27 V to 29 V, and a recorded travel speed of 406 mm/min, the heat input would be*

a) *average voltage is* $(V_1 + V_2)/2 = (27 + 29)/2 = 28$ *V;*
b) *average amperage is* $(A_1 + A_2)/2 = (100 + 110)/2 = 105$ *A; and*
c) *heat input is* $(V \times I \times 60)/S = (28 \times 105 \times 60)/(406 \times 1000) = 0.43$ *kJ/mm*

P.4.2 Supporting documents

In order to support the PQR, the laboratory test results shall indicate the PQR number or other traceable identification.

P.4.3 Multiple PQRs

Multiple PQRs may be used to support a single WPS provided that the PQRs being combined meet the criteria of Table P.1. Care shall be taken to ensure that there is proper overlap in the recorded amperage, voltage, and travel speed parameter ranges. Recorded values of amperage, voltage, and travel speed that do not overlap shall not be combined into a single range.

Table P.1
Combination of PQR Variables List
(See Clause P.4.3.)

Essential Change	Acceptable for use in combination
Change in joint type or bevel angle	no
Change in material carbon equivalent	yes
Change in test coupon thickness exceeding +/- 3 mm	no
Change to a new pipe diameter range, i.e., changing from a range of NPS 2 to NPS 12 to greater than NPS 12	no
Change in filler metal AWS classification	no
Change in filler metal size	yes*
Change in welding position or direction	no
Change in the minimum preheat or minimum interpass temperature	no
Change in PWHT condition	no
Change in shielding gas composition	no
Change in shielding gas flow rate	yes
Change in current type or GMAW transfer mode	no

(Continued)

Table P.1 (Concluded)

Essential Change	Acceptable for use in combination
Change in amperage, voltage, travel speed, or heat input	yes
Decrease in number of root or second pass welders	yes

* *Each size of filler metal shall be listed as a separate qualification range on the WPS, i.e., welding data obtained from a 3.2 mm electrode shall not be combined with those from a 4.0 mm electrode.*

Note: *The combination of incompatible variables in the same WPS creates technical uncertainty and inconsistency on a weld to weld basis that would preclude the possibility of trouble shooting should production welding problems arise. As one of the primary purposes of a WPS is to provide the necessary guidance to establish consistency in the welding operation, it is deemed necessary to limit the variables that could be combined in the same WPS.*

P.5 Welding procedure specification

P.5.1 General

The purpose of the WPS is to establish a range of welding conditions for the purpose of maintaining weld quality and mechanical integrity. The data used to establish the permissible ranges for amperage, voltage, travel speed and wire feed speed shall be the average of the values recorded on the PQR. Rounded values must remain within the allowable tolerances.

Note: *Based on the example in Clause P.4.1 and considering an allowable variation of 20% in Table 7.3, the WPS ranges would be as follows:*

a) *average voltage is* $(V_1 + V_2)/2 = (27 + 29)/2 = 28$ *V ± 20% = (22.4 to 33.6 V) and normally would be reported as (23 to 33 V);*
b) *average amperage is* $(A_1 + A_2)/2 = (100 + 110)/2 = 105$ *A ± 20% = (84 to 126 A); and*
c) *Heat input is* $(V \times I \times 60)/S = (28 \times 105 \times 60)/(406 \times 1000) = 0.43$ *kJ/mm ± 20% = (0.344 to 0.516 kJ/mm) and normally would be reported as (0.35 to 0.51 kJ/mm).*

P.5.2 Records

The WPS shall be available to welding and inspection personnel at the site where welding is being performed. A welding data sheet may also be issued to all welding and inspection personnel. The issuance of a welding data sheet does not replace the necessity for a WPS to be available at the site. A WPS may be supported by more than one PQR.

P.5.3 WPS content

The information included in the WPS shall include the requirements of Clauses 7 and 12 and Annex K as applicable. The WPS shall also include

a) the edition of the standard that the WPS was prepared to;
b) the full corporate name of the owner of the WPS;
c) the date the WPS was prepared and the revision status;
d) the name of the individual or corporation responsible for the preparation of the WPS and PQR; and
e) a reference including the name of all supporting PQRs.

In order for a WPS to be complete, it shall include PQRs and all applicable supporting documentation, including nondestructive inspection reports, lab reports and MTR.

 © 2015 CSA Group

P.5.4 Grouping of weld passes

The range of amperage, voltage, travel speed, and heat input shall be listed separately for the root, hot, fill, and cap passes. Multiple fill pass welding variables may be combined into a single range for each of the volts, amps, travel speed and heat input, provided that the same size and classification of filler metal is used. When multiple PQRs are used and incorporate a change in filler metal size, the welding parameters applicable to the change shall be listed separately (see Table P.2 as an illustration).

Table P.2
WPS Welding Parameters Table
(See Clause P.5.4.)

	Electrode		Current				
Pass	**Class**	**Size, mm**	**Type and polarity**	**Amps**	**Volts**	**Arc speed, mm / min.**	**Heat input, kJ / mm**
Root	EXXXX	3.2	DCRP				
Root	EXXXX	4.0	DCRP				
Hot	EXXXX	4.0	DCRP				
Hot	EXXXX	5.0	DCRP				
Fill	EXXXX	4.0	DCRP				
Fill	EXXXX	5.0	DCRP				
Cap	EXXXX	4.0	DCRP				
Cap	EXXXX	5.0	DCRP				

Commentary

This Commentary is not part of the Standard and it has not been formally reviewed or approved by the Technical Committee responsible for CSA Z662. It does not provide formal interpretations of the Standard and should be viewed as an informal annotation of portions of the Standard, as compiled by those individuals involved in its development. Previously, the Commentary was published as a separate document with the designation CSA Z662.1.

The purpose of the Commentary is to provide background information concerning certain clauses and requirements in the Standard, to provide information that can be of assistance to the reader in the understanding and implementation of such requirements, and to refer to research materials that were used during the formulation of some of the requirements in the Standard. The clause headings and numbers used in this Commentary correspond to those in the Standard; however, it should be noted that comments have not been provided for all the clauses of the Standard.

The Preface in the 2015 edition of the Standard highlights the most significant changes to the Standard, relative to the previous edition. All commentaries are the opinions of the respective authors and are not necessarily the opinions of CSA Group or the Technical Committee. The commentaries reflect the authors' selection of relevant material and do not include every change made throughout the history of the Standard.

It is expected that revisions to this Commentary will be made from time to time in order to incorporate information associated with new editions of the Standard.

0 Introduction

0.1

CSA Z662 (hereafter in this Commentary also referred to as "the Standard" or "Z662") presents a collection of requirements for oil and gas pipeline systems to describe what has been accepted as good practice from the standpoint of safety. The requirements have been developed over time, based upon industry experience and knowledge of the scientific principles involved. The first edition of the Standard was published in 1994 and it was developed by the amalgamation of the requirements that were previously contained in three CSA Standards: CAN/CSA-Z183-M90, *Oil pipeline systems*; CAN/CSA-Z184-M92,*Gas pipeline systems*; and CAN/CSA-Z187-M87 (R1992), *Offshore pipeline systems*.

0.2

Prior to 1967 for oil pipeline systems and 1968 for gas pipeline systems, the standards used for such systems in Canada were codes that were developed in the U.S. and published by the American Society of Mechanical Engineers as part of the ASME B31 series (i.e., ASME B31.4 for liquid hydrocarbons and AME B31.8 for gas). The first editions of the CSA oil and gas pipeline standards were based extensively on the U.S. codes and, appropriately, many of their requirements were adopted by the Canadian publications without modification.

0.3

The requirements for aluminum pipe and aluminum piping systems were originally contained in CSA Z169-1964,*Code for Aluminum Pressure Piping*, which was later revised and published as CSA Z169-M1978,*Aluminum pipe and pressure piping systems*, with requirements more in harmony with the CSA Standards for oil and gas pipeline systems that were current at that time. The 1978 edition was reaffirmed in 1992 and again in 1998. CAN/CSA-Z245.6-M92, *Coiled aluminum line pipe and accessories*,

 © 2015 CSA Group

was developed to incorporate and update the requirements for the manufacture of coiled aluminum line pipe that were contained in CSA Z169-M1978, and this coiled line pipe standard was later revised and published as CSA Z245.6-98, *Coiled aluminum line pipe and accessories*. Clause 15 of Z662 was developed to incorporate and update the requirements for the design, construction, operation, and maintenance of aluminum piping that were contained in CSA Z169-M1978 and to reference CSA Z245.6-98 for the material requirements for aluminum piping. Upon the completion of these two standardization activities, CSA Z169-M1978 (R1998) was withdrawn.

0.4

The clause headings and clause numbers used in this Commentary, except for those of this introductory clause, correspond to those used in the current Standard. Due to clause numbering changes in the current edition of CSA Z662, the referenced clause numbers in this Commentary do not necessarily correspond to the clause numbers in the previous editions of the Standard. Comments concerning specific clauses are sometimes presented under the heading of the broader clause number, rather than under the heading of the applicable subordinate clause number. Comments concerning figures and tables are sometimes presented under the heading of one of the clauses that refer to the figure or table, rather than under the heading of the applicable figure or table.

Notes:

1) *In this Commentary, references to clauses, figures, tables, and annexes in the Standard will be in the format "Clause X.X, Figure X.X, Annex X, and Table X.X", generally without the phrase "of CSA Z662".*

2) *Figures in this Commentary are identified in the format "Figure X" in order to distinguish them from figure numbers in the Standard.*

0.5

This Commentary is not part of the Standard and has not been formally reviewed or approved by the Technical Committee responsible for CSA Z662. Accordingly, this Commentary does not provide formal interpretations of the Standard. For formal interpretations of the Standard, see Note (5) in the Preface to the Standard.

1 Scope

1.1

S This is a commentary on Clause 1.1.

The scope statement indicates which aspects and parts of pipeline systems and which service fluids are covered by the Standard.

Carbon dioxide was added as a new service fluid in 1996. The definition of "gas" was changed in 1983 to accommodate the coverage of gaseous service fluids other than fuel gas and sour gas; however, until 1996, none had been added.

The Scope was expanded in the 2015 edition of the Standard to include liquid and dense phase carbon dioxide pipelines other than those used for enhanced oil recovery; carbon dioxide from anthropogenic sources, transported in the context of carbon capture, transportation and storage projects, can be expected to contain a significantly greater range of impurities than carbon dioxide from geological sources, and these can have implications for various aspects of pipeline system design and operation. Pure carbon dioxide is non-toxic and non-flammable; however, it has some specific characteristics that necessitated the addition of requirements specific to carbon dioxide pipeline systems. It should be noted that the definition of a carbon dioxide pipeline system permits the service fluid in such a pipeline to be other than pure carbon dioxide, so additional special requirements are in some cases appropriate.

 © 2015 CSA Group

In the 2015 edition of the Standard, a note was added to clarify that vapour-phase carbon dioxide pipeline systems are considered to be gas pipeline systems.

It should be noted that carbon dioxide might additionally be present in conventional pipelines as a component of a multiphase fluid or as a component of a fluid in a gas pipeline system. For such fluids, the conventional requirements applicable to the multiphase liquid or gas pipeline system continue to be appropriate.

1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 1.2.

The parts of pipeline systems that are included in the scope are listed here, and the pictorial representations in Figures 1.1, 1.2, 11.1 to 11.5, and 12.1 are intended to augment the information provided in Clauses 1.2 and 1.3. The figures are schematic and are intended to convey broad functions rather than specific details.

1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 1.3.

The parts of pipeline systems that are not included in the scope are listed here, along with a list of some related items that are beyond the defined limits of pipeline systems. Items that are within the defined limits of pipeline systems but are currently outside the scope of the Standard could be included in the scope in some future edition of the Standard, should the CSA Technical Committee on Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry Pipeline Systems and Materials and the Strategic Steering Committee on Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry Systems deem that such additions to the scope are appropriate.

1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 1.4.

The requirements in the Standard are considered adequate under conditions normally encountered, and requirements for abnormal or unusual conditions are not necessarily specifically addressed. Although in some instances in the Standard the requirements are necessarily quite prescriptive, the Standard is not a design handbook and the exercise of competent engineering judgment is necessary when using the Standard. The exercise of competent engineering judgment is intended to recognize circumstances in which the essential requirements and minimum standards contained in the Standard may be insufficient. The note provides a specific instance of such circumstances, pertaining to the use of high-strength materials.

1.5

This is a commentary on Clause 1.5.

The design and construction requirements have been primarily developed with new pipelines and facilities in mind. Some practices that are reasonable and practicable during design and construction are in some cases not practical for an existing pipeline (e.g., the requirement to use piping that has proven notch toughness properties). The requirements in the Standard have been modified and generally made more stringent through the years, primarily to provide improved safety, but also to reflect technological improvements that have been made in the manufacturing processes used for pipe and components. Design requirements can be readily changed; however, the mechanical properties of in-service piping cannot. Where upgrading involves the replacement of existing piping with new piping, what was not practical for the old piping is practicable for the new piping. In the 2015 edition of the Standard, this

 © 2015 CSA Group

Clause was revised to clarify that certain requirements can be applied retroactively in the case of class location changes and crossings of existing pipelines.

1.6

S This is a commentary on Clause 1.6.

Clause 1.6 defines the basis for the numerical rounding practices used throughout the Standard. It is important to understand its effect when applied in conjunction with the number of digits indicated in the specific requirements of the Standard.

1.7

S This is a commentary on Clause 1.7.

A requirement in the Standard cannot be superseded by a less restrictive requirement in a referenced publication.

1.8

S This is a commentary on Clause 1.8.

Practices are not included in the Standard until sufficient experience has been accumulated for them to become generally accepted as being good practices. Even new practices that are superior to established practices are not included in the Standard until the Technical Committee deems such new practices to be acceptable. It is not the intent of the Standard to prevent the development of new practices, and generally such practices would need to be approved for use by the regulatory authority having jurisdiction.

2 Reference publications and definitions

2.1 Reference publications

S This is a commentary on Clause 2.1.

Various documents published by a variety of organizations are included by reference and the specific publication dates and titles for the referenced publications are listed. Normally, the editions listed are the editions that were current at the time that the Standard was being edited prior to publication.

The context of the reference being made should be known because typically only limited parts of the referenced publications are intended to apply.

The Commentary on the Standard refers to the publications listed below. The list includes a number of withdrawn standards and other published industry documents, as well as superseded editions that are cited in describing the development of requirements and standards. The list also reflects the editions available during the development and production of the 2015 edition of CSA Z662; more recent editions could have been published since its publication date.

CSA Group

B51-14
Boiler, pressure vessel, and pressure piping code

B137 Series-13
Thermoplastic pressure piping compendium

B149.1-10
Natural gas and propane installation code

CAN/CSA-C22.3 No. 6-13
Principles and practices of electrical coordination between pipelines and electric supply lines

CAN/CSA-C22.3 No. 7-10
Underground systems

CAN/CSA-S471-04 (withdrawn)
General requirements, design criteria, the environment, and loads

W48-14
Filler metals and allied materials for metal arc welding

W59-13
Welded steel construction (metal arc welding)

W178.2-14
Certification of welding inspectors

Z169-M1978 (withdrawn)
Aluminum pipe and pressure piping systems

CAN/CSA-Z183-M90 (withdrawn)
Oil pipeline systems

CAN/CSA-Z184-M92 (withdrawn)
Gas pipeline systems

CAN/CSA-Z187-M87 (withdrawn)
Offshore pipeline systems

Z245.1-14
Steel pipe

Z245.6-06 (R2011)
Coiled aluminum pipe and accessories

Z245.11-13
Steel fittings

Z245.12-13
Steel flanges

Z245.15-13
Steel valves

Z245.20 Series-14
Plant-applied external coatings for steel pipe

 © 2015 CSA Group

API (American Petroleum Institute)

5L-2012 (SPEC)
Specification for Line Pipe

15LE-2008 (SPEC)
Polyethylene (PE) Line Pipe

15S-2006 (R2013) (RP)
Qualification of Spoolable Reinforced Plastic Line Pipe

17J-2014 (SPEC)
Specification for Unbonded Flexible Pipe

576-2009 (RP)
Inspection of Pressure-relieving Devices

620-2009 (STD)
Design and Construction of Large, Welded, Low-Pressure Storage Tanks

650-2013 (STD)
Welded Steel Tanks for Oil Storage

653-2009 (STD)
Tank Inspection, Repair, Alteration, and Reconstruction

1104-2005
Welding of Pipelines and Related Facilities

1156-1999 (PUBL)
Effects of Smooth & Rock Dents on Liquid Petroleum Pipelines

2610-2005 (R2010) (STD)
Design, Construction, Operation, Maintenance & Inspection of Terminal and Tank Facilities

ASME (The American Society of Mechanical Engineers)

B16.5-2013
Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: NPS 1/2 through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard

B16.9-2012
Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings

B16.11-2011
Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded

B16.20-2012
Metallic Gaskets for Pipe Flanges: Ring-Joint, Spiral-Wound, and Jacketed

B16.21-2011
Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges

 © 2015 CSA Group

B16.34-2013
Valves Flanged Threaded and Welding End

B16.49-2012
Factory-Made, Wrought Steel, Buttwelding Induction Bends For Transportation and Distribution Systems

B31G-1991 (R2004)
Manual for Determining the Remaining Strength of Corroded Pipelines

B31.1-2012
Power Piping

B31.3-2012
Process Piping

B31.4-2009
Pipeline Transportation Systems for Liquid Hydrocarbons and Other Liquids

B31.8-2012
Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems

Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, 2013

ASTM International (American Society for Testing and Materials)

A53/A53M-12
Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

A106-14
Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service

A234/A234M-13e1
Standard Specification for Pipe Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service

A268/A268M-10
Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Ferritic and Martensitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service

A269-14e1
Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service

A312/A312M-09
Standard Specification for Seamless, Welded and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes

A333/A333M-13
Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Steel Pipe for Low-Temperature Service

A370-06
Standard Test Methods and Definitions for Mechanical Testing of Steel Products

 © 2015 CSA Group

D2290-12
Standard Test Method for Apparent Hoop Tensile Strength of Plastic or Reinforced Plastic Pipe by Split Disk Method

D2837-13 (E2014)
Standard Test Method for Obtaining Hydrostatic Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Materials or Pressure Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Products

D2992-12
Standard Practice for Obtaining Hydrostatic or Design Basis for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe and Fittings

D3350-10
Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Pipe and Fittings Materials

E21-09
Standard Test Methods for Elevated Temperature Tension Tests of Metallic Materials

E747-04 (E2012)
Standard Practice for Design, Manufacture and Material Grouping Classification of Wire Image Quality Indicators (IQI) Used for Radiology

E1025-05
Standard Practice for Design, Manufacture, and Material Grouping Classification of Wire Image Quality Indicators (IQI) Used for Radiology

E1316-10c
Standard Terminology for Nondestructive Examinations

E1820-13
Standard Test Method for Measurement of Fracture Toughness

AWS (American Welding Society)

A5.1-2004
Specification for Carbon Steel Electrodes for Shielded Metal Arc Welding

BSI (British Standards Institution)

BS 7448-1:1991
Fracture mechanics toughness tests. Method for determination of Klc, critical CTOD and critical J values of metallic materials

BS 7448-2:1997
Fracture mechanics toughness tests. Method for determination of Klc, critical CTOD and critical J values of welds in metallic materials

BS 7910:2013
Guide on methods for assessing the acceptability of flaws in metallic structures

PD 6493:1991 (withdrawn)
Guidance on methods for assessing the acceptability of flaws in fusion welded structures

 © 2015 CSA Group

CAPP (Canadian Association of Petroleum Producers)
2009-0014
Mitigation of Internal Corrosion in Sweet Gas Gathering Systems

CCME (Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment)
CCME-EPC-LST-71E (1994)
Environmental Code of Practice for Aboveground Storage Tank Systems Containing Petroleum Products

CGA (Canadian Gas Association)
OCC-1-2005
Recommended Practice for the Control of External Corrosion on Buried or Submerged Metallic Piping Systems

DNV (Det Norske Veritas)
DNV-OS-F101-2013
Submarine Pipeline Systems

ESI (Electricity Supply Industry)
98-2-1979 (withdrawn)
Ultrasonic Probes: Medium Frequency, Miniature Shear Wave, Angle Probes

Government of USA
US Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192, *Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards* (referenced as 49 CFR 192)

IGEM (Institution of Gas Engineers & Managers)
IGEM/TD/1 — Edition 5
Steel pipelines and associated installations for high pressure gas transmission

ISO (International Organization for Standardization)
5579:2013
Non-destructive testing — Radiographic examination of metallic materials by X- and gamma rays — Basic rules

9712:2012
Non-destructive testing — Qualification and certification of NDT personnel

MSS (Manufacturers Standardization Society)
ANSI/MSS-SP-25-2013
Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions

NACE International (National Association of Corrosion Engineers)
ANSI/MR0175/ISO 15156-2009
Petroleum and natural gas industries — Materials for use in H_2S-containing environments in oil and gas production

RP0175-95
Control of Internal Corrosion in Steel Pipelines and Piping Systems

 © 2015 CSA Group

RP0675-88 (withdrawn)
Control of External Corrosion on Offshore Steel Pipelines

TM0177-2005
Laboratory Testing of Metals for Resistance to Sulfide Stress Cracking and Stress Corrosion Cracking in the H_2S-Environments

NFPA (National Fire Protection Association)

30-2015
Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code

NRCC (National Research Council Canada)

National Fire Code of Canada, 2010

PPI (Plastic Pipe Institute)

TR-3-2010
Policies and Procedures for Developing Hydrostatic Design Basis (HDB), Hydrostatic Design Stresses (HDS), Pressure Design Basis (PDB), Strength Design Basis (SDB), and Minimum Required Strength (MRS) Ratings for Thermoplastic Piping Materials or Pipe

TR-4/2010
PPI Listing of Hydrostatic Design Basis (HDB), Hydrostatic Design Stress (HDS), Strength Design Basis (SDB), Pressure Design Basis (PDB), and Minimum Required Strength (MRS) Ratings for Thermoplastic Piping Materials or Pipe

TR-9/2002
Recommended Design Factors and Design Coefficients for Thermoplastic Pressure Pipe

Other publications

Abes, J.. 2008. "Safety and Loss Management System for Pipelines, Transactions of the ASME", *Journal of Pressure Vessel Technology*, May 2008, Vol. 130

Alexander, C., and Fowler, J. 1998. "Evaluation of a Composite System for Repair of Mechanical Damage in Gas Transmission Lines". GRI-97/0413.

Chapuliot, S., Lacire, M.H., and Le Delliou, P."Stress Intensity Factors for Internal Circumferential Cracks in Tubes over a Wide Range of Radius over Thickness Ratios," PVP Vol. 365, ASME 1998, pp. 95–106.

Eiber, R.J., Maxey, W.A., Bert, C.W., and McClure, G.M. 1981. "The effects of dents on failure characteristics of line pipe". Catalogue No. L51403. Pipeline Research Council International.

EWI (Edison Welding Institute). 1998. *Guidelines for Weld Deposition Repair on Pipelines.* Project No. 40545-CAP.

Glover, A.G., and Coote, R.I. 1983. "Full scale fracture tests of pipeline girth welds". *Proceedings of the 4th National Congress on Pressure Vessels and Piping Technology.* PVP. Vol. 94. ASME.

Kiefner, J.F., and Vieth, P.H. 1989. "A modified criterion for evaluation the remaining strength of corroded pipe". Catalogue No. L51688B. Pipeline Research Council International.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Shen, G., Gianetto, J.A., Bouchard, R., Bowker, J.T., and Tyson, W.R. 2004. “Fracture toughness testing of pipeline girth welds”. Proceedings of the International Pipeline Conference, Calgary.

Stephens, D.R. 1998. “Summary of validation of clock-spring (R) for permanent repair of pipeline corrosion defects”. Document No. GRI-98/0227. Gas Research Institute.

Tyson, W.R., Xu, S., Ward, I., Duan, D.-M., and Horsley, D.“ECA by Failure Assessment Diagram: Case Studies”, Proc. 9th International Pipeline Conference, Calgary, AB, Canada, Sept. 2012, paper IPC2012-90140.

Wang, Y.-Y., Rudland, D., and Horsely, D. 2002. “Development of a EAD-based girth weld ECA procedure: Part I Theatrical Framework”, 4th International Pipeline Conference. Paper IPC 2002-27171. Calgary.

Warman, D.J., Johnston, D., Mackenzie, J.D., Rapp, S., and Travers, B. 2006. “Management of Pipeline Dents and Mechanical Damage in Gas.” 6th International Pipeline Conference. Paper IPC 2006-10407, Calgary.

Xu, S., Bouchard, R., Shen, G., and Tyson, W.R. “Plastic collapse load determination using laboratory-scale SE(T) samples under fixed-grip loading”, Proc. 6th International Pipeline Conference, Calgary, paper IPC2006-10022, Sept. 2006.

2.2 Definitions

S This is a commentary on Clause 2.2.

There are two types of definitions in the Standard: general definitions and specific definitions.

- The definitions in Clause 2.2 are general definitions for terms that have the same meanings regardless of their location in the Standard.
- Specific definitions are supplied for terms having meanings that are applicable to specific locations in the Standard. For example, the term “sour service” has one specific meaning in Clause 16 and a different specific meaning in Clause 15.

Defined terms are not further distinguished in the text of the Standard; therefore, the user of the Standard should be familiar with the defined terms and their definitions because an understanding of the meaning of the defined terms can clarify the requirements of the Standard.

Definitions are intended to be self-explanatory; however, the following comments are provided as additional information:

- In the 2011 edition of the Standard, separate Annexes pertaining to integrity management programs for distribution and transmission systems were combined into one Annex for integrity management programs of all pipeline systems. These former Annexes contained their own subset of definitions. As part of the rationalization of wording for the combined Annex A, definitions for “damage incident” and “failure incident” were required.
- The terms “engineering assessment” and “engineering critical assessment” are defined in order to clarify the distinction between the two terms. Engineering assessments apply to a variety of situations; however, engineering critical assessments apply only to the consideration of imperfections in fusion welds.
- The term “fluid” is not defined because it is intended that the ordinary dictionary meaning apply, whereby a fluid is a liquid, gas, or combination thereof.

 © 2015 CSA Group

- The term “fluid, service” is a generic term that describes the fluid being transported in a pipeline system while it is in service, recognizing that the fluid required to be in out-of-service piping might be different.
- The terms “high-vapour-pressure (HVP) pipeline system” and “low-vapour-pressure (LVP) pipeline system” are intended to apply to oil industry pipeline systems, not gas industry pipeline systems; however, this is not clearly evident from the way the definition is currently stated. LVP pipelines, HVP pipelines, CO_2 pipelines, and gas pipelines are four distinct entities; one should not consider gas pipelines with large proportions of liquids to be HVP pipelines, even though the criteria in the HVP pipeline system definition appear to be met.
- The term “inspection, non-destructive”, was revised to define NDE and visual inspection as per ISO 9712 and ASME V, article 9.
- The definition of “integrity management program” was added to coincide with general changes to the standard to improve the emphasis on integrity management programs for pipeline systems within the Standard.
- The term “NPS” is an abbreviation of the term “nominal pipe size”; however, as used in the Standard, it is associated only with nominal size designations for valves, fittings, and flanges. Some pipe standards included in the Standard by reference permit the pipe to be ordered using NPS designations; however, pipe size designations in the Standard are consistently expressed in terms of the outside diameter of the pipe.
- Overpressure protection is required to be continuous and automatic because it is a safety-type system, without any reliance on manual intervention. As stipulated elsewhere in the Standard, overpressure protection can be accomplished by pressure-limiting systems or pressure-relieving systems.
- The term “pipeline system” is used to describe the overall transportation system, which can consist of pipelines, stations, and other facilities. A “pipeline” starts or stops at the isolating valve used at a station or other facility, whereas “piping” is a general term used to describe a portion of the pipeline system, consisting of pipe, or pipe and components, irrespective of its location within the pipeline system. The terms “pipeline system” and “piping” are used when a general context is intended. In the 2011 edition of the Standard, separate Annexes pertaining to integrity management programs for distribution and transmission systems were combined into one Annex for integrity management programs of all pipeline systems; therefore, additions to the specific types of systems meant by reference to “pipeline system” were needed.
- The term “piping, pretested” recognizes that pretested items can consist of pipe or pipe and components.
- “Stress, design operating” is a calculated value that is used in the determination of whether or not notch toughness properties for steel pipe need to be proven.
- Consideration of surge pressure is not specifically mentioned in Clause 4; however, Clause 4 does indicate that the designer is to specify the design pressure and to implement control and limiting systems. Inclusion in the definitions is considered to be appropriate to provide a level of expectation for the designer to consider surge as one of the many potential pressure sources to consider.

3 Safety and loss management systems

3.1 General

S This is a commentary on Clause 3.1.

The requirements of Clause 3.1, combined with the recommended practices in Annex A, are intended to enhance the protection of people, the environment, and property. It is intended that the principles of safety and loss management systems apply to Clauses 4 to 9.

 © 2015 CSA Group

A management system refers to all the interrelated processes and activities established by an organization to achieve particular objectives. The safety and loss management system is a systematic, comprehensive, and proactive process for the management of safety and loss control associated with activities throughout the life cycle of a pipeline system. It is intended to provide a framework for managing and understanding the interactions and interrelationships between system components and processes so that system failures resulting from dysfunctional interactions can be better anticipated and managed [Abes (2008)].

3.2 Pipeline system integrity management program

This is a commentary on Clause 3.2.

The pipeline system integrity management program is an element of the safety and loss management system. The safety and loss management system covers that full pipeline life cycle, and so should the integrity management program.

3.3 Engineering assessments

This is a commentary on Clause 3.3.

Engineering assessments are allowed or required only under specific clauses of the Standard, typically where there is an option to deviate from a provision set out in the Standard or where no minimum requirement has been defined. Engineering assessments have been added as an operational control in safety and loss management systems. Accordingly, EAs must be developed as a documented process in order that they can be conducted consistently and in accordance with an established process, including defined responsibilities, competency requirements, methodology, and acceptance criteria. Standard documentation requirements for EAs have also been defined.

3.4 Risk management

This is a commentary on Clause 3.4.

Risk management is a process whereby operating companies can identify and assess risk throughout the pipeline life cycle and manage it as part of their decision-making process to control the impact of undesirable consequences.

The safety and loss management system includes a requirement for operational controls for risk management. This Clause sets out the objective for the risk management process, as well as the mandatory elements of the process.

4 Design

4.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 4.1.

The working (or allowable) stress design method is the one conventionally used for steel piping. Clause 4.1.7 gives the designer the option of using the limit states design method, which is specified in Annex C, provided that the designer deems it suitable. Clause 4.1.8 for onshore non-sour natural gas transmission lines, gives the designer the option of using the reliability based design method specified in Annex O.

© 2015 CSA Group

Clause 4 deals primarily with steel piping designs for onshore pipelines and covers the requirements for offshore steel pipelines, oilfield steam distribution pipeline systems, and pipeline systems made of materials other than steel by reference to the appropriate clauses elsewhere in the Standard.

Additional requirements for sour service pipeline systems are referenced to the appropriate clauses elsewhere in the Standard.

4.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 4.1.2.

Clause 4.1.2 is intended to emphasize that corrosion control is an integral part of the pipeline design process.

4.2 Design conditions

4.2.1 General

4.2.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.2.1.1.

The designer selects the design pressure for each segment of the pipeline system, and such design pressures are required to be not less than the intended maximum operating pressure. The maximum operating pressure is ultimately established by pressure testing as specified in Clause 8.

4.2.2 Temperature

4.2.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.2.2.1.

The specified temperature range is used in stress analysis calculations, the specification of mechanical properties of some piping materials, and the determination of design pressures.

4.3 Design criteria

4.3.1 General

4.3.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.1.1.

Annex C may be used also for stress conditions that are covered by Clauses 4.3 and 4.6.

4.3.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.1.3.

Fittings are manufactured with a minimum wall thickness but no maximum wall thickness tolerance, resulting in an unspecified internal bore diameter. When the passage of inline inspection (ILI) tools is required, the designer should consider specifying an internal bore diameter that will allow passage of ILI tools without the need of an overly large pressure differential that can cause the ILI tool to be ejected

 © 2015 CSA Group

from the fitting into the run pipe at high velocity. This is especially relevant when using high strength line pipe in conjunction with low strength fittings for pipe diameters of 508 mm and under.

4.3.2 Class location assessment areas

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.2.

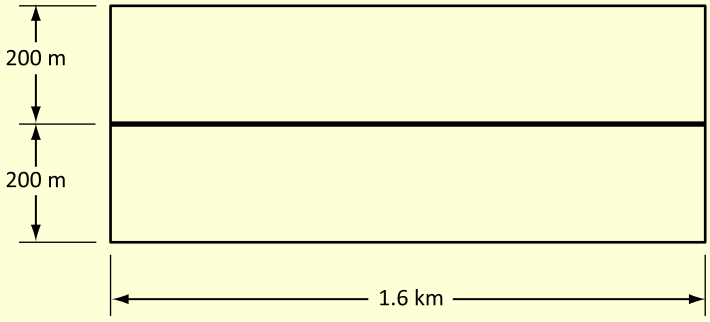
Clause 4.3.2, Table 4.1, and Figure 4.1 are intended to specify a methodology for the determination of class location designations and obtain uniformity in the application of this process.

Class location designations are used as a protective measure in pipeline design, whereby the design pressure (and, therefore, the maximum permissible operating pressure) is affected (via the location factor in the design formula in Clause 4.3.5.1) by population density and other criteria in the vicinity of the pipeline. As the number of people near the pipeline increases, the probability of personal injury and property damage increases. In addition, the external stresses imposed on the pipeline, the potential for third-party damage due to reduced awareness of the location of buried piping, and other factors that can contribute to accidents also increase with increasing population. Dwelling unit density near the pipeline is an indirect method of approximating population density near the pipeline.

Class location designations are determined on the basis of class location assessment areas (400 m wide by 1.6 km long) and the buildings, dwelling units, places of public assembly, and industrial installations contained therein. The class location width is based on consistency with US regulations that consider it unlikely that population changes 200 m from the pipeline will impact the pipeline and that an incident on the pipeline is unlikely to affect people or buildings more than 200 m away from the pipeline.

Figure 1 of this Commentary illustrates the configuration of a class location assessment area.

Figure 1
Class location assessment area
(See Clause 4.3.2.)



The requirements allow class location assessment areas in undeveloped locations to be shorter in length than the currently specified value of 1.6 km, to a minimum of 400 m. Class location assessment areas in undeveloped locations of 1.6 km or greater in length are also allowed. Such “undeveloped class location assessment areas” can be designated as Class 1 locations, and the normal sliding series of assessments are permitted to “jump over” such undeveloped areas.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Class location assessment areas shorter than 1.6 km that are located between two undeveloped class location assessment areas are also allowed. The class location designation for these areas is determined by the other relevant clauses in the Standard. Although such areas are shorter than 1.6 km, the dwelling unit count criteria cannot be pro-rated for reduced length and their class location designation is not affected by the dwelling unit count beyond their respective lengths. For example, if a 300-m-long class location assessment area containing nine dwelling units falls between two 450-m-long undeveloped class location assessment areas, the area containing the nine dwelling units can be designated as Class 1, regardless of the dwelling unit density, uses, and types of occupancy that exist outside its boundaries.

The minimum length of 400 m for "undeveloped class location assessment areas" was selected for the following reasons:

- The Standard requires that end boundaries be located at least 200 m from the last building, place of public assembly, or industrial installation where Class 2 or 3 designations are warranted for reasons other than dwelling unit density, and 200 m from both directions equals 400 m.
- Class 1 designates sets of 10 dwelling units or fewer within 1600 m. In such cases, the average dwelling unit spacing, if all units were in a single row, would be 1600/9 ≈ 180 m. The permissible length of the Class 1 location assessment area should therefore be significantly greater than 180 m, to account for the fact that some bunching of dwelling units typically occurs; otherwise, there will be a potential reduction in the level of safety (e.g., if a minimum length of 200 m was used for undeveloped class location assessment areas, there could be a high level of occurrence of undeveloped class locations in existing Class 1 locations, which could significantly affect the requirement for pipeline upgrades based on dwelling unit count, and hence affect the level of safety).
- The class location assessment area covers dwelling units within 200 m of either side of the pipeline. The minimum length of 400 m thus accounts for the potential propagation of ruptures along the pipeline.

4.3.3 Class location designations

S This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.3.

Class location designations are used as a protective measure in pipeline design, in that the location factor in the design formula (see Clause 4.3.5.1) allows population density and other criteria in the vicinity of the pipeline to bear on the pipeline's design pressure and, thus, on its maximum permissible operating pressure. As the number of people near the pipeline increases, the probability of personal injury and property damage increases. The external stresses imposed on the pipeline, the potential for third-party damage due to reduced awareness of the location of buried piping, and other factors that can contribute to accidents also increase with increasing population. Dwelling unit density near the pipeline is an indirect method of approximating population density near the pipeline.

Class location designations are determined on the basis of class location assessment areas (400 m wide by 1.6 km long) and the buildings, dwelling units, places of public assembly, and industrial installations contained therein.

Table 4.1 Class location designations

S This is a commentary on Table 4.1.

In Items b) and c) of Table 4.1, the phrase "normal use" is intended to reflect the number of persons who are present in a given building or outside area when it is being used for its intended function. A playground, for example, can be vacant; however, if it is likely that more than 20 persons will be present when it is being used, this will affect the corresponding class location designation if the class location

 © 2015 CSA Group

assessment area would otherwise be a Class 1 location. A music concert held in a farmer's field would not affect normal use of the field, and therefore would not affect the class location designation.

The term "prevalence" for Class 4 in Table 4.1 is important but problematic. In order to warrant a Class 4 location designation, the class location assessment area has to contain a higher count of four- (or more) storied buildings intended for human occupancy than of three- (or fewer) storied buildings intended for human occupancy. Another problematic aspect is that each multiple-dwelling-unit building and each single-dwelling-unit building is counted as one building. This factor can yield anomalous results, whereby an increase in dwelling unit density in an area containing four- (or more) storied buildings intended for human occupancy does not necessarily warrant a Class 4 location designation; however, it is common practice for the pipeline designer to assign a Class 4 location designation to any area that contains buildings of more than three stories and that are intended for human occupancy, rather than trying to determine whether or not such buildings are prevalent (or will be prevalent upon future development in the area).

Interpretation of the term "storey" for Class 4 in Table 4.1 may be made in accordance with the *National Building Code of Canada*.

Note 2) of Table 4.1 is intended to encourage the designer to consider the possibility of future development in the area whose class location designation is being determined. Such consideration while planning the pipeline should serve as a basis for increasing the class location designation, not decreasing it. For example, the prediction that a number of three- (or fewer) storied buildings intended for human occupancy will be constructed in a given class location assessment area, so that four- (or more) storied buildings intended for human occupancy will no longer be prevalent, should not be cause for designating a location currently designated as Class 4 as a Class 2 location.

The requirement in Note 3) that the designer consider designating areas as Class 3 locations if they contain institutions from which rapid evacuation could be difficult (e.g., hospitals, nursing homes) does not apply if the class location assessment area under consideration would otherwise be a Class 4 location.

4.3.4 Class location end boundaries

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.4.

The intent of Clause 4.3.4 is to account for situations where the application of the 1.6-km-long class location assessment area does not necessarily reflect localized levels of safety. For example, where there are two roads separated by 1.6 km of undeveloped farmland (e.g., the one-mile grid system common in the Prairies), development along one road will not likely affect the level of safety along the other road.

The purpose of Note 2) is to emphasize that the two end boundaries for each class location are to be determined independently of one another. The rationale for this is that the criteria that affect the location of the end boundary at one end of the class location can differ from the criteria that affect the location of the end boundary at the other end of the class location.

4.3.4.2

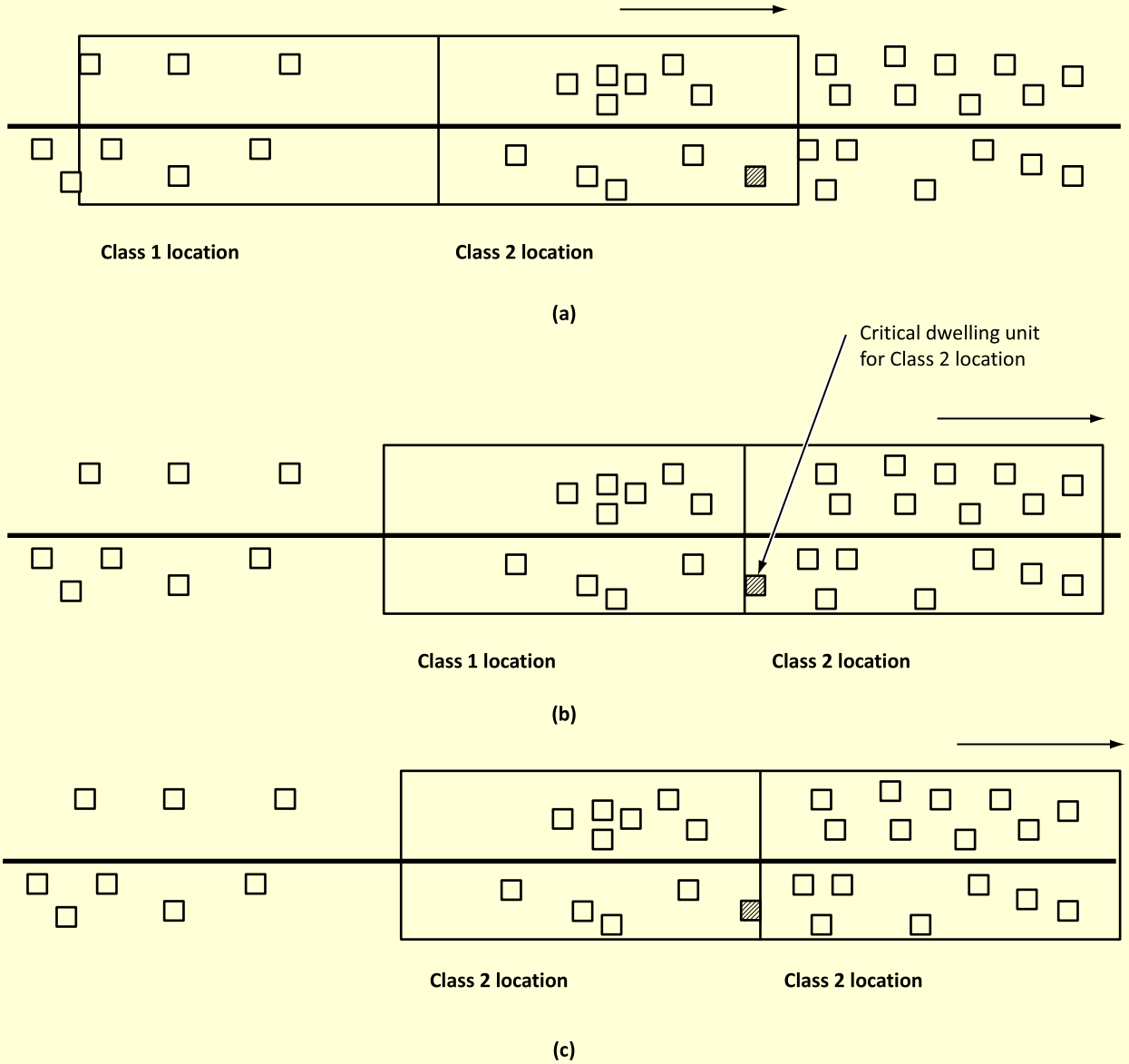
This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.4.2.

Figures 2 to 8 of this Commentary provide examples for the purpose of clarifying various situations that can arise when determining class location boundaries.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 2 of this Commentary illustrates the movement of a pair of abutting class location assessment areas along the pipeline to locate the critical dwelling unit for a Class 2 location. In Figure 2 of this Commentary, the abutting pair is located too far to the left in Diagram (a), properly in Diagram (b), and too far to the right in Diagram (c).

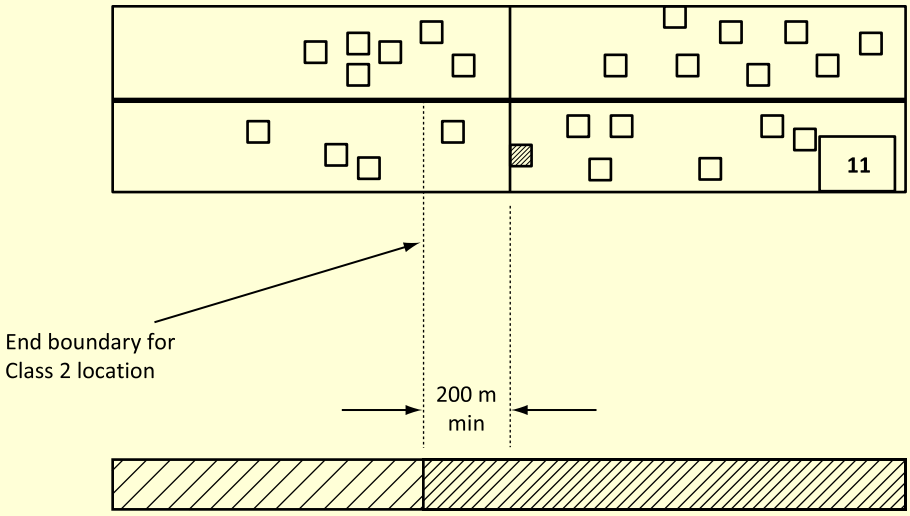
Figure 2
Critical dwelling unit for Class 2 location
(See Clause 4.3.4.2.)



© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 3 of this Commentary illustrates where one of the end boundaries for a Class 2 location based on dwelling unit density is required to be in relation to the associated critical dwelling unit for the Class 2 location.

Figure 3
End boundary for Class 2 location
(See Clause 4.3.4.2.)



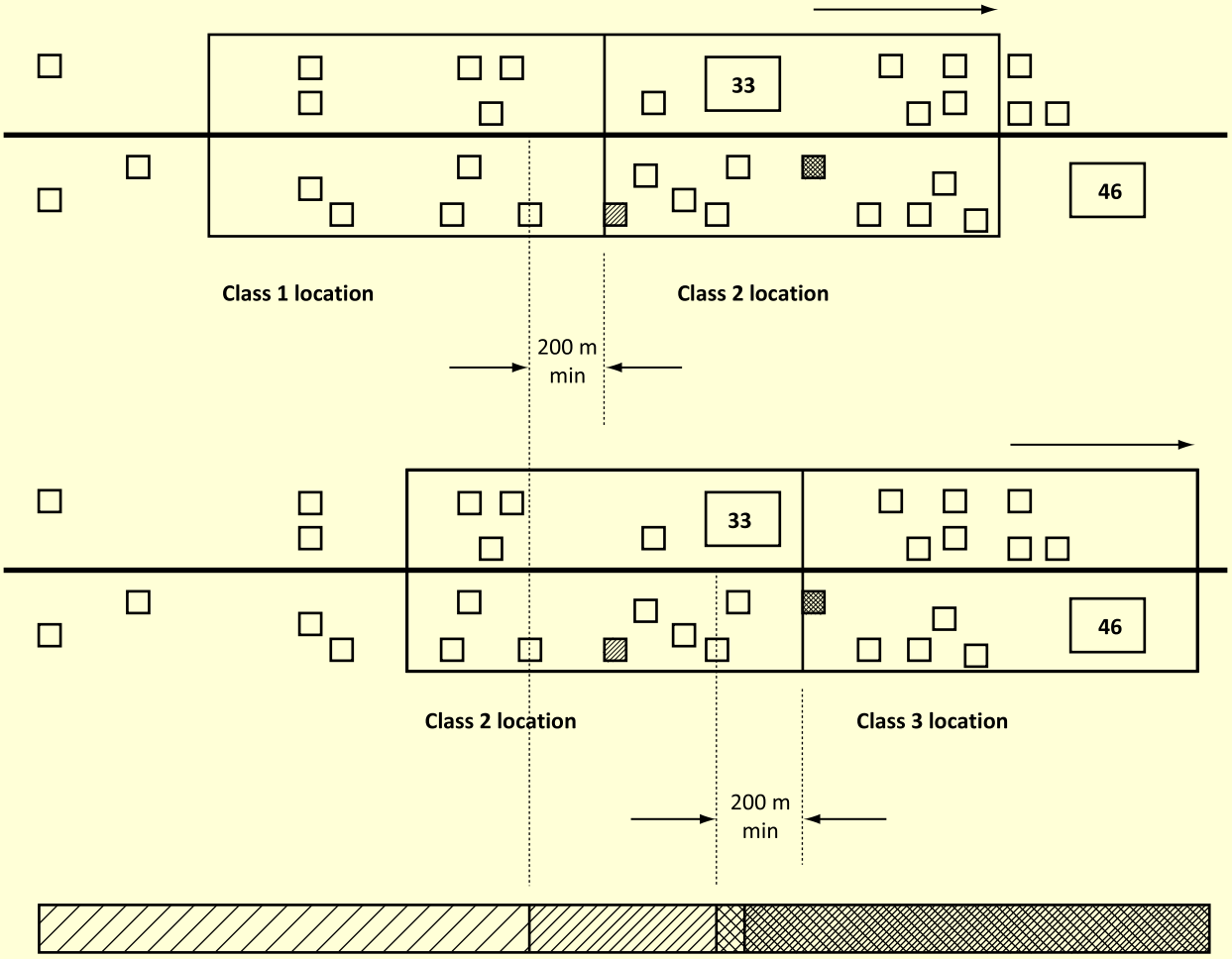
Legend:

- Pipeline
- Dwelling unit
- Critical dwelling unit for Class 2 location
- 11 — Multiple dwelling unit with 11 dwelling units
- Class 1 location
- Class 2 location

End boundaries for Class 2 locations that are based on dwelling unit density and are adjacent to Class 3 locations that are based on dwelling unit density are derived by default by determining the required location for the end boundaries of the adjacent Class 3 locations in accordance with the requirements of Clause 4.3.4.5, as illustrated in Figure 4 of this Commentary.

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 4
End boundary for Class 3 location based on dwelling unit density
(See Clauses 4.3.4.2 and 4.3.4.5.)



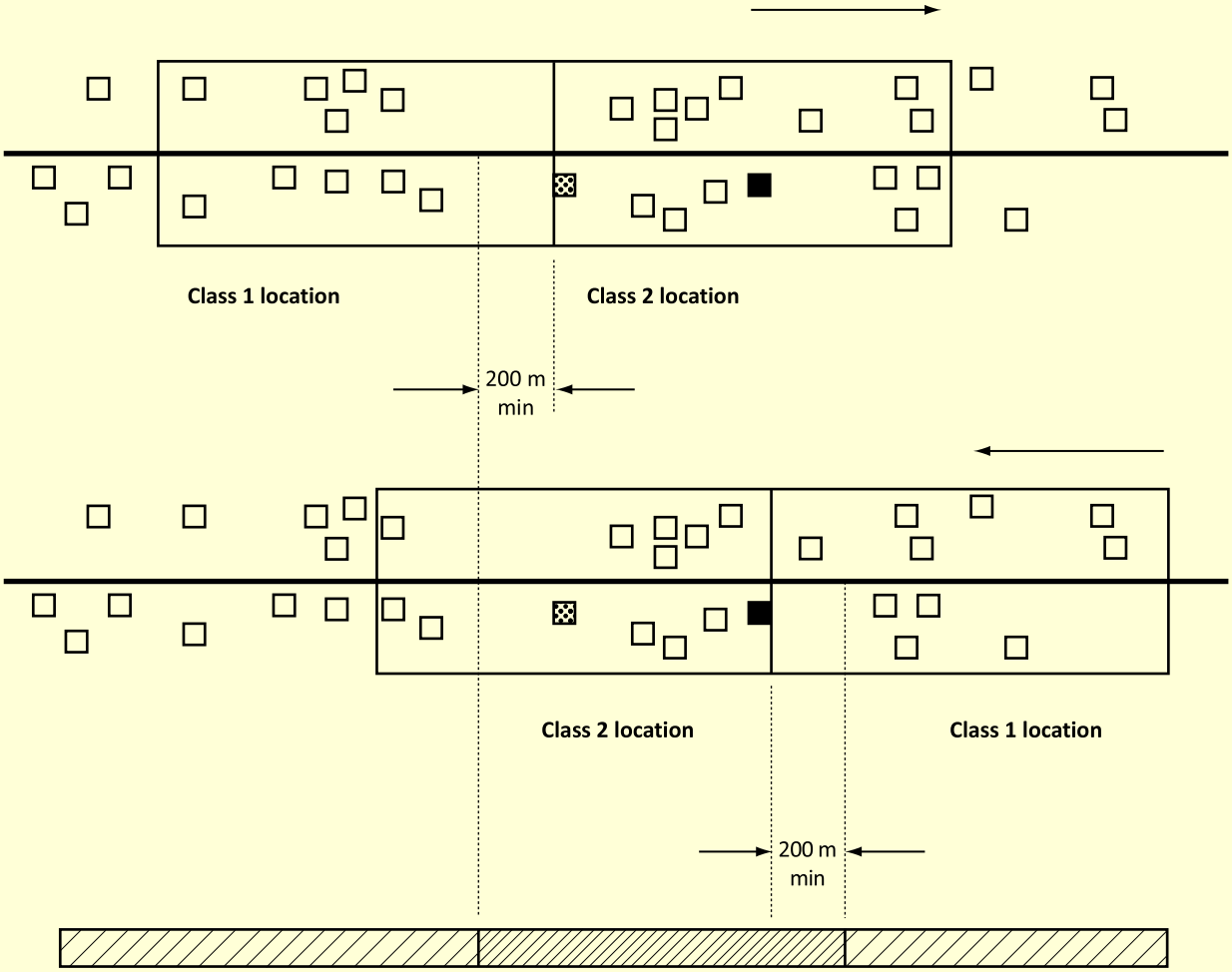
Legend:

- Pipeline
- Dwelling unit
- Critical dwelling unit for Class 2 location
- Critical dwelling unit for Class 3 location
- N — Multiple dwelling unit with N dwelling units
- Class 1 location
- Class 2 location
- Class 3 location

© 2015 CSA Group

End boundaries for Class 2 locations that are based on dwelling unit density and are adjacent to Class 1 locations in both directions along the pipeline are located at least 200 m from the critical dwelling units for Class 2 location, as illustrated in Figure 5 of this Commentary.

Figure 5
End boundaries for Class 2 location based on dwelling unit density
(See Clause 4.3.4.2.)



Legend:

- Pipeline
- Dwelling unit
- Critical dwelling unit for Class 2 location — left end
- Critical dwelling unit for Class 2 location — right end
- Class 1 location
- Class 2 location

© 2015 CSA Group

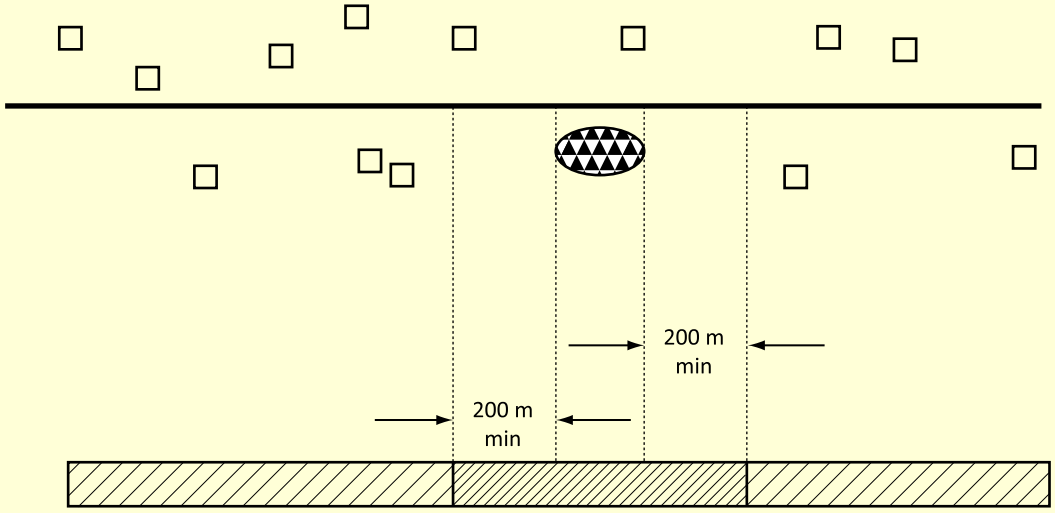
4.3.4.4

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.4.4.

Features other than dwelling-unit density (e.g., a building, outside area, or industrial installation) that bear on end boundaries for Class 2 locations do so only in those locations that would have a Class 1 or 2 location designation based on all other considerations.

Figure 6 of this Commentary illustrates the effect of such features on a section of pipeline that would be in a Class 1 location based on dwelling unit density.

Figure 6
End boundaries for Class 2 location based upon a special feature
(See Clauses 4.3.4.2 and 4.3.4.4.)



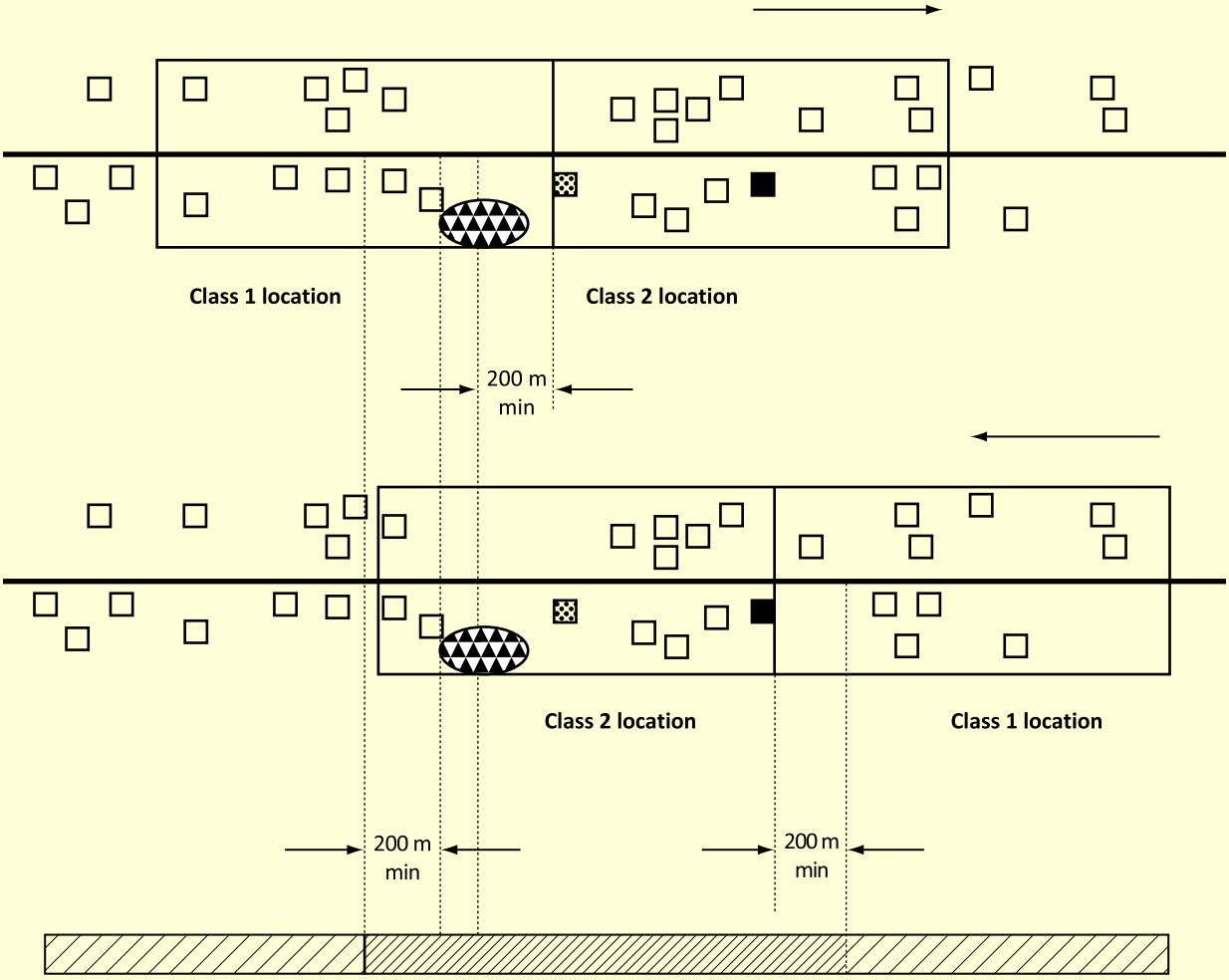
Legend:

- Pipeline
- Dwelling unit
- Feature as described in Table 4.1(b), (c), or (d)
- Class 1 location
- Class 2 location

In a location that would be a Class 2 location based on dwelling unit density, a feature as specified in Table 4.1 b), c), or d) would affect only the location of an end boundary for such a Class 2 location if the feature were located between a Class 1 location and the critical dwelling unit for the Class 2 location, as illustrated in Figure 7 of this Commentary.

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 7
Effect of special feature on end boundary for Class 2 location
(See Clauses 4.3.4.2 and 4.3.4.4.)



Legend:

- Pipeline
- Dwelling unit
- Critical dwelling unit for Class 2 location — left end
- Critical dwelling unit for Class 2 location — right end
- Feature described in Table 4.1(b), (c), and (d)
- Class 1 location
- Class 2 location

© 2015 CSA Group

4.3.4.5

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.4.5.

End boundaries for Class 3 locations that are based upon the presence of a dwelling unit density of 46 or more are located as illustrated in Figure 4 of this Commentary.

4.3.4.7

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.4.7.

The length of the Class 3 location influenced by buildings from which rapid evacuation could be difficult is the individual length of the institution plus 400 m (200 m on each end), on an institution-by-institution basis.

4.3.4.8

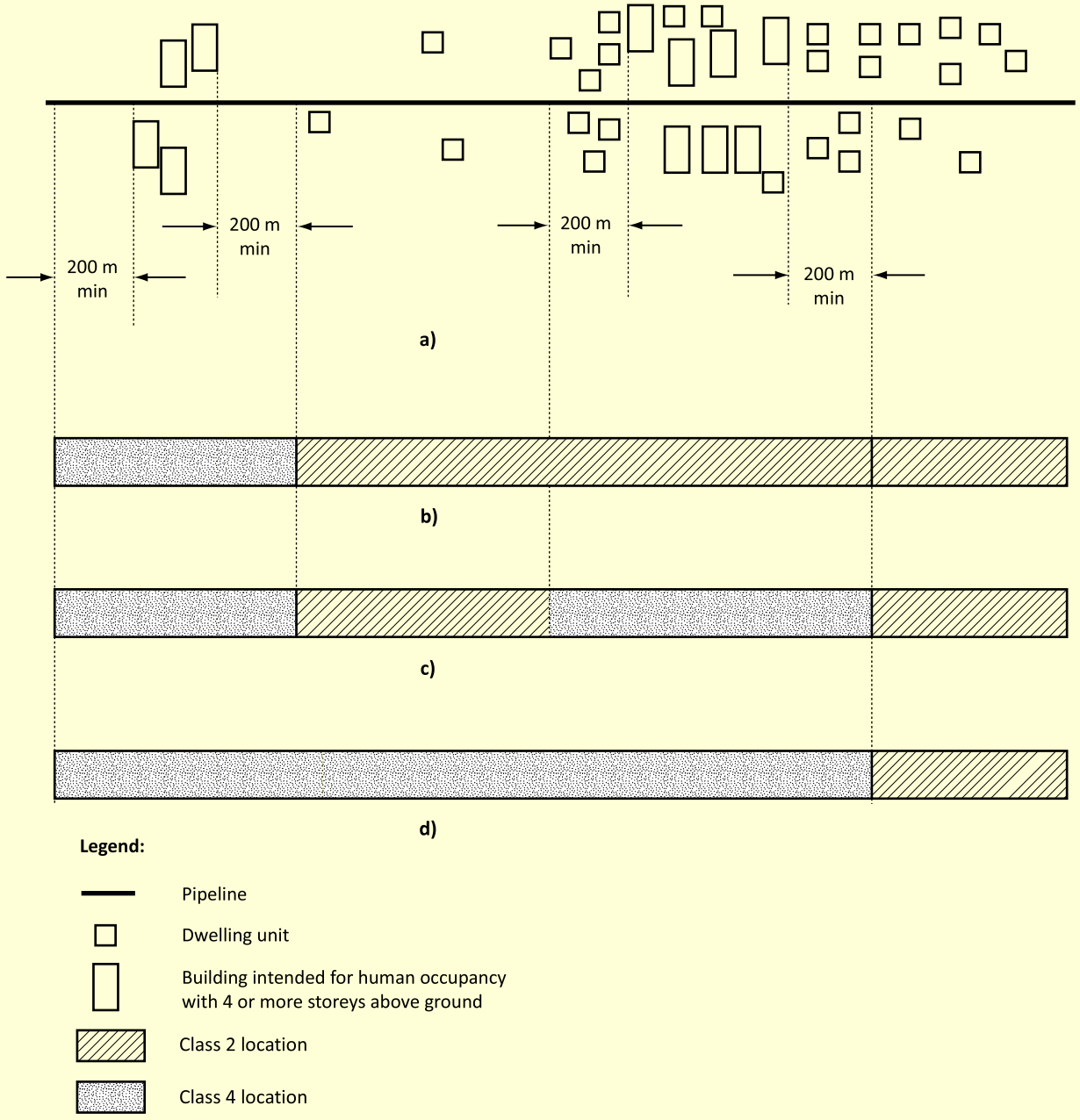
This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.4.8.

"Nearest building" means the building nearest to the end of the last class location assessment area in a series of sliding assessments that resulted in a Class 4 location designation. As such, the class location length that is influenced by such buildings is independent of their spacing from other such buildings.

Because of the "prevalence" criterion associated with a Class 4 designation, location of the class location end boundary is problematic. Figure 8 of this Commentary illustrates three possible outcomes, with Diagram (b) based on a literal interpretation of Table 4.1, Diagram (c) based on a rational interpretation of Table 4.1, and Diagram (d) based on consideration or future development. The intent of the Standard is to guide the designer to either outcome (c) or (d). Outcome (d) would not meet the intent of the Standard.

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 8
End boundaries for Class 4 location
(See Clauses 4.3.4.2 and 4.3.4.8.)



4.3.5 Pressure design for steel pipe — General

4.3.5.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.5.1.

The design formula establishes the primary loads for the pipeline system, using factors that, over the years, have been verified as suitable. The design formula establishes the basic relationship between

© 2015 CSA Group

design pressure, pipe size, pipe yield strength, and a number of factors that are intended to limit the design pressure, as follows:

- The design pressure (*P*) is to be in accordance with the requirements of Clause 4.2.1.1, and it can be further restricted by the requirements of Clause 4.3.5.4.
- The *S* factor is the minimum yield strength specified for the applicable pipe grade in the applicable pipe manufacturing standard or specification. If the pipe is of unknown origin, the *S* factor is not to exceed 172 MPa, corresponding to the specified minimum yield strength for continuous welded pipe, which is the lowest-strength pipe that is permitted for use in the Standard.
- The design wall thickness (*t*) is based on pressure containment capability, whereas the nominal wall thickness of the pipe to be used is based on pressure containment considerations and the allowances detailed in Clause 4.3.10.
- The outside diameter (*D*) is the specified outside diameter of the pipe to be used.
- The design factor (*F*) is the primary factor that restricts the design pressure. Clause 4.3.6 specifies *F* as 0.800.
- The location factor (*L*) can result in the design pressure being restricted, depending on the class location designation, the service fluid, and other factors, as specified in Table 4.2.
- The joint factor (*J*) will result in the restriction of the design pressure if continuous welded pipe is used, as specified in Clause 4.3.8 and Table 4.3.
- The temperature factor (*T*) can result in the restriction of the design pressure, depending on the maximum design temperature, which is the highest expected operating pipe or metal temperature, with the designer taking into account past recorded temperature data and the possibility that higher temperatures might occur.

The design pressure limitation for continuous welded pipe is based on the relatively low mill test pressures for this type of pipe, which are not related to the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

4.3.5.2

S This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.5.2.

Where steel pipe is heated during fabrication or installation, there can be a loss in its yield strength. Although this concern applies to all steel pipelines, it is of special concern for pipelines that are not intended for operation at elevated temperatures, where the effects of heat on the mechanical properties of the piping materials might not have been a consideration. Heating is meant to include such treatments as heating for hot bending in the field and preheating or post heating in the joining operation, but meant to exclude the heating that is associated with the joining operation itself. Heating that is associated with factory-made bends is already accounted for in the manufacturing standard or specification for the bend.

4.3.5.3

S This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.5.3.

The design formula for straight pipe applies also to field bends made from steel pipe; however, during bending, factory-made bends can undergo wall thinning that necessitates a compensatory increase in the wall thickness of the pipe that is going to be bent.

© 2015 CSA Group

4.3.5.4

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.5.4.

Clause 4.3.5.4 accounts for the fact that the referenced line pipe specifications and standards feature more stringent requirements for permissible variations under the nominal mass than do other pipe standards and specifications given in Table 5.3. Having the actual wall thickness approximate the ordered nominal wall thickness is especially important for any piping that is to be pressure tested near or above a stress level corresponding to 100% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

4.3.5.5

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.5.5.

This requirement accounts for the fact that the lowest result reported by the pipe manufacturer will in some cases not be representative of the weakest pipe shipped.

Although the purchaser is not permitted to design on the basis of actual test values other than the specified minimum values, the purchaser can request that the manufacturer recertify the material as meeting a higher grade than was specified on the original documentation.

4.3.6 Pressure design for steel pipe — Design factor (*F*)

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.6.

Prior to 1992 for gas pipelines and 1990 for oil pipelines, the design factor varied, depending upon the class location or zone. In 1994, the design factor was changed to a constant (0.8) and a location factor (*L*) was added to the design formula in order to deal appropriately with the various applications for each class location.

A design factor of 0.72 for Class 1 locations originated in the 1930s and it was derived by the application of a multiplying factor of 0.8 to the mill hydrostatic test pressure common at the time, which was the pressure that would create a hoop stress equivalent to 90% of the SMYS of the pipe.

Based on research conducted by the Battelle Memorial Institute under the sponsorship of the NG-18 Committee of the Pipeline Research Committee of the American Gas Association, and on actual operating experience of US pipelines operating on an experimental basis at pressures in excess of 72% (actually in the range of 73 to 87%) of the SMYS of the pipe, CSA Z184-73 permitted gas pipelines that were designed to operate at 72% of SMYS to be operated at higher pressures, but not in excess of 80% of SMYS, provided that such pipelines were pressure tested after installation at a test pressure 1.25 times the intended operating pressure.

In order to preclude operating pressures established by pressure testing that are higher than the design pressures, CSA Z184-M1983 introduced 0.80 as a “hydrostatic test factor” to be used in the design formula in place of the usual 0.72 design factor prescribed for Class 1 locations; other hydrostatic test factors (0.72, 0.55, and 0.44) were prescribed to be used in the place of the usual design factors (0.60, 0.50, and 0.40) prescribed for Class 2, 3, and 4 locations, respectively. For Class 2 locations, the hydrostatic test factor of 0.72 was intentionally selected to permit Class 1 location pipelines to be upgraded for service in a Class 2 location by being retested hydrostatically at a sufficiently high test pressure, without necessitating the use of heavier wall pipe if a class location change had occurred. For Class 3 and 4 locations, the hydrostatic test factors were each 10% higher than the corresponding original design factor.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.3.7 Pressure design for steel pipe — Location factor (L); Table 4.2 Location factor for steel pipe

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.7; Table 4.2.

Location factors are to be used in the design formula to account for the specific application and class location involved. Within a class location, there can be more than one location factor in effect. For example, the presence of a road within a class location assessment area will affect the design of the pipeline in the immediate vicinity of the road.

Table 4.2, Note 1), covers two separate cases for pipelines near roads: pipe in uncased crossings and pipe in parallel alignment:

- For pipe in uncased crossings, the location factors for roads apply to the pipe that is under the travelled surface of the road and also to the adjacent pipe that is within 7 m of the edge of the travelled surface. Should the pipeline design involve a change in direction (from the alignment used for the crossing to parallel alignment) before that 7 m distance is reached, it is considered that the crossing, for the purposes of Clause 4.12, ends at that change in direction; however, it should be noted that considerations required by Clauses 4.2.4 and 4.3 can necessitate that supplemental design criteria be specified, depending on how close the pipeline will be to the travelled surface of the road and whether the pipeline will be below the grade of the road.
- For pipe in parallel alignment, the location factors for roads apply to the pipe that is within 7 m of the edge of the travelled surface of the road.

Table 4.2, Note 2), covers two separate cases for pipelines near railways: pipe in uncased crossings and pipe in parallel alignment:

- For pipe in uncased crossings, the location factors for railways apply to the pipe that is under the railway tracks (a track consists of a set of two rails) and also to the adjacent pipe that is within 7 m of the centreline of the outside track. In the 1999 edition of the Standard, the term “outermost track” was changed to “outside track” to be consistent with the terminology used in railway crossing regulations. Should the pipeline design involve a change in direction (from the alignment used for the crossing to parallel alignment) before that 7 m distance is reached, it is considered that the crossing, for the purposes of Clause 4.12, ends at that change in direction; however, it should be noted that considerations required by Clauses 4.2.4 and 4.3 can necessitate that supplemental design criteria be specified, depending on how close the pipeline will be to the outside track and whether the pipeline will be below the grade of the railway.
- For pipe in parallel alignment, the location factors for railways apply to the pipe that is within 7 m of the centreline of the outside track. This distance was chosen to define a generally acceptable limit for the zone of influence of surface loads on a buried pipeline and is based on the results of a 2:1 distribution of surface loads with depth.

The origin of the lower design factor for fabricated assemblies is the 1955 edition of ASME B31.8. There was concern about the high stress levels that would be present in the case of a field-fabricated branch connection with a large diameter side outlet for a pipeline intended to be stressed to 72% (Class 1 location) of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe. When a sufficient amount of reinforcement is provided for branch connections, the stress level in the crotch can be held down to acceptable levels; however, when this reinforcement is a saddle or pad, tests indicated that a concentration of stress occurs at the points where tangents to the outside circumference of the pad are parallel to the axis of the header. In these two regions, the stresses resulting from the tendency of the pipe to bend around the edges of the reinforcement are directly additive to the hoop stress. To lower the stresses for this Class 1 location situation, the design factor for the header pipe was set at 0.60 (equivalent to pipe for general use in a Class 2 location). At mainline valves, the maximum hoop stress

permissible in the mainline pipe was 60% of the specified minimum yield strength of the header pipe. In 1968, this requirement was included in the first edition of CSA Z184. Although the effective design factor (design factor times the location factor) is still 0.60 (0.8 times 0.75), other changes in design and location factors through the years have made it such that the pipe specified for a fabricated assembly in a Class 1 location is now heavier than the pipe specified for general use in a Class 2 location; consequently, the original concept of using readily available Class 2 location pipe for the fabrication has been undermined.

4.3.8 Pressure design for steel pipe — Joint factor (J); Table 4.3 Joint factor for steel pipe

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.8; Table 4.3.

The joint factor takes into account the assumed integrity of any mill seam weld and the nondestructive inspection criteria associated with pipe manufacture. As specified in Table 4.3, only pipeline designs featuring continuous welded pipe are affected by this factor.

The longitudinal joint factor of 0.60 for continuous welded pipe was originally established in the US and was based on the results of hundreds of burst tests performed on furnace butt-welded pipe made prior to 1913, which revealed that the average hoop stress needed to burst the pipe was 73% of the ultimate tensile strength of the parent material. The pipe tested predated the invention of the continuous welding process (in 1921) and was manufactured from steel made by a process (Bessemer) that is no longer used. The results of limited burst testing of modern pipe have demonstrated that the product has been substantially improved as a result of the use of the improved steel-making and pipe-making processes.

4.3.11 Pressure design for steel pipe — Wall thickness

4.3.11.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.11.1.

The wall thickness associated with any grooves, threads, and corrosion or erosion allowances is not to be included in the design wall thickness associated with pressure containment and the nominal wall thickness of the pipe to be used in the pipeline has to be at least equal to the design wall thickness plus any such allowances, without taking into account the under-thickness tolerance associated with pipe manufacturing.

4.3.11.2 and Table 4.5 Least nominal wall thickness for steel carrier pipe

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.11.2 and Table 4.5.

The least nominal wall thickness specified in Table 4.5 for plain end pipe is the same as the least nominal wall thickness specified in CSA Z245.1 and represents the least nominal thickness that has been standardized for line pipe. The least nominal wall thickness specified for threaded pipe away from pump or compressor stations is equivalent to Schedule 40 wall thickness. The least nominal wall thickness specified for threaded pipe inside pump or compressor stations is equivalent to Schedule 40 for pipe 73.0 mm OD and larger and to Schedule 80 for pipe 60.3 mm OD and smaller.

© 2015 CSA Group

4.3.12 Pressure design for components — General

4.3.12.2

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.12.2.

Item b) acknowledges that a number of proprietary designed components and equipment have been successfully used in the pipeline industry for many years, even though they have not been designed in accordance with any of the standards listed in CSA Z662 or any other industry-recognized standard or code (e.g., ASME). Examples include orifice fittings and ultrasonic flow meters. The Standard does not preclude the use of such components and equipment if they are designed with a level of safety consistent with the provisions contained therein.

4.3.12.3

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.12.3.

There is no need to differentiate between “fabricated” and “prefabricated” components (items) insofar as design requirements are concerned. The term “fabricated components” in Clause 4.3.12.3 differs from the term “fabricated assembly” used in Note 4) of Table 4.2 and defined in Clause 3.

4.3.12.5

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.12.5.

Except for pipelines designed in accordance with Clause 14 and Annex I, flanges are not required to be derated with increasing temperature to a maximum of 230 °C, because it has been concluded that a decrease in pressure would not significantly decrease the operating stress of flanges of Grade 248 or higher. Components other than flanges are derated using the same factors as those specified for pipe in Table 4.4, assuming that the materials behave similarly with increasing temperature.

4.3.13 Pressure design for components — Closures

4.3.13.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.13.1.

Quick-opening closures are also referred to as “quick-actuating closures” in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII, and they differ from multi-bolted closures.

In some cases it will not be possible to obtain quick-opening closures with an interlocking device for certain smaller sizes. The need to have a reliable means of ensuring the closure barrel has been depressurized before being opened is of the utmost importance in avoiding personal injury when opening these closures. Thus, other design features such as pressure gauges and bleed valves should be used in addition to an interlocking device (or instead of one, where an interlocking device is not available). In addition, although not a “design” issue, training of operating personnel and strict enforcement of safe work practices is imperative, particularly on pipeline systems where closures are opened on a regular and sometimes frequent basis. These safe work practices should take into account the potential for malfunction of the safety devices (e.g., plugging and seizing), as well as deterioration of the end closure itself (e.g., corrosion and wear).

Clause 4.3.13.1 ensures that the designer incorporates adequate valving and connections for the safe use of such closures and that the operator has documented procedures in place to avoid the inadvertent opening of a pressurized closure component. This helps to ensure that the operator checks

 © 2015 CSA Group

and confirms that the closure is properly isolated and vented prior to opening. Where practicable, a pressure-indicating safety interlock device is required to be included to provide an additional level of safety.

4.3.18 Pressure design for components — Welded branch connections

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.18.

Table 4.6 is to be used as a first step in determining which item or items in Clause 4.3.18 are applicable for the stress levels and size ratios involved in the particular branch connection being considered. Then the applicable requirements in Items a) to f) are to be considered.

4.3.19 Pressure design for components — Reinforcement of single openings

This is a commentary on Clause 4.3.19.

The following is an example to illustrate how requirements for reinforcement apply:

- A 219.1 mm OD electric welded branch pipe is to be welded to a 610 mm OD electric welded run pipe for sweet gas service in a Class 2 location and a design pressure of 4.5 MPa, using a hole (D_o) of 200 mm in diameter in the run pipe and a 6.0 mm pad, which is the minimum permitted, given that the fillet weld width (W_2) has to be at least 6 mm (see Figure 7.4). The run pipe material is Grade 317 to CSA Z245.1 and its nominal wall thickness (T_r) is 7.9 mm. The branch pipe material is Grade 241 to CSA Z245.1 and its nominal wall thickness (T_b) is 8.2 mm. The maximum design temperature is 38 °C. Accordingly, the design equation factors (see Clause 4.3.5.1) are as follows: F = 0.80, L = 0.90, J = 1.00, and T = 1.00. As shown in Figure 4.4, the half-width of the reinforcement zone (r_1) and the nominal inside diameter of the branch pipe (d_c) = (219.1 – (2 × 8.2)) = 202.7 mm; and L = 19.8 mm, the lesser of (2.5 T_r = 2.5 × 7.9 = 19.8) and (2.5 T_b + M = 2.5 × 8.2 + 6.0 = 26.5).
- For the run pipe:
  - The design wall thickness (t_r) in millimetres is as follows:

$$t_r = \frac{PD}{25 \times 10^3 \times F \times L \times J \times T} = \frac{4500 \times 610}{2 \times 317 \times 10^3 \times 0.80 \times 0.90 \times 1.00 \times 1.00} = 6.0$$

  - The excess thickness in the run pipe wall = (T_r – t_r) = (7.9 – 6.0) = 1.9 mm.
- For the branch pipe:
  - The design wall thickness (t_b) in millimetres is as follows:

$$t_b = \frac{PD}{25 \times 10^3 \times F \times L \times J \times T} = \frac{4500 \times 610}{2 \times 241 \times 10^3 \times 0.80 \times 0.90 \times 1.00 \times 1.00} = 2.8$$

  - The excess thickness in the branch pipe wall = (T_b – t_b) = (8.2 – 2.8) = 5.4 mm.
- The diameter of the hole in the run pipe (D_o) is 200 mm in this specific example; however, it should be recognized that other hole sizes (up to a maximum of d_c) are permitted and that the hole in the run pipe is the hole remaining after the stub weld has been made, which is not necessarily the same as the hole size that is made in the run pipe to accommodate the branch pipe. For example, if the branch pipe were to be attached to the run pipe using the configuration shown in the upper sketch in Figure 7.5, which is one of the two options permitted in Item (i), then D_o would equal d_c, even though the size of the hole that would have been cut in the run pipe to accommodate the branch pipe would have been equal to the outside diameter of the branch pipe, plus 3 to 6 mm (2 times the weld gap of 1.5 to 3 mm).

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.4 Valve location and spacing

This is a commentary on Clause 4.4.

Reduced spacing in areas of higher population is primarily predicated on the need to isolate pipeline sections for repair of damage that can result from an increase in digging activities associated with such areas. However, closer spacing can also reduce the extent of damage that can occur and improve public perception in the event of a rupture.

4.11 Cover and clearance

4.11.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.11.1.

The cover requirements are intended to protect the pipeline against external loads, scour, and third-party damage; however, there are other methods of providing such protection. The cover requirements specified in Table 4.9 are applicable unless the presence of underground structures or adverse subsurface conditions preclude the use of such cover.

4.11.3

This is a commentary on Clause 4.11.3.

The clearance requirements are intended to protect the pipeline from damage that might result from its proximity to underground structures; however, there are other appropriate (but unspecified) methods of providing such protection. “Clearance” is intended to mean “clearance in any direction” and be synonymous with “separation distance”.

4.11.4

This is a commentary on Clause 4.11.4.

During initial route selection, planning and design for a new pipeline in a shared corridor with other buried utilities or pipelines, it is important to consider the nature of the other utilities in the corridor.

For example, in a gathering system, there can be a number of smaller pipelines (flow lines, fuel lines, etc.) running parallel. In a transmission pipeline system, there can be several high pressure transmission pipelines sharing the same right-of-way. In a natural gas distribution system, there can be gas distribution lines sharing common utility corridors with drinking water transmission and distribution, wastewater collection and storm water drainage systems, telecommunications, television, and electrical power.

The designer should communicate with existing utility or pipeline operators in the corridor to exchange key information about their existing and proposed new facilities. The designer should seek to understand regulations, codes, standards and other design documents which specify clearance requirements for the existing facilities that will be adjacent to the planned pipeline

In considering the effects of the pipeline on existing pipelines, or vice versa, the designer should consider system pressure ranges and hydraulics that can affect the tendency of the pipes to develop thrust during normal operations; the range of current and future pipe sizes in the utility corridor; risk to public health and safety that could result from cross contamination; and the ability to accurately track, estimate, or locate pipeline leakage.

 © 2015 CSA Group

In addition, the operating company should consider providing safety measures, procedures for emergency notification, and repairs in the case of any damage while work is taking place in proximity to the pipeline or adjacent facilities.

4.11.6

This is a commentary on Clause 4.11.6.

To prevent collateral damage, a designer should avoid running a new natural gas pipeline closely parallel with existing hazardous pipelines. However, this might not be practical when considering constraints relating to the use of land or minimizing environmental disturbances caused by creating new ROW.

A new pipeline may be constructed parallel to an existing pipeline. However, the designer should maintain a sufficient separation distance to limit the possibility of interaction and escalation in the event of a failure. Such separation distance may be determined using IGEM/TD/1. For pipelines outside the scope, the designer should perform an analysis that accounts for the crater size and probability of interaction of both pipelines. The analysis should account for the gas composition, maximum operating pressure, pipe diameter, soil type and depth of cover of both pipelines.

Table 4.9 Cover and clearance

This is a commentary on Table 4.9.

Water crossings can be subject to erosion. The 1.20 m cover requirement is intended to provide an erosion buffer, and the third specific note under the table recognizes that such a buffer need not be provided if the potential for erosion is minimal. Conversely, a buffer higher than 1.20 m might be needed if the expected amount of erosion necessitates it.

Drainage crossings have a high potential for cover erosion, so an additional 0.15 m of erosion buffer is required over the 0.60 m cover that is generally required for LVP and gas pipelines. Drains are maintained (widened or deepened) on a regular basis; thus, there is a higher risk of third-party damage.

The 300 mm clearance requirement for underground structures and utilities takes into consideration the ability of the contractor to control the placement of the backfill, the future compaction of the backfill, and the potential for movement of the buried pipeline in the ditch. With special provisions to prevent future impingement, the clearance may be reduced. Similarly, the designer should consider clearance greater than 300 mm, if the space will be required for future maintenance and repair activities to maintain the integrity of the pipeline or the adjacent facilities.

The 50 mm clearance requirement for drainage tile acknowledges that the tile is relatively weak and therefore less likely to cause damage to the pipeline.

In situations where it might not be practical to maintain the required depth of cover for the entire width of the railway (extending 7 m of centreline of the outside track, measured at right angles to the centreline of the track), the designer may perform an engineering assessment to design the pipeline profile and associated cover through this crossing. The engineering assessment must take into consideration both normal and abnormal loadings that the pipeline might be subjected to, and other factors that might impact the integrity of the pipeline. Examples of normal loading that should be considered include track imposed dynamic and static loads and operating pressures. Examples of abnormal loading conditions include train derailment and slope instability. The resulting pipeline profile will still. However. be subject to the specified minimum depths of cover of directly below the rail base and throughout the rest of the pipeline crossing within the railway shown in Table 4.9. The intent of this

 © 2015 CSA Group

part of Table 4.9 is to specify cover requirements and is not intended to specify elevation or clearance requirements as related to rail crossings.

Table 4.9 represents a minimum requirement for cover and clearance requirements for the design and installation of pipelines covered under this Standard. The designer needs to be cognizant that other standards or regulations might exist that could take precedence and provide for stricter guidelines or requirements for pipeline crossing clearance, cover, or other design considerations (e.g., *Standards Respecting Pipeline Crossings Under Railways* TC E-10).

4.12 Crossings

4.12.1 General

4.12.1.3

S This is a commentary on Clause 4.12.1.3.

Crossings other than water crossings are to be made, where practicable, using the minimum amount of piping, in order to minimize the associated interaction of the piping with the item being crossed and thereby reduce the risk of damage. Water crossings are exempt from this requirement in recognition of the fact that other design criteria can dictate the preferred crossing angle.

4.12.2 Crossings of utilities

4.12.2.1

S This is a commentary on Clause 4.12.2.1.

The requirement for straight alignment is predicated on minimizing the exposure of the pipeline and utilities to damage during maintenance activities. In addition, the use of straight alignment aids in the process of predicting and identifying the location of the pipeline in the field.

4.12.3 Crossings of roads and railways

4.12.3.2 Uncased railway crossings

S This is a commentary on Clause 4.12.3.2.

In addition to the requirements in Clause 4.3 for the pipe to be designed to sustain the various internal and external loadings at the crossing, there are requirements concerning the pipe's nominal wall thickness, the design pressure, the *D/t* ratio, and the nondestructive inspection of circumferential joints. These additional requirements are intended to improve the pipe's resistance to damage and to improve confidence in the integrity of the welded joints, taking into consideration the possibility that a more severe impact could result if a pipeline ruptures at a railway crossing.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.13 Requirements for pipelines in proximity to electrical transmission lines and associated facilities

4.13.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 4.13.1.

CAN/CSA-C22.3 No. 6 covers only high-voltage (35 kV or higher) alternating current. Concerns posed by low-voltage (lower than 35 kV) alternating current lines differ from those posed by high-voltage alternating current lines. The three main areas of concern for low-voltage ac lines are as follows:

- For 3-phase systems, differential effects are minimal when the system is balanced. If the system is unbalanced, induced voltages can result.
- For single-phase systems, there is no balancing of load and no convenient earth return. Pipelines can act as earth return, resulting in induced voltages.
- Low-voltage lines are subject to damage in the form of fallen lines, which can go undetected for hours and result in arcing of the pipeline.

4.13.2 Effects on pipelines in proximity to high-voltage DC lines

This is a commentary on Clause 4.13.2.

Most direct-current power installations are bipolar. Bipolar installations do not affect the operation of pipelines, unless the power line is not functioning properly. An upset condition can occur in which a bipolar power line installation operates as unipolar for a duration ranging from hours to months. Unipolar operation can result in pipeline corrosion and the accumulation of charge (similar to strong static electricity) on aboveground piping that is insulated from the ground, a case that would arise during pipeline construction.

4.14 Design of compressor stations over 750 kW and pump stations over 375 kW

4.14.1 General

4.14.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 4.14.1.4.

Fences are required to have two exits: the exits can be a gate or something else. Special egress will be required in situations where there is a nearby building suitable for shelter, such as an explosion and fire proof control room, and it is practical for persons to use such shelter.

4.14.3 Design of pump stations over 375 kW

4.14.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.14.3.1.

Requirements were added to acknowledge the need to avoid fires and explosions associated with flashback of flare stack or flare pit flames into storage tanks, knock-out vessels, and pig traps. Flashbacks are controllable by the use of flame arresters or positive purge systems, or a combination thereof.

A flame arrester impedes a flame front's progression upstream in the fuel-rich atmosphere to such an extent that ignition will stop within the internals of the flame arrester.

 © 2015 CSA Group

A positive purge system maintains the flow of gas toward the flame in a flare or pit, thereby preventing it from burning upstream into the fuel source. The following are commonly used practices for preventing flashback:

- Maintenance of slight pressure on the total system — with this method, the operator achieves a slight positive pressure by introducing fuel gas, propane, or separator gas, whichever is available, into the system of pressure control. Maintaining a slight positive pressure on a drain and flare system can be difficult and can necessitate the use of sophisticated pressure control and gas regulation systems, which can be expensive and labour-intensive.
- Maintenance of a positive purge on the flare stack only — with this method, the operator sources gas as specified in the "maintenance of slight pressure on the total system" method and uses such gas to maintain, under all circumstances, a positive purge, or outward flow of gas to the flare stack or pit. This method has the advantage of requiring less instrumentation.

4.14.3.7

This is a commentary on Clause 4.14.3.7.

The allowable exceedance for fuel gas piping with a maximum operating pressure of less than 350 kPa is a recognition of the difficulty in limiting pressures at such low pressure levels.

4.15 Liquid storage in oil pipeline pump stations, tank farms, and terminals

This is a commentary on Clause 4.15.

API 2610 represents a synthesis of 186 publications relating to best practices, based on current industry experience, knowledge, and management practices.

The requirements for aboveground storage tanks were modified in the 1999 edition of the Standard so that they are now organized on the basis of tank capacity rather than on the basis of "atmospheric" or "low-pressure". Following a review of a number of publications (including API 620, API 650, API 653, and API 2610, CCME-EPC-LST-71E, and NFPA 30), 4000 L was selected as the threshold for tank capacity. This value is the one used in the CCME publication and it is similar to the threshold of 1100 US gallons (4164 L).

In the 1999 edition of the Standard, the requirements of NFPA 30 were chosen over the requirements of the *National Fire Code of Canada* because the former were considered more comprehensive.

4.15.1 Aboveground tanks over 4000 L

4.15.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.15.1.1.

Tank foundation design should take into account the environmental and safety implications of leakage of the tank's contents into the containment space below the tank floor, given that the bottoms of aboveground tanks can leak as a result of bottom-side corrosion. Although Appendix I of API 650 deals specifically with atmospheric pressure tanks, a low-pressure tank can also benefit from an undertank leak detection system, depending on the liquid stored.

© 2015 CSA Group

4.15.1.6

This is a commentary on Clause 4.15.1.6.

Relief tanks are exempt from these requirements because of the intermittent and short-term nature of their storage.

4.18 Pressure control and overpressure protection of piping

This is a commentary on Clause 4.18.

"Overpressure protection" refers to a second level of protection (i.e., beyond that provided by pressure control) that is required in order to protect the pipeline from being overpressured. Overpressure protection is required to be continuous and automatic because it is a safety-type system, without any reliance on manual intervention. Overpressure protection can be accomplished by pressure-limiting systems or pressure-relieving systems.

4.18.1 General

4.18.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.18.1.1.

The note recognizes that pressure control and pressure relief are unique for CO_2 because of the transient and potential multiphase conditions.

4.18.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 4.18.1.2.

The allowable exceedance for piping with a maximum operating pressure of less than 350 kPa is a recognition of the difficulty in limiting pressures at such low pressure levels. Over pressure protection systems and equipment are required to be designed and operated so as to ensure that the maximum operating pressure is not exceeded by more than 10% or 35 kPa, whichever is greater, at any point along the pipeline under normal operating conditions, upset or transient conditions. Studies, simulations, and/or calculations conducted to demonstrate compliance with Clause 4.18.1.2 should account for all relevant conditions including, but not limited to, malfunction, failure and human error.

4.18.2 General design requirements for systems for pressure control and overpressure protection

This is a commentary on Clause 4.18.2.

Item a) emphasizes that the failure of any single component must not cause both the pressure control and overpressure protection systems to become inoperative. Item g) indicates that fail-safe design is preferable; however, this is not necessarily practicable.

4.18.3 Additional design requirements for pressure-relieving installations

4.18.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 4.18.3.1.

"Safely discharged and dispersed" includes consideration of products whose properties are heavier than air.

 © 2015 CSA Group

4.18.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 4.18.3.2.

The designer is required to account for back-pressure considerations of the outlet piping when sizing the pressure-relieving systems.

4.20 Leak detection capability

4.20.2

This is a commentary on Clause 4.20.2.

Some oilfield waters can cause serious environmental damage in the event of a line leak. Although Clause 4.20.2 does not mandate the need for a leak detection system for all oilfield water pipelines, the need for and type of leak detection system should be determined based on a risk assessment, taking into account the environmental impact and any other consequences of a leak.

4.22 Requirements for pipelines installed by horizontal directional drilling

This is a commentary on Clause 4.22.

Clause 4.22 accounts for the increased use of horizontal directional drilling for the installation of pipeline crossings and the lack of design requirements for HDD in previous editions of the Standard. Additional HDD requirements pertaining to construction practices were also added to Clause 6. The PRCI and CAPP documents referenced in the note contain useful information that should be considered and applied during the design of HDD crossings.

5 Materials

5.1 Qualification of materials

This is a commentary on Clause 5.1.

The purpose of Clause 5.1 is to designate the specific requirements, if any, that are necessary as a prerequisite to the use of materials in the pipeline system. In addition to these qualification requirements, the use of materials is further limited by any applicable specific requirements elsewhere in the Standard.

5.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 5.1.1.

The requirement that materials and equipment be suitable for the conditions to which they will be subjected is the basic requirement in the Standard with respect to materials and equipment; for equipment, it is the only requirement specified.

Although most material standards and specifications are developed with some specific use in mind, the limitations on their use are not usually stated in the standard or specification. Although some limitations concerning the use of materials are specified in the Standard, the user of the material has the ultimate responsibility of determining whether specific materials are appropriate for the intended service conditions.

© 2015 CSA Group

5.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 5.1.2.

There are no prerequisites for the use of materials that conform to an appropriate standard or specification listed in the Standard; however, this should not be construed to mean that there are no limitations on the use of such materials. Such limitations, if any, are stated elsewhere in the Standard.

5.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 5.1.3.

Not all types of items involved in a pipeline system are covered by existing material standards or specifications, and it would be impractical to prohibit the use of such items until they are covered by a standard or specification.

5.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 5.1.4.

There are instances in which materials removed from an operating pipeline system can be removed and subsequently used in another location in the same pipeline system or in another pipeline system. The prerequisites and restrictions concerning the qualification of such used materials are more extensive and are detailed in Clause 5.6.

5.2 Steel materials and gaskets

5.2.1 Design temperatures — Steel materials

5.2.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.1.1.

The major concern in Clause 5.2.1.1 is the effect that the maximum design temperature will have on the yield strength of the steel materials. The designers are cautioned that flanges need to satisfy the additional requirements specified in Clause 14.3.4 when pipelines are designed in accordance with Clause 14 and Annex I.

5.2.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.1.2.

Any temperature lower than the minimum design temperature and that could occur while the pipe is not pressurized (e.g., during shipment to the field or during installation) is not required to be considered because fractures at such low stress levels are not considered to be notch toughness dependent, and thus they would not constitute a safety hazard.

5.2.2 Notch toughness requirements — Steel pipe

5.2.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.2.1.

Proven notch toughness properties are not required for pipe smaller than 114.3 mm OD and/or with a nominal wall thickness of 6.0 mm or less because such pipes are too small to permit meaningful notch

 © 2015 CSA Group

toughness test specimens to be obtained. Such light wall pipe invariably has good notch toughness properties by virtue of the hot rolling practices that are associated with its production. Proven notch toughness properties are not required for pipe where the design operating stress is less than 50 MPa because fractures at such low stress levels are not considered to be notch toughness dependent.

The nominal wall thickness threshold is 6.0 mm because this measurement represents the least wall thickness for which half-size (5 mm wide) Charpy V-notch test specimens can be obtained, given that 1.0 mm (0.5 mm per side) is required to be machined from the pipe surfaces during the preparation of the test specimens. Subsize Charpy V-notch test specimens that are smaller than half-size do not yield meaningful test results. Clause 5.2.2.1 is not intended to preclude the company from requesting notch toughness testing on small-diameter or thin-wall pipe. In such circumstances, the Charpy notch toughness test specimens would be smaller than half-size.

The outside diameter threshold is 114.3 mm, in recognition that the fracture resistance of pipe smaller than 114.3 mm OD is generally satisfactory. The $PTSV_1$ (i.e., pipe threshold stress value for Cat. I pipe) value for 60.3 mm OD pipe is 370 MPa, which corresponds to operating Grade 483 pipe at a hoop stress equivalent to 80% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe. The $PTSV_1$ value for 88.9 mm OD pipe is 325 MPa, which corresponds to operating Grade 414 pipe at a hoop stress equivalent to 80% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

5.2.2.2

S This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.2.2.

The exception allowed by Table 5.3 was added in 1999, and it recognizes that it is permissible to use Grade 6 seamless pipe made to ASTM A333/A333M for Category III applications, provided that the minimum design temperature is not lower than –45 °C and that it is permissible to use pipe that has been impact tested in accordance with the test procedures specified in API 5L. Due to the absence of Charpy fracture appearance test requirements for ASTM A333 Grade 6 pipe, this pipe material is not suitable for Category II applications.

Any required testing for notch toughness properties is to be done at or below the applicable minimum design temperature for the piping in order to ensure that the required amount of notch toughness will be available during pressure testing and in service. The fact that dynamic tests are used results in a conservatism of approximately 30 °C with respect to fracture initiation for static loading situations.

In accordance with the suggestion contained in Note 1), it is common industry practice to use –5 °C as the minimum design temperature for buried piping and either –30 °C or –45 °C (depending on the local climate) as the minimum design temperature for above-ground piping.

The Standard does not specify how the designer should determine what would be appropriate as a minimum value for the pipe specified in Note 2).

- Research by Battelle's Columbus Laboratories in the 1960s and 1970s established the interrelationship between axial flaw size, the pipe's fracture toughness properties, the pipe geometry, and the applied stress level. It was determined that the failure stress in the presence of an axial flaw could be accurately predicted using the following equation:

$$K_c^2 = \left(8c\sigma_f^2/\pi\right) \text{ in sec } \pi/2\left(M\sigma/\sigma_f\right)$$

where

K_c = fracture toughness parameter

c = half-length of the axial flaw

 © 2015 CSA Group

σ_F = flow stress (yield stress plus 70 MPa)

σ = hoop stress at failure

M = Folias correction

= $M_T = (1 + 1.255\ c^2/R_t - 0.0135\ c^4/R^2t^2)^{1/2}$ for through-wall flaws

= $(1 - d/M_T\ t)/(1 - d/t)$ for surface flaws

where

d = depth of surface flow

R = pipe radius

= 0.5 times pipe outside diameter

t = pipe wall thickness

- The relationship between K_c and Charpy V-notch energy can be calculated using the following equation:
  $C_v\ /A = (K_c)^2/E$
  where
  C_v = Charpy V-notch absorbed energy, J
  A = area of fracture surface in the broken Charpy test specimen, mm^2
  E = Young's modulus, MPa
- At very high levels of absorbed energy, failure is controlled by the flow stress rather than the toughness of the material, and $M\sigma = \sigma_F$. At low levels of Charpy V-notch absorbed energy, the tolerable flaw length increases with increasing absorbed energy; however, this positive influence diminishes rapidly with increasing absorbed energy and becomes negligible at higher levels of absorbed energy.

The 27 J and 40 J values for minimum absorbed energy that are present in CSA Z245.1 were first adopted as standard in 1990 because they represented the minimum toughness values that could readily be attained with the steelmaking and hot rolling practices typically used for pipe at that time, and they provided better resistance to mechanical damage than that provided with the previously standardized values of 20 J and 27 J, respectively. The previous values (20 J and 27 J) and the formula applicable to fracture initiation at through-wall flaws was used to confirm that such minimum absorbed energy values provide acceptable resistance to fracture initiation for most pipeline designs and are increasingly conservative with decreasing pipe size. The current values (27 J and 40 J) provide more resistance to fracture initiation for larger pipe sizes and are even more conservative for small pipe sizes. Where the aforementioned toughness-dependent formula developed by Battelle is used in design, the value of absorbed energy corresponding to some high percentage (typically 80 to 90%) of the maximum tolerable flaw length is used as the required minimum value to be specified for pipe orders, provided that such a value is higher than 27 J or 40 J, whichever is applicable for the pipe size being considered.

Table 5.1 Pipe body notch toughness for steel pipe

S This is a commentary on Table 5.1.

Table 5.1 is used as the first step in determining whether or not notch toughness properties need to be proven, based on the service fluid, design operating stress, minimum design temperature, and pressure test medium that are pertinent to the piping design.

 © 2015 CSA Group

The type of service fluid does not have an effect (other than a potential environmental effect) on the initiation of failure at flaws; however, the requirements for proven notch toughness properties in Table 5.1 do differ somewhat by service fluid. These differences reflect a conservative approach that is applied for carbon dioxide pipelines; the differences also recognize that Category II pipe is appropriate where the potential for long propagating failures is a concern, recognize that Category III pipe is appropriate where the potential for long propagating failures is not a concern, and recognize that there has been a history of satisfactory performance with Category I pipe in LVP pipeline systems.

Design operating stress is used as the criterion to establish the requirements for proven notch toughness in Table 5.1. Higher stresses necessarily occur during pressure testing; however, it was considered that the design operating stress represented a reasonable basis for establishing the notch toughness testing criteria based on fracture initiation considerations.

The 50 MPa threshold level for design operating stress was originally selected because of historical fracture research that indicated that fractures were not toughness-dependent below stresses of approximately 8000 psi (55 MPa).

The 225 MPa threshold level for design operating stress was originally selected so that Grade 317 pipe would be required to have proven notch toughness properties for operation at pressures equivalent to 72% or more of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe, and that lower grades of pipe would not typically be required to have proven notch toughness properties.

The $PTSV_1$ threshold level in Table 5.1 eliminates most of the conflicts that formerly existed between the requirements of Tables 5.1 and 5.2 for some piping designs. The $PTSV_1$ (the pipe threshold stress value for Category I pipe) given in Table 5.2 is required to be considered in Table 5.1 during the determination of the required notch toughness properties for design operating stresses of 50 MPa or greater. The $PTSV_1$ threshold level represents the threshold stress value for fracture arrest in buried pipelines containing gases that exhibit single-phase compression, derived using the formula in the note in Clause 5.2.2.3 and an assumed absorbed energy value of 20 J (based on full-size Charpy V-notch impact test specimens).

The resistance to fracture initiation is a function of the notch toughness of the material. Category II and Category III pipe have the same resistance to fracture initiation if the absorbed energy on a Charpy V-notch impact test is the same for both types of pipe. It should be noted that Category I pipe does have proven resistance to fracture initiation; however, the specific amount of resistance is unknown because the notch toughness properties for the pipe have not been determined.

Category II pipe requires proven pipe body notch toughness properties in the form of energy absorption and fracture appearance; the details of such requirements are contained in CSA Z245.1. The control of fracture appearance is intended to ensure that any pipe fractures would be in the ductile mode rather than in the brittle mode. Ductile fractures travel relatively slowly, whereas brittle fractures can travel at speeds up to 600 m/s, which is higher than the acoustic velocity (around 400 m/s for natural gas under typical pipeline conditions) that controls the decompression rate for the pipeline in the presence of a full-bore rupture. Brittle fractures could thus propagate indefinitely because the crack tip during a pipeline rupture would continue to be under the stress associated with the pre-rupture pipeline pressure. By ensuring that any fractures occur in the ductile mode, the very long fractures possible with brittle pipe can be avoided; however, to avoid long ductile fractures using material properties alone, it is necessary to use material that has energy absorption values high enough to slow the ductile fracture to a point where fracture arrest will occur.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Category III pipe requires proven pipe body notch toughness properties in the form of energy absorption only; the details of such requirements are contained in CSA Z245.1. Category III pipe is required or permitted where resistance to long propagating fracture is not a concern.

Control of fracture propagation during service is not a concern for conventional LVP and HVP piping because the decompression rate of the service fluid is rapid (2 to 3 times that of a gaseous medium) in the presence of a full-bore rupture. Consequently, the stresses at the crack tip that promote fracture propagation are rapidly diminished and long propagating fractures do not occur. Accordingly, Category III pipe (rather than Category II pipe) is required for piping in HVP service at design operating stresses greater than 225 MPa.

During pressure testing with a gaseous pressure-test medium, all types of pipelines are in effect gas pipelines, and the length of a pipeline rupture during the pressure test would be influenced by the decompression characteristics of the gaseous pressure-test medium. Accordingly, Category II pipe (rather than Category III pipe) is required for piping in LVP or HVP service that is so pressure tested and exceeds the prescribed limits for design operating stress and minimum design temperature.

Carbon dioxide is a liquid while contained, but becomes a gas when released; accordingly, carbon dioxide pipelines are treated somewhat like gas pipelines, with Category II pipe being required for all design operating stresses greater than 50 MPa.

The specific note (designated by an asterisk) is intended to provide an exemption to Category II requirements for short runs of above-ground pipe that are attached to buried Category I pipe. For such pipe, it was considered that Category II might not be readily available, that there had been a history of satisfactory performance with Category I pipe, and that long propagating fractures could not occur because the pipe run length is restricted to a maximum of 50 m.

Note 4) recognizes the superiority of pipe with proven notch toughness properties.

Note 5) is intended to accommodate short runs of above-ground pipe in compressor stations, for which it was considered that there had been a history of satisfactory performance with Category III pipe, and that long propagating fractures could not occur because the pipe run length is restricted to a maximum of 100 m. Because this provision is contained in a general note to the table, it applies to any of the non-carbon dioxide cases where Category II is required; however, in practice, it is usually applied only where it is difficult to obtain Category II pipe (e.g., for heavy wall pipe for low temperature service).

5.2.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.2.3.

Because the requirements in Table 5.1 are based on the design operating stress, they will in some cases be non-conservative for pipelines that are to be pressure tested with a gaseous pressure-test medium, given that such test pressures will produce hoop stresses that are at least 1.25 times the design operating stress. Such non-conservatism is especially of concern during pressure testing because the pressure test represents the first demonstration of the ability of the piping to withstand internal pressure and resist propagating fractures. For such cases, the hoop stress developed by the gaseous pressure-test medium (rather than the design operating stress) is to be used in determining whether supplementary design measures to provide positive control of fracture propagation are necessary.

The amount of fracture length control that can be provided by the energy absorption characteristics of ductile pipe was the subject of a number of full-scale burst-test programs run in the 1960s, 1970s, and 1980s by several research groups around the world. Each study resulted in the derivation of a formula

that relates pipe toughness, pipe geometry, and hoop stress. Such formulae can be used to derive the fracture arrest toughness. The formulae are different, but yield reasonably similar results for conventional pipeline designs. The specific formula contained in the note to Clause 5.2.2.3 is the one developed by research sponsored by the American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI), the results of which were published in 1974. This formula was developed for buried pipelines 1067 mm OD or smaller, operating at pressures not exceeding 8 MPa, and conveying gases that exhibit single-phase decompression. It is recommended that higher specified minimum absorbed energy values be considered if the pipeline is outside those parameters. The AISI formula is contained in a note since it is not mandatory to use this particular formula; however, it is common practice to use some such formula to predict the fracture length.

Fracture length control by material properties alone becomes more difficult with increasing pipe size and stress level. The practice of specifying an all-heat average minimum equal to the applicable arrest toughness value results in a statistically predicted fracture length of approximately 100 m (with 90% confidence) and approximately 200 m (with 99% confidence), assuming a random distribution of the pipe notch toughness properties along the length of the pipeline. An alternative practice that would yield similar results involves having the specified minimum value for energy absorption equal to 75% of the applicable arrest toughness value.

For service fluids that exhibit two-phase decompression behaviour, it is common practice to determine the fracture arrest toughness by using the two-curve method developed by Battelle for the Pipeline Research Committee of the American Gas Association, which involves matching an empirically calculated fracture speed curve to the decompression curve characteristic of the fluid in the pipeline.

The primary means of achieving fracture propagation control for pipelines containing fluids that exhibit two-phase decompression behavior is by reducing hoop stress (i.e., increasing wall thickness) and/or increasing the required notch toughness absorbed energy to a level above that required by CSA Z662 for Category II pipe. There can also be situations where fracture-arrest devices are also appropriate to achieve the necessary fracture control. The referenced document DNV RP-J202, Section 5.5, provides further information and guidance on fracture propagation control for carbon dioxide pipelines.

The use of fracture-arrest devices has been recognized for many years as a possible measure for the control of fracture length; however, the availability of pipe with sufficient notch toughness properties has made such devices unnecessary in many instances. For this method of fracture propagation control, at intervals along the pipeline route, encircling rings or wraps would be placed around the piping in order to restrict the flap opening during the fracturing process or heavier wall thickness pipe would be used in order to reduce the hoop stress ahead of the advancing fracture front. The nature of the development along the pipeline, as well as economic considerations, will determine in fracture-arrest devices are required and if so, the locations where such devices will be installed.

Table 5.2 Pipe threshold stress values

S This is a commentary on Table 5.2.

The pipe threshold stress values given in Table 5.2 were derived by rounding (to the nearest 5 MPa) the values of *S* obtained by solving the equation contained in the note to Clause 5.2.2.3, using

- standard values for pipe diameters;
- a value of 20 J for Category I pipe;
- a value of 27 J for pipe smaller than 457 mm OD with proven notch toughness properties; and
- a value of 40 J for pipe 457 mm OD or larger with proven notch toughness properties.

© 2015 CSA Group

The pipe threshold stress values given in Table 5.2 are the stress levels that Category I, Category II, and Category III pipe are capable of withstanding, respectively, while maintaining the ability of arresting any gas pipeline rupture within one or two pipe lengths.

5.2.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.2.4.

Clause 5.2.2.4 is intended to apply to all forms of pipe mill welds, including those made by arc welding, electric welding, and other permitted welding processes.

Pipe weld metal notch toughness is a secondary concern, when compared to pipe body notch toughness, for the following reasons:

- Pipe seam welds are subjected to ultrasonic and/or radiological nondestructive inspection in the pipe mill, which ensures that imperfections are sufficiently limited in size that relatively low levels of notch toughness provide adequate resistance to fracture initiation.
- Long propagating fractures confined to the pipe seam welds are not possible because the pipe seam welds are not lined up from one pipe length to the next in a pipeline; therefore, the pipe body properties would generally control fracture arrest for fractures that are longer than one pipe length.

The value of 18 J absorbed energy represents a value that is readily attainable in practice for pipe seam welds and for which there is a history of satisfactory performance in service. It is not considered necessary for notch toughness properties to be proven for minimum design temperatures of –5 °C or higher because prior testing has confirmed that 18 J or higher absorbed energy invariably will be attained at such test temperatures. Proven notch toughness properties for the deposited weld metal are therefore required only if the pipe body is required to be impact tested and the minimum design temperature is lower than –5 °C.

5.2.3 Notch toughness requirements — Steel components

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.3.

Fracture control for components requires consideration of their resistance to fracture initiation because the limited length of components makes consideration of resistance to fracture propagation unnecessary. It has also been found that components can actually assist fracture arrest by presenting a lower stress state to the advancing crack tip as the fracture progresses from the pipe into the component.

5.2.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.3.1.

Components smaller than NPS 4 and valves with a nominal pressure class of PN20 (regardless of size) need not have notch toughness properties proven because detailed studies have confirmed that the inherent notch toughness properties of such components provide acceptable resistance to fracture initiation.

5.2.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.3.2.

The notch toughness values for Category II material in CSA Z245.11, CSA Z245.12, and CSA Z245.15 were derived by analyses involving standard fracture mechanics principles, specified material properties, and design stress states, with the results converted to equivalent Charpy V-notch absorbed energy values.

 © 2015 CSA Group

The analyses resulted in the adoption of two toughness levels (18 J minimum and 27 J minimum). The 18 J minimum requirement applies to fittings having a grade lower than Grade 359, flanges smaller than NPS 24, and pressure-containing valve parts having a grade lower than Grade 359. The 27 J minimum requirement applies to fittings having a grade of Grade 359 or higher, flanges NPS 24 or larger, and pressure-containing valve parts having a grade of Grade 359 or higher.

The notch toughness properties are required to be proven at or below the applicable design temperature, in order to ensure that the required notch toughness properties will be available during pressure testing and in service.

Table 5.3 Limitations for pipe and components

S This is a commentary on Table 5.3.

In recognition that there are several suitable materials available, CSA materials are no longer required to be used if available; however, pipe made to a line pipe standard or specification (rather than an ordinary pipe standard) is generally preferred for Category II and Category III applications.

The rationale for the limitation that pipe made to ASTM A53/A53M, ASTM A106, and ASTM A333/A333M not be used for Category II applications is that special ordering and testing requirements would be needed in order to meet the requirements of Clause 5.2.2, in which case pipe made to a line pipe standard or specification (CSA Z245.1 or API 5L) should be obtainable.

The rationale for the limitation that pipe made to ASTM A53/A53M and ASTM A106 not be used for Category III applications is that special ordering and testing requirements would be needed in order to meet the requirements of Clause 5.2.2, in which case pipe made to a line pipe standard or specification (CSA Z245.1 or API 5L) should be obtainable.

Limitation 2) recognizes that although pipe made to ASTM A333/A333M, Grade 6 is impact tested using longitudinal test specimens rather than the transverse test specimens that would be normal for line pipe, it would be capable of meeting the specified requirements if the testing had been carried out using transverse specimens. It is also recognized that such pipe will in some cases not meet Category III specified requirements, both with respect to the test specimen orientation and the absorbed energy acceptance criterion at design temperatures lower than –45 °C. The limitation that such pipe not be used for Category II applications is based on the fact that Charpy testing of ASTM A333/A333M Grade 6 pipe does not require fracture appearance assessment. Category II materials require adherence to the requirements of Clause 5.2.2, in which case seamless pipe made to a line pipe standard or specification (CSA Z245.1 or API 5L) should be obtainable.

Pipe manufactured by the low frequency welding process means pipe manufactured using a welding process of less than 1 kHz for the seam weld. Such a welding process has not been used for pipe making in Canada for many years; however, it might still be used in pipe mills outside of Canada. Limitation 5) is intended to alert the designer that low frequency pipe is not necessarily prohibited by the standards and specifications that cover the manufacture of the pipe; it is the company's responsibility to ensure that the pipe that is to be used is not low frequency electric welded pipe.

© 2015 CSA Group

5.2.6 Steel components — Flanges

5.2.6.2

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.6.2.

For steel flanges other than those specified in Clause 5.2.6.2, any contact face finish specified by the applicable manufacturing standard or specification is acceptable.

5.2.8 Gaskets

5.2.8.1

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.8.1.

Both metallic and nonmetallic gaskets are permitted for use, provided they are in accordance with the requirements of ASME B16.20 or ASME B16.21, whichever is applicable; however, there are specific limitations on their use, as detailed in Clauses 5.2.8.2 to 5.2.8.9.

5.2.8.2

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.8.2.

Gaskets used at temperatures above 120 °C are required to be of noncombustible material. Metallic gaskets are not permitted for use with PN 20 (i.e., Class 150) flanges because the loading requirements to ensure that a seal is maintained exceed the compressive load that can be applied by the threaded fasteners used with this flange rating.

5.2.9 Steel components — Fittings

5.2.9.3

This is a commentary on Clause 5.2.9.3.

In 2001, CSA Z245.11 included welding, post weld heat treatment, and inspection requirements for the attachment of scraper bar welds. CSA Z662 is silent on the attachment of scraper bar welds. Scraper bars are frequently added during construction and maintenance activities. Industry experience has shown that a consistent level of quality and due diligence is required for any welding carried out on pressure containing equipment. The proposed clauses align and clarify the requirements for attaching scraper bars regardless of when or where they are installed.

5.3 Other materials

5.3.2 Polyethylene pipe and fittings

This is a commentary on Clause 5.3.2.

The material requirements for polyethylene pipe and fittings (as well as tubing and valves) for gas distribution service are contained in Clause 12.5.3. The material requirements for polyethylene pipeline liners are contained in Clause 13.2.3, while requirements for polyethylene pipe and fittings for free-standing gas gathering, multiphase, low-vapour-pressure liquid, and oilfield water services are contained in Clause 13.3.3.

 © 2015 CSA Group

5.3.3 Cast iron components

5.3.3.7

This is a commentary on Clause 5.3.3.7.

Item a) acknowledges that grey cast iron exhibits poor fracture behaviour and that ductile iron has significantly improved toughness properties. Item d) relates to the inherent difficulty of welding cast iron materials and the risk of cracking associated with welding. Items e) and f) are provided for safety reasons. The pressure limitation for gas systems is derived from ASME piping codes. The operating pressure limitation for oil pipeline systems is related to the risk of shock loading (i.e., hammer) associated with liquid service.

5.3.5 Stainless steels

This is a commentary on Clause 5.3.5.

ASME B16.19M specifies dimensions for welded and seamless stainless steel pipe. ASTM A268/A268M provides the material specifications for a range of ferritic and martensitic (e.g., TP410 SS) seamless and welded stainless steel tubing products. ASTM A269 provides the material specifications for a range of austenitic (e.g., TP316 SS) seamless and welded stainless steel tubing products.

5.6 Reuse of materials

5.6.1

This is a commentary on Clause 5.6.1.

“Reuse” means to physically remove part of the piping and reinstall it in the same pipeline system or install it in a different pipeline system.

5.6.3

This is a commentary on Clause 5.6.3.

Although it is not stated, it would be prudent additionally to inspect each piece to determine its suitability for the intended service, as is required in Clause 5.6.2.

5.6.4

This is a commentary on Clause 5.6.4.

The piping in which reused steel pipe of unknown origin is to be installed has to be a Category I application. If the inspection specified in Clause 5.6.4 confirms that the pipe is continuous welded or equivalent (lap welded or furnace butt welded), then additional restrictions on design pressure (see Clause 4.3.5.4) and maximum test pressure (see Table 8.1) would apply.

5.7 Records of materials

This is a commentary on Clause 5.7.

The format and level of detail associated with the material records specified in Clause 5.7 is not defined and is therefore at the discretion of the company. Although detailed documentation, such as mill test reports, often provide useful historical data for future reference (e.g., for engineering assessments pertaining to failure investigations or development of in-service welding procedures), it is not mandatory that such detailed documentation be retained as part of the permanent record. It is the

 © 2015 CSA Group

intent that basic material data, such as material standards, specifications, grades, and dimensions, at a minimum, be included in the permanent records (e.g., CSA Z245.1 Category II, Grade 359, 168.3 mm OD, 6.4 mm WT line pipe, externally coated with CSA Z245.21 System A2 extruded polyethylene).

6 Installation

6.1 General

6.1.3

S This is a commentary on Clause 6.1.3.

It is realized that, for some types and sizes of pipe, the applicable pipe specification or standard permits the shipment of pipe that has a small portion of its wall thickness more than 10% below nominal wall thickness, and that it is permissible for the nominal wall thickness to be the same as the design wall thickness determined by Clause 4.3.5.1. Clause 6.1.3 is intended to provide a simple requirement for use in the assessment of any pipe damage that might have occurred after shipment from the pipe mill, rather than to override the pipe manufacturing tolerances. The requirement is based on the design wall thickness in order to not penalize any pipe that was ordered to a nominal wall thickness thicker than the design wall thickness.

In the field, the design wall thickness might not be known and it is not apparent by inspection of the pipe. The application of this 90% criterion to the wall thickness that is marked on the pipe is acceptable and normally conservative, given that the nominal wall thickness of the pipe is required to be equal to or greater than the design wall thickness.

6.1.5

S This is a commentary on Clause 6.1.5.

Clause 6.1.5 addresses the lack of sufficient direction within Clause 6 to capture and retain information required to operate the piping. It avoids having to insert a specific records requirement within each clause that addresses a key construction activity that prudently would necessitate records retention. It directs the reader to a list of records determined to be essential records required for future operation of the piping.

6.2 Activities on pipeline rights-of-way

6.2.2 Pipe and components handling

S This is a commentary on Clause 6.2.2.

Experience has shown that pipeline ruptures can occur during hydrostatic testing or subsequently in service because of damage that occurred during the installation process but was not detected and repaired.

6.2.3 Bends and elbows in steel piping

S This is a commentary on Clause 6.2.3.

In Item a), the term “buckling” is intended to imply a severe condition caused by mechanical instability during bending, rather than a surface wave or wrinkle that can occur during hot or cold bending

operations. Studies in Australia have shown that the presence of moderate buckles is unlikely to induce any local yielding that could damage the coating or lead to failure of the pipe through bursting.

In Item b), it is intended that any longitudinal pipe welds be located at or near the neutral axis of the bend; however, this will in some cases not be practicable, given that it is industry practice for double-jointed pipe to have the longitudinal weld on one side of the jointer weld intentionally offset from the longitudinal weld on the other side of the jointer weld.

The reference in Item c) is more pertinent to the designer than the installer, and hot bends are now usually prefabricated in a bending shop remote from the installation. In such cases, the effects of the time-temperature relationship are taken into account in the production of the bend.

6.2.7 Backfilling

6.2.7.3

S This is a commentary on Clause 6.2.7.3.

Specific limits on distortion caused by backfilling are not stated; it is the company's responsibility to establish the limits that are appropriate for the particular pipeline system, based in part on whether there is potential in the future for the passage of cleaning devices or internal inspection devices.

6.2.10.3 Bored crossings

S This is a commentary on Clause 6.2.10.3.

A general rule for bored crossings is to drill a borehole to 1.5 times the outside diameter of the pipe, including allowance for coatings and insulation. This guideline may be adjusted for pipe diameters greater than 760 mm; however, large-diameter boreholes should still be at least 50 mm greater than the pipe diameter.

In some cases, bored holes cannot be successfully completed and must be abandoned. Abandonment options include using grout, expanding foam, or drilling mud with additives to set up in the annular space.

6.2.11 Horizontal directional drilling (HDD)

S This is a commentary on Clause 6.2.11.

Certain field activities can contribute to the successful completion of HDD, including practices to avoid or minimize the impact of an unplanned incident in the event of a failed HDD effort.

Site planning and layout, including consideration for access of pipe trucks and rigs and set-up area on the drill bit entry side, and for the pipeline drag section on the drill bit exit side, can increase the safety of the workers. Allocating insufficient space for the straightline right-of-way for the drag section can require a bend in the drag section or necessitate a stop during the pullback in order to weld the drag section together.

Significant amounts of water can be required for the drilling fluid, whether as replacement fluid in the event of fluid loss in the formations or for hydrotesting. Sourcing and delivering the appropriate water volumes to the HDD site is critical. Inadvertent loss of drilling fluids to the surrounding soil or a nearby body of water can create a serious environmental hazard. A plan that incorporates the measurement of circulating drill mud volumes, accompanied by visual inspection of the drill path and water bodies, will serve to recognize a loss of fluid and mitigate the associated risk of environmental contamination.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Drill rigs are sized according to their available pull force and the rotary torque that can be applied to the drill stem and pipe string. The assessment of rig capabilities should take into account the possibility that formations or other subsurface materials can be encountered and can cause difficulties during the HDD project.

Post-installation inspection and testing of the pipe is required because one of the most significant threats to the pipeline integrity is mechanical damage to the pipe and/or coating incurred during installation.

6.3 Pipe and component surface requirements applicable to steel piping

6.3.2 Field repair of gouges and grooves in pipe

This is a commentary on Clause 6.3.2.

Gouges and grooves are imperfections created by mechanical damage, involving metal loss and a layer of cold-worked microstructure beneath the imperfection. Gouges and grooves are considered defects because it is common for them to be associated with cracks, which can grow and cause a leak or rupture during subsequent pressurization.

6.3.3 Dents in pipe

6.3.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 6.3.3.1.

Although not specifically stated, the industry considers a dent to be a depression caused by mechanical damage that produces a visible disturbance in the curvature of the pipe wall without reducing the wall thickness (see the definition in CSA Z245.1).

6.3.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 6.3.3.2.

The term “plain dent” is intended to signify a dent that does not contain a stress concentrator, such as a gouge or groove.

6.3.3.3

This is a commentary on Clause 6.3.3.3.

Dents with stress concentrators are of greater concern than plain dents because the former can generate cracks that can propagate through the pipe wall if the dent gets popped out during subsequent pressurization.

6.4 Electrical test leads on pipeline systems

This is a commentary on Clause 6.4.

In the 2011 edition of the Standard, Clause 6.4 was changed to add a reference to Clause 15.8 for the installation of test leads on aluminum pipelines.

 © 2015 CSA Group

6.5 Inspection

6.5.1

This is a commentary on Clause 6.5.1.

There is potential for damage to occur at any time from the receipt of the materials to the completion of installation.

6.5.2

This is a commentary on Clause 6.5.2.

A definition of competent is provided in Clause 2.2. Companies are required to assure inspectors are competent and appropriately inspect installations while assuring compliance with code and regulatory requirements, company specific or industry best practice construction procedures and specifications.

Inspection may be defined as the surveillance and assessment of acceptability of the quality outcomes and observed compliance of activities to code requirements, an operating company's technical specifications and related procedures.

The appropriate rigor and records of inspection of construction of a pipeline by competent persons should be a primary element of an operating company's over-arching quality management program. Typical inspection activities include

- construction activity inspection;
- welding inspection;
- environmental inspection; and
- safety inspection.

6.5.3

This is a commentary on Clause 6.5.3.

The rationale for requiring inspection immediately prior to the application of any field-applied coating is that it represents the last chance to get an unobstructed visual inspection for signs of damage. In addition, it permits inspection for any damage that might be caused by the cleaning or coating equipment, which is required by Clause 6.5.6. Inspection during lowering-in and backfilling operations is required in order to confirm that the piping fits the contour of the ditch and to confirm that the piping is not being damaged due to handling or contact with rocks or other debris.

6.5.4

This is a commentary on Clause 6.5.4.

The required inspection would normally be performed by visual methods, possibly complemented by nondestructive inspection using one of the methods listed in Clause 6.5.12.

6.5.9

This is a commentary on Clause 6.5.9.

Clause 6.5.9 was revised to add clarity pertaining to the types of pipeline liner materials requiring inspection and the disposition of lining defects that are found.

 © 2015 CSA Group

6.6 Precautions to avoid uncontrolled fires

This is a commentary on Clause 6.6.

Clause 6.6 was rewritten to focus on the prevention and control of uncontrolled fires, which is a risk during various phases of installation under certain climatic and environmental conditions. References in Clause 6.6 to risk of explosion and fire that can result while working on piping containing combustible materials or gas-air mixtures were removed since risk of explosion due to the nature of the contents of the pipeline is more applicable to an in-service situation and therefore appropriate to Clause 10.

7 Joining

7.1 General

7.1.9

This is a commentary on Clause 7.1.9.

This clause addresses the characterization of the weldability of steel pipe material of unknown origin that are intended to be reused in a pipeline system, as permitted by Clause 5.6.4 b). In particular, weld heat-affected zone hardness increases with increasing carbon equivalent and HAZ hardness is controlled through the use of appropriate preheat and possibly post-weld thermal controls. Knowing the pipe C.E. value helps establish the appropriate level of preheat (and possible post-weld thermal controls) to avoid the risk of cracking.

7.2 Arc and gas welding — General

7.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.2.1.

Clauses 7.2 to 7.15 cover two joining methods (arc welding and gas welding), two basic types of welds (butt welds and fillet welds), and six welding processes (shielded metal arc welding, flux cored arc welding, submerged arc welding, gas tungsten arc welding, gas metal arc welding, and oxy-fuel welding) and include the full range of positions and welding directions. It is the intent that the fillet weld type include piping branch connections, even though, technically, piping branch connections involve a full-penetration groove weld covered with a fillet weld.

7.2.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.2.2.

Any welding done during the manufacture of pipes, components, and equipment is covered by the standard or specification to which such items were manufactured. The requirements in Clause 7 are intended to be applied to welds that are made subsequent to such manufacturing processes.

7.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.2.3.

Clause 7.2.3 reflects the underlying principle of Clause 7, whereby welding is to be done by suitably qualified welders who are to weld in accordance with suitable welding procedure specifications.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.2.5

This is a commentary on Clause 7.2.5.

The intent of Clause 7.2.5 is to recognize that the fabrication shops that weld piping materials in a location remote from the construction site are often more likely to have in place qualified ASME-type welding procedures and to employ welders qualified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX. It also recognizes that much of the pre-construction piping fabrication welding involves ASME or ASTM piping materials. There is no technical rationale for precluding the use of ASME Section IX-qualified welding procedures and welders, provided the completed welds meet the applicable acceptability requirements of ASME B31.3, plus the mandatory inspection frequency requirements of Clause 7.10.3.

Table 7.1 Equivalent ASME P-1 group numbers for welding procedures for piping materials

This is a commentary on Table 7.1.

For materials that are to be welded in accordance with the requirements of Clause 7.2.5, Table 7.1 assigns an equivalent P-1 group number to materials (such as CSA materials) that were manufactured in accordance with a standard or specification that is not specifically assigned a P-number in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX. The assigned group numbers in Table 7.1 are the same group numbers as those listed in ASME Section IX, Table QW/QB-422, for the equivalent API 5L grades of steel. For example, ASME Section IX classifies API 5L Grade X60 (equivalent to CSA Grade 414) as P-1 Group 2 material.

The first two columns of Table 7.1 are intended to be the input and the value in the third column is intended to be the output. Accordingly, the following examples illustrate the intent:

- Grade 172, 207, 241, 290, 317, or 359 material is P-1 Group 1, regardless of its carbon equivalent value.
- Grade 386, 414, or 448 material is P-1 Group 2 if its carbon equivalent value is 0.45% or less, and P-1 Group 3 if its carbon equivalent value is greater than 0.45% but not greater than 0.50%.
- Grade 483 material is P-1 Group 3, provided that its carbon equivalent value is not greater than 0.50%.
- Grade 550 material is P-1 Group 4, provided that its carbon equivalent value is not greater than 0.50%.
- Material for a grade higher than Grade 359, with a carbon equivalent value greater than 0.50%, is not covered by this table; it should be considered as a special material.

7.2.7

This is a commentary on Clause 7.2.7.

High carbon equivalent values, particularly with higher-strength materials, can pose risks associated with delayed hydrogen cracking of steel weldments. Since no carbon equivalent restrictions are present in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, the carbon equivalent should be restricted in the Standard. Accordingly, if the company is required to follow such ASME requirements (see Clause 7.2.4) or if the company chooses to follow such ASME requirements (see Clause 7.2.5), then the requirements of Clause 7.2.7 additionally apply. These additional requirements apply only to materials having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 386 MPa (56 000 psi) because lower yield strength materials have historically demonstrated good weldability when ASME Section IX welding procedures are used. In addition, the carbon equivalent value might not be readily known for materials having a specified minimum yield strength of 386 MPa or less.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.3 Arc and gas welding — Joint configurations

7.3.1 Butt welds

This is a commentary on Clause 7.3.1.

Butt welds involve welding the prepared ends of pipes and/or components using a groove joint.

7.3.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.3.1.1.

End preparations other than those shown in Figure 7.1 may be used.

7.3.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.3.1.2.

The term “unequal thickness” refers to the nominal thickness of the two items at the joint, as designated by the symbols T_1 and T_2 in Figure 7.2.

7.3.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.3.1.3.

A partial-penetration butt weld is an intended condition, as opposed to incomplete penetration of the root bead (see Clause 7.11.3), which is an imperfection in a weld that is intended to be a full-penetration weld.

7.3.2 Fillet welds

This is a commentary on Clause 7.3.2.

The required shape for fillet welds is stated in a general sense (slightly concave to slightly convex, including all profiles between these two limits) rather than in a specific sense, in recognition that measurement of such dimensions is unnecessary and difficult to make.

Although the standard practice is to select welding consumables for fillet and branch welds which have a specified tensile strength that meets or exceeds the lowest strength base material being joined, there are situations where lower strength consumables may be used for the root pass of the fillet and branch welds without compromising the integrity of the completed joint strength.

Figure 7.1 Examples of end preparations and combinations of end preparations

This is a commentary on Figure 7.1.

Recommended end preparations and combinations of end preparations are shown in Figure 7.1; however, other suitable types are permitted by Clause 7.3.1.1.

Figure 7.2 Buttwelding details between items having unequal thickness

This is a commentary on Figure 7.2.

All of the sketches depict the joining of items where the thicknesses are unequal because the two items have unequal specified minimum yield strengths (and hence unequal design thicknesses); however, Note 1) f) covers the specific unequal thickness case for which the specified minimum yield strengths are equal (and hence the design thicknesses are equal). For this latter case, the transition can be made

 © 2015 CSA Group

with any taper between 0° and 30° that is appropriate, given that the taper would always be the portion outside the design thickness.

Note 1) c) recognizes that a limited amount of material within the joint design area can be thinner than the design thickness.

It should be noted that t_w ("the effective throat") is the thickness to be used for the determination of postweld heat-treatment and that the use of a cut or ground taper will limit the magnitude of t_w. Accordingly, t_w should be considered to be the same as what is termed "the component nominal wall thickness at the bevel" in Clause 7.6.1 and "the effective throat of the items to be welded" in Clause 7.9.16.1.

Notes 5) a) and b) ensure the unit strength of both items and the weld metal are matched across the joint where the specified minimum yield strength of the items to be joined are unequal.

Note 5) c) limits the thickness ratio of the two items in order to improve the geometry of the transition. It should be noted that the design thicknesses t_1 and t_2 can be any value that meets the equation in Clause 4.3.5.1 for the design conditions, and thus can be greater than the minimum value corresponding to the maximum applicable values of the factors L, J, and T.

Note 6) mandates that the sum of the nominal internal and external offsets of the weld bevels not exceed 50% of the nominal thickness of the higher yield strength item. The offset can be all internal, all external, or a combination of internal and external.

Figure 7.3 Fillet weld details

S This is a commentary on Figure 7.3.

The 1.6 mm minimum gap specified for the socket weld is consistent with the socket weld requirements in ASME B31.3. The use of a gap is helpful in reducing residual stresses from welding, and thereby lowers the risk of cracking at the toe of the fillet weld.

7.5 Arc and gas welding — Materials

7.5.2 Filler metals and fluxes

7.5.2.1

S This is a commentary on Clause 7.5.2.1.

With the exception of welding rods for oxyfuel gas welding (which must meet the chemical and mechanical requirements of AWS 5.2), all of the welding consumables covered in this Standard are to meet the chemical and mechanical requirements of CSA W48.

7.5.2.2

S This is a commentary on Clause 7.5.2.2.

The use of low-hydrogen welding practices is

- to be considered for seal welding (see Clause 7.9.13.3);
- required for fillet welds on pipes or components having a specified minimum yield strength higher than 317 MPa (see Clause 7.9.14);

 © 2015 CSA Group

- recommended for the repair welding of circumferential butt welds and fillet welds that contain cracks (see Clause 7.12.5);
- to be considered for welding on in-service pipeline systems (see Clause 7.17.1.3); and
- required for fillet welding, branch connection welding on liquid-filled or flowing-gas piping, and direct deposition welding on flowing-gas piping (see Clause 7.17.2.3).

7.5.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.5.2.4.

Basic covered electrodes are otherwise known as low-hydrogen SMAW electrodes (e.g., E4918). The storage specified in Clause 7.5.2.4 is intended to preclude moisture pickup by the electrodes. Typically, the redrying specified in Clause 7.5.2.4 involves baking such electrodes in an oven at 260 to 425 °C for 1 to 2 h.

7.6 Arc and gas welding — Qualification of welding procedure specifications

7.6.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.1.

The reference to Clause 7.2.5 recognizes that, for some specific welds, the company can choose to use the requirements of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, to establish and qualify the welding procedure specification. The term "prior to the start of production welding" has no specific time limit; it is only necessary that the welding procedure specification to be used for production welding be established and qualified sometime prior to the start of production welding. The organization establishing the welding procedure specification chooses the values to specify as limits for the various welding parameters that are applicable; however, the qualified welding procedure specification becomes limited by the values that were used in the procedure qualification test (or tests) that qualified the procedure. A qualified welding procedure specification will in some cases need to be supported by more than one successful qualification test in order to qualify it for use over the entire range of values specified.

7.6.2 Company approval

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.2.

Welding procedure specifications need not be established and qualified by the company itself; however, the company is required to approve each qualified welding procedure specification that will be used for production welding. The "company" in this case could be any of the entities listed in the Clause 2.2 definitions of the Standard. It could, for example, be the owner company or partnership, the engineering and/or construction firm responsible for the pipeline construction, or a consultant designated as responsible for the welding procedure review and approval task.

7.6.3 Records

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.3.

Prior to the first edition of the Standard, sample forms to be used to document the qualified welding procedure specification and the qualification tests were included in the appendices to CAN/CSA-Z183 and CAN/CSA-Z184. The forms were not carried over into the first edition of the Standard because they were considered, in some cases, to be incomplete and somewhat misleading. The requirement to maintain records remains; however, the company can choose the format for the records.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.6.4 Welding procedure specifications

7.6.4.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.1.

Only the welding variables that are applicable to the welding process and welding method to be used need be documented. Most of, but not necessarily all, such variables are limited by the essential changes given in Table 7.3. Changes to welding variables that are not listed in Table 7.3 can result in the revision of the qualified welding procedure specification; however, there is no need for such revised specifications to be subjected to new qualification testing.

7.6.4.2 Welding process and method

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.2.

There are six possible welding processes, as listed in Clause 7.2.1. Not all welding methods are applicable to all welding processes.

7.6.4.3 Joint geometry

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.3.

It is common practice, but not mandatory, for the bevel angle tolerances to be specified. Such tolerances can vary depending on the type of bevel (machine-cut or torch-cut).

The root gap specified in Item d) can be expressed as an approximate value or a specific value with applicable tolerances.

It is common practice, but not mandatory, for the root face tolerances to be specified.

7.6.4.4 Base materials

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.4.

In Item b), the grade of the base material is to be specified in order to establish the basis for the tensile strength requirements in Clause 7.7.3.3 and the basis for the welding consumables to be used.

In Item c), the specified minimum yield strength is to be stated in order to establish whether carbon equivalent limits are to apply.

Although it is a good practice to document the carbon equivalent for all base materials used in the procedure qualification, the maximum carbon equivalent used in the procedure qualification need only be documented if the base material has a specified minimum yield strength higher than 386 MPa, because

- the carbon equivalent values for lower-strength materials might not be readily available, especially for components (i.e., the mill test report for a test material might not include all the elements required to calculate the C.E. value in accordance with Clause 7.6.4.4);
- materials with a yield strength of 386 MPa or less have historically demonstrated good weldability; and
- Table 7.3 only specifies a limit on carbon equivalent for pipe and components that have a specified minimum yield strength higher than 386 MPa.

The carbon equivalent formula in Item d) was adopted because of its ability to predict cold cracking susceptibility and hardenability over a suitably wide range of carbon contents (the formula was

 © 2015 CSA Group

developed using low-alloy steels with carbon contents that varied from 0.01 to 0.26%). It correctly ascribes greater importance to alloying elements that increase hardenability as the carbon content increases.

The limitations imposed by the essential changes given in Table 7.3 can dictate that more than one thickness be tested in order to qualify the welding procedure specification over the entire range of wall thicknesses specified.

The limitations imposed by the essential changes given in Table 7.3 can dictate that more than one outside diameter needs to be tested in order to qualify the welding procedure specification over the entire range of outside diameters specified.

Although not specifically listed, the specified minimum tensile strength of the base materials should be documented (on the procedure qualification record, as a minimum) because it is essential in determining if the tensile test result obtained in the qualification test is acceptable. (See Clauses 7.7.3.3 and 7.7.8.)

7.6.4.5 Filler metals and fluxes

S This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.5.

The filler metal classification will typically either be in accordance with CSA W48 (e.g., E4310), AWS (e.g., A5.1 E6010), and/or the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section II (e.g., SFA 5.1 E6010). As listed in Table 7.3, a change in the filler metal classification is an essential change. Similarly, a change in the filler metal size (diameter) is an essential change, as specified in Table 7.3. Table 7.3 also identifies a change in flux classification as an essential change.

7.6.4.6 Position and direction of welding

S This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.6.

As defined in Table 7.3, certain circumstances for both the position and direction of welding can result in essential changes to the welding procedure specification.

7.6.4.7 Preheating and interpass temperatures and controlled cooling

S This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.7.

Table 7.3 lists some essential change conditions that are to be taken into account for both preheat and interpass temperatures listed in the welding procedure specification. Methods of heating and controlling cooling are not essential changes; however, this is useful information to provide on the welding procedure specification for guidance to ensure consistency in welding practices. Maximum cooling rate information is not commonly addressed in welding procedure specifications for new construction; however, Clause 7.17.1.3 requires documentation and limitations on cooling rates for welding on in-service pipeline systems.

Specific methodology for determining preheat and interpass temperature is not well defined. Preheat temperature is generally considered the uniform temperature of the piping material immediately adjacent to the joint preparation (e.g., bevel) just prior to welding. Interpass temperature is generally considered to be the temperature of the base materials immediately adjacent to the joint preparation shortly after the weld pass has been deposited.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.6.4.8 Postweld heat treatment

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.8.

The effective throat thickness at the weld joint (see Figure 7.2) affects whether postweld heat treatment is required. Clause 7.9.16.1 mandates when postweld heat treatment (i.e., stress relieving) is required, based on effective throat of the items to be welded. The specific heat treatment parameters to be used are to be set by the company.

7.6.4.9 Shielding gas

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.9.

The shielding gas composition and flow rate are essential changes in Table 7.3; therefore, these shielding gas characteristics should be noted (where applicable) in the welding procedure specification. The acceptable ranges of composition and flow rate are to be based on the gas characteristics used in the procedure qualification test(s) and the limitations imposed by Table 7.3.

7.6.4.10 Electrical characteristics and travel speed

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.4.10.

In each of Items b), c), d), e), and h), a range is to be specified because variations are inevitable for such items. If the specified range for any of these variables is wider than the range permitted by the essential changes given in Table 7.3, more than one qualification test will be needed in order to qualify the entire range specified.

7.6.5 Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications

This is a commentary on Clause 7.6.5.

As specified in Clause 7.6.1, the governing essential change dimensions for components are the nominal wall thickness at the bevel (see Figure 7.2, “effective throat”) and the outside diameter of the matching pipe.

Table 7.3 Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications

This is a commentary on Table 7.3.

There are no mandatory requirements for weld notch toughness specified in the Standard. Where the company (e.g., owner, operator, engineering firm, etc.) deems it appropriate to have weld notch toughness requirements, it is appropriate for the company to specify if and/or which special restrictions should be imposed with respect to the welding procedure essential changes.

In order to provide less restrictive requirements on lower strength, small diameter welding procedures a new column was created with unique essential changes.

- **Joint geometry:**
  - A change in the joint type includes, for example, a change from fillet to butt, or vice versa. A branch connection, being a combination groove and fillet weld, would also constitute an essential change from a fillet weld or a butt weld.
  - The percentage changes in bevel angle apply to the specified bevel angle rather than to the limits of the specified bevel angle, which are governed by the applicable tolerances. For example, if a specified bevel angle of 30° was used to qualify the welding procedure specification, then requalification is required if the specified bevel angle is changed to a value outside the range of

 © 2015 CSA Group

28.5 to 36° for manual or semi-automatic welding or outside the range of 28.5 to 33° for mechanized or automatic welding, irrespective of the tolerances specified for the bevel angle.
- Although not specifically stated, the percentage changes in root gap are intended to apply to the specified root gap rather than to the limits of the specified root gap. For example, if a specified root gap of 1.6 mm was used to qualify the welding procedure specification, then requalification would be required if the specified root gap were changed to a value outside the range of 0.8 to 2.4 mm for manual or semi-automatic welding or outside the range of 1.3 to 1.9 mm for mechanized or automatic welding, irrespective of the tolerances specified for the root gap.
- Although not specifically stated, the percentage changes in root face are intended to apply to the specified root face. For example, if a specified root face of 1.6 mm (usually associated with a tolerance of ± 0.8 mm) was used to qualify the welding procedure specification, then requalification would be required if the specified root face were changed to a value outside the range of 0.8 to 2.4 mm for manual or semi-automatic welding, or outside the range of 1.3 to 1.9 mm for mechanized or automatic welding, irrespective of the tolerances specified for the root face.

- **Carbon equivalent:**
  The limiting increase in carbon equivalent applies to the maximum carbon equivalent (C.E.) used to qualify the welding procedure specification. It is independent of the grade of the pipe or component, except that the limit does not apply if the base material has a specified minimum yield strength of 386 MPa or less, which for most piping items is equivalent to being a grade higher than Grade 386. It is intended to minimize the risk of delayed hydrogen cracking ("cold cracking") from welding high-strength steels with C.E. values higher than those used during the procedure qualification. This is not meant to imply that a significant increase in C.E. values for piping materials of Grade 386 or less will not have a detrimental effect on susceptibility to cracking. It is good practice to always have an awareness of the C.E. values of all piping materials being welded. An increase in carbon equivalent of 0.05 percentage points would result in an increase of 23 °C in the critical preheat temperature determined by the Stout slot-weld test, which was the test used in the derivation of the carbon equivalent formula.
- **Thickness:**
  - The limiting changes are based on t, which is the thickness that was used to qualify the welding procedure specification. More than one thickness will in some cases need to be tested in order to qualify the entire thickness range specified in the welding procedure specification.
  - For oxy-fuel welds, the heat input is critical for a particular thickness and might not be achievable for any greater thickness; accordingly, requalification is required if the thickness is
  - increased to a value exceeding 1.0 t;
    decreased to a value less than 4.0 mm, for $t > 10.0$ mm; or
    decreased to a value less than 1.5 mm, for 1.5 mm ≤ t ≤ 10.0 mm.
  - For short-circuiting gas metal arc welds, requalification is required if the thickness is
  - increased to a value exceeding 1.1 t;
    decreased to a value less than 0.5 t, for $t < 15.0$ mm; or
    decreased to a value less than 4.0 mm, for $t \geq 15.0$ mm.
  - For other types of welds, requalification is required if the thickness is
  - increased to a value exceeding 1.25 t, for $t > 10.0$ mm;
    increased to a value exceeding 1.5 t, for $t \leq 10.0$ mm;
    decreased to a value less than 4.0 mm, for $t > 10.0$ mm; or
    decreased to a value less than 1.5 mm, for 1.5 mm ≤ t ≤ 10.0 mm.
- **Outside Diameter:**
  - The limiting changes are based on D, which is the outside diameter that was used to qualify the welding procedure specification. More than one outside diameter will in some cases need to be

tested in order to qualify the entire outside diameter range specified in the welding procedure specification. For welds involving components, the specified value *D* is to be the outside diameter of the equivalent pipe size (see Clause 7.6.1). For example, for the purposes of Table 7.3, the outside diameter value for a branch connection using an NPS 4 integral reinforced fitting is to be taken as 114.3 mm.

– Requalification is required if the outside diameter that was used to qualify the welding procedure is

decreased to a value smaller than 0.5 *D*;
increased to a value of 60.3 mm or larger, for $D < 60.3$ mm; or
increased to a value larger than 323.9 mm, for $60.3 \text{ mm} \leq D \leq 323.9$ mm.

- **Size of filler metal:**
  – For manual or semi-automatic welds produced by means other than shielded metal arc welding, requalification is required if the filler metal size is changed to a size that is different from the size that was used to qualify the welding procedure specification.
  – For manual or semi-automatic welds produced by shielded metal arc welding, requalification is required if the filler metal size is changed to a size that is more than one nominal diameter size smaller or larger than the size that was used to qualify the welding procedure specification.
  – For welds produced by mechanized or automatic welding, requalification is required if the filler metal size is changed to a size that is different from the size that was used to qualify the welding procedure specification.
- **Welding position and direction:**
  – For butt weld and fillet weld configurations, “horizontal welding” involves the pipe being in the vertical position and includes inclinations up to 45° from the vertical position; “vertical welding” involves the pipe being in the horizontal position and includes inclinations up to 45° from the horizontal position. For branch connection weld configurations, “horizontal welding” would only include branches attached to the top or bottom of a horizontal pipe. All other branch connection configurations would be classified as “vertical welding”. A change from horizontal welding to vertical welding is an essential change; however, a change from vertical welding to horizontal welding is not an essential change. This is because welding in the vertical orientation is generally more difficult than welding a joint in the horizontal orientation.
  – A change from roll welding to fixed position welding is an essential change; however, a change from fixed position welding to roll welding is not an essential change. This is because position welding, with the weld oriented in the vertical direction, is more difficult than roll welding (i.e., in the flat position).
  – For vertical welding, a change from vertical up welding to vertical down welding, or vice versa, is an essential change. A change in direction typically requires a change in welding parameters and welder technique; therefore, welding parameters employed for a vertical up weld will often not be successful in the vertical down direction, and vice versa.
- **Preheating temperature:**
  Preheating is one of the primary means to control cooling rates, control weld hardness, and avoid delayed hydrogen cracking of weldments. There is more concern about the use of an insufficient preheating temperature than there is about the use of an excessive preheating temperature; accordingly, excessive preheating temperature is only addressed if T_{max}, the maximum preheating temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test, is over 200 °C. It is good practice to check the preheating temperature around the entire circumference and, where possible, through the thickness, prior to welding, to ensure uniform heat. Due to the importance of preheat temperature in the prevention of cracking, the decrease in qualified preheat temperature has been reduced to 10 °C.

 © 2015 CSA Group

- **Interpass temperature:**
  There is more concern about the use of an insufficient interpass temperature than there is for the use of an excessive interpass temperature; accordingly, excessive interpass temperature is only addressed if T_{max}, the maximum interpass temperature recorded during the procedure qualification test, is over 200 °C. There are no strict guidelines or consensus on the determination of interpass temperature, although typically it involves measuring the base metal temperature immediately adjacent to the weld joint within a short period of time after the weld bead has been deposited. This process would be repeated after each weld pass. Temperature measurement is typically accomplished using either temperature-indicating crayons or thermocouple-type contact thermometers. To better control the minimum temperature during welding, the reduction in minimum interpass temperature has been limited to 10 °C.
- **Postweld heat treatment temperature:**
  – For all welds, requalification is required if the heat treatment temperature is changed to a value beyond that permitted by Paragraph QW-407 of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX. Paragraph QW-407 covers variables of postweld heat treatment other than temperature; however, the Standard does not consider such other variables to be essential changes.
- **Voltage (*V*), amperage (*I*), travel speed (*S*), and wire feed speed (*F*) for arc welding:**
  – For all arc welding, requalification is required if the voltage, amperage, travel speed, or wire feed speed, taken individually, is changed to a value that is
    more than 20% higher than the applicable maximum value used in the procedure qualification test(s); or
    more than 20% lower than the applicable minimum value used in the procedure qualification test(s).
  – Requalification is required if the heat input is changed to a value that is
    more than 20% higher than the maximum nominal heat input used in the procedure qualification test(s); or
    more than 20% lower than the minimum nominal heat input used in the procedure qualification test(s).
- **Welding technique:**
  In recognition of the advances in mechanized welding technology, essential changes for multi-torch and tendem wire feed applications have been included in the Standard. It is understood that these variables have a significant effect on the mechanical properties of the weld and HAZ and, as a result, require additional controls.

7.7 Arc and gas welding — Testing for qualification of welding procedure specifications and qualification of welders

7.7.1 Welding of test joints

S This is a commentary on Clause 7.7.1.

Clause 7.7.1 is intended to address the welding of test joints for both qualification of welding procedure specifications and qualification of welders. Although a single test can suffice, more than one test joint is required if

- any ranges specified in the welding procedure specification (in relation to the essential changes given in Table 7.3) or the required ranges for the qualification of welders are too large to be qualified by a single test;
- the pipe size is smaller than 60.3 mm and nick-break and root-bend tests are used in the qualification testing; or

 © 2015 CSA Group

- the component size is smaller than NPS 2 and nick-break and root-bend tests are used in the qualification testing.

7.7.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.7.1.2.

The requirement that, except as allowed by Clause 7.7.1.3, test joints are to be full-circumference welds applies to both qualification of welding procedures and qualification of welders, whether the weld configuration is a butt weld, fillet weld, or branch connection weld.

7.7.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.7.1.3.

Half-circumference test joints are not permitted for qualification of welders for branch connection or fillet welds, or for qualification of welding procedures of any size or configuration.

7.7.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.7.1.4.

Clause 7.7.1.4 addresses the special circumstance in which it is decided to develop a welding procedure specification exclusively for repair welding (i.e., the repair procedure involves different welding parameters than the production welding procedures). To accommodate the testing of welding procedure specification qualification by making weld repairs to a full-circumference weld and cutting the required test specimens from these repaired locations, the length(s) of the weld repair area(s) must be of sufficient size to permit the acquisition of all the required test specimens.

7.7.2 Testing of butt welds — General; Figure 7.6 Location of test specimens for butt welds

This is a commentary on Clause 7.7.2; Figure 7.6.

The key point of the third specific note is that it is important to obtain representative test specimens from both the upper and lower halves of these larger pipe welds to evaluate the properties resulting from different welding positions.

7.7.5 Testing of butt welds — Root-bend and face-bend tests

7.7.5.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.7.5.4.

It becomes increasingly difficult to pass the guided-bend test as the strength of the materials tested increases, given that the dimensions of the test jig are not changed to reflect the strength changes. To provide some relief, alternative acceptance criteria are provided for materials that fail the regular guided-bend test requirements and have a specified minimum yield strength higher than 359 MPa.

7.7.7 Testing of fillet welds and branch connection welds — Root-break test

This is a commentary on Clause 7.7.7.

A satisfactory root-break test will demonstrate that there is adequate root ductility, complete penetration and fusion, and absence of a defined amount of gas pockets and slag inclusions.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.7.8 Testing of fillet welds and branch connection welds — Macrosection test

This is a commentary on Clause 7.7.8.

A satisfactory macrosection test will demonstrate, for the specific plane examined, that there is complete penetration and fusion, absence of cracks, absence of a defined amount of gas pockets and slag inclusions, and absence of excessive concavity or convexity.

The macrosection test offers the following advantages over the root-break test:
- The amount of penetration (and hence the potential for burn-through) is readily apparent.
- The presence of underbead cracking is easier to assess.
- Imperfections are easier to identify.
- Testing of branch connections between items having different thicknesses is easier to do.
- The weld profile (concavity or convexity, and leg lengths) can be accurately determined.

The macrosection test has the following disadvantages in relation to the root-break test:
- For each test specimen, the examination is confined to a single plane, so imperfections can be missed, and the full extent of any imperfections detected is not apparent.
- No indication of the weld ductility is obtained.

7.7.9 Additional testing of partial-penetration butt welds

This is a commentary on Clause 7.7.9.

The term “additional” is used because of the requirement that the welding procedure for the production of partial-penetration butt welds be one that was previously qualified in the same manner as a welding procedure specification for the production of full-penetration butt welds (i.e., a procedure qualification test, including tension tests, nick-break tests, and bend-tests). In addition to the conventional full-penetration procedure qualification test, a second butt weld test joint is to be made in accordance with the intended production welding procedure, with this second test joint being a partial-penetration weld. A degree of incomplete penetration larger than 15% will be detrimental to the weld integrity (i.e., insufficient weld thickness), while weld root penetration beyond the inside of the pipe wall can damage the internal cement lining or non-metallic gasket that is present.

7.8 Arc and gas welding — Qualification of welders

7.8.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.1.

Companies employing welders should be aware of any applicable government regulations pertaining to welder training and certification requirements that can be in effect in the province where the welding is to be done. Before any welders are to be qualified in accordance with the requirements of Clause 7.8, they must comply with any applicable certification requirements specified by government regulations.

7.8.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.1.1.

The purpose of the welder qualification test is to determine the ability of welders to make sound welds using previously qualified welding procedures. Different welder skills and welding practices are required for different weld positions and joint configurations; therefore, the specific weld position and joint configuration used for the welder qualification test joint(s) will dictate which weld position(s) and configuration(s) the welder is qualified to weld.

 © 2015 CSA Group

A test joint consisting of a full-circumference weld is required for the qualification of welders for fillet and branch connection weld configurations; however, as stated in Clause 7.7.1.3, test joints for qualification of welders for butt welds can be done using one of the following:

- a full-circumference butt weld; or
- a half-circumference butt weld for weld diameters greater than 323.9 mm OD, provided that typical flat, vertical, and overhead welds are produced when a fixed position vertical weld procedure specification is used.

7.8.1.5

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.1.5.

Buttwelding requires a higher level of expertise than fillet welding.

When welders qualify for branch connections, they perform a groove and fillet weld combination, and therefore demonstrate more skill than would be required to make a fillet weld in the same outside diameter group, wall thickness group, and position.

7.8.2 Qualification range

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.2.

The restrictions that the parameters (OD, nominal wall thickness, weld type, and pipe position) impose on the qualification ranges are listed separately for simplicity and clarity; however, all such parameters need to be considered collectively in order to determine their net effect on the qualification range.

As an example, a welder who has qualified by buttwelding two 273.1 mm OD × 9.3 mm wall thickness pipes together using an arc welding process, with the pipe in the horizontal position (within 45°), is considered to be qualified to weld any pipe in the outside diameter group 60.3 to 323.9 mm OD (see Clause 7.8.2.1), provided that nominal wall thickness is at least 6.4 mm and at most 9.3 mm (see Clause 7.8.2.3) and the pipe position is horizontal (see Clause 7.8.2.6).

7.8.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.2.1.

The term “any other outside diameter within that group” is not intended to mean that the welder becomes qualified to weld all nominal wall thicknesses for all pipe outside diameters within that group. The extent to which the welder becomes qualified to weld nominal wall thicknesses other than the one that was used for the qualification test is covered separately (see Clauses 7.8.2.3 and 7.8.2.5).

7.8.2.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.2.2.

The term “all branch pipe within that group” is intended to mean “all branch pipe outside diameters within that group”; however, it is not intended to mean that the welder becomes qualified to weld all nominal wall thicknesses for all branch pipe outside diameters within that group. The extent to which the welder becomes qualified to weld nominal wall thicknesses other than the one that was used for the qualification test is covered separately (see Clauses 7.8.2.3 and 7.8.2.5).

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.8.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.2.4.

More skill is required to make a branch connection on the bottom of the run pipe than on the top of the run pipe, and even more skill is required to make a branch connection on the side of the run pipe. Also, more skill is required as the size of the branch pipe approaches the size of the run pipe. The positions for which a welder becomes qualified are dependent on

- the branch-pipe-to-run-pipe ratio (i.e., branch diameter greater or less than 50% of run diameter); and
- the position of the branch pipe in relation to the run pipe in the welder qualification test weld.

7.8.2.5

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.2.5.

This requirement affects only the upper limits for nominal wall thickness given in Clause 7.8.2.3.

7.8.2.6

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.2.6.

A welding procedure specification cannot be qualified until a test weld is made in accordance with that specific procedure and then the test weld is satisfactorily tested. As the same destructive testing requirements are specified for both welding procedure specification qualification and welder qualification (with the exception of the absence of tension testing for welder tests), satisfactory test results qualify the welding procedure specification and additionally qualify the welder who made the test weld used to qualify the welding procedure; however,

- the welder is qualified only for the position(s) permitted in Clause 7.8; and
- the qualification ranges for which the welder is qualified are given in Clauses 7.8.2.1 to 7.8.2.5, rather than as specified in the welding procedure.

7.8.2.8

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.2.8.

Clause 7.8.2.8 recognizes that the heat input for oxy-fuel welding is critical for a particular material thickness and is sometimes not achievable for any greater material thickness. It was considered unnecessary to prescribe a lower limit on material thickness for this type of welding.

7.8.7 Records of qualified welders

This is a commentary on Clause 7.8.7.

The company may choose the format of the records.

7.9 Arc and gas welding — Production welding

This is a commentary on Clause 7.9.

As defined in Clause 3, production welding is the execution of welds that are covered by the Standard and are to be part of a pipeline system.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.9.2 Alignment and root gap

This is a commentary on Clause 7.9.2.

The intent of Clause 7.9.2 is to avoid excessive misalignment of abutting ends and to advise that, where offset is present, every attempt is to be made to distribute the offset evenly around the circumference.

Offsets greater than 1.6 mm can occur if

- the pipes being joined are not of the same nominal wall thickness; or
- the pipes being joined are of the same nominal wall thickness, but permitted dimensional variations of the pipes make a greater offset inevitable, no matter how precise the axial alignment is.

Further limitations on maximum permissible offset at the weld root are found in Figure 7.2.

Staggering the longitudinal seam welds mitigates the risk of propagating fractures and locating the seams in the top half of the pipe mitigates the risk of internal corrosion at the pipe seams.

7.9.4 Use of line-up clamps — Butt welds

This is a commentary on Clause 7.9.4.

The use of line-up clamps is very effective in promoting alignment of the items to be joined and in reducing the risk of cracking at the root of the weld.

7.9.13 Seal welding

7.9.13.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.9.13.1.

In addition to the seal welding requirements in Clauses 7.9.1.3 and 7.9.1.4, Clause 7.9.13.1 recognizes that substances such as thread-cutting oil and thread sealant can act as a source of hydrogen during welding and thereby increase the tendency for cracking to occur. Such foreign substances can also generate a significant amount of gases from the heat of welding, which can result in excessive porosity and/or non-fusion in the weld.

7.9.13.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.9.13.2.

It is intended that the phrase “all threads” refer to all exposed threads beyond the coupling, rather than all threads in the connection. The concern is that if the fillet weld does not consume all of the exposed threads, a severe stress concentration is produced at locations where the weld toe intersects the root of the thread, a location that already represents a reduction in the cross-section of the piping. Another issue with seal welding is that the threads resist the thermal contraction that occurs during welding and the stress produced across the fillet weld can lead to shrinkage cracks.

7.9.13.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.9.13.3.

Seal welds are typically made with one pass and low heat input, meaning these welds are potentially more susceptible to delayed hydrogen cracking than multi-pass welds made with higher heat input. Therefore, low-hydrogen practices are recommended for seal welding in order to reduce hydrogen in the weld and thereby reduce the risk of cracking.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.9.15 Preheating, interpass temperature control, controlled cooling, and stress relieving

This is a commentary on Clause 7.9.15.

The Standard provides little instruction on the need for, or application of, preheating, interpass temperature control, or controlled cooling. However, full consideration should be made of the metallurgical characteristics of the materials to be welded (e.g., C.E. and hardenability) and the welding consumables to be used (e.g., C.E. and hydrogen level), as well as the material thickness (i.e., heat sink effect) and the welding conditions anticipated during construction (i.e., weather conditions, use of shelters, etc.), before the welding procedure specification is developed. It is the company's responsibility to understand the implications of the effects of excessive cooling rates and/or excessively high material temperatures during welding on the integrity of the final weld joint. Based on the application of this fundamental knowledge of the metallurgical characteristics of the materials being used, appropriate decisions can be made about the need for such things as preheat, interpass temperature control, controlled cooling, and stress relieving.

7.10 Arc and gas welding — Inspection and testing of production welds

7.10.1 General

7.10.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.10.1.1.

Varying amounts of inspector training may be considered appropriate, depending on the particular inspection function being performed and the level of quality control deemed necessary by the company for the pipeline system construction. With the exception of the specific qualification requirements in the Standard for radiographers (Clause 7.14.8.1) and ultrasonic inspectors (Clause 7.15.6), the amount of training and qualifications that an inspector should have is left to the discretion of the company and the qualifications of the inspectors are subject to approval by the company.

7.10.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.10.1.4.

Destructive testing of production welds is limited, given that any welds so tested are destroyed by the test. Such testing of production welds is usually confined to situations where the welder competency is being questioned.

7.10.2 Visual inspection

7.10.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.10.2.1.

Clause 7.10.2.1 describes the scope of visual inspection on the external surface of welds and the need for documented visual inspection procedures and inspector qualifications. CSA W178.2 is an example of a possible type of qualification for a visual inspector. However, alternative forms of qualification may also be appropriate and preferred by the company.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.10.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.10.2.4.

Clause 7.10.2.4 clarifies that all visual inspection records are to be kept until the piping is abandoned, to be consistent with radiographic inspection reports (see Clause 7.14.9) and ultrasonic inspection reports (see Clause 7.15.11.5). As noted in Clause 7.10.2.3, the format and level of detail for such visual inspection records is left to the discretion of the company.

7.10.3 Mandatory nondestructive inspection

7.10.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.10.3.1.

The company is expected to have a pre-existing criteria established with respect to the maximum acceptable failure rate for the 15% or more of production welds that are selected for nondestructive inspection. When inspection failure rates approach or exceed this predetermined limit, there will be either a progressively increasing rate of inspection put in place (similar to the "progressive sampling" methodology specified in ASME B31.3) and/or some form of remedial action or change implemented to correct the problem and reduce the rate of welding defects. Remedial action could also involve identifying specific welders or other factors that might be responsible for high reject rates and implementing a higher frequency of inspection on these specific welds.

- Any nondestructive inspection associated with procedure or welder qualification testing (or any other welds that will not remain in the pipeline system) are to be excluded from the daily total of welds made. The daily total is additionally not to include production welds that are not covered by Clause 7, such as welds made during the manufacture of pipe, components, and equipment (see Clause 7.2.2).
- The welds intended to be nondestructively inspected may be welds other than butt welds. For example, branch welds would typically be inspected by magnetic particle inspection or liquid penetrant inspection.

7.10.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.10.3.2.

All circumferential butt welds for carbon dioxide pipeline systems are to be nondestructively inspected, in order to promote detection and identification of root bead imperfections that could develop into corrosion or fracture initiation sites.

7.10.4 Nondestructive inspection

7.10.4.1 Methods

This is a commentary on Clause 7.10.4.1.

Clauses 7.11 and 7.15.10 and Annex K provide standards of acceptability that are somewhat different from those specified in Clause 7.10.4.1. The standards of acceptability in Clauses 7.11 and 7.15.10 are primarily based on work quality considerations, whereas the standards of acceptability in Annex K recognize that the qualified welding procedure specification includes proving notch toughness and fracture toughness properties for the weld and thereby justifying the alternative standards of acceptability.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.10.4.2 Evaluation of results

This is a commentary on Clause 7.10.4.2.

Either radiographic inspection or ultrasonic inspection can be used and only the requirements appropriate for the inspection method chosen are applicable.

7.10.5 Destructive testing

This is a commentary on Clause 7.10.5.

Destructive testing of production welds is an option provided to the company in Clause 7.10.1.4; however, acceptable results do not make the particular weld tested acceptable, given that the testing destroys the weld.

7.11 Arc and gas welding — Standards of acceptability for nondestructive inspection

7.11.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.1.

It is the responsibility of a qualified radiographer (see Clause 7.14.8) to interpret the radiographic images and determine whether any given indication of a specific type of imperfection is cause for rejection, based on the criteria provided in Clause 7.11.

In many places in Clause 7.11, acceptance criteria are stated as a percentage of the “nominal wall thickness”. The use of this term generates some uncertainty, given that it is a defined term (see Clause 3) that applies only to “pipe”, whereas production welds will in some cases not involve pipe. These acceptance criteria were developed primarily on the basis of joining pipes of equal nominal wall thickness using full-penetration welds (in which case, the minimum design thickness of the weld and the nominal wall thickness of the pipe are normally the same); however, it is intended that these criteria be applied also to welds joining items of unequal thickness and to welds joining components. For welds joining items of unequal thickness, the acceptance criteria should be based on the thinner nominal thickness. For components, the thickness to be considered should be the nominal thickness at the bevel (see Figure 7.2, “effective throat”).

The standards of acceptability in Clause 7.11 were developed on the basis of work quality; however, it has been confirmed by engineering critical assessment (using lower-bound values for assumed fracture toughness) that such maximum permitted imperfection dimensions are acceptable.

7.11.1.1 Applicability

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.1.1.

The standards of acceptability in Clause 7.11 were primarily developed with film radiography in mind and therefore do not contain specific requirements to address unique aspects associated with other types of nondestructive inspection (such as inspection using non-film radiographic imaging techniques) that can be used. It is assumed that appropriate requirements for other such types of nondestructive inspection would be addressed in the documentation required by Clause 7.10.4.1.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.11.1.2 Rights of rejection

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.1.2.

Radiographic and other nondestructive inspection methods can provide a less-than-perfect representation of the actual imperfections in the welds. Therefore, there can be situations where, although the indications of imperfections meet the standards of acceptability of Clause 7.11, the company has reason to be concerned about specific welds and therefore wishes to reject them. The reasons for rejection could be related to a number of factors. For example, imperfections of acceptable length could be susceptible to link-up or extension in the through-thickness direction and thereby provide a potential leak path.

7.11.1.3 Partial-penetration butt welds

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.1.3.

As required in Clause 7.7.9.1, the partial-penetration test weld made for qualification of the welding procedure specification is to be radiographed prior to sectioning and testing. Provided that subsequent testing verifies that the proper degree of root penetration has been achieved in the test, this radiograph is to be kept and used for reference during the radiographic inspection of partial-penetration production welds.

In addition to verifying the acceptability of the weld in accordance with Clause 7.11, it is the radiographer's responsibility to assess whether the weld exhibits the correct degree of penetration, based on comparison to the reference radiograph.

7.11.2 Weld crown

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.2.

Visual inspection is the primary method of assessing weld crown height.

The requirements are applicable to the weld crown on the outside surface of the piping only.

The term "surface of the adjacent base metal" recognizes that, in the case of misalignment (as allowed by Clause 7.9.2) or in the case of items having unequal thicknesses (as shown in Figure 7.2), the weld bead is sloped. It is intended that the crown height be measured in relation to an imaginary line joining the points where the weld contacts the adjacent base metal on the outside surface of the piping.

The additional 1.0 mm that is permitted, at the company's discretion, for localized deviations is intended to cover the button that is produced when the end of a bead joins its beginning in a circumferential weld.

7.11.3 Incomplete penetration of the root bead

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.3.

The specific requirements listed apply to welds that are intended by design to be full-penetration welds; requirements for partial-penetration welds are listed in Clause 7.11.1.3.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.11.4 Incomplete fusion

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.4.

Incomplete fusion at the inside or outside surface of the weld is typically a sharp notch-like feature and is often caused by insufficient welding heat input (i.e., a “cold” weld) and/or improper manipulation of the welding consumable.

7.11.5 Internal concavity

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.5.

The extra metal thickness provided by the weld crown on the outside surface of the piping may compensate for the reduction in metal thickness provided by the internal concavity on the inside surface of the weld.

7.11.6 Undercut

7.11.6.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.6.2.

The undercut depth limitations apply to all undercuts, regardless of location (weld root or weld cap); however, it is intended that any assessment of undercut depths using radiography be confined to undercuts located at the weld root, given that undercut depths at the external weld cap can be readily and more accurately assessed using methods other than radiography (e.g., visual inspection and physical measurement). Item a) permits indications of undercut up to 50 mm in length to have unlimited depth. However, due to the nature of the formation of undercut, it would not be expected to be any deeper than the thickness of the associated weld pass. Therefore, in reality, there is a practical limit to the maximum depth of undercut.

7.11.6.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.6.3.

For assessments using radiography, a reasonable assessment of the internal undercut depth can be made by comparing the density of the film image of the internal undercut with the density of the film images of the known notch depths in the comparator shim. It is intended that the comparator shim be placed adjacent to the weld seam as follows:

- on the base metal, if the average height of the adjacent weld reinforcement is 2.4 mm or less; or
- on blank shim material that is placed on the base metal and is of a thickness that would result in the total thickness that is being radiographed (the combined thickness of the base metal, blank shim material, and comparator shim) being approximately the same as the average weld thickness, if the average height of the adjacent weld reinforcement is greater than 2.4 mm.

7.11.13 Spherical porosity

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.13.

Scattered spherical porosity does not significantly affect the weld integrity; accordingly, the acceptance criteria for this type of imperfection are liberal.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.11.14 Wormhole porosity

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.14.

The depth of wormhole porosity through the weld thickness can be estimated using only the relative density of this indication on the radiographic image, which is not a precise means of determining depth.

7.11.17 Accumulation of imperfections

7.11.17.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.11.17.1.

Taken collectively, the cumulative length of incomplete penetration of the root bead, incomplete fusion, hollow bead, and burn-through areas is restricted as an additional control of weld quality, and a more liberal restriction is stated for the cumulative length of other imperfections that might be present.

Shallow undercuts (see Clause 7.11.6.3) are excluded from the cumulative length restriction, given that their lengths are not restricted by Clause 7.11.6.

7.12 Arc and gas welding — Repair of welds containing repairable defects

7.12.1 Partial-penetration butt welds

This is a commentary on Clause 7.12.1.

It is the intention of Clause 7.12.1 that for partial-penetration welds, all defects other than root defects are considered repairable defects. Due to the concern about damaging internal cement lining or non-metallic gasket material, repair of root defects is not permitted.

7.12.3 Repair procedures

7.12.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.12.3.1.

Removal of weld defects is typically accomplished by grinding; however, in some circumstances, other methods such as arc air gouging are acceptable. In all cases, the repair cavities must have clean metal surfaces and be free of slag, scale, oxides, and other contaminants. Depending on the type of defect being removed, verification of removal can be by visual or other means (e.g., magnetic particle inspection).

7.12.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.12.3.2.

Preheating can have a beneficial effect on the resultant quality of the repair weld. Due to the typically high degree of restraint of the metal surrounding the repair area, there is a risk of high residual stresses and post-weld cracking if the repair weld is allowed to cool too quickly. Preheating helps in the reduction of cooling rates.

© 2015 CSA Group

7.12.3.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.12.3.3.

The use of very short repair welds can create high local residual stress levels, which could have an adverse effect on the resultant quality of the repair weld.

7.12.4 Removal of arc burns in weld areas

This is a commentary on Clause 7.12.4.

Removal of the arc burn itself is an acceptable alternative method to effect the repair, provided that the hardened microstructure that exists under the visually evident portion of the arc burn is removed and the remaining wall thickness in the repaired area meets the minimum wall thickness criteria.

7.12.5 Removal of cracks in circumferential butt welds and in fillet welds

This is a commentary on Clause 7.12.5.

In some circumstances, removal of the crack itself is an acceptable alternative method to effect the repair, provided that the repair procedure is documented and includes specific safeguards as listed in Clause 7.12.5.

Although certification by CGSB is an acceptable verification of the inspector's qualifications, certification is considered to be an administrative requirement and is therefore not permitted to be included as a requirement in the Standard.

Use of liquid inspection media on the ground repair area requires careful cleaning of the liquid residue prior to welding. Residue from the liquid penetration or magnetic particle fluids can cause unacceptable welding imperfections in the repaired area.

7.12.6 Inspection of repairs

7.12.6.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.12.6.2.

The requirements of Annex K may not be used to assess the acceptability of repaired areas, even though they might have been used to assess the weld quality initially.

7.13 Arc and gas welding — Materials and equipment for radiographic inspection

7.13.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 7.13.1.

Terms such as "digital radiography", "non-film radiography", and "computed radiography" have been applied to alternative radiographic techniques.

7.13.2 Radiographic procedure

This is a commentary on Clause 7.13.2.

The procedures specified in Clause 7.13.2 are typically developed by the radiographic inspection company and should be available for review. The specifics pertaining to the equipment descriptions, systems, and limitations, as itemized in Clause 7.13.2, should all be addressed by the procedure.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.13.5 Screens

This is a commentary on Clause 7.13.5.

Intensifying screens can be used where X-ray machines are used in combination with exposure times that would render the use of lead screens impractical. The reference to Clause 7.14.6.4 is for emphasis; it should not be construed to mean that such requirements do not apply if intensifying screens are not used.

7.13.6 Image quality indicators

7.13.6.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.13.6.1.

One of the key factors for establishing the quality of a radiographic image is through the use of image quality indicators (IQIs). An IQI provides a gauge of the relative sensitivity of the radiographic image with respect to the ability to discern small features within a material. IQI sensitivity is defined in ASTM E1316 as "the minimum discernible image and the designated hole in plaque-type, or the designated wire image in the wire-type image quality indicator".

Referencing separate IQI tables for X-ray (Table 7.8) and gamma (Table 7.9) radiography has been done in recognition of the fact that, by their nature, X-ray and gamma radiographic sources generate different qualities of radiographic images (all else being equal). Further discussion of image quality and sensitivity issues can be found in the Commentary on Table 7.9.

7.13.7 Comparator shims

This is a commentary on Clause 7.13.7.

The requirements for comparator shims are intended to apply only to internal undercuts evaluated by radiographic inspection.

Table 7.8 Image quality indicator selection criteria for X-ray radiography; Table 7.9 Image quality indicator selection criteria for gamma radiography

This is a commentary on Table 7.8; Table 7.9.

Differences in the characteristics of X-rays and radioisotope gamma sources (e.g., iridium 192 isotope) result in X-rays being capable of generating a higher level of film image sensitivity than is gamma radiography. The sensitivity requirements in Table 7.8 are approximately equivalent to the film-side IQI requirements defined in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 2. The ASME IQI requirements for steels less than 0.75 inch thickness were developed based on the use of X-rays. However, for economic and practical reasons, the vast majority of pipeline radiography, particularly on smaller-diameter lines, is performed using gamma radiography (Ir192). The ability to fulfill the Table 7.8 sensitivity requirements using gamma RT techniques has proven to be very limited, even when using fine-grained, relatively slow-speed Class 1 film. As a result, the requirement for the essential hole or wire to be "clearly defined" as stated in Clause 7.14.6.4 is often not met when applying the Table 7.8 criteria for gamma radiography. This is particularly true for thinner welds (e.g., 8 mm), but experience has shown that even thicker welds can present the same sensitivity challenges with gamma radiography. This reduced sensitivity capability of gamma radiography is recognized in API 1104 (the welding inspection standard referenced by ASME B31.4 and ASME B31.8), which specifies larger essential wire diameters for a given weld thickness than as specified in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V.

Table 7.9 recognizes the sensitivity limitations of gamma radiography by increasing the hole IQI plaque thickness and the essential wire by one size. The resulting sensitivity requirements in Table 7.9 are equivalent to, or slightly more stringent than, API 1104 for each weld thickness range. Auditing of production film and shop radiography trials on various sizes of girth welds has shown that the essential IQIs listed in Table 7.9 represent the best levels of sensitivity that can typically be attained by gamma radiography using Class 1 film. Even with this reduced-sensitivity requirement, great care will still be required during the radiographic procedure (e.g., tight control on exposure time and density range) in order to ensure the Table 7.9 requirements are met.

The following table illustrates the differences in calculated sensitivity between Table 7.8 and Table 7.9, using the sensitivity calculation in ASTM E1025, Appendix X1. As can be seen, with the exception of extremely thin welds (i.e., 4 mm), the difference in calculated sensitivity is less than 1% for the entire thickness range.

	Calculated sensitivity (ASTM E1025, Appendix X1)		
Weld thickness, mm	Table 7.8	Table 7.9	Decrease in sensitivity
4	6.3%	7.5%	1.2%
6	4.2%	5.0%	0.8%
8	3.1%	3.8%	0.7%
9	3.3%	4.2%	0.9%
11	2.7%	3.5%	0.8%
12	3.2%	3.6%	0.4%
14	2.7%	3.1%	0.4%
15	2.9%	3.4%	0.5%
18	2.4%	2.8%	0.4%

Note 1) in Tables 7.8 and 7.9 addresses equivalency issues between holes in different thickness hole-type IQIs, as well as approximate equivalencies between hole- and wire-type IQIs, as defined in published industry standards.

The wire numbers in the tables refer to ISO designations. It is not intended that the use of ASTM E747 wire-type IQIs be precluded. For example, ASTM Wire Set A includes wires ranging from 0.08 to 0.25 mm in diameter, while Wire Set B includes wires ranging from 0.25 to 0.81 mm in diameter. It is noted that there is a 0.01 mm difference in the specified wire diameters for some otherwise equivalent wire sizes between the two IQI standards (e.g., ISO Wire #11 = 0.32 mm vs. ASTM Wire #7 = 0.33 mm). The small differences between ISO and ASTM wire IQI sizes are not significant and either wire size can be used.

Weld thickness values are expressed to the nearest millimetre in Tables 7.8 and 7.9. Weld thickness is understood to include the root and cap reinforcement; however, there is no means of measuring the root reinforcement on most production butt welds and there is no limitation provided in the Standard. For simplicity and consistency in the selection of the essential IQI, the weld thickness to use for the determination of essential IQI wires or holes is specified as not exceeding the sum of the base material thickness and the specified maximum crown height listed in Table 7.6. For example, the maximum thickness of a butt weld of 8 mm thick pipe would be 8.0 + 2.5 mm
(from Table 7.6) = 10.5 mm.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Note 3) of Table 7.9 recognizes the difficulties of obtaining a high level of sensitivity when using contact gamma RT on small-diameter welds with a wire-type IQI due to the short source-to-film distance. Field experience and shop trials have shown that this wire sensitivity problem applies to welds 114.3 mm OD and smaller, but that the essential holes listed in Table 7.9 for small-diameter pipe welds can still be met.

7.14 Arc and gas welding — Production of radiographs

7.14.1 Radiation source location

This is a commentary on Clause 7.14.1.

Specifics relating to the radiation energy source and type of film are dictated by the film quality requirements of the Standard and the particulars of the materials being inspected.

7.14.3 Size of radiation field

This is a commentary on Clause 7.14.3.

Clause 7.14.3 recognizes that, due to the curvature of pipe butt welds, there is a limitation on the amount of weld that can be radiographically captured with an acceptable level of clarity on the film or other imaging media. This will also be influenced by Clause 7.14.4.2, which requires that IQIs be placed within 25 mm of the acceptable limits of coverage. Three equally spaced exposures (i.e., 120° apart) are deemed to be the maximum spacing. A preferred technique in industry is to use four exposures, 90° apart. Similarly, elliptical exposures are commonly shot as three exposures 120° apart, as opposed to the required two exposures.

7.14.4 Location of image quality indicators

7.14.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.14.4.2.

The requirement to place an IQI within 25 mm of each end of the acceptable limits of the image is intended to provide a means of ensuring that an acceptable level of sensitivity is maintained over the entire exposed image being evaluated. Clause 7.14.4.2 recognizes that, due to the pipe curvature, the image quality deteriorates near the ends of radiographic image when a double-wall exposure, single-wall viewing technique is used. The exception for welds 114.3 mm OD and smaller recognizes that there is often insufficient space available to include an IQI at both ends of the image.

7.14.4.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.14.4.3.

An elliptical radiographic technique requires acceptable image quality for diametrically opposite sides of the weld. The requirement to have the IQI on the source side of the weld places the IQI nearest to the weld material that will have the lowest radiographic sensitivity. The diametrically opposite portion of the weld will always exhibit better image sensitivity qualities due to the longer distance from the source.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.14.5 Radiographic image identification markers

This is a commentary on Clause 7.14.5.

There are joint configurations (e.g., fabricated spool pieces, flanges, etc.) for which it is not practical to place the image identification markers on the downstream side of the weld. In addition, for some fabricated items, it might not be known which side of the weld will be the downstream side.

Knowledge of marker locations and orientations enables the company to reposition the radiographic image with respect to the weld, which will aid in providing a more accurate determination of the location of imperfections or defects at some later date.

7.14.6 Processing of radiographic images

7.14.6.3 Film density

This is a commentary on Clause 7.14.6.3.

Clause 7.14.6.3 is intended to address local perturbations (e.g., “grapes” in the root bead) that would otherwise meet the standards of acceptance described in Clause 7.11, but result in local areas of the weld that have density levels slightly below the specified minimum of 2.0.

7.14.8 Radiographers

7.14.8.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.14.8.1.

Although certification by CGSB is an acceptable verification of the radiographer’s qualifications, certification is considered to be an administrative requirement and therefore it is not permitted to be included as a requirement in CSA Z662.

7.14.9 Retention of radiographic records

This is a commentary on Clause 7.14.9.

Radiographs can deteriorate with time, until they are no longer useful. Accordingly, radiographs need not be maintained for more than two years; however, the records of the interpretation of the radiographs are to be kept for the life of the pipeline.

7.15 Arc and gas welding — Ultrasonic inspection of circumferential butt welds in piping

7.15.1 Methods

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.1.

Clause 7.15 provides general requirements for both manual and mechanized inspection, and additional requirements for mechanized inspection; Clause 7.15 applies to any pipeline girth weld, mechanized or manual, other than partial-penetration butt welds.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.15.2 Terminology

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.2.

The definitions in the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, Article 5, Mandatory Appendix III, are referenced in order to maintain consistent terminology throughout Clause 7.15, given that there are numerous other references to that code.

7.15.3 General

7.15.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.3.1.

The description of the methodology used to evaluate indications can be very simple if no classification of the imperfections is required (as is the case for Item c) in Clause 7.15.10.3), or it can be quite elaborate if a mechanized inspection system involving signal processing is used. The requirements in Clause 7.10.2 can influence the extent and frequency of inspection.

In some cases, the inspection system is designed for a specific bevel geometry and will be inappropriate for another bevel geometry. Bevels should be in accordance with the qualified design.

Some surface imperfections are more readily detectable by visual methods. The requirements for visual inspection of alignment and weld bevel preparation prior to welding are covered in Clauses 7.9.2 and 7.9.6. In addition, Clauses 7.10.2.1 and 7.10.2.2 provide the requirements for visual inspection of the outside of completed welds for imperfections.

7.15.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.3.2.

The exception to the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V requirements is intended to sanction procedures using an array of search units rather than a zigzag scan with a single search unit.

7.15.4 Equipment and supplies — General

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.4.

Maintenance of an appropriate minimum signal-to-noise ratio is important for ensuring that the equipment operates with the proper sensitivity and selectivity.

7.15.5 Equipment and supplies — Additional requirements for mechanized inspection systems

7.15.5.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.5.1.

Operation in both pulse-echo and pitch-catch modes is important for ensuring proper processing of signals in terms of imperfections.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.15.5.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.5.2.

This feature distinguishes a mechanized inspection from a manual inspection system, whereby the evaluation is made from a map of the weld.

7.15.5.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.5.4.

Operating temperature is an important parameter to control in order to ensure reliable inspection. Temperature affects the acoustic velocity in materials, which in turn affects the refracted angles and the time-distance calibration. For systems in which a specific search unit inspects a specific area of the weld, that area could be missed if the temperature is not within an acceptable range.

7.15.5.5

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.5.5.

The stated resolution is required to evaluate imperfections based on the map of the weld. The stated accuracy is required to properly locate areas to be repaired. A number of factors that can affect distance measurements are listed for consideration by the designers of the system, without specifying how to meet the requirements. It is intended that the distance measurements be verifiable.

7.15.5.6

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.5.6.

Several standards concern the evaluation of ultrasonic search units; however, ESI 98-2 was selected in order to reflect current industry practice. It offers the advantage of providing both evaluation procedures and minimum performance requirements.

7.15.6 Qualification of ultrasonic inspectors

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.6.

Although certification by CGSB is an acceptable verification of the radiographer's qualifications, certification is considered to be an administrative requirement and therefore it is not permitted to be included as a requirement in the Standard.

7.15.7 Calibration

7.15.7.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.7.2.

For welds that are to be evaluated in accordance with the requirements of Annex K, the calibration blocks and reflectors are inadequate. For such cases, project-specific calibration blocks are machined with specific reflectors for each weld zone.

7.15.7.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.7.4.

The four-hour interval between calibration checks permitted by ASME could be too long, given that conditions outdoors can change rapidly. Accordingly, the permitted interval is reduced to one hour. With

existing systems, a calibration check can be done quickly and the risk of the system's being out of calibration is thereby reduced.

It is intended that the use of Annex K, as referenced in Clause 7.15.7.2, is at the company's discretion; however, if Annex K applies, then the use of the calibration block required by Clause 7.15.7.2 is mandatory.

7.15.8 Inspection procedure for production welds

7.15.8.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.8.3.

The ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section V, requires a distance amplitude correction curve for all cases; however, such curves are practically flat for the usual range of wall thicknesses involved (6 to 15 mm), and therefore these curves are not required in the Standard.

7.15.10 Standards of acceptability for ultrasonic inspection

7.15.10.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.10.1.

The standards of acceptability in Clause 7.15.10 were developed on the basis of work quality, and the individual and cumulative length requirements were chosen to be at least as stringent as those specified in Clause 7.11 for nondestructive inspection by methods other than ultrasonic methods.

7.15.10.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.10.2.

Ultrasonic inspection methods can provide a less-than-perfect representation of the actual imperfections in the welds. Therefore, there can be situations where, although the indications of imperfections meet the standards of acceptability of Clause 7.15.10, the company can have reason to reject specific welds.

7.15.10.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.10.3.

The recording level is established as part of the system calibration required by Clause 7.15.7.4. Any discontinuity that produces an indication that exceeds the established recording level should first be evaluated to determine whether it is a weld discontinuity.

If the recorded indication was produced by a weld discontinuity, it is considered to be an imperfection, which should then be evaluated and characterized to determine whether or not it is a crack. The procedure for recognizing cracks by ultrasonic inspection is not specified; however, it is understood that the ultrasonic inspectors have been suitably trained to recognize cracks.

Provided that an imperfection has not been characterized as a crack, no further characterization need be done if the imperfection does not exceed the limits specified in Item c); otherwise, further evaluation is required in order to determine that the imperfection does not extend into a weld bead at a pipe surface, in which case the limits in Item b) apply.

 © 2015 CSA Group

The surface of the completed weld on the outside diameter of the pipe is to be visually inspected to detect imperfections not detectable by ultrasonic inspection, and any imperfections so detected are to be evaluated on the basis of the appropriate requirements in Clause 7.11.

7.15.11 Ultrasonic inspection reports and records

7.15.11.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.15.11.4.

Recorded indications that are produced by imperfections other than weld imperfections do not necessitate that a repair be made.

7.16 Mechanical interference fit joints

This is a commentary on Clause 7.16.

Although the original driving force behind the development and use of mechanical interference fit joints was to provide an effective method for joining pipelines internally coated with a thin-film polymer, this joining process can also be used to join conventional pipeline systems that do not have an internal coating. The requirements of Clause 7.16 are intended to be very general in order to accommodate a variety of systems that are available for use. For most aspects related to the mechanical interference fit method of joining, there is reliance on the designer of the mechanical interference joining system to provide the appropriate details, and such details are subject to approval by the company. Further requirements on the uses and limitations of mechanical interference fit joints can be found in Clause 4.5.4.

7.17 Welding on in-service piping

7.17.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.1.3

The intent of Clause 7.17.1.3 is to ensure that the cooling rates and restraint levels associated with the test joints for the qualification of welding procedures and welders are representative (or more severe) than those conditions expected during welding on the in-service piping. The note recognizes that one of the concerns associated with welding on in-service lines is delayed hydrogen cracking from the effects of hydrogen from welding (i.e. cellulosic electrodes) in situations of rapid cooling. The use of low-hydrogen welding practices, as advised in the note, will help minimize the risk of cracking.

7.17.2 Fillet welds and branch connection welds on liquid-filled piping or flowing-gas piping and direct deposition welds on flowing-gas piping

7.17.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.2.3.

Although the risk of cracking increases with the hydrogen content in the weld, the use of cellulosic welding electrodes for the root pass on branch connections is permitted to acknowledge that

- root beads in branch connections are easier to install using cellulosic electrodes, as opposed to low-hydrogen electrodes; and
- successful in-service branch welds have been installed using cellulosic electrodes in the past when the weld hardness level is properly controlled.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.17.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.2.4.

The carbon equivalent (CE) of the steel base materials being welded is an important factor in determining the hardness (and therefore susceptibility to hydrogen cracking) of the weld. In order to apply the 0.02 CE limit specified in Clause 7.17.2.4 as an essential welding procedure change, it is important to know the CE value(s) of the base materials used during the welding procedure qualification.

7.17.2.5

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.2.5.

The limitations specified in this Clause are intended to minimize the risk of burn-through within a ground portion of the in-service piping.

7.17.2.6

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.2.6.

Clause 7.17.2.6 concerns the use of temper beds to control the hardness of both the deposited weld metal and surrounding heat-affected zone. For direct deposition welding, the surface of the final (non-tempered) weld passes will extend beyond the surface of the surrounding pipe and will therefore need to be removed as part of the repair procedure.

7.17.3 Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specifications intended for welding on in-service piping

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.3.

For welding on liquid filled piping or flowing gas piping, the essential changes designated as applying to such piping take precedence over the corresponding essential changes not so designated.

7.17.5 Fillet welds and branch connection welds — Macroexamination and hardness tests

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.5.

It is up to the company to specify the test load for hardness testing up to a maximum of 10 kg. It should be noted that testing with lighter loads will tend to yield higher hardness results.

The risk of cracking increases with the hydrogen content in the weld; therefore, the hardness limit is lower for welds made using cellulosic electrodes for the root pass than for welds made using a low hydrogen welding procedure.

7.17.6 Qualification of welding procedure specifications and welders for direct deposition welds

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.6.

It is the intent of Clause 7.17.6 that the testing requirements for qualification of welding procedures and qualification of welders be identical.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.17.6.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.6.1.

The overhead position is the most difficult position for direct deposition welding; therefore, qualification tests in this position are to qualify all positions. The “top” position identified in Item c) is intended to mean welding in the flat position on a horizontal pipe. Since welding in the flat position is the easiest position to which to apply direct deposition welding, qualification testing in this position does not qualify direct deposition welding on the side or bottom of a horizontal pipe. Although it is not clearly stated in Clause 7.17.6.1, it is intended that the definition of welding positions should be consistent with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, QW-461. In this respect, “top” would be ± 15° of the 12 o’clock position on the pipe, “bottom” would be ± 10° of the 6 o’clock position on the pipe, and “side” would be all positions between these two.

7.17.6.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.6.2.

It is the intent of Clause 7.17.6.2 that, if the test welds fail nondestructive inspection, the test be deemed a failure, in which case no destructive testing need be performed.

7.17.6.3; Table 7.12 Number of test specimens for qualification of procedures and welders for direct deposition welding; Figure 7.25 Test specimens for direct deposition welding

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.6.3; Table 7.12; Figure 7.25.

Face bends provide information on the weld fusion at the start/stop ends of the weld deposit. Side bends provide information on the quality of fusion on the underside of the weld deposit. Macrosections provide information about the general weld quality and hardness of the weld repair zone. It is understood that the qualification testing will require either one direct deposition weld test specimen large enough to accommodate all the necessary test specimens, or two or more smaller, essentially identical, direct deposition test welds made on the same pipe sample to obtain the necessary test specimens.

7.17.6.6

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.6.6.

The successful implementation of direct deposition welding becomes more difficult and requires more skill as the pipe diameter is decreased and the pipe wall thickness is reduced.

7.17.6.8; 7.17.6.9; 7.17.6.10

This is a commentary on Clauses 7.17.6.8; 7.17.6.9; 7.17.6.10.

Face bends, macroexamination, and hardness testing for qualification of direct deposition welding procedures and welders are to be the same as for qualification of in-service fillet and branch welding with the addition of side-bend testing.

 © 2015 CSA Group

7.17.7 Nondestructive inspection of welds made on in-service piping

7.17.7.1

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.7.1.

Clause 7.17.7.1 addresses the risk of delayed hydrogen cracking of fillet welds, relating to the need to repeat nondestructive inspections after a suitable delay, as well as the need to implement other measures (e.g., pressure reduction or special supports) to avoid potential growth of such cracks prior to the second inspection.

7.17.7.2

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.7.2.

Clause 7.17.7.2 addresses the risk of delayed hydrogen cracking of direct deposition welds, relating to the need to repeat nondestructive inspections after a suitable delay, as well as the need to implement other measures (e.g., pressure reduction) to avoid potential growth of such cracks prior to the second inspection.

7.17.7.3

This is a commentary on Clause 7.17.7.3.

The requirements of Clause 7.17.7.3 are intended to ensure that there is no evidence of excessive under-bead non-fusion with the pipe base material.

8 Pressure testing

8.1 General

8.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 8.1.2.

Pressure testing of piping prior to operation is intended to confirm the structural integrity of the piping, and it is used as the basis for establishing its maximum operating pressure.

8.1.5

This is a commentary on Clause 8.1.5.

The term “partial-penetration welds required by design” is a reference to partial-penetration butt welds (see Clause 7.3.1.3). Stress and strain effects are of concern with this type of joint due to the intentionally reduced weld thickness and the presence of a stress concentrator at the root of the weld.

8.1.6

This is a commentary on Clause 8.1.6.

The company has the responsibility to establish sufficient qualifications for the personnel who will be directing the pressure testing operation.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.2 Safety during pressure tests

8.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.2.1.

Pressure tests could result in test failures in the form of ruptures, with an associated risk of property damage and a risk to personnel safety, and it is considered that the use of pretested piping can reduce those risks.

The company is responsible for establishing adequate procedures to keep all personnel on site, as well as the general public, safe from a rupture or leak during testing, especially when using a gaseous test medium. Consideration should be given to such things as pressure level, distance from the test section, and location of property.

8.2.2

This is a commentary on Clause 8.2.2.

Any rupture that might occur during pressure testing with a gaseous medium would be more extensive than what could occur during pressure testing with a liquid medium. For concurrent strength and leak tests, the test pressure is not permitted to be reduced to 110% of the intended operating pressure until after the full test duration requirement of 24 h minimum (see Clause 8.7.5.4) has been fulfilled.

8.5 Test-head assemblies

This is a commentary on Clause 8.5.

A test-head assembly, as defined in Clause 2.2, is an assembly of pipe and components that forms a temporary facility used for pressure testing of pipe. As such, it can include items such as pipe, weld cap, tees or branch connections, valves, flanges, couplings, threaded nipples, and thermocouples. As implied by the note, the restrictions applicable to test-head assemblies do not apply to any associated transition pieces required to provide a transition between the wall thickness in the test head and the wall thickness in the piping to be tested.

8.5.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.5.1.

The term “maximum working pressure” is used to refer to the maximum pressure that a test head is permitted to be exposed to during the pressure testing of a segment of the pipeline system. The maximum working pressure of a test head is a concept comparable to the maximum operating pressure of a segment of the pipeline system.

The stress limit of 75% of the specified minimum yield strength of any pipe or fitting was selected to ensure that stress levels are lower than the maximum allowed for piping that is designed to remain in the pipeline system. Piping in a test-head assembly is not intended to remain in the pipeline system.

The stress limit of 50% of the specified minimum yield strength of the ancillary pipe was selected to ensure still lower stress levels because ancillary piping can be subjected to higher external loadings and more vibration than the test-head assembly would encounter.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.5.2

This is a commentary on Clause 8.5.2.

In general, the requirements specified in Clauses 4 and 5 are applicable; however, some design requirements in Clause 4 would not apply (e.g., the concept of class location). The stress limits prescribed for test-head assemblies are independent of the location of the piping being tested. Given that test-head assemblies might have to withstand high pressures, the pipe used should not be continuous welded pipe.

8.5.3

This is a commentary on Clause 8.5.3.

For safety reasons, the welds used to join the test-head assemblies to the piping to be tested are to be inspected to the same rigor as that applied to welds in new test-head assemblies since in both instances the welds are likely exposed and are in close proximity to personnel working near the test head assembly.

8.5.7

This is a commentary on Clause 8.5.7.

Requiring that each test-head assembly be marked is intended to minimize the problems associated with the practical issue of ready access to documented records to verify the maximum working pressure for a given test-head assembly (see Clause 8.5.7), thereby enhancing the level of safety associated with the use of test-head assemblies.

8.6 Testing procedures and techniques

8.6.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.6.1.

Pressure-volume plots are required by Clause 8.6.1 in order to confirm that the test pressure used does not exceed the pressure that yields a deviation of 0.2% from straight-line proportionality on a pressure-volume plot for the test section (see Clause 8.7.4.2).

The lower the starting point of the pressure-volume plot, the more certain one can be of establishing the correct starting point of deviation from straight-line proportionality (termed “the elastic limit”). The pipe manufacturing method can influence the elastic limit, whereby cold-expanded pipe has a higher elastic limit than non-expanded pipe.

8.6.2

This is a commentary on Clause 8.6.2.

It is not mandatory that a pressure-temperature gradient be established (during the temperature stabilization period) because pressure-temperature extrapolation is not necessarily reliable.

8.6.4

This is a commentary on Clause 8.6.4.

Some mechanical-interference-fit joining systems require the use of liquid compounds, such as epoxies. Such joints will not attain their full strength level until these liquid compounds have had time to cure.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Suppliers of mechanical-interference-fit joining systems should be able to provide guidelines on the cure time required before the piping joints should be subjected to stress (e.g., pressure testing).

8.6.5

This is a commentary on Clause 8.6.5.

A properly applied and cured cement-mortar lining should be relatively resistant to water absorption; however, it is good practice for the company to review the issue of water absorption with the cement-mortar supplier or applicator prior to pressure testing.

8.6.6

This is a commentary on Clause 8.6.6.

The detection of leaks using a gaseous pressure-test medium is not as effective as the detection of leaks using a liquid pressure-test medium.

8.6.7

This is a commentary on Clause 8.6.7.

The presence of entrapped gas, being a compressible fluid, in a liquid pressure-test medium could hamper the sensitivity of the leak test.

8.7 Piping to be operated at pressure greater than 700 kPa

8.7.1 Strength and leak tests

8.7.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.1.1.

The objective of the strength test is to confirm the structural integrity of the piping under controlled conditions and to establish its maximum operating pressure. The strength test is used to demonstrate that the piping has the strength required of it and to reveal and eliminate imperfections that could cause leaks or ruptures during operation. The leak test is used to assess the leak tightness of the piping.

High-pressure leak tests (tests at pressures that yield a hoop stress in excess of 95% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe) should be conducted at lower pressures than those used for strength tests. Studies at Battelle Columbus Laboratories in 1970 showed that pressure reductions of 6% or more will cause imperfections of a critical size or larger (those imperfections that would grow unstably during the hold period of the strength test) to become stable and cease to grow. More recent (1992) work at Battelle concluded that high-pressure leak tests should be at a pressure level of 90% of the strength test pressure. The Standard includes a differential of 15, 30, or 40% of the intended maximum operating pressure between the specified minimum strength pressure and the specified minimum leak test pressure, depending on the service fluid and class location, so it is always possible to comply with that recommendation.

The test requirements and the resultant maximum operating pressures that are established by the pressure tests are summarized in Table 8.1, which contains cross-references to the specific clauses that specify the detailed requirements. The information in Table 8.1 provides a good overview of the relationships between test pressures and maximum operating pressures; however, it does not include

 © 2015 CSA Group

all of the details that are covered by the text. For example, it is not obvious from Table 8.1 that there are exceptions provided in Clauses 8.7.1.2 and 8.7.1.3.

8.7.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.1.2.

For piping and fabricated items that are fully exposed during pressure testing, it is possible for leaks to be detected visually (rather than by observing a pressure drop in the test section) and a complete visual inspection could be performed in less time than is specified for the leak test. For personnel safety reasons, visual inspections are to be performed at a pressure that would produce a hoop stress less than 100% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe (see Clause 8.2.5).

8.7.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.1.3.

This exception to the requirement in Clause 8.7.1.1 (i.e., a 4 h strength test followed by a 24 h leak test) is permitted for gaseous-medium testing in recognition that

- it can be difficult to alter and re-establish stable pressures during the hold period; and
- test pressures are to be less than 100% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe, and therefore the growth of imperfections during the hold period is not a major concern.

8.7.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.1.4.

Despite the additional safety precautions that are required by Clause 8.2 for pressure testing with a gaseous medium at a stress level of 80% or more of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe, considerable damage could be incurred in the event of a pipe rupture at a railway or road crossing, and such damage would be more severe if the crossing were in use at the time of the rupture. Accordingly, pretested piping is prescribed in order to reduce the likelihood of a rupture, with an alternative permitted whereby the crossing would be closed to traffic in order to reduce the possible extent of damage.

The 80% limit was specifically selected so that the requirement would apply only to test pressures at the upper end of the possible pressure regime, given the stress reductions that result from the location factors (see Table 4.2) for crossings.

Because the effects of a rupture can vary, depending on such factors as the fracture propagation characteristics of the pipe material (as it affects the fracture length), the pipe diameter (as it affects the stored energy contained in the system), and the traffic density (as it affects the possibility of interaction), it was not considered feasible to specify a particular length of piping that would need to be pretested. It is left to the company to consider such factors when deciding how much piping should be pretested. Pretested pipe will in some cases be required (for safety considerations) for the light wall pipe that is located upstream and downstream from the heavy wall pipe that is required by design (for stress loading considerations) at the crossing.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.7.2 Pressure-test mediums

8.7.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.2.1.

Water is the preferred pressure-test medium for environmental, safety, and other reasons; however, other factors might make the use of another pressure-test medium preferable.

8.7.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.2.3.

Clause 8.7.2.3 was amended to reflect the requirement noted in the previous Commentary that the notch toughness requirements must be based upon the hoop stress developed by the gaseous-medium pressure test rather than upon the design operating stress. Clause 8.7.2.3 was also revised to recognize that using gaseous medium testing of CO_2 pipeline systems, as defined in Clause 2.2, might have incremental requirements and risks.

8.7.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.2.4.

Flammable gas, sour fluids, and HVP liquids are not to be used as pressure-test mediums primarily because of the increased safety concerns should there be a test failure and the fact that more suitable fluids are generally readily available. Sour fluids (defined in Clause 10.2.10) are also a concern because of the potential for damage to the piping material. Multi-phase fluids are not recommended as pressure-test mediums because of the associated difficulty in obtaining and maintaining pressure stability. Clause 8.7.2.4 was revised to recognize that using the CO_2 transported in carbon dioxide pipeline systems as a gaseous test medium might have potential risks and should be prohibited.

8.7.3 Minimum strength and leak test pressures

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.3.

For pressure-containment purposes at the design stage, in accordance with the requirements of Clause 4.3.10, corrosion and erosion allowances are not included in the determination of the wall thickness required for pressure containment. At the pressure testing stage, however, the minimum test pressures should be established with such allowances included, where practicable. For example, a pipe that has a design wall thickness of 5.2 mm and a corrosion allowance of 3.2 mm should be pressure tested based on its wall thickness of 8.4 mm; however, its maximum operating pressure should be based on its design wall thickness of 5.2 mm.

8.7.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.3.1.

The required strength and leak test pressures are based on varying percentages of the intended maximum operating pressure, depending on the service fluid and the class location. Lower test pressures are required for the leak test because extended hold periods at high pressure do not provide any increased safety margin for pipeline operation. The use of leak test pressures that are at least 10% lower than the strength test pressure will eliminate time-dependent imperfection growth, while still permitting a good assessment of the leak tightness of the piping.

 © 2015 CSA Group

In accordance with Note 2) of Table 8.1, piping in compressor stations, gas pressure-regulating stations, and gas-measuring stations that are in a Class 1 or 2 location is to be pressure tested at 140% or more of the intended maximum operating pressure, whereas other gas piping in a Class 1 or 2 location is to be pressure tested at 125% or more of the intended maximum operating pressure.

In accordance with Note 3) of Table 8.1, HVP piping in pump stations, tank farms, and terminals that are in a Class 1 location is to be pressure tested at 150% or more of the intended maximum operating pressure, whereas other HVP piping in a Class 1 location is to be pressure tested at 125% or more of the intended maximum operating pressure.

8.7.4 Maximum strength and leak test pressures

8.7.4.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.4.1.

Required test pressures and stress levels are established based on pipe parameters; however, it is essential that any components used in the test section be capable of withstanding the intended test pressures. The requirements are prescribed in terms of the test pressure specified in the applicable material standard or specification; however, not all material standards and specifications specify a test pressure. The ability of components to withstand the intended test pressure is a more appropriate way to consider the requirement.

8.7.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.4.2.

Clause 8.7.4.2 specifies pressure limitations for testing of pipe grades greater than Grade 555, as such high-strength pipe grades have high yield/tensile ratios and low uniform elongations, which exhibit very limited yielding during pressure testing. The 107% SMYS for grades higher than 555 is intended as a safety precaution. The lower percent offset of 0.1% (as opposed to 0.2%) from straight-line proportionality on a pressure-volume plot for such high-strength pipes is also included as a safety precaution.

The limit of 110% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe was established based on field experience. It represents a practical way to limit the maximum stress, yet it will enable pressure testing at a minimum of 100% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe to be performed and will provide a sufficient buffer to allow for elevation changes in the test section. Such high-pressure testing is required for pipe intended to be operated at 80% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe; however, at the discretion of the company, it can also be applied to some of the piping that is intended to be operated at lower stress levels.

The prescribed limiting deviation (0.2%) on a pressure-volume plot represents an average value over the entire length of the test section, and therefore does not ensure that the growth of any individual pipe in the test section is limited. Given that the pipe's mechanical and dimensional properties will vary somewhat along the test section, the applied pressure can result in varying amounts of pipe growth, in direct relation to how close the actual pipe properties are to the specified nominal and minimum values. Some pipe yielding could occur; however, it is not intended that the strength test be used to force the pipe to yield to the maximum extent permitted. In practice, the prescribed limiting deviation is rarely approached.

 © 2015 CSA Group

The limit of 66% of the specified minimum yield strength of continuous welded pipe was derived by multiplying the 110% value by 0.60, the longitudinal joint factor for continuous welded pipe. It was considered that the longitudinal joint factor should be taken into account when establishing the maximum limit on test pressure, given that the longitudinal joint factor is a reflection of the assumed integrity of the mill seam weld. This eliminated the concern that continuous welded pipe would be subjected to too high a stress level if the maximum test pressures prescribed for other types of pipe were used.

8.7.4.4

S This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.4.4.

It is neither necessary nor prudent for the leak test pressure to exceed the actual strength test pressure used and there are advantages to be gained from using leak test pressures that are at least 10% lower than the strength test pressure used.

8.7.5 Duration of tests

8.7.5.2

S This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.5.2.

For piping and fabricated items that are fully exposed at the time of strength testing, a visual inspection of the piping after a 1 h test (see Clause 8.7.1.2) provides an acceptable method of assessing piping integrity as an alternative to the standard 4 h strength test. It can be difficult to stabilize temperature during a 4 h test, so a shorter hold period is permitted. Clause 8.7.5.2 does not apply if there is no need to perform a leak test, in accordance with Clause 8.7.1.2.

8.7.5.3

S This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.5.3.

Leak tests are required to be maintained for a longer period if gaseous test mediums are used because gaseous test mediums are not as sensitive as liquid test mediums for the detection of leaks. The generally prescribed durations for leak tests were established as 4 h for liquid-medium testing and 24 h for gaseous-medium testing; however, there are some situations (as detailed in the notes) for which the prescribed durations might not be sufficient. Clause 8.7.5.3 does not apply if there is no need to perform a leak test, in accordance with Clause 8.7.1.2.

8.7.6 Maximum operating pressures

8.7.6.1

S This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.6.1.

For most piping, the last column in Table 8.1 summarizes how to determine the maximum operating pressure; in each case, it is the lesser of

- the qualification pressure divided by a factor that is dependent on the applicable service fluid and class location; and
- the design pressure of the pipe, which is derived in accordance with the applicable requirements in Clause 4.3.5.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.7.6.4

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.6.4.

Due to pressure differentials associated with elevation changes in liquid-filled pipelines, it is sometimes advantageous or necessary to take account of the changes in pressure along a test section during a liquid-medium pressure test of LVP or HVP piping.

When used in accordance with Clause 8.7.6.4, this point-specific method will still result in a reasonable factor of safety between the point-specific strength test pressure and the established point-specific MOP. The following example demonstrates the need for the use of point-specific qualification pressure testing to establish the MOP in situations of significant elevation changes with an LVP or HVP pipeline:

- A test section of an LVP pipeline exhibits a 400 m difference between the minimum and maximum elevation points over the length of the test section. The test section is subjected to a strength test, with the pressure at the highest point being 5.00 MPa and at the lowest point being 8.90 MPa. As defined in Table 8.1, the qualification pressure is the lowest pressure achieved during the strength test, which in this case is 5.00 MPa. In accordance with the requirements of Clause 8.7.6.1 and Table 8.1, the MOP for this test section is the qualification pressure divided by 1.25, which is 4.00 MPa (i.e., 5.00 MPa/1.25).
- In contrast, using the point-specific qualification pressure option permitted by Clause 8.7.6.4, the MOP at the high point in the test section would be 4.00 MPa (5.00 MPa/1.25) and the MOP at the low point in the test section would be 7.12 MPa (8.90 MPa/1.25). Points in-between these two elevation extremes would have a similar determination of MOP, with the MOP values being based on the measured or derived qualification pressure for those specific locations.

In the example above, the test section-specific MOP determination would limit the MOP over the entire test section to 4.00 MPa because the qualification pressure defined in the note in Table 8.1 is the lowest pressure achieved during the strength test. This situation is not practical, as the pressure differential between the highest and lowest points in this pipeline section is approximately 3.90 MPa. Only by using a point-specific qualification pressure basis can a practical MOP be established for this LVP pipeline section. At all points along the pipeline test section, the resulting MOP includes a reasonable safety factor with respect to the qualification pressure employed during the test.

Clause 8.7.6.4 was revised to recognize that CO_2 as defined in Clause 2.2 is transported much like a liquid.

8.7.7 Pressure-test measurements and records

8.7.7.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.7.1.

The emphasis is on the retention of records to support the success of the pressure tests and the reconciliation of any significant pressure deviations experienced during the test. Given that all pressure-test records can provide valuable information to be used in the engineering assessment required by Clause 3.3, if a situation arises involving a change in service or upgrading to a higher maximum operating pressure, consideration should also be given to retaining some records of unsuccessful pressure tests.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.7.7.3

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.7.3.

For the purposes of verifying the accuracy of pressure chart recorders and temperature chart recorders, one need not calibrate the chart recorders; it is sufficient to simply check them in place against an appropriate calibrated measuring device (e.g., pressure gauges, dead-weight testers, and temperature-measuring devices).

For the purposes of verifying other test instruments (e.g., pressure gauges, dead-weight testers, and temperature-measuring devices), one need not calibrate the test instruments; it is sufficient to simply check them against an appropriate calibrated measuring device.

8.7.7.6

This is a commentary on Clause 8.7.7.6.

In instances where a point-specific pressure testing methodology is used for liquid piping (see Clause 8.7.6.4), the records of qualification pressure are to correlate with specific location and elevation data.

8.8 Piping intended to be operated at pressures of 700 kPa or less

8.8.2 Pressure-test mediums

This is a commentary on Clause 8.8.2.

Sour fluids and HVP liquids are not be used as pressure-test mediums for the same reasons as those specified in the commentary to Clause 8.7.2.4. Flammable gas is considered to be an appropriate fluid because the pressures are low and the safety concerns are correspondingly reduced.

8.8.3 Minimum leak test pressures

8.8.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.8.3.1.

In accordance with past industry practice, the generally required minimum leak test pressure is not based on a percentage of the maximum operating pressure; rather, it is set at 700 kPa.

8.8.5 Duration of tests

8.8.5.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.8.5.1.

Leak tests are required to be maintained for a longer period if gaseous test mediums are used because gaseous test mediums are not as sensitive as liquid test mediums for the detection of leaks. The generally prescribed durations for leak tests were established as 4 h for liquid-medium testing and 24 h for gaseous-medium testing; however, there are some situations (as detailed in the notes) for which the prescribed durations might not be sufficient. Clause 8.8.5.1 does not apply if there is no need to perform a leak test, in accordance with Clause 8.7.1.2.

 © 2015 CSA Group

8.8.5.2

This is a commentary on Clause 8.8.5.2.

For gas piping that is in accordance with Clause 8.8.3.2, the required bubble testing would constitute an appropriate method and would therefore qualify as a valid reason for the use of leak test durations shorter than those specified in Clause 8.8.5.1. When leak testing with liquids, it is intended that leak test durations shorter than those specified in Clause 8.8.5.1 be allowed if a complete visual inspection is conducted during the leak test.

8.8.7 Pressure-test measurements and records

8.8.7.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.8.7.1.

The emphasis is on the retention of records to support the success of the pressure tests and the reconciliation of any significant pressure deviations experienced during the test. Given that all pressure-test records can provide valuable information to be used in the engineering assessment required by Clause 3.3, if a situation arises involving a change in service or upgrading to a higher maximum operating pressure, consideration should also be given to retaining some records of unsuccessful pressure tests.

8.8.7.2

This is a commentary on Clause 8.8.7.2.

It is unnecessary for pressure recorders to be used for these low-pressure piping systems; it is sufficient and appropriate to simply measure accurately and document the pressures used during the pressure tests.

8.8.7.5

This is a commentary on Clause 8.8.7.5.

The required records are only those associated with successful tests, and such records need not be as detailed as those required for piping intended to be operated at pressures greater than 700 kPa.

8.9 Leaks and ruptures during pressure tests

8.9.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.9.1.

The strength test may be completed even if a leak occurs during the strength test, provided that the leak is small enough to permit the required strength test pressure to be maintained for the required duration.

The note refers to the increased possibility of imperfection growth at high pressures and the possibility of imperfection extension with each subsequent pressure test.

© 2015 CSA Group

8.11 Cleaning and drying

This is a commentary on Clause 8.11.

For steel pipelines for carbon dioxide that do not have any protective internal linings or coatings and that have been pressure tested with water as the pressure-test medium, it is essential that the water be completely removed after the pressure test, in order to avoid aggressive corrosion that could otherwise occur on start-up of service as a result of the carbon dioxide combining with the water and then reacting with the steel.

The need to dry piping after testing will vary depending on factors such as test medium, time or season of commissioning, service fluid, customer requirements, and effects on downstream equipment. For companies that dry piping after testing, practices also vary on what measures are used and the accepted criteria.

8.12 Tie-ins of tested sections

8.12.1

This is a commentary on Clause 8.12.1.

It is impractical for every joint in the pipeline system to be pressure tested in accordance with the requirements of Clauses 8.7 to 8.9.

8.12.2

This is a commentary on Clause 8.12.2.

To compensate for the fact that the completed tie-ins are not pressure tested, the inspection requirements for tie-ins are more stringent than those for an ordinary joint in the pipeline system. The reference to Clause 7.10 is specifically directed towards Clause 7.10.3.1, which states that all pressure-containing welds that will not be pressure tested in place are to be nondestructively inspected.

9 Corrosion control

9.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 9.1.

The requirements of Clause 9 are applicable to the operation, maintenance, and upgrading of existing installations. They are not intended to be applied retroactively to existing installations insofar as design and construction are concerned.

9.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 9.1.1.

With the exception of additional or modified requirements in Clause 11.25, which are specific to offshore steel pipelines, and in Clause 12.9, which are specific to gas distribution systems, the requirements related to the control of corrosion in Clause 9 are applicable to all steel pipeline systems.

© 2015 CSA Group

9.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 9.1.3.

Detailed procedures are required to meet the requirements of Clause 9, unless experience has shown that such procedures are not required. CAN/CSA-Z184 had required that exceptions to procedures be documented as part of the corrosion control procedures; however, this requirement was changed in order to avoid the need to change the procedures every time an exception was made. Now such exceptions can be documented elsewhere, as part of the operating records, for example.

9.2 Selection of external protective coatings for buried or submerged piping

This is a commentary on Clause 9.2.

Clause 9.2 provides a comprehensive set of requirements for the evaluation, selection, and application of external coatings that will be able to withstand the handling, installation, and in-service conditions anticipated for the particular pipeline system being considered. Table 9.1 provides details with respect to the selection of the appropriate industry-recognized test methods to be employed for the evaluation of specific coating properties.

9.3 Application and inspection of external protective coatings for buried or submerged piping

9.3.3

This is a commentary on Clause 9.3.3.

The intent of Clause 9.3.3 is to recognize that coating damage can occur at any stage after the coating application.

9.8 Corrosion control test stations

9.8.7

This is a commentary on Clause 9.8.7.

Clause 9.8.7 is intended to help avoid potential problems, such as excessive hardness or liquid metal embrittlement, associated with endothermic joining methods (e.g., brazing or soldering).

9.9 Operation and maintenance of impressed current and sacrificial cathodic protection systems

9.9.1

This is a commentary on Clause 9.9.1.

Operating companies are required to consider the guidelines in CGA OCC-1, Section 4, when establishing cathodic protection system monitoring programs and when verifying the effectiveness of their cathodic protections systems and monitoring programs.

 © 2015 CSA Group

9.9.5

This is a commentary on Clause 9.9.5.

The requirement to inspect the condition of the coating and to inspect for corrosion damage is intended to provide data from visual observations, independent of the cathodic protection monitoring, about the effectiveness of the coating system and cathodic protection system. Experience has shown that it is frequently not possible to establish the condition of the coating or recognize the existence and progression of corrosion damage solely from cathodic protection monitoring programs.

9.9.6

This is a commentary on Clause 9.9.6.

In some cases, it is insufficient to assess the effectiveness of corrosion control programs on the basis of cathodic protection system performance data and the isolated visual observations required by Clause 9.9.5. It is required that consideration be given to the use of in-line inspection methods or above-ground inspection methods, which could include close-spaced potential surveys and holiday detection surveys, to locate areas where corrosion has occurred.

9.10 Internal corrosion control

This is a commentary on Clause 9.10.

Internal corrosion problems are primarily associated with the upstream production oil and gas gathering pipeline systems. However, internal corrosion in other pipeline systems has been observed and should not be ignored for any given pipeline system.

9.10.1 Susceptibility to internal corrosion

This is a commentary on Clause 9.10.1.

Clause 9.10.1 a) and b) itemize conditions that are considered corrosive. If these conditions are present and are to be considered non-corrosive, the requirement of supporting documentation or tests that demonstrate the contrary must be completed.

9.10.2 Mitigation

This is a commentary on Clause 9.10.2.

Although Clause 9.10.2 implies that the implementation of internal corrosion mitigation programs is to depend on periodic testing for corrosive agents, it is understood that generally the most effective pipeline corrosion mitigation programs are developed during the pipeline design stage and implemented during the pipeline commissioning stage. The need for, and extent of, internal corrosion mitigation programs at the design stage will be influenced by company experience with other operating pipeline systems handling similar fluids and/or an engineering assessment of the potential corrosivity of the fluids to be handled by the pipeline. In addition to the referenced publication in Clause 9.10 (i.e., CAPP 2009-0014,) for the mitigation of internal corrosion, Clause 4.3.1.3 recognizes the potential need for the pipeline design to accommodate internal inspection devices, while Clause 5.4 references an appropriate NACE publication to aid with selecting pipeline materials for handling oilfield waters.

 © 2015 CSA Group

9.10.3 Monitoring

9.10.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 9.10.3.2.

The heat affected zone of small stud welds might not be suitable for sour service. Testing in accordance with the requirements of NACE TM0177 demonstrates suitability for service.

10 Operating, maintenance, and upgrading

10.1 Engineering assessments of existing pipelines

This is a commentary on Clause 10.1.

The requirements of Clause 10 are not intended to be applied retroactively to existing installations insofar as design and construction are concerned.

10.2 Safety

This is a commentary on Clause 10.2.

Occupational health and safety legislation and regulations in most jurisdictions contain very comprehensive requirements regarding the management of safety. Clause 10.2 is mainly intended to draw attention to safety aspects of activities that are specific to the operation and maintenance of pipelines.

10.2.8 In-service pipelines

This is a commentary on Clause 10.2.8.

The intent of Clause 10.2.8 is to clearly identify the factors to consider with respect to the establishment of a safe working pressure when working on in-service piping. Type of work as specified in Item a) includes excavating, inspection, grinding, welding, and coating repairs. The condition of the piping as specified in Item b) includes visible evidence of external corrosion, dents, gouges, or knowledge about internal wall loss due to corrosion, etc. Further discussion on safe working pressures associated with excavation of in-service pipelines can be found in the commentary to Clause 10.10.1.3.

10.2.10 Fluids containing H2S

This is a commentary on Clause 10.2.10.

The hydrogen sulphide concentration of 10 ppm is the criterion for the 8 h exposure limit in the Chemical Hazards Regulations of the *Occupational Health and Safety Act* of the Province of Alberta. It is important to note that the definition of sour fluids is related to personnel safety and differs from the definition of sour service provided in Clause 16, which relates to critical hydrogen sulphide concentrations, which can cause sulphide stress cracking in steels.

10.2.11 Carbon dioxide pipelines and gas pipelines containing predominantly CO_2

This is a commentary on Clause 10.2.11.

The risk of asphyxiation that arises from the release of carbon dioxide from such pipelines requires that personnel receive training in safe work procedures.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.3 Integrity of pipeline systems

10.3.1 Pipeline system integrity management program

This is a commentary on Clause 10.3.1.

Clauses 10.3.1 describes the requirements for a systematic approach, using an engineering assessment in accordance with Clause 3.3, to respond to conditions that could have been identified by operating or monitoring procedures, or any other means, and could lead to failures.

10.3.3 Leak detection for liquid hydrocarbon pipeline systems

10.3.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 10.3.3.1.

Periodic line balance measurements are required because they can be used to determine the presence of leaks.

10.3.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 10.3.3.2.

Changes in pressure and flow data can provide a rapid indication of a rupture or large leak, and line surveillance can find small leaks that have not been detected by other means in liquid lines.

It is important that leak detection methods, including material balance methods, be reviewed periodically because changes in the number of receipt and delivery points, and in the types and properties of fluids being transported, can degrade the performance of such systems.

10.3.3.5

This is a commentary on Clause 10.3.3.5.

Clause 10.3.3.5 was added to emphasize that it is the company's responsibility to act promptly whenever there is an indication of a pipeline leak. Prompt action on the part of the company can minimize the safety and environmental consequences associated with a particular leak.

10.3.4 Leak detection for gas pipeline systems and carbon dioxide pipeline systems

This is a commentary on Clause 10.3.4.

Clause 10.3.4 reflects the current industry practices and regulatory expectations. The choice of specific detection method(s) will depend on a number of factors; therefore, only examples of leak detection techniques are provided.

10.3.5 Leak detection for oilfield water and multiphase pipeline systems

This is a commentary on Clause 10.3.5.

"Oilfield water" is a defined term in the Standard and includes such undefined terms as salt water, produced water, and disposal water. The need for detection and the type of detection method should be based on a risk assessment, particularly with respect to environmental impact.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.3.8 Upgrading to a higher maximum operating pressure

10.3.8.4

This is a commentary on Clause 10.3.8.4.

Pressure testing is considered impracticable in situations where there are many branch connections to customers because of the need to disconnect and reconnect each customer, and the difficulties of drying and purging the piping.

There has not been any recognized need to allow pressure upgrading for oil pipeline systems without pressure testing in accordance with the requirements of Clause 8.

10.3.9 Pressure testing existing piping

10.3.9.2

This is a commentary on Clause 10.3.9.2.

There have been some industry experiences, commonly called “pressure reversals”, whereby operating failures occurred shortly after piping had been pressure tested to pressures above the operating pressure.

In some pressure test situations, damage that is undetected during the test can occur for several reasons. Existing defects can increase in size without reaching the critical size for failure during the pressure test, or the stress distribution in the region of some defects can be changed, promoting continued growth of the defect after the test pressure is removed, which results in an operating failure.

Items a) to h) are to be considered in the engineering assessment so that the pressure test plan that is developed does not damage the piping. Such damage could promote, rather than prevent, the occurrence of operating failures.

10.4 Records

This is a commentary on Clause 10.4.

Clause 10.4 does not contain a complete list of required records, but it identifies the key items that are required for safe operation and maintenance. Other required records related to specific operating and maintenance requirements are specified in other clauses.

10.4.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 10.4.1.

The main purpose of operating and maintenance records is to provide the following:

- data that can be used to verify that the operating and maintenance procedures are being followed [see Item c) of Clause 10.5.1.1]; and
- data from monitoring and inspection programs, which record the occurrence of leaks, breaks, damage, and emergencies, so that the effectiveness of the operating and maintenance procedures can be assessed and the procedures modified, if appropriate [see Item d) of Clause 10.5.1.1].

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.4.2 Pipeline systems

This is a commentary on Clause 10.4.2.

The records specified in Items a) and b) are intended to aid in the evaluation of the pipeline system's suitability for future operation under current or changed conditions.

Item d) ensures that when limit states design has been employed, the operating and maintenance practices retain the limit states conditions that were used in the original design.

Item e) is intended to ensure that when RBDA is applied, important information relative to target reliability levels and their maintenance for the operational lifetime of the pipeline is permanently recorded.

10.5 Operating and maintenance procedures

10.5.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.1.1.

The records and documents referenced in Clause 10.4 provide the basic descriptions of the facilities so that they can be operated safely and be readily located for inspection and maintenance and during emergency situations. The procedures are intended to include a review of the required records and a consideration of any changes in operating conditions in order to optimize the effectiveness of the procedures.

10.5.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.1.2.

Items g) and h) intent is when limit states design (Annex C) or reliability-based design and assessment (Annex O) are applied, the operation and maintenance procedures take into consideration any specific activities that are needed to ensure that the requirements for these design approaches will continue to be met throughout the operating life of the pipeline in order to maintain the validity of the original design.

Clause 10.5.1.2 is intended to ensure that the operating and maintenance procedures that are required by Clause 10.3.1 are appropriate for specific pipeline system facilities. The procedures are required to be based on the knowledge of the specific facilities, which would include the facilities' design, the proximity of population and of sensitive environmental areas, and the historic, current, and future operating conditions.

Item f) requires that the operating and maintenance procedures recognize and address the possibility of damage that could be expected to occur. In addition to considering historical incidents of damage to the system being addressed, it is necessary to be aware of other types of damage that have occurred on other systems that operate under similar conditions and could therefore be anticipated to cause damage to the system being addressed. Such an approach is commonly used by operating companies to manage the risk of failures caused by such things as environmentally assisted cracking, internal and external corrosion, and ground movement, including permafrost.

Items g) and h) are intended to ensure that when limit states design (Annex C) or reliability-based design and assessment (Annex O) are applied, the operation and maintenance procedures take into consideration any specific activities that are needed to ensure that the requirements for these design

 © 2015 CSA Group

approaches will continue to be met throughout the operating life of the pipeline in order to maintain the validity of the original design.

10.5.3 Pipeline identification

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.3.

The main purpose of signs is to identify the presence of pipelines, in order to increase public awareness and thereby reduce the potential for damage caused by activities that take place in their vicinity.

10.5.3.3

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.3.3.

The requirements for signs are intended to help identify the presence and hazard of a pipeline and to provide contact information to be used if there is an emergency or if information is needed about the pipeline.

10.5.3.5

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.3.5.

The exemption for urban areas is intended to recognize the difficulties of sign installation in fully developed areas. Other methods, such as local government records, local government permit systems, and one-call systems, can be effective aids to damage prevention in built-up areas. Clause 10.5.3.5 was adapted from 49 CFR 192 and reflects industry practice current at that time.

10.5.3.7

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.3.7.

The consideration of crossing width and visibility limitations is intended to ensure that signs are large enough to be seen and read.

10.5.3.8

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.3.8.

All structures that constitute a hazard to air navigation are required by Transport Canada to meet the requirements of the Transport Canada manual, which provides details of the required lighting or marking.

10.5.4 Signs at stations and other facilities

10.5.4.3

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.4.3.

Examples of the hazards specified in Clause 10.5.4.3 are

- dangerous chemicals or vapours;
- lack of oxygen;
- overhead power lines;
- high voltage;
- falling objects; or
- trenches.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.5.4.4

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.4.4.

Clause 10.5.4.4 is not specific to oil pipeline systems and also provides an explanation of why identification is required. The added note provides examples of the types of information that could be included in the identification.

10.5.5 Ground disturbance

10.5.5.2

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.5.2.

A pre-excavation meeting between the locator and excavator establishes a positive response for the communication of the work specifics. The note emphasizes the importance of pre-marked dig areas to avoid unnecessary work when locating facilities by focusing on specific and well-defined dig areas.

10.5.6 Odorization

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.6.

Clause 4.21 specifies requirements for providing odorant and the required odorant characteristics.

10.5.7 Precautions to avoid unintentional ignition of gas-air mixtures or hydrocarbon liquids

This is a commentary on Clause 10.5.7.

Clause 10.5.7 applies to all oil and gas pipeline systems where a hydrocarbon gas or liquid and sufficient oxygen (flammable mixture) and a source of ignition are present. Systems where flammable mixtures may be present include gas, HVP, and LVP liquids.

Specific procedures for the identification, management, and mitigation of hazards related to unintentional ignition should be developed by companies.

Gas-air mixtures within this scope are those above the lower explosive limit (LEL) and below the upper explosive limit (UEL).

Note: *Caution should be exercised, as varying gas concentrations within an environment might exist.*

Hydrocarbon liquids exposed to atmospheric conditions where unintentional ignition via a heat source or other ignition method are included within this scope.

10.7 Change of class location

10.7.1

This is a commentary on Clause 10.7.1.

Clause 10.7.1 recognizes that requirements for pipeline systems in locations where the class location designations change as a result of increases in population density should align with requirements throughout the Standard for the higher class location. It also includes a requirement to document conformances or non-conformances to the applicable requirements of the higher class location in accordance with Clause 10.7.2.

© 2015 CSA Group

Clause 10.7.1 has been expanded beyond the 2011 edition of the Standard to state that the purpose of the engineering assessment is to determine the suitability for continued service at the higher class location designation.

10.8 Crossings of existing pipelines

10.8.2

This is a commentary on Clause 10.8.2.

Clause 10.8.2 is intended to be used for both permanent and temporary crossings. The engineering assessment is required to consider pipe design data, surface load of vehicles, depth of cover, integrity of the pipe, and soil characteristics.

10.8.3

This is a commentary on Clause 10.8.3.

Clause 10.8.3 addresses pipeline stresses associated with surface loads at crossings not addressed in Clauses 10.8.1 and 10.8.2, including locations that were not intentionally designed and built as pipeline crossings (e.g., crossings by farm equipment, ATVs, horses, etc.).

10.9 Operation and maintenance of facilities and equipment

10.9.2 Aboveground tanks and pressure vessels

10.9.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 10.9.2.3.

These limitations are included in response to the concern that tank settlement could, in some situations, lead to high stresses and cracking in the repair welds at the junction of the shell and floor.

10.9.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 10.9.2.4.

The intent of the requirement for a 24 h hydrostatic test in API 653 is to reduce the risk of brittle failure while in service for tanks that have been repaired and are constructed of material that does not meet the toughness requirements of API 653.

10.9.2.5; 10.9.2.6; 10.9.2.7

This is a commentary on Clauses 10.9.2.5,10.9.2.6, and 10.9.2.7.

Clauses 10.9.2.5, 10.9.2.6, and 10.9.2.7 provide maintenance requirements for any secondary containment, emission control system, or leak detection system that is installed as required by the design requirements in Clause 4.15.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.9.5 Pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving systems

10.9.5.1

This is a commentary on Clause 10.9.5.1.

Clause 4.18.1 requires that pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving systems be set to operate at or below the maximum operating pressure. Reduced operating pressures could be required, for example, in response to failures (see Clause 10.3.6) or the presence of defects (see Clause 10.10.1.4).

10.9.5.3

This is a commentary on Clause 10.9.5.3.

Clause 10.9.5.3 provides the options of Item a), inspection, assessment, and testing in accordance with Clause 10.9.5.2, or Item b), inspection, assessment, and testing at a frequency determined by the operating company, in accordance with the requirements of API 576 and supporting data and documentation compiled by the company. This second option is less prescriptive and recognizes that pressure-relieving systems and devices typically exhibit very little deterioration or wear in service and therefore will in some cases not require the same interval of inspection and testing as pressure-control and pressure-limiting equipment. It is understood that with the use of Item b), the company's choice of inspection and test intervals for pressure-relieving systems must have the approval of the applicable regulating agency.

Rupture disks are excluded from Clause 10.9.5.3 because they would be destroyed in a successful test.

10.9.5.4

This is a commentary on Clause 10.9.5.4.

Rupture disks are recommended to be replaced on a regular schedule, depending on the application, past company experience, and manufacturer's recommendations. The intent of Clause 10.9.5.4 is to ensure that pressure-limiting and pressure-relieving systems (or devices) operate at or below the intended pressure, so it requires that the accuracy of the devices themselves, and the instruments used to calibrate them, be known and taken into account

10.10 Evaluation of imperfections

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.

Imperfections that are not acceptable according to the requirements are considered to be defects.

10.10.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.1.3.

When excavation and repair work is performed on in-service pipelines, Clause 10.2.8 requires that an evaluation be performed to determine a pressure that will be safe and not cause a failure while the work is being performed.

It is widely accepted that a hydrostatic pressure test performed at 1.25 times the operating pressure is a reliable demonstration that no defect is present that will cause an immediate failure at the operating pressure. In situations where excavation and examination of possibly injurious imperfections are performed, it is prudent to reduce the pressure to a value not greater than 80% of the recent operating

 © 2015 CSA Group

pressure. In situations where the loading on the piping can change or the resistance to failure can be reduced while the operations are being performed, additional assessment is needed to ensure that the pressure is reduced to a safe level.

10.10.1.5

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.1.5.

Clause 10.10.1.5 recognizes that the presence of an internal corrosion imperfection will reduce the tolerance of pipe to external imperfections. For corrosion imperfections, it is necessary to consider the sum of the maximum internal and maximum external depth to determine the maximum acceptable length of corroded areas when internal corrosion is present in the same area as external corrosion.

10.10.2 Corrosion imperfections in pipe

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.2.

The measurement of internal corrosion will, in most cases, rely on the results of nondestructive inspection to determine the dimensions of corroded areas. Errors in the indicated depth and length of corroded areas could result in an unsafe evaluation

10.10.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.2.4.

Clause 10.10.2.4 recognizes that preferential corrosion of electric weld seams or flash (i.e., continuous) welded pipe can create notch-like surface features, which can behave like cracks. Due to these special circumstances, such corrosion features are to be considered to be defects and are not to be evaluated using the methods applicable for pipe body and submerged arc weld corrosion.

10.10.2.5

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.2.5.

The 2011 edition of the Standard did not take into consideration class location assessment areas designated as 2, 3, or 4, for the purposes of determining the acceptability of corroded areas. The value of L in the equation should not exceed the location factor, L, used in the original construction for pipeline systems designed in accordance with the Standard, or if L was not used, the design factor used in the original construction divided by the design factor specified in Clause 4.3.6.

The ASME B31G evaluation method in Item a) for determining the acceptability of corrosion imperfections is based on extensive research, including full-scale burst tests, that was performed for the NG-18 Line Pipe Research Committee of the American Gas Association in the 1970s. The evaluation method was developed to determine the maximum dimensions (length and depth) of corrosion metal loss that would not cause a rupture at a hoop stress that is less than the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe being assessed. Continuing research, pressure testing, and extensive application of the method have shown that it provides a large factor of safety. Kiefner and Vieth (1989) also provide an explanation of the background of the ASME B31G method and of the development of a modified methodology that eliminates excess conservatism while still retaining adequate pipeline safety.

Item b) permits the use of assessment methods that are less conservative than ASME B31G, but proven. A number of alternative methods for assessing corrosion metal loss have been developed, the most common of which is the RSTRENG method described in Kiefner and Vieth (1989). The objective of these methods is generally to provide a more accurate description of the failure behaviour; however, such

methods can result in reduced factors of safety and require more information, knowledge, and skill than the ASME B31G evaluation method in Clause 10.10.2.5. The main advantage of using the Item b) option is the potential to accept some sort of corrosion damage that otherwise might have been rejected based on the ASME B31G methodology. For class 2 and higher LVP pipelines built to CSA Z183, the safety factors used in place at that time apply.

10.10.2.6

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.2.6.

Clause 10.10.2.6 defines the two methods permitted for the determination of the predicted failure pressure (P_{fail}) described in Item b) of Clause 10.10.2.5. The note references a PRCI Report that describes the methodology associated with the RSTRENG failure prediction methods; the details of these calculations are not appropriate for inclusion in the Standard. Both of these failure prediction methods have been widely used in industry, and a number of research projects by organizations such as British Gas, Battelle, and the University of Waterloo have demonstrated that these calculation methods provide a relatively accurate and safe prediction of burst pressure.

10.10.3 Gouges, grooves, and arc burns in pipe

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.3.

Gouges, grooves, and arc burns are considered to be defects because of the risk of associated cracking, and such cracks can grow and cause a leak or rupture. Unlike pipe body cracks, such defects cannot be considered acceptable on the basis of an engineering assessment because suitable assessment methods have not been developed and validated for this complex situation.

The acceptable repair methods will depend on the location of the gouge, groove, or arc burn, as described in Table 10.1.

10.10.4 Dents in pipe

10.10.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.4.2.

The limitation of 6% was based largely on consideration for the passage of internal inspection tools. Extensive research, including full-scale tests, that was performed for the Pipeline Research Committee of the American Gas Association, demonstrated that dents with depths larger than 6% had no significant effect on the structural integrity of piping (Eiber *et al*., 1981).

The situations specified in Note 1) are based on the experience of liquid pipeline operators and the findings and conclusions in API 1156.

Note 2) recognizes that dents caused by equipment damage, typically located in the top half of the pipe, are a serious concern because gouging is likely to be present, which can lead to delayed failure.

Note 3) describes the experience of operating companies that have found that excavated dents are usually much smaller than indicated by in-line inspection, due to a reduction in soil loading stress.

Note 4) is based on the concern for cracking and failure that could occur as the load caused by a rock is removed and the rerounding occurs under pressure. API 1156 includes recommendations for removal of a rock from a dent, including inspection for gouging and cracking.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Note 5) recognizes that re-rounding of constrained dents when the constraint is removed poses a danger to field personnel. Testing conducted by Kiefner and Associates provided a recommended pressure reduction for safe removal of the constraint.

10.10.7 Weld imperfections in mill seam welds and mill circumferential welds

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.7.

Weld imperfections are to be evaluated using the standards of acceptability applicable to the original manufacture of the item. Welding repair is not permissible for mill seam welds, nor is it needed, given that hot tap repair and other repair options are permissible in Table 10.1.

10.10.8 Ripples, wrinkles, and buckles

10.10.8.1

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.8.1.

Mild ripples or wrinkles (buckles) are often unavoidable when forming cold field bends in high-*D*/*t* pipe. These minor deformations occur in some field bends because cylinders subjected to axial compressive loads of sufficient magnitude may develop inward or outward radial deformations usually at minor initial geometric imperfections. Minor ripples, wrinkles, buckles, and collapse exist along a continuum of deformation response to axial loading. Ripples represent the smallest deformations and largest residual load-carrying capacity along this continuum.

The acceptance criteria described here was derived from research undertaken by Kiefner & Associates under contract to the Pipeline Research Committee International (PRCI). That work used finite element analysis (FEA) to estimate the effect of ripple magnitude and spacing on stresses due to pressure and bending. Stress concentration factors derived from the models were used with a suitable fatigue damage rule to estimate the effect of ripple parameters on service life. Results were benchmarked against available test data.

10.10.8.3

This is a commentary on Clause 10.10.8.3.

The criteria in this clause describe mathematically the acceptance curves for carbon steel gas and liquid products pipelines displayed in Figure 10.5.

10.11 Permanent repair methods

10.11.2 Grinding repairs

This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.2.

Provided that the minimum wall thickness requirements were met, grinding was first permitted as a permanent repair method for arc burns in the 1986 edition of CSA Z184 and also for gouges, grooves, and gouged dents in the 1992 edition. Grinding was first permitted as a permanent repair method for arc burns, gouges, and pits in the 1986 edition of CSA Z183.

© 2015 CSA Group

10.11.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.2.1.

Table 10.1 allows the use of grinding to repair cracks in pipelines. For safety reasons, grinding should never be carried out on cracks in pipe with a high internal pressure. Crack removal on in-service piping should employ the use of careful buffing using soft back disks or other means that does not create high surface temperatures.

10.11.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.2.3.

The 2011 edition of the Standard did not take into consideration class location assessment areas designated as 2, 3 or 4 for the purposes of determining the acceptability of grinding repairs. The value of L in the equation should not exceed the location factor, L, used in the original construction for pipeline systems designed in accordance with this standard, or if L was not used, the design factor used in the original construction divided by the design factor specified in Clause 4.3.6.

Clause 10.11.2.3 was revised to include the ability to assess resultant grind areas the same as corroded areas as in Clause 10.10.2.5. Clause 10.11.2.3 also removed the 40% WT limit because it was recognized that all grinding activities greater than 10% requires some level of assessment to determine the acceptability of leaving the pipe in-service without any further repair activity.

Item b) was included to emphasize that it is essential that the actual wall thickness be measured prior to grinding to ensure that sufficient material thickness is present to avoid release of pipeline contents when grinding on a pressurized pipe.

Item c) was revised to parallel revisions to Clause 10.10.2.5, with the option of

- limiting the maximum longitudinal length of the ground area to the ASME B31G criteria (first introduced in the 1992 edition of CAN/CSA-Z184); or
- limiting the MOP, as a function of the calculated failure pressure (P_{fail}), with the failure pressure calculated in accordance with Clause 10.11.2.4.

The maximum permissible depth of a grinding repair is limited to 40% of the nominal wall thickness, which is less than the maximum depth of 80% permitted for a corroded area, in order to provide an additional factor of safety. The profile of a ground area is likely to result in a metal loss area with a larger cross-section than that assumed for a corroded area with the same maximum depth.

10.11.3 Piping replacements

This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.3.

Pipe replacement is the preferred method of repair.

Research and development findings and industry experience in the application of other acceptable permanent repair methods have shown that, in many situations, other methods are much easier to perform properly and provide an equivalent level of safety for the repaired pipeline.

It can be difficult to obtain an exact dimensional fit of a new pipe into an existing pipeline. There have been instances in the industry where failures have occurred at the replacement pipe tie-in butt welds after the pipeline had been put back into service, due to residual stress and/or stress risers associated with weld joint mismatch.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.11.4 Repair sleeves for pipe

This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.4.

In situations where pipe replacement was considered impracticable, steel repair sleeves have been permitted as a method of permanent repair for many defects.

10.11.4.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.4.1.

These repair sleeve requirements do not apply to repairs on components due to the unique geometry of each application.

10.11.4.3 Composite reinforcement repair sleeves

This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.4.3.

All limitations on the use of fibreglass reinforcement repair sleeves are provided in Table 10.1. Table 10.1 permits the use of fibreglass reinforcement repair sleeves for the repair of dents, subject to the repair's meeting the requirements of Limitation 4) in Table 10.1. This is based on the experience and testing by Stress Engineering Services in Houston for GRI (GRI-97/0413.1), which concluded that Clock Spring fibreglass sleeves provide an acceptable means of permanent repair over dents.

Fibreglass reinforcement repair sleeves were developed in the late 1980s and have been used to repair a variety of pipeline defects in many countries. The most widely used fibreglass reinforcement sleeve system is Clock Spring, which is manufactured in the United States by the Clock Spring Company. The Gas Research Institute sponsored much of the research on the design methods and performance of the repair sleeve system; Stephens (1998) provides a summary of that work. When fibreglass reinforcement sleeves were included in the 1996 edition of the Standard, there had been approximately 10 000 installations of Clock Spring sleeves worldwide, including 5000 in the United States and more than 200 in Canada.

Clause 10.11.4.3 was developed to provide minimum performance requirements for the design, installation, and testing of a generic fibreglass reinforcement sleeve system so that the requirements are not specific to any single manufacturer's sleeve system. Stress rupture tests are required to verify that the extension of the sleeve material over extended periods of time will not result in unacceptable levels of stress in the region of the defect, under the operating conditions used for design of the sleeve system. Although it is not practical to perform the testing under the exact conditions of ASTM D2992, it is intended that the tests be analyzed in accordance with the procedures of that standard.

Clause 10.11.4.3 was revised by changing the title to replace "fibreglass" with the more generic term "composite". Reference to ASME D2992 was replaced by ASME PCC-2, Article 4.1 to expand the required testing to include not only fibreglass but additional materials as well. These changes would allow the use of other "non-fibreglass" repair systems to be used as pipe repairs if they meet all of the testing requirements.

10.11.4.4 Steel compression reinforcement repair sleeves

This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.4.4.

Compression-type steel repair sleeves are intended to impose a compressive hoop stress in the pipe wall (including the defect) over the normal operating pipeline pressure range. Therefore, there is no need to eliminate the stress concentrator by grinding. Compression-type sleeves have been installed

since the late 1990s and have no history of failure. Where compression sleeves have been removed after being in service for a period of time, there has been no evidence of pipe defect growth. Cyclic loading studies have been performed that show no defect growth or significant sleeve-end stresses in the carrier pipe.

The required engineering assessment recognizes that each piping repair involving a compression-type sleeve presents a unique set of variables that must be evaluated from an engineering perspective prior to installation, in an effort to ensure that the desired compression is attained in the carrier pipe wall. The success of a compression-type sleeve repair is highly dependent on the development and implementation of the correct installation procedures by trained personnel.

10.11.5 Defect removal by hot tapping

S This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.5.

Permanent repair by hot tapping to remove pipe material containing a defect has been used without difficulty by Canadian operators and is an acceptable method of repair in ASME B31.4 and B31.8.

10.11.6 Direct deposition welding

10.11.6.1

S This is a commentary on Clause 10.11.6.1.

The limitations for the use of direct deposition welding repair are as follows:

- An Edison Welding Institute (EWI) report entitled *Guidelines for Weld Deposition Repair on Pipelines* (1998) advises that additional research is required before application of this repair method could be approved for sour service piping, due to the potential effects of hydrogen in the steel and the resulting hardness in the repair area heat-affected zone. Liquid pipelines have the potential to impose cyclic loading on the pipe wall, causing concerns about susceptibility of the weld repair area to fatigue cracking and failure.
- There is insufficient experience and research available pertaining to the repair of defects within a dent or gouge by direct deposition welding. There are concerns about the potential for unanticipated metallurgical effects when depositing a weld repair over an existing weld (mill seam or circumferential).
- The minimum wall thickness of 3.2 mm was derived from the EWI report on weld deposition repair of pipelines. There is a greater potential for burn-through when welding on pipe wall thickness below this level.

The additional limitations specified in the Note [previously Note 1)] can influence the scope of repair that can be carried out on a given pipeline system.

Note 2) was removed since it directed the reader to Clause 16 only to find that direct deposition welding is not allowed on sour service. The addition of the descriptor “non-sour natural gas service” renders Note 2) redundant.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.12 Temporary repair methods

10.12.1 General

10.12.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 10.12.1.1.

All temporary repairs will be replaced by more reliable long-term permanent repairs in accordance with Table 10.1 at the earliest practical time.

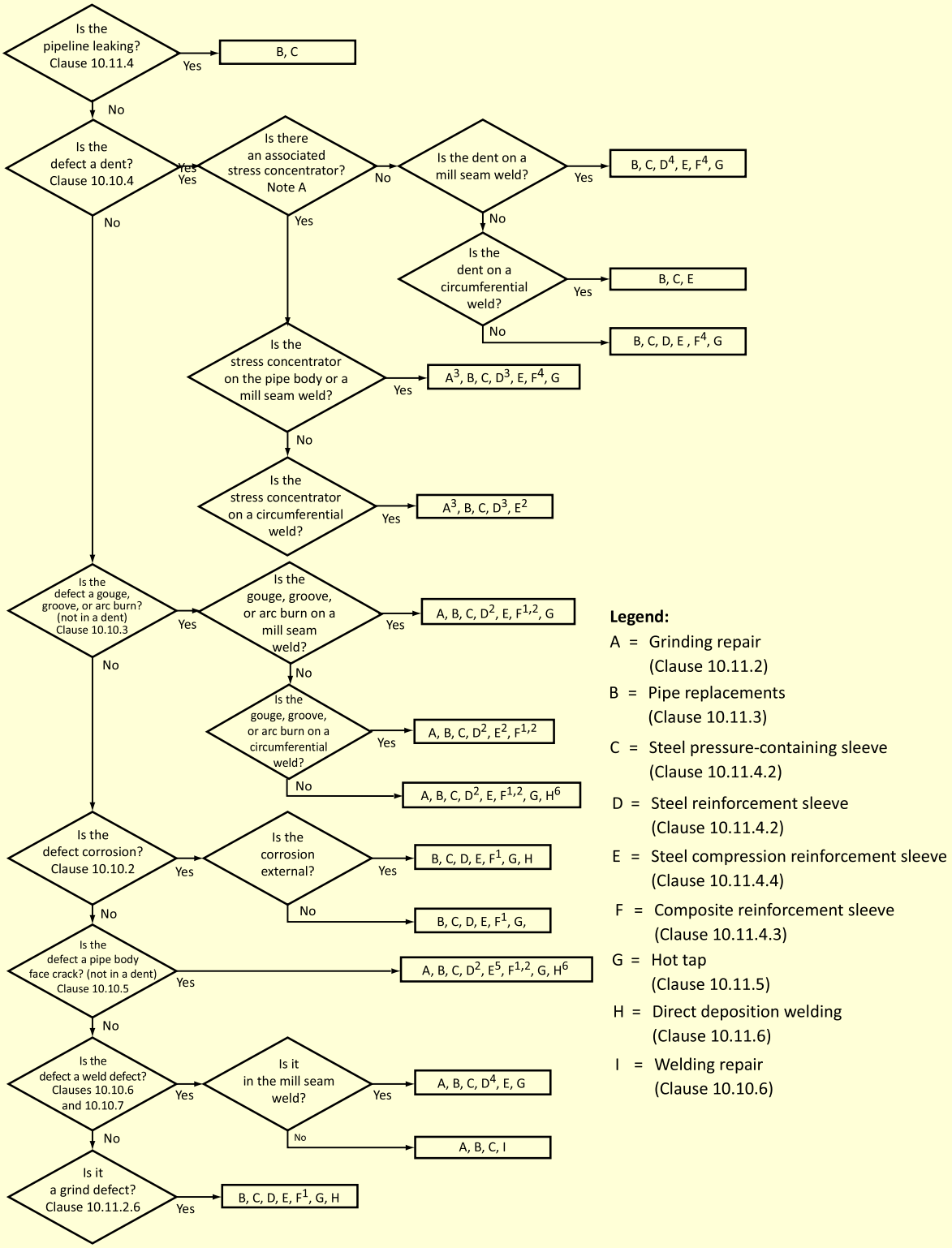
Table 10.1 Limitations on acceptable permanent repair methods

This is a commentary on Table 10.1.

The flow chart shown in Figure 9 of this Commentary was developed as a guideline to help with the use of Table 10.1 and the selection of appropriate repair options when defects are found in the piping material.

© 2015 CSA Group

Figure 9
Flow chart for Table 10.1



Legend:

A = Grinding repair (Clause 10.11.2)

B = Pipe replacements (Clause 10.11.3)

C = Steel pressure-containing sleeve (Clause 10.11.4.2)

D = Steel reinforcement sleeve (Clause 10.11.4.2)

E = Steel compression reinforcement sleeve (Clause 10.11.4.4)

F = Composite reinforcement sleeve (Clause 10.11.4.3)

G = Hot tap (Clause 10.11.5)

H = Direct deposition welding (Clause 10.11.6)

I = Welding repair (Clause 10.10.6)

(Continued)

Figure 9 (Concluded)

Limitations:

1) This repair method is not acceptable for defects with metal loss in excess of 80% of the nominal wall thickness of the pipe.
2) The stress concentrator (gouge, groove, arc burn, or crack) is to be removed by buffing in accordance with the requirements of Clauses 10.10.2.2 and 10.10.2.3 prior to the application of the sleeve.
3) The stress concentrator (gouge, groove, arc burn, or crack) is to be removed by buffing in accordance with the requirements of Clauses 10.10.2 and 10.10.2.3 prior to the dent being assessed for acceptability in accordance with the applicable requirements of Clause 10.10.4, with the depth of the ground area being excluded from the dent depth. This repair method is not acceptable unless both of the following apply:
   a) the dent depth is no longer a defect as described in Clause 10.10.4.2; and
   b) the remaining cyclic life of the pipe is considered acceptable, based on an engineering assessment that includes consideration of fatigue testing results for pipe without a sleeve.
4) This repair method is not acceptable unless all of the following apply:
   a) the dent is on the pipe body or a mill seam weld;
   b) the dent depth is 15% or less of the specified outside diameter of the pipe;
   c) any stress concentrators in the dent are removed by buffing in accordance with the requirements of Clauses 10.11.2.2 and 10.11.2.3;
   d) a suitable material is used to fill the dent prior to application of the sleeve, in order to prevent re-rounding of the pipe; and
   e) the remaining cyclic life of the pipe is considered to be acceptable, based on an engineering assessment that includes consideration of fatigue testing results for the sleeve system that is to be used.
5) Any circumferential cracks are to be removed by grinding prior to application of the sleeve.
6) The stress concentrator (gouge, groove, arc burn, or crack) is to be removed by grinding prior to performing direct deposition weld repairs.

Notes:

1) *As observed originally or after the grinding required by Limitations 3) and 4):*
   a) *with stress concentrator: Clause 10.10.4.2 a).*
   b) *without stress concentrator: Clause 10.10.4.2 b) to e).*

2) *Mill seam welds are longitudinal, helical, or skelp end pipe seam welds.*

3) *It is permissible for permanent repairs to be preceded by temporary repairs (Clause 10.12).*

10.13 Maintenance welding

10.13.2 In-service piping

10.13.2.2

S This is a commentary on Clause 10.13.2.2.

Clause 7.6.5 permits limited variation in the essential variables of a qualified welding procedure that could result in increased cooling rates. Cooling rates or levels of restraint higher than those used for the procedure qualification increase the risk of cracking. There are techniques used in the industry for quantifying the cooling rate on the surface of a pipe, typically involving locally heating the pipe and measuring the time required for the pipe to subsequently cool between two specified temperatures. Care must be taken when employing this technique on in-service piping to ensure that the pipe is not overheated during the test. Note 1) recognizes the potential for burn-through on the in-service pipe in situations where the cooling rate on the in-service piping is significantly lower than that used for the welding procedure qualification test joint.

 © 2015 CSA Group

10.14 Pipeline hot taps

This is a commentary on Clause 10.14.

It is the intent of Clause 10.14 that only qualified in-service welding procedure specifications be used for hot taps. With reference to the carbon equivalent limitation provided in Clause 7.17.2.4 for fillet welding and branch welding, it is therefore understood that the carbon equivalent of the carrier pipe to be hot tapped must be known prior to welding branch connections or reinforcement sleeves to the carrier pipe. The carbon equivalent can be determined using either a mill test certificate traceable to the carrier pipe in question or by performing a chemical analysis on the carrier pipe prior to welding.

Similarly, it is the intent of Clause 10.14 that the pipe wall cooling rate on the carrier pipe be no higher than that used during the in-service welding procedure qualification. This will in some cases require physical measurement of a cooling rate parameter on the carrier pipe in a manner similar to that employed during the welding procedure qualification test.

10.16 Abandonment of pipelines and pipe-type storage vessels

10.16.5 Records

This is a commentary on Clause 10.16.5.

During construction and excavation activities, buried lines that have been abandoned and left in place are not distinguishable from operating lines. Records of abandoned pipelines, including pipe diameter, maps, and locations of where the pipelines come above surface, are needed in order to reduce confusion about the identification and ownership of individual pipelines. The note is in consideration of possible future re-activation of an abandoned pipeline, where data such as the age of the line, material grade, pipe dimensions, coating type, etc., will be required during the re-activation process.

11 Offshore steel pipelines

This is a commentary on Clause 11.

Clause 11 is intended to provide and promote the use and application of uniform and consistent requirements for the design, construction, inspection, testing, operation, and maintenance of offshore pipelines. It is not intended to be a design handbook, and the need for exercising competent engineering judgment is crucial in its use and application. Specific requirements for abnormal or unusual conditions have not been provided. Due to the rapid pace at which technological advances are occurring in the offshore pipeline industry, not all details related to engineering and construction have been prescribed.

11.2 Design — General

11.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 11.2.1.

There are a number of differences between offshore and onshore pipelines that must be taken into consideration and addressed during the design stage. These include the following:

- the variety of installation methods and equipment used;
- the extent and influence of environmental conditions experienced during construction and pipeline operations;

 © 2015 CSA Group

- differences in joining methods, fabrication techniques, and in welding procedures for underwater work; and
- the differences in pipeline commissioning and deactivation requirements and procedures.

11.3 Design information

This is a commentary on Clause 11.3.

In regions along the proposed pipeline route where active faulting is suspected, investigations of seabed geology should be conducted to identify any surface or subsurface active faults that can pose a direct threat to the pipeline. These investigations should provide enough information to determine the geotechnical properties of the seabed and the potential for seismically induced liquefaction and slope instabilities, including slumping and turbidity currents and the liquefaction resistance of the surficial seabed deposits.

11.4 Design and load conditions

11.4.1

This is a commentary on Clause 11.4.1.

Special attention should be given to the effects of applied loads during installation; such loads can result in stresses and, in particular, strains, which should be taken into account when designing the pipe wall thickness. The effects of such applied loads are often very significant and are magnified in larger-diameter pipelines (where the *D/t* ratio is large) installed in deeper waters, wherein the effects of pipe sag and bend associated with the pipe-laying installation method can induce stresses and strains that result in the occurrence of local instabilities (such as local buckling or wrinkling of the pipeline during the pipe-laying operation). For this reason, two independent design load conditions have been identified. They are the “functional loads” design load condition and the “environmental loads and simultaneously acting functional loads” design load condition. Both should be considered in the overall design process.

Functional loads are necessary consequences of the existence of the pipeline. Functional loads include all construction and operating loads, as defined in Clauses 11.5.3 and 11.5.4. In cases of prestressing, such as permanent curvature or a permanent elongation induced during installation, residual stresses or strains, or both, should be taken into account because the capacity to carry other applied loads or other deformation-controlled loads can be reduced.

Environmental loads are random in nature and include all loads due to wind, waves, currents, ice conditions and features, seismic-related activities, marine growth, and other natural phenomena. The determination of environmental conditions should be based on models that provide a framework for the proper interpretation of relevant statistical observations and measurements. In all cases, due account must be taken of the manner in which offshore environmental data and other relevant information is collected and archived, and of the possible inherent errors and limitations of the data and information.

It is commonly accepted (and required by most regulatory authorities) that a return period of not less than 100 years must be used to determine the environmental loads during operation. In addition, it is now appropriate and convenient to determine environmental loads for offshore pipelines in accordance with the detailed provisions of Appendices C, D, E, and F of CAN/CSA-S471.

 © 2015 CSA Group

The waves and currents to be considered in the design of an offshore pipeline can result in

- excessive displacements or overall instability of the pipeline;
- fatigue; or
- excessive scour beneath the bottom of the pipeline resulting in pipeline spanning.

Where pipeline spanning does occur, waves or currents, or both, can give rise to vortex shedding, which can result in resonant oscillations of the pipeline. Appropriate consideration of dynamic amplification effects and fatigue should be accounted for in the design.

11.6 Environmental loads

11.6.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 11.6.1.4.

A minimum averaging window period should be established to define the load events for short-term construction and installation work. The return period should be left to the design engineer and contractor with respect to the acceptable level of risk exposure.

11.6.5 Loads due to ice conditions and regional ice features

This is a commentary on Clause 11.6.5.

A large portion of Canadian waters are subject to ice gouge events.

11.7 Design analysis

This is a commentary on Clause 11.7.

All load combinations, including functional (permanent and operational), environmental, and, where appropriate, accidental loads, must be considered for the construction phase, pressure-testing phase, and operation phase of the pipeline. In formulating load combinations, each load should be considered in turn to be at its most unfavourable value and this value should be combined with appropriate values of the other loads. Load combinations should therefore be obtained based on the following principles:

- Loads that are mutually dependent and are highly correlated (that is, one cannot occur in the absence of the other) should be combined at their most unfavourable values.
- Loads that are unlikely to occur together, such as an accidental load and a rare environmental event, should not be combined.
- Loads that can occur together, such as those resulting from the simultaneous occurrence of different environmental phenomena, should be combined on the basis of the probability of their simultaneous occurrence.

The concept of combining loads based on the probability of their simultaneous occurrence is well documented and defined in CAN/CSA-S471. The methods of establishing and defining combined loads specified in CAN/CSA-S471 are fully applicable to the determination of combined loads for the analysis and design of offshore pipelines.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.8 Design for mechanical strength

11.8.1 Design criteria for installation

This is a commentary on Clause 11.8.1.

The design criteria for installation have been expressed in terms of a strain limit (i.e., the maximum permissible installation strain in the pipe wall in any plane of orientation). The required magnitude of the strain limit, which includes both the maximum permissible tensile and compressive installation strains, was first analytically determined and then specified at a maximum value of 2.5%. This strain limit includes both the elastic and inelastic components of the strain. For all practical purposes, this strain limit was established on the basis of the strain tolerances that would be required for the various types of pipe installation techniques that were commonly available to, and the installation procedures that were used by, the offshore pipe-laying industry at that time, and on the expected limitations and characteristics of the offshore installation equipment. The magnitude of the prescribed strain limit also took into consideration the allowable strains specified in DNV OS-F101.

Except for pipelines having relatively small diameter-to-thickness ratios, it is commonly acknowledged that the compressive strain limit cannot be reached because, normally, local instabilities, such as buckling, wrinkling, or collapse of the pipe will be the controlling failure mechanism of the pipeline.

11.8.2 Design criteria for pressure testing

This is a commentary on Clause 11.8.2.

The design criteria for pressure testing are expressed in terms of a stress limit. An offshore pipeline must be designed to be able to withstand a strength test pressure of at least 1.25 times its intended maximum operating pressure. During pressure testing, the maximum combined effective stress must not exceed the allowable stress as defined in Clause 11.8.4. For offshore pipelines, the magnitude of the allowable stress design factor, as given in Table 11.1, is 1.00 [i.e., it is limited to 100% of the specified minimum yield strength (SMYS)], whereas the allowable stress design factor for onshore pipelines is 1.10 (i.e., limited to 110% of the SMYS) (see Table 8.1). The difference in pressure-testing requirements of offshore and onshore pipelines arises from the fact that offshore pipelines are most commonly laid directly on the seabed, without any cover. This location affords the exposed offshore pipeline very little soil restraint against global instabilities, such as lateral elastic buckling, which could result in a multiple S-shape configuration of the pipeline on the seabed. Conversely, onshore pipelines are most commonly buried and, as such, are generally afforded an extensive amount of soil restraint, thereby preventing both lateral movement and upheaval buckling.

11.8.3 Design criteria for operation

This is a commentary on Clause 11.8.3.

The design criteria for operation require that criteria be specified separately for stresses arising from applied external and internal loads and for strains induced as a result of strain-controlled loads. The design criteria for stresses due to the application of external and internal loads have been expressed in terms of a stress limit, which includes both the elastic and inelastic components of the strain.

Although it is not directly stated, the 2.5% strain limit also applies to the maximum permissible compressive strain; however, except for pipelines having relatively small diameter-to-thickness ratios, the strains associated with an operating pipeline will not approach this strain limit, but will usually be limited by local instabilities such as local buckling, wrinkling, or collapse of the pipe. The magnitude of

 © 2015 CSA Group

the strain limit expressed in Clause 11.8.3 also takes into account the allowable strains specified in the 1981 DNV Rules.

11.8.4 Determination of stresses

This is a commentary on Clause 11.8.4.

For offshore pipelines, the calculation of stresses is based on the use of the design minimum wall thickness. As a result, the design wall thickness determined on the basis of the internal fluid design pressure is specified to be the required minimum pipe wall thickness. This is not the way design wall thickness is determined for onshore pipelines, where it is specified to be the nominal wall thickness. The use of the minimum design wall thickness for offshore pipelines was adopted for two reasons. First, because an offshore pipeline is normally exposed (not buried), any global instabilities associated with the pipeline will generally be predicated on the basis of its minimum stiffness, which is a direct function of the wall thickness. Second, the brittle fracture failure phenomenon is best described and evaluated by the use of fracture mechanics principles, and these principles rely heavily on a very accurate determination of the stress field associated with any potential fracture initiation location.

11.8.6 Strain-based design

This is a commentary on Clause 11.8.6.

Engineering design applications for uneven seabed terrain, deep water, high temperature, high pressure, frost heave/thaw settlement in offshore permafrost, ice gouging, slope instability, slumping, and liquefaction require the use of strain-based design methods.

11.19 Emergency shutdown valve

This is a commentary on Clause 11.19.

Clause 11.19 was developed in response to investigative findings, new design practices, and new regulations and guidelines established in the UK and elsewhere that arose from the Piper Alpha offshore production platform tragedy in the North Sea. A major factor in the excessive loss of life and the extensive devastation of this offshore platform was the uncontrollable discharge of very large volumes of gas from an inbound connecting offshore gas transmission pipeline, which fed the fire after the initial gas leakage and explosion. Clause 11.19 requires careful consideration, at the design stage, of the need for an emergency shutdown (ESD) valve in situations where an offshore pipeline is to be connected to an offshore platform.

11.20 Materials

This is a commentary on Clause 11.20.

Clause 11.20 specifies that materials are to be in accordance with the requirements of Clause 5.1, which permits several pipe standards or specifications. If an offshore pipeline is to be designed using elastoplastic design criteria (i.e., based on a strain limit approach), relevant additional mechanical properties and the actual stress/strain characteristics of the steel should be considered in the design, in addition to the requirements in Clause 5.

11.21 Installation

This is a commentary on Clause 11.21.

These requirements were derived from Sections 6 and 8 of the 1981 DNV Rules.

 © 2015 CSA Group

11.22 Welding

This is a commentary on Clause 11.22.

These requirements were derived from Section 8 of the 1981 DNV Rules and Clause 6 of CSA Z183-M1982, which were broadened to include requirements that are specific to underwater welding.

11.24 Pressure testing

This is a commentary on Clause 11.24.

These requirements were adopted from Clause 8 of CSA Z183-M1982 and CSA Z184-M1983.

11.24.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 11.24.1.

The purpose of pressure testing is to verify that the tested sections are leakproof and have the required structural strength to withstand the design pressure with the anticipated level of safety. For offshore pipelines, the functional and environmental loads to be considered for pressure testing are quite different from those considered for the operating condition. Instruments and equipment for measuring pressure, volume, and/or temperature must have an appropriate measuring range with sufficient accuracy to yield reliable results.

11.24.3 Test pressure

This is a commentary on Clause 11.24.3.

The maximum combined stress for an offshore pipeline, which is typically not buried, during pressure testing is not to exceed 100% of the von Mises equivalent stress during pressure testing, as specified in Clause 11.8.4.4 and Table 11.1. This is quite different from that allowed for onshore pipelines, which are typically buried, wherein the maximum allowable test pressure, when expressed in terms of the maximum allowable hoop stress, can be permitted to go as high as 110% of the specified minimum yield strength of the steel pipe material (see Table 8.1).

11.24.4 Pressure-test medium

This is a commentary on Clause 11.24.4.

Where water or another appropriate liquid is to be used as the test medium, the necessary procedures should be followed during filling of the pipe sections to ensure that any volume of air remaining in the test section is minimized or, where possible, eliminated. As in Clause 8.8.2, sour fluids (as defined in Clause 10.2.10) are not permitted for pressure testing.

11.25 Corrosion control

This is a commentary on Clause 11.25.

These requirements were derived from NACE RP0675 and RP0175, Section 6 of the 1981 DNV Rules, and Clause 9 of CSA Z183-M1982.

© 2015 CSA Group

11.25.2 External corrosion control — Protective coatings

This is a commentary on Clause 11.25.2.

External corrosion protection systems for offshore pipelines and risers must be designed to protect the pipelines and risers adequately in both the submerged and splash zones. When external coatings are to be used for corrosion protection, the coating material should be able to demonstrate satisfactory long-term performance under similar environmental exposure conditions. In addition, the coating material should have sufficient long-term strength and adhesion to minimize rusting of the steel substrate and shielding of the cathodic protection in case coating disbondment occurs.

11.26 Operating and maintenance

This is a commentary on Clause 11.26.

These requirements were originally derived from Section 9 of the 1981 DNV Rules and Clause 10 of CSA Z183-M1982.

12 Gas distribution systems

This is a commentary on Clause 12.

The applicable pipe dimension, pipe grade, and intended operating pressure collectively determine whether or not the requirements in Clause 12 can be applied.

12.1 General

12.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 12.1.1.

Clause 12 covers the stations and piping indicated by solid lines in Figure 12.1. The piping that is included starts at the inlet of the station where the gas is measured, odorized, and/or pressure-regulated or at the outlet of the custody transfer station and ends at the outlet of the customer's meter set assembly.

12.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 12.1.2.

In the note, it is recognized that piping designed, constructed, and operated in accordance with the applicable requirements of Clause 12 might later need to be upgraded to operate at hoop stresses of 30% or more of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe. In such cases, modifications to the joints used and to items such as valves, fittings, and regulating stations could be required. Accordingly, the designer should consider the long-term impacts of the operating capabilities of all items in the piping system.

12.2 Applicability

This is a commentary on Clause 12.2.

The requirements of Clause 12 are intended to modify, add to, or supersede the applicable requirements in Clauses 1 to 10. Requirements that modify, or are additional to, requirements in Clauses 1 to 10 are not specially noted because such requirements speak for themselves and do not conflict with the earlier requirements.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.3 Gas containing hydrogen sulphide

This is a commentary on Clause 12.3.

This requirement contains the commercial definition of “sweet gas” for contractual purposes; it should not be construed as providing a specific definition for “sour gas” for gas distribution systems. The terms “sour gas” and “sour fluid” have historically been used to designate fluids that can affect materials and/or public safety. The permissible limit for hydrogen sulphide stated herein is well below the limits stated or implied elsewhere in the Standard for sour gas or sour fluid, and therefore such gas will not affect materials and/or public safety. The stated limit of 7 mg of hydrogen sulphide per cubic metre of gas at an absolute pressure of 101.325 kPa at 15 °C is equivalent to a trace as determined by the lead-acetate test.

12.4 Design

12.4.1 Steel piping

12.4.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.1.1.

Piping materials other than steel (polyethylene and copper) are commonly used, and the appropriate requirements are stipulated in Clauses 12.4.2 to 12.4.6. For most steel piping, the requirements of Clause 4 apply without modification.

12.4.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.1.3.

Clause 12.4.1.3 requires that design of piping containing pressure fittings include features to avoid separation of these fittings due to in-service pull-out forces. This typically involves the use of appropriate restraint devices to counteract potential pull-out forces.

12.4.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.1.4.

Clause 12.4.1.4 addresses situations where compression fittings have been included in the design as an intentional “weak link” in the piping. In this situation, the intent is to use the compression fitting at a location that would minimize the consequences of a line failure in the event that abnormal forces are inadvertently applied to the piping (e.g., by a digging tool during excavation).

12.4.2 Polyethylene piping — Design pressure

12.4.2.2

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.2.2.

The temperature factor for elevated temperatures was replaced with the elevated temperature *HDB* for *HDB*-rated materials and with the *CRS* for *MRS*-rated materials.

PPI updates the *HDB*, *MRS*, and *CRS* listings in PPI TR-4 at least annually on their website (www.plasticpipe.org).

© 2015 CSA Group

The chemical derating factor was introduced for applications where liquid hydrocarbons or methanol are present. This could either be liquid hydrocarbons inside the thermoplastic pipe or liquid hydrocarbons in the soil surrounding the thermoplastic pipe.

12.4.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.2.3.

The ISO *MRS* and *CRS* design coefficient (*C*) of 2.0 was added to be consistent with the ISO 4437 for PE gas pipe.

To utilize the superior slow crack growth (SCG) and rapid crack propagation (RCP) performance properties of bimodal PE compounds, Clause 12 adopted a design factor of 0.45.

12.4.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.2.4.

The chemical design factor of 0.5 for polyethylene (PE) in the presence of liquid hydrocarbons is based on long-term ASTM D2837 testing of PE pipe with liquid condensate as the internal medium. The chemical design factor of 0.5 for PVC in the presence of liquid hydrocarbons is the recommendation from Uni-Bell, the PVC Pipe Association. The chemical design factor of 0.65 for polyamide (PA) in the presence of methanol is based on the chemical resistance testing requirements for PA in CSA B137.12.

12.4.2.5

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.2.5.

The temperature factor for elevated temperatures was replaced with the elevated temperature *HDB* for *HDB*-rated materials and with the *CRS* for *MRS*-rated materials.

12.4.3 Polyethylene piping — Design limitations

12.4.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.3.1.

Clause 12.4.3.1 was updated by increasing the maximum temperature for polyethylene from 50 to 60 °C. This is consistent with industry practice and the maximum temperature of 60 °C for HDB values published in PPI TR-4 for polyethylene materials.

Service risers may be operated in the temperature range of 30 to 60 °C, provided that the time period is short and the increased temperature is due to ambient conditions. This limitation was based upon work carried out by the Plastic Pipe Institute (PPI TR-9).

12.4.3.6

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.3.6.

Rapid crack propagation (RCP) is an important property for the gas engineer to consider in the design of a gas system, especially for large diameter or high-pressure gas applications. The RCP requirement proposed here is consistent with the RCP requirement in ISO 4437, the international standard for PE materials used in gas piping applications.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.4.7 Cover

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.7.

Table 12.2 was amended to remove a specified clearance minimum of 50 mm for distribution and service lines to harmonize CSA Z662 and the electrical code for underground cables, CAN/CSA-C22.3 No. 7. Clearance for distribution lines is governed by Clause 4.11.3.

12.4.9 Limitations on operating pressure — General

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.9.

These requirements provide an overview of the pressure limitations for various materials and applications upstream of the customer's meter, and are additionally concerned with the potential effect on the operation of equipment downstream of the customer's meter.

12.4.13 Distribution system valves — Valve location and spacing

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.13.

Requirements are provided for selecting valve locations in the gas distribution system and outside of regulator stations and buildings, to ensure that measures can be taken in emergency situations to shut off the gas distribution system or parts thereof.

12.4.14 Distribution system valves — Service shutoffs

12.4.14.3

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.14.3.

To minimize the possibility of cores being removed without the use of specialized tools, options include

- selecting tamper resistant valves; or
- preventing access by installing locking devices, shields, or guards on the valves that make nuts and bolts inaccessible

12.4.14.7

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.14.7.

Clause 12.4.14.7 is intended to harmonize CSA Z662 and CSA B149.1 and aid in preventing accidental shutoff of the gas supply to generators used for safety purposes. Clause 7.2.3 of CSA B149.1, which deals with gas supply lines to generators used for safety purposes, requires clear labelling of the valves to prevent accidental shutoff.

12.4.15 Customers' meters and service regulators

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.15.

It is common industry practice to install service regulators inside buildings, particularly in downtown locations, where options for outdoor regulators are limited or nil. Clause 12.4.15 makes it mandatory for operating companies to design service lines where service regulators are located inside a building such that an uncontrolled release of gas inside the building will be mitigated, if a failure occurs. For example, the company can install an excess flow valve to automatically shut off the flow of gas or have a readily accessible external valve located above ground for quick shutoff. Permanent marking suggestions in Note 1) of Clause 12.4.15.1 are intended to make the presence of such regulators

 © 2015 CSA Group

obvious, especially in situations where emergency crews are called in response to a gas line failure incident.

12.4.15.3

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.15.3.

Customers' meters are required to be located in accessible locations in order to permit them to be read and properly maintained.

12.4.15.5

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.15.5.

The term "operating diaphragm" is intended to allow for the use of the T-OPCO (with or without thermal-protection over-pressure cut-off) type of regulators that are designed not to require venting to the outside atmosphere even where an operating diaphragm failure is possible. Since Clause 12.4.15.5 was originally written, there have been ongoing improvements in the technology of natural gas regulators. Between the operating diaphragm and the atmosphere, there is a second diaphragm known as the safety diaphragm.

The safety diaphragm limits the escape of gas to the atmosphere to 0.071 m^3/h of natural gas or 0.028 m^3/h of propane gas in the event of an operating diaphragm failure. When the operating diaphragm fails, the regulator's OPCO device automatically cuts off supply to the downstream piping, resulting in a service call.

12.4.15.8

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.15.8.

Piping downstream of meters is outside of the scope of CSA Z662 and is covered by CSA B149.1. Clause 12.4.15.8 is intended to address situations where flexible metallic tubing (e.g., corrugated stainless steel, copper tubing, etc.) is connected directly to the downstream side of the meter. When such flexible tubing is connected directly to the gas meter, the support of the meter can be compromised, requiring that the meter be supported independently in such situations.

12.4.17 Liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) pipeline systems

This is a commentary on Clause 12.4.17.

Clause 12.4.17 provides a limited overview of requirements for liquefied petroleum gas systems. Such systems are occasionally used as a permanent or temporary source of gaseous fuel for pipeline systems where natural gas is not available or until a natural gas source becomes available. Detailed requirements for the installation of piping downstream of the customer meter or regulator are contained in CSA B149.1.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.5 Materials

12.5.3 Polyethylene pipe, tubing, and components

12.5.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 12.5.3.1.

It should be noted that CSA B137.4 governs polyethylene materials for gas distribution service, whereas API 15LE governs polyethylene materials for other (non-distribution) oil and gas services.

12.5.3.3

This is a commentary on Clause 12.5.3.3.

To justify use of this higher 0.45 design factor, there are stringent SCG and RCP requirements. The SCG PENT requirement is 2000 h to be consistent with the 2000 h PENT requirement for PE 100 compounds. The RCP small-scale steady state requirement is 1000 kPa at 0 °C to be consistent with PE 100+ requirements. As a means of notifying the user that a particular PE compound meets these requirements for a 0.45 design factor, the pipe material designation code includes a PLUS, such as PE 2708 PLUS or PE 4710 PLUS.

12.5.3.4

This is a commentary on Clause 12.5.3.4.

The PENT requirement of 2000 h was specified to assure PE 100 compounds are bimodal. The RCP requirement of 1000 kPa was introduced for PE 100 compounds to be consistent for RCP requirement for PE 100+ compounds.

12.6 Installation

12.6.2 Steel piping

This is a commentary on Clause 12.6.2.

Wrinkle bends are permitted in recognition of the fact that loading conditions in gas distribution systems are insufficiently severe to cause failures to occur at the wrinkle bends.

12.6.4 Polyethylene piping — General

12.6.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause 12.6.4.2.

This restriction specified in Clause 12.6.4.2 is imposed in order to protect the polyethylene from the adverse effects of ultraviolet (UV) rays and limit its exposure to extreme temperatures.

12.6.4.3

This is a commentary on Clause 12.6.4.3.

A gas-tight metal pipe is prescribed in order to provide protection against external stresses that could affect performance, given that the vaults are open to the atmosphere and intended to be accessed.

© 2015 CSA Group

12.6.4.5

This is a commentary on Clause 12.6.4.5.

Metallic wire installed along the polyethylene piping is the primary method used to indicate the approximate location of the piping; however, there are other appropriate methods (e.g., metallic tape or tuned coils) that could be used.

12.6.6 Polyethylene piping — Direct burial

12.6.6.1

This is a commentary on Clause 12.6.6.1.

Rock impingement on the piping is a potential source of damage that can be mitigated by the use of padding with sand or fine-grained soils or other suitable methods.

12.6.6.2

This is a commentary on Clause 12.6.6.2.

The thermal coefficient of linear expansion for polyethylene can be ten or more times the coefficient for steel. Precautions to be taken to account for contraction in order to avoid overstressing the piping can include

- snaking the pipe from one side of the ditch to the other; and
- allowing time for the piping to cool to the ground temperature before the final tie-in is made.

12.6.12 Installation of service lines — Additional installation requirements for polyethylene service lines

12.6.12.2

This is a commentary on Clause 12.6.12.2.

The metallic sheathing specified in Item a) provides protection against mechanical damage, as well as damage caused by UV rays.

12.6.13 Trenchless installations

12.6.13.5

This is a commentary on Clause 12.6.13.5.

The use of weak links or breakaway connectors is an appropriate way to ensure that the pulling forces remain within acceptable limits.

12.7 Joining

12.7.2 Steel pipe joints and connections — Essential changes for qualification of welding procedure specification

This is a commentary on Clause 12.7.2.

The Commentary for Table 7.3 is applicable to the essential changes listed in Table 12.3.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.7.11 Joints in copper pipe and tubing

This is a commentary on Clause 12.7.11.

Copper joints are used primarily for providing service connections to the main and in applications upstream of the customer's meter. (For downstream applications, see CSA B149.1.) The primary method for joining copper pipe and tubing is to use compression-type couplings. The use of copper in buried applications has largely been replaced by the use of polyethylene; however, copper is frequently used for above-ground applications.

12.7.12 Service line connections

This is a commentary on Clause 12.7.12.

Requirements are provided to cover the variety of materials that can be used for service lines in gas distribution systems and the variety of mains to which they are attached. Of particular importance for any service line connections is the pull-out resistance of mechanical fittings, given that service lines are frequently subjected to external loading during or after installation, either from ground movement or contraction of the piping material itself.

12.8 Pressure testing

12.8.1 Piping in distribution systems intended to be operated at pressures in excess of 700 kPa

12.8.1.7

This is a commentary on Clause 12.8.1.7.

Clause 12.8.1.7 allows for the use of any nontoxic gas as the test medium, due to the difficulty in removing liquid test fluids caused by smaller inside diameter pipe couplers, tees, 90° elbows, etc.

12.8.3 Piping within customers' buildings

This is a commentary on Clause 12.8.3.

The piping that is covered by Clause 12.8.3 is the piping within a customer's building upstream of the customer's meter.

12.8.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 12.8.3.2.

Proper purging of the gas piping is required in order to subsequently enable downstream gas appliances to be properly lit.

12.8.4 Polyethylene piping

12.8.4.6

This is a commentary on Clause 12.8.4.6.

The intent of the note is to caution that some leak detection liquids can be harmful to PE piping if not removed from the pipe surface after testing.

 © 2015 CSA Group

12.10 Operating, maintenance, and upgrading

12.10.6 Pressure-control, pressure-limiting, and pressure-relieving devices

This is a commentary on Clause 12.10.6.

The requirements in Clause 12.10.6 are consistent with industry practice for gas distribution systems and recognize that a less stringent frequency of inspection than that specified in Clauses 10.9.5.2 and 10.9.5.3 is appropriate for the safe and reliable operation of such devices.

12.10.7 Repair procedures for steel distribution pipeline systems

This is a commentary on Clause 12.10.7.

The requirements of Clauses 10.10.2 to 10.10.8 are considered to be unnecessarily restrictive for piping in distribution systems due to operating pressures that result in hoop stresses of less than 30% of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

12.10.8 Maintenance welding

This is a commentary on Clause 12.10.8.

The consequences of a hydrogen-induced cold crack for gas distribution piping are quite different from those for high-pressure applications. It is not necessary for the welding procedure specification, the procedure qualification, and the welder qualification to be based upon the cooling rates and levels of restraint that are appropriate for the expected line flowing conditions and ambient temperatures.

12.10.9 Squeezing of polyethylene and polyamide pipe for pressure-control purposes

12.10.9.2

This is a commentary on Clause 12.10.9.2.

The rationale for each item is as follows.

- Item a): All squeezing equipment and procedures are proven to be both safe (i.e., do not induce excessive damage to the pipe) and effective (i.e., effectively cut off gas flow in the piping).
- Item b): Squeezing operations have the potential to induce some degree of damage in the pipe wall and thereby pose a risk of affecting the long-term performance of the pipe. Installation of reinforcement after squeezing will mitigate this potential risk. Newer formulations of PE pipe are more resistant to slow-crack growth than older PE formulations and therefore might not need reinforcement.
- Item c): Pipe that has been squeezed once will be at a higher risk of exhibiting pipe wall damage after a second squeezing. By marking the squeezed pipe locations, the risk of resqueezing at the same location on non-reinforced pipe is eliminated.
- Item d): The squeezing process increases the gas velocity, which can cause a static charge build-up on the inner pipe wall. If sufficient potential (voltage) is attained, static electricity discharge can cause ignition of a gas-air mixture at the squeeze location.
- Item e): Squeezing is to be avoided at a location that been previously squeezed, to reduce the possibility of additional pipe wall damage. Squeezing near components should be avoided to prevent stress concentrations at the pipe-to-component connections.
- Item f): The amount of pipe wall damage will depend on the material properties, geometry of the squeeze equipment, and pipe dimensions.

© 2015 CSA Group

- Item g): Experiments conducted by GRI and Battelle have indicated that damage of the internal pipe wall is most likely to occur during the initial stages of the reopening, with the likelihood of damage increasing with the rate of release.
- Item h): Research has shown that the lower the pipe temperature, the more extensive the pipe wall damage incurred for a given degree of compression. The degree of damage is dependent on the specific PE material being squeezed and should be investigated. Changes to squeezing procedures can include such things as longer wait times for stress relaxation and slower squeeze and release rates.

13 Reinforced composite, thermoplastic-lined, and polyethylene pipelines

This is a commentary on Clause 13.

The requirements in Clause 13 are applicable to the design, materials, installation, repairs, operation, and maintenance of free-standing composite non-metallic pipelines, polyethylene pipelines, and plastic (e.g., high-density polyethylene) pipeline liners.

13.1 Reinforced composite pipelines

13.1.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.1.

The scope of Clause 13.1 includes individual and continuous-length pipe. Categories of continuous length pipes covered are spoolable composite pipe (SCP), fibreglass-reinforced thermoplastic pipe (RTP), and steel-reinforced thermoplastic pipe. SCP and RTP are addressed in API RP 15S, while steel-reinforced thermoplastic pipe is covered in API 17J.

13.1.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.1.3.

Clause 13.1.1.3 restricts use to typical oil and gas production pipelines that are the basis of Clause 13 requirements. Operating pressures in gas gathering systems typically range between 30 and 60% of the specified pressure ratings for reinforced composite piping materials.

13.1.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.1.4.

Limiting H_2S content based on partial pressure is considered more appropriate than using a percent concentration limit. Although hydrogen sulphide is not inherently damaging to reinforced composite plastic piping, a 50 kPa maximum hydrogen sulphide partial pressure was chosen as a limitation to help ensure safety in the event of a gas pipeline leak and due to lack of understanding as to the effects of permeation of hydrogen sulphide through these pipes.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.1.2 Design

13.1.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.1.

Operating experience has shown that a high percentage of composite piping failures have been the result of secondary load factors, as opposed to simply the hoop stress caused by internal pressure.

13.1.2.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.2.

Clause 13.1.2.2 does not require separate testing for each application; however, it is intended that the manufacturer be consulted in order to confirm the material's suitability for the design service conditions.

Items d) and e) highlight the risk of using metallic materials that can be susceptible to sulphide stress cracking when exposed to H_2S.

13.1.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.3.

Reinforced composite pipe is more anisotropic (i.e., it has different hoop and axial strengths) than conventional steel materials. This is an important consideration in design because two different values for strength will in some cases be necessary to calculate the hoop and axial loading requirements.

13.1.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.4.

Some reinforced composite pipes use an internal liner that is not reinforced. In the design formula calculation, only the reinforced wall thickness portion is to be considered when determining the design wall thickness that is used to calculate the allowable design pressure.

13.1.2.5

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.5.

Clause 13.1.2.5 specifies that the manufacturer's product properties are used for basis of the design and requires that the properties used must be for the design temperature or higher.

13.1.2.6

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.6.

Operating experience has shown that many composite pipeline failures have been related to localized stresses (e.g., bending or shear) caused by in-service pipe movement. Unstable ground conditions (e.g., settlement, liquefaction, frost heave, etc.) can play a role in creating such failure-inducing pipe movements.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.1.2.8

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.8.

The use of a pipe manufacturer's pressure rating (MPR), combined with a service fluid factor (F_{fluid} listed in the new Table 13.1), allows for a generic approach to the determination of the appropriate design pressure for any composite pipe product in different service conditions.

Table 13.1 Reinforced composite pipes; Clause 13.1.2.9

This is a commentary on Table 13.1; Clause 13.1.2.9.

Table 13.1 clearly shows the various categories of composite pipe material, as well as the applicable API materials standard and the maximum service fluid factors for each product category for gas, LVP liquids, and oilfield water services.

13.1.2.10

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.10.

The use of an additional derating factor to be applied to the allowed design pressure for severe cyclic pressure services recognizes the detrimental effects that numerous pressure cycles can have on the integrity of reinforced composite piping. Where the manufacturer has qualified its pipe under cyclic service conditions, no additional derating factor need be applied.

13.1.2.12

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.12.

The designer is required to consider the loading on the reinforced composite pipe from external loads (e.g., valves, connections to steel pipe, risers) because reinforced composite pipe is more susceptible than steel pipe to damage and failure due to external forces. It is intended that consideration be given to the mass effects of the steel pipe and components, as well as to the effects of thermal stresses that are generated due to the fact that steel and composite materials have different thermal expansion properties.

13.1.2.14

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.14.

There have been a number of occasions where buried steel piping materials attached to composite pipelines have failed as a result of internal or external corrosion, due to a lack of corrosion protection. As this can be an area of distributed soil conditions, to minimize pipe movement due to settling or thermal stresses, adequate soil support must be provided to prevent coating damage on the steel pipe or stress damage to the composite pipe.

13.1.2.15

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.15.

Similar to Clause 13.1.2.14, for cases where reinforced composite pipes is joined to steel piping below ground similar measures are stated to prevent excessive soil settlement and unacceptable pipe movements that may lead to pipe damage and failures.

© 2015 CSA Group

13.1.2.16

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.2.16.

Since steel risers and below-ground couplings that are connected to reinforced composite pipe can be prone to corrosion, the requirements for internal and external corrosion control of the steel pipeline riser portions are to be determined in accordance with Clause 9.

For corrosion control of risers or couplings, where either solid corrosion resistant alloys (CRA) or corrosion resistant metallic coatings are used over steel, measures such as cathodic protection may not be required if an engineering assessment indicates adequate corrosion resistance of the CRA or metallic coating for the life of the pipeline.

Where installed on steel risers, the cathodic protection system is required to be monitored. Where installed on steel inline pipe couplings, cathodic protection should be monitored if practicable given the access conditions, criticality of service and design of the cathodic protection. For example, where the anode life is designed to be sufficient for the pipeline design life, monitoring may not be required.

13.1.4 Installation

13.1.4.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.4.1.

The requirement to include a metallic tracer wire in the ditch adjacent to all reinforced composite pipelines is to facilitate locating the pipeline using pipeline line-locating devices prior to performing any digs at or near the pipeline, for safety reasons.

The tracer wire is not to be placed below the pipeline; instead, it is to be positioned beside or above the reinforced composite pipeline for a more accurate determination of depth of cover and as a safety precaution during digging (whereby the tracer wire would be exposed first, thus alerting the operator before the pipeline is inadvertently damaged). Orientation of the tracer wire might not be possible when doing plough installation.

13.1.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.4.2.

Typically, based on industry experience, the depths used for steel construction are also adequate for reinforced composite pipelines.

13.1.4.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.4.3.

Special requirements are necessary for reinforced composite flanged connections. Reinforced composite flanges have less inherent strength and are more susceptible than steel flanges to over-torque damage. The weight of flanged assemblies can require additional support. Reinforced composite flanges also require special gaskets as recommended by the pipe manufacturer.

© 2015 CSA Group

13.1.4.4

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.4.4.

Special considerations are necessary because reinforced composite pipe is more susceptible than steel pipe to mechanical damage in both ploughing and trenching installation methods. Such considerations include the following:

- For the pipeline trench, provide a smooth trench bottom in order to provide a continuous solid support for the pipe. The intent is to avoid point-to-point loading of the pipe. A typical trench excavation tool that is used to avoid this problem is a wheel-type ditcher (rather than a backhoe).
- For the prevention of damage due to rocks, a clean rock-free soil or sand barrier of at least 150 mm thickness is required below and around the entire pipe circumference prior to the application of conventional backfill measures. In the past, there have been cases where rocks not immediately adjacent to the pipe have shifted after the pipeline has been placed in service and eventually caused wear damage to the reinforced composite pipe; accordingly, it was determined, based on industry experience, that a 150 mm rock-free buffer would be advisable.
- To avoid unacceptable deflection of larger-diameter pipe due to external loads, the designer, in consultation with the pipe manufacturer, is required to determine whether to prescribe that backfill material around the bottom half of the pipe be compacted prior to completion of the backfilling operation.
- The user should pay particular attention to the manufacturer's requirements for bedding as these will be based on practical experience with their product.

13.1.4.7

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.4.7.

Where reinforced composite pipe is used as a free-standing liner inside an existing steel pipeline, the steel pipe becomes a mere conduit and allows installation of the reinforced composite pipeline without ditch excavation.

Note 1) recommends pressure testing the liner pipe prior to insertion in order to locate leaks in connections or in the pipe body.

Note 2) cautions that the steel carrier pipe can contain fluids that could remain in the annulus between the steel carrier pipe and the composite liner pipe and that there can be a risk of such fluids subsequently freezing and damaging the composite liner. The company should remove the fluid prior to the liner installation if the risk is considered great enough. This is also a good reason to install casing seals.

Note 3) provides advice about the commonly recommended practice of running a pig of an appropriate size through the steel pipeline prior to the liner installation, to verify that the liner can be pulled through the pipeline without encountering any internal projections that might damage the liner.

13.1.4.8

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.4.8.

Buckles and bending beyond the manufacturers recommendations can cause damage to the internal strength layer of the composite, even if the buckle is subsequently smoothed out. If this happens, the section should be removed and repaired.

© 2015 CSA Group

Cracks in the external layers can lead to water ingress into the strength layer of the composite which could eventually lead to a pipeline failure.

13.1.4.9

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.4.9.

In cold weather, some additional considerations may include warming the pipe prior to unspooling (i.e., heated enclosure) or a larger minimum bend radius since the pipe will become more brittle, less flexible, and susceptible to damage in cold weather conditions.

13.1.5 Joining

13.1.5.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.5.1.

It is expected that the installation company and the pipe manufacturer work together to establish and document a joining procedure to be used for the specific construction project.

13.1.5.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.5.2.

Studies and testing have identified that the best gas-tight threaded connections are achieved using moulded threads, such as are specified in Item a), due to improved dimensional tolerances and less damage during make-up and break-out cycles. The flanged connection specified in Item c) will typically require a threaded connection between the pipe and flange, and such threaded connections are to be in accordance with Item a), b), or c). The elastomeric seal referenced in Item b) must be compatible with service and installation conditions as described in Clause 13.1.5.3.

For Item c), it is understood that the flanged connection will typically require a threaded or adhesively bonded connection between the pipe and flange, and that such connections are to be in accordance with Item a) or e).

13.1.5.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.5.3.

Clause 13.1.5.3 addresses requirements for connection types that require an elastomeric O-ring seal. O-ring material must be suitable for both installation and operating conditions. For example, wintertime construction could require O-rings with suitable low-temperature properties that would not necessarily be a concern under operating conditions. There could also be chemical compounds in the production fluids that have the potential to attack some grades of elastomers.

13.1.5.4

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.5.4.

This requirement reflects the differences in strength and thermal expansion between reinforced composites and steel. Having the steel on the outside helps provide containment of the reinforced composite, which has a greater tendency than that of steel to expand due to pressure and temperature differences. A steel male fitting also has the potential to over-stress a composite female fitting.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.1.6 Joining personnel — training and qualification

13.1.6.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.6.1.

The intent of Clause 13.1.6.1 is to ensure that the installation company involves the pipe manufacturer in the training and qualification of the personnel who will perform the joining. Typically, the pipe manufacturer will provide personnel to train and qualify the contractor's personnel on site.

13.1.6.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.6.3.

The company should ensure that a test joint is witnessed and inspected as part of the manufacturers' joining personnel qualification process.

13.1.6.4

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.6.4.

The pipe manufacturer should provide a training certificate for contractor's personnel to prove their competence in installation of the product. Since each composite product has different installation requirements, it's important that the pipe manufacturer is involved in training and certifying the installers.

13.1.6.6

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.6.6.

Requalification is required to ensure pipe joiners still have the knowledge and experience necessary to complete a satisfactory joint.

13.1.6.7

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.6.7.

Documentation of qualification needs to include all parameters that might affect the competency of the pipe joiner for future joints. As different types of joints and joining techniques might be required for different products and pipe sizes, the pipe installer must ensure detailed records are kept to minimize future requalification.

13.1.7 Joining inspection

13.1.7.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.7.1.

Prior to joining, an inspection and test plan is necessary so that it can be used to verify joint quality after joints are completed. The pipe manufacturer needs to be involved in this as they might already have an inspection and test plan available for use in accordance with their installation requirements.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.1.7.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.7.2.

Personnel responsible for visual inspection should be competent in properly identifying joints that do not meet manufacturer's quality control requirements. Manufacturers should be consulted to provide visual inspection guidelines and training as necessary.

13.1.8 Pressure testing

13.1.8.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.8.2.

Although there are potentially increased threats to safety associated with the use of air testing in lieu of conventional hydrostatic testing, there are situations where air testing offers economic and practical advantages over hydrostatic pressure testing. Most reinforced composite pipes have design pressure capabilities well in excess of 2900 kPa; therefore, the risk of catastrophic failure of such piping during an air test is considered minimal. The 2900 kPa limitation means that it is applicable only for low-pressure reinforced composite pipelines and forecloses the use of air testing of pipelines with high design pressures. 2900 kPa is selected to be roughly compatible with high-pressure HDPE pipe systems that might be used for distribution gas purposes.

The use of water as the pressure test medium is the most effective means of locating minor weeps, such as those that occur at threaded connections, or at minor surface mechanical or manufacturing defects.

The note recognizes that reinforced composite materials have a relatively high thermal coefficient of expansion. Temperature fluctuations will therefore have a more significant effect on pressure than would be experienced with steel piping of a similar size.

13.1.8.5

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.8.5.

These test period limits are consistent with the pressure test requirements for polyethylene pipelines, as specified in Clause 13.3.8.1. The 8 h hydrotest duration exceeds the 4 h limit specified for steel pipe in Clause 8, while the 24 h pneumatic test duration is equivalent to the pneumatic test duration in Clause 8 for steel pipe.

13.1.8.7

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.8.7.

For pipelines that are segmented for pressure testing, each segment, including the flanged end connection, is to be pressure tested prior to joining the segments together.

The 1 h visual leak assessment is considered to be adequate to confirm the integrity of these non-pressure tested tie-in connections.

© 2015 CSA Group

13.1.9 Operation

13.1.9.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.9.2.

As for all non-metallic piping materials, the maximum pressure capability of reinforced composite pipe is much more sensitive to increases in temperature than that of steel pipe, and therefore the temperature issue requires closer scrutiny.

13.1.10 Pipeline repairs

13.1.10.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.10.2.

The 4 h leak test is thought to be a reasonable amount of time for assessing the integrity of the repair while the pipe is subjected to the highest available operating pressure.

13.1.11 Deactivation or abandonment

This is a commentary on Clause 13.1.11.

Composite pipelines typically have polyethylene components that can absorb a significant amount of gas or fluid during operation. Additionally, the internal strength layer often has spaces where gases can accumulate. Once pressure is reduced to zero, these absorbed gases or fluids could evolve over time, potentially leading to unexpected contamination of surrounding soils.

13.2 Thermoplastic-lined pipelines

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.

An example of a thermoplastic material other than high-density polyethylene is polyamide (e.g., PA-11 nylon).

13.2.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.1.

Thermoplastic liners are installed in pipelines in order to provide corrosion protection for the pipeline; the liners rely on the steel carrier pipe to provide the required mechanical strength for the pressure design strength requirements. Thermoplastic liners have been used primarily in oilfield applications, including multiphase fluid and oilfield water pipelines, and sometimes in gas gathering pipelines.

13.2.2 Design

13.2.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.2.1.

The liner manufacturer’s published properties are used as the basis for the design of thermoplastic liners. The primary mechanical requirements for the liner are normally determined based on installation requirements such as fusion welding and insertion methods (e.g., pull loads, pull lengths). Pull lengths are limited by the strength of the liner material. Typical installation segment lengths are in the range of 500 to 1000 m, and each segment is attached to the adjoining segment by a set of flanged connections.

 © 2015 CSA Group

The design operating conditions are not the only factors to consider when determining the liner thickness; for fusion welding of the liner, a minimum wall thickness is required to ensure proper alignment, complete fusion, and adequate weld strength. Normally, the company, in consultation with the liner manufacturer, determines the liner dimensions and installation lengths.

13.2.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.2.3.

There are no restrictions on the service applications for thermoplastic liners; however, the designer is cautioned that special considerations are appropriate for applications where fluids such as liquid hydrocarbons or hydrocarbon-based chemical additives are present. Swelling and loss of mechanical properties of the liner due to liquid hydrocarbon absorption is a fairly common phenomenon and can lead to an increased chance of liner collapse.

13.2.2.6

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.2.6.

The flanges used to connect lined segments are normally conventional steel, raised-face style; however, they will in some cases require minor modifications to accommodate the liner. Such modifications include trimming the raised face and applying a radius to the shoulder of the raised face to the ID bore.

13.2.2.7; 13.2.2.8

This is a commentary on Clauses 13.2.2.7 and 13.2.2.8.

At the flanged end of each segment, a vent must be installed in order to provide for the venting of the annulus between the liner and the steel carrier pipe. Thermoplastic materials are known to allow permeation of gas, which can accumulate in the annulus and lead to collapse of the liner under severe cases (e.g., rapid line de-pressuring). It is intended that such vents be left open during installation in order to allow air to escape as the liner is expanded into place; this is part of the installation technique and acts as a check of the liner integrity. During normal operation, the vents are intended to remain closed for safe operation.

In some cases, annulus vents can be located in areas where it is not possible to install an above-ground vent connection. In such cases, it is acceptable to install a jumper connection across the flange pairs to connect each segment annulus and allow for venting at the next vent location. This approach is not recommended for more than two flange pairs.

13.2.2.9

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.2.9.

Long radius bends must be installed in order to enable the liner to be installed properly and without damage. The specific requirements for bend radius can vary and the liner manufacturer should be consulted. For example, a segment with several bends can limit the overall pull length.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.2.3 Materials

13.2.3.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.3.1.

Cell classification of polyethylene pipe material is currently based on a series of numbers (from 1 to 6) followed by a letter, defining the density, melt index, flexural modulus, tensile strength, stress crack resistance, hydrostatic design basis, and colour/UV stabilizer, as specified in ASTM D3350. Table 1 in ASTM D3350 lists the cell class limits for each property, along with the ASTM test method employed to determine each material property.

13.2.3.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.3.3.

Liner wall thickness requirements will vary depending on material type, service conditions, and the intended installation practices. The liner supplier and/or manufacturer should assist with determination of liner dimensions.

13.2.4 Installation

13.2.4.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.4.1.

It is important that the steel carrier pipe be in suitable condition, in order to prevent damage to the liner during insertion. Accordingly, sizing pigs are to be run through the pipeline in order to check that the minimum internal diameter and bend radius requirements are met and to check for the presence of any internal projections, such as excess weld penetration, that should be removed prior to inserting the liner.

13.2.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.4.2.

To prevent further corrosion damage to the carrier pipe after the liner is installed, as well as to remove any pre-existing deposits that might interfere with the liner installation, it is required that pipelines that have been in service be cleaned internally prior to lining and that consideration be given to chemically treating (e.g., batching a corrosion inhibitor) the steel carrier pipe in order to mitigate any possible corrosion that can occur after the liner is installed.

13.2.4.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.4.3.

During installation, a certain amount of mechanical damage to the liner (e.g., scratches or small slits) can occur.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.2.5 Joining liners

13.2.5.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.5.1.

Liners are joined by a heat fusion welding process. Although it provides acceptable performance, this process results in some loss of elongation at the fusion weld. Clause 13.2.5.1 references Clause 13.3.5, which specifies that the minimum tensile strength in the weld zone be within 5% of the tensile strength of the adjoining parent HDPE pipe material and that the elongation in the weld zone be 25% or higher. Clause 13.3.5 also requires that, for any project, a documented heat fusion joining procedure be in place and that such a procedure be certified by the HDPE pipe manufacturer. The Standard is silent on joining requirements for other thermoplastic liner materials. In such instances, the manufacturer, supplier, or installer of these other thermoplastic liner products would typically be relied upon to provide suitable proven joining procedures.

13.2.5.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.5.2.

There are no industry-published standards regarding methods for testing and qualifying joining procedures or for testing joining personnel. For this reason, the company is to ensure that the installer and/or the manufacturer satisfy the requirements of Clause 13.2.5.2 on a project-by-project basis. It is intended that an installer and/or manufacturer requalify the personnel for each job (at least if there were changes in liner diameter or material manufacturer), unless the installer and/or manufacturer is able to demonstrate that the personnel are qualified, based on previous project training and experience.

13.2.6 Flange connections

13.2.6.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.6.2.

Typically, the flanges used to connect lined segments are a conventional steel, raised-face design; however, they will in some cases require minor modifications to accommodate the liner. Such modifications include trimming the raised face and applying a radius to the shoulder of the raised face to the ID bore. As the design can vary by application and there is no standard design available, the liner installer must be consulted for drawings and details of the modifications required.

13.2.6.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.6.3.

The flanges in the steel carrier pipe required to join each liner segment can be installed either prior to or after the initial hydrostatic pressure test of the carrier pipe that precedes the liner installation.

© 2015 CSA Group

13.2.7 Pressure testing

13.2.7.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.7.1.

Pressure testing following the liner insertion is primarily intended to leak test the liner, not to test the mechanical integrity of the steel carrier piping. The intent is to inspect annulus vents while the pressure is held at 2.0 MPa, after a leak test above 2.0 MPa, to check for evidence of possible liner leaks that might have been sealed in the annulus when the pressure was above 2.0 MPa. Controlled depressurization is required to avoid potential liner collapse or other damage due to rapid pressure reduction.

13.2.7.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.7.2.

The intent of Clause 13.2.7.2 is to have the annulus vents monitored during the liner pressure test for evidence of pressure build-up or escaping fluids. As indicated in the note, pressure build-up or fluid flow during the initial stages of the test would not necessarily be associated with a liner failure, but this condition at the vents should disappear once the liner is fully expanded. It is not the intent of Clause 13.2.7.2 to leave annular vents open to atmosphere while unattended during the test, as a liner failure in this instance could lead to an uncontrolled discharge of test fluids to the environment.

13.2.7.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.7.3.

It is understood that a liner failure, such as a leak, requires complete removal of the affected liner segment and typically requires replacement of the entire length, unless the liner manufacturer or installer has a proven technique for satisfactorily repairing the damage in the retrieved liner segment.

13.2.8 Operation and maintenance

13.2.8.2

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.8.2.

The designer should be aware that, in some cases, strong chemical additives and solvents might not be compatible with the liner material.

13.2.8.6

This is a commentary on Clause 13.2.8.6.

Thermoplastic liners often absorb chemical species from the operating fluids in service, and subsequent depressurization and inactivity of a lined pipeline can result in the egress of noxious or hazardous vapours and/or liquids from the liner material.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.3 Polyethylene pipelines

13.3.2 Design

13.3.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.2.1.

The company should verify the suitability of polyethylene for liquid hydrocarbon service; usually, this is accomplished through discussion with the pipe manufacturer. The note also alerts the designer to consider the effects of any chemical additives, given that they can have a detrimental effect, depending on the chemical type and the duration of exposure.

13.3.2.2, Table 13.2 Material classification and minimum property values; Table 13.3 Service fluid factor (*F*); Table 13.4 Design temperature factor (*T*)

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.2.2; Tables 13.2,13.3, and 13.4.

The materials designation code is the acronym PE (for polyethylene), followed by two ASTM D3350 cell classification numerical values for density and slow crack growth resistance (SCG), and then two numerical values for the hydrostatic design stress for water at 23 °C in hundreds of psi, with tens and units dropped. A zero is inserted for values less than ten. Changes to PPI TR-3 allow an increased HDS for water for materials that demonstrate a SCG resistance greater than 500 h in accordance with ASTM F1473, PENT, and reduced ASTM D2837 data scatter, as well as substantiation that the transition to brittle failure does not occur before 50 years.

The service factor for dry gas is consistent with API 15LE and is higher than that for wet gas because the service conditions are deemed to be less severe.

13.3.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.2.3.

Fittings and flanges often have pressure ratings that are different than that of the pipe. The assignment of pressure ratings is the responsibility of the fitting and flange manufacturers.

13.3.2.5

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.2.5.

When dealing with a relatively low-strength material like polyethylene, consideration of the effects of mechanical stresses due to soil loads, thermal expansion/contraction, and external loading in the design is more critical than it is for steel systems, which can have a greater margin of strength.

13.3.2.6

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.2.6.

The requirements specified for steel pipelines with respect to depth of cover are also appropriate for pipelines that are not located within a road or railway right-of-way.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.3.2.7

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.2.7.

The requirements specified for steel pipelines in cased crossings are also appropriate for polyethylene pipelines.

13.3.2.8

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.2.8.

This requirement is essentially the same as that specified for uncased polyethylene pipeline crossings for gas distribution pipelines in Clause 12.4.8.4.

13.3.2.9

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.2.9.

The situation where polyethylene pipe is pulled through a steel pipeline and used as a free-standing liner is analogous to the use of free-standing reinforced composite pipe as a liner inside a steel pipeline (see Clause 13.1.4.8).

13.3.4 Installation

13.3.4.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.4.1.

Because polyethylene pipe is non-conductive, a metallic marker must be installed in the ditch adjacent to, or above, the pipe in order to enable underground electronic pipe location equipment to serve its intended purpose. Such equipment will not locate polyethylene pipe without the metallic marker. The tracer wire is not to be placed below the pipeline; instead, it is to be positioned beside or above the reinforced composite pipeline for a more accurate determination of depth of cover and as a safety precaution during digging (whereby the tracer wire would be exposed first, thus alerting the operator before the pipeline is inadvertently damaged). Orientation of the tracer wire might not be possible when doing plough installation. When the installation depth exceeds normal practice, a thicker tracer wire should be considered to allow for easier line locating in the future as it can be difficult to locate pipe with tracer wires.

13.3.4.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.4.3.

In cold weather, some additional considerations may include warming the pipe prior to unspooling (i.e., heated enclosure) or a larger minimum bend radius since the pipe will become more brittle and susceptible to damage in cold weather conditions.

13.3.4.4

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.4.4.

Special considerations are necessary because polyethylene pipe is more susceptible than steel pipe to mechanical damage. Such considerations include the following:

- For the pipeline trench, provide a smooth trench bottom in order to provide a continuous solid support for the pipe. The intent is to avoid point-to-point loading of the pipe. A typical trench excavation tool that is used to avoid this problem is a wheel-type ditcher (rather than a backhoe).

 © 2015 CSA Group

- For the prevention of damage due to rocks, a clean rock-free soil or sand barrier of at least 150 mm thickness is required below and around the entire pipe circumference prior to the application of conventional backfill measures. In the past, there have been cases where rocks not immediately adjacent to the pipe have shifted after the pipeline has been placed in service and eventually caused wear damage to the fibreglass pipe; accordingly, it was determined, based on industry experience, that a 150 mm rock-free buffer would be advisable.
- To avoid unacceptable deflection of larger-diameter pipe due to external loads, the designer, in consultation with the pipe manufacturer, is required to determine whether to prescribe that the backfill material around the bottom half of the pipe be compacted prior to completion of the backfilling operation.
- Handling pipe joints and fittings can also cause damage unless wide, padded straps are used and load distribution is considered to avoid one point load during handling (two straps instead of one).

13.3.4.8

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.4.8.

High soil loads and wear on the casing pipe end can occur in the absence of suitable protection where the pipe exits the casing. Often, such protection can be provided by extra soil compaction below the casing exit points and by the provision of rubber matting, or equivalent, around the polyethylene pipe in order to prevent cutting or wear by the steel casing end.

13.3.5 Joining procedure and qualification

13.3.5.3

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.5.3.

Polyethylene pipes used for pipelines are produced by extrusion of polyethylene resins. The manufacturers of the polyethylene resins are separate from the polyethylene pipe extrusion manufacturers. The requirement is for the manufacturer of the polyethylene resin to develop and supply the recommended fusion joining parameters, such as fusion temperatures and the fusion pressure. These are required to develop project fusion joining procedures for pipeline installations and the parameters may vary based on the resin type. Manufacturers are required to perform fusion joining tests and qualification on the resins they supply to industry and supply testing results to the end user company.

13.3.5.4

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.5.4.

Heat-fusion joining is sensitive to ambient conditions, which therefore must be taken into account in the procedure.

13.3.5.6

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.5.6.

Requires qualification of the joining procedure using pipe or fittings of the same grade and dimensions that will be used for the project since joining procedures can vary significantly for dimensionally different pipe, fittings, material grades, and pipe manufacturers.

© 2015 CSA Group

13.3.5.7

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.5.7.

Since testing methods for polyethylene pipe joints are unique and different than methods used for steel welds, suitable mechanical testing methods are specified.

13.3.5.9

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.5.9.

A documented joining procedure manual is prepared by the Installer to include the job-specific joining procedures that have been developed for the job. This is intended to improve the level of documentation for joining and quality control procedures that are to be used by joining personnel at the construction site.

13.3.5.10

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.5.10.

Since fusion joining quality will be affected by site conditions, joiner competency, joining equipment, and material grades, the Installer is required to verify that the joining procedure produces acceptable joints.

13.3.6 Joining personnel — Competency requirements

13.3.6.4

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.6.4.

To help determine the qualifications of fusion joining personnel, the training organization is required to issue evidence of personnel qualification that states key training information and includes a unique identification number to allow traceability.

13.3.6.6

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.6.6.

Since fusion joining quality can be affected by factors such as new pipe material grades or new joining equipment, industry active joining personnel are required to be re-assessed every 2 years and inactive personnel after 1 year of inactivity.

13.3.7 Joining inspection

13.3.7.5

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.7.5.

The installer may choose from destructive test methods provided in Clause 13.3.5.7 that include either a tensile strength test, usually done in a laboratory, or a bend back test often performed in the field. Since brittle failure mode of fusion joints is often indicative of low joint quality and lack of fusion, a ductile failure mode is specified by Clause 13.3.5.7.

 © 2015 CSA Group

13.3.7.6

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.7.6.

Since a lack of commonality and published methods exists for fusion joint bend tests, a bend testing procedure is given.

13.3.7.8

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.7.8.

Services containing H_2S are considered to have higher consequences if a joint failure occurs in service; therefore, increased testing frequency is specified compared to Clause 13.3.7.9 for services not containing H_2S.

13.3.8 Pressure testing

13.3.8.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.8.1.

Polyethylene pipe is known to creep slightly when pressurized; therefore, the pressure testing using liquid medium allows limited measured amounts of test liquid to be added during the pressure test in order to maintain the testing pressure. The upper specified limit on the volume of test medium allowed to be added is provided in Table 13.5.

Since polyethylene strength is affected by temperature, the design temperature upper limit is to be specified so as not to overheat the pipeline during pneumatic pressure testing due to the discharge of hot air from the compressor. Being a thermoplastic material, the strength of polyethylene is significantly affected by relatively minor increases in temperature (as illustrated in the design temperature factors listed in Table 13.4).

13.3.9 Operation and maintenance

13.3.9.1

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.9.1.

The strength and pressure-retaining capability of polyethylene pipe is highly sensitive to temperature changes. There have been HDPE pipeline failures due to excessive temperature excursions, both during pressure testing and while in service.

13.3.9.4

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.9.4.

The leak test requirement, as well as the additional follow-up leak detection survey for gas gathering pipeline between 48 h and 1 month after the pipeline is put back into service, is analogous to the requirements in Clause 13.3.8.2 for tie-in joints.

13.3.9.5

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.9.5.

Static electricity can build up on polyethylene pipe, due to flow and to the fact that the pipe is non-conductive. Industry practice has indicated that this condition should be taken into consideration,

 © 2015 CSA Group

especially for pipelines conducting high-resistance fluids, such as some pure hydrocarbon liquids (e.g., jet fuel). In some cases, static charges can build up on steel components such as steel valves that are installed within polyethylene pipeline systems. Clause 13.3.9.5 is intended to be cautionary; operating companies should be aware of this characteristic of polyethylene and develop suitable grounding or operating procedures to provide dissipation of static electricity. Pipe manufacturers can provide further guidance and information regarding the potential for static electricity build-up.

13.3.9.6

This is a commentary on Clause 13.3.9.6.

Polyethylene can absorb a significant amount of gas or fluid during operation. Once pressure is reduced to zero, these absorbed gases or fluids could evolve over time, potentially leading to unexpected contamination of surrounding soils.

14 Steam distribution pipelines and high temperature pipelines

14.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 14.1.

In the 2015 edition of the Standard, the scope of Clause 14 was expanded from steam distribution pipelines to also include other high temperature pipelines (e.g., some production pipelines).

14.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 14.1.1.

Steam distribution pipeline systems transport steam from the steam generation facilities to injection wells, often through a satellite manifold facility. In some cases, the pipelines serve the added purpose of transporting the production (multiphase product) back to a processing facility, after completion of the steaming cycle.

Commercial steam distribution pipeline systems and high temperature pipeline systems are installed above ground, with supports on piles at regular intervals. The underground variety is not used in modern commercial installations due to the onerous necessity of providing adequate pipeline flexibility to relieve thermal stresses and the difficulty of insulating underground installations while maintaining external corrosion protection. For this reason, in the 2015 edition of the Standard, the scope of Clause 14 has been limited to above ground pipelines systems.

As shown in the scope diagram (Figure 1.1), the Standard does not apply to the steam injection wellhead, the distribution satellite, or the steam generation facility (which can also be the hydrocarbon processing plant). The scope diagram does not display flow direction; the pipeline could be in multiple service (e.g., production and steam injection), in which case there would be two-directional flow. The lease piping between the wellhead and the distribution satellite, as well as the satellite piping, could be designed and constructed to ASME B31.3, if the operating company chooses to do so, or as directed by the responsible regulatory authority. The decision can be based on convenience (e.g., having the same contractor do the majority of the on-lease piping).

14.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 14.1.3.

Facilities such as satellite test facilities, production facilities, and processing plants are normally designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of CSA B51 and the associated ASME standards, which are consistent with the requirements of the provincial regulatory authorities responsible for plant facility piping.

14.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 14.1.4.

Annex I was developed primarily for the purpose of using higher-strength (e.g., Gr. 550), larger-diameter seam-welded line pipe material in high pressure steam distribution pipeline applications. Annex I is not intended for multiple service pipelines or for other high temperature pipelines services.

14.2 Design

This is a commentary on Clause 14.2.

In general, the design philosophy has been adapted from ASME B31.3, which covers a much higher range of design temperatures than Clause 4 of the Standard, and includes adequate safety factors in the design of pipe wall thickness calculations for internal pressure. The use of the ASME philosophy ensures that there will always be an economic and adequate separation between the actual sustained operating stress and both the tensile stress and the yield stress of the pipe (i.e., piping would deform before failure). The permitted values for the combined stress due to thermal and sustained loads ensure there is a safe margin below both the tensile and yield strength. In addition to the conservative derating for temperature, the following are some of the highlights of the design philosophy of ASME B31.3:

- ASME B31.3 joint efficiency is 0.85 for electric resistance welded (ERW) pipe, whereas the CSA joint factor for all types of electric welded pipe is 1.00 (see Clause 4.3.8 and Table 4.3).
- ASME B31.3 does not use nominal wall thickness in the design calculations; instead, it uses the more conservative approach involving the minimum wall thickness that is provided by the applicable pipe manufacturing standard; for seamless pipe, the under-thickness tolerance is typically 12.5%.
- In general, ASME B31.3 uses 1/3 of the tensile strength or 2/3 of the yield strength of the pipe material at design temperature, whichever is less, as the allowable design stress in the wall thickness equation. This ensures that there is a safe separation between the actual sustained operating stress and the tensile and yield strength of the pipe.
- ASME B31.3 requires that the corrosion allowance be increased by the pipe's under-thickness tolerance (generally, 1.14 times the corrosion allowance is used).
- Generally, ASME B31.3 limits the allowable displacement stress range, SA (or thermal stress), in such a way that it can exceed the yield strength but cannot exceed the tensile strength of the pipe material.
- Generally, ASME B31.3 allows the combined thermal and sustained longitudinal stress to exceed the yield strength but not to exceed the tensile strength of the pipe material.
- ASME B31.3 calculations for thermal stress and combined stress (i.e., thermal and sustained stresses) ensure that the tensile strength is not exceeded.
- Generally, the ASME philosophy ensures that the hoop stress (also called the circumferential stress) will not exceed 2/3 (67%) of the specified minimum yield strength (SMYS) at the design temperature; however, in many cases the allowable hoop stress is much less than 2/3 of the SMYS. As stated in Clause 4.3.5, the hoop stress allowed for conventional pipelines can be as high as 80% of the specified minimum yield strength at the design temperature.

Some of the requirements in Clause 14.2 highlight and clarify requirements in ASME B31.3. Clause 14.2 also includes cautionary notes that will aid the designer. It is important to note that the designer can

© 2015 CSA Group

follow Clause 14 and its references to specific ASME B31.3 clauses without having to refer to other (non-referenced) ASME clauses; in effect, the designer is led directly to the applicable ASME clauses.

Creep failures and/or the prevention of creep-type failures are not addressed in Clause 14 because creep failures have not been a problem to date, perhaps due to the fact that steam distribution and other high temperature pipelines are operated at relatively low temperatures (when compared to the creep temperature of carbon steel). The company should monitor the behaviour of the materials in service.

14.2.1 General

14.2.1.1

S This is a commentary on Clause 14.2.1.1.

Maximum pipe deflections are not stated. The allowable amount of deflection varies with the size and slope of the pipeline, and must be specified by the designer.

14.2.1.2

S This is a commentary on Clause 14.2.1.2.

Pressure transients (water and steam hammers) are potentially serious problems associated with steam distribution pipeline systems. Above-ground pipeline systems, including their supports, are easily damaged, and safety can be seriously jeopardized due to severe pressure transients. The provision of adequate drains along the pipeline to dispose of cold steam condensate will significantly reduce the risk of these events occurring, provided that the drains are designed to minimize pockets.

14.2.2 Straight pipe under internal pressure

14.2.2.1

S This is a commentary on Clause 14.2.2.1.

The designer must specify the allowable maximum mill under-thickness tolerance on a purchase order and use that specified minimum wall thickness (not the nominal wall thickness) in the design calculation. If the pipe is purchased “off the shelf”, the design is based on the mill under-thickness tolerance specified in the applicable pipe manufacturing standard or specification.

The conservatism due to the temperature derating derived from ASME B31.3 eliminates the need for a class location factor to be included in the design formula for high temperature pipelines. The ASME philosophy concerning corrosion allowance has been modified: the chosen corrosion allowance is so located in the design equation that it is not grossed up by the pipe mill under-thickness tolerance. It is the designer’s responsibility to determine the amount of corrosion allowance. Another departure from ASME is the use of a joint efficiency of 1.00 for electric welded pipe, in accordance with the philosophy in Clause 4 of the Standard. These departures from ASME were considered to be safe optimizations compared to practices current at the time. It is also acceptable for companies to use the more stringent pipe wall thickness calculations directly from ASME B31.3, without the aforementioned optimizations, if they so choose.

For threaded pipe, the sizes generally used are NPS 48.3 mm OD and smaller, and they are primarily used for instrumentation connections, vents, and drains. Even if the design equation is conservative, it will not have a great impact on the costs of such small connections.

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.2.3 Pipe bends

This is a commentary on Clause 14.2.3.

The stress distribution in pipe bends is different than that in straight pipe due to the difference in wall thickness between the intrados and extrados of the bend created during the bending process. For example, a bend radius of 5*D* can result in wall thinning up to 10% on the extrados.

14.2.5 Expansion, flexibility, and support

14.2.5.2

This is a commentary on Clause 14.2.5.2.

Pipeline stress analyses should be very thorough, and the design should include a review of pipeline thermal stresses.

In large high temperature systems, the pipeline valve stations are often associated with numerous lateral branch pipelines. The following example illustrates the importance of proper design and detailed stress analysis related to the relief of thermal stresses. A main pipeline is anchored on both sides of the valve station (in accordance with the original design). As a result, inadequate pipeline flexibility at the station causes thermal stresses that exceed the ASME B31.3 limits and lead to cracking of anchor-to-pipe fillet welds, as well as severe damage to the pipe. The design is subsequently modified and the problem eliminated by replacing one of the fixed anchors with a sliding support and by replacing the section of pipe that was damaged.

Experienced operators recognize the desirability of fitting reinforcing pads (also known as intermediate pads) to the pipe at the highly stressed locations (such as anchors) in order to minimize the risk of potential cracks at structural attachments propagating into the pressure pipeline.

14.2.6 Corrosion and erosion allowances

This is a commentary on Clause 14.2.6.

The need for and magnitude of a corrosion allowance in the design is left entirely up to the designer. Possible corrosion mechanisms are listed in Clause 14.6.

Designs incorporating a corrosion or erosion allowance are to be such that the increase in wall thickness is additional to the wall thickness required for pressure containment (that is also the case for conventional pipeline systems). As noted in the commentary to Clause 14.2.2.1, it is intended that the specified corrosion allowance not be grossed up (i.e., not adjusted by the mill under-thickness tolerance).

14.3 Materials

14.3.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.1.

Given that Clause 14 pipelines are installed like conventional steel pipelines, it is preferable that the materials used be field weldable, without the need for postweld heat treatment. This requirement reflects the required economics of installation, since these pipelines are extensive in size and length. The need for field postweld heat treatment is determined by Clause 7.9.16.

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.3.1.4

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.1.4.

This requirement was included as an alternative to the prohibition of the use of cold-expanded pipe, which was perceived as precluding the use of some electric welded pipe. The task force was concerned that cold-expanded pipe was capable of losing some of its high-temperature properties over a period of time.

Pipe is to be listed in ASME (thereby confirming adequate mechanical properties at the design temperature) or is to be tested to confirm such properties.

In order to meet the long-term high-temperature strength requirements, this pipe material will in some cases be required to exhibit room-temperature strength properties that exceed the specified maximum values listed in CSA Z245.1. For the purpose of high temperature pipelines, there is no need to limit the room-temperature strength properties. The key criteria for this pipe are to ensure that it exhibits adequate strength at the intended operating temperature and that there is no reduction in strength below the specified design value from exposure to high temperatures over the life of the pipeline.

In situations where the manufacturer supplies line pipe manufactured in accordance with CSA Z245.1 and where, for example, the yield strength exceeds the maximum CSA Z245.1 specified value for that grade, it is expected that the mill test report will state that the pipe meets CSA Z245.1, with the exception of the high yield strength.

14.3.1.5

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.1.5.

In some cases, the same pipeline will deliver steam to the wellhead and, at a later date, return the production to a processing facility. This multiple service aspect creates the potential for unique circumstances of temperature, erosion, corrosion, and sour service and therefore can dictate unique material requirements.

14.3.1.6

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.1.6.

This requirement is consistent with the philosophy of the CSA Z245 series of standards and CSA B51.

14.3.2 Material testing

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.2.

It is intended that all materials be confirmed to be suitable for the design temperature. Since Clause 4 of the Standard is limited to design temperatures of 230 °C and less (for piping other than Clause 14 piping), this confirmation is usually accomplished by selecting a material that is already listed in ASME B31.3 as being suitable at the maximum design temperature (see Clause 14.3.1.1). Materials not listed in ASME B31.3 are to be tension tested to prove the guaranteed yield and tensile strengths at the maximum design temperature and at room temperature (Clause 14.3.2.1). For such materials, procedure qualification weldments are to be tension tested at the maximum design temperature for each electrode classification (see Clause 14.3.2.2).

Tension testing is used by the industry, particularly to confirm the suitability of the specialized quenched and tempered low-carbon low-alloy materials and thermo-mechanically control-rolled seam-welded pipe materials that are now popular in the heavy oil industry.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Although not explicitly stated in the Standard, materials for high temperature pipeline systems should also be evaluated for acceptability in situations where those materials might be subjected to pressure at temperatures far below the normal operating temperatures . For example, the pipeline will be pressure tested at ambient temperatures and might be subjected to high pressure when the pipeline is cold at other times (e.g., nitrogen purging).

14.3.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.2.3.

Elevated-temperature tension tests are conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E21, whereas room temperature tension tests are conducted in accordance with ASTM A370.

14.3.3 Fittings (excluding bends and transition pieces); 14.3.4 Flanges; 14.3.5 Non-standard flanges and clamp connectors; 14.3.6 Valves

This is a commentary on Clauses 14.3.3, 14.3.4, 14.3.5, and 14.3.6.

These Clauses refer to ASME standards for components because the equivalent CSA Z245 standards for components are designed for temperatures that are lower than the required design temperatures, and CSA Z662 does not specify derating factors for service temperatures exceeding 230 °C.

14.3.3 Fittings (excluding bends and transition pieces)

14.3.3.2

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.3.2.

This requirement is intended to ensure that the fittings used on pipelines meet the design requirements of the ASME codes and have a Canadian registration number (CRN). The registration process confirms adequate design considerations. The term “fitting” is intended to include items such as swivels.

14.3.3.3

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.3.3.

ASME B16.9 and ASME B16.11 are both specifically referenced because they provide the required pressure-temperature ratings. ASME B16.9 covers tees and weld caps, etc.; they are pressure-temperature rated according to the pipe schedule. ASME B16.11 covers socket weld and threaded fittings; they are pressure-temperature rated by pressure classification.

Fittings can be seamless (forged) or fabricated by welding, as stated in CSA Z245.11. The welding requirements for fabricated fittings are also covered in CSA Z245.11.

14.3.3.4

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.3.4.

The stated restrictions on socket-welded and threaded connections reflect the risk involved with these connections in steam and high temperature service. The socket-weld restrictions reflect ASME standards, as follows:

- ASME B31.3 does not allow socket weld connections larger than NPS 2 in “severe cyclic service”.
- ASME B31.1 suggests that socket weld not be used over NPS 2 at a location perpendicular to a pipe.
- ASME B16.5 suggests that socket welds not be used for service temperatures over 500°F or below –50°F in cases involving severe thermal gradients or thermal cycling.

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.3.3.5

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.3.5.

Hollow bull plugs provide a pocket for accumulation of solids and potential corrosion, and therefore are not permitted.

14.3.3.6

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.3.6.

Threaded connections create a stress riser at the root of the last engaged thread. Table 14.1 ensures that threaded connections have adequate thickness under the root of the thread to maintain the integrity of the system and to prevent fatigue damage. The seal welding of threaded connections and the installation of root valves upstream of threaded connections are additional considerations.

14.3.3.8

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.3.8.

Integrally reinforced fittings are the preferred style of branch connection, due to their inherent strength; however, other forms of branch connections, attached using full-penetration groove welds and designed in accordance with the requirements of ASME B31.3 are also acceptable. Fillet welded connections (i.e., without a full-penetration groove weld) are not permitted due to the risks of crack initiation and/or corrosion associated with the crevice formed by fillet weld connections.

14.3.4 Flanges

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.4.

ASME standards are referenced to ensure correct temperature-pressure ratings. CSA flanges are not to be used for pipelines designed in accordance with Clause 14 (or Annex I).

14.3.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.4.2.

This requirement is intended to ensure that the flanges used on pipelines meet the design requirements of the ASME codes and have a Canadian Registration Number (CRN). The registration process confirms adequate design considerations.

14.3.4.3

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.4.3.

Flanges may be manufactured from any material identified in the applicable flange standard regardless of whether that material is listed in ASME B31.3 (e.g., ASTM A350 Grade LF6). Flanges manufactured from a material identified in the flange standard but not listed in ASME B31.3 are required to be tested in accordance with Clause 14.3.2.

14.3.5 Non-standard flanges and clamp connectors

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.5.

Registration per CSA B51 is intended to ensure that the fittings used on pipelines meet the design requirements of the ASME codes and have a Canadian Registration Number (CRN). The registration process confirms adequate design considerations.

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.3.6 Valves

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.6.

ASME B16.34 is referenced to ensure correct higher temperature-pressure ratings,. The API valve standards specified have adopted ASMR B16.34 pressure temperature ratings.

Registration per CSA B51 is intended to ensure that valves used on pipelines meet the design requirements of the ASME codes and have a Canadian Registration Number (CRN).

The requirements in Clause 14.3.6 reflect the safety requirements of most in-house company standards, particularly for valves with pressure seal bonnets.

14.3.6.3

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.6.3.

The API valve standards specified have adopted ASME B16.34 pressure temperature ratings.

14.3.6.4

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.6.4.

Item a) considers start-up/warm-up bypass connections for larger valves in order to allow safe and gradual start-up of steam pipelines. In the case of double block valve stations and unidirectional flow, the warm-up bypass line would be required only on the upstream valve.

Item b) considers equalizing lines between valve bonnets and the upstream side of the valve to reduce the potential hazard of over-pressuring valve bonnets as a result of the thermal expansion of the liquid (steam condensate) trapped in the bonnet when the valve is in the closed position. An equalizing line ensures that any excessive pressure on the bonnet cavity of a steam valve can be relieved through the non-valved or valved equalizing line. The pressure build-up can be a result of the thermal expansion of water trapped in the bonnet cavity or can be due to the initial opening of the valve when the bonnet is completely filled with water. Connection of the equalizing line to the upstream (pressure) side of the valve is to ensure that the secondary sealing surfaces of the valve are not bypassed if the primary sealing surfaces leak.

14.3.7 Transition pieces

14.3.7.1

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.7.1.

Requirements for the use of transition pieces are included because the current industry practice of using thinner wall high-strength pipeline material (e.g., Gr. 448 or Gr. 550) with heavier wall low-strength piping and components (e.g., ASTM A106 Gr. B, A234 WPB) necessitates their frequent use.

14.3.7.2

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.7.2.

It is important to have well-identified transition pieces, in accordance with MSS SP-25, because of the potentially large difference in the yield strengths of the two materials (e.g., 240 MPa and 448 MPa), especially at high temperatures.

© 2015 CSA Group

14.3.8 Pipe bends — General

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.8.

There is a large demand for the use of pipe bends on high temperature pipelines, not only to accomplish changes in direction but also to serve as expansion loops. Only bends produced by induction bending method are allowed because the Technical Committee considered that cold bends would not be suitable for meeting the requirements for high temperature pipelines as specified in Clause 14. Induction bending has an induction coil travel the length of the pipe as it is being bent and rapidly heats and cools a local region of the pipe during the bending process. The rapid heating and cooling is effective at retaining the mechanical properties of high-strength quenched and tempered and low-alloy steel pipe products. Conventional hot bending (i.e., sand pack, furnace heat, and bend) is not appropriate for these high-strength steam pipehigh temperature pipeline materials, as the time at high temperature required to make such hot bends will significantly reduce the strength of the pipe.

The effects of the time-temperature relationship as a result of induction bending on the mechanical properties of the pipe must be determined.

Expansion loops should be made to close dimensional standards in order to reduce fit-up problems during field-welding; typically, a bend angle tolerance of ± 1° and a tangent length tolerance of ± 25 mm are specified.

14.3.9 Pipe bends — Qualification and production

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.9.

The quality requirements have dictated the need for procedure qualification testing and production bend testing.

14.3.9.1 and 14.3.9.2

This is a commentary on Clauses 14.3.9.1 and 14.3.9.2.

Induction bending is the technique used to make bends in high-strength high temperature pipeline material. ASME B16.49 provides more details than CSA Z245.11 with respect to the manufacturing and quality requirements for induction bends and is therefore a useful reference.

14.3.10 Piping supports

This is a commentary on Clause 14.3.10.

Clause 14.3.10 addresses only structural steel supports that are not directly attached to pressure-retaining pipeline components. Supports that are welded directly onto pressure-retaining pipe and components are addressed in Clause 14.4.2. The piping supports addressed herein could be manufactured from concrete or steel, and in the latter case the welding procedures are to be qualified in accordance with the requirements of CSA W59 or Section IX of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*. Supports are frequently made of used tubular piling material, which requires material and welding controls, the details of which, although important, are not included in the Standard. It is intended that pipeline supports and attachments be in place before the pressure test of the pipeline.

 © 2015 CSA Group

14.4 Joining

14.4.1

This is a commentary on Clause 14.4.1.

Mechanical interference fit joints are not to be used because they have not been rated for the temperatures and pressures associated with high temperature pipeline service.

14.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause 14.4.2.

ASME B31.3 has a minimum inspection frequency of 5% of the production welds (as compared to 15% in Clause 7.10); however, there is a progressive inspection requirement in ASME B31.3 for situations where rejectable welds are found.

ASME B31.3 permits ultrasonic inspection of butt welds instead of radiographic inspection. The choice between radiographic and ultrasonic inspection of pipeline butt welds is at the discretion of the company. Radiographic inspection is most appropriate for manual shielded metal arc welds, while mechanized ultrasonic inspection can be more suitable for mechanized semi-automatic arc welding processes (e.g., flux-cored welding and gas metal arc welding).

The requirement to qualify welding procedures in accordance with Section IX of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code* does not preclude the use of conventional pipeline construction practices, such as vertical down welding using cellulosic SMAW electrodes.

14.4.3

This is a commentary on Clause 14.4.3.

It is intended that the counterbore taper not exceed the limitations of ASME B31.3. A counterbore taper of 15° (approximately a 1:4 slope) is preferred in order to reduce the local stress concentration and to allow for reduced flow resistance. The desired fabrication methods for transition pieces are specified elsewhere in the Standard (see the notes for Figure 7.2).

14.4.4

This is a commentary on Clause 14.4.4.

Stress relieving is generally detrimental to the strength properties of the high-strength quenched and tempered and thermo-mechanically controlled rolled piping materials often used for high temperature pipelines due to the risk of over-tempering. By referencing the stress-relieving requirements of Clause 7.9.16, the weld thickness at which stress relieving becomes mandatory is 31.8 mm.

14.4.5

This is a commentary on Clause 14.4.5.

Welds on pressure-retaining piping other than butt welds, such as branch connections, fillet welds on socket weld connections, and welding of pipe shoes to the pipe, would typically be nondestructively inspected using a magnetic particle inspection technique, as well as by visual examination.

© 2015 CSA Group

14.5 Pressure testing

This is a commentary on Clause 14.5.

Steam distribution and other high temperature pipelines have numerous welded small-diameter pipe connections such as drains and vents, which can be sources of leaks. Pressure testing programs should incorporate the use of high-point vents and low-point drains to aid in the pressurizing and draining of the pipelines.

14.5.4

This is a commentary on Clause 14.5.4.

Due to the possibility of brittle failure, a pipeline needs to be pressure tested above its minimum possible design temperature (i.e., MDMT). The ductile-to-brittle transition temperature needs to be considered by the designer.

14.6 Corrosion control

This is a commentary on Clause 14.6.

These requirements are intended to alert the designer to the unique operating conditions of steam distribution and high temperature pipelines and the unique corrosion problems that can occur. Internal corrosion has not been a problem with steam distribution pipelines to date. Sour service is a possibility for multiple service pipeline systems (those in both steam injection and production service), as a result of the steam reacting with the sulphur in the reservoir. Other potential contributors to the corrosion of multiples service pipelines are salt water, oxygen, air, and carbon dioxide. Erosion is a possibility, depending on steam quality and the presence of particulate matter, particularly at bends and protruding welds. Stagnant steam condensate could pose a corrosion problem in dead legs.

Item a) refers to external corrosion beneath insulation. The Technical Committee agreed that it was not appropriate to discuss insulation requirements in detail because it is the company's decision to insulate (as it is to paint); however, it is important that above-ground insulation systems be securely weatherproofed to prevent moisture ingression that could lead to corrosion. Insulation should be protected from moisture before its application; otherwise, the insulation properties are severely reduced.

14.7 Steam distribution pipelines — Commissioning and operating

This is a commentary on Clause 14.7.

The start-up requirements reflect common safety practices. During start-up, particular attention should be paid to the connections and appurtenances close to pipe supports and to the elimination of any condensate in the pipeline in order to reduce the probability of steam or water hammer. Steam distribution pipeline failures due to inappropriate start-up procedures have been documented.

14.7.1

This is a commentary on Clause 14.7.1.

Gradually increasing steam flow to full capacity during start-up can be accomplished by using small valved bypass lines around block valves. See also the commentary to Clause 14.3.6.

© 2015 CSA Group

14.7.3; 14.7.4

This is a commentary on Clauses 14.7.3 and 14.7.4.

The shutdown requirements reflect the hazards of leaving liquids in a system, particularly when the system could be subject to freezing or internal corrosion, or both. Steam distribution pipeline failures due to incomplete drainage and subsequent freezing of water in the line have been documented.

Clause 14.7.3 is intended to satisfy concerns related to drainage of chemically treated boiler water to the environment and internal pipe corrosion resulting from valves being open to the atmosphere for prolonged periods of time.

15 Aluminum piping

15.2 Applicability

This is a commentary on Clause 15.2.

Generally, it is intended that the requirements for steel pipe and components in Clauses 4 to 10 be applicable to aluminum pipe and components; however, there are some specific exceptions.

15.3 Design

15.3.1 Pressure design for aluminum pipe

15.3.1.4 Circumferential factor

This is a commentary on Clause 15.3.1.4.

Circumferential joint factors are used in the formula in Clause 15.3.1.1 to limit the allowable stress in the heat-affected zone of pipe that is joined by arc welding.

15.3.1.5 Temperature factor

This is a commentary on Clause 15.3.1.5.

Temperature factors are used in the formula in Clause 15.3.1.1 to limit the allowable stress in pipe at elevated temperatures.

15.3.1.6 Alloy factor

This is a commentary on Clause 15.3.1.6.

Alloy factors allow design stresses to be based on the specified minimum yield strength. Alloy factors less than 1 generally apply to less ductile materials, indicating that tensile strength is the governing material property.

15.3.2 Pressure design for components

15.3.2.2

This is a commentary on Clause 15.3.2.2.

Branch connections are covered in detail in CSA Z169. Branch connections other than tees are not commonly manufactured.

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.3.4 Aluminum properties

This is a commentary on Clause 15.3.4.

It is intended that the aluminum properties for the linear coefficient of thermal expansion, modulus of elasticity, temperature factor, and Poisson's ratio be used for stress analysis and flexibility calculations.

15.4 Materials

15.4.1 Design temperatures

This is a commentary on Clause 15.4.1.

The major concern of Clause 15.4.1 is the effect that the design temperature will have on the yield strength of the aluminum materials.

15.4.2 Notch toughness

This is a commentary on Clause 15.4.2.

Notch toughness is not a requirement for aluminum materials because wrought aluminum exhibits very good notch toughness properties at temperatures well below –45 °C.

15.5 Installation of aluminum piping

15.5.1 Bends and elbows

This is a commentary on Clause 15.5.1.

This requirement is consistent with the differential allowed by CSA Z245.6.

15.6 Joining

15.6.6 High-energy joining — Inspection and testing of high-energy joints for qualification of joining procedure specifications and personnel

15.6.6.1 Nondestructive inspection

This is a commentary on Clause 15.6.6.1.

ASTM E114 and ASTM E1901 provide requirements for the equipment, reference blocks, probes, procedures, and evaluation of discontinuities for compression wave ultrasonic inspection of the bond region of the high-energy joints. If the company decides to require the ultrasonic inspectors to demonstrate their competence, this verification could include such things as ultrasonic inspection on test blocks or destructive testing (macrosections) of high-energy pipe welds that have been ultrasonically inspected.

15.6.6.3 Pressure testing

This is a commentary on Clause 15.6.6.3.

This pressure test requirement is specific to the qualification testing of test joints for high-energy joining procedures and personnel, and it is not to be construed as the pressure testing requirement for the completed pipeline system.

 © 2015 CSA Group

15.6.8 High-energy joining — Inspection and testing of high-energy joints

15.6.8.1

This is a commentary on Clause 15.6.8.1.

The exception to Clause 15.6.8.1 is high-energy welds for sour service piping, where 100% ultrasonic inspection is required, as specified in Clause 15.10.6.

15.8 Corrosion control

15.8.1 Test lead attachment

This is a commentary on Clause 15.8.1.

Aluminum test leads are required to avoid the potential galvanic corrosion problems associated with the attachment of copper test leads to aluminum piping. Thermit welding is prohibited due to industry accidents resulting from thermit weld attempts that led to ruptured lines.

15.8.3 Corrosive medium

15.8.3.3

This is a commentary on Clause 15.8.3.3.

Corrosion susceptibility is particularly enhanced by the presence of free water containing dissolved solids (e.g., chloride salts) and/or some species of bacteria.

15.9 Operating, maintenance, and upgrading

15.9.1 Evaluation of imperfections and repair of piping containing defects

15.9.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 15.9.1.2.

Clause 15.9.1.2addresses situations where arc welds that were originally deemed acceptable during the construction phase have subsequently been inspected and found not to comply with the acceptance requirements in Clause 15.6.2. The intent of Clause 15.9.1.2 is to require the application of appropriate nondestructive inspection to fully characterize the extent of weld imperfections. Typically, this type of inspection evaluation would involve both radiography and shear wave ultrasonics. Radiography provides a comprehensive full-volume image of the entire weld, while shear wave ultrasonics is the best technique to inspect for the presence of crack-like planar flaws. It is the intent that if indications of cracking are found by nondestructive inspection, the arc weld is required to be repaired in accordance with the requirements of Clause 15.6.2, or cut out and replaced.

An engineering critical assessment (ECA) can be used to evaluate the acceptability of arc welds in aluminum that do not meet the original standards of acceptability in Clause 15.6.2. ECA is an analytical procedure based on fracture mechanics principles that allows determination of the maximum tolerable size of imperfections and whether or not repairs are required. BSI BS 7910 can be used for the assessment of these imperfections in specific arc welds after the normal construction activity is completed. Examples of applications where an ECA might be necessary are changes in the operating conditions of older pipelines or audits of nondestructive inspection records from recent construction.

© 2015 CSA Group

15.9.1.3

This is a commentary on Clause 15.9.1.3.

The requirements for aluminum repair sleeves are similar to those specified for steel repair sleeves, except that the welding requirements were excluded in recognition of the fact that current aluminum sleeves are not welded to the pipe.

15.9.3 Pipeline hot taps

This is a commentary on Clause 15.9.3.

Unlike steel piping, aluminum does not pose a concern with respect to high hardness from excessive weld cooling rates, and therefore there are no carbon-equivalent-type welding restrictions for welding on in-service aluminum piping. The main concern with welding on in-service aluminum piping is the risk of burn-through on thin-wall piping. Unlike steel, aluminum does not exhibit colour changes with increasing temperature; as well, the high thermal conductivity of aluminum increases the risk of burn-through during welding.

15.10 Sour service

This is a commentary on Clause 15.10.

The use of a different criterion than that specified for steel materials is appropriate because aluminum is not susceptible to material cracking problems associated with contact with sour fluids or carbon dioxide.

15.10.3 Exposure to iron sulphides

This is a commentary on Clause 15.10.3.

Iron sulphide corrosion product solids can initiate corrosion in aluminum piping if the particulate matter is allowed to settle on the aluminum pipe surface in a saline water-wet environment.

16 Sour service pipelines

16.1 General

16.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause 16.1.1.

Due to the unique set of material degradation mechanisms associated with sour service environments and the potential safety hazards associated with the release of toxic H_2S into the atmosphere, it was the Technical Committee's opinion that a stand-alone clause was required in the Standard to highlight the specific concerns and requirements for the design, construction, and operation of sour service pipelines.

Many of the requirements in Clause 16 were specifically written for steel pipelines; however, many of the clauses are applicable to pipelines constructed of other materials where the pipelines contain sour fluids.

© 2015 CSA Group

16.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause 16.1.2.

Clause 16.1.2 added a list of permitted exclusions/exemptions for service fluids/pipeline systems not required to meet requirements of Clause 16 to align with similar limitations in NACE ANSI/MR0175/ ISO 15156. Based on good industry experience in certain types of LVP products (refer to definition in Clause 2.2) such as multiphase, crude oil, crude oil blends, and condensate service, limited exemptions were expanded to include those types of operating pipelines. For Clause 6.1.2 a), by using the terms "gas-free", "< 0.5% BSW", and "stabilized", the intent was not to define an operating condition, but to define essentially a liquid hydrocarbon product that is of "sales" quality (e.g., it has been processed through upstream operations and is downstream of freewater knock-outs and/or treaters used to remove water, sediment, and gases).

16.2 Sour service — Specific definition

16.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause 16.2.1.

To be consistent with industry practice, and with the advent in 2003 of the new NACE ANSI/MR0175/ ISO 15156 publication on materials for use in H_2S-containing oil and gas environments, there was a need to change the definition for sour service in Clause 5.4 of the 2003 edition of the Standard. The new definition includes two categories:

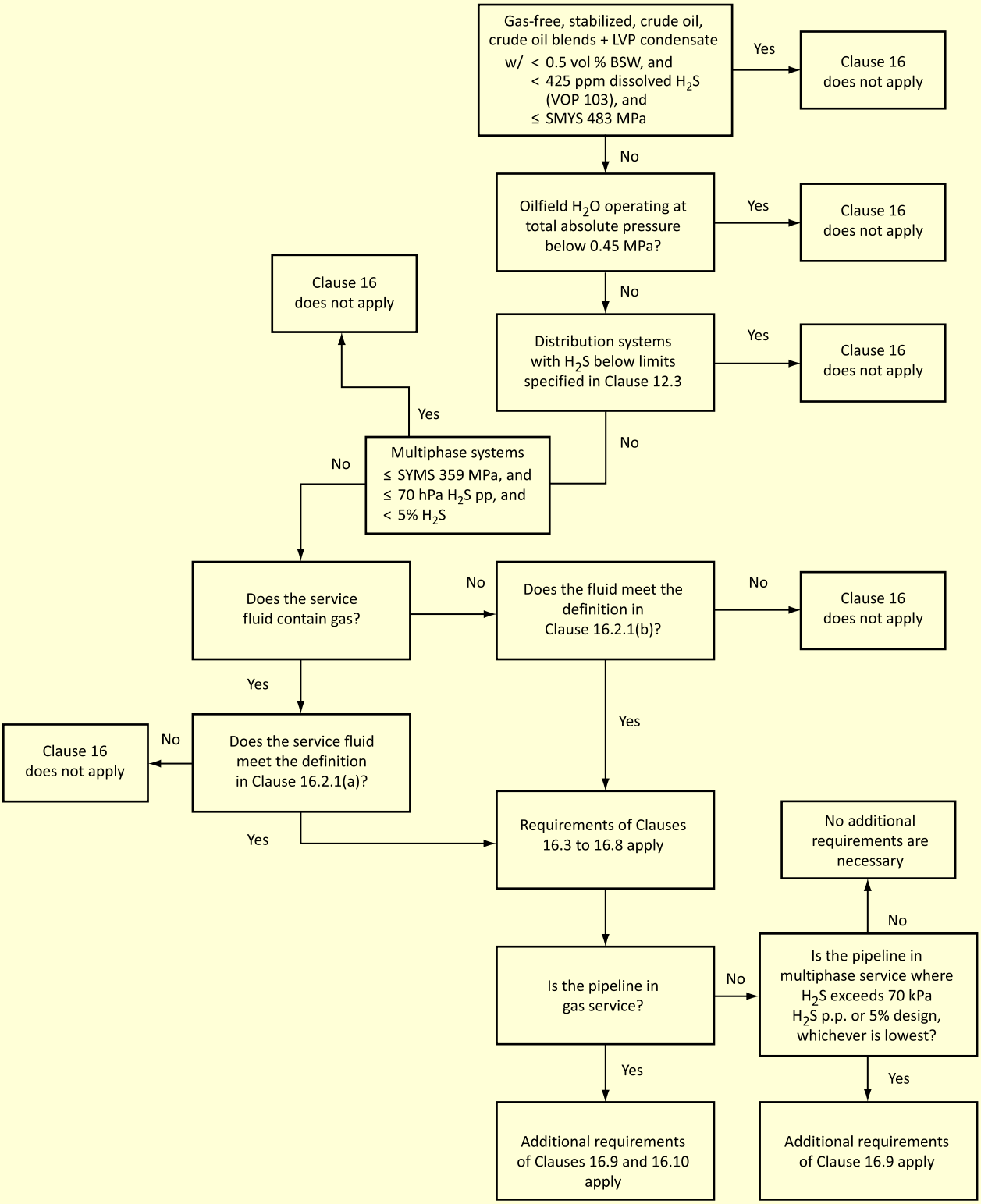
- any service containing a gas phase would use the definition given in Clause 16.2.1(a). This would include gas pipelines, multiphase pipelines, LVP, HVP, and acid gas pipelines; and
- liquid pipelines that operate with no separate gas phase, but contain dissolved gas that would evolve at the bubble point. As stated in the note, determination of effective H2S partial pressure in gas-free liquid systems is described in NACE ANSI/MR0175/ISO 15156-2, Annex C. This could apply to such services as oilfield water, crude oil, water-oil emulsions, or other liquids containing dissolved H_2S.

The flowchart in Figure 10 of this Commentary illustrates the type of evaluation to be applied to a pipeline system containing H_2S to determine whether it qualifies as a sour service system (Step 1) and, if so, which particular clauses in Clause 16 apply to the specific pipeline system in question.

Note 2) better explains the definition of gas-free liquid systems. Note 4) was changed to improve the definition for multiphase pipeline and re-emphasize the definition of multiphase fluids by referring back to its definition in Clause 2.2. Users were trying to use the existing definition for services not intended and the emphasis back to the definition will prevent future misinterpretation. 0.30 kPa partial pressure was modified to 0.3 kPa partial pressure to be in-line with NACE ANSI/MRO175/ISO 15156. The word absolute was added to clarify that partial pressures are to be calculated at the absolute design pressure, not the gauge pressure.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Figure 10
Sour service requirements clause applicability
(See Clause 16.2.1.)



 © 2015 CSA Group

16.2.2

This is a commentary on Clause 16.2.2.

In the 2011 edition of the Standard, Clause 16.2.2 was added to specify which clauses apply to all sour pipelines.

16.2.3

This is a commentary on Clause 16.2.3.

Clause 16.2.3 specifies the clause that additionally apply to sour multiphase pipelines that exceed a defined partial pressure of H_2S.

16.2.4

This is a commentary on Clause 16.2.4.

Clause 16.2.4 to specifies which clauses that additionally apply to sour gas pipelines that exceed a defined partial pressure of H_2S .

16.3 Design

16.3.1 Design parameters

This is a commentary on Clause 16.3.1.

In the event of any modifications to the operating conditions, physical modifications to the piping, or failure incidents after a sour pipeline has been put into service, it is important to have available and understand the parameters that were used during the original design and construction of the pipeline. Access to such documented information at some point after start-up will help avoid the subsequent implementation of inappropriate changes and, in the case of a failure, help with the failure investigation process.

16.3.2 Design information

This is a commentary on Clause 16.3.2.

It is important for all pipelines, but especially for sour service systems, that the construction contractor have a full understanding of the critical design features that have been deemed essential to the safe operation of the pipeline. There have been instances of pipeline failures as a result of critical design information not being properly communicated to the construction firm.

16.3.3 Stress design; 16.3.4 Anchors and restraints

This is a commentary on Clauses 16.3.3 and 16.3.4.

There have been several girth weld failure incidents with sour service pipeline that have been attributed to high levels of secondary stresses (e.g., residual stress from welding, bending stress, and thermal stress). These failures have often been associated with tie-in welds, particularly where pipe materials of different wall thickness have been joined.

High secondary stresses can also be caused by inappropriate anchor design, particularly at risers. Welds adjacent to an anchor point can be subject to additional stresses/strains caused by uneven settling if the pipe on one side of the weld is properly supported by the anchor assembly and the other side is not. The weld can contain notches and other stress concentrators, which can contribute to premature

cracking failures when exposed to hydrogen sulphide. It is recommended that the design and installation consider these effects and ensure that pipe on both sides of any anchored circumferential weld be properly supported; this includes mechanically fastening the pipe to the support structure where this is part of the design.

16.4 Materials

16.4.2 Material provisions; 16.4.3 Marking

This is a commentary on Clauses 16.4.2 and 16.4.3.

Clause 16.4.2 contains the additional requirement that the SMYS of the pipe material is to not exceed 485 MPa. It is important that all materials manufactured in accordance with one of the specified sour service standards be marked accordingly to help ensure that only such sour service piping materials are used for sour service pipelines.

16.4.4 Nonferrous metals

This is a commentary on Clause 16.4.4.

Copper-based alloys have poor corrosion resistance to H_2S-bearing fluids.

16.5 Construction

16.5.1 Deviations

This is a commentary on Clause 16.5.1.

Failures of sour service pipelines have occurred as a result of construction deviations from the original intended design. Where deviations are being considered, the company is to review the proposed deviation with due consideration for the impact such deviations could have on the integrity and reliability of the sour service pipeline.

16.5.2 Records

This is a commentary on Clause 16.5.2.

Such information can prove valuable at a later point during the operation of the pipeline.

16.5.3 Inspection plan

This is a commentary on Clause 16.5.3.

The use of the plan specified in Clause 16.5.3 will help ensure the integrity and long-term reliability of the sour service pipeline.

16.6 Joining

16.6.1 Carbon equivalent

This is a commentary on Clause 16.6.1.

The carbon equivalent (C.E.) formula is provided in Clause 7.6.4.4. Carbon equivalent is one of the key variables with respect to the hardness of the heat-affected zone (HAZ) of the base materials adjacent to the weld, and hardness is one of the key factors influencing the susceptibility of the weldment to

 © 2015 CSA Group

sulphide stress cracking (SSC). As such, it is important to have documented records of the CE values of the materials that were used in the procedure qualification during the development of the sour service welding procedure.

16.6.2 Change in carbon equivalent

This is a commentary on Clause 16.6.2.

Experience has shown that the sour service hardness criteria can be met using common welding procedures when the CE values are less than 0.45%. This risk of unacceptably high hardness values increases significantly when CE exceeds 0.45%. As an example, if the intent is to weld piping material with a CE as high as 0.48%, then the procedure qualification must use a comparable base material with a CE value of not less than 0.46% (i.e., within 0.02%). There are no CE limitations for welding materials with CE values less than 0.45%.

16.6.3 Butt welds of unequal thickness

This is a commentary on Clause 16.6.3.

Butt welding of piping of unequal thickness typically results in a geometry that enhances stress concentration, as well as higher residual weld stresses. Clause 16.6.3 is intended to minimize these factors and thereby reduce the risk of sulphide stress cracking.

16.6.4 Weld hardness requirements

This is a commentary on Clause 16.6.4.

Clause 16.6.4 is a combination of the previous Rockwell 22 HRC sour service hardness limitation (Clause of the 2003 edition) and the more recent NACE ANSI/MR0175/ISO 15156-2 criteria of Vickers 250 HV or Rockwell Superficial 70 HR15N. Item a) has been retained from previous editions of the Standard, as experience has proven that it has been acceptable in most instances. The Vickers criterion [Item b)] and superficial Rockwell criterion [Item c)] have been included to recognize the current oil and gas industry practice outside of the Canadian pipeline industry. The value of the Vickers and superficial Rockwell test methods is that they are capable of testing more localized regions in the HAZ, and are thereby more likely to detect small hard zones that could be susceptible to SSC but would not be detected using the conventional Rockwell method.

Hardness requirements apply to both procedure qualification welds and production welds. The sour service hardness requirement does not specify locations or test patterns to be employed during the assessment of a procedure qualification weld or subsequent production welds. The details of hardness testing are left to the discretion of the company. The note refers to the NACE/ISO standard, which includes details with respect to hardness testing of procedure qualification welds.

16.6.5 Deposited weld metal composition limitations

This is a commentary on Clause 16.6.5.

The maximum 1% nickel limitation is consistent with the compositional requirements for carbon and low-alloy steels provided in NACE ANSI/MR0175/ISO 15156-2. Historical evidence has indicated that steels consisting of more than 1% nickel are more susceptible to SSC.

 © 2015 CSA Group

16.6.6 Alignment

This is a commentary on Clause 16.6.6.

Alignment during welding of tie-ins and components is often more difficult than conventional pipe-to-pipe butt welding, due to additional restraint or geometric issues. The use of undue force to achieve the required alignment in such cases is not permitted, as the resulting weld will typically contain higher levels of residual stress, making it more susceptible to SSC in service.

16.6.7 Preheat

This is a commentary on Clause 16.6.7.

Clause 16.6.7 is to be used in conjunction with Clause 7.9.15 (general preheating requirements for welding) and Clause 7.9.7.2 (specific preheating requirements when ambient temperature is below 0 °C). Preheating can be a critical variable for ensuring that the completed weld and HAZ meet the sour service hardness criteria; therefore, it is important that the preheat used during production welding be no less than that used during the procedure qualification test. As stated in Clauses 7.9.15.3, 7.9.15.4, and 7.9.15.5, it is also important that this preheat be present before the installation of each welding pass.

16.6.8 Backwelding

This is a commentary on Clause 16.6.8.

There have been sour service pipeline failure incidents that were found to be the result of SSC initiating at a backweld applied to the inside of a girth weld (typically a pipe-to-flange weld). As a backweld is often the last pass installed on a girth weld, it is not subjected to any tempering (softening) from subsequent weld passes. By treating a backweld as a repair weld, the reference to Clause 7.12.3 requires that a minimum of 120 °C preheat be applied before backwelding. This level of preheat will help reduce the hardness of the completed backweld and thereby reduce the likelihood of SSC initiation.

16.7 Corrosion and corrosion control

16.7.1 Supplemental mitigation requirements

This is a commentary on Clause 16.7.1.

Operating experience has shown that effluent from downhole well treatments that is introduced into the pipeline can result in accelerated corrosion in the line. Clause 16.7.1 is intended to help ensure that such contamination of sour service pipelines does not occur.

16.7.2 Mitigation and monitoring program; 16.7.3 Design and sizing of pigs

This is a commentary on Clauses 16.7.2 and 16.7.3.

Successful corrosion control in sour service pipelines often requires a program of de-watering, cleaning, and batch inhibition of the line prior to introducing the sour fluids. Follow-up corrosion control depends on the maintenance of a properly inhibited pipe surface, via continuous and/or periodic batch chemical treatments. It is the company's responsibility to determine the level of corrosion control required for a given pipeline and ensure that the program is well understood and implemented as intended. It is also the company's responsibility to ensure that the correct size and style of pig is used when pigging

 © 2015 CSA Group

operations (e.g., cleaning and batch treating) are performed. Consideration should be given to ensuring the pigs are checked for adequate size and are discarded when excessive wear has occurred.

16.8 Operation and maintenance

16.8.1 Procedures

This is a commentary on Clause 16.8.1.

Clause 16.3.1 requires the company to document and retain all design information pertaining to a given sour service pipeline. Such design information typically includes assumptions and expectations about the operation and maintenance of the line. For the long-term integrity of the sour service pipeline, it is important that the company adhere to the assumed operating and maintenance practices established during the design stage.

16.8.3 Repair methods

This is a commentary on Clause 16.8.3.

With the exception of pipe cut-out and replacement, the repair methods specified in Table 10.1 are not permitted for internal corrosion defects in sour service pipelines meeting the criteria specified in this Clause 16.8.3. External repair techniques (e.g., sleeves) will not stop internal corrosion, and therefore there will be the risk of future H_2S leakage due to further corrosion. Such alternative repair methods are therefore deemed to not be acceptable from an environmental and safety perspective.

16.8.4 Hydrogen charging

This is a commentary on Clause 16.8.4.

Steels exposed to H_2S will absorb atomic hydrogen. Welding on steel charged with atomic hydrogen will greatly increase the risk of delayed hydrogen cracking of the steel. Atomic hydrogen can be removed from steel by heating the steel using an appropriate bake-out process. There is a wide range of potential bake-out procedures that can effectively remove hydrogen from the steel. Effective bake-out is a function of time at temperature, with higher temperatures requiring less time.

16.8.6 Change management process

This is a commentary on Clause 16.8.6.

Change management is important for maintaining the reliability and integrity of all pipeline systems. This is particularly true for sour service pipelines, where the consequence of failure can be greater.

16.8.7 Changes in service conditions

This is a commentary on Clause 16.8.7.

Clause 10.3.7 requires that an engineering assessment be performed to assess the suitability of a pipeline for a new service fluid. Clause 16.8.7 requires an engineering assessment for sour service pipelines when potential fluid changes are more subtle. Even small changes in fluid service, such as fluid chemistry, flow rate, temperature, etc., can have a significant effect on the long-term reliability of a sour service pipeline, typically as the result of changes in internal corrosion rates. Increasing operating temperatures can also have an adverse effect on thermal strains on the pipeline, potentially leading to high secondary stresses that can enhance the likelihood of SSC.

 © 2015 CSA Group

16.9 Gas and multiphase pipeline systems

16.9.2 Design

16.9.2.1 Location factor for steel pipe

This is a commentary on Clause 16.9.2.1.

As noted in the commentary on Clause 4.3.5.1, the intent of the location factor is to modify the design pressure formula to take into account the level of risk and consequences associated with the pipeline class location and service fluids. The sour service factor in Table 4.2 is to be used for all sour gas pipelines and all liquid (multiphase) pipelines where the H_2S content exceeds the limits specified in Clause 16.2.1 a). The partial pressure limits of 70 kPa or 5% of the total design pressure were selected as being the point at which the release of this fluid from such a multiphase pipeline would pose a health and safety risk.

16.9.2.2 Design considerations

This is a commentary on Clause 16.9.2.2.

Internal corrosion of sour gas pipelines and multiphase liquids lines where H_2S partial pressure exceeds 70 kPa or 5% of the design pressure cause environmental and safety concerns as a result of leaks. Clause 16.9.2.2 places stronger emphasis on the need for comprehensive internal cleaning and corrosion monitoring, over and above the general requirements in Clause 9. It is the company's responsibility to assess the corrosion risks associated with their pipeline, and select and implement any or all of the practices listed in Items a) to g).

16.9.3 Joining

16.9.3.1 Partial-penetration welds

This is a commentary on Clause 16.9.3.1.

Restrictions on the use of partial-penetration butt welds for the sour service environments specified pertains to the environmental and safety concerns associated with the release of H_2S from such pipelines in the event of a girth weld failure.

16.9.3.2 Mandatory nondestructive inspection

This is a commentary on Clause 16.9.3.2.

Full nondestructive inspection of all sour service pipelines meeting the criteria specified in Clause 16.9.3.2 will help ensure the absence of significant weld flaws that could otherwise act as stress risers and potential sites for SSC initiation. The higher the H_2S partial pressure in the fluids, the higher the risk of SSC, and the greater the environmental and safety hazards if a pipeline weld leak occurs.

16.9.3.3 Standards of acceptability for nondestructive inspection

This is a commentary on Clause 16.9.3.3.

As described in Clause 7.11.3 and Figure 7.15, incomplete penetration results a sharp crack-like notch on the inside surface of the pipe where the root pass has failed to penetrate to the internal surface. Incomplete fusion at the root, defined in Clause 7.11.4 and Figure 7.16, results from a lack of bond

 © 2015 CSA Group

between the weld bead and the pipe sidewall, and creates a similar crack-like notch on the inside of the pipe.

It is the Technical Committee's opinion that these two types of weld flaws can act as severe stress risers (particularly in the presence of longitudinal or bending loads on the pipe joint) and significantly increase the risk of SSC initiation, and are therefore not permitted for sour service pipeline welds. Such planar weld root flaws are generally readily discernible during radiographic or ultrasonic inspection. Other types of weld root flaws (undercut, porosity, internal concavity, etc.) do not create the same extent of notch severity; therefore, the standard acceptance criteria of Clause 7.11 can be employed.

16.10 Additional requirements for gas pipeline systems only

16.10.2 Mechanical interference joints

This is a commentary on Clause 16.10.2.

The note reflects industry practice to only use MIF joints in conjunction with an internal coating or lining.

16.10.3 Start-up corrosion mitigation

This is a commentary on Clause 16.10.3.

Clause 16.10.3 was broken into two subclauses; requirements for new pipelines and requirements for pipelines being returned to service after a period of non-use. For pipelines being returned to service after a period of non-use, requirements were added to conduct an engineering assessment to determine if additional mitigative measures were required before putting pipeline back into service to mitigate internal corrosion. A note was added to provide guidance on what might need to be considered in assessing the need for additional mitigative measures for pipelines being returned to service after an extended period of non-use.

17 Composite-reinforced steel pipelines

17.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause 17.1.

Fibre-reinforced steel pipe material is, in essence, a steel pipe encased in a filament-wound glass fibre-reinforced plastic pipe. During manufacturing, the glass fibres are coated with a plastic resin (epoxy, polyester, or vinyl ester) and then helically wound around the steel pipe. The final product has a high strength-to-weight ratio and offers an opportunity to use thinner-wall, lower-strength steel line pipe, which can provide an economic advantage for high-pressure, large-diameter pipeline systems. This piping material is primarily intended for underground use. Where it is being considered for above-ground use, an engineering assessment is to be performed, taking into consideration the unique properties and potential damage and degradation mechanisms associated with this material.

17.2 Applicability

This is a commentary on Clause 17.2.

Clause 17.2 on composite-reinforced steel pipelines is similar to Clause 13 and Clause 15. Clause 17 is intended to define the design, materials, construction, operation, and maintenance requirements

 © 2015 CSA Group

unique to this piping material; the other requirements of Clauses 1 to 10 also apply, unless modified or voided by Clause 17.

17.4.3 Design pressure

This is a commentary on Clause 17.4.3.

The design pressure formula takes into account the combined hoop strength of the steel pipe (*S*) and the surrounding fibre-reinforced resin layer (T_h). The ultimate tensile strength for the fibre-reinforced layer (T_h) is determined in accordance with ASTM D2290, at the maximum temperature rating.

17.4.6 Design temperature

This is a commentary on Clause 17.4.6.

The manufacturer is also required to specify the minimum design temperature for this pipe. The composite outer layer will become more susceptible to brittle cracking as temperature is reduced.

17.5 Materials and manufacture

17.5.1 Steel pipe

This is a commentary on Clause 17.5.1.

It is intended that the steel pipe used for this piping system be conventional pipe material, in accordance with the requirements specified in Clause 5. As the fibre-reinforcement is considered to greatly enhance the fracture resistance of this pipe product, the fracture toughness requirements specified in Clauses 5.2.2.3 and 5.2.2.4 will be met, provided that a suitable outer composite layer is used.

17.5.2 Fibre-reinforced composite

This is a commentary on Clause 17.5.2.

Clauses 17.5.2.1 to 17.5.2.7 specify the requirements for the glass fibre and resin materials that are used in the manufacturing of this pipe product.

17.5.3 Composite-reinforced steel pipe manufacture

This is a commentary on Clause 17.5.3.

Clauses 17.5.3.1 to 17.5.3.11 specify the manufacturing requirements for the application of the fibre-reinforced resin laminate to the outside of the steel pipe.

17.6 Installation

17.6.1 Field bending; 17.6.2 Damage; 17.6.3 Crossings

This is a commentary on Clauses 17.6.1, 17.6.2, and 17.6.3.

The fibre-reinforced resin laminate layer is more sensitive than conventional steel pipe to damage from bending, handling, and pulling through bored crossing holes. Special precautions should be implemented for this composite pipe material and the manufacturer is to provide clear guidelines, limitations, and recommended practices with respect to the bending and handling of this pipe material to avoid damage.

 © 2015 CSA Group

17.7 Joining

This is a commentary on Clause 17.7.

The fibre-reinforced laminate at each end of each pipe joint is to be cut back to permit conventional welding of the bevelled steel pipe ends in accordance with Clause 7, including the appropriate level of visual and nondestructive inspection.

Once the weld is completed, a layer of fibre-reinforced composite material is to be applied to the exposed steel. This joint reinforcement is to provide equivalent strength to that of the fibre-reinforced laminate on the manufactured pipe.

The limitation on longitudinal stress in Clause 17.7.1.2 takes into account the fact that, although the fibre-reinforced composite accommodates a significant percentage of the pipeline hoop stress, this laminate does not exhibit high strength in the longitudinal direction, meaning that the steel pipe must carry most of the longitudinal stress. The specified 40% MYS stress limitation and ECA requirement is intended to help avoid circumferential failures initiating at girth weld flaws.

17.9 Corrosion control

This is a commentary on Clause 17.9.

The composite laminate is to be treated as serving the purpose of an external coating, in accordance with the requirements of Clause 9.3, or an additional external coating is to be applied overtop of this laminate to serve this purpose.

Annex B Guidelines for risk assessment of pipeline systems

This is a commentary on Annex B.

Annex B is intended to provide guidelines on the application of a risk assessment, or series of assessments, applied to pipeline systems covered by the Standard. As described in the Scope (Clause B.2.2.3), risk assessments can be employed at any phase of the decision-making process from design through to abandonment of pipelines. For example, Annex B is specifically referenced in the note to Clause with respect to engineering assessments of existing pipeline systems.

Annex C Limit states design

This is a commentary on Annex C.

Clause 4.1.8 references Annex C as offering an alternative to the conventional pipeline design method practices defined in Clause 4. This non-mandatory Annex provides a significant amount of information and guidance pertaining to the application of limit states design for pipelines. It is written in commentary format to help with an understanding of the design concepts. As advised in the note to Clause C.1.1, it is intended that limit states design should only be used by designers who are thoroughly familiar with the theory and concepts presented in Annex C.

C.4.6.6 Determination of ice loads

This is a commentary on Clause C.4.6.6.

The determination of loads from moving ice may be based on relevant full-scale measurements, model experiments that can be reliably scaled, or established theoretical methods. The engineering considerations and analysis of ice loads are different for a riser than for buried pipeline. Clause 11.6.5 provides relevant guidance.

 © 2015 CSA Group

C.4.6.7 Determination of seismic effects

This is a commentary on Clause C.4.6.7.

Boundary conditions, primarily associated with structural supports for above ground pipelines and geotechnical loads for buried pipelines, influence the pipeline response due to seismic loads. Theoretical methods, physical models and full-scale tests must account for the influence of boundary conditions to evaluate the pipeline response during seismic load events.

Annex D Guidelines for in-line inspection of pipelines

This is a commentary on Annex D.

In-line inspection involves the use of pipeline pigs equipped with electronic sensing equipment for the detection of pipe wall imperfections while such equipment is moved down the length of the pipeline.

Annex E Recommended practice for liquid hydrocarbon pipeline system leak detection

E.1.2

This is a commentary on Clause E.1.2.

Risk based approaches or hazard analysis tools may be utilized to augment the leak detection strategy was included in the 2015 edition.

E.2 Specific definitions

This is a commentary on Clause E.2.

Expected receipt volume:

Some pipeline receipt points, particularly on large oil gathering systems, use tank gauging, rather than metering, for custody transfer. Because production from these sites is often low, the cost of custody-transfer quality metering and telemetry cannot be easily justified. It was agreed that estimated volumes could be used in certain material balance calculations if the total estimated volume did not exceed a specified percentage of total receipts. In some operations, it is possible to control positive displacement pumps with 24 h timers so that the receipt volume and timing can be reasonably estimated. In other situations, field operators can call in, or keep records of, the starting and stopping times of pumps. In all cases where estimated volumes are allowed for material balance calculations made over short time periods, it is required that actual values be used for longer time periods.

Pipeline segment:

- Some crude oil gathering systems have hundreds of receipt points. It was decided that it was impractical to perform material balance calculations on such large systems because of the difficulty of identifying the source of shortage — be it a leak or measurement device failure. The concept of a material balance segment, with a limit on the number of receipt and delivery points, was developed to break larger systems into more manageable pieces. The maximum number of receipt and delivery points was chosen based on economic considerations. It was agreed that the same basic segment definition should also be applied to transmission pipelines.
- Segments were categorized as LVP segments and HVP segments, so that requirements could be set that would recognize the significant differences in the properties of the liquids carried in these segments and in their behaviour upon release. LVP segments were further divided into LVP gathering

 © 2015 CSA Group

and LVP transmission segments. LVP gathering segments were created by partitioning large crude oil gathering systems, in cases where it was considered uneconomical to justify the same level of leak detection capability that is generally available on transmission systems.

E.3 Leak detection systems

E.3.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause E.3.1.

An acceptable tolerance must be established for each material balance calculation, based on normal operating conditions. It is important to note that Annex E does not quantify the tolerances that are considered appropriate for different material balance calculations. It is the responsibility of the operator to establish tolerances that do not result in too many false leak indications, while providing reasonable assurance that a leak will be detected.

Annex E does not prescribe acceptable leak detection thresholds, and, therefore, it is not a performance standard. Annex E must be applied to pipelines that differ significantly in their design, elevation profiles, number of receipt and delivery points, risk profile, and commodities transported; it was not thought practical to develop performance criteria that could be met in all situations.

E.3.3.3

This is a commentary on Clause E.3.3.3.

The amount of uncertainty that line pack variations contribute to the result of a material balance calculation becomes less significant, relative to the uncertainty in the metering measurements, as the calculation window is lengthened. If a material balance calculation is done for a one-month window, the resulting deviation should be close to the uncertainty in the metering equipment if the pipeline is not leaking. Conversely, for short calculation windows, the line pack uncertainty can greatly exceed the metering measurement uncertainty, unless some effort is made to calculate the line pack change and include it in the calculation.

Table E.1 requires material balance calculations to be performed for many calculation windows. The long calculation windows (24 h, one week, and one month) are required to detect small leaks, near the measurement limitations of the metering equipment being used. Short calculation windows are intended to quickly detect larger leaks.

Annex E intentionally avoids the mention of computers, SCADA systems, and the need for line pack calculations on pipelines. Daily calculations are adequate for certain categories of pipeline and manual methods are perfectly acceptable for performing the calculations. Short calculation windows are intended to detect larger leaks quickly. The line pack change in a 5 min window can be so large that it must be included in the calculation in order to get a useful result and a meaningful return on the investment made in leak detection technology. A line pack calculation will have to be done for short calculation windows so that an operator can achieve a useful result and a meaningful return on the investment made in leak detection technology. The frequency of calculation and the window size, therefore, indirectly determine the technology that must be used to meet the requirements of Annex E.

In Table E.1, the interval for data retrieval specifies the frequency of the collection of the data used in the material balance calculation. For example, for high-flow HVP pipelines in a Class 2 location, data must be collected at least every 5 min.

© 2015 CSA Group

In Table E.1, the maximum calculation interval specifies the frequency of the performance of particular material balance calculations. For example, for high-flow HVP pipelines in a Class 2 location, two calculations must be done every 5 min, one calculation every 24 h, one calculation every week, and one calculation every month.

In Table E.1, the recommended calculation window specifies the period of time for which the calculation is to done. For example, for high-flow HVP pipelines in a Class 2 location, a material balance calculation taking into account receipts and deliveries over the preceding 5 min must be performed every 5 min; a material balance calculation taking into account receipts and deliveries over the preceding 1 h must be performed every 5 min; a material balance calculation taking into account receipts and deliveries over the preceding 24 h must be performed every 24 h; a material balance calculation taking into account receipts and deliveries over the preceding week must be performed every week; and a material balance calculation taking into account receipts and deliveries over the preceding month must be performed every month.

E.3.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause E.3.4.2.

Pipeline control and emergency response procedure actions such as pipeline shutdown, patrols, alarm diagnosis, etc. were added to the 2015 edition of the Standard.

E.4 Instruments, operation, and maintenance

E.4.1.1

This is a commentary on Clause E.4.1.1.

The use of “volume balance leak detection” in Clause E.4.1.1 refers to volume balance calculations which are performed with measured receipt and delivery volumes.

The use of “cumulative uncertainty in the leak detection calculations” in this Clause E.4.1.1 refers to the cumulative uncertainty in the critical volume data, not the results of the leak detection calculations.

Although acceptable material balance tolerances are not quantified in Annex E, Clause E.3.2 establishes the requirement for accuracy required for the meters and tank gauging used to measure receipt and delivery volumes.

Metered volumes are often accumulated in registers as discrete counts. If a meter register is read just before a new count is accumulated, there can be an “error” of one count, which is picked up the next time the register is read. If a flow rate is calculated from a series of register readings on a receipt point with constant flow, the calculated flow will not be constant; it will jump around according to the time that the register reading was taken. The impact of this erratic behaviour is most significant in cases where the calculation is done over a short time period or where a single count represents a large quantity. There can also be time skew in the collection of meter register values from geographically separated receipt and delivery locations. Various techniques (e.g., meter-freeze commands, synchronized data capture, interpolation, and extrapolation) are used to create a “snapshot” of system-wide meter readings at the same instant.

Such timing irregularities can be viewed as creating an uncertainty in the reading values; this uncertainty has a greater impact on material balance calculations that are done over a short period of time and becomes negligible as the time period is increased. That is why Clause E.3.2 allows greater uncertainty in the values used for calculations done over short periods. For calculations done over a

 © 2015 CSA Group

one-month period, the uncertainty should be comparable to the minimum acceptable measurement uncertainty of the meters or tank gauges.

The requirement that material balance calculations in excess of established tolerances result in immediate initiation of a pipeline shutdown unless the deviations can be explained by, and verified by, independent means is the result of industry experience; shortages have been incorrectly ascribed to meter or instrument malfunctions when, in fact, the pipeline was leaking.

E.5.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause E.5.2.1.

T he individuals who are responsible for interpreting and responding to the results should be included in the testing of the leak detection system. In the past, there have been many incidents in which the operator has ignored information that clearly indicated a pipeline leak. Thoughtful analysis of test results can reveal areas for improvement in pipeline instrumentation, computer software, information display, or operator training, which should be addressed. The focus should be on improving overall system response rather than assigning blame. Proper leak detection system testing and follow-up result in better leak detection performance and improved operator confidence.

E.10.1

This is a commentary on Clause E.10.1.

On SCADA-based systems, material balance results should be trended because consistent shortages or overages that are within the acceptable tolerance could be indicative of a pipeline leak or a metering problem that should be addressed.

Annex H Pipeline failure records

This is a commentary on Annex H.

The purpose of the normative Annex H is to provide requirements for the essential information needed to describe and understand the causes and consequences of pipeline failures. Annex H provides consistency in the terminology used in the oil and gas pipeline industry for documenting incident information, which is intended to facilitate its use in pipeline risk management at the sharing of information among the pipeline industry associations and regulators. Portions of the previous informative annex related to pipeline inventory information and the terms and structure for electronic databases were removed because they were not used.

Annex I Oilfield steam distribution pipelines — Alternate provisions

I.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause I.1.

The alternative requirements in Annex I have been developed primarily to address the trend to use large-diameter high-strength piping materials over longer distances than have historically been used for steam distribution pipelines. Seamless quenched and tempered Grade 448 piping materials have historically been used for steam distribution pipelines; however, with increasing diameters (e.g., 610 to 812 mm OD) and longer pipeline lengths (e.g., 20 km), the use of such seamless quenched and tempered Grade 448 product is no longer feasible. The inherent conservatism in Clause 14 results in wall thickness values that cannot be cost-effectively made with welded pipe. ASME B31.3, Chapter IX

(High Pressure Piping) provides a coherent design basis for mechanical and thermal stresses, utilizing a yield strength design criterion. The resultant hoop stress is approximately 60% SMYS, which permits the use of thinner-wall, large-diameter, seam-welded high-strength thermo-mechanically control-rolled pipe (e.g., Grade 550 TMCP) at stress levels significantly above 1/3 of the tensile strength (as specified in Clause 14), yet still below the 80% SMYS limitation specified for conventional pipelines in CSA Z662.

I.2 Design

This is a commentary on Clause I.2.

The design criteria are based on the assumption that longitudinal thermal stresses in the pipeline are controlled by the proper use of expansion loops, guided pipe support, and anchors in the system. Larger-diameter high-strength pipeline segments can be designed and built in accordance with Annex I, while being attached to smaller-diameter (and possibly lower-strength) segments of the system designed in accordance with Clause 14. However, a pipeline segment designed in accordance with Annex I must follow Annex I in its entirety for that segment.

I.3 Materials

This is a commentary on Clause I.3.

Spiral welded and ERW pipe products are not included in Annex I. The tension testing required in Clause I.3.2.1 includes requirements to test the weld seam as well as the pipe body.

Charpy notch toughness testing is required for pipe, fittings, welds, and heat-affected zones in Clause I.3.2.3. The minimum design temperature for steam distribution pipelines is typically the lowest temperature that the pipeline will be exposed to in service. The minimum design metal temperature (MDMT) for steam distribution pipelines is typically the lowest temperature that the pipeline will be exposed to during pressure testing. The intent of notch toughness testing is to avoid brittle fracture during pressure testing and during start-up conditions.

I.4 Joining

I.4.1

This is a commentary on Clause I.4.1.

The requirement for Charpy testing and the need to measure the yield strength of the procedure qualification test weld are based upon the design and materials requirements as specified in ASME B31.3, Chapter IX.

I.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause I.4.2.

Although the standards of acceptability are the same as those in Clause 14, the level of inspection called for by Clause I.4.2 is significantly higher (i.e., 100% versus 5%). This higher frequency of inspection is due to the higher allowable stress permitted by Annex I.

 © 2015 CSA Group

Annex J Recommended practice for determining the acceptability of imperfections in fusion welds using engineering critical assessment

J.1 Introduction

This is a commentary on Clause J.1.

Although the principles of fracture mechanics and engineering critical assessment are applicable to fusion welds in many industrial structures, the analysis methods recommended in Annex J were developed specifically for application to circumferential fusion welds (girth welds) in pipelines.

The concept of an engineering critical assessment (ECA) was first included in the 1983 edition of CSA Z184 (in Appendix J) and in the 1986 edition of CAN/CSA-Z183 (in Appendix E). The principles of fracture mechanics and engineering critical assessment are applicable to fusion welds in many industrial structures, and the analysis methods recommended in this Annex were developed specifically for application to circumferential fusion welds (girth welds) in pipelines.

J.2 General

J.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause J.2.1.

For the purposes of the Standard, engineering critical assessment is used only to determine whether it is necessary to repair a circumferential fusion weld that has been found, after the normal construction activity has been completed, to contain an imperfection that is unacceptable based on the normal construction acceptance criteria. Annex K, which also uses engineering critical assessment based on fracture mechanics principles, is used prior to construction to derive alternative standards of acceptability for weld imperfections; these standards can be used, at the discretion of the company, for nondestructive inspection of circumferential butt welds during construction.

J.2.2

This is a commentary on Clause J.2.2.

Weld imperfections can grow due to cyclic loading, unexpected increases in applied stress caused by soil movement or environmental factors.

J.4 Comparison of work quality standards and engineering critical assessment

J.4.1

This is a commentary on Clause J.4.1.

The standards of acceptability in Clause 7.11 and Clause 7.15.10 are intended as a measure of adequate welding competence for welding performed in accordance with qualified welding procedure specifications and are considered to be applicable to all fusion welds meeting the requirements of Clause 7.

The work quality standards of acceptability continue to be used because experience has shown that they are achievable and that welds meeting the standards are not subject to an unacceptable number of girth weld failures during testing or service.

 © 2015 CSA Group

J.4.2

This is a commentary on Clause J.4.2.

In many situations, engineering critical assessment will show that imperfections that are considered unacceptable on the basis of work quality standards are tolerable and that no repair action is required. Engineering critical assessment is useful in situations where the benefits of avoiding weld repair are greater than the costs of performing the assessment and also in situations where it is important to ensure that the welds will be suitable for service in unusual conditions, where there could be uncertainty about the adequacy of the work quality standards.

J.5 Methods for conducting ECA

This is a commentary on Clause J.5.

The main differences between Annex J and Annex K are as follows:

- Annex J permits the stress in the region of a specific weld and the specific imperfection in the weld to be used in the ECA. The stress in such a specific location can be less than the maximum effective applied tensile bending stress that occurs in a larger portion of the pipeline segment. The maximum acceptable size of weld imperfection in such a specific location will often be larger than the maximum acceptable size in regions that experience the maximum effective applied tensile bending stress.
- Although the testing requirements to determine the mechanical properties are the same for Annex J and Annex K, it is not necessary to use the minimum value of CTOD fracture toughness when applying Annex J, provided that the imperfection being assessed is known to be situated in a zone of higher toughness. The maximum acceptable size of weld imperfection in such a region will often be larger than the maximum acceptable size in regions that have low toughness.
- Annex J permits some of the length and depth limitations of Annex K to be exceeded for specific situations where the detailed analysis of the specific imperfection and weld location indicates that failure will not occur. In situations where Annex K is used to define alternative standards of acceptability, such detailed information is generally not available and the limitations are appropriate.
- Cracks are considered to be unacceptable in a weld acceptance standard for a number of reasons, as discussed in the commentary for Annex K; however, in specific situations where there is confidence in the knowledge about the circumstances that caused a crack, and confidence in the toughness and other mechanical properties in the region of the crack, cracks are permitted to be assessed as through-wall imperfections and can be considered acceptable.

Annex K Standards of acceptability for circumferential pipe butt welds based on fracture mechanics principles

K.1 Introduction

K.1.1 Purpose

This is a commentary on Clause K.1.1.

The purpose of Annex K is to specify the requirements for determining acceptance standards based on fracture mechanics principles. The methods of Annex K also provide the basis for Annex J, which describes the engineering critical assessment of welds that have previously been accepted and are subsequently found to be unacceptable on the basis of the requirements of Clauses 7.11, Clause 7.15.10, or Annex K. Annex K applies to the assessment of large numbers of welds inspected

during construction, whereas Annex J applies to the assessment of individual imperfections in specific positions in specific welds after construction is completed.

If a weld that was originally found to be acceptable according to the alternative standards of Annex K is subsequently found to be unacceptable, it is possible for it to be assessed using Annex J. Annex J uses the same principles as Annex K but applies those principles to a specific situation in which information is used that is specific to an individual weld and imperfection.

K.1.2 Work quality

S This is a commentary on Clause K.1.2.

The requirement for a quality control program to ensure good welding work quality is related to the need to control the weld properties, which provide the basis for the alternative acceptance standards. In addition to verifying that production welding is performed in accordance with the qualified welding procedure, in accordance with Clause K.6, it is important to ensure that the number of imperfections is consistent with the expected performance of the welding procedure. The occurrence of higher-than-expected numbers of imperfections during production welding can be an indication of significant consumable or procedure deviation problems that would invalidate the basis of the alternative standard of acceptability being applied.

K.2 Stress analysis

S This is a commentary on Clause K.2.

The maximum effective applied tensile bending stress is one of the essential factors required to determine the acceptable length of imperfection in Clause K.5. The methods used in Clause K.5 assume that an imperfection is centred at the location of maximum longitudinal tensile stress in a pipe subject to longitudinal bending. In such a situation, the tensile stress decreases in the circumferential direction so that the ends of an imperfection are situated in a region of tensile stress that is less than the maximum stress. This bending situation was also used in the full-scale tests that were performed to establish the equations used in the analyses. When an axial stress is present, it is uniform around the circumference and, unlike a bending stress, does not decrease towards the end of an imperfection. Consequently, the axial stress is considered to be equivalent to 1.5 times a bending stress with the same maximum value.

There are no specific requirements for a fatigue analysis because the limitations on imperfection depth, discussed in the commentary for Clause K.5.3.2.1, were determined to maintain a stress intensity that is less than the threshold for fatigue crack growth.

K.2.2 Residual stress

S This is a commentary on Clause K.2.2.

Weld residual stresses are not included in the stress analysis because analysis of full-scale test results showed that the effect of residual stress on the applied strain to failure was insignificant (Glover and Coote, 1983).

K.3 Welding procedure qualification

S This is a commentary on Clause K.3.

The permissible welding variable changes are more restrictive than those in Table 7.3 because of the need to ensure that changes to the variables that are likely to affect the mechanical properties,

particularly the toughness, are controlled. Changes outside these limits invalidate the basis for the established alternative standard of acceptability and would require requalification of the welding procedure and establishment of a new alternative standard, based on the results of the mechanical properties for the new procedure.

K.4 Mechanical properties

This is a commentary on Clause K.4.

The mechanical testing that is required to obtain the mechanical properties that are used in the calculations to derive the maximum acceptable sizes of imperfections must be performed in accordance with the referenced standards.

K.4.2 Weldment tensile strength

This is a commentary on Clause K.4.2.

It is generally accepted that weld strength overmatch to the pipe base metal can be better characterized using ultimate tensile strength. This is true when fracture is involved. Weld metal overmatch in tensile strength can help preventing highly localized deformation in the weld. Also for high strength pipes made using UOE process, the yield stress in pipe longitudinal direction is usually lower than that in pipe hoop direction while the tensile strength in the two directions hardly changes. So using tensile strength in the current case, where specimens are cut along longitudinal direction, for weld overmatch characterization is a better choice than using yield stress. Accordingly, two tensile tests, with the weld at mid-length and the weld re-enforcement removed, are required to confirm that the tensile strength of the specimens are at least equal to the specified minimum tensile strength of the pipe material.

K.4.2.3 Requirements

This is a commentary on Clause K.4.2.3.

In applying the methods of ECA, it is assumed that the weld overmatches the base metal, hence failure should not occur in the weld.

K.4.4 Weldment fracture toughness

This is a commentary on Clause K.4.4.

For shallow cracks with a_o less than 2.6 mm, it will not be practical in some cases to extend the pre-crack by the usual requirement of 1.3 mm. In such a case, the required pre-crack fatigue extension can be reduced to $a_o/2$.

The requirements on crack-front straightness in ASTM E1820 and ISO 15653 are restrictive when applied to shallow cracks. It has been verified (Shen et al, 2004) that the requirement in Clause K.4.4.3 on the maximum difference in crack depth is achievable for shallow cracks and yields consistent results. Also, this limit is consistent with the ISO 15653 requirement for deeply cracked weld specimens of either preferred or subsidiary geometry.

The stated scopes of both ASTM E1820 and ISO 15653 cover only deep cracks. However, the equations used in ASTM E1820 were developed by finite element calculation for specimens with a/W down to 0.1 (see Ref. 5 of ASTM E1820) and should therefore be valid for the shallow-crack specimens required by the Standard. However, the finite element results apply only to crack-mouth-opening measurements made at the specimen surface, so the equations in ASTM E1820 should be applied only to such

measurements, i.e., for z = 0; this is achievable using integrally machined knife edges or with external knife edges mounted in reverse to the usual orientation so that the knife edges are in the same plane as the specimen surface.

In ASTM E1820, the constraint coefficient m required to calculate the CTOD is obtained directly from Y/T and a_o/W. In previous versions of ASTM E1820, the work-hardening coefficient n was needed in this calculation, but there is no need when using ASTM E1820 to obtain a value of n. There does remain a slight inconsistency in that the yield strength in ASTM E1820 is defined as the 0.2% offset yield strength which differs slightly from the definition of yield strength used in CSA Z662. However, the difference in the constraint coefficient m calculated using either definition should be small.

K.5 Determination of maximum acceptable sizes of imperfections

K.5.1 General

S This is a commentary on Clause K.5.1.

Except for porosity, all types of imperfections are considered to be planar in the fracture mechanics analysis. This approach results in an additional degree of conservatism for volumetric imperfections such as slag or undercut.

Although cracks are also planar imperfections, they are considered unacceptable, primarily because of the uncertainty regarding the toughness in the region of the crack. The presence of a crack in many situations can be an indication of significant deviation from the qualified welding procedure, which would also tend to produce regions of reduced toughness that are not characteristic of welds produced with the qualified welding procedure and tested to determine their mechanical properties. A second reason for the unacceptability of cracks is the difficulty of reliably determining their size, since they commonly extend more than one weld pass in depth.

K.5.2 Spherical porosity

S This is a commentary on Clause K.5.2.

The limitation of 5% projected area on a radiograph was selected as the maximum spherical porosity permissible because the presence of larger amounts of porosity reduces the ability to recognize and determine the length of other types of imperfections. Fatigue testing has demonstrated that the presence of even much larger amounts of porosity has no significant effect on the fatigue life of the weld.

K.5.3 Planar imperfections

K.5.3.1 General

K.5.3.1.1 Assessment procedures

S This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.1.1.

Option 1 is the existing CSA Z662 procedure, based on the CTOD design curve, which has proven to be safe and robust. Option 2 is a more accurate procedure using a Failure Assessment Diagram (FAD), which enables better estimates to be made of allowable flaw size at the cost of somewhat more analysis. The FAD procedure has been validated against experimental pipe and wide plate data, and for the effects of high/low misalignment by comparison with results of finite element analysis (FEA) of crack driving force (CDF).

 © 2015 CSA Group

K.5.3.1.2 Nomenclature

This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.1.2.

This requirement recognizes that embedded imperfections that are close to the surface behave as though they were open to the surface, and therefore they should be analyzed as such.

K.5.3.2 Depths of imperfections

K.5.3.2.1

This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.2.1.

The maximum depths permitted to be considered were determined so as to ensure that the resulting stress intensity under the most severe fatigue loading caused by pressure fluctuations would be less than the threshold stress intensity for fatigue growth.

K.5.3.2.2 and K.5.3.2.3

This is a commentary on Clauses K.5.3.2.2 and K.5.3.2.3.

Reliable and accurate nondestructive depth measurement is often difficult to achieve; however, observations have shown that the depth of weld imperfections other than cracks do not exceed the depth of the weld pass in which they occur. Accordingly, in cases where the imperfection depth has not been accurately determined, it is acceptable and practical to use the weld pass depth to represent the imperfection depth.

K.5.3.3 Determination of maximum size of imperfection — Option 1

K.5.3.3.2 Embedded imperfections

This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.3.2.

Embedded imperfections that are close to the surface behave as though they were open to the surface, and therefore they should be analyzed as such.

There is some ambiguity in nomenclature as currently used in the literature. The “size” of a planar flaw (see Figures K.4 and K.5) includes two major dimensions: length (L, elsewhere often referred to as $2c$) and height (d, elsewhere often referred to as a for surface or $2a$ for buried flaws). The term “depth” is used commonly for height d, but can also be defined as the distance of a buried flaw below the surface. For a buried flaw considered as a surface flaw, the height of the surface flaw is taken as $(p + d)$ where p is the size of the ligament between the flaw and the surface. For Option 1, a buried flaw must be considered as a surface flaw if $p < d$, and for Option 2 the condition is $p < d/2$.

K.5.3.3.3 Maximum size of imperfection to prevent brittle fracture

This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.3.3.

As stated in the Note, Option 1 reflects the concepts and the approach of BSI PD 6493. However, for depth-to-length ratios less than 0.1, Figure K.4 varies from the equivalent figure in BSI PD 6493. The analysis of full-scale test data showed that the equivalent curves in BSI PD 6493 produce a minimum strain safety factor of less than 1 for long shallow imperfections (Glover and Coote, 1983). The curves in Figure K.4 provide a more consistent and higher safety factor (2.0 to 4.3) on the strain to failure.

© 2015 CSA Group

In Figure K.5, it should be noted that the curve representing a *d/L* value of "0" is intended to represent a lower bound that is a very small number, rather than literally zero.

K.5.3.3.4 Maximum size of imperfection to prevent plastic failure

This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.3.4.

A considerable amount of work performed by the pipeline industry and the Pipeline Research Council International (PRCI) has shown that the Miller solution, with modifications, yields an appropriate and improved expression for determining the load for plastic collapse. This approach has been validated by many years of practical application, by detailed numerical analyses, and by comparison to full-scale fracture tests. The equation used for plastic failure in Clause K.5.3.3.4 is the Miller solution as modified by Y.-Y. Wang *et al*. (2002) and made even more conservative by incorporation of a safety factor of 2 in the imperfection length and the use of a conservative definition of flow stress.

K.5.3.4 Determination of maximum size of imperfection — Option 2

K.5.3.4.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.4.1.

Since the introduction of the first engineering structural integrity assessment method, based on the CTOD design curve, a great deal of research has been done to quantify the effects of stress and geometry on the crack driving force (CDF). This has led to the development of a method based on the Failure Assessment Diagram (FAD), in which a Failure Assessment Curve (FAC) is used to define the boundary between acceptable and unacceptable conditions. The principles of the Failure Assessment Diagram have been described in a number of references (see, for example, Y.-Y. Wang *et al*.(2002) and W.R. Tyson, S. Xu, and D.-M. Duan (2010). The method is incorporated in a number of pipeline standards, for example BS 7910 and API 1104. In essence, the method enables determination of the conditions for crack advance by equating an upper-bound estimation of the elastic-plastic crack driving force to a lower-bound estimation of the fracture toughness. Excessive plastic deformation is avoided by imposing a cut-off stress to prevent plastic overload of the net section.

K.5.3.4.2 Embedded imperfections

This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.4.2.

Treatment of the embedded flaw as a surface flaw is required using Option 2 when the size of the ligament is less than *d*/2. This differs from Option 1, in which the ligament size for re-categorization is *d*. The transition at *d*/2 has been justified by detailed study of the stress intensity factor *K*, which is smaller for an embedded flaw than for a surface flaw of the same height and length even when the ligament of the embedded flaw is only one-half of its height. This conclusion is supported by finite element calculations reported in the literature; embedded flaws are assessed more conservatively than surface flaws using the procedure of Option 2. The transition at *d*/2 rather than *d* is consistent with the treatment in API 1104 using the FAD approach.

K.5.3.4.3.1 Critical imperfection size

This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.4.3.1.

The FAD methodology in the form used here has been discussed in a conference paper (Tyson *et al*., 2012), which includes validation using available pipe and wide plate data. In subsequent unpublished

work, it has been shown that the procedure provides conservative assessments in the presence of the maximum high/low misalignment allowed in this Standard.

The analytic form of the FAD is the same as in Level 2A of BS 7910, and represents a "generalized FAD, not requiring specific stress/strain data".

The fracture toughness δ to be used in the assessment is the high-constraint toughness measured as specified in Clause K.4.4. Measured fracture toughness may be δ_c, δ_u, or δ_m as defined in ISO 15653. The first two refer to unstable brittle fracture (cleavage) and the last is the CTOD at maximum load. The minimum value of toughness measured for the required number and type of specimens is specified as the value to use in calculations, although only δ_c or δ_u performance will correspond to unstable "brittle" behaviour.

The relation between applied CTOD δ and stress intensity factor K uses a low value of m designed to give a conservative (high) value of the CTOD.

The equations for the stress intensity factor K were derived from the finite element data of Chapuliot *et al*. (1998). The equations in Clause K.5.3.4.3.1 are from an analytic fit to Chapuliot's data adopted by API and published in API 1104.

The reference stress (and load ratio L_r) is defined in terms of the limit load as

$$L_r = \frac{\sigma_{ref}}{\sigma_y} = \frac{\text{applied load}}{\text{limit load}}$$

The "limit load" is the load required to cause unlimited deformation ("plastic collapse") for a perfectly plastic material with yield strength σ_y. The limit load equation used in Clause K.5.3.4.3.1 is the "Kastner equation" recommended in BSI BS 7910, and is appropriate for a thin-wall pipe under large-scale bending or axial tension where there is negligible through-wall-thickness variation of the stress (i.e., bending).

K.5.3.4.3.2 Maximum allowable imperfection size

S This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.4.3.2.

In Option 2, a safety factor of 1.5 on length has been imposed, similar to API 1104. An explicit safety factor on imperfection height d of 0.5 mm has also been imposed, in addition to the requirement that d be measured or estimated conservatively.

K.5.3.4.4 Maximum size of imperfection to prevent plastic failure

S This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.4.4.

For materials that work harden, the stress in the material during plastic collapse increases above the yield stress. It has been shown (S. Xu *et al*., 2006) that stresses even higher than the UTS can be reached in the net section, and setting the effective material strength at the flow stress gives a conservative estimate of the load-bearing capacity for plastic fracture. The same safety factor of 1.5 on length is used as for elastic/plastic fracture.

© 2015 CSA Group

K.5.3.5 Maximum length of imperfection

This is a commentary on Clause K.5.3.5.

The maximum acceptable length limit of 0.1 times the nominal pipe circumference was imposed because there are no full-scale fracture data for longer imperfections and there is little practical need to consider them.

K.6 Production welding control

This is a commentary on Clause K.6.

The importance of controlling welding production is described in the commentary to Clauses K.1.2 and K.3.

K.7 Inspection

K.7.1 General

This is a commentary on Clause K.7.1.

Ultrasonic inspection is the preferred method as this provides a consistent means to detect flaw length, depth, and position in the pipe wall.

K.7.2 Interaction between imperfections

This is a commentary on Clause K.7.2.

The criterion for interaction of imperfections is consistent with that of BSI BS 7910:1999 (Figure 9).

Annex L Alternate or supplementary test methods for coating property and characteristics evaluation

This is a commentary on Annex L.

The selection of the appropriate test methods and interpretation of the test results should be conducted by an experienced coating specialist, in the context of the intended use of the coating being evaluated.

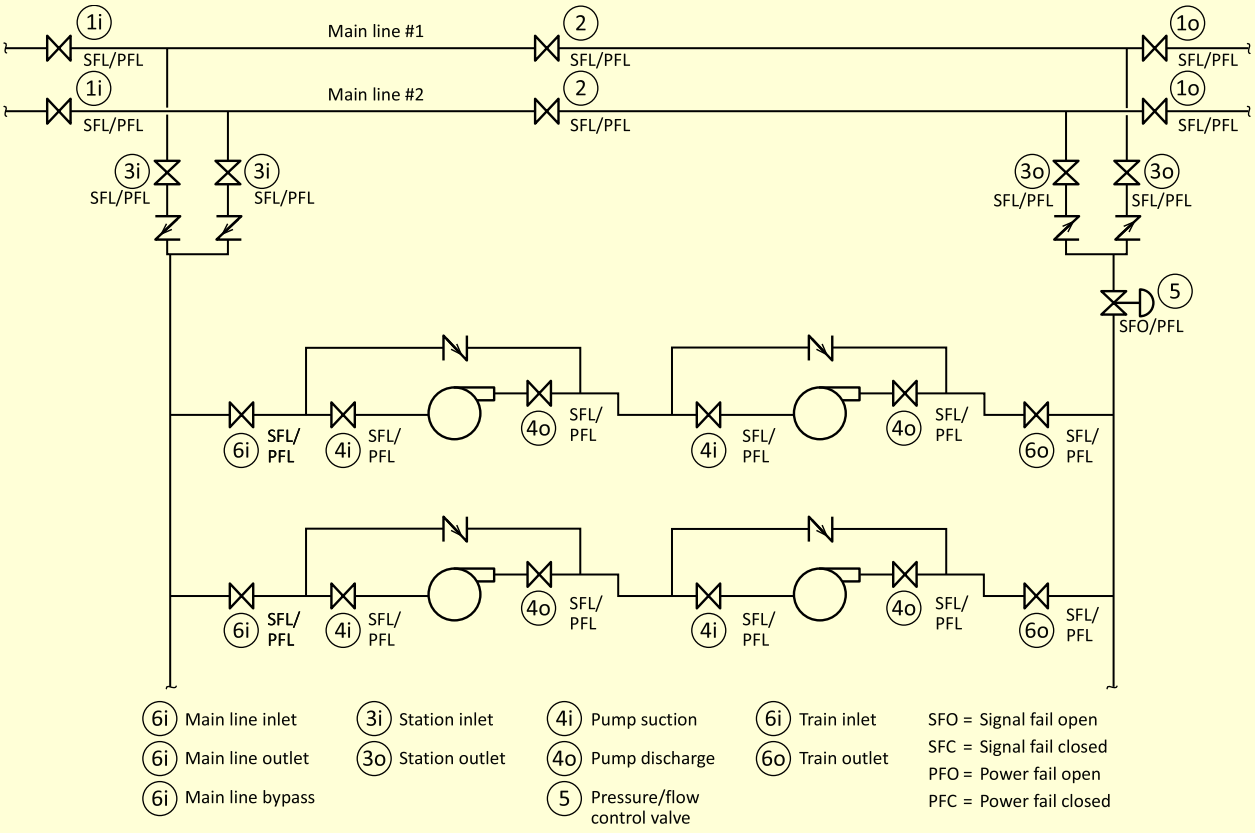
Annex M Guidance for system control, monitoring, and protection of hydrocarbon pipeline systems

M.8 Valve definitions

This is a commentary on Clause M.8.

There is a great deal of similarity with respect to the valves required to operate a pumping station; however, there is no uniformity of terminology used to identify them. The diagram below is intended to define what is meant by the terms used in the standard. It is not intended to specify terminology to be used by others.

© 2015 CSA Group



Annex O Reliability-based design and assessment (RBDA) of onshore non-sour service natural gas transmission pipelines

S This is a commentary on Annex O.

Annex O includes an extensive discussion of the explanation of the use of reality-based design and assessment (RBDA) in Clause O.2, as well as an extensive list of technical publications pertaining to this technology in Clause O.3. RBDA is a relatively new design concept for pipelines and was originally developed specifically for natural gas transmission lines. As such, the vast majority of the historical studies and published data on RBDA have been specific to such pipelines. As the technology evolves, it is conceivable that future editions of CSA Z662 will include a broader scope of usage for Annex O.

© 2015 CSA Group

CSA
Group
™